CITY OF CONCORD WATER RESOURCES
CONCORD, NORTH CAROLINA

PROJECT MANUAL

POPLAR TENT AREA WATER PUMP STATION

City Project No. 2024-041

City Bid No. 2686

Hazen Project No. 32180-015

SINGLE PRIME CONTRACT

July 2025

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CITY OF CONCONRD WATER RESOURCES
CONCORD, NORTH CAROLINA

PROJECT MANUAL

POPLAR TENT AREA WATER PUMP STATION

City Project No. 2024-041

City Bid No. 2686

Hazen Project No. 32180-015

SINGLE PRIME CONTACT

July 2025

2025.08.04 12:36:41-04'00'

Prepared By:

Hazen and Sawyer
9101 Southern Pine Boulevard
Suite 250
Charlotte, NC 28273
(704) 357 – 3150

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 00 01 10

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

Section	Title
00 10 00	Bid Documents

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section	Title
01 11 00	Summary of Work
01 14 00	Coordination with Owner's Operations
01 15 00	Owner Furnished Equipment
01 20 00	Measurement and Payment
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
01 29 73	Schedule of Values
01 29 76	Progress Payment Procedures
01 31 19	Project Meetings
01 32 00	Construction Progress Schedule
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 42 00	References
01 45 33	Special Inspections
01 51 00	Temporary Utilities
01 55 00	Contractor Access and Parking
01 57 00	Temporary Controls
01 61 00	Product Requirements and Options
01 65 00	Product Delivery Requirements
01 66 00	Product Storage and Protection Requirements

Section	Title
01 71 23	Field Engineering
01 71 33	Protection of Work and Property
01 73 23	Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components
01 74 00	Cleaning and Waste Management
01 75 00	Checkout and Startup Procedures
01 77 19	Closeout Requirements
01 77 19.10	Certificate of Substantial Completion
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents
01 78 43	Spare Parts and Extra Material
01 79 00	Instruction of Owner's Personnel

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

Section	Title
02 41 00	Site Demolition

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

Section	Title
03 11 00	Concrete Formwork
03 15 00	Concrete Accessories
03 15 16	Joints in Concrete
03 21 00	Reinforcing Steel
03 23 00	Stressing Tendons
03 30 00	Cast-in-Place Concrete
03 35 00	Concrete Finishes
03 39 00	Concrete Curing
03 40 00	Precast Concrete

03 41 13	Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks
03 60 00	Grout

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

Section	Title
04 05 13	Mortar and Masonry Grout
04 05 23	Masonry Accessories
04 20 00	Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 – METALS

Section	Title
05 05 13	Galvanizing
05 05 23	Metal Fastening
05 10 00	Metal Materials
05 12 00	Structural Steel
05 13 00	Stainless Steel
05 40 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 44 13	Retrofit Roof Framing System
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33	Ladders
05 53 00	Gratings, Checkered Floor Plates, and Access Doors

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

Section	Title
06 10 00	Rough Carpentry

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

Section	Title
07 19 00	Liquid Applied Water Repellants
07 21 00	Building Insulation
07 26 16	Vapor Barrier
07 70 00	Roof Specialties and Accessories
07 60 00	Flashing and Sheet Metal
07 61 13	Standing Seam Metal Roofing
07 70 00	Roof Specialties and Accessories
07 90 00	Joint Fillers, Sealants and Caulking

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

Section	Title
08 11 13	Steel Doors and Frames
08 33 23	Roll-up Doors
08 71 00	Finish Hardware

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

Section	Title
09 90 00	Painting

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

Section	Title
10 14 00	Identifying Devices
10 44 16	Fire Extinguishers
10 73 16	Canopies

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS (NOT USED)

DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION (NOT USED)

DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION (NOT USED)

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING (NOT USED)

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

Section	Title
23 00 00	Basic HVAC Requirements
23 05 95	HVAC Field Testing
23 81 24	Wall Mounted Packaged Air Conditioners

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

Section	Title
26 05 00	Electrical – General
26 05 19	Low Voltage Conductors and Cables
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 05 33.13	Conduit for Electrical Systems
26 05 33.16	Boxes for Electrical Systems
26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
26 05 60	Low Voltage Electric Motors
26 05 73	Power System Studies
26 09 16	Electrical Controls and Relays
26 22 00	Low-Voltage Transformers
26 24 13	Low Voltage Switchboards

26 24 16	Panelboards
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 16.13	Enclosed Circuit Breakers
26 28 16.16	Enclosed Switches
26 29 23	Low-Voltage Variable Frequency Motor Controllers
26 41 00	Facility Lighting Protection
26 43 13	Surge Protective Devices
26 50 00	Lighting

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS (NOT USED)

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (NOT USED)

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

Section	Title
31 00 01	Earthwork
31 05 16	Aggregate Materials
31 05 19	Geotextiles
31 10 00	Clearing, Grubbing, and Site Preparation
31 25 00	Erosion and Sedimentation Control

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

Section	Title
32 10 00	Paving and Surfacing
32 11 00	Surface Restoration
32 90 00	Final Grading and Landscaping

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

Section	Title
33 05 61	Utility Structures
33 71 19	Underground Electrical

DIVISION 35 – WATERWAY AND MARINE CONSTRUCTION (NOT USED)

DIVISION 40 – PROCESS INTERCONNECTIONS

Section	Title
40 05 00	Basic Mechanical Requirements
40 05 07	Pipe Supports
40 05 19	Ductile Iron Pipe
40 05 31	PVC/CPVC Pipe
40 05 51	Valves, General
40 05 57	Valve Operators and Electric Valve Actuators
40 05 61	Gate Valves
40 05 64	Butterfly Valves
40 05 65.23	Check Valves
40 05 68.23	Miscellaneous Valves
40 05 78	Air Valves for Water and Wastewater Service
40 06 20	Schedules
40 61 13	Process Control System General Provisions
40 61 15	Process Control System Submittals
40 61 21	Factory Witness Test
40 61 21.71	Factory Witness Testing
40 61 21.72	Field Testing
40 61 21.73	Final Acceptance Test
40 61 22	Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts, General
40 61 23	Signal Coordination Requirements
40 61 26	Process Control System Training

40 61 90	Schedules and Control Descriptions, General
40 61 91	Process Control System Instrument List
40 61 93	Process Control System Input-Output List
40 61 96	Process Control Descriptions
40 62 00	Computer System Hardware and Ancillaries
40 62 63	Operator Interface Terminals (OIT)
40 63 43	Programmable Logic Controllers
40 66 00	Network and Communication Equipment
40 67 00	Control System Equipment Panels and Racks
40 67 63	Uninterruptible Power System
40 68 00.13	Process Control Software (Modify Existing)
40 70 00	Instrumentation for Process Systems
40 71 13.13	Inline Magnetic Flow Meters
40 72 76.26	Level Switches (Floats)
40 73 20	Pressure Transmitters
40 73 36	Pressure and Differential Pressure Switches
40 78 00	Panel Mounted Instruments
40 78 56	Isolators, Intrinsically-Safe Barriers, and Surge Suppressors
40 79 00	Miscellaneous Instruments, Valves, and Fittings

DIVISION 41 – MATERIAL PROCESSING AND HANDLING EQUIPMENT

Section	Title
41 22 00	Cranes and Hoists

DIVISION 43 – PROCESS GAS AND LIQUID HANDLING, PURIFICATION, AND STORAGE EQUIPMENT

Section	Title
43 20 00	Pumps - General

43 23 21	Horizontal Split Case Pumps

DIVISION 44 – POLLUTION AND WASTE CONTROL MANAGEMENT (NOT USED)

DIVISION 46 – WATER AND WASTEWATER EQUIPMENT

Section	Title
46 00 00	Equipment General Provisions

APPENDICES

A Geotechnical Report
B Owner-Furnished Equipment Information
C Control System Integration Scope

SECTION 00 10 00
BID DOCUMENTS

BID DOCUMENTS FOR

POPLAR TENT AREA WATER PUMP STATION
2024-041

BID NO. 2686

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION I - BIDS, AGREEMENTS, AND NOTICES I-1
BID ADVERTISEMENT / INVITATION TO BID I-2
INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS I-5
DEBARRED FIRMS CERTIFICATION FORM I-11
EXHIBIT A – BID FORM I-12
EXHIBIT B – STANDARD FORM OF PERFORMANCE BOND I-19
EXHIBIT C – SPECIAL PROVISIONS I-21
NOTICE OF AWARD I-22
NOTICE TO PROCEED I-23
STANDARD FORM OF CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT I-24
EXHIBIT D – E-VERIFY I-36
EXHIBIT E – TAX FORMS I-37
EXHIBIT F – CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE I-38
PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND PAY REQUEST FORMS I-39
CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER FORM I-40
CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION I-42
FIELD ORDER FORM I-44
NC SALES TAX FORM I-46
NORTH CAROLINA ONE CALL CENTER, INC. I-48
SECTION II - EXHIBIT G GENERAL CONDITIONS AND SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS II-1
SECTION III - EXHIBIT H CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS PROJECT MANUAL III-1
SECTION IV – EXHIBIT I DRAWINGS (SEPARATE DOCUMENT) IV-1

SECTION I - BIDS, AGREEMENTS, AND NOTICES

BID ADVERTISEMENT / INVITATION TO BID

Project Title: **2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station**

Project No. 2024-041

Project Description: The **2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station** project consists of the construction of a new 6-mgd pump station which includes a new pump building, approximately 1,250 linear feet of 24", 20", 16", 12", 10" and 8" ductile iron pipe, fittings, and valves, installation of a new generator set, placement of new gravel drive and sidewalk for access to the new pump station, a precast flow meter vault, and two (2) air release valves inside of precast concrete manholes.

Sealed bids for the construction of the Project will be received by City of Concord (Owner) at the location below until the date and time specified below. At that time the Bids received will be publicly opened and read.

Bid Due Date: **September 9, 2025 at 2:00 PM EDT (UTC – 05:00)**
Location: City of Concord, Alfred M. Brown Operations Center
635 Alfred Brown Jr Court SW, Concord, NC 28026
Conference Room C
(See attached map/directions)

Please submit notarized Bids in a sealed envelope by the bid opening time and date. All Bids must be in accordance with the Bid Documents on file with Engineer. Bidders must be licensed contractors in the State of North Carolina. A Bid Bond must accompany each bid. **Bid Bond/Security Must Be Provided In a Separate Envelope From The Bid Form And Other Required Documents** The Successful Bidder will be required to furnish a Construction Performance Bond and a Construction Payment Bond as security for the faithful performance and the payment of all bills and obligations arising from the performance of the Contract. Contractor and all Subcontractors will be required to conform to the labor standards set forth in the Contract Documents. Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, including without limitation the rights to reject any or all nonconforming, nonresponsive, unbalanced, or conditional Bids, and will award to lowest responsible Bidder taking into consideration quality, performance, and time specified in Bid Form for performance of Work. Owner also reserves the right to waive informalities.

Ryan LeClear
Purchasing Manager

Engineer: Hazen and Sawyer
9101 Southern Pine Blvd Suite 250,
Charlotte, NC 28273

Contractors wishing to bid on this project must register to bid by sending an email to Crystal Allman, EI at allmanc@concordnc.gov. Registration for bidding requires the name of the company, physical address, email address, and telephone number. All communication regarding this bid will be done through email. Once you register, you will receive an email with a link to the bid documents. Partial sets of Bid Documents will not be available from the Owner. Neither Owner nor Engineer will be responsible for full or partial sets of Bid Documents, including Addenda, if any, obtained from sources other than the Owner.

Technical questions

Submit ALL questions by email to Crystal Allman, (allmanc@concordnc.gov) before 5:00 PM EDT on September 2, 2025. Questions submitted in person, over the phone, or by any means other than email will not be answered.

A non-mandatory Pre-Bid Conference will be held at 1:00 PM EDT on August 19, 2025. The Pre-Bid Meeting will commence at the location provided below where a description of the work will be presented and prospective bidders may ask questions. The meeting will include a visit to the work site.

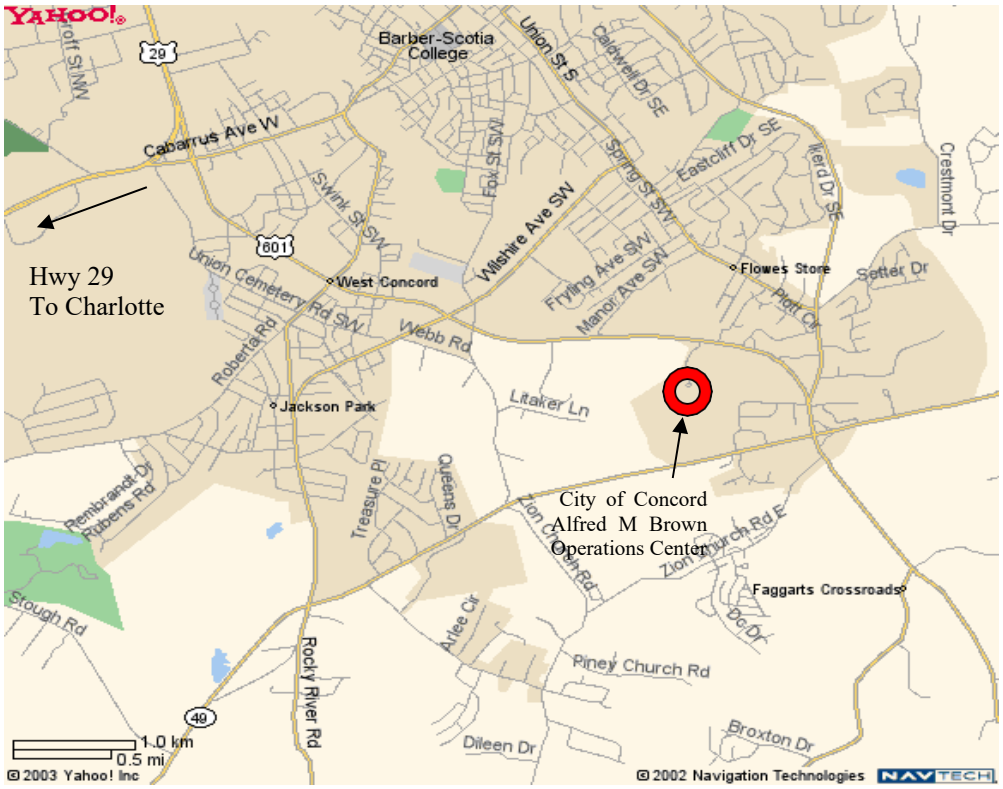
Location of Pre-Bid Conference:

City of Concord, Alfred M. Brown Operations Center
635 Alfred Brown Jr Court SW, Concord, NC 28026
Conference Room C
(See attached map and directions)

For all further requirements regarding bid submittal, qualifications, procedures, and contract award, refer to the Instructions to Bidders that are included in the Bid Documents.

This Bid Advertisement is posted at the City of Concord website at:
https://www.concordnc.gov/Departments/Finance/Purchasing/RFPs-and-Bids

MAP AND DIRECTIONS TO CITY OF CONCORD ALFRED M BROWN OPERATIONS CENTER



Directions from Charlotte

- Take I-77 north to I-85 north from Charlotte to Concord.
- From I-85 north, take exit 49 to the right towards Lowe's Motor Speedway.
- At the Lowe's Motor Speedway, turn left onto Highway 29 (Concord Pkwy) north.
- Keep going north while you pass the Wal-Mart shopping center on your right.
- Turn right at the light at the Chevrolet dealership onto Cabarrus Avenue.
- Turn right at the next traffic light at the Walgreens onto Hwy 601 South (bypass). (Hwy 601 S is also Warren C. Coleman Boulevard).
- Go straight through two traffic lights at Old Charlotte Road and Wilshire Avenue.
- Pass the Bi-Lo shopping center on your left.
- Turn right at the next traffic light at Alfred Brown Jr Court SW (green & white sign on right for the City of Concord Alfred M. Brown Operations Center).
- You will be on the entrance road into our complex.
- Follow signs to the left to Visitor Parking.
- Proceed to the front desk at the Administration Building and sign in with the receptionist.

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1. DEFINED TERMS. Terms used in these Instructions to Bidders are meanings assigned to them in the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions. An additional term is defined as follows:

> Successful Bidder - The lowest, qualified, responsible, and responsive Bidder to whom Owner (on the basis of Owner's evaluation as herein provided) makes an award.

2. COPIES OF BID DOCUMENTS. Bid Documents may be obtained from the Issuing Office as described in the Bid Advertisement / Invitation to Bid.

3. QUALIFICATIONS OF BIDDERS. To demonstrate qualifications to perform the Work, Bidder may be required to submit written evidence on financial data, previous experience, present commitments, and other such data as may be requested by Owner or Engineer. Each Bid must contain evidence of Bidder's qualification to do business in the state where the Project is located, or Bidder must agree to obtain such qualification prior to award of the Contract.

4. EXAMINATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND SITE. It is the responsibility of each Bidder, before submitting a Bid, to (a) thoroughly examine the Contract Documents, (b) visit the site to become familiar with local conditions that may affect cost, progress, performance, or furnishing of the Work, (c) consider federal, state, and local laws and regulations that may affect cost, progress, performance, or furnishing of the Work, (d) study and carefully correlate Bidder's observations with the Contract Documents, and (e) notify Engineer of all conflicts, errors, or discrepancies discovered by Bidder in the Contract Documents.

4.02. Underground Facilities. Information and data reflected in the Contract Documents with respect to underground facilities at or contiguous to the site are based upon information and data furnished to Owner and Engineer by owners of such underground facilities or others, and Owner and Engineer disclaim responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof unless it is expressly provided otherwise in the Supplementary Conditions.

4.03. Additional Information. Before submitting a Bid, each Bidder will, at Bidder's own expense, make or obtain any additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, and studies and obtain any additional information and data which pertain to the physical conditions (surface, subsurface, and underground facilities) at or contiguous to the site or otherwise which may affect cost, progress, performance, or furnishing of the Work and which Bidder deems necessary to determine its Bid for performing and furnishing the Work in accordance with the time, price, and other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.

On request 24 hours in advance, Owner will provide each Bidder access to the site to conduct such explorations and tests as each Bidder deems necessary for submission of a Bid. Bidder shall fill all holes and clean up and restore the site to its former condition upon completion of such explorations. Arrangements for site visits shall be made in writing to Ryan LeClear, who will coordinate requesting access.

4.04. Easements. The lands upon which the Work is to be performed, rights-of-way and easements for access thereto, and other lands designated for use by Contractor in performing the Work are identified in the Contract Documents. All additional lands and access thereto required for temporary construction

facilities or storage of materials and equipment are to be provided by Contractor. Easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing structures are to be obtained and paid for by Owner unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.

4.05. Unit Price Contracts. Bidders must satisfy themselves of the accuracy of the estimated quantities in the Bid schedule by examination of the site and a review of the drawings and the specifications, including the addenda. After Bids have been submitted, the Bidder shall not assert that there was a misunderstanding concerning the quantities of work or the nature of the work to be done.

4.06. Bidder's Representation. The submission of a Bid will constitute an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement concerning examination of the Contract Documents and the site, that without exception the Bid is premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Contract Documents, and that the Contract Documents are sufficient in scope and detail to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performance and furnishing of the Work.

5. INTERPRETATIONS AND ADDENDA. All questions about the meaning or intent of the Bid Documents and the Contract Documents shall be submitted to Owner (or Engineer) in writing. Interpretations or clarifications considered necessary by Owner in response to such questions will be issued by Addenda emailed to all parties recorded by Engineer as having received the Bid Documents. Questions received less than 10 days prior to the date for opening of Bids will not be answered. Only answers issued by Addenda will be binding. Oral and other interpretations or clarifications will be without legal effect.

6. BID SECURITY. **Each Bid must be accompanied by a deposit equal to 5% of the net price bid. Bid Bond/Security Must Be Provided In A Separate Envelope From The Bid Form And Other Required Documents** This deposit may consist of cash, or a Cashier's Check issued by, or a Certified Check drawn on a Bank or Trust Company authorized to do business in North Carolina, or on a Bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or a U.S. Money Order, payable to the City of Concord or 5% Bid Bond in the form required by G.S. 143-129 as amended, issued by an Insurance Company authorized to do business in North Carolina, said deposit to be retained in the event of failure of the successful bidder to execute a formal contract within ten (10) days after award or to give satisfactory surety required.

The Bid security of the Successful Bidder (if so required) will be retained until such Bidder has executed the Agreement, furnished the required contract security (if so required), and met the other conditions of the Notice of Award, whereupon the Bid security will be returned. If the Successful Bidder fails to execute and deliver the Agreement and furnish the required contract security within the number of days set forth in the Bid Form, Owner may annul the Notice of Award and the Bid security of that Bidder will be forfeited. The Bid security (if so required) of other Bidders whom Owner believes to have a reasonable chance of receiving the award may be retained by Owner until the earlier of 7 days after the Effective Date of the Agreement or the day after the last day the Bid remain subject to acceptance as set forth in the Bid Form, whereupon Bid security furnished by such Bidders will be returned. Bid security accompanying Bid which are deemed by Owner to be noncompetitive will be returned within 7 days after the designated Bid opening.

7. CONTRACT TIMES. The numbers of calendar days within which, or the dates by which, the Work is to be substantially completed and also completed and ready for final payment (the Contract Times) are set forth in the Bid Form.

8. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES. Provisions for liquidated damages, if any, are set forth in the Agreement.

9. SUBSTITUTES OR "OR-EQUAL" ITEMS. Bidder's attention is directed to Article 6.5 of the General Conditions concerning substitutes and "or-equal" items. Where an item or material is specified by a proprietary name, it is done for the purpose of establishing a basis of quality and not for the purpose of limiting competition. The Engineer's intent is to consider alternative products which have the desired essential characteristics. The Engineer will consider any such products offered. Requests for acceptance of alternative products shall be made through Bidders quoting as prime Contractors. Acceptances for substitutions will not be granted directly to suppliers, distributors, or subcontractors. Pursuant to Section 133-3, General Statutes of North Carolina, the following procedures shall be used:

Bidders desiring to submit alternative product proposals for prior acceptance of the Engineers shall submit, in writing, such proposals from __n/a__, until _n/a__. Applications received after this time will not be reviewed. Each such request shall include the name of the material or equipment for which it is to be substituted and a complete description of the proposed substitute, including drawings, cuts, performance and test data, and other information necessary for an evaluation. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment, or other work that incorporation of the substitute would require shall be included. The Engineer shall consider and either accept or reject all alternative product proposals submitted.

If, by the close of the fifth day prior to the deadline for receiving Bid, the Engineer has accepted any alternative product proposals, the Bid Documents shall be modified to include the alternative products. The Engineer shall publish the modification in an Addenda at least 5 days prior to the deadline for receiving Bids. The Engineer's decision of acceptance or rejection of a proposed substitute shall be final.

10. SUBCONTRACTORS, SUPPLIERS, AND OTHERS. The identity of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations (including those who are to furnish the principal items of material and equipment) are to be submitted to Owner with the Bid. The list shall be accompanied by an experience statement with pertinent information regarding similar projects and other evidence of qualification for each such Subcontractor, Supplier, person, or organization, if requested by Owner. If Owner or Engineer after due investigation has reasonable objection to any proposed Subcontractor, Supplier, or other person or organization, Owner may, before the Notice of Award is given, request the apparent Successful Bidder to submit an acceptable substitute without an increase in the Bid.

All Subcontractors shall be a licensed utility contractor in the State of North Carolina.

11. BID FORM. Bid Forms must be completed in ink.

Bids by corporations must be executed in the corporate name by the president or vice-president (or other corporate officer accompanied by evidence of authority to sign for the corporation). Bids by partnerships must be executed in the partnership name and signed by a partner. Bids by joint ventures shall be signed by each participant in the joint venture or by a representative of the joint venture accompanied by evidence of authority to sign for the joint venture.

The names of all persons signing shall be legibly printed below the signature. A Bid by a person who affixes to his signature the word "president", "secretary", "agent", or other designation without disclosing his principal may be held to be the Bid of the individual signing. When requested by Owner, evidence of the authority of the person signing shall be furnished.

All blanks in the Bid Form shall be filled. A Bid price shall be indicated for each unit price item listed therein, or the words "No Bid", "No Charge", "No Change", or other appropriate phrase shall be entered.

The Bid shall contain an acknowledgment of receipt of all Addenda; the numbers and dates of which shall be filled in on the Bid Form.

No alterations in Bids, or in the printed forms therefore, by erasures, interpolations, or otherwise will be acceptable unless each such alteration is signed or initialed by the Bidder; if initialed, Owner may require the Bidder to identify any alteration so initialed.

11.01. Bid Pricing. The Bidder shall complete the schedule of unit prices included in the Bid Form and shall accept all fixed unit prices listed therein.

The total Bid will be determined as the sum of the products of the estimated quantity of each item and the unit price Bid. The final Contract Price will be subject to adjustment according to final measured, used, or delivered quantities as provided in Article 9.7 of the General Conditions, and the unit prices in the Bid will apply to such final quantities except that unit prices will be subject to change by Change Order as stipulated in the Supplementary Conditions.

11.02. Contingency. The Contingency is to be added to the Bid price and is to be used for minor change order items. If the Contingency is to be used, a scope of work and price would be negotiated. The Contingency is for the sole use of Owner. A change order will be issued to delete any unauthorized portion of the Contingency.

12. SUBMISSION OF BIDS. Bids shall be submitted at the time and place indicated in the Invitation to Bid, or the modified time and place indicated by Addendum. Bids shall be enclosed in a sealed envelope or wrapping, addressed to:

The City of Concord
Crystal Allman
P.O. Box 308
635 Alfred Brown Jr Court SW
Concord, North Carolina 28026-0308

Bids shall be marked with the name, license number, and address of the Bidder and shall be accompanied by the Bid security (if required) and other required documents. If the Bid is sent through the mail or other delivery system, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate envelope with the notation "BID ENCLOSED" on the face of it.

Each Bid envelope shall be identified on the outside with the words:

"BID FOR 2024-041 – Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station "

Bidder shall assume full responsibility for timely delivery at the location designated for receipt of Bids. Bids received after the time and date for receipt of Bids will be returned unopened.

One copy of all pages of the BID FORM must be submitted with the Bid, as well as a Bid Bond, Debarred Firms Certification Form, and List of Subcontractors (as required by NCGS 143-128).

Oral, telephone, facsimile, or telegraph Bids are invalid and will not receive consideration.

No Bidder may submit more than one Bid. Multiple Bids under different names will not be accepted from one firm or association.

A conditional or qualified Bid will not be accepted.

13. MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS. Bids may be modified or withdrawn by an appropriate document duly executed (in the manner that a Bid must be executed) and delivered to the place where Bids are to be submitted at any time prior to the opening of Bids.

If, within 24 hours after Bids are opened, any Bidder files a duly signed, written notice with Owner and promptly thereafter demonstrates to the reasonable satisfaction of Owner that there was a material and substantial mistake in the preparation of its Bid, that Bidder may withdraw its Bid and the Bid security (if any) will be returned. Thereafter, that Bidder will be disqualified from further quoting on the Work to be provided under the Contract Documents.

13. OPENING OF BIDS. Bids will be opened as set forth in the Bid Advertisement / Invitation to Bid.

The procedure for opening Bids will follow guidelines issued by the State Building Commission dated December 10, 1990, and endorsed by the Consulting Engineers Council of North Carolina.

15. BIDS TO REMAIN SUBJECT TO ACCEPTANCE. All Bids will remain subject to acceptance for the number of days set forth in the Bid Form, but Owner may, in its sole discretion, release any Bid and return the security (if any) prior to that date.

16. AWARD OF CONTRACT. Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, including without limitation the rights to reject any or all nonconforming, nonresponsive, unbalanced, or conditional Bids, and will award to lowest responsible Bidder taking into consideration quality, performance, and time specified in Bid Form for performance of Work. Owner also reserves the right to waive informalities.

In evaluating Bids, Owner will consider the qualifications of the Bidders, whether or not the Bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and such alternatives, unit prices, and other data, as may be requested in the Bid Form or prior to the Notice of Award.

Owner may consider the qualifications and experience of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations proposed for those portions of the Work for which the identity of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations must be submitted as provided in the Supplementary Conditions. Owner also may consider the operating costs, maintenance requirements, performance data, and guarantees of major items of materials and equipment proposed for incorporation in the Work when such data is required to be submitted prior to the Notice of Award.

Owner may conduct such investigations as Owner deems necessary to assist in the evaluation of any Bid and to establish the responsibility, qualifications, and financial ability of Bidders, proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations to perform and furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents to Owner's satisfaction within the prescribed time.

If the Contract is to be awarded, it will be awarded to the lowest Bidder whose evaluation by Owner indicates to Owner that the award will be in the best interests of Owner. If the Contract is to be awarded, Owner will give the Successful Bidder a Notice of Award within the number of days set forth in the Bid Form. The evaluation of Suppliers' or manufacturers' data submitted with the Bid, or submitted upon request prior to the Notice of Award, will include consideration of the following:

- Owner-required inventory of spare parts.
- Building design changes which would be required to accommodate the proposed materials and equipment.
- Installation requirements and related engineering, training, and operating costs.
- Experience and performance record of the Supplier or the manufacturer.
- Maintenance and frequency of inspections required to assure reliable performance of the equipment.
- Suppliers' or manufacturers' service facilities and availability of qualified field service personnel.
- Efficiency and related operating expense during the anticipated useful life of the equipment.

17. CONTRACT SECURITY. The General Conditions set forth Owner's requirements as to Performance and Payment Bonds (required). These Bonds shall be delivered to Owner with the executed Agreement.

18. SIGNING OF AGREEMENT. When Owner gives a Notice of Award to the Successful Bidder, it will be accompanied by two unsigned counterparts of the Agreement with all other written Contract Documents attached. Within the number of days set forth in the Bid Form, the Successful Bidder shall sign, leaving the dates blank, and deliver the required number of counterparts of the Agreement and attached documents to Owner with the required Bonds and power of attorney. Within 30 days thereafter, Owner shall execute all copies of the Agreement and other Contract Documents submitted by Contractor (Successful Bidder); shall insert the date of contract on the Agreement, Bonds, and power of attorney; and shall distribute signed copies as stipulated in the Agreement.

Should the Owner not execute the Contract within the period specified, the Successful Bidder may, by written notice, withdraw his signed Contract. Such notice or withdrawal shall be effective upon receipt of the notice by the Owner.

19. SALES AND USE TAXES. Provisions for sales and use taxes, if any, are set forth in the Supplementary Conditions.

20. RETAINAGE. Provisions concerning retainage are set forth in the Agreement.

21. LAWS AND REGULATIONS. Modifications, if any, to the General Conditions concerning Laws and Regulations are set forth in the Supplementary Conditions. Additional provisions, if any, concerning Laws and Regulations are set forth in the Agreement.

21.01. Collusive Bidding. In accordance with Section 112(c) of Title 23 USC, and G.S. 75-5(b)(7) of the State of North Carolina, the Contractor (Bidder), by submission and execution of this bid or Bid, certifies

that he has not entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action in restraint of free competitive bidding or quoting in connection with his Bid on this project.

End of Section

DEBARRED FIRMS CERTIFICATION FORM

2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station

Project No. 2024-041

The undersigned hereby certifies that the firm of_____has not been suspended by the State of North Carolina or any agency or department thereof for conviction or indictment or any of the offenses enumerated in G.S. 133-27 nor will award subcontracts of any tier to firms that have been suspended for conviction or indictment of any of the offenses enumerated in G.S. 133-27.

_____
Name of Firm

ATTEST_____ (SEAL)

_____
Signature of Authorized Official

_____
Title

Sworn and subscribed before me this

_____day of_____, 20_

_____
Notary Public

EXHIBIT A – BID FORM

PROJECT IDENTIFICATION:
2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station

Project No. 2024-041

THIS BID IS SUBMITTED TO:

The City of Concord
Crystal Allman
P.O. Box 308
635 Alfred Brown Jr Court SW
Concord, North Carolina 28026-0308

1. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees, if this Bid is accepted, to enter into an agreement with Owner in the form included in the Contract Documents to perform and furnish all Work as specified or indicated in the Contract Documents within the specified time and for the amount indicated in this Bid and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.

2. Bidder accepts all of the terms and conditions of the Invitation to Bid and the Instructions to Bid, including without limitation those dealing with the disposition of the Bid security (if security is required by the City Manager). This Bid will remain subject to acceptance for 60 days after the day designated for reception of Bids. Bidder will sign and submit the Agreement with the Bonds and other documents required by the Bid Documents within 10 days after the date of Owner's Notice of Award.

3. In submitting this Bid, Bidder represents that:

   a. Bidder has examined copies of all the Bid Documents and of the following Addenda (receipt of all which is hereby acknowledged):

      No._____ Dated_____

      No._____ Dated_____

      No._____ Dated_____

      No._____ Dated_____

      No._____ Dated_____

   b. Bidder has visited the site and become familiar with and satisfied itself as to the general, local, and site conditions that may affect cost, progress, performance, and furnishing of the Work.

   c. Bidder is familiar with and has satisfied itself as to all Federal, State, and Local Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, performance, and furnishing of Work.

   d. Bidder has carefully studied all reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the site and all drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the site (except underground facilities) which have provided by the owner and under the conditions normally used and identified in the Supplementary Conditions and Special Conditions as provided in Paragraph 4.2.1 of the General Conditions. Bidder accepts the determination set forth in the Supplementary Conditions and Special Conditions of the extent of the "technical data" contained in such reports and drawings upon which Bidder is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraph 4.2 of the General Conditions. Bidder acknowledges that such reports and drawings are not Contract Documents and may not be complete for Bidder’s purposes. Bidder

acknowledges that Owner and Engineer do not assume responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of information and data shown or indicated in the Bid Documents with respect to underground facilities at or contiguous to the site. Bidder has obtained and carefully studied (or assumes responsibility for having done so) all such additional or supplementary examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data concerning conditions (surface, subsurface, and underground facilities) at or contiguous to the site or otherwise which may affect cost, progress, performance, or furnishing of the Work or which relate to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder and safety precautions and programs incident thereto. Bidder does not consider that any additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of this Bid for performance and furnishing of the Work in accordance with the time, price, and other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.

e. Bidder is aware of the general nature of Work to be performed by Owner and others at the site that relates to Work for which this Bid is submitted as indicated in the Contract Documents.

f. Bidder has correlated the information known to Bidder, information and observations obtained from visits to the site, reports and drawings identified in the Contract Documents, and all additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, and data with the Contract Documents.

g. Bidder has given Engineer written and verbal notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Contract Documents and the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder, and the Contract Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performing and furnishing the Work for which this Bid is submitted.

h. This Bid is genuine and not made in the interest of or on behalf of any undisclosed person, firm, or corporation and is not submitted in conformity with any agreement or rules of any group, association, organization, or corporation; Bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other Bidder to submit a false or sham Bid Bidder has not solicited or induced any person, firm, or corporation to refrain from quoting; and Bidder has not sought by collusion to obtain for itself any advantage over any other Bidder or over Owner.

4. Bidder will complete the Work for the following prices. Quantities indicated are estimated and not guaranteed; they are solely for comparing Bids and establishing the initial Contract Price. Final payment will be based on actual quantities.

Basis of Bid—Lump Sum Bid and Unit Prices

Lump Sum Bids

Bidder will complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents for the following lump sum (stipulated) price(s), together with any unit prices indicated below:

Lump Sum Price (Sectional Lump Sum Bids)

Bid Item 1: Lump Sum Bid Price for all work indicated in Contract Documents exclusive of work explicitly provided by the control system integration subcontractor included in Bid Item 2.	$

All specified cash allowance(s) are included in the price(s) set forth below and have been computed in accordance with the General Conditions.

Bid Item 2[A]: Allowance for control system integration	$221,125.00

A – Bid Item 2 shall be used only to pay amounts invoice by the Control Systems Integrator for their pre-negotiated scope of supply and services included in Appendix C. The Contractor shall be responsible for all work and associated costs not included in the Control Systems Integrator's scope. The Contractor's portion of the work shall be included in Bid Item 1. Contractor's pay applications requesting payment from Bid Item 2 shall be accompanied by the Control Systems Integrator's invoice(s).

Total Bid Price (Lump Sums and Allowances)

Total Bid Price (Total of all Lump Sums and Allowances) in numbers:
$
Total Bid Price (Total of all Lump Sums and Allowances) in words:

Time of Completion

Bidder agrees that the Work will be substantially complete within 525 calendar days after the Commencement Date, as defined in the Agreement, and will be completed and ready for final payment in accordance with the General Conditions within 555 calendar days after the Commencement Date.

Bidder accepts the provisions of the Agreement as to liquidated damages.

COMMUNICATIONS

Communications concerning this Bid shall be sent to Owner at the address listed in the Bid Advertisement / Invitation to Bid.

The terms used in this Bid, which are defined in the General Conditions (Section II), have the meanings assigned to them in the General Conditions.

SIGNATURE OF BIDDER: _____

Contractor's License Number _____

License Expiration Date_____

If an Individual

By_____
(signature of individual)

doing business as _____

Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE

If a Partnership

By_____
(firm name)

_____
(signature of general partner)

Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE

If a Corporation

By_____
(corporation name)

By_____
(signature of authorized person) (title)_____

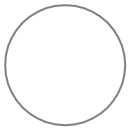
Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE _____

(Seal)



If a Joint Venture (Other party must sign below.)

By (name)_____

Contractor's License Number_____

License Expiration Date_____

If an Individual

By_____
(signature of individual)

doing business as _____

Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE

If a Partnership

By_____
(firm name)

_____
(signature of general partner)

Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE _____

If a Corporation

By_____
(corporation name)

By_____
(signature of authorized person) (title)_____

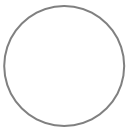
Business address _____

Phone No. _____

Date_____, 20_____

ATTEST_____TITLE _____

(Seal)



Bidder Submittal Checklist

- ☐ Bid bond in the amount of 5% of the bid, or other bid security as allowed in the Instructions to Bidders. **BID BOND/SECURITY MUST BE PROVIDED IN A SEPARATE ENVELOPE FROM THE BID FORM AND OTHER REQUIRED DOCUMENTS.**
- ☐ Bid Form
- ☐ Debarred Firm Certification Form
- ☐ List of Subcontractors as required by NCGS 143-128

Subcontractor Name and Address	**Description of Work/Materials**
	Plumbing (Required by NC General Statute 143-128)
	HVAC (Required by NC General Statute 143-128)
	Electrical (Required by NC General Statute 143-128)
	General (Required by NC General Statute 143-128)
	Paving
	Hauling
	Landscaping
	Demolition
	Site Work
	Concrete
	Roofing
	Painting
	Other
	Other

Subcontractor Name and Address	**Description of Work/Materials**
	Other
	Other
	Other
	Other
	Other
	Other
	Other

EXHIBIT B – STANDARD FORM OF PERFORMANCE BOND

Date of Execution of this Bond _____

Name and Address of
Principal (Contractor) _____
_____
_____

Name and Address
of Surety _____
_____
_____

Name and Address of
Contracting Body _____
_____
_____

Amount of Bond _____
_____

Contract That certain contract by and between the Principal and the
Contracting Body above named dated_____
for _____
_____

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, the PRINCIPAL and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the above-named Contracting Body, hereinafter called the Contracting Body, in the penal sum of the amount stated above for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGAITON IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal entered into a certain contract with the Contracting Body, identified as shown above and hereto attached;

NOW THEREFORE, if the Principal shall well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of said contract during the original term of said contract and any extensions thereof that may be granted by the Contracting Body, with or without notice to the Surety, and during the life of any guaranty required under the contract, and shall also well and truly perform and fulfill all the undertakings, covenants, terms, conditions, and agreements of any and all duly authorized modifications of the contract that may hereafter be made, notice of which modifications to the Surety being hereby waived, then, this obligation to be void; otherwise, to remain in full force and virtue.

THIS PERFORMANCE BOND is made and given pursuant to the requirements and provisions of Section 129 of Chapter 143 of the General Statutes of North Carolina and pursuant to Article 3 of Chapter 44-A of the General Statutes of North Carolina, and each and every provision set forth and contained in Section 129 of Chapter 143 and in Article 3 of Chapter 44-A of the General Statutes of North Carolina is incorporated herein, made a part hereof, and deemed to be conclusively written into this Bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above-bounden parties have executed this instrument under their several seals as of the date indicated above, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned and representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

WITNESS:

_____

Principal (Name of individual and trade name, partnership, corporation, or joint venture)

_____

(Proprietorship or Partnership)

Printed Name_____ BY_____(SEAL)

Printed Name_____

TITLE _____

(Owner, Partner, Office held in corporation, joint venture)

ATTEST: (Corporation) **(Corporate Seal of Principal)**

BY_____

Printed Name_____

TITLE_____

(Corporation Secretary or Assistant Secretary Only)

_____

Surety (Name of Surety Company)

WITNESS:

BY_____

Printed Name_____

_____ TITLE_____Attorney in Fact_____

(Corporate Seal of Surety)

_____

(Address of Attorney in Fact)

EXHIBIT C – SPECIAL PROVISIONS

NO SPECIAL PROVISIONS.

NOTICE OF AWARD

TO:

FROM: City of Concord City Council (OWNER)
P.O. Box 308
35 Cabarrus Ave. W
Concord, North Carolina 28026-0308

PROJECT: **2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station**

Project No. 2024-041

You are hereby notified that the bid submitted by you for the above-named project in response to the City of Concord's Invitation to Bid, dated_____in the amount of

_____and_____/100 DOLLARS

($_____) has been accepted.

You are hereby required to execute the formal AGREEMENT with the City of Concord City Council and to furnish any and all Contractor's Bond(s), Certificate of Insurance and Power of Attorney(s) along with other documents pertaining to the work as designated by the City of Concord.

If you fail to execute said AGREEMENT and to furnish this and any other required documents pertaining to the work within ten (10) days from the date of delivery of this NOTICE OF AWARD, said Owner will be entitled to consider all your rights arising out of the Owner's acceptance of your bid as abandoned and to award the work covered by your proposal to another, or to re-bid the work or otherwise dispose thereof as the Owner may see fit.

Dated this the_____day of_____, 20_____

City of Concord, North Carolina

By:

Title:

CONTRACTOR

By:

Title:

ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICE OF AWARD

Receipt of the above NOTICE OF AWARD is hereby acknowledged this the_____day of_____, 20 _____.

NOTICE TO PROCEED

TO:

FROM: City of Concord City Council (OWNER)
P.O. Box 308
35 Cabarrus Ave. W
Concord, North Carolina 28026-0308

PROJECT: **2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station**

Project No. 2024-041

Contract Amount:_____and____/100 DOLLARS

($_____).

You are hereby notified to commence work on or before the_____day of_____, 20_, pending acceptance of your Certificate of Insurance and any other required documents, and are to fully complete the work by the_____day of _____, 20_.

Your project final completion date is therefore the_____day of_____, 20__, and as set forth in the above named project's schedule unless an extension is granted by the City in writing.

City of Concord, North Carolina

By: _____

Title:

Dated this the_____day of_____, 20__.

STANDARD FORM OF CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

This contract (together with all exhibits and valid amendments, the "Agreement" or the "Contract") is made and entered into as of the____day of_____, 20_, by the City of CONCORD ("City") and _____("Contractor"), ( ) a corporation, ( ) a professional corporation, ( ) a professional association, ( ) a limited partnership, ( ) a sole proprietorship, or ( ) a general partnership; organized and existing under the laws of the State of_____.

Sec. 1. Background and Purpose. The 2024-041 Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station project consists of the construction of a new 6-mgd pump station which includes a new pump building, approximately 1,250 linear feet of 24", 20", 16", 12", 10" and 8" ductile iron pipe, fittings, and valves, installation of a new generator set, placement of new gravel drive and sidewalk for access to the new pump station, a precast flow meter vault, and two (2) air release valve in side precast concrete manholes. The foregoing description is not all-inclusive of the work to be performed under the Contract.

Sec. 2. Services and Scope to be Performed. The Contractor shall provide the services at the charges set forth either in this paragraph or in Exhibit "A". Additional exhibits may be used to further define this Agreement when the Contractor and City so agree. Any additional exhibits shall be designated as exhibits to the Agreement with capitalized, sequential letters of the alphabet, shall be attached hereto and incorporated herein by reference as if the same were fully recited, and shall become terms of this Agreement upon execution by both parties.

In this Contract, "services" means the services that the Contractor is required to perform pursuant to this Contract and all of the Contractor's duties to the City that arise out of this Contract. Any amendments, corrections, or change orders by either party must be made in writing signed in the same manner as the original. (This form may be used for amendments and change orders.) The City reserves the right to refuse payment for any work outside that authorized herein or pursuant to a duly approved amendment or change order.

Sec. 3. Complete Work without Extra Cost. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall obtain and provide, without additional cost to the City, all labor, materials, equipment, transportation, facilities, services, permits, and licenses necessary to perform the Work.

Sec. 4. Compensation. The City shall pay the Contractor for the Work as described in this paragraph below OR as described in Exhibit "A" attached. In the event of a conflict, the provisions of this paragraph shall control. Any additional expenses or charges shall only be paid after both the City and the Contractor agree to and execute a written change order. The City shall not be obligated to pay the Contractor any fees, payments, expenses or compensation other than those authorized in this Contract or in a duly-approved change order. All payments shall be deemed inclusive of tax and other obligations.

Sec. 4a. Retainage. The City shall withhold no retainage on Contracts having a "total project cost" of less than $100,000.00. The City may withhold retainage on contracts having a total project cost between $100,000 and $200,000. The City shall withhold retainage on contracts whose total project cost exceeds $300,000. When withheld, retainage shall equal no more than five percent of each progress payment. When the project is fifty per cent complete, the City shall not retain anything from future project payments provided that (i) the surety concurs in writing, (ii) the Contractor continues to perform satisfactorily, (iii) any non-conforming work identified in writing by the architect, engineer(s) or City has been corrected by the Contractor and accepted by the architect, engineer(s) or City. However, if the City determines that the Contractor's performance is unsatisfactory, the City may withhold up to five percent retainage from each project payment. The City may withhold additional amounts above five percent for unsatisfactory job progress, defective construction not remedied, disputed work, third party claims filed against the owner or reasonable evidence that a third-party claim will be filed.

Definitions:

"Total Project Cost": Total value of the Contract and any approved change orders or amendments.

"Project is Fifty Percent Complete": When the Contractor's validly-issued gross project invoices (excluding the value of the materials stored off-site) equal or exceed fifty percent of the value of the Contract, except that the value

of materials stored on-site shall not exceed twenty percent of the Contractor's gross project invoices for the purpose of determining whether the project is fifty percent complete.

Sec. 5. Term. The Contractor shall commence work within **ten (10)** days of the date of its receipt of written Notice to Proceed from the City. The date that is **ten (10)** days from the date of the Contractor's receipt of the Notice to Proceed shall be the "Commencement Date." All work as set forth in the Scope of Services in Exhibit "A" shall be Substantially Complete within **five hundred twenty-five (525) calendar days** and completed within **five hundred fifty-five (555)** calendar days of the Commencement Date. The date that is **five hundred fifty-five (555)** calendar days from the Commencement Date shall be the "Final Completion Date." Time is of the essence with regard to this Project. If Contractor's obligations are not completed by the Final Completion Date, the City reserves the right to nullify this Agreement, order the Contractor to immediately cease all work under this Agreement and vacate the premises, and to seek professional services equivalent to those outlined in Exhibit "A." The Contractor shall be held accountable for all damages incurred by the City as a consequence of the missed Final Completion Date. The exercise of any of these rights by the City shall not be interpreted to prejudice any other rights the City may have under this Agreement or in law or equity. This Contract shall not be automatically extended unless agreed to in writing by the City or as provided in Exhibit "A".

Sec. 5a. Liquidated Damages

Contractor and Owner recognize that time is of the essence as stated in Sec. 5 above and that Owner will suffer financial and other losses if the Work is not completed within the Contract Times, as duly modified. The parties also recognize the delays, expense, and difficulties involved in proving, in a legal or arbitration proceeding, the actual loss suffered by Owner if the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, Owner and Contractor agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty):

> Substantial Completion: Contractor shall pay Owner **$1000** for each day that expires after the time (as duly adjusted pursuant to the Contract) specified above for Substantial Completion, until the Work is substantially complete.
>
> Completion of Remaining Work: After Substantial Completion, if Contractor shall neglect, refuse, or fail to complete the remaining Work within the Contract Times (as duly adjusted pursuant to the Contract) for completion and readiness for final payment, Contractor shall pay Owner **$250** for each day that expires after such time until the Work is completed and ready for final payment.
>
> Liquidated damages for failing to timely attain Substantial Completion, and final completion are not additive, and will not be imposed concurrently.

Sec. 6. Contractor's Billings to City. Payments will be made in accordance with the schedule found in this section below OR attached at Exhibit "A". Contractor shall submit an original pay request (invoice) to the City Purchasing Agent by the first of each month in order to expedite payment. Upon receipt of the request the City Purchasing Agent shall verify the amounts and if correct forward the request to the Accounts Receivable Division of the Finance Dept. Final payment on the Contract shall be made in 45 days, except in the case of retainage. Within 60 days after the submission of the final pay request, the City (with the written consent of the surety) shall release to the Contractor all retainage payments IF the City receives a certificate of substantial completion from the architect, engineer or designer-in-charge of the project OR the City receives beneficial occupancy and use of the project. In either case, the City may retain up to 2.5 times the estimated value of the work to be completed or corrected.

Sec. 7. Insurance. Contractor shall maintain and cause all sub-contractors to maintain insurance policies at all times with minimum limits as follows:

Coverage	Minimum Limits

Workers' Compensation	$500,000 each accident, $500,000 bodily injury by disease each employee, $500,000 bodily injury by disease policy limit
General Liability	$1,000,000 per occurrence regardless of the contract size
Automobile Liability	$1,000,000 per occurrence regardless of the contract size
Umbrella	☐ $1,000,000 per occurrence if contract does not exceed 180 days; otherwise,
	☐ $2,000,000 per occurrence

Contractor shall provide a Certificate of Insurance to the City listing the City as an additional insured. Such Certificate shall be in a form acceptable to the City.

Sec. 8. <u>Documentation Requirements:</u>

A. Contractor shall provide the City with a **Certificate of Insurance** for review prior to the issuance of any contract or Purchase Order. Certificates of insurance must be submitted on an Acord Form (revised 2010/05), and the City must be named as additional insured on all lines of coverage, except for Professional liability and Workers' Compensation. Contractor shall provide a Certificate of Insurance to the City listing the City and Engineer as additional insured as required by written contract. The General Liability, Automobile Liability and Workers Compensation policies include a Waiver of Subrogation in favor of the City of Concord. The Umbrella Policy shall follow the form of the General Liability and Automobile Liability Policies. All Certificates of Insurance will require written notice by the insurer or Contractor's agent in the event of cancellation, reduction or other modifications of coverage by the insurer. Such notice shall be not less than 30 days for nonrenewal by the insurer, not less than 10 days for cancellation due to nonpayment of the premium and as soon as possible for all other types of modifications. In addition to the notice requirement above, Contractor shall provide the City with written notice of cancellation, reduction, or other modification of coverage of insurance whether instigated by the insurer or by the Contractor immediately upon Contractor's receipt of knowledge of such modifications. Upon failure of the Contractor to provide such notice, Contractor assumes sole responsibility for all loses incurred by the City for which insurance would have provided coverage. The insurance certificate shall be for the insured period in which the initial contract period begins and shall be renewed by the Contractor for each subsequent renewal period of the insurance for so long as the contract remains in effect.

The City and Engineer shall be named as an **additional insured** on all policies except Workers' Compensation and professional liability and it is required that coverage be placed with "A" rated insurance companies acceptable to the City. Statement should read, "City of Concord is added as an additional insured as evidenced by an endorsement attached to this certificate." Failure to maintain the required insurance in force may be cause for termination of this Agreement. In the event that the Contractor fails to maintain and keep in force the insurance herein required, the City has the right to cancel and terminate the Agreement without notice.

Without limiting the coverage required pursuant to this Agreement, Contractor shall provide Workers' Compensation insurance if it employs three or more employees. The Worker's Compensation insurance shall have the North Carolina mandated statutory limits. Contractor shall fully comply with all applicable laws including, but not limited to, North Carolina's Workers' Compensation Act (Chapter 97 of the NC General Statutes).

B. Contractor shall provide a completed W-9 form to the City prior to execution by the City of this Agreement.

Sec. 9. <u>Performance of Work by Contractor.</u>

(a) The Contractor warrants that all work performed under this Contract conforms to the Contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, or design furnished, or workmanship performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier. This warranty shall continue for a period of 1 year from the date of issuance by the City of written final completion of the work.

(b) The Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any damage to City - owned or controlled real or personal property, when that damage is the result of--

(1) The Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or

(2) Any defect of equipment, material, workmanship, or delegated design furnished.

(c) The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for 1 year from the date of repair or replacement.

(d) The City shall notify the Contractor, in writing, within a reasonable time, not to exceed 30 days, after the discovery of any failure, defect, or damage.

(e) If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within a reasonable time, not to exceed 30 days unless otherwise agreed in writing and signed by the City Manager or his designee, after receipt of notice, the City shall have the right to replace repair, or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor s expense.

(f) With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this Contract, the Contractor shall--

(1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice,

(2) Require all warranties to be executed, in writing, for the benefit of the City, if directed to do so by the City; and

(3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the City, if directed to do so by the City

(g) In the event the Contractor's warranty has expired, the City may bring suit at its expense to enforce a subcontractor's, manufacturer's, or supplier's warranty.

(h) Unless a defect is caused by the negligence of the Contractor or subcontractor or supplier at any tier, the Contractor shall not be liable for the repair of any defects of material or design furnished by the City nor for the repair of any damage that results from any defect in City- furnished material or design.

Sec. 10. Performance of Work by City. If the Contractor fails to perform the Work in accordance with the schedule referred to in Exhibit "A", the City may, in its discretion, perform or cause to be performed some or all of the Work, and doing so shall not waive any of the City's rights and remedies. Before doing so, the City shall give the Contractor reasonable notice of its intention. The Contractor shall reimburse the City for all costs incurred by the City in exercising its right to perform or cause to be performed some or all of the Work pursuant to this section.

Sec. 11. Attachments. Additional exhibits may be used to further define this Agreement when the Contractor and City so agree. Any additional exhibits shall be designated as exhibits to the Agreement with capitalized, sequential letters of the alphabet, shall be attached hereto and incorporated herein by reference as if the same were fully recited, and shall become terms of this Agreement upon execution by both parties.

The following attachments are made a part of this Contract and incorporated herein by reference:

(a) Exhibit "A" – Bid Form
(b) Exhibit "B" – Standard Form of Performance Bond
(c) Exhibit "C" – Special Provisions
(d) Exhibit "D" – Contractor must execute the Affidavit attached as Exhibit "D", attesting to compliance with state and federal laws related to E-Verify. ***This requirement only applies to contracts that fall within the formal bidding range.**

(e) Exhibit "E" – Tax Form(s)
(f) Exhibit "F" – Certificate of Insurance
(g) Exhibit "G" – General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions
(h) Exhibit "H" – Construction Documents Project Manual
(i) Exhibit "I" – Drawings

In case of conflict between an attachment and the text of this contract excluding the attachment, the text of this contract shall control. Any attachment that materially alters the standard terms contained herein must be reviewed by the City Attorney and approved by the City in writing.

Sec. 12. Notice. (a) All notices and other communications required or permitted by this Contract shall be in writing and shall be given either by personal delivery, fax, or certified United States mail, return receipt requested, addressed as follows:

To the City:
Kevin Plemmons, PE
Deputy Director of Water Resources
City of Concord
P.O. Box 308
Concord, NC 28026
Fax Number: (704) 786-4521

VaLerie Kolczynski, Esq.
City Attorney
City of Concord
PO Box 308
Concord, NC 28026
Fax Number: (704) 784-1791

To the Contractor:

(b) **Change of Address, Date Notice Deemed Given**: A change of address, fax number, or person to receive notice may be made by either party by notice given to the other party. Any notice or other communication under this Contract shall be deemed given at the time of actual delivery, if it is personally delivered or sent by fax. If the notice or other communication is sent by US Mail, it shall be deemed given upon the third calendar day following the day on which such notice or other communication is deposited with the US Postal Service or upon actual delivery, whichever first occurs.

Sec. 13. Indemnification. To the maximum extent allowed by law, the Contractor shall defend, indemnify, and save harmless the City of Concord, its agents, officers, and employees, and the Engineer, from and against all charges that arise in any manner from, in connection with, or out of this Contract as a result of the acts or omissions of the Contractor or subcontractors or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable except for damage or injury caused solely by the negligence of the City its agents, officers, or employees. In performing its duties under this section, the Contractor shall at its sole expense defend the City of Concord, its agents, officers, and employees with legal counsel reasonably acceptable to City. As used in this subsection – "Charges" means claims, judgments, costs, damages, losses, demands, liabilities, duties, obligations, fines, penalties, royalties, settlements, expenses, interest, reasonable attorney's fees, and amounts for alleged violations of sedimentation pollution, erosion control, pollution, or other environmental laws, regulations, ordinances, rules, or orders. Nothing in this section shall affect any warranties in favor of the City that are otherwise provided in or arise out of this Contract. This section is in addition to and shall be construed separately from any other indemnification provisions that may be in this Contract. This section shall remain in force despite termination of this Contract (whether by expiration of the term or otherwise) and termination of the services of the Contract under this Contract.

Sec. 14. Corporate Status. If the Contractor is dissolved or suspended and the Contractor does not notify the City of such dissolution within three (3) business days from date of dissolution or suspension, and/or the corporate status is not reinstated within thirty (30) days, this Contract, at the sole option of the City and without prejudice to City's other remedies, shall be declared null and void or the Contractor shall execute a new contract showing the Contractor's correct legal entity.

Sec. 15. Miscellaneous.

(a) Choice of Law and Forum. This Contract shall be deemed made in Cabarrus County, North Carolina. This Contract shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of North Carolina. The exclusive forum and venue for all actions arising out of this Contract shall be the appropriate division of the North Carolina General Court of Justice, in Cabarrus County. Such actions shall neither be commenced in nor removed to federal

court. This section shall not apply to subsequent actions to enforce a judgment entered in actions heard pursuant to this section.

(b) Waiver. No action or failure to act by the City shall constitute a waiver of any of its rights or remedies that arise out this Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

(c) Performance of Government Functions. Nothing contained in this Contract shall be deemed or construed so as to in any way estop, limit, or impair the City from exercising or performing any regulatory, policing, legislative, governmental, or other powers or functions.

(d) Severability. If any provision of this Contract shall be unenforceable, the remainder of this Contract shall be enforceable to the extent permitted by law.

(e) Assignment, Successors and Assigns. Without the City's written consent, the Contractor shall not assign (which includes to delegate) any of its rights (including the right to payment) or duties that arise out this Contract. Unless the City otherwise agrees in writing, the Contractor and all assigns shall be subject to all of the City's defenses and shall be liable for all of the Contractor's duties that arise out of this Contract and all of the City's claims that arise out of this Contract. Without granting the Contractor the right to assign, it is agreed that the duties of the Contractor that arise out of this Contract shall be binding upon it and its heirs, personal representatives, successors, and assigns.

(f) Compliance with Law. In performing all of the Work, the Contractor shall comply with all applicable law. Without limitation, Contractor shall comply with the requirements of Article 2, Chapter 64 (Verification of Work Authorization) of the North Carolina General Statutes relating to E-Verify. Further, if Contractor utilizes a subcontractor, Contractor shall require the subcontractor to comply with the requirements of Article 2 of Chapter 64 of the General Statutes. Pursuant to the requirements of the Iran Divestment Act, N.C.G.S. § 143C-6A-1, et. seq., Contractor certifies that that as of the Effective Date of this Agreement, Contractor is not on the Final Divestment List as created by the State Treasurer in compliance with N.C.G.S. § 143-6A-4 and located at www.nctreasurer.com/Iran. Furthermore, Contractor agrees that it will not enter into any subcontracts for the performance of this Agreement with any entity on the Final Divestment List.

(g) City Policy. THE CITY OPPOSES DISCRIMINATION ON THE BASIS OF RACE AND SEX AND URGES ALL OF ITS CONTRACTORS TO PROVIDE A FAIR OPPORTUNITY FOR MINORITIES AND WOMEN TO PARTICIPATE IN THEIR WORK FORCE AND AS SUBCONTRACTORS AND VENDORS UNDER CITY CONTRACTS.

(h) EEO Provisions. During the performance of this Contract the Contractor agrees as follows: (1) The Contractor shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, political affiliation or belief, age, or disability. The Contractor shall take affirmative action to insure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated equally during employment, without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, political affiliation or belief, age, or disability. The Contractor shall post in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth these EEO provisions. (2) The Contractor in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, political affiliation or belief, age, or disability.

(i) No Third Party Right Created. This Contract is intended for the benefit of the City and the Contractor and not any other person.

(j) Principles of Interpretation. In this Contract, unless the context requires otherwise the singular includes the plural and the plural the singular. The pronouns "it" and "its" include the masculine and feminine. Reference to statutes or regulations include all statutory or regulatory provisions consolidating, amending, or replacing the statute or regulation. References to contracts and agreements shall be deemed to include all amendments to them. The word "person" includes natural persons, firms, companies associations, partnerships, trusts, corporations, governmental agencies and units, and any other legal entities.

(k) Modifications, Entire Agreement. A modification of this Contract is not valid unless signed by both parties and otherwise in accordance with requirements of law. Further, a modification is not enforceable against the City unless the City Manager or other duly authorized official signs it for the City. This Contract contains the entire agreement between the parties pertaining to the subject matter of this Contract. With respect to that subject matter, there are no promises, agreements, conditions, inducements, warranties, or understandings, written or oral, expressed or implied, between the parties, other than as set forth or referenced in this Contract.

(l) Corporate Seal. If a corporate seal is included by any party to this Contract, it is only for authentication purposes. This Contract is not signed under seal.

(m) No Employment Relationship. For all matters relating to this Agreement, Contractor shall be deemed an Independent Contractor. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed in such a manner as to create an employee-employer relationship between City and Contractor.

(The following section applies to construction contracts only if amount is over $50,000)

Sec. 16. Bonding. Both performance and payment bonds for the full amount of this Contract are required to be attached. Instead of bonds, you may submit a deposit of money, certified check or government securities for the full amount of the Contract. The performance bond shall have a value equal to 100% of this Contract. This bond shall be conditioned upon faithful performance of the Contract in accordance with the plans, specifications and conditions of the Contract. The performance bond shall be solely for the protection of the City. The payment bond shall be in an amount equal to 100% of the Contract, and conditioned upon the prompt payment for all labor or materials for which a contractor or subcontractor is liable. The payment bond shall be solely for the protection of the persons furnishing materials or performance labor for which a contractor or subcontractor is liable.

Sec. 17. Dispute Resolution. It is understood and agreed that NCGS 143-128(f1-g) requires that disputes arising under an agreement for the erection, construction, alteration or repair of a building be subject to a dispute resolution process specified by the City. The amount in controversy shall be at least $15,000.00 before this dispute resolution procedure may be used. In compliance with this statutory provision, the City specifies this Section as the dispute resolution process to be used on this Project. It is further understood and agreed that this dispute resolution process is based on non-binding mediation and will only be effective to the extent that the Parties to any mediated dispute participate in the mediation in good faith. It is also understood and agreed that the City is under no obligation under any circumstance to secure or enforce the participation of any other Party in the mediation of any dispute subject to this Section and NCGS 143-128(f1-g).

This Section 17 does not apply to:

(a) The purchase and erection of prefabricated or relocatable buildings or portions of such buildings, except that portion of the work that must be performed at the construction site; or
(b) The erection, construction alteration or repair of a building when the cost of such building is $300,000 or less.

Sec. 17.1 Any dispute arising between or among the Parties listed in Section 17.3 that arises from an agreement to construct the Project, including without limitation a breach of such agreement, shall be subject to non-binding mediation administered by the American Arbitration Association under its Construction Industry Mediation Rules ("Rules"), except as otherwise expressly set forth in this Section. To the extent any provision of the Rules is inconsistent with the provisions of this Section, the provisions of this Section shall control. The mediation provided in this Section shall be used pursuant to this Agreement and NCGS 143-128(f1-g) and is in lieu of any dispute resolution process adopted by the North Carolina State Building Commission, which process shall not apply to this Project.

Sec. 17.2 For purposes of this Section the following definitions shall apply:

a. *Agreement to construct the Project* means an agreement to construct the Project that is subject to the requirements of NCGS 143-128 and does not include any agreement related to the Project that is not subject to said statute.

b. *Construct* or *construction* refers to and includes the erection, construction, alteration or repair of the Project.

c. *Party* or *Parties* refers to the parties listed in Section 16.4.

d. *Project* means the building to be erected, constructed, altered or repaired pursuant to this Agreement.

Sec. 17.3 The City and any Party contracting with the City or with any first-tier or lower-tier subcontractor for the construction of the Project agree to participate in good faith in any mediation of a dispute subject to this Section and NCGS 143-128(f1-g), including without limitation the following Parties (if any): architect(s), engineer(s), surveyor(s), construction manager, construction manager at risk, prime contractor(s), surety(ies), subcontractor(s), and supplier(s).

Sec. 17.4 In order to facilitate compliance with NCGS 143-128(f1-g), the Contractor and all other Parties shall include this Section 17 in every agreement to which it (any of them) is a Party for the construction of the Project without variation or exception. Failure to do so will constitute a breach of this Agreement, and the Contractor or other Party failing to include this Section in any agreement required by this Section shall indemnify and hold harmless the remaining Parties from and against any and all claims, including without limitation reasonable attorney fees and other costs of litigation, arising in any manner from such breach. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section, it is expressly understood and agreed that the Parties are intended to be and shall be third-party beneficiaries of the provisions of this Section and can enforce the provisions hereof.

Sec. 17.5 The following disputes are not subject to mediation: (i) a dispute seeking a non-monetary recovery; and (ii) a dispute seeking a monetary recovery of $15,000 or less.

Sec. 17.6 A dispute seeking the extension of any time limit set forth in an agreement to construct the Project shall be subject to mediation pursuant to this Section and NCGS 143-128(f1-g), but only if the damages which would be suffered by the Party seeking the extension would exceed $15,000 if the disputed extension is denied. To the extent that liquidated damages are set forth in such agreement as the measurement of damages for failure by such Party to meet such time limit, such liquidated damages shall be the exclusive standard for determining the amount of damages associated with such dispute.

Sec. 17.7 For purposes of this Section, a dispute is limited to the recovery of monetary damages from the same transaction or occurrence against a single Party or two or more Parties alleged to be liable jointly, severally or in the alternative. Two or more disputes may not be consolidated or otherwise combined without the consent of all Parties to such disputes.

Sec. 17.8 In addition to such matters as are required by the Rules, a request for mediation shall include the amount of the monetary relief requested.

Sec. 17.9 Prior to requesting mediation, a Party must form a good faith belief that it is entitled under applicable law to recover the monetary amount to be included in the request from one or more of the remaining Parties. Such belief must be based on a reasonable and prudent investigation into the dispute that is the subject of the request. The request for mediation must be based on such investigation and may not include any amount or the name of any remaining Party, unless supported by such investigation and good faith belief by the Party requesting the mediation.

Sec. 17.10 If a Party breaches any provision of Section 17.9, it shall indemnify and hold harmless all other Parties from any costs, including reasonable attorney fees and other costs of litigation, and damages incurred by such other Parties that arise from such breach.

Sec. 17.11 All expenses incurred by a Party to a dispute in preparing and presenting any claim or defense at the mediation shall be paid by the Party. Such expenses include without limitation preparation and production of witnesses and exhibits and attorney fees. All other expenses of the mediation, including filing fees and required traveling and other expenses of the mediator, shall be borne as follows: one half by the Party requesting the mediation, with the remaining parties paying equal shares of the remaining expenses and costs; provided that, if the City is named as a party to the mediation, the City shall pay at least one-third of the mediation expenses and costs

divided among the Parties. If more than one Party to a dispute requests a mediation, the mediation expenses and costs to be divided among the Parties shall be borne equally by the Parties to the dispute; provided that, if the City is named as a Party to the mediation, the City shall pay at least one-third of the mediation expenses and costs divided among the Parties.

Sec. 17.12 The mediation shall be held at a location agreeable to the mediator and all of the Parties; provided that, if no agreement can be reached, the mediation will be held at such location in Cabarrus County as the mediator shall determine.

Sec. 17.13 The provisions of this Section are subject to any other provision of this Agreement concerning the submission, documentation and/or proof of any claim or dispute. Such other provisions shall apply in full force and shall be satisfied as a condition precedent to mediation pursuant to this Section.

Sec. 17.14 The Parties understand and agree that mediation in accordance with this Section shall be a condition precedent to institution of any legal or equitable proceeding seeking monetary recovery based on any dispute that is subject to mediation pursuant to this Section.

Sec. 18. Breach. In the event of a violation of any material term of this Agreement, the non-violating party may terminate the Agreement upon written notice. Such notice shall state the violation with specificity and shall give ten (10) days to cure the violation. The cure period shall be measured as ten (10) days from the date of receipt of notice by the violating party, or, if the date is not known, then thirteen (13) days from the date the notice is placed in the United States Post. If the violation remains uncorrected at the end of the cure period, the Agreement shall be terminated without any further action by the non-violating party. Any remaining disputes shall be subject to the dispute resolution procedure set forth above, if applicable.

[Signature Page to Follow]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the City of Concord and the Contractor have caused this Contract to be executed by their respective duly authorized agents or officers.

CITY OF CONCORD:

By:_____
City Manager

Date:_____

ATTEST BY:

_____
City Clerk

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

_____
Attorney for the City of Concord

(Typed or Printed Legal Name of Contractor)

By:_____
Signature of President/Vice President/Manager/Partner

Printed Name: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

ATTEST:

BY: _____
Signature of Vice President, Secretary, or other officer

Printed Name: _____

Title _____

SEAL

APPROVAL BY CITY FINANCE OFFICER

This instrument has been pre-audited in the manner required by the Local Government Budget and Fiscal Control Act.

_____
Signature

EXHIBIT D – E-VERIFY

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA

AFFIDAVIT

COUNTY OF CABARRUS
****

I,_____(the individual signing below), being duly authorized by and on behalf of

_____(the legal name of the entity entering the contract, "Employer") after

first being duly sworn hereby swears or affirms as follows:

1. Employer understands that E-Verify is the federal E-Verify program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security and other federal agencies, or any successor or equivalent program used to verify the work authorization of newly hired employees pursuant to federal law in accordance with NCGS §64-26.

2. Employer understands that Employers Must Use E-Verify. Each employer (as such term is defined in NCGS § 64-25), after hiring an employee (as such term is defined in NCGS § 64-25) to work in the United States, shall verify the work authorization of the employee through E-Verify in accordance with NCGS§64-26(a). Employer attests that Employer is in compliance with the requirements of the federal and state laws relevant to E-verify.

3. Employer is a person, business entity, or other organization that transacts business in the State of North Carolina. Employer employs 25 or more employees in this State. (mark Yes or No)

a. YES_____, or b. NO_____.

4. Employer attests that all subcontractors employed by it as part of this contract comply with the requirements of E-Verify, and Employer will ensure compliance with E-Verify by any subcontractors subsequently hired by Employer as part of any contract with the City of Concord.

5. Employer shall have a continuing duty to inform the City of Concord of any changes to this sworn information.

This_____day of_____, 20_.

_____
Signature of Affiant
Print or Type Name: _____

State of North Carolina County of Cabarrus

Signed and sworn to (or affirmed) before me, this the _____

day of_____, 20___.

My Commission Expires:

_____
_____
Notary Public

(Affix Official/Notarial Seal)

EXHIBIT E – TAX FORMS

EXHIBIT F – CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE

4824-4465-9749, v. 1

City of Concord
Post Office Box 308
Concord, North Carolina 28026-0308

For City Use Only
Charge to PO #

Project Name	
Date Notice to Proceed	
Final Completion Date	
Days Remaining in Contract	
Percent Work Complete	
Percent Time Complete	
Percent Payment Complete	

APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT NO.
PERIOD FROM: TO:

CERTIFICATE OF THE CONTRACTOR

To the best of my knowledge and belief, I certify that this periodical estimate is correct and all work has been performed and materials supplied in full accordance with the terms and condtions of the contract documents between the undersigned contractor and the City of Concord.

GROSS AMOUNT OF PARTIAL PAYMENT		$
RETAINAGE AT 5.0000%	$	
PREVIOUS PAYMENTS	$	
LIQUIDATION DAMAGES 0.00 DAYS AT $0.00 PER DAY, $0.00 this period.	$	
OTHER DEDUCTIONS $0.00 this period.	$	
TOTAL DEDUCTIONS		$
NET AMOUNT DUE THIS ESTIMATE		$

Name of Contractor: Address:

Signed: _____ Title: _____ Date: _____

CERTIFICATE OF CONSTRUCTION ADMINISTRATOR/ENGINEER

I certify that I have verified this periodical estimate and that to best of my knowledge and belief, it is a true and correct statement of work performed and materials supplied under the contract.

Consultant Engineer: _____ Date: _____

Engineering Construction Manager: _____ Date: _____

APPROVED AND PAYMENT RECOMMENDED: CITY OF CONCORD

Signed: _____ Title: _____ Date: _____

PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND PAY REQUEST FORMS

As specified in the Construction Documents Project Manual, Division 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER FORM

CITY OF CONCORD
CONCORD, NORTH CAROLINA
CONTRACT CHANGE ORDER

Date: _____

Project Title: **Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station** **Project #: 2024-041**

Owner: **City of Concord** **Change Order No.**

To:

(CONTRACTOR)

Account No.

Purchase Order No.

You are hereby requested to make the following changes in this Contract to comply with the provisions of the attached and/or the original Contract Documents.

Item No.	Description of Changes	Additions	Deductions
		$0.00	**$0.00**

Original Contract Amount
Net Changes by Previous Change Orders
Net Changes this Change Order **$0.00**

New Contract Amount **$0.00**

The Contract Time will be_____by_____calendar days.
The Substantial Completion Date as of this Change Order is:
The Final Completion Date as of this Change Order is:
Accepted: **(Contractor)**
By: **Date:**

Accepted: **CITY OF CONCORD**
By: **Date:**

This instrument has been pre-audited in the manner required by Local Government Budget and Fiscal Control Act.

By: **Date:**

Finance Director

CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

SEE SPECIFICATION SECTION 01 77 19.10 FOR THE CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION FORM

FIELD ORDER FORM

SEE SECTION 01 26 00 FOR FIELD ORDER FORM

NC SALES TAX FORM

NORTH CAROLINA SALES TAX REPORT

OWNER: _____ CONTRACTOR: _____

PROJECT: _____ PURCHASE ORDER #: _____

TIME PERIOD: FROM: _____ TO: _____

DATE	VENDOR NAME	INVOICE #	TAXABLE ITEM SUBTOTAL	COUNTY PAID	STATE TAX AMOUNT	COUNTY TAX	TRANSIT TAX	TOTAL TAX PAID
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
					$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -
		TOTAL:	$ -		$ -	$ -	$ -	$ -

I certify that the above listed vendors were paid sales tax upon purchase of materials during the period covered by the Construction Estimate, the proeprty upon which such taxes were paid or will be used in the performance of this contract. No tax on purchases or rentals of tools and/or equipment is included in the above list. All of the materials became part of or is annexed to the building or structure being erected, altered, or repaired.

_____

Contractor or Subcontractor Name (Print)

Signature: _____

Name (Print): _____

Title: _____

SWORN AND SUBSCRIBED BEFORE ME

THIS _____ DAY OF _____ , _____

_____

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: _____

NORTH CAROLINA ONE CALL CENTER, INC.

North Carolina One Call Center, Inc., a non-profit organization funded by participating utility companies and municipalities in the interest of community and job safety and improved service through damage reduction to the utilities.

A ONE CALL TOLL FREE TELEPHONE NUMBER, 811 or 1-800-632-4949, PROVIDES AN AVENUE TO ALL OF THE PARTICIPATING MEMBERS FROM ANY POINT WITHIN THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA.

Anyone proposing to excavate, dig, bore, tunnel, blast or disturb the earth in any manner in which buried utilities may be damaged is requested to call the toll-free number between the hours of 6:00 a.m. and 10:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, forty-eight hours before starting the proposed work.

Within minutes of your telephone call, the participating members will be made aware of your plans and will be given pertinent information that has been provided by you about your planned work. You will be told the names of the participating members from whom you can expect a response - if there are buried facilities in the path of your activity, the route of the utilities will be staked and/or marked at no expense to you. If there are no facilities in the area of the planned work, you will be called or notified by a representative of a participating company accordingly.

Should a non-participating utility operator be serving your area, we recommend that you call them on an individual basis. All utility operators, whether company or municipality, will be provided an opportunity to become a member of North Carolina One Call Center, Inc.

Naturally, knowing the route of utilities, the excavator is expected to exercise caution and to avoid damage as the project progresses.

Damage prevention does not just happen – it is a planned and orderly process through which each of us can participate - **YES, WE CAN AND WE WILL DRAMATICALLY REDUCE DAMAGES TO THE UTILITIES IN THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA!! THANKS FOR YOUR HELP.**

BEFORE YOU DIG

IN THE INTEREST OF COMMUNITY AND JOB SAFETY AND IMPROVED SERVICE

CALL NORTH CAROLINA ONE CALL CENTER, INC.
811 or 1-800-632-4949

North Carolina One Call Center, Inc
2300 West Meadowview Rd., Suite 227
Greensboro, NC 27407
www.nc811.org

PART A - SECTION II
GENERAL CONDITIONS

Dated: 01/05/2010

GENERAL CONDITIONS

ARTICLE 1.0 – DEFINITIONS

1.0 Defined Terms:

Wherever used in the Contract Documents and printed with initial or all capital letters, the terms listed below will have the meanings indicated which are applicable to both the singular and plural thereof.

1.1.1 **Acceptance** - By the OWNER of the Work as being fully complete in accordance with the Contract Documents subject to waiver of claims.

1.1.2 **Addenda** - Written or graphic instruments issued prior to the opening of Bids which clarify, correct, or change the Bidding Requirements or the Contract Documents.

1.1.3 **Agreement** - The written instrument which is evidence of the agreement between OWNER and CONTRACTOR covering the work.

1.1.4 **Application for Payment** - The form acceptable to ENGINEER which is to be used by CONTRACTOR during the course of the Work in requesting progress or final payments and which is to be accompanied by such supporting documentation as is required by the Contract Documents.

1.1.5 **Asbestos** - Any material that contains more than one percent asbestos and is friable or is releasing asbestos fibers into the air above current action levels established by the United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

1.1.6 **Bid** - The offer or proposal of a bidder submitted on the prescribed form setting forth the prices for the Work to be performed.

1.1.7 **Bidder** – The one who submits a Bid directly to Owner, as distinct from a sub-bidder who submits a bid directly to a Bidder.

1.1.8 **Bidding Documents** - The Bidding Requirements and the proposed Contract Documents (including all Addenda issued prior to receipt of Bids).

1.1.9 **Bidding Requirements** - The Advertisement or Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders, Bid security form, if any, and the Bid form with any supplements

1.1.10 **Bonds** - Performance and payment bonds and other instruments of security.

1.1.11 **Change Order** - A document recommended by ENGINEER which is signed by CONTRACTOR and OWNER and authorizes an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work or an adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times, issued on or after the Effective Date of the Agreement.

1.1.12 **Claim** - A demand or assertion by OWNER or CONTRACTOR seeking an adjustment of Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. A demand for money or services by a third party is not a Claim.

1.1.13 **Contract** – Executed agreement between the OWNER and the successful bidder, covering the performance of the WORK and the compensation therefore. The Contract supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, whether written or oral.

1.1.14 **Contract Documents** – The definition of the Contract Documents shall be as set forth in the Agreement. Approved Shop Drawings and the reports and drawings of subsurface and physical conditions are not Contract Documents. Files in electronic media format of text, data, graphics, and the like that may be furnished by OWNER to CONTRACTOR are not Contract Documents.

1.1.15 **Contract Price** - The moneys payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as stated in the Agreement (subject to the provisions of paragraph 11.3 in the case of Unit Price Work).

1.1.16 **Contract Times** - The number of days or the dates stated in the Agreement to complete the Work so that it is ready for final payment as evidenced by ENGINEER's written recommendation of final payment.

1.1.17 **CONTRACTOR** - The individual or entity with whom OWNER has entered into the Agreement.

1.1.18 **Cost of the Work** - See paragraph 11.1.1 for definition.

1.1.19 **Drawings** - That part of the Contract Documents prepared approved by ENGINEER which graphically shows the scope, extent, and character of the Work to be performed by CONTRACTOR. Shop Drawings and other CONTRACTOR submittals are not Drawings as so defined.

1.1.20 **Effective Date of the Agreement** - The date indicated in the Agreement on which it becomes effective, but if no such date is indicated, it means the date on which the Agreement is signed and delivered by the last of the two parties to sign and deliver.

1.1.21 **ENGINEER** – Director of Engineering, City of Concord.

1.1.22 **ENGINEER's Consultant** – An individual or entity having a contract with ENGINEER to furnish services as ENGINEER, independent professional associate or consultant with respect to the Project.

1.1.23 **Field Order** - A written order issued by ENGINEER which requires minor changes in the Work but which does not involve a change in the Contract Price or the Contract Times.

1.1.24 **General Requirements** - Sections of Division 1 of the Specifications. The General Requirements pertain to all sections of the Specifications.

1.1.25 **Hazardous Environmental Condition** - The presence at the Site of Asbestos, PCBs, Petroleum, Hazardous Waste, or Radioactive Material in such quantities or circumstances that may present a substantial danger to persons or property exposed thereto in connection with the Work.

1.1.26 **Hazardous Waste** - The term Hazardous Waste shall have the meaning provided in Section 1004 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act (42 USC Section 6903) as amended from time to time.

1.1.27 **Laws and Regulations; Laws or Regulations** - Any and all applicable laws, rules, regulations, ordinances, codes, and orders of any and all governmental bodies, agencies, authorities, and courts having jurisdiction.

1.1.28 **Liens** - Charges, security interests, or encumbrances upon Project funds, real property, or personal property.

1.1.29 **Milestone** - A principal event specified in the Contract Documents relating to an intermediate completion date or time prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work.

1.1.30 **Notice of Award-** The written notice by OWNER to the apparent successful bidder stating that upon timely compliance by the apparent successful bidder with the conditions precedent listed therein, OWNER will sign and deliver the Agreement.

1.1.31 **Notice to Proceed** - A written notice given by OWNER to CONTRACTOR fixing the date on which the Contract Times will commence to run and on which CONTRACTOR shall start to perform the Work under the Contract Documents.

1.1.32 **OWNER** – City of Concord, North Carolina.

1.1.33 **Partial Utilization** - Use by OWNER of a substantially completed part of the Work for the purpose for which it is intended (or a related purpose) prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work.

1.1.34 **PCB's** – Polychlorinated biphenyls

1.1.35 **Petroleum** - Petroleum, including crude oil or any fraction thereof which is liquid at standard conditions of temperature and pressure (60 degrees Fahrenheit and 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute), such as oil, petroleum, fuel oil, oil sludge, oil refuse, gasoline, kerosene, and oil mixed with other non-Hazardous Waste and crude oils.

1.1.36 **Project** - The total construction of which the Work to be performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole, or a part as may be indicated elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

1.1.37 **Project Manual** - The bound documentary information prepared for bidding and construction the Work. A listing of the contents of the Project Manual, which may be bound in one or more volumes, is contained in the table(s) of contents.

1.1.38 **Radioactive Material** - Source, special nuclear, or byproduct material as defined by the atomic Energy Act of 1954 (42 USC Section 2011 et seq.) as amended from time to time.

1.1.39 **Resident Project Representative** - The authorized representative of ENGINEER who may be assigned to the Site or any part thereof.

1.1.40 **Samples** - Physical examples of materials, equipment, or workmanship that are representative of some portion of the Work and which establish the standards by which such portion of the Work will be judged.

1.1.41 **Shop Drawings** - All drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, and other data or information which are specifically prepared or assembled by or for CONTRACTOR and submitted by CONTRACTOR to illustrate some portion of the Work.

1.1.42 **Site** - Lands or areas indicated in the Contract Documents as being furnished by OWNER upon which the Work is to be performed, including right-of-way and easements for access thereto, and such other lands furnished by OWNER which are designated for the use of CONTRACTOR. .

1.1.43 **Specifications** - That part of the Contract Documents consisting of written technical descriptions of materials, equipment, systems, standards, and workmanship as applied to the Work and certain administrative details applicable thereto.

1.1.44 **Subcontractor** - An individual or entity having a direct contract with CONTRCTOR or with any other Subcontractor for the performance of a part of the Work at the Site.

1.1.45 **Substantial Completion** - The time at which the Work (or a specified part thereof) has progressed to the point where, in the opinion of ENGINEER, the Work (or a specified part thereof) is sufficiently complete, in accordance with the Contract Documents, so that the Work (or a specified part thereof) can be utilized for the purposes for which it is intended. The terms "substantially complete" and "substantially completed" as applied to all or part of the Work refer to Substantial Completion thereof.

1.1.46 **Supplementary Condition** - That part of the Contract Documents which amends or supplements these General Conditions.

1.1.47 **Supplier** - A manufacturer, fabricator, supplier, distributor, material man, or vendor having a direct contract with CONTRACTOR or with any Subcontractor to furnish materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work by CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor.

1.1.48 **Underground Facilities** - All underground pipeline, conduits, ducts, cables, wires, manholes, vaults, tanks, tunnels, or other such facilities or attachments, and any encasements containing such facilities, including those that convey electricity, gases, steam, liquid petroleum products, telephone or other communications, cable television, water, wastewater, storm water, other liquids or chemicals, or traffic of other control systems.

1.1.49 **Unit Price Work** - Work to be paid for on the basis of unit prices.

1.1.50 **Work** - The entire completed construction OR the various separately identifiable parts thereof required to be provided under the Contract Documents. Work includes and is the result of performing or providing all labor, services, and documentation necessary to produce such construction, and furnishing, installing, and incorporating all materials and equipment into such construction, all as required by the Contract Documents.

1.1.51 **Work Change Directive** - A written statement to CONTRACTOR issued on or after the Effective Date of the Agreement and signed by OWNER and recommended by ENGINEER ordering an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work, or responding to differing or unforeseen subsurface or physical conditions under which the Work is to be performed or to emergencies. A Work Change Directive will not change the Contract Price or the Contract Times but is evidence that the parties expect that the change ordered or documented by a Work Change Directive will be incorporated in a subsequently issued Change Order following negotiations by the parties as to its effect, if any, on the Contract Price or Contract Times.

1.1.51 **Written Amendment** - A written statement modifying the Contract Documents, signed by OWNER and CONTRACTOR on or after the Effective Date of the Agreement and normally dealing with the non-engineering or non-technical rather than strictly construction-related aspects of the Contract Documents.

1.1.53 **Resident Observer** - Shall have the same definition as "Resident Project Representative" when referred to in these documents or during the duration of the Project.

1.1.54 **Written Notice** - The "Notice" as used herein shall mean and include all written notices, demands, instruction, claims, approvals, and disapprovals required to obtain compliance

with Contract requirements. Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual or to a member of the firm or to an officer of the corporation for whom it is intended, or to an authorized representative of such individual, firm or corporation, or if delivered at or sent by registered mail to the last business address known to him who gives the notice. Unless otherwise stated in writing, any notice to or demand upon the OWNER under this Contract shall be delivered to the OWNER through the ENGINEER.

1.1 Terminology

1.2.4 Intent of Certain Terms or Adjectives

1.2.1.1 Whenever in the Contract Documents the terms "as allowed", "as approved", or terms of like effect or import are used, or the adjectives "reasonable", "suitable", "acceptable", "proper", "satisfactory", or adjectives of like effect or import are used to describe an action or determination of ENGINEER as to the Work, it is intended that such action or determination will be solely to evaluate, in general, the completed Work for compliance with the requirements of and information in the Contract Documents and conformance with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as shown or indicated in the Contract Documents (unless there is a specific statement indicating otherwise). The use of any such term or adjective shall not be effective to assign to ENGINEER any duty or authority to supervise or direct the performance of the Work or any duty or authority to undertake responsibility contrary to the provisions of section 9.9 or any other provision of the Contract Documents.

1.2.2 Day

1.2.2.1 The work "day" shall constitute a calendar day or 24 hours measured from midnight to the next midnight.

1.2.3 Defective

1.2.3.1 The word "defective", when modifying the work "Work", refers to Work that is unsatisfactory, faulty, or deficient in that it does not conform to the Contract Documents or does not meet the requirements of any inspection, reference standard, test, or approval referred to in the Contract Documents, or has been damaged prior to ENGINEER's recommendation of final payment (unless responsibility for the protection thereof has been assumed by OWNER at Substantial Completion in accordance with paragraph 14.4 or 14.5).

1.2.4 Furnish, Install, Perform, Provide

1.2.4.1 The word "furnish", when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to supply and deliver said services, materials, or equipment to the Site (or some other specified location) ready for use or installation and in usable or operable condition.

1.2.4.2 The word "install", when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to put into use or place in final position said services, materials, or equipment complete and ready for intended use.

1.2.4.3 The words "perform" or "provide", when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to furnish and install said services, materials, or equipment complete and ready for intended use.

1.2.4.4 When "furnish", "install", "perform", or "provide" is not used in connection with services, materials, or equipment in a context clearly requiring an obligation of CONTRACTOR, "provide" is implied.

1.2.5 Unless stated otherwise in the Contract Documents, words or phrases which have a well known technical or construction industry or trade meaning are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meaning.

ARTICLE 2.0 – PRELIMINARY MATTERS

2.1 Delivery of Bonds

2.1.1 When CONTRACTOR delivers the executed Agreements to OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall also deliver to OWNER such Bonds as CONTRACTOR may be required to furnish.

2.2 Copies of Documents

2.2.1 The CONTRACTOR will be furnished without charge up to **five** sets of specifications and full size drawings. Additional sets of drawings and specifications requested by the CONTRACTOR will be furnished at the cost of reproduction, plus handling.

2.3 Commencement of Contract Times: Notice to Proceed

2.3.1 The Contract Time will commence to run on the day indicated in the Notice to Proceed.

2.4 Starting the Work

2.4.1 CONTRACTOR shall start to perform the Work on the date when the Contract Times commence to run. No Work shall be done at the Site prior to the date on which the Contract Times commence to run.

2.5 Before Starting Construction

2.5.1 CONTRACTOR's Review of Contract Documents: Before undertaking each part of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall carefully study and compare the Contract Documents and check and verify pertinent figures therein and all applicable field measurements. CONTRACTOR shall promptly report in writing to ENGINEER any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy which CONTRACTOR may discover and shall obtain a written interpretation or clarification from ENGINEER before proceeding with any Work affected thereby; however, CONTRACTOR shall not be liable to OWNER or ENGINEER for failure to report any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy in the Contract Documents unless CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have known thereof.

2.5.2 Preliminary Schedules: Within ten days after the Effective Date of the Agreement (unless otherwise specified in the General Requirements), CONTRACTOR shall submit to ENGINEER for its timely review:

2.5.2.1 a preliminary progress schedule indicating the times (numbers of days or dates) for starting and completing the various stages of the Work, including any Milestones specified in the Contract Documents;
2.5.2.2 a preliminary schedule of Shop Drawing and Sample submittals which will list each required submittal and the times for submitting, reviewing, and processing such submittal; and
2.5.2.3 a preliminary schedule of values for all of the Work which includes quantities and prices of items which when added together equal the Contract Price and

subdivides the Work into component parts in sufficient detail to serve as the basis for progress payments during performance of the Work. Such prices will include an appropriate amount of overhead and profit applicable to each item of Work.

2.5.3 Evidence of Insurance: The CONTACTOR shall submit three copies of his insurance certificate with submittal of his executed Contract Documents. The CONTRACTOR may use the "Accord Form" for the Certificate of Insurance, but the form shall be modified to state that the described insurance policies shall not be canceled without 30 days prior written notice to the OWNER and the ENGINEER by registered mail. CONTRACTOR shall review "Accord Form" before forwarding to the ENGINEER.

2.6 Pre-Construction Conference

2.6.1. Before any Work at the Site is started, a conference attended by CONTRACTOR, ENGINEER, and others as appropriate will be held to establish a working understanding among the parties as to the Work and to discuss the schedules referred to in paragraph 2.5.2, procedures for handling Shop Drawings and other submittals, processing Applications for Payment, and maintaining required records.

2.7 Initial Acceptance of Schedules

2.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, at least ten days before submission of the first Application for Payment a conference attended by CONTRACTOR, ENGINEER, and others as appropriate will be held to review for acceptability to ENGINEER as provided below the schedules submitted in accordance with paragraph 2.5.2. CONTRACTOR shall have an additional ten days to make corrections and adjustments and to complete and resubmit the schedules. No progress payment shall be made to CONTRACTOR until acceptable schedules are submitted to ENGINEER.

2.7.1.1. The progress schedule will be acceptable to ENGINEER if it provides an orderly progression of the Work to completion within any specified Milestones and the Contract Times. Such acceptance will not impose on ENGINEER responsibility for the progress schedule, for sequencing, scheduling, or progress of the Work nor interfere with or relieve CONTRACTOR from CONTRACTOR's full responsibility therefore.

2.7.1.2 CONTRACTOR's schedule of Shop Drawing and Sample submittals will be acceptable to ENGINEER if it provides a workable arrangement for reviewing and processing the required submittals.

2.7.1.3 CONTRACTOR's schedule of values will be acceptable to ENGINEER as to form and substance if it provides a reasonable allocation of the Contract Price to component parts of the Work.

2.8 Award

2.8.1 The award of the Contract, if it is awarded, will be to the lowest responsive, responsible Bidder whose qualifications indicate the award will be in the best interest of the OWNER and whose Bid complies with all the prescribed requirements. Notice of Award will not be given until the OWNER has concluded such investigations as he deems necessary to establish the responsibility, qualifications, and financial ability of the Bidders to do the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents to the satisfaction of the OWNER within the time prescribed. The OWNER reserves the right to reject the Bid of any Bidder who does not pass such investigation to the OWNER'S satisfaction. In analyzing Bids, the OWNER may take into consideration alternates and unit prices, if requested by the Bid forms. If the Contract is awarded, the OWNER will give the successful Bidder a

Notice of Award within 90 days after the opening of Bids.

ARTICLE 3.0 - CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: INTENT, AMENDING, REUSE

3.1 Intent

3.1.1 The Contract Documents are complementary; what is called for by one is as binding as if called for by all.

3.1.2 It is the intent of the Contract Documents to describe a functionally complete Project (or part thereof) to be constructed in accordance with the Contract Documents. Any labor, documentation, services, materials, or equipment that may reasonably be inferred from the Contract Documents or from prevailing custom or trade usage as being required to produce the intended result will be provided whether or not specifically called for at no additional cost to OWNER.

3.1.3 Clarifications and interpretations of the Contract Documents shall be issued by ENGINEER as provided in Article 9.0.

3.2 Reference Standards

3.2.1 Standards, Specifications, and Codes.

3.2.1.1. Reference to standards, specifications, manuals, or codes of any technical society, organization, or association, whether such reference be specific or by implication, shall mean the standard, specification, manual, or code in effect at the time of opening of Bids (or on the Effective Date of the Agreement if there were no Bids), except as may be otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents.

3.2.1.2 No provision of any such standard, specification, manual or code, or any instruction of a Supplier shall be effective to change the duties or responsibilities of OWNER, CONTRACTOR, or ENGINEER, or any of their subcontractors, consultants, agents, or employees from those set forth in the Contract Documents, nor shall any such provision or instruction be effective to assign to OWNER, ENGINEER, or any of ENGINEER's Consultants, agents, or employees any duty or authority to supervise or direct the performance of the Work or any duty or authority to undertake responsibility inconsistent with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

3.3 Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies

3.3.1 Reporting Discrepancies

3.3.1.1 If, during the performance of the Work, CONTRACTOR discovers any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy within the Contract Documents or between the Contract Documents and any provision of any Law or Regulation applicable to the performance of the Work or of any standard, specification, manual or code, or of any instruction of any Supplier, CONTRACTOR shall report it to ENGINEER in writing at once. CONTRACTOR shall not proceed with the Work affected thereby (except in an emergency as required by paragraph 6.16.1) until an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents has been issued by one of the methods indicated in paragraph 3.4; provided, however, that CONTRACTOR shall not be liable to OWNER or ENGINEER for failure to report any such

conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy unless CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have know thereof.

3.3.2 Resolving Discrepancies

3.3.2.1 Except as may be otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents, the provisions of the Contract Documents shall take precedence in resolving any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy between the provisions of the Contract Documents and:

3.3.2.1.1 the provisions of any standard, specification, manual, code, or instruction (whether or not specifically incorporated by reference in the Contract Documents)

3.4 Amending and Supplementing Contract Documents

3.4.1 The Contract Documents may be amended to provide for additions, deletions, and revisions in the Work or to modify the terms and conditions thereof in one or more of the following ways: (i) a Written Amendment; (ii) a Change Order; or (iii) a Work Change Directive.

3.4.2 The requirements of the Contract Documents may be supplemented and minor variations and deviations in the Work may be authorized, by one or more of the following ways: (i) a Field Order; (ii) ENGINEER's approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample; or (iii) ENGINEER's written interpretation or clarification.

3.5 Reuse of Documents

3.5.1 CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or supplier or other individual or entity performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with OWNER: (i) shall not have or acquire any title in or ownership rights in any of the Drawings, Specifications, or other documents (or copies of any thereof) prepared by or bearing the seal of ENGINEER or ENGINEER's Consultant, including electronic media editions; and (ii) shall not reuse any of such Drawings, Specifications, other documents, or copies thereof on extensions of the Project or any other project without written consent of OWNER and ENGINEER and specific written verification or adoption by ENGINEER. This prohibition will survive final payment, completion, and acceptance of the Work, or termination or completion of the Contract. Nothing herein shall preclude CONTRACTOR from retaining copies of the Contract Documents for record purposes.

ARTICLE 4.0 - AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS

4.1 Availability of Lands

4.1.1 OWNER shall furnish the Site. OWNER shall notify CONTRACTOR of any encumbrances or restrictions not of general application but specifically related to use of the Site with which CONTRACTOR must comply in performing the Work. OWNER will obtain in a timely manner and pay for easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing facilities. If CONTRACTOR and OWNER are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, as a result of any delay in OWNER's furnishing the Site, CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

4.1.2 CONTRACTOR shall provide for all additional lands and access thereto that may be required for temporary construction facilities or storage of materials and equipment.

4.2 Subsurface and Physical Conditions

4.2.1 Any testing, reports or drawings which are available or have been relied upon for this project are identified or included in the Special Provisions.

4.2.2 Limited Reliance by CONTRACTOR on Technical Data Authorized: CONTRACTOR may rely upon the general accuracy of the technical data. Except for such reliance on such technical data, CONTRACTOR may not rely upon or make any Claim against OWNER, ENGINEER, or any of ENGINEER's Consultants with respect to:

4.2.21 the completeness of such reports and drawings for CONTRACTOR's purposes, including, but not limited to, any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by CONTRACTOR, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; or
4.2.2.2 other data, interpretations, opinions, and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or
4.2.2.3 any CONTRACTOR interpretation of or conclusion drawn from any “technical data” or any such other data, interpretations, opinion, or information.

4.3 Differing Subsurface or Physical Conditions

4.3.1 Notice: If CONTRACTOR believes that any subsurface or physical condition at or contiguous to the Site that is uncovered or revealed either:

4.3.1.1 is of such a nature as to establish that any "technical data" on which CONTRACTOR is entitled to rely as provided in paragraph 4.2 is materially inaccurate; or
4.3.1.2 is of such a nature as to require a change in the Contract Documents; or
4.3.1.3 differs materially from that shown or indicated in the Contract Documents; or
4.3.1.4 is of an unusual nature, and differs materially from condition ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in the Contract Documents:

Then CONTRACTOR shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing the subsurface or physical conditions or performing any Work in connection therewith (except in an emergency as required by paragraph 6.16.1), notify OWNER and ENGINEER in writing about such condition. CONTRACTOR shall not further disturb such condition or perform any Work in connection therewith (except as aforesaid) until receipt of written order to do so.

4.3.2 ENGINEER's Review: After receipt of written notice as required by paragraph 4.3.1, ENGINEER will promptly review the pertinent condition, determine the necessity of OWNER's obtaining additional exploration or tests with respect thereto, and advise OWNER in writing (with a copy to CONTRACTOR) of ENGINEER's findings and conclusions.

4.3.3 Possible Price and Times Adjustments

4.3.3.1 The Contract Price or the Contract Times, or both, will be equitably adjusted to the extent that the existence of such differing subsurface or physical condition causes an increase or decrease in CONTRACTOR's cost of, or time required for,

performance of the Work; subject, however, to the following:

4.3.3.1.1 such condition must meet anyone or more of the categories described in paragraph 4.3.1; and

4.3.3.1.2 with respect to Work that is paid for on a Unit Price Basis, any adjustment in Contract Price will be subject to the provisions of paragraphs 9.8 and 11.3.

4.3.3.2 CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times if:

4.3.3.2.1 CONTRACTOR knew of the existence of such conditions at the time CONTRACTOR made a final commitment to OWNER in respect of Contract Price and Contract Times by the submission of a Bid or becoming bound under a negotiated contract; or

4.3.3.2.2 the existence of such condition could reasonably have been discovered or revealed as a result of any examination, investigation, exploration, test, or study of the Site and contiguous areas required by the Bidding Requirements or Contract Documents to be conducted by or for CONTRACTOR prior to CONTRACTOR's making such final commitment; or

4.3.3.2.3 CONTRACTOR failed to give the written notice within the time and as required by paragraph 4.3.1.

4.3.3.3 If OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, a Claim may be made therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5. However, OWNER, ENGINEER, and ENGINEER's consultants shall not be liable to CONTRACTOR for any claims, costs, losses, or damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of ENGINEERs, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) sustained by CONTRACTOR on or in connection with any other project or anticipated project.

4.4 Underground Facilities

4.4.1 Shown or Indicated: The information and data shown or indicated in the Contract Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or contiguous to the Site is based on information and data furnished to OWNER or ENGINEER by the OWNERs of such Underground Facilities, including OWNER, or by others.

4.4.1.1 OWNER and ENGINEER shall not be responsible for the accuracy or completeness of any such information or data; and

4.4.1.2 the cost of all of the following will be included in the Contract Price, and CONTRACTOR shall have full responsibility for:

4.4.1.2.1 reviewing and checking all such information and data.

4.4.1.2.2 locating all Underground Facilities shown or indicated in the Contract Documents.

4.4.1.2.3 coordination of the Work with the OWNERs of such Underground Facilities, including OWNER, during construction and

4.4.1.2.4 the safety and protection of all such Underground Facilities and repairing any damage thereto resulting from the Work.

4.4.2 Not Shown or Indicated

4.4.2.1 If an Underground Facility is uncovered or revealed at or contiguous to the Site which was not shown or indicated, or not shown or indicated reasonable accuracy in the" Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing conditions affected thereby or

performing any Work in connection therewith (except in an emergency as required by paragraph 6.16.1), identify the OWNER of such Underground Facility and give written notice to that OWNER and to OWNER and ENGINEER. ENGINEER will promptly review the Underground Facility and determine the extent, if any, to which a change is required in the Contract Documents to reflect and document the consequences of the existence or location of the Underground Facility. During such time, CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for the safety and protection of such Underground Facility.

4.4.2.2 If ENGINEER concludes that a change in the Contract Documents is required, a Work Change Directive or a Change Order will be issued to reflect and document such consequences. An equitable adjustment shall be made in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, to the extent that they are attributable to the existence or location of any Underground Facility that was not shown or indicated or not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy in the Contract Documents and that CONTRACTOR did not know of and could not reasonably have been expected to be aware of or to have anticipated. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any such adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

4.5 Reference Points

4.5.1 OWNER shall provide engineering surveys to establish reference points for construction which in ENGINEER's judgment are necessary to enable CONTRACTOR to proceed with the Work. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for laying out the Work, shall protect and preserve the established reference points and property monuments, and shall make no changes or relocations without the prior written approval of OWNER. CONTRACTOR shall report to ENGINEER whenever any reference point or property monument is lost or destroyed or requires relocation because of necessary changes in grades or locations, and shall be responsible for the accurate replacement or relocation of such reference points or property monuments by professionally qualified personnel.

4.6 Hazardous Environmental Condition at Site

4.6.1 Reports and Drawings: Reference is made to these General Conditions for the identification of those reports and drawings relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition identified at the site, if any, that have been utilized by the ENGINEER in the preparation of the Contract Documents.

4.6.2 Limited Reliance by CONTRACTOR on Technical Data Authorized: CONTRACTOR may rely upon the general accuracy of the technical data contained in such reports and drawings, but such reports and drawings are not Contract Documents. Except for such reliance on such "technical data", CONTRACTOR may not rely upon or make any Claim against OWNER, ENGINEER or any of ENGINEER's Consultants with respect to:

4.6.2.1 the completeness of such reports and drawings for CONTRACTOR's purposes, including, but not limited to, any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction to be employed by CONTRACTOR and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; or

4.6.2.2 other data, interpretations, opinions and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or

4.6.2.3 any CONTRACTOR interpretation of or conclusion drawn from any "technical data" orany such other data, interpretations, opinions, or information.

4.6.3 CONTRACTOR shall not be responsible for any Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site which was not shown or indicated in Drawings or Specifications or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the

Work. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for a Hazardous Environmental Condition created with any materials brought to the Site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Suppliers, or anyone else for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible.

4.6.4 If CONTRACTOR encounters a Hazardous Environmental Condition or if CONTRACTOR or anyone for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible creates a Hazardous Environmental Condition, CONTRACTOR shall immediately: (i) secure or otherwise isolate such condition; (ii) stop all Work in connection with such condition and in any area affected thereby (except in an emergency as required by paragraph 6.16); and (iii) notify OWNER and ENGINEER (and promptly thereafter confirm such notice in writing). OWNER shall promptly consult with ENGINEER concerning the necessity for OWNER to retain a qualified expert to evaluate such condition or take corrective action, if any.

4.6.5 CONTRACTOR shall not be required to resume Work in connection with such condition or in any affected area until after OWNER has obtained any required permits related thereto and delivered to CONTRACTOR written notice: (i) specifying that such condition and any affected area is or has been rendered safe for the resumption of Work; or (ii) specifying any special conditions under which such Work may be resumed safely. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR cannot agree as to entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, as a result of such Work stoppage or such special conditions under which Work is agreed to be resumed by CONTRACTOR, either party may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

4.6.6 If after receipt of such written notice CONTRACTOR does not agree to resume such Work based on a reasonable belief it is unsafe, or does not agree to resume such Work under such special conditions, then OWNER may order the portion of the Work that is in the area affected by such condition to be deleted from the Work. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR cannot agree as to entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times as a result of deleting such portion of the Work, then either party may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5. OWNER may have such deleted portion of the Work performed by Owner's own forces or others in accordance with Article 7.0.

4.6.7 To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, ENGINEER, Engineer's Consultants, and the officers, directors, partners, employees, agents, other consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of Engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court of arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition created by CONTRACTOR or by anyone for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible. Nothing in this paragraph 4.6.6 shall obligate CONTRACTOR to indemnify any individual or entity from and against the consequences of that individual's or entity's own negligence.

4.6.7.1 The provisions of paragraphs 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4 are not intended to apply to a Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site.

ARTICLE 5.0 – BONDS AND INSURANCE

5.1 Performance and Payment Bonds

5.1.1 Concurrent with execution of the Agreement and within ten days of the Notice of Award, the successful CONTRACTOR shall procure, execute, and deliver to the OWNER and maintain, at his own cost and expense, the following bonds, in the forms attached, of a

surety company approved by the state in which the Work is being performed as a Surety:

5.1.1.1 Performance Bond - in an amount not less than 100% of the total amount payable to the CONTRACTOR by the terms of the Contract as security for the faithful performance of the Work. Bond must be valid until one year after the date of issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

5.1.1.2 Payment Bond - in an amount not less than 100% of the total amount payable to the CONTRACTOR by the terms of the Contract as security for the payment of all persons performing labor and furnishing material in connection with the Work. Bond must be valid until one year after the date of issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

5.1.2 All Bonds signed by an agent must be accompanied by a certified copy of the authority to act. Bonds shall be executed by such sureties as are named in the current list of "Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies" as published in Circular 570 (amended) by the Audit Staff, Bureau of Government Financial Operations, U.S. Treasury Department.

5.1.3 If the Surety on any Bond furnished by the CONTRACTOR is declared bankrupt or becomes insolvent or its right to do business in the state in which the Work is being performed is revoked, the CONTRACTOR shall, within ten days thereafter, substitute another Bond or Surety, both of which shall be acceptable to the OWNER.

5.2 Insurance Requirements

5.2.1 Wherever in this Article the terms "The Insured" and "OWNER" occur with respect to coverage in a policy, it shall mean the OWNER and its agent and agencies, all municipalities where Work is being performed under the Contract, the ENGINEER, and any other parties specifically designated herein, who shall be named as insured in each policy issued. The insurance policies required herein shall not contain any Third Party Beneficiary Exclusion.

The CONTRACTOR shall not commence Work under the Contract until he has obtained all insurance required under this Article and such insurance has been approved by the OWNER, nor shall the CONTRACTOR allow any Subcontractor to commence Work on his subcontract until all similar insurance required of the Subcontractor has been so obtained and approved.

Provision of some types of insurance by a Subcontractor may be waived, at the option of the OWNER, where it is deemed that adequate coverage is provided by the CONTRACTOR's insurance. Subcontractors must, in all cases, provide Workmen's Compensation and Employer's Liability Insurance and Motor Vehicle Liability Insurance.

One copy of each such insurance policy and certificates indicating each type of coverage mentioned, and the correlation between the insurance furnished and that required, shall be filed with each of The Insured.

All policies relating to this Contract shall be so written that each of The Insured shall be notified by the carrier of cancellation or change at least 30 days prior to the effective date of such cancellation or change. Renewal certificates covering the renewal of all policies expiring during the life of the Contract shall be filed with each of The Insured not less than 30 days before the expiration of such policies.

Contractor shall purchase and maintain such liability and other insurance as is appropriate for the Work being performed and furnished. The insurance shall provide protection from claims set forth herein which may arise out of or result from Contractor's performance and furnishing of the Work and Contractor's other obligations under the Contract Documents, whether it is to be performed or furnished by Contractor, any Subcontractor or Supplier, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform or furnish any of the Work, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:

a. claims under workers' compensation, disability benefits, and other similar employee benefit acts;

b. claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of Contractor's employees;

c. claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than Contractor's employees;

d. claims for damages insured by personal injury liability coverage which are sustained: (1) by any person as a result of an offense directly or indirectly related to the employment of such person by Contractor, or (2) by any other person for any other reason;

e. claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property wherever located, including loss of use resulting there from; and

f. claims for damages because of bodily injury or death of any person or property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance, or use of any motor vehicle.

5.3 General Insurance Requirements

5.3.1 The insurance required to be purchased and maintained by Contractor shall

a. include at least the specific coverages and be written for not less than the limits of liability specified herein or required by Laws or Regulations, whichever is greater;

b. include completed operations insurance;

c. include contractual liability insurance covering Contractor's indemnity obligations under Paragraphs 6.12, 6.16, and 6.31 through 6.33 of the General Conditions;

d. contain a provision or endorsement that the coverage afforded will not be canceled, materially changed, or renewal refused until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to Owner and Engineer;

e. remain in effect at least until final payment and at all times thereafter when Contractor may be correcting, removing, or replacing defective Work;

f. with respect to completed operations insurance, and any other insurance coverage written on a claims-made basis, remain in effect for at least 2 years after final payment (and Contractor shall furnish Owner and Engineer evidence satisfactory to Owner of continuation of such insurance at final payment and one year thereafter);

g. contain a cross liability or severability of interest clause or endorsement. Insurance covering the specified additional insured shall be primary insurance, and all other insurance carried by the additional insured shall be excess insurance; and

h. with respect to workers' compensation and employers' liability, comprehensive automobile liability, commercial general liability, and umbrella liability insurance, Contractor shall require its insurance carriers to waive all rights of subrogation against Owner, Engineer, and their respective officers, directors, partners, employees, and agents.

5.3.2 Workers' Compensation and Employers' Liability Insurance. This insurance shall protect Contractor against all claims under applicable state workers' compensation laws. Contractor shall also be protected against claims for injury, disease, or death of employees which, for any reason, may not fall within the provisions of a workers' compensation law. This policy shall include an "all states" or "other states" endorsement. The liability limits shall be not less than:

Workers' compensation	Statutory
Employers' liability	$1,000,000 each occurrence

5.3.3 Comprehensive Automobile Liability Insurance. This insurance shall be occurrence type written in comprehensive form and shall protect Contractor, and Owner, and Engineer as additional insured, against all claims for injuries to members of the public and damage to property of others arising from the use of motor vehicles, either on or off the project site whether they are owned, non-owned, or hired.
The liability limits shall be not less than:

Bodily injury and property damage	$1,000,000 combined single limit for each occurrence

5.3.4 Commercial General Liability Insurance. This insurance shall be occurrence type written in comprehensive form and shall protect Contractor, and Owner, and Engineer as additional insured, against claims arising from injuries, sickness, disease, or death of any person or damage to property arising out of performance of the Work. The policy shall also include personal injury liability coverage, contractual liability coverage, completed operations and products liability coverage, and coverage for blasting, explosion, collapse of buildings, and damage to underground property.
The liability limits shall be not less than:

Bodily injury and property damage	$1,000,000 combined single limit for each occurrence
	$1,000,000 general aggregate

5.3.5 Umbrella Liability Insurance. This insurance shall protect Contractor, and Owner, and Engineer as additional insured, against claims in excess of the limits provided under workers' compensation and employers' liability, comprehensive automobile liability, and commercial general liability policies. The umbrella policy shall follow the form of the primary insurance, including the application of the primary limits.
The liability limits shall be not less than:

Bodily injury and property damage	$4,000,000 combined single limit for each occurrence $4,000,000 general aggregate

5.3.6 Owner's Protective Liability Insurance. This insurance shall be issued in the name of Owner and shall protect and defend Owner against claims arising as a result of the operations of Contractor or Contractor's Subcontractors.
The liability limits shall be not less than:

Bodily injury and property damage	$1,000,000 combined single limit for each occurrence $1,000,000 general aggregate

5.37 Property Insurance. Contractor shall purchase and maintain property insurance coverage for the Work at the site in the amount of the full replacement cost thereof. This insurance shall:

a. include the interests of Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, Engineer, and Engineer's Consultants, each of whom is deemed to have an insurable interest and shall be listed as a named insured;

b. be written on a Builder's Risk "all-risk" or open peril or special causes of loss policy form that shall at least include insurance for physical loss or damage to the Work, temporary buildings, false-work, Work in transit including ocean transit, and Work in storage at the project site or at another location acceptable to Owner, and shall insure against at least the following perils: fire, lightning, extended coverage, theft, vandalism and malicious mischief, earthquake, collapse, debris removal, demolition occasioned by enforcement of Laws and Regulations, water damage, and damage caused by frost and freezing;

c. cover, in an amount not less than $100,000, the Owner-furnished equipment and materials to be erected or installed by Contractor;

d. include expenses incurred in the repair or replacement of any insured property (including but not limited to fees and charges of engineers and architects); and

e. be maintained in effect until final payment is made unless otherwise agreed to in writing by Owner, Contractor, and Engineer, with 30 days' written notice to each other insured.

If Owner requests in writing that other special insurance be included in the property insurance provided by Contractor, Contractor shall, if possible, include such insurance, and the cost thereof will be charged to Owner by appropriate Change Order or Written Amendment. Prior to

commencement of the Work at the site, Contractor shall in writing advise Owner whether or not such other special insurance has been procured by Contractor.

5.4 Other Insurance Requirements

5.4.1 If any of the property and casualty insurance requirements are not complied with at their renewal dates, payments to the CONTRACTOR will be withheld until these requirements have been met, or at the option of the OWNER, the OWNER may pay the renewal premiums and withhold such payments from any monies due to the CONTRACTOR.

5.4.2 In the event that claims in excess of the insured amounts provided herein are filed by reason of any operations under the Contract, the amount of excess of such claims, or any portion thereof, may be withheld from payment due or to become due the CONTRACTOR until such time as the CONTRACTOR shall furnish such additional security covering such claims as may be determined by the OWNER.

5.4.3 All policies and certificates of insurance of the CONTRACTOR shall contain the following clauses:

5.4.3.1 insurers shall have no right of recovery or subrogation against the OWNER and its agents and agencies and the ENGINEER, it being the intention of the parties that the insurance policies so effected shall protect both parties and be primary coverage for any and all losses covered by the above-described insurance.

5.4.3.2 the clause "other insurance provisions" in a policy in which the OWNER and its agents and agencies and the ENGINEER is named as an insured, shall not apply to these parties.

5.4.3.3 the insurance companies issuing the policy or policies shall have no recourse against the OWNER and its agents and agencies and the ENGINEER, for the payment of any premiums or for assessments under any form of policy.

5.4.3.4 any and all deductibles in the above-described insurance policies shall be assumed by and be for the amount of, and at the sole risk of the CONTRACTOR.

ARTICLE 6.0 - CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

6.1 Supervision and Superintendence

6.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall supervise, inspect, and direct the Work competently and efficiently, devoting such attention thereto and applying such skills and expertise as may be necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction, but CONTRACTOR shall not be responsible for the negligence of OWNER or ENGINEER in the design or specification of a specific means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction which is shown or indicated in and expressly required by the Contract Documents. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible to see that the complete Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents.

6.1.2 At all times during the progress of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall assign a competent resident superintendent thereto who shall not be replaced without written notice to OWNER and ENGINEER except under extraordinary circumstances. The superintendent will be CONTRACTOR's representative at the Site and shall have authority to act on behalf of CONTRACTOR. All communications given to or received from the superintendent shall be binding on CONTRACTOR.

6.2 Labor; Working Hours

6.2.1 CONTRACTOR shall provide competent, suitably qualified personnel to survey, layout, and construct the Work as required by the Contract Documents. CONTRACTOR shall at all times maintain good discipline and order at the Site.

6.2.2 Except as otherwise required for the safety or protection of persons or the Work or property at the Site or adjacent thereto, and except as otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, all Work at the Site shall be performed during regular working hours, and CONTRACTOR will not permit overtime work or the performance of Work on Saturday, Sunday, or any legal holiday without OWNER's written consent (which will not be unreasonably withheld) given after prior written notice to ENGINEER.

6.3 Services, Materials, and Equipment

6.3.1 Unless otherwise specified in the General Requirements, CONTRACTOR shall provide and assume full responsibility for all services, materials, equipment, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools, appliances, fuel, power, light, heat, telephone, water, sanitary facilities, temporary facilities, and all other facilities and incidentals necessary for the performance, testing start-up, and completion of the Work.

6.3.2 All materials and equipment incorporated into the Work shall be as specified or, if not specified, shall be of good quality and new, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. All warranties and guarantees specifically called for by the Specifications shall expressly run to the benefit of OWNER. If required by ENGINEER, CONTRACTOR shall furnish satisfactory evidence (including reports of required tests) as to the source, kind, and quality of materials and equipment. All materials and equipment shall be stored, applied, installed, connected, erected, protected, used, cleaned, and conditioned in accordance with instructions of the applicable Supplier, except as otherwise may be provided in the Contract Documents.

6.4 Progress Schedule

6.4.1 CONTRACTOR shall adhere to the progress schedule established in accordance with paragraph 2.7 as it may be adjusted from time to time as provided below.

6.4.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall submit to ENGINEER for acceptance (to the extent indicated in paragraph 2.7) proposed adjustments in the progress schedule that will not result in changing the Contract Times (or Milestones). Such adjustments will conform generally to the progress schedule then in effect and additionally will comply with any provisions of the General Requirements applicable thereto.

6.4.1.2 Proposed adjustments in the progress schedule that will change the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 12.0. Such adjustments may only be made by a Change Order or Written Amendment in accordance with Article 12.O.

6.5 Substitutes and "Or-Equals"

6.5.1 Whenever an item of material or equipment is specified or described in the Contract Documents by using the name of a proprietary item or the name of a particular Supplier, the specification or description is intended to establish the type, function, appearance, and quality required. Unless the specification or description contains or is followed by words reading that no like, equivalent, or "or-equal" item equipment or material or equipment of other Suppliers may be submitted to ENGINEER for review under the circumstances

described below.

6.5.1.1 "Or-Equal" Items: If in ENGINEER's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR is functionally equal to that named and sufficiently similar so that no change in related Work will be required, it may be considered by ENGINEER as an "or-equal" item, in which case review and approval of the proposed item may, in ENGINEER's sole discretion, be accomplished without compliance with some or all of the requirements for approval of proposed substitute items. For the purposes of this paragraph 6.5.1.1, a proposed item of material or equipment will be considered functionally equal to an item so named if:

6.5.1.1.1 in the exercise of reasonable judgment ENGINEER determines that: (i) it is at least equal in quality, durability, appearance, strength, and design characteristics; (ii) it will reliably perform at least equally well the function imposed by the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole, and;

6.5.1.1.2 CONTRACTOR certifies that: (i) there is no increase in cost to the OWNER; and (ii) it will conform substantially, even with deviations, to the detailed requirements of the item named in the Contract Documents.

6.5.1.2 Substitute Items

6.5.1.2.1. If in ENGINEER's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR does not qualify as an "or-equal" item under paragraph 6.5.1.1, it will be considered a proposed substitute item.

6.5.1.2.2 CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information as provided below to allow ENGINEER to determine that the item of material or equipment proposed is essentially equivalent to that named and an acceptable substitute. Such information on items of material or equipment will not be accepted by ENGINEER from anyone other than CONTRACTOR.

6.5.1.2.3 The procedure for review by ENGINEER will be as set forth in paragraph 6.5.1.2.4, as supplemented in the General Requirements and as ENGINEER may decide is appropriate under the circumstances.

6.5.1.2.4 CONTRACTOR shall first make written application to ENGINEER for review of a proposed substitute item of material or equipment that CONTRACTOR seeks to furnish or use. The application shall certify that the proposed substitute item will perform adequately the functions and achieve the results called for by the general design, be similar in substance to that specified, and be suited to the same use as that specified. The application will state the extent, if any, to which the use of the proposed substitute item will prejudice CONTRACTOR's achievement of Substantial Completion on time, whether or not use of a proposed substitute item in the Work will require a change in any of the Contract Documents (or in the provisions of any other direct contract with OWNER for work on the Project) to adapt the design to the proposed substitute item and whether or not incorporation or use of the proposed substitute item in connection with the Work is subject to payment of any license fee or royalty. All variations of the proposed substitute item from that specified will be identified in the application, and available engineering, sales, maintenance, repair, and replacement services will be indicated. The application will also contain an itemized

estimate of all costs or credits that will result directly or indirectly from use of such substitute item, including costs of redesign and claims of other CONTRACTORs affected by any resulting change, all of which will be considered by ENGINEER in evaluating the proposed substitute item. ENGINEER may require CONTRACTOR to furnish additional data about the proposed substitute item.

6.5.2 Substitute Construction Methods or Procedures: If a specific means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction is shown or indicated in and expressly required by the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR may furnish or utilize a substitute means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction approved by ENGINEER. CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information to allow ENGINEER, in ENGINEER's sole discretion, to determine that the substitute proposed is equivalent to that expressly called for by the Contract Documents. The procedure for review by ENGINEER will be similar to that provided in subparagraph 6.5.1.2.

6.5.3 ENGINEER's Evaluation: ENGINEER will be allowed a reasonable time within which to evaluate each proposal or submittal made pursuant to paragraphs 6.5.1 and 6.5.2. ENGINEER will be the sole judge of acceptability. No "or-equal" or substitute will be ordered, installed or utilized until ENGINEER's review is complete, which will be evidenced by either a Change Order for a substitute or an approved Shop Drawing for an "or equal". ENGINEER will advise CONTRACTOR in writing of any negative determination.

6.5.4 Special Guarantee: OWNER may require CONTRACTOR to furnish at CONTRACTOR's expense a special performance guarantee or other surety with respect to any substitute.

6.5.5 CONTRACTOR's Expense: CONTRACTOR shall provide all data in support of any proposed substitute for "or-equal" at CONTRACTOR's expense.

6.6 Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Others

6.6.1 CONTRACTOR shall not employ any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity, whether initially or as a replacement, against whom OWNER may have reasonable objection. CONTRACTOR shall not be required to employ any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity to furnish or perform any of the Work against whom CONTRACTOR has reasonable objection.

6.6.2 Within ten days after Notice of Award has been issued, the CONTRACTOR shall furnish to the ENGINEER a list of subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or organizations who will participate in the Work or furnish principal items of materials and equipment to be utilized in the Work. The list shall include the subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or organizations indicated on the Bid Form. Within ten days after receipt of the list but prior to the Effective Date of the Agreement, the ENGINEER shall notify the CONTRACTOR in writing if the ENGINEER (or OWNER) has reasonable objection to any subcontractor, suppliers, or other person or organization on the list. Failure by the ENGINEER to object to anyone on the list within the specified time shall constitute acceptance of the subcontractor, supplier, or other person or organization. Acceptance of a subcontractor, supplier, other person or organization named shall not constitute a waiver of the requirements of the contract specifications or the right of the OWNER or ENGINEER to reject defective work. If the ENGINEER (or OWNER) has a reasonable objection as described above, the CONTRACTOR may either (1) submit an acceptable substitute without an increase in his Bid price, or (2) withdraw his Bid without forfeiting his Bid security.

6.6.3 CONTRACTOR shall be fully responsible to OWNER and ENGINEER for all acts and omissions of the Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work just as CONTRACTOR is responsible for CONTRACTOR's own acts and omissions. Nothing in the Contract Documents shall create for the benefit of any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity any contractual relationship between OWNER or ENGINEER and any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other individual or entity, nor shall it create any obligation on the part of OWNER or ENGINEER to payor to see to the payment of any moneys due any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity except as may otherwise be required by Laws and Regulations. OWNER or ENGINEER may furnish to any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity to the extent practicable, information about amounts paid to CONTRACTOR on account of Work performed for CONTRACTOR by a particular Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity.

6.6.4 CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for scheduling and coordinating the Work of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with CONTRACTOR.

6.6.5 CONTRACTOR shall require all Subcontractors, Suppliers, and such other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work to communicate with ENGINEER through CONTRACTOR.

6.6.6 The divisions and sections of the Specifications and the identifications of any Drawings shall not control CONTRACTOR in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or Suppliers or delineating the Work to be performed by any specific trade.

6.6.7 All Work performed for CONTRACTOR by a Subcontractor shall be pursuant to an appropriate agreement between the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor. The Subcontractor shall not commence Work until the CONTRACTOR has obtained all insurance as required by Article 5.0, inclusive.

6.6.8 The CONTRACTOR shall not subcontract more than 50 percent of the Contract price without prior written approval of the OWNER.

6.7 Patent Fees and Royalties

6.7.1 CONTRACTOR shall pay all license fees and royalties and assume all costs incident to the use in the performance of the Work or the incorporation in the Work of any invention, design, process, product, or device which is the subject of patent rights or copyrights held by others. If a particular invention, design, process, product, or device is specified in the Contract Documents for use in the performance of the Work and if to the actual knowledge of OWNER or ENGINEER its use is subject to patent rights or copyrights calling for the payment of any license fee or royalty to others, the existence of such rights shall be disclosed by OWNER in the Contract Documents. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, ENGINEER, ENGINEER's Consultants, and the officers, directors, partners, employees or agents, and other consultants of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of ENGINEERs, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to any infringement of patent rights or copyrights incident to the use in the performance of the Work or resulting from the incorporation in the Work of any invention, design, process, product, or device not specified in the Contract Documents.

6.8 Permits

6.8.1 CONTRACTOR shall obtain and pay for all construction permits and licenses. OWNER shall assist CONTRACTOR, when necessary, in obtaining such permits and licenses. CONTRACTOR shall pay all governmental charges and inspection fees necessary for the prosecution of the Work which are applicable at the time of opening of Bids, or, if there are no Bids, on the Effective Date of the Agreement. CONTRACTOR shall pay all charges of utility OWNERs for connection to the Work.

6.9 Laws and Regulations

6.9.1 CONTRACTOR shall give all notices and comply with all Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work. Except where otherwise expressly required by applicable Laws and Regulations, neither OWNER nor ENGINEER shall be responsible for monitoring CONTRACTOR's compliance with any Laws or Regulations.

6.9.2 If CONTRACTOR observes that the Specifications or Drawings are at variance with any Laws or Regulations, he shall give ENGINEER prompt written notice thereof. If CONTRACTOR performs any Work knowing it to be contrary to such Laws or Regulations, and without such notice to ENGINEER, he shall bear all costs arising there from. The CONTRACTOR shall, at all times, observe and comply with and shall cause all his agents and employees and all his Subcontractors to observe and comply with all such existing Laws or Regulations, and shall protect and indemnify the OWNER and the ENGINEER and the municipalities in which Work is being performed, and their officers and agents against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of any such Law or Regulation, whether by himself or his employees or any of his Subcontractors.

6.9.3 Changes in Laws or Regulations not adopted or in effect at the time of opening of Bids (or, on the Effective Date of the Agreement if there were no Bids) having an effect on the cost or time of performance of the Work may be the subject of an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any such adjustment, a Claim may be made therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

6.10 Taxes

6.10.1 CONTRACTOR shall pay all sales, consumer, use, and other similar taxes required to be paid by CONTRACTOR in accordance with the Laws and Regulations of the place of the Project which are applicable during the performance of the Work. A listing of sales tax paid for the period shall be submitted with each Progress Payment

6.11 Use of Site and Other Areas

6.11.1 Limitation on Use of Site and Other Areas

6.11.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall confine construction equipment, the storage of materials and equipment, and the operations of workers to the Site and other areas permitted by Laws and Regulations, and shall not unreasonably encumber the Site and other areas with construction equipment or other materials or equipment. CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility for any damage to any such land or area, or the owner or occupant thereof, or of any adjacent land or areas resulting from the performance of the Work.

6.11.1.2 Should any claim be made by any such owner or occupant because of the performance of the work, CONTRACTOR shall promptly settle with such other party by negotiation or otherwise resolve the claim by arbitration or

other dispute resolution proceeding or at law.

6.11.1.3 To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, ENGINEER, ENGINEER's Consultant, and the officers, directors, partners, employees, agents, and other consultants of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of ENGINEER's, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to any claim or action, legal or equitable, brought by any such OWNER or occupant against OWNER, ENGINEER, or any other party indemnified hereunder to the extent caused by or based upon CONTRACTOR's performance of the Work.

6.11.2 Removal of Debris During Performance of the Work: During the progress of the Work CONTRACTOR shall keep the Site and other areas free from accumulations of waste materials, rubbish, and other debris, Removal and disposal of such waste materials, rubbish, and other debris shall conform to applicable Laws and Regulations.

6.11.3 Cleaning: Prior to Substantial Completion of the Work CONTRACTOR shall clean the Site and make it ready for utilization by OWNER. At the completion of the Work CONTRACTOR shall remove from the Site all tools, appliances, construction equipment and machinery, and surplus material and shall restore to original condition all property not designated for alteration by the Contract Documents.

6.11.4 Loading Structures: CONTRACTOR shall not load nor permit any part of any structure to be loaded in any manner that will endanger the structure, nor shall CONTRACTOR subject any part of the Work or adjacent property to stresses or pressures that will endanger it.

6.12 Record Documents

6.12.1 CONTRACTOR shall maintain in a safe place at the Site one record copy of all Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Written Amendments, Change Orders, Work Change Directives, Field Orders, and written interpretations and clarifications in good order and annotated to show changes made during construction. These record documents together with all approved Samples and a counterpart of all approved Shop Drawings will be available to ENGINEER for reference. Upon completion of the Work, these record documents, Samples, and Shop Drawings will be delivered to ENGINEER for OWNER. CONTRACTOR is advised that failure to furnish the ENGINEER with accurate and detailed record drawings shall be reason for withholding final payment.

6.13 Safety and Protection

6.13.1 CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. CONTRACTOR shall take all necessary precautions for the safety of, and shall provide the necessary protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to:

6.13.1.1 all persons on the Site or who may be affected by the Work;

6.13.1.2 all the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the Site; and

6.13.1.3 other property at the Site or adjacent thereto, including trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities, and Underground Facilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

6.13.2 CONTRACTOR shall comply with all applicable Laws and Regulations relating to the safety of persons or property, or to the protection of persons or property from damage, injury, or loss; and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. CONTRACTOR shall notify owners of adjacent property and of Underground Facilities and other utility owners when prosecution of the Work may affect them, and shall cooperate with them in the protection, removal, relocation, and replacement of their property. All damage, injury, or loss to any property referred to in paragraph 6.13.1.2 or 6.13.1.3 caused, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, Supplier, or any other individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall be remedied by CONTRACTOR (except damage or loss attributable to the fault of Drawings or Specifications or to the acts or omissions of OWNER or ENGINEER or ENGINEER's Consultant, or anyone employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to the fault or negligence of CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them). CONTRACTOR's duties and responsibilities for safety and for protection of the work shall continue until such time as all the Work is completed and ENGINEER has issued a notice to OWNER and CONTRACTOR in accordance with paragraph 14.7.2 that the Work is acceptable (except as otherwise expressly provided in connection with Substantial Completion).

6.14 Safety Representative

6.14.1 CONTRACTOR shall designate a qualified and experienced safety representative at the Site whose duties and responsibilities shall be the prevention of accidents and the maintaining and supervising of safety precautions and programs.

6.15 Hazard Communication Programs

6.15.1 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for coordinating any exchange of material safety data sheets or other hazard communication information required to be made available to or exchanged between or among employers at the Site in accordance with Laws or Regulations.

6.16 Emergencies

6.16.1 In emergencies affecting the safety or protection of persons or the Work or property at the Site or adjacent thereto, CONTRACTOR is obligated to act to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. CONTRACTOR shall give ENGINEER prompt written notice if CONTRACTOR believes that any significant changes in the Work or variations from the Contract Documents have been caused thereby or are required as a result thereof. If ENGINEER determines that a change in the Contract Documents is required because of the action taken by CONTRACTOR in response to such an emergency, a Work Change Directive or Change Order will be issued.

6.17 Shop Drawings and Samples

6.17.1 CONTRACTOR shall submit Shop Drawings to ENGINEER for review and approval in accordance with the acceptable schedule of Shop Drawings and Sample submittals. CONTRACTOR shall submit four copies of all shop drawings plus the number required for use by the ENGINEER. The data shown on the Shop Drawings will be complete with respect to quantities, dimensions, specified performance and design criteria, materials, and similar data to show ENGINEER the services, materials, and equipment

CONTRACTOR proposes to provide and to enable ENGINEER to review the information for the limited purposes required by paragraph 6.17.5.

6.17.2 CONTRACTOR shall also submit Samples to ENGINEER for review and approval in accordance with the acceptable schedule of Shop Drawings and Sample submittals. Each Sample will be identified clearly as to material, Supplier, pertinent data such as catalog numbers, and the use for which intended and otherwise as ENGINEER may require to enable ENGINEER to review the submittal for the limited purposes required by paragraph 6.17.5. CONTRACTOR shall submit three samples plus the number required to be returned to the CONTRACTOR for each sample required.

6.17.3 Where a Shop Drawing or Sample is required by the Contract Documents or the schedule of Shop Drawings and Sample submittals acceptable to ENGINEER as required by paragraph 2.7, any related Work performed prior to ENGINEER's review and approval of the pertinent submittal will be at the sole expense and responsibility of CONTRACTOR

6.17.4 Submittal Procedures

6.17.4.1 Before submitting each Shop Drawing or Sample, CONTRACTOR shall have determined and verified:

6.17.4.1.1 all field measurements, quantities, dimensions, specified performance criteria, installation requirements, materials, catalog numbers, and similar information with respect thereto;

6.17.4.1.2 all materials with respect to intended use, fabrication, shipping, handling, storage, assembly, and installation pertaining to the performance of the Work;

6.17.4.1.3 all information relative to means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; and

6.17.4.1.4 CONTRACTOR shall also have reviewed and coordinated each Shop Drawing or Sample with other Shop Drawings and Samples and with the requirements of the Work and the Contract Documents;

6.17.4.1.5 each Shop Drawing submitted to the ENGINEER must be accompanied by a transmittal which references the applicable section(s) of the specifications. In addition, each Shop Drawing shall be numbered in the order of submittal sequence. All submittals called for in the specifications shall be submitted in the number of copies as indicated in the Contract Documents.

6.17.4.2 Each submittal shall bear a stamp or specific written indication that CONTRACTOR has satisfied CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to CONTRACTOR's review and approval of that submittal.

6.17.4.3 At the time of each submittal, CONTRACTOR shall give ENGINEER specific written notice of such variations, if any, that the Shop Drawing or Sample submitted may have from the requirements of the Contract Documents, such notice to be in a written communication separate from the submittal; and, in addition, shall cause a specific notation to be made on each Shop Drawing and Sample submitted to ENGINEER for review and approval of each such variation.

6.17.5 ENGINEER's Review

6.17.5.1 ENGINEER will timely review and approve Shop Drawings and Samples in accordance with the schedule of Shop Drawings and Sample submittals acceptable to ENGINEER. ENGINEER's review and approval will be only to

determine if the items covered by the submittals will, after installation or incorporation in the Work, conform to the information given in the Contract Documents and be compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents.

6.17.5.2 ENGINEER's review and approval will not extend to means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction (except where a particular means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction is specifically and expressly called for by the Contract Documents) or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

6.17.5.3 ENGINEER's review and approval of Shop Drawings or Samples shall not relieve CONTRACTOR from responsibility for any variation from the requirements of the Contract Documents unless CONTRACTOR has in writing called ENGINEER's attention to each such variation at the time of each submittal as required by paragraph 6.17.4.3 and ENGINEER, has given written approval of each such variation by specific written notation thereof incorporated in or accompanying the Shop Drawing or Sample approval; nor will any approval by ENGINEER relieve CONTRACTOR from responsibility for complying with the requirements of paragraph 6.17.4.1.

6.17.6 Resubmittal Procedures

6.17.6.1 CONTRACTOR shall make corrections required by ENGINEER and shall return the required number of corrected copies of Shop Drawings and submit as required new Samples for review and approval. CONTRACTOR shall direct specific attention in writing to revision other than the corrections called for by ENGINEER on previous submittals.

6.18 Continuing the Work

6.18.1 CONTRACTOR shall carry on the Work and adhere to the progress schedule during all disputes or disagreements with OWNER. No Work shall be delayed or postponed pending resolution of any disputes or disagreements, except as permitted by paragraph 15.4 or as OWNER and CONTRACTOR may otherwise agree in writing.

6.19 CONTRACTOR's General Warranty and Guarantee

6.19.1 CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees to OWNER, ENGINEER, and ENGINEER's Consultants that all Work will be in accordance with the Contract Documents and will not be defective. CONTRACTOR's warranty and guarantee hereunder excludes defects or damage caused by:

6.19.1.1 abuse, modification, or improper maintenance or operation by persons other than CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Suppliers, or any other individual or entity for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible; or

6.19.1.2 normal wear and tear under normal usage.

6.19.2 CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform and complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be absolute. None of the following will constitute an acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents or a release of CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents:

6.19.2.1 observations by ENGINEER;

6.19.2.2 recommendation by ENGINEER or payment by OWNER of any progress or final payment;
6.19.2.3 the issuance of a certificate of Substantial Completion by ENGINEER or any payment related thereto by OWNER;
6.19.2.4 use or occupancy of the Work or any part thereof by OWNER;
6.19.2.5 any acceptance by OWNER or any failure to do so;
6.19.2.6 any review and approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample submittal or the issuance of a notice of acceptability by ENGINEER;
6.19.2.7 any inspection, test, or approval by others; or
6.19.2.8 any correction of defective Work by OWNER.

6.20 Indemnification

6.20.1 To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, ENGINEER, ENGINEER's Consultants, and the officers, directors, partners, employees, agents, and other consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of ENGINEER's, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court of arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to the performance of the Work, provided that any such claim, cost, loss, or damage:

6.20.1.1 is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease, or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), including the loss of use resulting there from; and
6.20.1.2 is caused in whole or in part by any negligent act or omission of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or any individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not caused in part by any negligence or omission of an individual or entity indemnified hereunder or whether liability is imposed upon such indemnified party by Laws and Regulations regardless of the negligence of any such individual or entity.

6.20.2 In any and all claims against OWNER or ENGINEER or any of their respective consultants, agents, officers, directors, partners, or employees by any employee (or the survivor or personal representative of such employee) of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or any individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, the indemnification obligation under paragraph 6.20.1 shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for CONTRACTOR or any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

6.20.3 Nothing in the Contract Documents shall create or give to third parties any claim or right of action against the CONTRACTOR, the OWNER or the ENGINEER beyond such as may legally exist irrespective of the Contract.

6.21 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

6.21.1 CONTRACTOR shall submit two copies of Operation and Maintenance Manuals for all equipment for review. Upon receipt of approval, six complete sets must be provided. No equipment may be placed into service until the approved manuals are received by the ENGINEER. Instruction manuals shall list all of the equipment specified in this and other sections of the Specifications and shall include equipment serial numbers, design data,

operating instructions, maintenance instructions, lubrication instructions, piping, wiring and control diagrams, assembly drawings showing location of parts, part numbers and spare parts list.

ARTICLE 7.0 - OTHER WORK

7.1 Related Work at Site

7.1.1 OWNER may perform other work related to the Project at the Site by OWNER's employees, or let other direct contracts therefore, or have other work performance by utility owner. If such other work is not noted in the Contract Documents, then:

7.1.1.1 written notice thereof will be given to CONTRACTOR prior to starting any such other work; and

7.1.1.2 if OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times that should be allowed as a result of such other work, a Claim may be made therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

7.1.2 CONTRACTOR shall afford each other CONTRACTOR who is a party to such a direct contract and each utility owner (and OWNER, if OWNER is performing the other work with OWNER's employees) proper and safe access to the Site and a reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of materials and equipment and the execution of such other work and shall properly coordinate the Work with theirs. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall do all cutting, fitting, and patching of the Work that may be required to properly connect or otherwise make its several parts come together and properly integrate with such other work. CONTRACTOR shall not endanger any work of others by cutting, excavating, or otherwise altering their work and will only cut or alter their work with the written consent of ENGINEER and the others whose work will be affected. The duties and responsibility of CONTRACTOR under this paragraph are for the benefit of such utility owners and other CONTRACTORs to the extent that there are comparable provisions for the benefit of CONTRACTOR in said direct contracts between OWNER and such utility owners and other CONTRACTORs.

7.1.3 If the proper execution or results of any part of CONTRACTOR's Work depends upon work performed by others under this Article 7.0, CONTRACTOR shall inspect such other work and promptly report to ENGINEER in writing any delays, defects, or deficiencies in such other work that render it unavailable or unsuitable for the proper execution and results of CONTRACTOR's Work. CONTRACTOR's failure to so report will constitute an acceptance of such other work as fit and proper for integration with CONTRACTOR's Work except for latent defects and deficiencies in such other work.

7.2 Coordination

7.2.1 If OWNER intends to contract with others for the performance of other work on the Project at the Site, the following will be set forth:

7.2.1.1 the individual or entity who will have authority and responsibility for coordination of the activities between the various CONTRACTORs will be identified;

7.2.1.2 the specific matters to be covered by such authority and responsibility will be itemized; and

7.2.1.3 the extent of such authority and responsibilities will be provided.

7.2.2 OWNER shall have sole authority and responsibility for such coordination.

ARTICLE 8.0 - OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

8.1 Communications to CONTRACTOR

8.1.1 Except as otherwise provided in these General Conditions, OWNER shall issue all communications to CONTRACTOR through ENGINEER. .

8.2 Replacement of ENGINEER

8.2.1 In case of termination of the employment of ENGINEER, OWNER shall appoint an ENGINEER to whom CONTRACTOR makes no reasonable objection, whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the former ENGINEER.

8.3 Furnish Data

8.3.1 OWNER shall promptly furnish the data required of OWNER under the Contract Documents.

8.4 Pay Promptly When Due

8.4.1 OWNER shall make payments to CONTRACTOR promptly when they are due as provided in paragraphs 14.2.3. and 14.7.3.

8.5 Lands and Easements; Reports and Tests

8.5.1 OWNER's duties in respect of providing lands and easements and providing engineering surveys to establish reference points are set forth in paragraphs 4.1 and 4.5. Paragraph 4.2 refers to OWNER identifying and making available to CONTRACTOR copies of reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions and drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at or contiguous to the Site that have been utilized by ENGINEER in preparing the Contract Documents.

8.6 Insurance

8.6.1 OWNER's responsibilities, if any, in respect to purchasing and maintaining liability and property insurance are set forth in Article 5.0.

8.7 Change Orders

8.7.1 OWNER is obligated to execute Change Orders as indicated in paragraph 10.3.

8.8 Inspections, Tests, and Approvals

8.8.1 OWNER's responsibility in respect to certain inspections, tests, and approvals is set forth in paragraph 13.3.2.

8.9 Limitations on OWNER's Responsibilities

8.9.1 The OWNER shall not supervise, direct, or have control or authority over, nor be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance

of the work. OWNER will not be responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

8.10 Undisclosed Hazardous Environmental Condition

8.10.1 OWNER's responsibility in respect to an undisclosed Hazardous Environmental Condition is set forth in paragraph 4.6.

8.11 Evidence of Financial Arrangements

8.11.1 If and to the extent OWNER has agreed to furnish CONTRACTOR reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to satisfy OWNER's obligations under the contract Documents, OWNER's responsibility in respect thereof will be as set forth in these General Conditions.

ARTICLE 9.0 - ENGINEER'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION

9.1 OWNER's Representative

9.1.1 ENGINEER will be OWNER's representative during the construction period and his instructions shall be carried into effect promptly and efficiently.

9.2 Project Representative

9.2.1 ENGINEER will furnish a Resident Project Representative to assist ENGINEER in providing more extensive observation of the Work. The responsibilities and authority and limitations thereon of any such Resident Project Representative and assistants will be as provided in section 9.9.

9.3 Clarifications and Interpretations

9.3.1 The ENGINEER will furnish a Resident Project Representative (and assistants) to assist the ENGINEER in observing the performance of the Work. The Resident Project Representative will serve as the ENGINEER's liaison with the CONTRACTOR, working principally through the CONTRACTOR's superintendent to assist him in understanding the intent of the Contract Documents.

9.3.2 The Resident Project Representative shall conduct on-site observations of the Work in progress to confirm that the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents. He will verify that tests, equipment and systems start-ups and operating and maintenance instructions are conducted as required by the Contract Documents. He will have the authority to disapprove or reject defective Work in accordance with Article 13.0.

9.3.3 Except upon written instruction of the ENGINEER, the Resident Project Representative:

9.3.3.1 Shall not authorize any deviation from the Contract Documents or approve any substitute materials or equipment.

9.3.3.2 Shall not exceed limitation of ENGINEER's authority as set forth in the Contract Documents.

9.3.3.3 Shall not undertake any of the responsibilities of CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, or CONTRACTOR's superintendent, or expedite the Work.

9.3.3.4 Shall not advise on or issue directions relative to any aspect of the means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction unless such is specifically called for in the Contract.

9.3.3.5 shall not advise on or issue directions as to safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work.

9.4 Authorized Variations in Work

9.4.1 ENGINEER may authorize minor variations in the Work from the requirements of the Contract Documents which do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times and are compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents. These may be accomplished by a Field Order and will be binding on OWNER and also on CONTRACTOR, who shall perform the Work involved promptly. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, as a result of a Field Order, a Claim may be made therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

9.5 Rejecting Defective Work

9.5.1 ENGINEER will have authority to disapprove or reject Work which ENGINEER believes to be defective, or that ENGINEER believes will not produce a completed Project that conforms to the Contract Documents or that will prejudice the integrity of the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents. ENGINEER will also have authority to require special inspection or testing of the Works provided in paragraph 13.4, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed, or completed.

9.6 Shop Drawings, Change Orders and Payments

9.6.1 In connection with ENGINEER's authority as to Shop Drawings and Samples, see paragraph 6.17.

9.6.2 In connection with ENGINEER's authority as to Change Orders, see Articles 10.0, 11.0, and 12.0.

9.6.3 In connection with ENGINEER's authorities to Applications for Payment, see Article 14.0.

9.7 Determinations for Unit Price Work

9.7.1 ENGINEER will determine the actual quantities and classifications of Unit Price Work performed by CONTRACTOR. ENGINEER will review with CONTRACTOR the ENGINEER's preliminary determinations on such matters before rendering a written decision thereon (by recommendation of an Application for Payment or otherwise). ENGINEER's written decision thereon will be final and binding (except as modified by ENGINEER to reflect changed factual conditions or more accurate data) upon OWNER and CONTRACTOR, subject to the provisions of paragraph 10.5.

9.8 Decisions on Requirements of Contract Documents and Acceptability of Work

9.8.1 ENGINEER will be the initial interpreter of the requirements of the Contract Documents and judge of the acceptability of the Work there under. Claims, disputes and other matters relating to the acceptability of the Work, the quantities and classifications of Unit Price Work, the interpretation of the requirements of the Contract Documents pertaining to the performance of the Work, and Claims seeking changes in the Contract Price or Contract

Times will be referred to ENGINEER in writing, in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 10.5, with a request for a formal decision.

9.8.2 The rendering of a decision by ENGINEER pursuant to this paragraph 9.8 with respect to any such Claim, dispute, or other matter (except any which have been waived by the making or acceptance of final payment as provided in paragraph 14.7) will be a condition precedent to any exercise by OWNER or CONTRACTOR of such rights or remedies as either may otherwise have under the Contract Documents or by Laws or Regulations in respect of any such Claim, dispute, or other matter.

9.9 Limitations on ENGINEER's Authority and Responsibilities

9.9.1 Neither ENGINEER's authority or responsibility under this Article 9.0 or under any other provision of the Contract Documents nor any decision made by ENGINEER in good faith either to exercise or not exercise such authority or responsibility or the undertaking, exercise, or performance of any authority or responsibility by ENGINEER shall create, impose, or give rise to any duty in contract, tort, or otherwise owed by ENGINEER to CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, any other individual or entity, or to any surety for or employee or agent of any of them.

9.9.2 ENGINEER will not supervise, direct, contract, or have authority over or be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work. ENGINEER will not be responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

9.9.3 ENGINEER will not be responsible for the acts or omissions of CONTRACTOR or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other individual or entity performing any of the Work.

9.9.4 ENGINEER's review of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation and all maintenance and operating instruction, schedules, guarantees, Bonds, certificates of inspection, tests and approvals, and other documentation required to be delivered by paragraph 14.7.1 will only be to determine generally that their content complies with the requirements of, and in the case of certificates of inspections, tests, and approvals that the results certified indicate compliance with the Contract Documents

9.9.5 The limitations upon authority and responsibility set forth in this section 9.9 shall also apply to ENGINEER's Consultants, Resident Project Representative, and assistants.

10.1 Authorized Changes in the Work

10.1.1 Without invalidating the Agreement and without notice to any surety, OWNER may, at any time or from time to time, order additions, deletions, or revisions in the Work by a Written Amendment, a Change Order, or a Work Change Directive. Upon receipt of any such document, CONTRACTOR shall promptly proceed with the Work involved which will be performed under the applicable conditions of the Contract Documents (except as otherwise specifically provided).

10.1.2 If OWNER and CONTRACTOR are unable to agree on entitlement to, or on the amount or extent, if any, of an adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, that should be allowed as a result of a Work Change Directive, a Claim may be made therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

10.2 Unauthorized Change in the Work

10.2.1 CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times with respect to any work performed that is not required by the Contract Documents as amended, modified, or supplemented as provided in paragraph 3.4, except in the case of an emergency as provided in paragraph 6.16 or in the case of uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.4.2.

10.3 Execution of Change Orders

10.3.1 OWNER and CONTRACTOR shall execute appropriate Change Orders recommended by ENGINEER (or Written Amendments) covering:

10.3.1.1 changes in the Work which are: (i) ordered by OWNER pursuant to paragraph 10.1.1, (ii) required because of acceptance of defective Work under paragraph 13.8.1 or OWNER's correction of defective Work under paragraph 13.9, or (iii) agreed to by the parties;

10.3.1.2 changes in the Contract Price or Contract Times which are agreed to by the parties, including any undisputed sum or amount of time for Work actually performed in accordance with a Work Change Directive; and

10.3.1.3 changes in the Contract Price or Contract Times which embody the substance of any written decision rendered by ENGINEER pursuant to paragraph 10.5; provided that, in lieu of executing any such Change Order, an appeal may be taken from any such decision in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents and applicable Laws and Regulations, but during any such appeal, CONTRACTOR shall carry on the Work and adhere to the progress schedule as provided in paragraph 6.18.1.

10.4 Notification to Surety

10.4.1 If notice of any change affecting the general scope of the Work or the provisions of the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, Contract Price or Contract Times) is required by the provisions of any Bond to be given to a surety, the giving of any such notice will be CONTRACTOR's responsibility. The amount of each applicable Bond will be adjusted to reflect the effect of any such change.

10.5 Claims and Disputes

10.5.1 Notice: Written notice stating the general nature of each Claim, dispute, or other matter shall be delivered by the claimant to ENGINEER promptly (but in no event later than 30 days) after the start of the event giving rise thereto. Notice of the amount or extent of the Claim, dispute, or other matter with supporting data shall be delivered to the ENGINEER within 60 days after the start of such event (unless ENGINEER allows additional time for claimant to submit additional or more accurate data in support of such Claim, dispute, or other matter). A Claim for an adjustment in Contract Price shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 12.1.2. A Claim for an adjustment in Contract Time shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 12.2.2. Each Claim shall be accompanied by claimant's written statement that the adjustment claimed is the entire adjustment to which the claimant believes it is entitled as a result of said event. The opposing party shall submit any response to ENGINEER and the claimant within 30 days after receipt of the claimant's last submittal (unless ENGINEER allows additional time).

10.5.2 ENGINEER's Decision: ENGINEER will render a formal decision in writing within 30 days after receipt of the last submittal of the claimant or the last submittal of the opposing

party, if any. ENGINEER's written decision on such Claim, dispute, or other matter will be final and binding upon OWNER and CONTRACTOR unless:

10.5.2.1 an appeal from ENGINEER's decision is taken within the time limits and in accordance with the dispute resolution procedures set forth in Article 16.0; or

10.5.2.2 if no such dispute resolution procedures have been set forth in Article 16, a written notice of intention to appeal from ENGINEER's written decision is delivered by OWNER or CONTRACTOR to the other and to ENGINEER within 30 days after the date of such decision, and a formal proceeding is instituted by the appealing party in a forum of competent jurisdiction within 60 days after the date of such decision or within 60 days after Substantial Completion, which ever is later (unless otherwise agreed in writing by OWNER and CONTRACTOR), to exercise such rights or remedies as the appealing party may have with respect to such Claim, dispute, or other matter in accordance with applicable Laws and Regulations.

10.5.3 If ENGINEER does not render a formal decision in writing within the time stated in paragraph 10.5.2, a decision denying the claim in its entirety shall be deemed to have been issued 31 days after receipt of the last submittal of the claimant or the last submittal of the opposing party, if any.

10.5.4 No Claim for an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times (or Milestones) will be valid if not submitted in accordance with this paragraph 10.5.

ARTICLE 11.0 - COST OF THE WORK; UNIT PRICE WORK

11.1 Cost of the Work

11.1.1 Costs Included: The term Cost of the Work means the sum of all costs necessarily incurred and paid by CONTRACTOR in the proper performance of the Work. When the value of any Work covered by a Change Order or when a Claim for an adjustment in Contract Price is determined on the basis of Cost of the Work, the costs to be reimbursed to CONTRACTOR will be only those additional or incremental costs required because of the change in the Work or because of the event giving rise to the Claim. Except as otherwise may be agreed to in writing by OWNER, such costs shall be in the amounts no higher than those prevailing in the locality of the Project, shall include only the following items, and shall not include any of the costs itemized in paragraph 11.1.2.

11.1.1.1 Payroll costs for employees in the direct employ of CONTRACTOR in the performance of the Work under schedules of job classifications agreed upon by OWNER and CONTRACTOR. Such employees shall include without limitation superintendents, foremen, and other personnel employed full time at the Site. Payroll costs for employees not employed full time on the Work shall be apportioned on the basis of their time spent on the Work. Payroll costs shall include, but not be limited to, salaries and wages plus the cost of fringe benefits, which shall include social security contributions, unemployment, excise, and payroll taxes, worker' compensation, health and retirement benefits, bonuses, sick leave, vacation and holiday pay applicable thereto. The expenses of performing Work outside of regular working hours, on Saturday, Sunday, or legal holidays, shall be included in the above to the extent authorized by OWNER.

11.1.1.2 cost of all materials and equipment furnished and incorporated in the Work, including costs of transportation and storage thereof, and Suppliers' field services required in connection therewith. All cash discounts shall accrue to CONTRACTOR unless OWNER deposits funds with CONTRACTOR with

which to make payments, in which case the cash discounts shall accrue to OWNER. All trade discounts, rebates and refunds and returns from sale of surplus materials and equipment shall accrue to OWNER, and CONTRACTOR shall make provisions so that they may be obtained.

11.1.1.3 Payments made by CONTRACTOR to Subcontractors for Work performed by Subcontractors and all subcontracts shall be subject to the provisions of the Contract Documents.

11.1.1.4 Costs of special consultants (including but not limited to engineers, architects, testing laboratories, surveyors, attorneys, and accountants) employed for services specifically related to the Work.

11.1.1.5 Supplemental costs including the following:

11.1.1.5.1 the proportion of necessary transportation, travel, and subsistence expenses of CONTRACTORS's employees incurred in discharge of duties connected with the Work.

11.1.1.5.2 cost, including transportation and maintenance, of all materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, appliances, office, and temporary facilities at the Site, and hand tools not owned by the OWNER, which are consumed in the performance of the Work, and cost, less market value, of such items used but not consumed which remain the property of the CONTRACTOR.

11.1.1.5.3 rentals of all construction equipment and machinery, whether rented from CONTRACTOR or others, shall be negotiated between the ENGINEER and the CONTRACTOR. These rates shall include all fuel, lubricants, insurance, etc. Equipment rental charges shall not exceed the prorated monthly rental rates listed in the current edition of the "Compilation of Rental Rates for Construction Equipment," as published by the Associated Equipment Distributors. Charges per hour shall be determined by dividing the monthly rates by 176. The rental of any such equipment and machinery shall close when the use thereof is no longer necessary for the Work.

11.1.1.5.4 sales, consumer, use, and other similar taxes related to the Work, and for which CONTRACTOR is liable, imposed by Laws and Regulations.

11.1.1.5.5 deposits lost for causes other than negligence of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable, and royalty payments and fees for permits and licenses.

11.1.1.5.6 losses and damages (and related expenses) caused by damage to the Work, not compensated by insurance of otherwise, sustained by CONTRACTOR in connection with the performance of the Work (except losses and damages with the deductible amounts of property insurance established in accordance with paragraph 5.6.4), provided such losses and damages have resulted from causes other than the negligence of CONTRACTOR, and Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable. Such losses shall include settlements made with the written consent and approval of OWNER. No such losses, damages, and expenses shall be included in the Cost of the Work for the purpose of determining CONTRACTOR's fee.

11.1.1.5.7 the cost of utilities, fuel, and sanitary facilities at the Site.

11.1.1.5.8 minor expenses such as telegrams, long distance telephone calls, telephone service at the Site, expressage, and similar petty cash items in connection with the Work.

11.1.1.5.9 when the Cost of the Work is used to determine the value of a Change Order or of a Claim, the cost of premiums for additional Bonds and insurance required because of the changes in the Work or caused by the event giving rise to the Claim.

11.1.1.5.10 when all the Work is performed on the basis of cost-plus, the costs of premiums for all Bonds and insurance CONTRACTOR is required by the Contract Documents to purchase and maintain.

11.1.2 Costs Excluded: The term Cost of the Work shall not include any of the following items:

11.1.2.1 Payroll costs and other compensation of CONTRACTOR's officers, executives, principals (of partnerships and sole proprietorships), general managers, engineers, architects, estimators, attorney, auditors, accountants, purchasing and contracting agents, expediters, timekeepers, clerks, and other personnel employed CONTRACTOR, whether at the Site or in CONTRACTOR's principal or branch office for general administration of the work and not specifically included in the agreed upon schedule of job classifications referred to in paragraph 11.1.1.1 or specifically covered by paragraph 11.1.1.4, all of which are to be considered administrative costs covered by the CONTRACTOR's fee. .

11.1.2.2 Expenses of CONTRACTOR's principal and branch offices other than CONTRACTOR's office at the Site.

11.1.2.3 Any part of CONTRACTOR's capital expenses, including interest on CONTRACTOR's capital employed for the Work and charges against CONTRACTOR for delinquent payments.

11.1.2.4 Costs due to the negligence of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable, including but not limited to, the correction of defective Work, disposal of materials or equipment wrongly supplied, and making good any damage to property.

11.1.2.5 Other overhead or general expense costs of any kind and the costs of any item not specifically and expressly included in paragraph 11.1.1 and 11.1.2.

11.1.3 CONTRACTOR's Fee: When all the Work is performed on the basis of cost-plus, CONTRACTOR's fee shall be determined as set forth in the Agreement. When the value of any Work covered by a Change Order or when a Claim for an adjustment in Contract Price is determined on the basis of Cost of the Work, CONTRACTOR's fee shall be determined as set forth in paragraph 12.1.3.

11.1.4 Documentation: Whenever the Cost of the Work for any purpose is to be determined pursuant to paragraphs 11.1.1 and 11.1.2, CONTRACTOR will establish and maintain records thereof in accordance with generally accepted accounting practices and submit in a form acceptable to ENGINEER an itemized cost breakdown together with supporting data.

11.3 Unit Price Work

11.3.1 Where the Contract Documents provide that all or part of the Work is to be Unit Price Work, initially the contract Price will be deemed to include for all Unit Price Work an amount equal to the sum of the unit price for each separately identified item of Unit Price Work times the estimated quantity of each item as indicated in the Agreement. The estimated quantities of items of Unit Price Work are not guaranteed and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids and determining an initial contract Price. Determinations of the actual quantities and classifications of Unit Price Work performed by CONTRACTOR will be made by ENGINEER subject to the provisions of paragraph 9.8.

11.3.2 Each unit price will be deemed to include an amount considered by CONTRACTOR to be adequate to cover CONTRACTOR's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.

11.3.3 OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Price in accordance with paragraph 10.5 if:

11.3.3.1 the quantity of any item of Unit Price Work performed by CONTRACTOR differs materially and significantly from the estimated quantity of such item indicated in the Agreement; and

11.3.3.2 there is no corresponding adjustment with respect any other item of Work; and

11.3.3.3 if CONTRACTOR believes that CONTRACTOR is entitled to an increase in Contract Price as a result of having incurred additional expense or OWNER believes that OWNER is entitled to a decrease in Contract Price and the parties are unable to agree as to the amount of any such increase or decrease.

ARTICLE 12.0 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT PRICE; CHANGE OF CONTRACT TIMES

12.1 Change of Contract Price

12.1.1 The Contract Price may only be changed by a Changed Order or by a Written Amendment. Any Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Price shall be based on written notice submitted by the party making the Claim to the ENGINEER and the other party to the Contract in accordance with provisions of paragraph 10.5.

12.1.2 The value of any Work covered by a Change Order or of any Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Price will be determined as follows:

12.1.2.1 where the Work involved is covered by unit prices contained in the Contract Documents, by application of such unit price to the quantities of the items involved (subject to the provisions of paragraph 11.2); or

12.1.2.2 where the Work involved is not covered by unit prices contained in the Contract Documents, by a mutually agreed lump sum (which may include an allowance for overhead and profit not necessarily in accordance with paragraph 12.1.3.2); or

12.1.2.3 where the Work involved is not covered by unit price contained in the Contract Documents and agreement to a lump sum is not reached under paragraph 12.1.2.2, on the basis of the Cost of the Work (determined as provided in paragraph 11.1) plus a CONTRACTOR's fee for overhead and profit (determined a provided in paragraph 12.1.3).

12.1.3 CONTRACTOR's Fee; The CONTRACTOR's fee for overhead and profit shall be determined as follows:

12.1.3.1 a mutually acceptable fixed fee; or

12.1.3.2 if a fixed fee is not agreed upon, then a fee based on the following percentages of the various portions of the Cost of the Work:

12.1.3.2.1 for costs incurred under paragraphs 11.1.1.1 and 11.1.1.2, the CONTRACTOR's fee shall be 15 percent;

12.1.3.2.2 for costs incurred under paragraph 11.1.1.3, the CONTRACTOR's fee shall be five percent;

12.1.3.2.3 where one or more tiers of subcontracts are on the basis of Cost of the Work plus a fee and no fixed fee is agreed upon, the intent

of paragraph 12.1.3.2. is that the Subcontractor who actually performs the Work, at whatever tier, will be paid a fee of 15 percent of the costs incurred by such Subcontractor under paragraphs 11.1.1.1 and a11.1.1.2 and that any higher tier Subcontractor and CONTRACTOR will each be paid a fee of five percent of the amount paid to the next lower tier Subcontractor;

12.1.3.2.4 no fee shall be payable on the basis of costs itemized under paragraphs 11.1.1.4, 11.1.1.5, and 11.1.2;

12.1.3.2.5 the amount of credit to be allowed by CONTRACTOR to OWNER for any change which results in a net decrease in cost will be the amount of the actual net decrease in cost plus a deduction in CONTRACTOR's fee by an amount equal to five percent of such net decrease; and

12.1.3.2.6 when both additions and credit are involved in any one change; the adjustment in CONTRACTOR's fee shall be computed on the basis of the net change in accordance with paragraphs 12.1.3.2.1 through 12.1.3.2.5, inclusive.

12.2 Change of Contract Times

12.2.1 The Contract Times (or Milestones) may only be changed by a Change Order or by a Written Amendment. Any Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be based on written notice submitted by the party making the claim to the ENGINEER and the other party to the Contract in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 10.5.

12.2.2 Any adjustment of the Contract Times (or Milestones) covered by a Change Order or of any Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) will be determined in accordance with the provisions of this Article 12.0.

12.3 Delays Beyond CONTRACTOR's Control

12.3.1 Where CONTRACTOR is prevented from completing any part of the Work within the Contract Times (or Milestones) due to delay beyond the control of CONTRACTOR, the Contract Times (or Milestones) will be extended in an amount equal to the time lost due to such delay if a Claim is made therefore as provided in paragraph 12.2.1. Delays beyond the control of CONTRACTOR shall include, but not be limited to, acts or neglect by OWNER, acts or neglect of utility owners or other CONTRACTOR’s performing work as contemplated by Article 7.0, fires, floods, epidemics, abnormal weather conditions, or acts of God.

12.4 Delays Within CONTRACTOR's Control

12.4.1 The Contract Times (or Milestones) will not be extended due to delays within the control of CONTRACTOR. Delays attributable to and within the control of a Subcontractor or Supplier shall be deemed to be delays within the control of CONTRACTOR.

12.5 Delays Beyond OWNER's and CONTRACTORS's Control

12.5.1 Where CONTRACTOR is prevented from completing any part of the Work within the Contract Times (or Milestones) due to delay beyond the control of both OWNER and CONTRACTOR, an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones) in an amount equal

to the time lost due to such delay shall be CONTRACTOR's sole and exclusive remedy for such delay.

12.6 Delay Damages

12.6.1 In no event shall OWNER or ENGINEER be liable to CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or any other person or organization, or to any surety for or employee or agent of any of them, for damages arising out of or resulting from:

12.6.1.1 delays caused by or within the control of CONTRACTOR; or

12.6.1.2 delays beyond the control of both OWNER and CONTRACTOR including but not limited to fires, floods, epidemics, abnormal weather conditions, acts of God, or acts or neglect by utility OWNER's or other CONTRACTOR's performing other work as contemplated by Article 7.0.

12.6.2 Nothing in this paragraph 12.6 bars a change in Contract Price pursuant to this Article 12.0 to compensate CONTRACTOR due to delay, interference, or disruption directly attributable to actions or in actions of OWNER or anyone for whom OWNER is responsible.

12.7 Abnormal Weather Conditions

12.7.1 Abnormal Weather Conditions for rain shall be derived from the most recent 20-year (minimum) average for the nearest NOAA weather reporting station. The mean number of days of precipitation per month of 0.10 inch or more shall establish the mean number of weather days for the period.

12.8 Liquidated Damages

12.8.1 The required completion time for the Project is as set forth in the Agreement. The CONTRACTOR is advised that the Contract times stated in the Bid Form are of the essence of the Contract. For each and every day in excess of each Contract time states in the Bid Form that the CONTRACTOR fails to complete the Work indicated, the CONTRACTOR shall pay to the OWNER the sum stated in the Bid Form as liquidated damages. The said amounts are fixed and agreed upon by and between the CONTRACTOR and the OWNER as an estimate of the actual damages which would be incurred by the OWNER.

ARTICLE 13.0 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

13.1 Notice of Defects

13.1.1 Prompt notice of all defective Work of which OWNER or ENGINEER has actual knowledge will be given to CONTRACTOR. All defective Work may be rejected, corrected, or accepted as provided in this Article 13.0.

13.2 Access to Work

13.2.1 OWNER, ENGINEER, ENGINEER's Consultants, other representative and personnel of OWNER, independent testing laboratories, and governmental agencies with jurisdictional interest will have access to the Site and the Work at reasonable times for their observation inspecting, and testing. CONTRACTOR shall provide them proper and safe conditions for such access and advise them of CONTRACTOR's Site safety procedures and programs so that they may comply therewith as applicable.

13.3 Tests and Inspections

13.3.1 CONTRACTOR shall give ENGINEER timely notice of readiness of the Work for all required inspections, tests, or approvals and shall cooperate with inspection and testing personnel to facilitate required inspections or tests.

13.3.2 OWNER shall employ and pay for the services of an independent testing laboratory to perform all inspections, tests, or approvals required by the Contract Documents except:

13.3.2.1 for inspections, tests, or approvals covered by paragraphs 13.3.3 and 13.3.4 below;

13.3.2.2 that costs incurred in connection with tests or inspections conducted pursuant to paragraph 13.4.2 shall be paid as provided in said paragraph 13.4.2; and

13.3.2.3 as otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

13.3.3 If the Contract Documents, laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or orders of any public authority having jurisdiction require any Work to be specifically inspected, tested, or approved by some public body, CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility therefore, pay all costs in connection therewith and furnish ENGINEER the required certificates of inspection, testing or approval.

13.3.4 The OWNER reserves the right to independently perform at its own expense, laboratory tests on random samples of material or performance tests on equipment delivered to the site. These tests, if made, will be conducted in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards or specification requirements. The entire shipment represented by a given sample, samples or price of equipment may be rejected on the basis of the failure of samples or pieces of equipment to meet specified test requirements. All rejected materials or equipment shall be removed from the site, whether stored or installed in the Work, and the required replacement shall be made, all at no additional cost to the OWNER.

13.3.5 If any Work (or the work of others) that is to be inspected, tested, or approved is covered by CONTRACTOR without written concurrence of ENGINEER, it must, if requested by ENGINEER, be uncovered for observation.

13.3.6 Uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.3.5 shall be at CONTRACTOR's expense unless CONTRACTOR has given ENGINEER timely notice of CONTRACTOR's intention to cover the same and ENGINEER has not acted with reasonable promptness in response to such notice.

13.4 Uncovering Work

13.4.1 If any Work is covered contrary to the written request of ENGINEER, it must, if requested by ENGINEER, be uncovered for ENGINEER's observation and replaced at CONTRACTOR's expense.

13.4.2 If ENGINEER considers it necessary or advisable that covered Work be observed by ENGINEER or inspected or tested by other, CONTRACTOR, at ENGINEER's request, shall uncover, expose, or otherwise make available for observation, inspection, or testing as ENGINEER may require, that portion of the Work in question, furnishing all necessary labor, material, and equipment. If it is found that such work is defective, CONTRACTOR shall pay all Claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, and testing, and of satisfactory

replacement or reconstruction (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others); and OWNER shall be entitled to an appropriate decrease in the Contract Price. If the parties are unable to agree as to the amount thereof, OWNER may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5. If, however, such Work is not found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones), or both, directly attributable to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, testing, replacement, and reconstruction. If the parties are unable to agree as to the amount or extent thereof, CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.05.

13.5 OWNER May Stop the Work

13.5.1 If the Work is defective, or CONTRACTOR fails to supply sufficient skilled workmen or suitable materials or equipment, or fails to furnish or perform the Work in such a way that the completed Work will conform to the Contract Documents, or if the Work interferes with the operation of the existing facility, the OWNER may order CONTRACTOR to stop, by a written order any Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated.

13.6 Correction or Removal of Defective Work

13.6.1 CONTRACTOR shall correct all defective Work, whether or not fabricated, installed, or completed, or, if the Work has been rejected by ENGINEER, remove it from the Project and replace it with Work that is not defective. CONTRACTOR shall pay all Claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such correction or removal (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others).

13.7 Correction Period

13.7.1 If within one year after the date of Substantial Completion or such longer period of time as may be prescribed by Laws or Regulations or by the terms of any applicable special guarantee required by the Contract Documents or by any specific provision of the Contract Documents, any Work is found to be defective, or if the repair of any damages to the land or areas made available for CONTRACTOR's use by OWNER or permitted by Laws and Regulations as contemplated in paragraph 6.11.1 is found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall promptly, without cost to OWNER and in accordance with OWNER's written instruction: (i) repair such defective land or areas, or (ii) correct such defective Work or, if the defective Work has been rejected by OWNER, remove it from the Project and replace it with Work that is not defective, and (iii) satisfactorily correct or repair or remove and replace any damage to other Work, to the work of others or other land or areas resulting there from. If CONTRACTOR does not promptly comply with the terms of such instructions, or in an emergency where delay would cause serious risk of loss or damage, OWNER may have the defective Work corrected or repaired or may have the rejected Work removed and replaced, and all Claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such correction or repair or such removal and replacement (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others) will be paid by CONTRACTOR.

13.7.2 In special circumstances where a particular item of equipment is placed in continuous service before Substantial Completion of all the Work, the correction period for that item may start to run from an earlier date if so provided in the Specifications or by Written Amendment.

13.7.3 Where defective Work (and damage to other Work resulting there from) has been corrected or removed and replaced under this paragraph 13.7, the correction period hereunder with respect to such Work will be extended for an additional period of one year after such correction or removal and replacement has been satisfactorily completed

13.7.4 CONTRACTOR's obligations under this paragraph 13.7 are in addition to any other obligation or warranty. The provisions of this paragraph 13.7 shall not be construed as a substitute for or a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitation or repose.

13.8 Acceptance of Defective Work

13.8.1 If, instead of requiring correction or removal and replacement of defective Work, OWNER (and, prior to ENGINEER's recommendation of final payment, ENGINEER) prefers to accept it, OWNER may do so. CONTRACTOR shall pay all Claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) attributable to OWNER's evaluation of and determination to accept such defective Work (such costs to be approved by ENGINEER as to reasonableness) and the diminished value of the Work to the extent not otherwise paid by CONTRACTOR pursuant to this sentence. If any such acceptance occurs prior to ENGINEER's recommendation of final payment, a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents with respect to the Work, and OWNER shall be entitled to an appropriate decrease in the Contract Price, reflecting the diminished value of Work so accepted. If the parties are unable to agree as to the amount thereof, OWNER may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5. If the acceptance occurs after such recommendation, an appropriate amount will be paid by CONTRACTOR to OWNER.

13.9 OWNER May Correct Defective Work

13.9.1 If CONTRACTOR fails within a reasonable time after written notice from ENGINEER to correct defective Work or to remove and replace rejected Work as required by ENGINEER in accordance with paragraph 13.6.1, or if CONTRACTOR fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or if CONTRACTOR fails to comply with any other provision of the Contract Documents, OWNER may, after seven days written notice to CONTRACTOR, correct and remedy any such deficiency.

13.9.2 In exercising the rights and remedies under this paragraph, OWNER shall proceed expeditiously. In connection with such corrective and remedial action, OWNER may exclude CONTRACTOR from all or part of the Site, take possession of all or part of the Work and suspend CONTRACTOR's services related thereto, incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the Site, and incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the Site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere. CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER, OWNER's representatives, agents and employees, OWNER's other CONTRACTOR’s, and ENGINEER and ENGINEER's Consultants access to the Site to enable OWNER to exercise the rights and remedies under this paragraph.

13.9.3 All Claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) incurred or sustained by OWNER in exercising the rights and remedies under this paragraph 13.9 will be charged against CONTRACTOR, and a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents with respect to the Work; and OWNER shall be entitled to an appropriate

decrease in the Contract Price. If the parties are unable to agree as to the amount of the adjustment, OWNER may make a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5. Such claims, costs, losses and damages will include but not be limited to all costs of repair, or replacement of work of others destroyed or damaged by correction, removal, or replacement of CONTRACTOR's defective Work.

13.9.4 CONTRACTOR shall not be allowed an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones) because of any delay in the performance of the Work attributable to the exercise by OWNER of OWNER's rights and remedies under this paragraph 13.9.

ARTICLE 14.0 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION

14.1 Schedule of Values

14.1.1 The schedule of values established as provided in paragraph 2.5.2 will serve as the basis for progress payments and will be incorporated into a form of Application for Payment acceptable to ENGINEER. Progress payments on account of Unit Price Work will be based on the number of units completed.

14.1.2 With the above submittal, the CONTRACTOR shall submit for the ENGINEER's approval, a complete breakdown of all lump sum items in the Proposal. This breakdown, modified where directed by the ENGINEER, will be used as a basis for preparing partial estimates and establishing progress payments.

14.1.3 A lump sum payment equal to three percent of the total bid price (to include all bonds, insurance, move-on expenses, etc.) will be allowed for 'mobilization' as a progress payment line item. Up to half of the cost for mobilization will be considered in the initial payment request provided that cost documentation suitable to the ENGINEER is furnished by the CONTRACTOR. Any outstanding balance of mobilization line item will be payable when the Project Work is ten percent complete as indicated by the approved progress payments.

14.2 Progress Payments

14.2.1 Applications for Payments

14.2.1.1 The effective ending date of all applications for Progress Payments shall be the 25th day of each month unless mutually agreed upon otherwise. All applications for Progress Payments will be computer-generated based on the Schedule of Values as provided in paragraph 14.1, and submitted in triplicate. The application will be generated each period by the CONTRACTOR.

14.2.1.2 Prior to final preparation of each Progress Payment, the CONTRACTOR and Resident Project Representative shall mutually measure and agree upon the quality of Work completed each period.

14.2.1.3 Partial payment for materials or equipment properly stored on-site will be made on the basis of the invoice cost of the materials or equipment provided a detailed list of the materials for which partial payment is requested and supporting copies of the invoices is attached to each Application for Progress Payment. As the work progresses, the value of materials not entered into construction will be reduced as materials or equipment are installed. At the completion of the Work, the value of stored materials not entered into construction must be zero.

14.2.1.4 The following paragraphs (i & ii) are for construction projects in North Carolina only:

14.2.1.4.1 Sales and Use Tax: With each application for Progress Payment, CONTRACTOR must furnish a certified and notarized statement setting forth the cost of the property purchased from each vendor and the amount of sales and/or use tax paid thereon. The statement shall show both the N.C. Sales Tax and the County Tax paid and shall list any payments made directly to the North Carolina Department of Revenue. Tax statements and certification shall be submitted on the forms provided in the Contract Documents. In the event the CONTRACTOR makes several purchases from the same vendor, such certified statement must indicate the invoice numbers, the inclusive dates of the invoices, the total amount of the invoices, and the sales and use taxes paid thereon. Such statement must include the cost of any tangible personal property withdrawn from the CONTRACTOR's warehouse stock and the amount of sales or use tax paid thereon by the CONTRACTOR. Similar certified statements by his subcontractors must be obtained by the prime CONTRACTOR and furnished with the Application for Progress Payment. If no tax has been paid during the pay request period, "NONE" shall be entered on the tax form.

14.2.1.4.2 Use tax may be due on construction equipment brought into North Carolina for use in the performance of contracts (NCGS §105-164.4 and 105-164.6). CONTRACTORS are also liable for payment of applicable privilege licenses (NCGS §105-54) and for payment of applicable franchise, corporate income and withholding taxes (NCGS §105-122, 105-123, 105-134, and 105-163.2).

14.2.1.5 Retainage: Retainage shall be as set forth in the Standard Contract Form or otherwise in the Contract Documents and shall be in compliance with the requirements of Laws and Regulations.

14.2.2 Review of Applications:

14.2.2.1 ENGINEER will, within 10 days after receipt of each Application for Payment, either indicate in writing his approval of payment or return the Application to CONTRACTOR indicating in writing his reasons for refusing to approve payment. In the latter case, CONTRACTOR may make the necessary correction and resubmit the Application. Within 30 days of receiving the submittal of an approvable Application for Payment, the OWNER will make partial payment to the CONTRACTOR on the basis of a duly certified approved estimate of the Work performed during the preceding period by the CONTRACTOR.

14.2.2.2 ENGINEER's recommendation of any payment requested in an Application for Payment will be based on ENGINEER's observations on the Site of the executed Work and on ENGINEER's review of the Application for Payment and the accompanying data and schedules, that to the best of ENGINEER's knowledge, information and belief:

14.2.2.2.1 the Work has progressed to the point indicated;

14.2.2.2.2 the quality of the Work is generally in accordance with the Contract Documents (subject to an evaluation of the Work as a functioning whole prior to or upon Substantial Completion, to the results of any subsequent tests called for in the Contract Documents, to a final determination of quantities and classifications for Unit Price Work under paragraph 9.8, and to any other qualifications stated in the recommendation); and

14.2.2.2.3 the conditions precedent to CONTRACTOR's being entitled to

such payment appear to have been fulfilled in so far as it is ENGINEER's responsibility to observe the Work. By recommending any such payment ENGINEER will not thereby be deemed to have represented that: (i) inspections made to check the quality or the quantity of the Work as it have been exhaustive, extended to every aspect of the Work in progress, or involved detailed inspections of the Work beyond the responsibilities specifically assigned to ENGINEER in the Contract Documents; or (ii) that there may not be other matters or issues between the parties that might entitle CONTRACTOR to be paid additionally by OWNER or entitle OWNER to withhold payment to CONTRACTOR;

14.2.2.2.4 neither ENGINEER's review of CONTRACTOR's Work for the purposes of recommending payments nor ENGINEER's recommendation of any payment, including final payment, will impose responsibility on ENGINEER to supervise, direct, or control the Work or for the means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for CONTRACTOR's failure to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to CONTRACTOR's performance of the Work;

14.2.2.2.5 ENGINEER may refuse to recommend the whole or any part of any payment if, in ENGINEER's opinion, it would be incorrect to make the representations referred to in paragraph 14.2.2.2. ENGINEER may also refuse to recommend any such payment because of subsequently discovered evidence or the results of subsequent inspections or tests, revise or revoke any such payment recommendation previously made, to such extent as may be necessary in ENGINEER's opinion to protect OWNER from loss because:

14.2.2.2.5.1 the Work is defective, or completed Work has been damaged, requiring correction or replacement;

14.2.2.2.5.2 the Contract Price has been reduced by Written Amendment or Change Orders;

14.2.2.2.5.3 OWNER has been required to correct defective Work or complete Work in accordance with paragraph 13.9; or

14.2.2.2.5.4 ENGINEER has actual knowledge of the occurrence of any of the events enumerated in paragraph 15.2.1.

14.2.3 Payment Becomes Due

14.2.3.1 Thirty days after presentation of the Application for Payment to OWNER with ENGINEER's recommendation, the amount recommended will (subject to the provisions of paragraph 14.2.4) become due, and when due will be paid by OWNER to CONTRACTOR

14.2.4 Reduction in Payment

14.2.4.1 OWNER may refuse to make payment of the full amount recommended by ENGINEER because:

14.2.4.1.1 claims have been made against OWNER on account of CONTRACTOR's performance or furnishing of the Work;

14.2.4.1.2 Liens have been filed in connection with the Work, except where

CONTRACTOR has delivered a specific Bond satisfactory to OWNER to secure the satisfaction and discharge of such Liens;

14.2.4.1.3 There are other items entitling OWNER to a set-off against the amount recommended; or

14.2.4.1.4 OWNER has actual knowledge of the occurrence of any of the events enumerated in paragraphs 14.2.2.5.1 through 14.2.2.5.3 or paragraph 15.2.1.

14.2.4.2 If OWNER refuses to make payment of the full amount recommended by ENGINEER, OWNER must give CONTRACTOR immediate written notice (with a copy to ENGINEER) stating the reasons for such action and promptly pay CONTRACTOR any amount remaining after deduction of the amount so withheld. OWNER shall promptly pay CONTRACTOR the amount so withheld, or any adjustment thereto agreed to by OWNER and CONTRACTOR, when CONTRACTOR corrects to OWNER's satisfaction the reasons for such action.

14.2.4.3 If it is subsequently determined that OWNER's refusal of payment was not justified; the amount wrongfully withheld shall be treated as an amount due as determined by paragraph 14.2.3.1.

14.3 CONTRACTOR's Warranty of Title

14.3.1 CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees that title to all Work, materials, and equipment covered by any Application for Payment, whether incorporation in the Project or not, will pass to OWNER no later than the time of payment free and clear of all Liens.

14.4 Substantial Completion:

14.4.1 CONTRACTOR may, in writing to OWNER and ENGINEER, certify that the entire Project is substantially complete and request that ENGINEER issue a certificate of Substantial Completion. Within a reasonable time thereafter, OWNER, CONTRACTOR and ENGINEER shall make an inspection of the Project to determine the status of completion. If ENGINEER and OWNER do not consider the Project substantially complete, ENGINEER will prepare and deliver to OWNER a tentative certificate of Substantial Completion and the responsibilities between OWNER and CONTRACTOR for maintenance, heat and utilities. There shall be attached to the certificate a tentative list of items to be completed or corrected before Substantial Completion, and the certificate shall fix the time within which such items shall be completed or corrected, said time to be within Contract Time.

14.4.2 OWNER shall have the right to exclude CONTRACTOR from the Site after the date of Substantial Completion, but OWNER shall allow CONTRACTOR reasonable access to complete or correct items on the tentative list.

14.5 Partial Utilization:

14.5.1 Prior to Substantial Completion of the Project, OWNER may request CONTRACTOR in writing to permit him to use a specified part of the Project which he believes he may use without significant interference with construction of the other parts of the Project. If CONTRACTOR agrees, he will certify to OWNER and ENGINEER that said part of the Project is substantially complete and request the ENGINEER to issue a certificate of Substantial completion for that part of the Project. Within a reasonable time thereafter, OWNER, CONTRACTOR, and ENGINEER shall make an inspection of that part of the Project to determine its status of completion. If ENGINEER and OWNER do not consider that it is substantially complete, ENGINEER will notify CONTRACTOR in writing giving his reasons therefore. If ENGINEER and OWNER consider that part of the Project to be substantially complete, ENGINEER will execute and deliver to OWNER and CONTRACTOR a certificate to that effect, fixing the date of Substantial Completion

as to that part of the Project, attaching thereto a tentative list of items to be completed or corrected before Substantial Completion of the entire Project and fixing the responsibility between OWNER and CONTRACTOR for maintenance, heat, and utilities as to that part of the Project. OWNER shall have the right to exclude CONTRACTOR from any part of the Project which ENGINEER has so certified to be substantially complete, but OWNER shall allow CONTRACTOR reasonable access to complete items on the tentative list.

14.5.2 The CONTRACTOR is specifically advised that payment in full for sections so completed and used by the OWNER will NOT be made until the entire Project has been completed. Partial payments for Work completed and the retainage will be handled on the basis of the ENTIRE Contract Amount as here specified. The CONTRACTOR shall account for this in his Bid and under no circumstances will occupancy and use of completed sections of the Work by the OWNER be considered as grounds for reducing the retainage withheld from the CONTRACTOR's partial payments, or for an increase in the Contract Price.

14.6 Final Inspection

14.6.1 Upon written notice from CONTRACTOR that the entire Work or an agreed portion thereof is complete, ENGINEER will promptly make a final inspection with OWNER and CONTRACTOR and will notify CONTRACTOR in writing of all particulars in which this inspection reveals that the Work is incomplete or defective. CONTRACTOR shall immediately take such measure as are necessary to complete such Work or remedy such deficiencies.

14.7 Final Payment

14.7.1 Application for Payment

14.7.1.1 After CONTRACTOR has, in the opinion of ENGINEER, satisfactorily completed all corrections identified during the final inspection and has delivered, in accordance with the Contract Documents, all maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, Bonds, certificates or other evidence of insurance certificates of inspection, marked-up record documents (as provided in paragraph 6.12), and other documents, CONTRACTOR may make application for final payment following the procedure for progress payments.

14.7.1.2 The final Application for Payment shall be accompanied (except as previously delivered) by: (i) all documentation called for in the Contract Documents; (ii) consent of the surety, if any, to final payment; and (iii) complete and legally effective releases or waivers (satisfactory to OWNER) of all Lien rights arising out of or Liens filed in connection with the Work.

14.7.1.3 In lieu of the releases or waivers of Liens specified in paragraph 14.7.1.2 and as approved by OWNER, CONTRACTOR may furnish receipts or releases in full and an affidavit of CONTRACTOR that: (i) the releases and receipts include all labor, services, material, and equipment for which a Lien could be filed; and (ii) all payrolls, material and equipment bills, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which OWNER or OWNER's property might in any way be responsible have been paid or otherwise satisfied.

14.7.2 Review of Application and Acceptance

14.7.2.1 If, on the basis of ENGINEER's observation of the Work during construction and final inspection, and ENGINEER's review of the final Application for

Payment and accompanying documentation as required by the Contract Documents, ENGINEER is satisfied that the Work has been completed and CONTRACTOR's other obligations under the Contract Documents have been fulfilled, ENGINEER will, within ten days after receipt of the final Application for Payment, indicate in writing ENGINEER's recommendation of payment and present the Application for Payment to OWNER for payment. At the same time ENGINEER will also give written notice to OWNER and CONTRACTOR that the Work is acceptable subject to the provisions of paragraph 14.9. Otherwise, ENGINEER will return the Application for Payment to CONTRACTOR, indicating in writing the reasons for refusing to recommend final payment, in which case CONTRACTOR shall make the necessary corrections and resubmit the Application for Payment.

14.7.3 Payment Becomes Due

14.7.3.1 Thirty days after the presentation to OWNER of the Application for Payment and accompanying documentation, the amount recommended by ENGINEER will become due and, when due, will be paid by OWNER to CONTRACTOR.

14.8 Final Completion Delayed

14.8.1 If, through no fault of CONTRACTOR, final completion of the Work is significantly delayed, and if ENGINEER so confirms, OWNER shall, upon receipt of CONTRACTOR's final Application for Payment and recommendation of ENGINEER, and without terminating the Agreement, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted. If the remaining balance to be held by OWNER for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than the retainage stipulated in the Agreement, and if bonds have been furnished as required in paragraph 5.1, the written consent of the surety to the payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully complete and accepted shall be submitted by CONTRACTOR to ENGINEER with the Application for such payment. Such payment shall be made under the terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

ARTICLE 15.0 - SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION

15.1 OWNER May Suspend Work

15.1.1 At any time and without cause, OWNER may suspend the Work or any portion thereof for a period of not more than 90 consecutive days by notice in writing to CONTRACTOR and ENGINEER which will fix the date on which Work will be resumed. CONTRACTOR shall resume the Work on the date so fixed. CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an adjustment in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times, or both, directly attributable to any such suspension if CONTRACTOR makes a Claim therefore as provided in paragraph 10.5.

15.2 OWNER May Terminate for Cause

15.2.1 The occurrence of any one or more of the following events will justify termination for cause:

15.2.1.1 CONTRACTOR's persistent failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, failure to supply sufficient skilled workers or suitable materials or equipment or failure to adhere to the progress schedule established under paragraph 2.7 as adjusted from time to time pursuant to paragraph 6.4);

15.2.1.2 CONTRACTOR's disregard of Laws or Regulations of any public body having jurisdiction;

15.2.1.3 CONTRACTOR's disregard of the authority of ENGINEER; or

15.2.1.4 CONTRACTOR's violation in any substantial way of any provisions of the Contract Documents.

15.2.2 If one or more of the events identified in paragraph 15.2.1 occur, OWNER may, after giving CONTRACTOR (and the surety, if any) seven days written notice, terminate the services of CONTRACTOR, exclude CONTRACTOR from the Site, and take possession of the Work, incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the Site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere, and finish the Work as OWNER may deem expedient. In such case, CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to receive any further payment until the Work is finished. If the unpaid balance of the Contract Price exceeds all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) sustained by OWNER arising out of or relating to completing the Work, such excess will be paid to CONTRACTOR. If such claims, costs, losses, and damages exceed such unpaid balance, CONTRACTOR shall pay the difference to OWNER. Such claims, costs, losses, and damages incurred by OWNER will be reviewed by ENGINEER as to their reasonableness and, when so approved by ENGINEER, incorporated in a Change Order. When exercising any rights or remedies under this paragraph OWNER shall not be required to obtain the lowest price for the Work performed.

15.3 OWNER May Terminate For Convenience

15.3.1 Upon seven days written notice to CONTRACTOR, OWNER may, without cause and without prejudice to any other right or remedy of OWNER, elect to terminate the Contract. In such case, CONTRACTOR shall be paid (without duplication of any items):

15.3.1.1 for completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the contract Documents prior to the effective date of termination.

15.3.2 CONTRACTOR shall not be paid on account of loss of anticipated profits or revenue or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from such termination.

15.4 CONTRACTOR May Stop Work or Terminate

15.4.1 If, through no act or fault of CONTRACTOR, the Work is suspended for more than 90 consecutive days by OWNER or under an order of court or other public authority, or ENGINEER fails to act on any Application for Payment within 30 days after it is submitted, or OWNER fails for 30 days to pay CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined to be due, then CONTRACTOR may, upon seven days written notice to OWNER and ENGINEER, and provided OWNER or ENGINEER do not remedy such suspension or failure within that time, terminate the Contract and recover from OWNER payment on the same terms as provided in paragraph 15.3. In lieu of terminating the Contract and without prejudice to any other right remedy, if ENGINEER has failed to act on an Application for Payment within 30 days after it is submitted, or OWNER has failed for 30 days after it is submitted, or OWNER has failed for 30 days to pay

CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined to be due, CONTRACTOR may, seven days after written notice to OWNER and ENGINEER, stop the Work until payment is made of all such amounts due CONTRACTOR, including interest thereon. The provisions of this paragraph 15.4 are not intended to preclude CONTRACTOR from making a Claim under paragraph 10.5 for an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times or otherwise for expenses or damage directly attributable to CONTRACTOR's stopping the Work as permitted by this paragraph.

15.5 Assignment of Contract

15.5.1 CONTRACTOR shall not assign, transfer, convey or otherwise dispose of the Contract, or of his legal right, title, or interest in or to the same or to any part thereof, without the prior written consent of the OWNER. CONTRACTOR shall not assign by power of attorney or otherwise any monies due him and payable under this Contract without the prior written consent of the OWNER. Such consent, if given, will in no way relieve the CONTRACTOR from any of the obligations of this Contract. OWNER shall not be bound to abide by or observe the requirements of any such assignment.

ARTICLE 16.0 - DISPUTE RESOLUTION

16.1 Methods and Procedures

16.1.1 Dispute resolution methods and procedures, if any, shall be as set forth in these General Conditions, in the Standard Form Contract, or otherwise in the Contract Documents. If no method and procedure has been set forth, and subject to the provisions of paragraph 9.9 and 10.5, OWNER and CONTRACTOR may exercise such rights or remedies as either may otherwise have under the Contract Documents or by Laws or Regulations in respect of any dispute.

This page intentionally left blank.

SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

Article 1— Definitions....1

Article 2— Preliminary Matters....2

Article 3— Contract Documents: Intent, Requirements, Reuse....2

Article 4— Availability of lands; subsurface and physical conditions; reference points....3

Article 5— Bonds and Insurance....3

Article 6— Contractor's Responsibilities....3

Article 7— Other Work....4

Article 8— Owner's Responsibilities....4

Article 9— Engineer's Status During Construction....4

Article 10— Changes to the Contract....4

Article 11— Cost of Work; Unit Price Work....4

Article 12— Change of contract price; change of contract terms....4

Article 13— Tests and Inspections; Correction, Removal, or Acceptance of Defective Work....4

Article 14— Payments to Contractor and Completions....4

Article 15— Suspension of Work and Termination....5

Article 16— dispute Resolution....5

SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

These Supplementary Conditions amend or supplement the General Conditions. The General Conditions remain in full force and effect except as amended.

The terms used in these Supplementary Conditions have the meanings stated in the General Conditions. Additional terms, if any, used in these Supplementary Conditions have the meanings stated below, which are applicable to both the singular and plural thereof.

The paragraph address system used in these Supplementary Conditions is the same as the paragraph address system used in the General Conditions, with the prefix "SC" added—for example, "Paragraph SC-4.05."

ARTICLE 1—DEFINITIONS

SC-1.1.21 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 1.1.21 and replace with the following new paragraph:

ENGINEER – The entity named in the Bid Advertisement / Invitation to Bid.

SC-1.1.22 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 1.1.22

SC-1.1.44 Add the following to Paragraph 1.1.44:

Trucking companies, shipping companies, delivery firms, consultants, construction equipment rental companies furnishing personnel to operate and/or maintain the rented equipment, and entities performing testing or inspection retained by Contractor or any Subcontractor are considered to be Subcontractors. However, firms and companies that are Subcontractors are not limited to those that provide these services.

SC-1.1.47 Add the following to Paragraph 1.1.47:

Entities that rent construction equipment or machinery, but are not incorporated into the Work, are considered to be Suppliers. However, firms and companies that are Suppliers are not limited to rental entities.

ARTICLE 2—PRELIMINARY MATTERS

2.5 *Before Starting Construction*

SC-2.5.2 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 2.5.2 and replace with the following new paragraph:

Preliminary Schedules: Within ten days after the Effective Date of the Agreement (unless otherwise specified in the General Requirements), CONTRACTOR shall submit to ENGINEER for its timely review:

2.5.2.1 A Preliminary Progress Schedule complying with the requirements of Specifications Section 01 32 00 – Construction Progress Schedule.

2.5.2.2 A Schedule of Submittals complying with the requirements of Specifications Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2.5.2.3 A Preliminary Schedule of Values complying with the requirements of Specifications Section 01 29 73.

2.7 *Initial Acceptance of Schedules*

SC-2.7.1.1 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 2.7.1.1 and replace with the following new paragraph:

The Preliminary Progress Schedule will be acceptable to ENGINEER if it complies with Specifications Section 01 32 00 – Construction Progress Schedule.

SC-2.7.1.2 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 2.7.1.2 and replace with the following new paragraph:

The Schedule of Submittals will be acceptable to ENGINEER if it complies with Specifications Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

SC-2.7.1.3 Delete in its entirety Paragraph 2.7.1.3 and replace with the following new paragraph:

The Preliminary Schedule of Values will be acceptable to ENGINEER if it complies with Specifications Section 01 29 73 – Schedule of Values.

ARTICLE 3—CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: INTENT, REQUIREMENTS, REUSE

3.1 Intent

SC-3.1.4 Add the following new paragraphs immediately after Paragraph 3.1.3:

The Specifications and other verbal components of the Contract Documents may vary in form, format, and style. Some Specification sections are written in varying degrees of streamlined or declarative style and some Specifications sections may, in comparison, employ a more-narrative style. Omissions of such words and phrases as "Contractor shall," "in conformity with," "as shown," or "as specified" are intentional in streamlined language in the Contract Documents. Omitted words and phrases are incorporated by inference. Similar types of provisions may appear in various parts of a Specifications section or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. Contractor shall not attempt to take advantage of any variation of form, format or style in Change Proposal(s) and Claim(s).

Cross referencing of Specification sections in a Specifications section’s heading "Related Sections includes, but are not necessarily limited to: “and elsewhere within each Specifications section is provided as an aid and convenience to Contractor. Contractor shall not rely on cross referencing indicated and is responsible for coordinating the entire Work and providing a complete Project

whether or not cross referencing is provided in each Specifications section or whether or not cross referencing is complete.

ARTICLE 4—AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 5—BONDS AND INSURANCE

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 6—CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

SC-6.2 Add the following paragraph immediately after Paragraph 6.2.2:

6.2.3 Regular working hours will be 7:00 AM – 6:00 PM, Monday through Friday.

SC-6.21.2 Add the following paragraph immediately after Paragraph 6.21.1:

Comply with all requirements of Specifications Section 01 78 23 Operations and Maintenance Data.

SC-6.22 Add the following paragraph immediately after Paragraph 6.21

Delegation of Professional Design Services

A. Owner may require Contractor to provide professional design services for a portion of the Work by express delegation in the Contract Documents. Such delegation will specify the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy, and the Submittals that Contractor must furnish to Engineer with respect to the Owner-delegated design.

B. Contractor shall cause such Owner-delegated professional design services to be provided pursuant to the professional standard of care by a properly licensed design professional, whose signature and seal must appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, and Submittals prepared by such design professional. Such design professional must issue all certifications of design required by Laws and Regulations.

C. If a Shop Drawing or other Submittal related to the Owner-delegated design is prepared by Contractor, a Subcontractor, or others for submittal to Engineer, then such Shop Drawing or other Submittal must bear the written approval of Contractor's design professional when submitted by Contractor to Engineer

D. Owner and Engineer shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy, and completeness of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by the design professionals retained or employed by Contractor under an Owner-delegated design, subject to the professional standard of care and the performance and design criteria stated in the Contract Documents.

E. Pursuant to this Paragraph 6.22, Engineer's review, approval, and other determinations regarding design drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, and other Submittals furnished by Contractor pursuant to an Owner-delegated design will be only for the following

limited purposes:

1. Checking for conformance with the requirements of this Paragraph 6.22;

2. Confirming that Contractor (through its design professionals) has used the performance and design criteria specified in the Contract Documents; and

3. Establishing that the design furnished by Contractor is consistent with the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

F. Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of performance or design criteria specified by Owner or Engineer.

G. Contractor is not required to provide professional services in violation of applicable Laws and Regulations.

ARTICLE 7—OTHER WORK

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 8—OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 9—ENGINEER'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 10—CHANGES TO THE CONTRACT

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 11—COST OF WORK; UNIT PRICE WORK

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 12—CHANGE OF CONTRACT PRICE; CHANGE OF CONTRACT TERMS

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 13—TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL, OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 14—PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETIONS

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 15—SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article.

ARTICLE 16—DISPUTE RESOLUTION

No Supplementary Conditions in this Article

SECTION 01 11 00
SUMMARY OF WORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. The Work is located at the following Site:

1. Site Name: Rock Hill Church Tank Site

2. Address: 395 Stagecoach Road NW
Concord, NC 28027

B. The Work to be performed under this Contract includes, but is not limited to, constructing the Work described below and all appurtenances related to the Work. The Work shall be as follows:

1. Construction of Pump station

   a. Regrading around pump station building

   b. Placement of concrete for pump station foundation

   c. Construction of pump station building

   d. Placement of sidewalk around pump station building

   e. Placement of a new gravel drive

   f. Placement of concrete for generator pad

   g. Placement of concrete for transformer pad

2. Installation of approximately 1,223 linear feet of 24”, 20”, 16”, 12” and 8” ductile iron pipe and fittings.

3. Installation of valves of various sizes:

   a. Five (5) gate valves

   b. Four (4) butterfly valves

   c. Five (5) Air Release Valves

4. Installation of one Precast Flow Meter Vault

5. Installation of two (2) Air Release Valve manholes.

11-18-20

1.02 CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS, THIS PROJECT

A. The Contracts under which the Project will be constructed are:

1. Work specified in Divisions 01 through 46 (inclusive) of the Specifications.

2. Work shown in the set of Contract Drawings entitled “Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station”, dated January 2025.

1.03 CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS, OTHER PROJECTS (NOT USED)

1.04 WORK BY OTHERS (NOT USED)

1.05 WORK BY OWNER

A. Owner will perform the following in connection with the work:

1. Operate all existing valves, gates, pumps, equipment, and appurtenances that will affect Owner’s operation, unless otherwise specified or indicated.

1.06 OWNER-FURNISHED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. See Section 01 15 00 for Owner-furnished equipment and materials.

1.07 OWNER ASSIGNED PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS (NOT USED)

1.08 OWNER PRE-SELECTED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Items of equipment and material to be provided by Contractor that have been pre-selected and with Bid Form price listed:

1. N/A

B. Contractor shall provide equipment and material in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.09 SEQUENCE AND PROGRESS OF WORK (NOT USED)

1.10 CONTRACTOR’S USE OF SITE

A. Contractors’ use of the Site shall be confined to the areas shown. Contractors shall share use of the Site with other contractors and others specified in this Section.

B. All activities performed by the Contractor, including storage and laydown, shall be confined to within the Limits of Disturbance (LOD) which is demarcated on the Contractor Drawings.

C. Contractor shall move stored products that interfere with operations of Owner, other contractors, or others performing work for Owner.

1.11 EASEMENTS AND RIGHTS-OF-WAY

A. Easements and rights-of-way will be provided by Owner in accordance with the General Conditions. Confine construction operations to within Owner's property, public rights-of-way, easements obtained by Owner, and the limits shown. Use care in placing construction tools, equipment, excavated materials, and products to be incorporated into the Work to avoid damaging property and interfering with traffic. Do not enter private property outside the construction limits without permission from the owner of the property.

1.12 NOTICES TO OWNERS AND AUTHORITIES OF PROPERTIES ADJACENT TO THE WORK

A. Notify owners of adjacent property and utilities when execution of the Work may affect their property, facilities, or use of property.

B. When it is necessary to temporarily obstruct access to property, or when utility service connection will be interrupted, provide notices sufficiently in advance to enable affected persons to provide for their needs. Conform notices to Laws and Regulations and, whether delivered orally or in writing, include appropriate information concerning the interruption and instructions on how to limit inconvenience caused.

C. Notify utility owners and other concerned entities at least 48 hours prior to cutting or closing streets or other traffic areas or excavating near Underground Facilities or exposed utilities.

1.13 SALVAGE OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Existing equipment and materials removed and not shown or specified to be reused in the Work will be Contractor's property, except the following items that shall remain Owner's property:

1. NONE

B. Existing equipment and material removed by Contractor shall not be reused in the Work, except where specified or indicated.

C. Carefully remove in manner to prevent damage all equipment and materials specified or indicated to be salvaged and reused or to remain property of Owner. Store and protect salvaged items specified or indicated to be used in the Work. Replace in kind or with new items equipment, materials, and components damaged in removal, storage, or handling through carelessness or improper procedures.

D. Contractor may furnish and install new items, with Engineer's approval, instead of those specified or indicated to be salvaged and reused, in which case such removed items will become Contractor's property.

1.14 PARTIAL UTILIZATION BY OWNER

A. Owner reserves the right to enter and use portions of the Work prior to Certificate of Substantial Completion is issued by Engineer.

B. Owner shall be responsible to prevent premature connections by private and public parties, persons or groups of persons, before Engineer issues Certificate of Substantial Completion for the portion of Work being partially utilized by Owner.

C. Contractor shall cooperate with Owner, Owner's agents, and Engineer to accelerate completion of Work designed for partial utilization by Owner in accordance with Contractor's progress schedule.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 14 00
COORDINATION WITH OWNER'S OPERATIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Requirements for coordinating with Owner's operations during the Work and included requirements for tie-ins and shutdowns necessary to complete the Work without impact on Owner's operations except as allowed in this Section.

2. Contractor shall provide labor, materials, tools, equipment and incidentals shown, specified and required to coordinate with Owner's operations during the Work.

B. General Requirements:

1. Except for shutdowns specified in this Section, perform the Work such that Owner's facility remains in continuous satisfactory operation during the Project. Schedule and conduct the Work such that the Work does not impede Owner's production or processes, create potential hazards to operating equipment and personnel, reduce the quality of the facility's products or effluent, or cause odors or other nuisances.

2. Work not specifically covered in this Section or in referenced Sections may, in general, be completed at any time during regular working hours in accordance with the General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions, subject to the requirements in this Section.

3. Contractor has the option of providing additional temporary facilities that can eliminate or mitigate a constraint without additional cost to Owner, provided such additional temporary facilities: do not present hazards to the public, personnel, structures, and equipment; that such additional temporary facilities do not adversely affect Owner's ability to comply with Laws and Regulations, permits, and operating requirements; that such temporary facilities do not generate or foster the generation of odors and other nuisances; and that requirements of the Contract Documents are fulfilled.

4. Coordinate shutdowns with Owner and Engineer. When possible, combine multiple tie-ins into a single shutdown to minimize impacts on Owner's operations and processes.

5. Do not shut off or disconnect existing operating systems, unless accepted by Engineer in writing. Operation of existing equipment will be by Owner unless otherwise specified or indicated. Where necessary for the Work, Contractor shall

06/20/2022

seal or bulkhead Owner-operated gates and valves to prevent leakage that may affect the Work, Owner's operations, or both. Provide temporary watertight plugs, bulkheads, and line stops as required. After completing the Work, remove seals, plugs, bulkhead, and line stops to satisfaction of Engineer.

C. Related Sections:

1. Section 01 11 00 – Summary of Work

2. Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures

3. Section 01 73 00 – Demolition and Execution of Work

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions: A "shutdown" is when a portion of the normal operation of Owner's facility, whether equipment, systems, piping, or conduit, has to be temporarily suspended or taken out of service to perform the Work.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Review installation procedures under other Specification sections and coordinate Work that must be performed with or before the Work specified in this Section.

2. Notify other contractors in advance of Work requiring coordination with Owner's operations, to provide other contractors sufficient time for work included in their contracts that must be installed with or before Work specified in this Section.

3. When possible, combine multiple tie-ins into a single shutdown to minimize impacts on Owner's operations and processes.

B. Pre-Shutdown Meetings: Contractor shall schedule and conduct meeting with Owner and Engineer prior to scheduling shutdown. Pre-shutdown meetings shall be no later than two (2) calendar weeks before of the scheduled shutdown.

C. Sequencing:

1. Perform the Work in the specified sequence. Certain phases or stages of the Work may require working 24-hour days or work during hours outside of regular working hours. Work may be accelerated from a later stage to an earlier stage if Owner's operations are not adversely affected by proposed sequence change, with Engineer's acceptance. Stages specified in this Section are sequential in performance of the Work.

D. Scheduling:

1. Work that may interrupt normal operations shall be accomplished at times convenient to Owner.

2. Furnish at the Site, in close proximity to the shutdown and tie-in work areas, tools, equipment, spare parts and materials, both temporary and permanent, necessary to successfully complete the shutdown. Complete to the extent possible, prefabrication of piping and other assemblies prior to the associated shutdown Demonstrate to Engineer's satisfaction that Contractor has complied with these requirements before commencing the shutdown.

3. If Contractor's operations cause an unscheduled interruption of Owner's operations, immediately re-establish satisfactory operation for Owner.

4. Unscheduled shutdowns or interruptions of continued safe and satisfactory operation of Owner's facilities that result in fines or penalties by authorities having jurisdiction shall be paid solely by Contractor if, in Engineer's opinion, Contractor did not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, or was negligent in the Work, or did not exercise proper precautions in conducting the Work.

5. Work requiring service interruptions for tie-ins shall be performed during scheduled shutdowns.

6. Temporary, short-term shutdowns of smaller piping, conduits, equipment, and systems may be required. Coordinate requirements for such shutdowns with Engineer and Owner.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals:

1. Substitute Sequence Submittal: When deviation from specified sequence is proposed, provide submittal explaining in detail the proposed sequence change and its effects, including evidence that Owner's operations will not be adversely affected by proposed change. List benefits of proposed sequence change, including benefits to Progress Schedule. Submit in accordance with Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

2. Shutdown Planning Submittal:

a. For each shutdown, submit an inventory of labor and materials required to perform the shutdown and tie-in tasks, an estimate of time required to accomplish the complete shutdown including time for Owner to take down and start up existing equipment, systems, or conduits, and written description of steps required to complete the Work associated with the shutdown.

b. Furnish submittal to Engineer at least thirty (30) calendar days prior to proposed shutdown start date. Do not start shutdown until obtaining Engineer's acceptance of shutdown planning submittal.

3. Shutdown Notification: After acceptance of shutdown planning submittal and prior to starting the shutdown, provide written notification to Owner and Engineer of date and time each shutdown is to start. Provide notification at least seventy-two (72) hours in advance of each shutdown.

1.05 SITE CONDITIONS

A. General Constraints: Specified in the Contract Documents are the sequence and shutdown durations, where applicable, for Owner's equipment, systems, and conduits that are to be taken out of service temporarily for the Work. New equipment, materials, and systems may be used by Owner after the specified field quality controls and testing are successfully completed and the materials or equipment are Substantially Complete.

B. The following constraints apply to coordination with Owner's operations:

1. Operational Access: Owner's personnel shall have access to equipment and areas that remain in operation.

2. Schedule and perform equipment and system start-ups for Monday through Thursday. Equipment and systems shall not be placed into operation on Friday, Saturday, and Sunday without prior approval of Owner.

3. Dead End Valves or Pipe: Provide blind flanges, watertight bulkheads, or valves at temporary and permanent terminuses of pipes and conduits. Blind flanges and bulkheads shall be suitable for the service and braced and blocked, as required, or otherwise restrained as directed by Engineer. Temporary valves shall be suitable for their associated service. Where valve is provided at permanent terminus of pipe or conduit, also provide on downstream side of valve a blind flange with drain/flushing connection.

4. Owner will assist Contractor in dewatering process tanks, basins, conduits, and other work areas to be dewatered for shutdowns. Maintain clean and dry work area by pumping and properly disposing of fluid that accumulates in work areas.

5. Draining and Cleaning of Conduits, Tanks, and Basins: Unless otherwise specified, Owner will dewater process tanks and basins at beginning of each shutdown. Owner will flush and wash down tanks and basins with plant non-potable water. Draining and cleaning conducted by Contractor shall be as specified below:

a. Contractor shall remove liquids and solids and dispose of them at appropriate location at the Site as directed by Engineer. Contents of pipes, tanks, basins, and conduits undergoing modifications shall be transferred to existing process tanks or conduits at the Site with capacity sufficient to

accept such discharges, using hoses, piping, pumps, or other means provided by Contractor. Discharge of fluids across floors is not allowed.

b. If drainage point is not available on the piping or conduit to be drained, provide a wet tap using tapping saddle and valve or other method approved by Engineer. Uncontrolled spillage of pipe's or conduit's contents is not allowed.

c. Spillage shall be brought to Engineer's attention immediately, both verbally and in writing, and reported in accordance with Laws and Regulations. Contractor shall wash down spillage to floor drains or sumps and flush the system to prevent clogging and odors. If spillage is not suitable for discharge to the drainage system, such as chemical spills, as determined by Engineer, Contractor shall remove spillage by other method, such as vactor truck, acceptable to Engineer.

6. Electrical, Control, Communication, and Monitoring Systems:

a. Owner's existing SCADA system and fiber optic network shall remain functional, subject to the constraints herein.

b. Unless Contractor elects to use existing fiber and/or temporary fiber, at his/her discretion, at least one communication path through the new dual redundant fiber optic ring to all communication points shall be in place at all times until substantial completion.

c. Each process area shall be permitted to have a single, non-concurrent, scheduled outage for the purpose of making PLC panel hardware modifications, loading the associated PLC logic, and its field testing/demonstration. Field testing and demonstration shall immediately follow modifications in an effort to keep scheduled shutdowns as short as possible. A fourteen (14) calendar day period of no SCADA outage shall proceed each scheduled shutdown.

1.06 SUGGESTED SEQUENCE OF WORK

A. Perform the Work in the sequence suggested or as otherwise approved by Engineer. Certain phases or stages of the Work may require working 24-hour days or work during hours outside of regular working hours. Work may be accelerated from a later stage to an earlier stage if Owner's operations are not adversely affected by proposed sequence change, and with Engineer's acceptance. Stages specified in this Section are sequence-dependent.

1. Stage 1: Transfer existing Rock Hill Church storage tank power and SCADA to temporary connections.

2. Stage 2: Construct new pump station and piping.

3. Stage 3: Complete tie-ins of piping to existing waterlines.

4. Stage 4: Commission new pump station and piping.

5. Stage 5: Transfer temporary power and SCADA connections for Rock Hill Church storage tank to permanent connections at new pump station.

1.07 TIE-INS

A. Table 01 14 00-A in this Section lists connections by Contractor to existing facilities. Table 01 14 00-A may not include all tie-ins required for the Work; Contractor shall perform all tie-ins required to complete the Work. For tie-ins not included in Table 01 14 00-A, obtain requirements for tie-ins from Engineer.

1.08 SHUTDOWNS

A. General:

1. Work that may interrupt normal operations shall be accomplished at times convenient to Owner.

2. Furnish at the Site, in close proximity to the shutdown and tie-in work areas, tools, equipment, spare parts and materials, both temporary and permanent, necessary to successfully complete the shutdown. Complete to the extent possible, prefabrication of piping and other assemblies prior to the associated shutdown. Demonstrate to Engineer's satisfaction that Contractor has complied with these requirements before commencing the shutdown.

3. If Contractor's operations cause an unscheduled interruption of Owner's operations, immediately re-establish satisfactory operation for Owner.

4. Unscheduled shutdowns or interruptions of continued safe and satisfactory operation of Owner's facilities that result in fines or penalties by authorities having jurisdiction shall be paid solely by Contractor if, in Engineer's opinion, Contractor did not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, or was negligent in the Work, or did not exercise proper precautions in conducting the Work.

5. Shutdowns shall be in accordance with Table 01 14 00-B of this Section. Work requiring service interruptions for tie-ins shall be performed during scheduled shutdowns.

6. Temporary, short-term shutdowns of smaller piping, conduits, equipment, and systems may not be included in Table 01 14 00-B. Coordinate requirements for such shutdowns with Engineer and Owner.

B. Site Access Constraints:

1. Owner shall have roadway access to the Rock Hill Church storage tank at all times.

C. Shutdowns of Electrical Systems: Comply with Laws and Regulations, including the National Electric Code. Contractor shall lock out and tag circuit breakers and switches operated by Owner and shall verify that affected cables and wires are de-energized to ground potential before shutdown Work is started. Upon completion of shutdown Work, remove the locks and tags and notify Engineer that facilities are available for use.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. In addition to requirements of this Section, conform to requirements of Section 01 73 00 – Demolition and Execution of Work.

B. Refer to Table 01 14 00-A in this Section for detailed tie-in schedule.

3.02 DETAILED SHUTDOWN REQUIREMENTS:

A. Prior to Typical Shutdown:

1. Obtain Engineer’s acceptance of proposed shutdown planning submittal and shutdown notification submittal.

2. Submittal and approval of all shop drawings required.

3. Coordinate with plant operations on timing of shutdown and provide required notice to Owner.

4. Bring necessary piping, couplings, valves, equipment, and appurtenances to the work areas.

5. Assist Owner in preparing to take equipment, tanks, basins, and conduits temporarily out of service.

6. Coordinate other tie-ins to be performed simultaneously.

7. Install and ensure functionality of temporary systems as applicable.

B. During Typical Shutdown:

1. Owner will dewater tanks and basins.

2. Remove existing equipment, piping, and accessories as required.

3. Verify operation of new equipment, materials, and systems.

4. Following approval from Engineer, return equipment and system to operation with Owner.

C. Following Typical Shutdown:

1. Verify functionality of equipment and system.

2. Verify operation of new equipment and systems, and verify that joints in piping are watertight or gastight as applicable.

3. Repair joints that are not watertight or gastight as applicable.

4. Remove temporary systems as applicable.

Table 01 14 00-A
Schedule of Tie-Ins

Tie-In No.	New Line Size and Service	Existing (Connecting) Line Size & Service	Tie-In Building/Location	Construction Stage	Remarks
1	24” PW	24” PW	Tank Site	3	Hot Tap
2	12” PW	12” PW	Rock Hill Church Road	3	Wet Tap
3	8” PW	8” PW	Rock Hill Church Road	3	Wet Tap

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 15 00

OWNER FURNISHED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Provide all labor, materials and equipment necessary to accept, store on site, install, adjust, start-up, test, and place into satisfactory operation the Owner-furnished equipment and materials as specified herein. The equipment shall be installed at the locations indicated on the Contract Drawings.

B. Install and field test all equipment in strict accordance with the equipment manufacturers' installation drawings, instructions, and recommendations.

C. Equipment and materials furnished by the Owner includes:

Owner-Furnished Equipment Schedule

Item No.	Description	Contract Drawing(s)
1	Generator (GEN-1000)	E102
2	Automatic Transfer Switch (ATS-SWBD-1000))	E100

D. Available data sheets and other details for the Owner-furnished equipment and materials are included in Appendix B.

1.02 SCHEDULING, DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND INSTALLATION OF THE EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor's responsibility for the Owner-furnished equipment shall begin upon Contractor's receipt and acceptance. Contractor shall carefully examine all equipment and advise Owner of any defective items prior to acceptance. Owner may accept rejected items and authorize their installation.

B. Secure, protect, bond, and insure all Owner-furnished equipment upon receipt and acceptance.

C. The Contractor shall include in monthly schedule updates the date(s) on which the Owner is to deliver Owner-furnished equipment.

D. At the time of delivery of equipment to be installed, the Work shall be completed to the extent that the equipment may be set in their designated, permanent location and position.

PART 2 – EQUIPMENT

2.01 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all equipment and materials required for the interface with the Owner-furnished equipment including piping, fittings, conduit, wire, etc.

B. It is the Contractor's responsibility to furnish all equipment and materials not indicated to be furnished by the Owner but required to make the Owner-furnished equipment part of a complete and operable system.

C. Contractor is responsible for furnishing and installing all pipe supports, brackets, anchorage, flange bolts, nuts, gaskets, washers, and fasteners required for installation of Owner-furnished equipment.

PART 3 -- EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall move, lift, assemble, install, and test all Owner-furnished equipment in strict accordance with recommendations of the equipment manufacturers.

B. Installation shall be performed in the presence of qualified, technical representatives of the manufacturers who, upon completion of installation, shall certify that all equipment has been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C. The Owner-furnished equipment do not include field services of any kind by the equipment manufacturer or equipment manufacturer's representative. The Contractor is responsible for furnishing and paying for the required field services. Coordinate delivery, installation, and testing schedules with Owner and the equipment manufacturers.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 20 00
MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Items listed in this Section refer to and are the same pay items listed in the Bid Form and constitute all pay items for completing the Work.

2. Compensation for all services, items, materials, and equipment shall be included in prices stipulated for lump sum and unit price pay items listed in this Section and included in the Contract.

3. No direct or separate payment will be made for providing miscellaneous temporary or accessory works, bonds, insurance, or other requirements of the General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, General Requirements, and other requirements of the Contract Documents.

4. Each lump sum and unit bid price shall include an amount considered by Contractor to be adequate to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.

B. Related Sections:

1. Payments to Contractor: Refer to General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Agreement.

2. Changes to Contract Price: Refer to General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Section 01 26 00 – Contract Modification Procedures.

3. Schedule of Values: Refer to General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Section 01 29 73 – Schedule of Values.

1.02 ENGINEER'S ESTIMATE OF QUANTITIES

A. ENGINEER'S and OWNER's estimated quantities for unit price pay items as listed in the Bid Form, if any, are approximate only and are included solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids. Owner does not expressly or by implication agree that the nature of the materials encountered below the surface of the ground or the actual quantities of material encountered or required will correspond therewith and reserves the right to increase or decrease any quantity or to eliminate any quantity as Owner may deem necessary. Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment in a unit bid price as a result of any change in an estimated quantity and agrees to accept the aforesaid unit bid prices

as complete and total compensation for any additions caused by changes or alterations in the Work ordered by Owner.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Contractor shall include all additional Work items, services, goods, resources, and manpower necessary for installation of the Work to provide a completely functional system in accordance with the Contract Documents. Contractor shall include these costs associated with providing a completely functional system within the listed items on the Bid Form and as specified herein.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 25 00
SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Procedural requirements for product substitutions.

2. Procedural requirements for substitute construction methods or procedures, when construction methods or procedures are specified.

B. Requests for substitutions of equipment and material shall conform to the requirements of the General Conditions and Supplemental Conditions.

C. Procedure for substitution requests and review including evaluation, reimbursement, acceptance, and determination shall be in accordance with General Conditions and Supplemental Conditions.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions: The following words or terms are not defined but, when used in this Section, have the following meaning:

1. “Acceptable Manufacturers” considered for substitution include Suppliers of equipment and material of proven reliability, and as manufactured by reputable manufacturers having experience in the production of specified equipment and material. Equipment furnished shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the industry accepted practices and shall operate satisfactorily when installed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

2. “Products” includes materials, equipment, machinery, components, fixtures, systems, and other goods incorporated in the Work. Products do not include machinery and equipment used for preparing, fabricating, conveying, erecting, or installing the Work. Products include Owner-furnished goods incorporated in the Work where use of such goods is specifically required in the Contract Documents.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Contractor’s Responsibilities: In submitting request for substitution, Contractor represents that:

1. Contractor has investigated proposed substitution and determined that it is equivalent to item, product, method, or procedure specified, as applicable.

05-04-20

2. Contractor will provide the same or better guarantees or warranties for proposed substitution as for the specified product, manufacturer, method, or procedure, as applicable.

3. Contractor waives all Claims for additional costs or extension of time related to proposed substitution that subsequently may become apparent.

4. Contractor shall submit a minimum of five (5) successful installations of the manufacturer's equipment of the same model, size, and type as specified in the Contract Documents.

5. All costs associated with incorporation of a substitution shall be borne by the Contractor, including but not limited to, the cost of redesign and construction provisions.

B. Engineer's Review: A proposed substitution will not be accepted for review if:

1. Approval would require changes in design concept or a substantial revision of the Contract Documents.

2. Approval would delay completion of the Work or the work of other contractors.

3. Substitution request is indicated or implied on a Shop Drawing or other submittal, or on a request for interpretation or clarification, and is not accompanied by Contractor's formal request for substitution.

4. If the substitution is not clearly substantiated by performance criteria as providing an equivalent or superior performing installation.

5. All costs associated with Engineer's review of a substitution shall be recorded by Engineer, submitted to Owner, and charged to Contractor.

C. If Engineer does not approve the proposed substitute, Contractor shall provide the specified product, manufacturer, method, or procedure, as applicable.

D. Approval of a substitution request will not relieve Contractor from requirement for submitting Shop Drawings as set forth in the Contract Documents.

E. Product Substitutions Procedure:

1. Requests for approval of substitute products or items will be considered for a period of thirty (30) calendar days after the Effective Date of the Agreement. After end of specified period, requests will be considered only in case of unavailability of a specified product or other conditions beyond Contractor's control.

2. Submit copies of request for substitution.

3. Submit separate request for each substitution.

4. In addition to requirements of the General Conditions and information required on substitution request forms, include with request the following:

    a. Product identification, including manufacturer's name and address.

    b. Manufacturer's literature with product description, performance and test data, and reference standards with which product complies.

    c. Samples, if appropriate.

    d. Name and address of similar projects on which product was used, and date of installation.

    e. Certified tests, where applicable, by an independent laboratory attesting the proposed substitution is equal.

    f. Cost information for the proposed substitution and the specified products.

    g. Lead time information for the proposed substitution and specified products.

    h. All other submittal requirements indicated in the individual Specification Sections associated with the specified equipment and material.

F. Construction Methods Substitutions Procedures:

1. Where construction methods or procedures are specified, for a period of thirty (30) days after the Effective Date of the Agreement, Engineer will consider Contractor's written requests for substitute construction methods or procedures specified.

2. Submit copies of request for substitution.

3. Submit separate request for each substitution.

4. In addition to requirements of the General Conditions and information required on substitution request forms, include with request the following:

    a. Detailed description of proposed method or procedure.

    b. Itemized comparison of the proposed substitution with the specified method or procedure.

    c. Drawings illustrating method or procedure.

    d. Other data required by Engineer to establish that proposed substitution is equivalent to specified method or procedure.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 26 00
CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Section Includes:

1. General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions provision expansion, including the following:

a. Requests for interpretation.

b. Clarification notices

c. Field Orders

d. Work Change Directives

e. Proposal requests

f. Change Proposals

g. Change Orders

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Submit Contract modification documents to Engineer's contact person and address in the Contract Documents.

B. Retain at Contractor's office and at the Site complete copy of each Contract modification document and related documents, and Engineer's response.

1.03 REQUEST FOR INTERPRETATION

A. General:

1. Submit written or electronic requests for interpretation to Engineer. Contractor and Owner may submit requests for interpretation.

2. Submit request for interpretation to obtain clarification or interpretation of the Contract Documents. Report conflicts, errors, ambiguities, and discrepancies in the Contract Documents using requests for interpretation.

3. Do not submit request for interpretation when other form of communication is appropriate, such as submittals, requests for substitutions or "or equals", notices, ordinary correspondence, or other form of communication. Improperly prepared or

inappropriate requests for interpretation will be returned without response or action.

B. Procedure:

1. Submit one original (hard copy or electronic) of each request for interpretation. Submit each request for interpretation with separate letter of transmittal if hard copies are submitted.

2. Engineer will provide timely review of requests for interpretation. Allow sufficient time for review and response.

3. Engineer will maintain log of requests for interpretation. Copy of log will be provided upon request.

4. Engineer will provide written response to each request for interpretation. One copy of Engineer's response will be distributed to:

a. Contractor

b. Owner

c. Engineer

d. Owner's Site Representative (OSR)

C. If Engineer requests additional information to make an interpretation, provide information requested within ten (10) days, unless Engineer allows additional time, via correspondence referring to request for interpretation number.

D. If Contractor or Owner believes that a change in the Contract Price or Contract Times or other change to the Contract is required, notify Engineer in writing before proceeding with the Work associated with the request for interpretation.

E. Submit each request for interpretation on a form acceptable to Engineer.

1. Number each request for interpretation as follows: Numbering system shall be the Contract number and designation followed by a hyphen and three-digit sequential number.

2. In space provided on form, describe the interpretation requested. Provide additional sheets as necessary. Include text and sketches as required in sufficient detail for engineer's response.

3. When applicable, request for interpretation shall include Contractor's recommended resolution.

1.04 CLARIFICATION NOTICES

A. General:

1. Clarification notices, when required, will be initiated and issued by Engineer.

2. Clarification notices do not change the Contract Price or Contract Times, and do not alter the Contract Documents.

3. Clarification notices will be issued as correspondence or using clarification notice form, with additional information as required.

B. Procedure:

1. One hard copy of each clarification notice will be distributed to:

a. Contractor

b. Owner

c. Engineer

d. Owner’s Site Representative

2. Electronic copies of Clarification Notices will be maintained, stored, and distributed by electronic construction document management system.

3. If Contractor or Owner believes that a change in the Contract Price or the Contract Times or other change to the Contract is required, notify Engineer in writing before proceeding with the Work associated with clarification notice.

4. If clarification notice is unclear, submit request for interpretation.

1.05 FIELD ORDERS

A. General:

1. Field Orders, when required, will be initiated and issued by Engineer.

2. Field Orders authorize minor variations in the Work but do not change the Contract Price or Contract Times.

3. Field Orders will be in the form of Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee (EJCDC) document C-942, “Field Order” or other Engineer’s accepted form.

4. Engineer will maintain a log of Field Orders issued.

B. Procedure.

1. One hard copy of each Field Order will be distributed to:

    a. Contractor

    b. Owner

    c. Engineer

    d. Owner's Site Representative

2. Electronic copies of Field Orders will be maintained, stored, and distributed by electronic construction document management system.

3. If Contractor or Owner believes that a change in the Contract Price or the Contract Times or other change to the Contract is required, immediately notify Engineer in writing before proceeding with the Work associated with the Field Order.

4. If the Field Order is unclear, submit request for interpretation.

1.06 WORK CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. General:

1. Work Change Directives, when required, order additions, deletions, or revisions to the Work.

2. Work Change Directives do not change the Contract Price or Contract Times but are evidence that the parties to the Contract expect that the change ordered or documented by the Work Change Directive will be incorporated in subsequently issued Change Order following negotiations by the parties as to its effect, if any, on the Contract Price or Contract Times.

3. Work Change Directives will be in the form of EJCDC document C-940, "Work Change Directive" or other Engineer's accepted form.

B. Procedure:

1. Three originals of Work Change Directive signed by Owner and Engineer will be furnished to Contractor, who shall promptly sign each original Work Change Directive and, within five days of receipt, return all originals to Engineer.

2. Original, signed Work Change Directives will be distributed as follows:

    a. Contractor: One original

    b. Owner: One original

    c. Engineer: One original

3. One hard copy of each Work Change Directive will be distributed to: Owner's Site Representative (OSR).

4. When required by Engineer, document for the Work performed under each separate Work Change Directive, for each day, the number and type of workers employed and hours worked; equipment used including manufacturer, model, and year of equipment, and number of hours; materials used, receipts for and descriptions of materials and equipment incorporated into the Work, invoices and labor and equipment breakdowns for Subcontractors and Suppliers, and other information required by Owner or Engineer, in a format acceptable to Engineer. Submit this documentation to Engineer as a Change Proposal.

1.07 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. General:

1. Proposal requests may be initiated by Engineer or Owner.

2. Proposal requests are for requesting the effect on the Contract Price and the Contract Times and other information relative to contemplated changes in the Work. Proposal requests do not authorize changes or variations in the Work, and do not change the Contract Price or Contract Times or terms of the Contract.

3. Proposal requests will be furnished using the proposal request form included with this Section.

B. Procedure.

1. One copy of each signed proposal request will be furnished to Contractor with one copy each to:

a. Owner

b. Engineer

c. Owner's Site Representative (OSR)

2. Submit request for interpretation to clarify conflicts, errors, ambiguities, and discrepancies in proposal request.

3. Upon receipt of proposal request, Contractor shall prepare and submit a Change Proposal, in accordance with this Section, for the proposed Work described in the proposal request.

1.08 CHANGE PROPOSALS

A. General.

1. Submit written Change Proposal to Engineer in response to each proposal request, and when Contractor believes a change in the Contract Price or Contract Times or other change to the terms of the Contract is required.

B. Procedure.

1. Submit to Engineer one original and one copy of each Change Proposal with accompanying documentation, and simultaneously submit two copies to Owner. Submit each Change Proposal with separate letter of transmittal.

2. Engineer will review Change Proposal and either request additional information from Contractor or provide to Owner recommendation regarding approval of the Change Proposal.

3. When Engineer requests additional information to render a decision, submit required information within five days of receipt of Engineer's request, unless Engineer allows more time. Submit the required information via correspondence that refers to Change Proposal number.

4. Upon completing review, one copy of Engineer's written response, if any, will be distributed to:

a. Contractor

b. Owner

c. Engineer

d. Owner's Site Representative (OSR)

5. If Change Proposal is recommended for approval by Engineer and approved by Owner, a Change Order will be issued.

6. If parties do not agree on terms for the change, Owner or Contractor may file a Claim against the other, in accordance with the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions.

C. Each Change Proposal shall be submitted on a Change Proposal form acceptable to Engineer.

1. Number each Change Proposal as follows: Numbering system shall be the Contract number and designation followed by a hyphen and three-digit sequential number. Example: First Change Proposal for the general contract for project named "Contract 23" would be, "Proposal No. 23-001".

2. In space provided on form:

a. Describe scope of each proposed change. Include text and sketches on additional sheets as required to provide detail sufficient for Engineer's review

and response. If a change item is submitted in response to proposal request, write in as scope, “In accordance with Change Proposal Request No.” followed by the proposal request number. Provide written clarifications, if any, to scope of change.

b. Provide justification for each proposed change. If change is in response to proposal request, write in as justification, “In accordance with Change Proposal Request No.” followed by the proposal request number.

c. List the total change in the Contract Price and Contract Times for each proposed change.

3. Unless otherwise directed by Engineer, attach to the Change Proposal detailed breakdowns of pricing (Cost of the Work and Contractor’s fee) including:

a. List of Work tasks to accomplish the change.

b. For each task, labor cost breakdown including labor classification, total hours per labor classification, and hourly cost rate for each labor classification.

c. Construction equipment and machinery to be used, including manufacturer, model, and year of manufacture, and number of hours for each.

d. Detailed breakdown of materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work, including quantities, unit costs, and total cost, with Supplier’s written quotations.

e. Breakdowns of the Cost of the Work and fee for Subcontractors, including labor, construction equipment and machinery, and materials and equipment incorporated into the Work, other costs, and Subcontractor fees.

f. Breakdown of other costs eligible, in accordance with the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions.

g. Other information required by Engineer.

h. Contractor’s fees applied to eligible Contractor costs and eligible Subcontractor costs.

1.09 CHANGE ORDERS

A. General:

1. Change Orders will be recommended by Engineer and signed by Owner, and Contractor, to authorize additions, deletions, or revisions to the Work, or changes to the Contract Price or Contract Times.

2. Change Orders will be in the form of EJCDC document C-941, “Change Order” or other Engineer’s accepted form.

B. Procedure.

1. Five originals of each Change Order will be furnished to Contractor, who shall sign each original Change Order and return all originals to Engineer within five days of receipt.

2. Engineer will sign each original Change Order and forward them to Owner.

3. Owner will sign each original Change Order and forward to the funding agency, _____.

4. After approval and signature of all parties, three executed original copies will be returned to Engineer. Engineer will distribute as follows:

   a. Contractor: One original

   b. Owner: One original

   c. Engineer: One original

5. One copy of each Change Order will be distributed to:

   a. Owner's Site Representative (OSR)

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SCHEDULE

A. 2018 EJCDC Form C-942, Field Order

B. 2018 EJCDC Form C-940, Work Change Directive

C. 2018 EJCDC Form C-941, Change Order

END OF SECTION

Field Order No. _____

Date of Issuance:	Effective Date:
Owner:	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer:	Engineer's Project No.:
Project:	Contract Name:

Contractor is hereby directed to promptly execute this Field Order, issued in accordance with General Conditions Paragraph 9.04, for minor changes in the Work without changes in Contract Price or Contract Times. If Contractor considers that a change in Contract Price or Contract Times is required, submit a Change Proposal before proceeding with this Work.

Reference: _____ _____
Specification(s) Drawing(s) / Detail(s)

Description:

Attachments:

ISSUED:	RECEIVED:
By: _____	By: _____
Engineer (Authorized Signature)	Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____

Copy to: Owner

Work Change Directive No. _____

Date of Issuance:	Effective Date:
Owner:	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer:	Engineer's Project No.:
Project:	Contract Name:

Contractor is directed to proceed promptly with the following change(s):

Description:

Attachments: [List documents supporting change]

Purpose for Work Change Directive:
Directive to proceed promptly with the Work described herein, prior to agreeing to changes on Contract Price and Contract Time, is issued due to: [check one or both of the following]

- ☐ Non-agreement on pricing of proposed change.
- ☐ Necessity to proceed for schedule or other Project reasons.

Estimated Change in Contract Price and Contract Times (non-binding, preliminary):

Contract Price $ _____ [increase] [decrease].

Contract Time ____ days [increase] [decrease].

Basis of estimated change in Contract Price:

- ☐ Lump Sum
- ☐ Unit Price
- ☐ Cost of the Work
- ☐ Other

RECOMMENDED:	AUTHORIZED BY:	RECEIVED:
By: _____	By: _____	By: _____
Engineer (Authorized Signature)	Owner (Authorized Signature)	Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

Approved by Funding Agency (if applicable)

By: _____ Date: _____

Title: _____

Change Order No. _____

Date of Issuance:	Effective Date:
Owner:	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer:	Engineer's Project No.:
Project:	Contract Name:

The Contract is modified as follows upon execution of this Change Order:

Description:

Attachments: [List documents supporting change]

CHANGE IN CONTRACT PRICE	CHANGE IN CONTRACT TIMES [note changes in Milestones if applicable]
Original Contract Price: $	Original Contract Times: Substantial Completion: Ready for Final Payment: days or dates
[Increase] [Decrease] from previously approved Change Orders No. to No. : $	[Increase] [Decrease] from previously approved Change Orders No. to No. : Substantial Completion: Ready for Final Payment: days
Contract Price prior to this Change Order: $	Contract Times prior to this Change Order: Substantial Completion: Ready for Final Payment: days or dates
[Increase] [Decrease] of this Change Order: $	[Increase] [Decrease] of this Change Order: Substantial Completion: Ready for Final Payment: days or dates
Contract Price incorporating this Change Order: $	Contract Times with all approved Change Orders: Substantial Completion: Ready for Final Payment: days or dates

RECOMMENDED:	ACCEPTED:	ACCEPTED:
By: _____	By: _____	By: _____
Engineer (if required)	Owner (Authorized Signature)	Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

Approved Funding Agency (if required)

By: _____ Date: _____

Title: _____

SECTION 01 29 73
SCHEDULE OF VALUES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements for preliminary and final Schedule of Values.

2. Schedule of Values and the Progress Schedule updates specified in Section 01 32 00 – Construction Progress Schedule, shall be basis for preparing each Application for Payment. Schedule of Values may be used as a basis for negotiating price of changes, if any, in the Work.

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Requirements:

1. Schedule of Values shall include breakdown of costs for materials and equipment, installation, and other costs used in preparing the Bid by Contractor and each Subcontractor. List purchase and delivery costs for materials and equipment for which Contractor may apply for payment as stored materials.

2. Include separate amounts for each Specification Section in the Contract Documents by structure, building, and work area.

3. Identify each line item with number corresponding to the associated Specification Section number. List sub-items of major products or systems, as appropriate or when requested by Engineer.

4. Include in Schedule of Values unit price payment items with their associated quantity. Provide in the Schedule of Values detailed breakdown of unit prices when required by Engineer.

5. Include in Schedule of Values itemized list of Work for each major part of the Contract, for each payment item specified in Section 01 20 00 – Measurement and Payment.

6. Sum of individual values shown on the Schedule of Values shall equal the total of associated payment item. Sum of payment item totals in the Schedule of Values shall equal the Contract Price.

032619

B. Specific Requirements:

1. Include in each line item a directly proportional amount of Contractor's overhead and profit. Do not include overhead and profit as separate item(s).

2. Include separate line item for each allowance, and for each unit price item

3. Include line item for bonds and insurance in amount not exceeding two percent of the Contract Price. This may be applied for in the first Application for Payment.

4. Include items for the General Conditions, permits (when applicable), construction Progress Schedule, and other items required by Engineer. Include such items in Applications for Payment on schedule accepted by Engineer

5. Line items for Site maintenance such as dust control, snow removal, compliance with storm water pollution prevention plans and permits, spill prevention control and countermeasures plans, and for construction photographic documentation; temporary utilities and temporary facilities, field offices, temporary controls, field engineering, and similar Work shall be included in the Schedule of Values and proportioned in Applications for Payment throughout duration of the Work.

6. Include separate line items under each appropriate payment item for mobilization and demobilization. Document for Engineer the activities included in mobilization and demobilization line items.

    a. Mobilization will be limited to one and half percent (1.5%) of the Contract Price, and will be paid in two payments, each of 50 percent (50%) of total amount for mobilization.

    b. Demobilization shall be at least one percent of the Contract Price and shall be included with the Application for Payment following Substantial Completion, or other schedule accepted by Engineer.

7. Costs for submittals, operations and maintenance manuals, field testing, and training of operations and maintenance personnel shall be as follows, unless otherwise accepted by Engineer:

    a. Up to three percent (3%) of total cost (including overhead and profit) for the equipment and material may be apportioned to submittal preparation and finalization and included in the Application of Payment following Engineer providing acceptable submittal review disposition.

    b. Up to three percent (3%) of total cost (including overhead and profit) for the preparation and final submittal of operations and maintenance manuals may be apportioned to submittal preparation and finalization and included in the Application of Payment following Engineer providing acceptable submittal review disposition.

    c. Up to three percent (3%) of total cost of each item (including overhead and profit), including materials and equipment, and installation, may be

apportioned to testing and included in the Application for Payment following Engineer's acceptance of the associated written Site testing report(s).

d. Up to three percent (3%) of total cost of each item (including overhead and profit) for planning, attending (including travel and expenses), and conducting training of operations and maintenance personnel and included in the Application of Payment following successful completion of training to the satisfaction of Owner and Engineer.

C. Preliminary Schedule of Values: Submit preliminary Schedule of Values to Engineer for initial review. Contractor shall incorporate Engineer's comments into the Schedule of Values and resubmit to Engineer. Engineer may require corrections and re-submittals until Schedule of Values is acceptable.

D. Time Frame for Submittals:

1. Submit preliminary Schedule of Values within ten (10) days of date that the Contract Times commence running in accordance with the Notice to Proceed.

2. Submittal of the Schedule of Values shall be in accordance with the General Conditions. Engineer will not accept Applications for Payment without an acceptable Schedule of Values.

3. When required by Engineer, promptly submit updated Schedule of Values to include cost breakdowns for changes in the Contract Price.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following:

1. One (1) electronic copy (PDF) of preliminary Schedule Values.

2. One (1) electronic copy (PDF) of Schedule of Values.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 29 76
PROGRESS PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Administrative and procedural requirements for progress payment to the Contractor by the Owner.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 01 77 19 – Closeout Requirements.

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Contractor's request for payment shall be in accordance with the Agreement, General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions, and the Specifications.

B. Procedure:

1. Review with Owner's Site Representative (OSR) quantities and the Work proposed for inclusion in each progress payment. Application for Payment shall cover only the Work and quantities recommended by the OSR.

2. Submit to Engineer an electronic copy of each complete Application for Payment and other documents to accompany the Application for Payment.

3. Engineer will act on request for payment in accordance with the General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions.

C. Requirements:

1. Completed Application for Payment form, including summary/signature page, progress estimate sheets, and stored materials summary. Progress estimate sheets shall have the same level of detail as the Schedule of Values.

2. For materials and equipment not incorporated in the Work but suitably stored, submit documentation in accordance with the General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions. Legibly indicate on invoice or bill of sale the specific materials or equipment included in the payment request and corresponding bid/payment item number for each.

3. Contractor's Affidavit is required for payment application and requests beginning with the second application for payment.

032619

4. For payment requests that include payment for Work under an allowance, submit documentation acceptable to Owner of the authorization of allowance Work.

5. For payment requests (other than request for final payment) that include reduction or payment of retainage in an amount greater than that required in the Contract Documents, submit on form acceptable to Owner consent of surety to partial release or reduction of retainage.

D. Requirements for request for final payment are in the General Conditions, as modified by the Supplementary Conditions, and Section 01 77 19 – Closeout Requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 31 19
PROJECT MEETINGS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Pre-Construction Meeting:

a. Purpose of conference is to designate responsible personnel, establish working relationships, discuss preliminary schedules submitted by Contractor, and review administrative and procedural requirements for the Project. Matters requiring coordination will be discussed and procedures for handling such matters will be established.

b. Date, Time and Location: Conference will be held after execution of the Contract and before Work starts at the Site. Engineer will establish the date, time, and location of conference and notify the interested and involved parties.

2. Progress Meetings:

a. Progress meetings will be held throughout the Project. Contractor shall attend each progress meeting prepared to discuss in detail all items on the agenda.

b. Engineer will preside at progress meetings and will prepare and distribute minutes of progress meetings to all meeting participants and others as requested.

c. Date, Time and Location:

1) Regular Meetings: Every month on a day and time agreeable to Owner, Engineer, and Contractor.

2) Engineer's Field Office at the Site or other location mutually agreed upon by Owner, Contractor, and Engineer.

d. Additional meetings may be conducted as progress of Work requires at a mutually agreed date, time and location.

032619

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pre-Construction Meeting:

1. Contractor shall provide pre-construction meeting submittals with sufficient number of copies for each attendee:

2. Required Attendees:

    a. Contractor

        1) Project manager.

        2) Site superintendent.

        3) Safety representative.

        4) Major Subcontractors if meeting discussion topics warrant.

    b. Owner.

    c. Engineer.

    d. Owner’s Site Representative (OSR).

    e. Representatives of governmental or other regulatory agencies (if applicable).

3. Contractor shall prepare and submit a health and safety plan, including confined space entry plan, as specified in this Section prior to the pre-construction meeting.

4. Agenda, minimum:

    a. Procedural requirements:

        1) Designation of responsible personnel

        2) Use of Site and Owner’s requirements, including general regards for community relations

        3) Delivery of materials and equipment to the Site

        4) Safety and first aid procedures

        5) Confined space entry plan

        6) Security procedures

        7) Housekeeping procedures

    b. Administrative requirements:

        1) Distribution of Contract Documents.

        2) Shop Drawing submittal procedures.

3) Maintaining record documents at the Site.

4) Contract modification procedures

5) Processing of Payment Application

c. Site mobilization requirements:

1) Working hours, overtime, and holidays.

2) Field offices, trailers, and staging areas.

3) Temporary facilities and utilities, including usage and coordination.

4) Temporary controls, such as sediment and erosion control, noise, dust, storm water, and other measures.

5) Access to Site, access roads, and parking for construction vehicles.

6) Protection of traffic and existing property, including site barriers and temporary fencing.

7) Security

8) Storage of materials and equipment.

9) Reference points and benchmarks, surveys and layouts.

10) Site maintenance during the project, including cleaning and removal of trash and debris.

11) Site restoration.

d. Schedules

1) Preliminary construction schedule

2) Critical work sequencing

3) Preliminary Shop Drawing submittal schedule

4) Preliminary Schedule of Values

B. Progress Meetings:

1. Progress meetings frequency shall be conducted as specified in this Section, unless modified and agreed upon by Owner, Contractor, and Engineer. Additional meetings may be conducted as progress of Work requires.

2. Contractor shall provide submittals specified in this Section prior to each progress meeting.

3. Attendance:

    a. Contractor, including project manager, site superintendent, safety representative, and representatives of Subcontractors and Suppliers as required.

    b. Engineer, including project manager (or designated representative), Resident Project Representative (if any), others as required by Engineer.

    c. Owner, including Owner's Site Representative (if any).

    d. Subcontractors, only with Engineer's approval or request, as required in the agenda.

4. Agenda, minimum:

    a. Review, comment, and amendment (if required) of minutes of previous progress meeting.

    b. Review of progress since the previous progress meeting.

    c. Planned progress through next 30 – 60 days.

    d. Review of Progress Schedule

        1) Contract Times, including Milestones (if any)

        2) Critical path.

        3) Schedules for fabrication and delivery of materials and equipment.

        4) Corrective measures, if required.

    e. Submittals:

        1) Review of status of critical submittals.

        2) Review revisions to schedule of submittals.

    f. Contract Modifications:

        1) Requests for interpretation

        2) Clarification notices

        3) Field Orders

4) Proposal requests

5) Change Proposals

6) Work Change Directives.

7) Change Orders.

8) Claims.

g. Applications for progress payments.

h. Problems, conflicts, and observations.

i. Quality standards, testing, and inspections.

j. Coordination between parties.

k. Site management issues, including access, security, maintenance and protection of traffic, maintenance, cleaning, and other Site issues.

l. Safety.

m. Permits.

n. Record documents status.

o. Punch list status, as applicable.

p. Other business.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Construction Meeting Submittals:

1. Prior to the conference, submit the following preliminary schedules in accordance with the General Conditions:

1) Progress schedule

2) Schedule of submittals

3) Schedule of values

2. Contractor’s safety and first aid procedures.

3. Confined space entry plan.

4. List of emergency contact information

B. Progress Meeting Submittals:

1. List of Work accomplished since the previous progress meeting.

2. Up-to-date Progress Schedule.

3. Up-to-date Schedule of Submittals.

4. Detailed “look-ahead” schedule of Work planned through the next progress meeting, with specific starting and ending dates for each activity, including shutdowns, deliveries of important materials and equipment, Milestones (if any), and important activities affecting the Owner, Project, and Site.

5. When applicable, list of upcoming, planned time off (with dates) for personnel with significant roles on the Project, and the designated contact person in their absence.

1.04 EMERGENCY CONTACT INFORMATION

A. Contractor shall provide list of emergency contact information for 24-hour use throughout the Project. Emergency contact information shall be updated and kept current throughout the Project. If personnel or contact information change, provide updated emergency contact information list at the next progress meeting.

B. Contractor’s list of emergency contact information shall include:

1. Contractor’s project manager’s office, field office, cellular, and home telephone numbers.

2. Contractor’s Site superintendent’s office, field office, cellular, and home telephone numbers.

3. Contractor’s foreman’s field office, cellular (if available), and home telephone numbers.

4. Major Subcontractors’ and Suppliers’ office, cellular, and home telephone numbers of project manager and foreman (when applicable).

C. Additional Emergency Contact Information:

1. Owner’s Project Manager: office, cellular, and home telephone numbers.

2. Owner’s central 24-hour emergency telephone number.

3. Engineer’s project engineer’s office, cellular, and home telephone numbers.

4. Owner’s Site Representative’s office, field office, cellular, and home telephone numbers.

5. Emergency telephone numbers, including: “Emergency: Dial 911”, and seven-digit telephone numbers for the hospital, ambulance, police, and fire department nearest to the Site. Provide names of each of these institutions.

6. Other involved entities as applicable.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 32 00
CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes: Detailed requirements and/or procedures for, including but not limited to, the Preliminary Project Schedule, Project Schedule Updates, Project Schedule development, Time Impact Analysis, and Recovery Schedules

B. The Contractor shall develop, revise, and provide all information and input required for the Project Schedule for the performance of the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents in general and, in particular, this section. The Progress Schedule shall incorporate the requirements of General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and all items specified in this section.

C. Except as otherwise provided herein or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the planning, scheduling, coordination, and execution of the Work is the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions:

1. Activity: An element of the construction work that has the following specific characteristics: consumes time, consumes resources, has a definable start and finish, is assignable, and is measurable.

2. Constraint: An imposed date on the Progress Schedule or an imposed tie between Activities. The Contract Times are Constraints.

3. CPM Progress Schedule: Computerized Progress Schedule in Critical Path Method (CPM) format which accounts for the entire Work, defines the interrelationships between elements of the Work, reflects the uncompleted Work, and indicates the sequence with which the Work has been completed, indicates the sequence in which uncompleted Work will be completed, and indicates the duration of each Activity.

4. Critical Path: The continuous chain of Activities with the longest duration for completion within the Contract Times.

5. Early Start: The earliest possible date an Activity can start according to the assigned relationships among Activities.

10-13-21

6. Early Finish: The earliest possible date an Activity can finish according to the assigned relationships among the Activities.

7. Late Finish: The latest possible date an Activity can finish without extending the Contract Times.

8. Late Start: The latest possible date an Activity can start without extending the Contract Times.

9. Total Float: The total number of days that an Activity (or chain of Activities) can be delayed without affecting the Contract Times. Total float for each Activity shall be calculated as the difference between Early Finish and Late Finish.

10. Network Diagram: A time-scaled logic diagram depicting the durations and relationships of the Activities.

11. Work Areas, Area, or System: A logical breakdown of the Project elements or a group of Activities which, when collectively assembled, are readily identifiable on the Project (for example, yard piping, a structure or building, a treatment process, or other logical grouping).

1.03 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Initial Progress Schedule:

1. Type and Organization of Progress Schedules:

a. Prepare one Progress Schedule covering the entire Project using Primavera Planner (P6 or newer), or Microsoft Project scheduling software.

b. Schedule submittals shall include the electronic native file format (i.e., scheduling software file), and a PDF file of the schedule's logic diagram.

c. Time Scale: Indicate first date of each work week.

d. Activity Designations: Indicate concise description of the Work represented by the activity and related Specification Section number. The Work related to each activity shall be limited to one work trade and one construction area.

2. Submitted PDF files shall be in a Gantt Chart Format and shall show the following:

a. Activity identification number.

b. Activity description.

c. Activity duration (in workdays).

d. Activity percent complete

e. Start, Early Start, Late Start, Finish, Early Finish, and Late Finish Dates

f. Total Float for each Activity.

g. Critical Path denoted.

3. Organization:

    a. Group shop drawings, samples and other submittals into a separate sub-schedule that is part of the Progress Schedule.

    b. Group deliveries of materials and equipment into a separate sub-schedule that is part of the Progress Schedule.

    c. Group construction into Work Area sub-schedules (that are part of the Progress Schedule) by Activity.

    d. Clearly indicate the Critical Path on the Progress Schedule.

    e. Organize each Work Area sub-schedule by Specification Section number.

4. Preliminary Progress Schedule:

    a. Contractor shall submit to Engineer the Preliminary Progress Schedule within ten (10) days after the Contract Times commence running.

5. Initial Acceptance of Progress Schedule:

    a. At least 10 days before submission of the first Application for Payment, Contractor shall schedule a conference at the Site for review of the Preliminary Progress Schedule.

        1) Attendees shall include Contractor, Engineer, Owner, and others as required.

        2) Contractor shall have an additional 10 days to make corrections and adjustments and to complete and resubmit the Progress Schedule.

        3) Owner reserves the right to not make progress payment to Contractor until acceptable Progress Schedule, and other

reports and schedule-related documents required are submitted to Engineer.

b. Initially-accepted Progress Schedule shall be identified as the Baseline Progress Schedule. The Baseline Progress Schedule shall not be revised without Owner and Engineer approval.

B. Project Schedule Updates:

1. Project Schedule Updates shall be prepared on a monthly basis throughout the entire Contract Time and until Project Final Completion. The Engineer will not recommend progress payments by the Owner until a complete Project Schedule Update (including Schedule Narrative Report) is received, reviewed, and accepted by the Engineer.

2. The update to the Progress Schedule shall be based on retained logic. Progress override logic is not allowed.

3. Required scheduling software, and schedule organization, format, and content for updated Progress Schedules are identical to that required in this Section for initial Progress Schedules.

4. For all Project Schedule Updates, the percent complete reported for individual Activities shall be based on Work accepted and paid for the by Owner in monthly pay applications. Failure to comply with this requirement shall be result in rejection of the submitted update. Rejection of the Project Schedule Update will in turn result in the Engineer not recommending progress payments by the Owner.

5. Monthly Progress Schedule Updates shall be accompanied by a Schedule Narrative Report. The report shall:

a. Describe Work completed within the preceding month.

b. Describe Work planned for the following month (including a look-ahead schedule).

c. Identify proposed changes or revisions to the Baseline Progress Schedule.

d. Identify all Work performed out of sequence.

e. Identify problem areas.

f. Identify current or anticipated conditions which may delay the Work.

1.04 PROJECT SCHEDULE DEVELOPMENT

A. The schedule shall cover the entire Contact Time, and the Work shall be scheduled to complete the Project within the Contract Time.

B. The Schedule's Late Finish Date shall equal the Contract Completion Date.

C. All activities except for the NTP and Final Completion shall have a predecessor and a successor. No open-ended activities will be permitted. Note that NTP shall have a successor or successors and Final Completion shall have a predecessor or predecessors.

D. Proposed durations assigned to each activity shall be the Contractor's best estimate of time required to complete the activity, considering the scope and resources planned for the activity.

E. The durations of activities shall be expressed in whole working days, with a maximum duration of 20 workdays each, unless otherwise approved or directed by the Engineer or the Owner. The duration of non-construction activities including mobilization, shop drawings and sample submittals, fabrication of materials and equipment, and delivery of materials and equipment may exceed this limitation.

F. The Schedule shall incorporate in detail all elements of the Work contained within the Contract Documents. Specific elements of the Work to incorporate into the schedule include but are not limited to the following:

    1. Notice to Proceed.

    2. Mobilization and demobilization.

    3. Submittals including O&M Manuals. Note that durations for Engineer review time shall be 30 working days unless specified elsewhere in these Contract Documents.

    4. Fabrication and procurement activities.

    5. Temporary construction activities and relocations

    6. Permitting

    7. Erosion control

    8. Site clearing

    9. Site restoration

    10. All requirements for coordination with Owner operations

    11. Concrete curing and form removal

12. All testing activities

13. Inspections as required by local authorities.

14. Interim Milestones as defined by this Contact or as deemed critical as the project progresses.

15. All requirements related to facility startup and commissioning.

16. Substantial Completion (including the period for performing the punchlist)

17. Final Completion

1.05 TIME IMPACT ANALYSIS

A. General:

1. Prepare and submit a time impact analysis when one or more of the following occurs:

    a. Change Order proposal is prepared.

    b. Work Change Directive is issued that will affect the Progress Schedule.

    c. When delays are experienced.

2. Time impact analysis shall illustrate the influence of each Change Order, Work Change Directive, or delay.

3. Each time impact analysis shall include a sketch (fragnet) demonstrating how Contractor proposes to incorporate the changes in the Project or, as applicable, delays into the Progress Schedule. Fragnet shall include all logic, and additions required as result of said Change Order, Work Change Directive, or delay.

4. Fragnet shall show all CPM logic revisions for the Work associated with the Change Order, Work Change Directive, or delay and its relationship to other Activities.

5. Timing of Time Impact Analysis:

    a. Submit each time impact analysis within 7 days after the following, as applicable:

        1) Start of the delay.

        2) After the submittal of Change Order proposal to Engineer

3) After Contractor's Receipt of Work Change Directive.

b. Failure to Submit Time Impact Analysis: When General Contractor does not submit time impact analysis for a specific change or delay under the General Contract, within the specified period of time for such submittal, such non-submittal shall be construed that no extension of the Contract Times is required

B. Evaluation by Engineer and Acceptance:

1. Engineer's evaluation of each time impact analysis comprised of complete information will be completed in timely manner after Engineer's receipt. Changes in the Contract Times will be made only by Change Order.

2. When mutual agreement is reached between the parties, on effect of the change or delay in the Project, incorporate into the next Progress Schedule and update the associated fragnets illustrating the influence of changes and delays.

1.06 RECOVERY SCHEDULES

A. General:

1. When updated Progress Schedule indicates that the ability to comply with the Contract Times falls 30 or more days behind schedule, and there is no excusable delay, Change Order, or Work Change Directive to support an extension of the Contract Times, Contractor shall prepare and submit a Progress Schedule demonstrating Contractor's plan to accelerate the Project to achieve compliance with the Contract Times (i.e., "recovery schedule") for Engineer's acceptance.

2. Submit recovery schedule within 14 days after submittal of updated Progress Schedule where need for recovery schedule is indicated.

B. Implementation of Recovery Schedule:

1. At no additional cost to Owner, Contractor shall do one or more of the following:

a. Furnish additional labor and construction equipment.

b. Employ additional work shifts.

c. Expedite procurement of materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work.

d. Other measures necessary to complete the Work within the Contract Times.

2. Upon acceptance of recovery schedule by Engineer, incorporate recovery schedule into the next Progress Schedule update.

C. Lack of Action: Contractor's refusal, failure or neglect to submit a recovery schedule, shall constitute reasonable evidence that Contractor is not prosecuting the Work or separable part thereof with the diligence that will ensure completion within the Contract Times. Such lack of action shall constitute sufficient basis for Owner to exercise remedies available to Owner under the Contract Documents

1.07 USE OF FLOAT

A. Total Float and Contract Float belong to the Project and may be used by Owner, Engineer, or Contractor to accommodate modifications, regardless of origination, in the Work or to mitigate the effect of events that may delay performance or completion of the Work.

B. Changes or delays that influence scheduled Work Activities with Float and that do not extend the critical path will not be justification for an extension in Contract Times.

1.08 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals:

1. Initial Progress Schedules:

a. Preliminary Progress Schedule

b. Acceptable Progress Schedule (Baseline)

2. Progress Schedule Updates:

a. Progress Schedule updates shall comply with requirements of this Section and shall include updated Progress Schedule and Schedule Narrative Report.

b. Submit updated Progress Schedule at each progress meeting. If a Progress Schedule remains unchanged from one progress meeting to the next, submit a written statement to that effect.

3. Time Impact Analyses: Submit in accordance with this Section.

4. Recovery Schedule: Submit in accordance with this Section.

5. Qualifications: Progress Schedule preparer, and other personnel that will assist Progress Schedule preparer in preparing and maintaining the Progress Schedule.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 33 00
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Contractor shall provide submittals in accordance with the General Conditions as modified by the Supplementary Conditions, and this Section.

2. Contractor is responsible for confirming and correcting dimensions at the Site, for information pertaining to the fabrication processes and to techniques of construction, and for coordinating the work of all trades. Contractor's signature of submittal's stamp and letter of transmittal shall be Contractor's representation that Contractor has met their obligations under the Contract Documents relative to that submittal.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

2. Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

3. Section 01 78 39 – Project Record Documents.

4. Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Material.

5. Section 01 79 00 – Instruction of Owner's Personnel.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Types of Submittals: When type of submittal is not specified and is not specified in this Section, Engineer will determine type of submittal.

1. Action/Informational Submittals:

a. Shop Drawings.

b. Product data.

c. Delegated design submittals in accordance with the General Conditions and as modified by the Supplemental Conditions.

d. Samples.

e. Testing plans, procedures, and testing limitations.

05-04-20

f. Design data not sealed and signed by a design professional retained by Contractor, Subcontractor, or Supplier.

g. Pre-construction test and evaluation reports, such as reports on pilot testing, subsurface investigations, potential Hazardous Environmental Conditions, and similar reports.

h. Supplier instructions, including installation data, and instructions for handling, starting-up, and troubleshooting.

i. Sustainable design submittals (other than sustainable design closeout documentation).

j. Lesson plans for training and instruction of Owner's personnel.

2. Closeout Submittals:

a. Maintenance contracts.

b. Operations and maintenance data.

c. Bonds, such as maintenance bonds and bonds for a specific product or system.

d. Warranty documentation.

e. Record documentation.

f. Sustainable design closeout documentation.

g. Software.

3. Maintenance Material Submittals:

a. Maintenance materials schedule and checklist.

b. Spare parts.

c. Extra stock materials.

d. Tools.

4. Quality Assurance Submittals:

a. Performance affidavits.

b. Certificates.

c. Source quality control submittals (other than testing plans, procedures, and testing limitations), including results of shop testing.

d. Field or Site quality control submittals (other than testing plans, procedures, and testing limitations), including results of operating and acceptability tests at the Site.

e. Supplier reports.

f. Special procedure submittals, including health and safety plans and other procedural submittals.

g. Qualifications statements.

B. Submittal Requirements:

1. Contractor shall submit electronic copy of submittals for Engineer's review via Procore Document Management, unless otherwise specified in individual Specification Sections. Acceptable electronic formats are Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Autodesk DWF and AutoCAD.

2. Submittals shall be furnished in 2-dimensional PDF.

3. Submittal shall be accompanied by letter of transmittal containing date, project title, Contractor's name, number and title of submittal, list of relevant Specification Sections, notification of deviations from Contract Documents, and other material required for Engineer's review.

4. Submittals with internet hyperlinks and other references to online content shall not be considered, reviewed, and included as part of the submittal review procedure. Hyperlinks and other electronic references shall not be used to comply with specified requirements of the Contract Documents, unless specifically stated in the individual technical Specification Section.

C. Scheduling:

1. Provide submittals well in advance of the Work following Engineer's approval or acceptance of the associated submittal. Work covered by a submittal will not be included in progress payments until approval or acceptance of related submittals has been obtained in accordance with the Contract Documents.

2. Submittals shall be provided by Contractor with at least fourteen (14) working days for review and processing.

1.03 SCHEDULE OF SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Submittals, as specified in this Section:

1. Timing:

a. Provide submittal within time frames specified in the Contract Documents.

b. Provide updated Schedule of Submittals with each submittal of the updated Progress Schedule.

2. Content: In accordance with the General Conditions as modified by the Supplementary Conditions, and this Section. Requirements for content of preliminary Schedule of Submittals and subsequent submittals of the Schedule of Submittals are identical.

   a. Identify submittals required in the Contract Documents. Updates of Schedule of Submittals shall show scheduled dates and actual dates for completed tasks. Indicate submittals that are on the Project's critical path.

   b. Indicate the following for each submittal:

      1) Date when submittals are requested and received from Supplier.

      2) Date when certification is received from Supplier and when submitted to Engineer.

      3) Date when submittals are submitted to Engineer and returned with disposition from Engineer.

      4) Date when submittals are revised by Supplier and submitted to Engineer.

      5) Date when submittals are returned with "Furnish as Submitted" (FAS) or "Furnish as Corrected" (FAC) disposition from Engineer.

      6) Date when approved submittals are returned to Supplier.

      7) Date of Supplier scheduled delivery of equipment and material.

      8) Date of actual delivery of equipment and material.

      9) Whether submittal will be for a substitution or "equal". Procedures for substitutions and "or equals" are specified in the General Conditions and the Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

      10) For submittals for materials or equipment, date by which material or equipment must be at the Site to avoid delaying the Work and to avoid delaying the work of other contractors.

3. Prepare Schedule of Submittals using same software, and in same format, specified for Progress Schedules.

4. Coordinate Schedule of Submittals with the Progress Schedule.

5. Schedule of Submittals that is not compatible with the Progress Schedule, or that does not indicate submittals on the Project's critical path, or that places extraordinary demands on Engineer for time and resources, is unacceptable. Do not include submittals not required by the Contract Documents.

6. In preparing Schedule of Submittals:

    a. Considering the nature and complexity of each submittal, allow sufficient time for review and revision.

    b. Reasonable time shall be allowed for: Engineer's review and processing of submittals, for submittals to be revised and resubmitted, and for returning submittals to Contractor.

    c. Identify and accordingly schedule submittals that are expected to have long anticipated review times.

1.04 ACTION/INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Provide the following Submittals in accordance with the individual Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Product Data:

    a. Catalog cut-sheets

    b. Descriptive bulletins/brochures/specifications

    c. Material of construction data, including details on all components including applicable ASTM designations.

    d. Lifting, erection, installation, and adjustment instructions, and recommendations.

    e. Finish/treatment data, including interior and exterior shop coating systems.

    f. Equipment/material weight/loading data, including total uncrated weight of the equipment plus the approximate weight of shipped materials. Support locations and loads that will be transmitted to bases and foundations following installation. Size, placement, and embedment requirements of anchor bolts.

    g. Complete information regarding location, type, size, and length of all field welds in accordance with "Standard Welding Symbols" AWS A2.0 of the American Welding Society. Special conditions shall be fully explained by notes and details.

    h. Motor data including horsepower; enclosure type; voltage; insulation class; temperature rise and results of dielectric tests; service-rating; rotative speed;

motor speed-torque relationship; efficiency and power factor at ½, ¾, and full load; slip at full load; running, full load, and locked rotor current values; safe running time-current curves; motor protective devices; and interconnection diagrams.

i. Engineering design data, calculations, and system analyses

j. Digital system documentation

k. Operating sequence descriptions

l. Software/programming documentation

m. Manufacturer's instructions

2. Shop Drawings:

a. Equipment and material layout drawings, including panel layout drawings.

b. System schematics and diagrams including, but not limited to, piping systems; HVAC and ventilation systems; process equipment systems; electrical operating systems; wiring diagrams; controls, alarm and communication systems.

c. Layout and installation drawings (interior and exterior) for all pipes, valves, fittings, sewers, drains, heating and ventilation ducts, all electrical, heating, ventilating and other conduits, plumbing lines, electrical cable trays, lighting fixture layouts, and circuiting, instrumentation, interconnection wiring diagrams, communications, power supply, alarm circuits, etc.

d. Layout and installation drawings shall show connections to structures, equipment, sleeves, valves, fittings, etc.

e. Drawings shall show the location and type of all supports, hangers, foundations, etc., and the required clearances to operate valves, equipment, etc.

f. Drawings for pipes, ducts, conduits, etc., shall show all 3 inch and larger electrical conduits and pressure piping, electrical cable trays, heating and ventilation ducts or pipes, structure, manholes or any other feature within four (4) feet (measured as the clear dimension) from the pipe duct, conduit, etc., for which the profile is drawn.

g. Equipment and material schedules.

3. Delegated design submittals, which include documents prepared, sealed, and signed by a design professional retained by Contractor, Subcontractor, or Supplier for materials and equipment to be incorporated into the completed Work.

Delegated design submittals do not include submittals related to temporary construction unless specified otherwise in the related Specification Section. Delegated design submittals include: design drawings, design data including calculations, specifications, certifications, and other submittals prepared by such design professional.

B. Samples:

1. General Requirements:

a. Conform submittal of Samples to the General Conditions as modified by the Supplementary Conditions, this Section, and the Specification Section in which the Sample is specified.

b. Furnish at the same time Samples and submittals that are related to the same unit of Work or Specification Section. Engineer will not review submittals without associated Samples and will not review Samples without associated submittals.

c. Samples shall clearly illustrate functional characteristics of product, all related parts and attachments, and full range of color, texture, pattern, and material.

2. Submittal Requirements:

a. Securely label or tag Samples with submittal identification number. Label or tag shall not cover, conceal, or alter appearance or features of Sample. Label or tag shall not be separated from the Sample.

b. Submit number of Samples required in Specifications. If number of Samples is not specified in the associated Specification Section, provide at least one identical Samples of each item required for Engineer's approval. If Contractor requires Sample(s) for Contractor's use, notify Engineer in writing and provide additional Sample(s). Contractor is responsible for furnishing, shipping, and transporting additional Samples.

c. Deliver one Sample to Engineer's field office at the Site. Deliver balance of Samples to location directed by Engineer.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Provide the following Closeout Submittals in accordance with the individual Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Maintenance contracts

2. Bonds for specific products or systems

3. Warranty documentation

4. Sustainable design closeout documentation.

5. Software programming and documentation.

B. On documents such as maintenance contracts and bonds, include on each document furnished original signature of entity issuing the document.

C. Operations and Maintenance Data: Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 23 – Operations and Maintenance Data.

D. Record Documentation: Submit in accordance with Section 01 78 39 – Project Record Documents.

E. Disposition: Dispositions and meanings are the same as specified for Informational Submittals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. For spare parts, extra stock materials, and tools, submit quantity of items specified in associated Specification Section. Furnish in accordance with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials.

B. Disposition: Dispositions and meanings are the same as specified for Informational Submittals.

1.07 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor shall review, coordinate, and verify submittals with Subcontractors, Manufacturers, and Suppliers, including field measurements at Site, in accordance with the General Conditions and as modified by Supplemental Conditions prior to submitting material for Engineer's review.

B. Contractor shall clearly and concisely indicate and mark equipment and material being submitted to meet the intent of the Contract Documents. Equipment and material not being submitted shall be deleted, stricken through, or otherwise designated not being submitted. Equipment and material data sheets shall be included once with cross references throughout the submittal. Multiple equipment and material data sheets for the same item within a submittal may receive a rejected disposition until corrected.

1. Individual Specification Sections require a Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter to be included with the submittal. When specified, submittals provided without the CD&E letter shall receive a rejected disposition without review.

2. CD&E letter requirements:

a. Include a copy of entire Specification section with each paragraph and subparagraph noted with “C”, “D”, or “E” to indicate if equipment and material being provided is in compliance (C), deviates (D), or exceptions (E) are taken with the Contract Documents.

1) Compliance (C): Full compliance with the specified requirement.

2) Deviation (D): Deviation from the specified requirement.

3) Exception (E): Exception with the specified requirement.

b. Include all comments, deviations and exceptions taken to the Contract Documents by the Contractor and Equipment Manufacturer/Supplier.

c. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions is not acceptable.

d. Address deviations and exceptions taken to each Contract Drawing related to the Specification section.

C. Contractor shall provide Contractor’s stamp of approval certifying submittal material has been reviewed and conform to the Contract Documents prior to submitting material for Engineer’s review.

D. Contractor shall provide written notice of deviations or variations that submittal may have with the Contract Documents.

E. Contractor shall provide bound, dated, labeled, tabulated, and consecutively numbered submittals as specified in the individual Specification Section. Label shall contain the following:

1. Specification Section.

2. Referenced Drawing number.

3. Subcontractor or Supplier name.

4. Type of equipment and/or materials.

F. Contractor shall perform the following after receiving Engineer’s review disposition:

1. Order, fabricate, or ship equipment and materials included in the submittal (pending Engineer’s review of source quality control submittals) with the following disposition:

a. “Furnish as Submitted” (FAS).

b. “Furnish as Corrected” (FAC).

c. “Furnish as Corrected – Confirm” (FACC), only portions of Work that do not require resubmittal for Engineer’s review.

2. Resubmittal requirements:

a. Partial resubmittal of “Furnish as Corrected – Confirm” (FACC) returned dispositions, until Engineer’s disposition is either “Furnish as Submitted” (FAS) or “Furnish as Corrected” (FAC).

b. Full resubmittal of material with Engineer’s disposition of “Revise and Resubmit” (R&R), until Engineer’s disposition is “Furnish as Submitted” (FAS), “Furnish as Corrected” (FAC), or “Furnish as Corrected – Confirm” (FACC) that requires a partial resubmittal.

c. Contractor shall be responsible for Engineer’s charges to Owner if submittals are not approved within the number of specified submittals in accordance with the General Conditions. Engineer’s charges shall include, but not limited to, additional review effort, meetings, and conference calls with Contractor, Subcontractor, or Supplier.

1.08 ENGINEER’S REVIEW

A. Engineer’s review of the Contractor’s submittal shall not relieve Contractor’s responsibility under the Contract Document in accordance with the General Conditions and as modified in the Supplemental Conditions. An acceptance of a submittal shall be intended to mean the Engineer does not have specific objection to the submitted material, subject to conformance with the Contract Drawings and Specifications.

B. Engineer’s review of Contractor’s submittal shall be confined to general arrangement and compliance with the Contract Documents, and shall not be for the purpose of checking dimensions, weights, clearances, fittings, tolerances, interferences, coordination of Subcontractor work, etc.

C. Review Dispositions:

1. “Furnish as Submitted” (FAS) – No exceptions are taken.

2. “Furnish as Corrected” (FAC) – Minor corrections are noted for Contractor’s correction.

3. “Furnish as Corrected – Confirm” (FACC) – Corrections are noted and partial resubmittal shall be made as noted.

4. “Revise and Resubmit” (R&R) – Corrections are noted and complete resubmittal shall be made. Submittal does not conform to applicable requirements of the Contract Documents and is not acceptable. Revise submittal and re-submit to indicate acceptability and conformance with the Contract Documents.

5. “Receipt Acknowledged” (RA) –

    a. Information included in submittal conforms to the applicable requirements of the Contract Documents and is acceptable. No further action by Contractor is required relative to this submittal, and the Work covered by the submittal may proceed, and products with submittals with this disposition may be shipped or operated, as applicable.

    b. Information included in submittal is for Project record purposes and does not require Engineer’s review or approval.

6. “Rejected” (R) – Information included in submittal does not conform to the applicable requirements of the Contract Documents and is unacceptable. Contractor shall submit products and materials as specified in the Contract Documents or provide required information for substitution as specified in the Contract Documents for consideration by Engineer.

D. Electronic Submittal Return to Contractor: Electronic submittals shall be returned electronically with dispositions provided.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 42 00
REFERENCES

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Definitions and terminology applicable to all the Contract Documents are included in the General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Abbreviations and Acronyms: Common abbreviations that may be found in the Contract Documents are listed below:

alternating current	a-c
ampere	A
Architectural Barriers Act	ABA
Americans with Disabilities Act	ADA
Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines	ADAAG
ante meridian	a.m.
average	avg
biochemical oxygen demand	BOD
brake horsepower	bhp
British thermal unit	Btu
Centigrade (or Celsius)	C
chlorinated polyvinyl chloride	CPVC
Code of Federal Regulations	CFR
cubic inch	cu in
cubic foot	cu ft
cubic yard	cdu yd, or CY
cubic feet per minute	cfm
cubic feet per second	cfs
degree Centigrade (or Celsius)	degrees C or ºC
degrees Fahrenheit	degrees F or ºF

diameter	dia
direct current	d-c
dollars	$
each	ea
efficiency	eff
Fahrenheit	F
feet	ft
feet per hour	fph
feet per minute	fpm
feet per second	fps
figure	Fig
flange	flg
foot-pound	ft-lb
gallon	gal
gallons per hour	gph
gallons per minute	gpm
gallons per second	gps
gram	g
grams per liter	g/L
Hertz	Hz
horsepower	hp or HP
hour	hr
human-machine interface	HMI
inch	in.
inches water gage	in. w.g.
inch-pound	in.-lb
inside diameter	ID
iron pipe size	IPS
thousand pounds	kips

thousand pounds per square inch	ksi
kilovolt-ampere	kva
kilowatt	kw
linear foot	lin ft or LF
liter	L
maximum	max
mercury	Hg
milligram	mg
milligrams per liter	mg/l or mg/L
milliliter	ml
millimeter	mm
million gallons per day	mgd or MGD
million gallons	MG
minimum	min
national pipe threads	NPT
net positive suction head	NPSH
net positive suction head available	NPSHA
net positive suction head required	NPSHR
nominal pipe size	NPS
number	no.
operator interface terminal	OIT
ounce	oz
ounce-force	ozf
outside diameter	OD
parts per hundred	pph
parts per million	ppm
parts per billion	ppb
polyvinyl chloride	PVC
post meridian	p.m.

pound	lb
pounds per square inch	psi
pounds per square inch absolute	psia
pounds per square inch gauge	psig
pounds per square foot	psf
process control system	PCS
programmable logic controller	PLC
revolutions per minute	rpm
second	sec
specific gravity	sp gr or SG
square	sq
square foot	sq ft or sf
square inch	sq in.
square yard	sq yd or SY
standard	std
standard cubic feet per minute	scfm
total dynamic head	TDH

B. Definitions: Terminology used in the Specifications includes:

1. “Indicated” refers to graphic representations, notes, or schedules on the Drawings, or to other paragraphs or schedules in the Specifications and similar locations in the Contract Documents.

2. “Shown”, “noted”, “scheduled”, and “specified” are used to help the user locate the reference without limitation on the location.

3. “Installer”, “applicator”, or “erector” is Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor, either as an employee or subcontractor, to perform a particular construction activity, including installation, erection, application or similar Work. Installers shall be experienced in the Work that installer is engaged to perform.

4. “Experienced”, when used with the term “installer” means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in size and scope to this Project; being familiar with the special requirements indicated; being familiar with Laws and Regulations; and having complied with requirements of authorities

having jurisdiction, and complying with requirements of the Supplier of the material or equipment being installed.

5. Trades: Use of a term such as “carpentry” does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as “carpenter”, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents or required by Laws or Regulations. Such terminology also does not imply that specified requirements apply exclusively to trade personnel of the corresponding generic name.

6. “Assigned specialists” and similar terms: Certain Sections of the Specifications require that specific construction activities be performed by specialists recognized as experts in those operations. Engage said specialists for those activities, and their engagement is a requirement over which Contractor has no option. These requirements do not conflict with enforcement of building codes and other Laws and Regulations. Also, such requirements are not intended to interfere with local trade union jurisdictional settlements and similar conventions. Such assignments shall not relieve Contractor of responsibility for complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

C. Reference Standards:

1. Refer to General Conditions, as may be modified by the Supplementary Conditions, relative to reference standards and resolving discrepancies between reference standards and the Contract Documents. Provisions of reference standards are in effect in accordance with the Specifications.

2. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in the Work shall be familiar with reference standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable reference standards are not bound with the Contract Documents. Where reference standards are needed for a construction activity, obtain copies of standards from the publication source.

3. Abbreviations and Names: Where reference standards, specifications, codes, manuals, Laws or Regulations, or other published data of international, national, regional or local organizations are referred to in the Contract Documents, the organization issuing the standard may be referred to by their acronym or abbreviation only.

4. Following acronyms or abbreviations that may appear in the Contract Documents shall have the meanings indicated below. Listing is alphabetical by acronym.

AA	Aluminum Association
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
ACI	American Concrete Institute
ACIFS	American Cast Iron Flange Standards
ACS	American Chemical Society
ADC	Air Diffusion Council
ADSC	International Association of Foundation Drilling.
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies
AF&PA	American Forest and Paper Association
ABMA	American Bearing Manufacturers Association (formerly Anti- Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (ABMA))
AGA	American Gas Association
AGMA	American Gear Manufacturers Association
AHDGA	American Hot Dip Galvanizers Association
AI	Asphalt Institute
AIA	American Institute of Architects
AIChE	American Institute of Chemical Engineers
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
ALSC	American Lumber Standards Committee
AMA	Acoustical Materials Association
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association
AMP	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers, Architectural Metal Products Division
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
APA	The Engineered Wood Association
API	American Petroleum Institute
APHA	American Public Health Association
AREA	American Railway Engineering Association
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
ASA	American Standards Association

ASAE	American Society of Agricultural Engineers
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASNT	American Society for Non-Destructive Testing
ASQ	American Society for Quality
ASSE	American Society of Safety Engineers
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWCI	Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood Protection Association
AWPI	American Wood Preservers Institute
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BAAQMD	Bay Area Air Quality Management District
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
BIA	Brick Industry Association
BOCA	Building Officials and Code Administrators
CBMA	Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association
CDA	Copper Development Association
CEMA	Conveyor Equipment Manufacturers Association
CGA	Compressed Gas Association
CISCA	Ceilings and Interior Systems Construction Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute
CMAA	Crane Manufacturers Association of America
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute

DIN	Deutsches Institut fur Normung eV (German Institute for Standardization)
DIPRA	Ductile Iron Pipe Research Association
EJCDC	Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.
ETL	Intertek Testing Services, Inc. (formerly ETL Testing Laboratories, Inc.)
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FM	Factory Mutual (FM Global)
FRPI	Fiberglass Reinforced Plastics Institute
FS	Federal Specification
GA	Gypsum Association
GANA	Glass Association of North America
HEW	United States Department of Health, Education and Welfare
HI	Hydraulic Institute
HMI	Hoist Manufacturers Institute
HUD	United States Department of Housing and Urban Development
IBC	International Building Code
ICC	International Code Council
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
IFI	Industrial Fasteners Institute
IFCEA	Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association
IRI	Industrial Risk Insurers
ISA	Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (formerly Instrument Society of America)
ISO	Insurance Services Office
IOS	International Organization for Standardization

LPI	Lightning Protection Institute
MIA	Marble Institute of America
ML/SFA	Metal Lath/Steel Framing Association
MS	Military Specifications
MSS	Manufacturers' Standardization Society
MMA	Monorail Manufacturers Association
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NACE	National Association of Corrosion Engineers
NAPF	National Association of Pipe Fabricators, Inc.
NARUC	National Association of Regulatory Utilities Commissioners
NBHA	National Builders Hardware Association
NBS	United States Department of Commerce, National Bureau of Standards
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
NEC	National Electric Code
NELMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NESC	National Electrical Safety Code
NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council
NGA	National Glass Association
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
NHPMA	Northern Hardwood and Pine Manufacturers Association
NIST	United States Department of Commerce, National Institute of Standards and Technology
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
NSSGA	National Stone, Sand, and Gravel Association

NTMA	National Terrazzo and Mosaic Association
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PCA	Portland Cement Association
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PEI	Porcelain Enamel Institute
PFI	Pipe Fabrication Institute
PPI	Plastics Pipe Institute
PGMC	Primary Glass Manufacturers Council
PS	Product Standards Section, United States Department of Commerce
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections (part of AISC)
RMA	Rubber Manufacturers Association
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SBCCI	Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc.
SCAQMD	Southern California Air Quality Management District
SCPRF	Structural Clay Products Research Foundation
SCTE	Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers
SDI	Steel Deck Institute
SDI	Steel Door Institute
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturing Association
SJI	Steel Joist Institute
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor’s National Association
SPI	Society of the Plastics Industry
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau
SSPC	Society for Protective Coatings
SWI	Steel Window Institute
TCNA	Tile Council of North America
TEMA	Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance
UBC	Uniform Building Code

UL	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
USAB	United States Access Board
USDOE	United States Department of Energy
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
USGBC	United States Green Building Council
USGS	United States Geological Survey
USPHS	United States Public Health Service
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association
WCMA	Wood Component Manufacturers Association
MDMA	Window and Door Manufacturers Association
WWEMA	Water and Wastewater Equipment Manufacturers Association
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 45 33
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. This Section defines the requirements for Special Inspections as required by Section 1704 of the North Carolina Building Code (NCBC) and any State or local amendments.

B. Either the Engineer of Record (EOR) or Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge (RDPIRC) will prepare a Statement of Special Inspections, which identifies the type and extent of required Special Inspections.

C. The Owner will retain one or more Special Inspections Agencies to perform Special Inspection services. These Agencies shall be independent from the Contractor and approved by the Building Official. The EOR may perform Special Inspection services where qualifications for a specific inspection task are met.

D. The Contractor shall plan and conduct operations as to schedule and allow Special Inspections, providing adequate time and safe access for inspections. The Contractor shall coordinate requirements for Special Inspections with the Special Inspections Agency.

E. Special Inspections shall be in addition to inspections performed by Building Officials that are specified in IBC Section 110.

F. Special Inspections shall be in addition to any Structural Observations required by NCBC Section 1704.6.

G. Special Inspections do not supersede other inspections and testing required by the Contract Documents to satisfy the Contractor’s quality control responsibility. Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with quality control requirements as required by other Sections of the Specifications.

H. Special Inspections shall not relieve Contractor’s obligation to perform and complete work in accordance with Contract Documents. Results of Special Inspections activities, including any discrepancies that are noted or not noted, shall never constitute an acceptance of work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

I. This Section does not apply to construction equipment, shoring, earth retention systems, and temporary structures used by the Contractor in construction and not detailed in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction and any associated building code requirements.

11302022

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Special Inspections requirements apply to work detailed in other Sections of the Specifications. Special Inspections requirements shall be in addition to any other inspection or quality control requirements detailed in other Sections of the Specifications. See individual Specification Sections for type of work in question.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Periodic Special Inspections: The part-time or intermittent observation of work requiring Special Inspection by a Special Inspector who is present in the area where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.

B. Continuous Special Inspections: The full-time observation of work requiring Special Inspection by a Special Inspector who is present in the area where the work is being performed.

C. Engineer of Record (EOR): The engineer of each system in responsible charge for the design of each specific building system including structural, mechanical, electrical, and architectural components

D. Registered Design Professional in Responsible Charge (RDPIRC): The RDPIRC in charge of Special Inspections during construction for each specific building system including structural, mechanical, electrical, and architectural components. The RDPIRC shall be a currently Registered Professional Engineer in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. The EOR may serve in this role.

E. Special Inspections Agency: An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, which has been approved by the Building Official and is retained by the Owner. The EOR may serve in this role where qualifications for specific inspection tasks are met.

F. Special Inspector: Individual employed by or retained by the Special Inspections Agency who is qualified in inspection of specific aspects or components of the construction and conducts inspection activities in these specific aspects of the construction, as required by this Section. The EOR may serve in this role where qualifications for specific inspection tasks are met.

G. Statement of Special Inspections: Document prepared by the EOR or RDPIRC and submitted to the Building Official which identifies the type and extent of required Special Inspections.

H. Approved Fabricator: Fabricator who has been registered and approved by the Building Official to manufacture or fabricate specific components of the construction without Special Inspections.

1.04 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents and all other documents referenced in the Specifications. All referenced Specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

3. TMS 402/TMS 602 – Building Code for Masonry Structures/Specifications for Masonry Structures

4. AISC – Code of Standard Practice

5. AISC 341 – Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

6. AISC 360 – Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

7. AISC 348 – Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts

8. AWS – Structural Welding Code

9. ADMI – Aluminum Design Manual: A Specification for Aluminum Structures

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures.

1. The Contractor shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the Building Official and RDPIRC prior to beginning work. A statement is required from each Contractor who has responsibility for construction or fabrication of a main wind- or seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or a wind- or seismic-resisting-component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.

2. The Contractor shall submit qualifications of any fabricators they intend to use that may qualify as Approved Fabricators to the Special Inspections Agency for review.

B. The Special Inspections Agency shall submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. The Special Inspections Agency shall provide a statement of qualifications showing relative experience, training, and certification(s) for each Special Inspector to the Building Official, if requested.

2. The Special Inspections Agency shall review fabricator qualifications and submit them to the Building Official for approval as an Approved Fabricator if requested.

3. Special Inspectors shall keep detailed inspection records, including all inspections, tests, similar services, and any discrepancies and corrections. Any discrepancies and corrections shall be reported to the Building Official, the EOR, and the RDPIRC in all required reports, unless otherwise required by the Building Official.

4. The Special Inspections Agency shall submit Interim Reports to the Building Official and the RDPIRC documenting required Special Inspections and correction of any discrepancies at the frequency specified in the Statement of Special Inspections.

5. The Special Inspections Agency shall submit to the Building Official and the RDPIRC a Final Report documenting required Special Inspections and correction of any discrepancies. The Final Report shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon by the Owner and the Building Official at the Pre-inspection Meeting.

6. Where work is done by Approved Fabricators, the Special Inspections Agency shall coordinate the submittal of a certificate of compliance to the Building Official, the EOR, and the RDPIRC.

1.06 SPECIAL INSPECTOR QUALIFICATIONS

A. Special Inspectors shall meet minimum qualifications established by the Building Official and shall be approved by the Building Official.

1.07 OFF-SITE FABRICATIONS

A. When structural elements or assemblies are fabricated off site, Special Inspections shall be performed in the fabricator's shop unless the fabricator is an Approved Fabricator. Special Inspections are not required if work is done on the premises of an Approved Fabricator.

B. Fabricators shall maintain detailed fabrication and quality control procedures to ensure workmanship and conformance with Contract Documents and reference standards. The Special Inspections Agency shall review the fabricator's quality control procedures and coordinate required Special Inspections with the fabricator and the Contractor.

C. The Contractor shall submit qualifications of fabricators seeking Approved Fabricator status to the Special Inspections Agency for review. Approval as an Approved Fabricator shall be given by the Building Official upon the recommendation of the Special Inspections Agency or upon review of the fabricator's written fabrication procedures and quality control manuals that provide a basis for control of materials and workmanship, with periodic auditing of fabrication and quality control practices by an Approved Agency or the Building Official.

D. At completion of fabrication, the Approved Fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to the Owner or the RDPIRC for submittal to the Building Official stating that the work was performed in accordance with the approved Contract Documents.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PRE-INSPECTION MEETING

A. At least two weeks prior to beginning work, a Pre-inspection Meeting shall be held to discuss the Special Inspection procedures and submittals. The following parties shall participate: EOR, RDPIRC, Special Inspections Agency representative, Contractor, Subcontractors, Testing Agencies, and Building Official. The type of meeting (in-person or teleconference) and location of meeting shall be determined by the Building Official.

3.02 STATEMENT AND SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

A. The Special Inspections Agency and all Special Inspectors are required to comply with all requirements of the Statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections. Together, these documents identify materials, systems, components, and work that are required to have Special Inspections, the type and extent of Special Inspections, and whether they will be continuous or periodic. The Schedule of Special Inspections is included on the Drawings. A form which may be used for the Statement of Special Inspections is also included at the end of this Section.

3.03 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AGENCY REQUIREMENTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Special Inspections Agency shall be an established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, which has been approved by the Building Official and is retained by the Owner. The Agency shall demonstrate competence, to the satisfaction of the Building Official, for the inspection of the specific aspects of construction or operation requiring Special Inspection.

B. The Special Inspections Agency shall maintain detailed inspection records, including a copy at the jobsite, and all records shall be available upon request by the EOR, RDPIRC or the Building Official. The Agency shall submit all required reports to the EOR, RDPIRC and Building Official. Where EOR approval is required for corrections, the Special Inspector shall maintain copies of all related correspondence and submit with all required reports. The Agency shall coordinate all required Special Inspection activities with the Special Inspectors, the Contractor, and any fabricators and shall coordinate designation of fabricators as Approved Fabricators when requested.

3.04 SPECIAL INSPECTORS' REQUIREMENTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

A. All Special Inspectors shall meet the qualification requirements determined by the Building Official for the specific type of inspection services they will be providing and shall be approved by the Building Official. Special Inspectors shall submit written documentation demonstrating their competence and experience or training to the Building Official for approval of their qualifications.

B. Special Inspections shall be performed in accordance with all requirements of the Statement of Special Inspections, the Schedule of Special Inspections, the North Carolina Building Code, the NCBC, and any State or local amendments. Special Inspectors shall maintain detailed inspection records, including a copy at the jobsite, and all records shall be available upon request by the EOR, RDPIRC, or the Building Official. Special Inspectors shall submit all required reports to the RDPIRC and the Building Official. Where EOR approval is required for corrections, the Special Inspector shall maintain copies of all related correspondence and submit with all required reports. Special Inspectors shall coordinate inspection requirements and time when inspections can be conducted with the Contractor.

C. Any discrepancies in work noted by the Special Inspector shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. Special Inspectors shall coordinate correction of discrepancies with the Contractor. Any corrections of discrepancies that result in changes to the work as shown on the Contract Documents shall be approved by the EOR. If noted discrepancies are not corrected, the Special Inspector shall notify the Contractor, the EOR, the RDPIRC and the Building Official. All noted discrepancies and corrections shall be documented in all inspection records and all required reports.

3.05 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Each Contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a main wind- or seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or a wind- or seismic-resisting-component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections shall submit a Statement of Responsibility to the Building Official, RDPIRC, and EOR prior to the commencement of work. The Statement of Responsibility shall contain acknowledgement of the specific requirements contained in the Statement of Special Inspections.

B. The Contractor shall coordinate requirements of Special Inspections with the Special Inspections Agency and the Special Inspectors and shall provide adequate time and access to conduct inspections. The Contractor is solely responsible for providing safe access and any necessary safety equipment required to conduct inspections. The Special Inspector shall not supervise, direct, control, or have authority over or be responsible for the Contractor’s means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of the Contractor to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work.

C. Special Inspections shall not relieve the Contractor’s obligation to perform and complete work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Results of Special Inspections activities, including any discrepancies that are noted or not noted, shall never constitute an acceptance of work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

D. The Contractor shall provide advance notice of work to be conducted that will require Special Inspections. If the Special Inspector is delayed in inspecting the work due to

inadequate notice or completion of the work, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost of additional subsequent Special Inspections.

E. The Contractor shall promptly correct any discrepancies noted by the Special Inspectors. Any corrections of discrepancies that result in changes to the work as shown on the Contract Documents shall be approved by the EOR. Where EOR approval is required, the Contractor shall report the discrepancy to the EOR in accordance with provisions of the General Conditions. The EOR will authorize any changes to the Contract Documents required for the correction in accordance with provisions of the General Conditions. Copies of all correspondence related to the correction shall be submitted concurrently to the Special Inspections Agency.

3.06 BUILDING OFFICIAL OR AUTHORITY RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Building Official will approve qualifications of the Special Inspections Agency, all Special Inspectors, and any Approved Fabricators. The Building Official will approve all forms submitted by the Contractor, any Approved Fabricators, the EOR, the RDPIRC, the Special Inspections Agency, and the Special Inspectors. The Building Official and the Special Inspections Agency shall agree to the frequency of Interim Reports and the submittal deadline for the Final Report.

3.07 RDPIRC RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The RDPIRC shall complete the Statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections, unless previously completed by the EOR. The Statement of Special Inspections form included in this Section shall be used unless the Building Official has a preferred form for the Statement of Special Inspections, in which case the Building Official’s form may be used and shall be completed by the RDPIRC.

B. The RDPIRC shall review and coordinate certain aspects of the project, as determined by the Building Official, for compatibility with the design of the building, structure or building system, including, but not limited to, submittal documents prepared by others, deferred submittal documents and phased submittal documents.

3.08 OWNER RESPONSIBILITES

A. The Owner will retain a Special Inspections Agency to perform Special Inspections during construction. The Special Inspections Agency will retain the RDPIRC.

3.09 MINIMUM INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Detailed requirements for Special Inspections are shown in the Statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections, which references the IBC, applicable code standards, and any State or local amendments. Special Inspections shall be performed in accordance with all requirements of the Statement of Special Inspections, the Schedule of Special Inspections, the IBC, and any State or local amendments. Additional requirements for specific materials listed in other Sections of these Specifications shall also be satisfied. The frequency of inspections shall be

continuous or periodic as indicated in the Schedule of Special Inspections and in accordance with applicable building codes.

3.10 REPORTS

A. Special Inspectors shall maintain detailed inspection records, including a copy at the jobsite, and all records shall be available upon request by the EOR, RDPIRC or the Building Official. The Special Inspections Agency shall submit all required reports to the Building Official, EOR, and RDPIRC as agreed upon with the Building Official. Reports shall indicate the inspections and testing performed and whether work inspected was or was not completed in conformance to Contract Documents and any corrective measures taken. Where EOR approval is required for corrections, the Agency shall maintain copies of all related correspondence and submit with all required reports.

3.11 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS FORMS

A. This Section includes forms which may be used to meet requirements for written documentation during the performance of Special Inspections in accordance with the IBC. These forms may be replaced with forms meeting NCBC requirements provided by the Building Official if available.

STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PROJECT: _____

LOCATION: _____

PERMIT APPLICANT: _____

APPLICANT'S ADDRESS: _____

ARCHITECT OF RECORD: _____

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

MECHANICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

ELECTRICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE: _____

This Statement of Special Inspections is submitted in accordance with Section 1704 of the North Carolina Building Code. It shall be considered in conjunction with the Schedule of Special Inspections included in this Specification Section 01 45 33. If applicable, it includes *Requirements for Seismic Resistance and/or Requirements for Wind Resistance*.

Are Requirements for Seismic Resistance included in the Statement of Special Inspections? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Are Requirements for Wind Resistance included in the Statement of Special Inspections? ☐ Yes ☐ No

The Special Inspector(s) shall keep detailed records of all inspections, including a copy at the jobsite. All records shall be available upon request by the Engineer or the Building Official. Any discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Contractor. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the Building Official and the Engineer prior to completion of that phase of work. The Special Inspections Agency shall furnish Interim Reports to the Building Official and to the Engineer at the frequency indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections. A Final Report shall be submitted to the Building Official and the Engineer at the time agreed upon by the Owner and the Building Official.

Frequency of Interim Report submittals to the Building Official:

___ Weekly ___ Bi-Weekly ___ Monthly Other; specify:_____

Frequency of Interim Report submittals to the Engineer:

___ Weekly ___ Bi-Weekly ___ Monthly Other; specify:_____

Special Inspections do not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents. Jobsite safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

Statement of Special Inspections Prepared by:

_____
Type or print name

_____
Signature Date

Building Official's Acceptance:

_____
Type or print name

_____
Signature Date

Registered Design Professional's Seal

STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

REQUIREMENTS FOR SEISMIC RESISTANCE

See the Schedule of Special Inspections for inspection and testing requirements.

Seismic Design Category: _____

Statement of Special Inspection for Seismic Resistance Required (Yes/No): _____

Description of seismic force-resisting system subject to special inspection and testing for seismic resistance:

Description of designated seismic systems in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE 7 subject to special inspection and testing for seismic resistance. Special inspector shall verify that the label, anchorage and mounting of these systems conforms to the Contract Documents and Approved Submittals:

Description of additional seismic systems and components requiring special inspections:

Description of additional seismic systems and components requiring testing:

Statement of Responsibility:
Each Contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component described above must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

REQUIREMENTS FOR WIND RESISTANCE

See the Schedule of Special Inspections for inspection and testing requirements.

Basic Wind Speed (3 second gust): ____120_____ m.p.h.

Wind Exposure Category: ___C_____

Statement of Special Inspection for Wind Resistance Required (Yes/No): ___No_____

Description of main wind force-resisting system subject to special inspection for wind resistance:

Description of wind force-resisting components subject to special inspection for wind resistance:

Statement of Responsibility:
Each Contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a system or component described above must submit a Statement of Responsibility.

INTERIM REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

City/County of:							
Project Name/Address:				**Inspection Type(s) Coverage:**			
				☐ **Continuous**		☐ **Periodic**	
Describe Inspections Made, Including Locations:							
Tests Made:							
Total Inspection Time Each Day	**Date:**						
	Hours:						
List items requiring Special Inspection, and any discrepancies and corrections. If Engineer approval is required for any corrections, note this, and indicate that approval was obtained. Attach copies of all related correspondence.							
Comments:							

To the best of my knowledge, work inspected was in accordance with the Contract Documents and applicable standards except as noted above.

Signed: _____ Date: _____

Print Full Name: _____ I.D.: _____

Phone Number: _____

This report is to be submitted to the Building Official and the Engineer. A copy shall be maintained at the jobsite.

FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PROJECT: _____

LOCATION: _____

PERMIT APPLICANT: _____

APPLICANT'S ADDRESS: _____

_____

ARCHITECT OF RECORD: _____

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

MECHANICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

ELECTRICAL ENGINEER OF RECORD: _____

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE: _____

To the best of my information, knowledge, and belief, Special Inspections required for this Project in accordance with Section 1704 of the North Carolina Building Code and any State or local amendments have been performed, and all work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and all applicable standards, except as indicated.

The Special Inspection program does not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents. Jobsite safety and means and methods of construction are solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

This Final Report includes information submitted in previous Interim Reports numbered _____ to _____, as well as any Special Inspections, discrepancies, and corrections occurring since the last Interim Report, dated _____.

All items requiring Special Inspection are listed below. All inspections, tests, and similar services that were performed are listed and any discrepancies and corrections are indicated. If Engineer approval was required for any corrections, this is noted, and copies of all related correspondence are attached.

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

(Attach 8 ½"x11" continuation sheet(s) if required to complete the description of corrections)

Prepared By:

Special Inspector's Seal

_____
Special Inspection Agency:

_____
Type or print name

_____
Signature Date

CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Each Contractor responsible for the construction or fabrication of a main-wind- or seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or a wind- or seismic-resisting-component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections must submit this Statement of Responsibility prior to commencement of work on the system or component.

Project: _____

Contractor's Name: _____

Address: _____

License No.: _____

Description of building systems and components included in Statement of Responsibility:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Contractor's Acknowledgement of Special Requirements

I hereby acknowledge that I have received, read, and understand the Statement of Special Inspections and its requirements.

_____
Name and Title (type or print)

_____ _____
Signature Date

FABRICATOR'S CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

Each approved fabricator that is exempt from Special Inspection of shop fabrication and implementation procedures per Section 1704 of the North Carolina Building Code must submit this Fabricator's Certificate of Compliance at the completion of fabrication.

Project: _____

Fabricator's Name: _____

Address: _____

Description of structural members and assemblies that have been fabricated:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

I hereby certify that items described above were fabricated on my premises in strict accordance with the Contract Documents and applicable standards.

_____
Name and Title (type or print)

_____ _____
Signature Date

Attach copy of Building Official's approval of fabricator as an Approved Fabricator.

NOTIFICATION OF FAILURE TO CORRECT DISCREPANCY

City/County of:
Project Name/Address:
List discrepancies, proposed correction, and Contractor response. If Engineer approval is required for any corrections, note this, and indicate whether approval was obtained. Attach copies of all related correspondence.
Comments:

Signed: _____ Date: _____

Print Full Name: _____ I.D.: _____

Phone Number: _____

This report is to be submitted to the Building Official, the Contractor, and the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 51 00
TEMPORARY UTILITIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contractor shall provide temporary utilities required for the Project and to complete the Work.

1. Make arrangements with utility service companies for temporary services and obtain required permits and approvals for temporary utilities.

2. Pay utility service costs, including connection fees, required for the Work as needed.

3. Continuously maintain adequate utilities for all purposes during the Project, until removal of temporary utilities and temporary facilities. At minimum, provide and maintain temporary utilities through Substantial Completion and removal of temporary field offices and sheds.

4. Should Owner occupy part of the Project prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, cost of utilities consumed via temporary utilities serving the portion occupied by Owner will be shared proportionately between Owner and Contractor as mutually agreed to by the parties.

5. Maintain, including cleaning, temporary utilities and continuously provide consumables as required.

6. Temporary utilities and temporary facilities shall be adequate for personnel using the Site and requirements of Project.

7. Provide temporary utilities and temporary facilities in compliance with Laws and Regulations and, when applicable, requirements of utility owners.

B. Provide the following temporary utilities:

1. Electricity and lighting.

2. Telephone and communications.

3. Heating.

4. Sanitary facilities.

5. Water service.

032619

6. First-aid facilities.

7. Fire protection.

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Use of Owner's System:

1. Existing Utility Systems: Do not use systems in existing buildings or structures for temporary utilities without Owner's written permission and mutually acceptable basis agreed upon by the parties for proportionate sharing of costs between Owner and Contractor.

2. Use of Permanent Utility Systems Provided Under the Project:

a. Permanent lighting, water, heating, ventilating, and fire protection systems and first-aid facilities may be used to provide temporary utilities and temporary facilities if the following are met:

1) Obtain Owner's written permission to use permanent systems.

2) Permanent systems to be used for temporary utilities or temporary facilities shall have achieved Substantial Completion, including complete functionality of all controls.

3) Contractor shall pay all costs while using permanent system, including operation, maintenance, replacement of consumables, and provide replacement parts.

b. Do not use the following permanent facilities:

1) Telephone and communication facilities.

2) Sanitary facilities.

1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electricity and lighting:

1. Contractor shall provide electrical and lighting service for construction field offices, sheds, storage containers, etc. and as required for the Work.

2. General 120/240 V service requirements:

a. Contractor shall provide 120/240 V, single phase, 3-wire temporary system for small power requirements and general lighting.

b. Contractor shall provide main disconnect, overcurrent protection, meter outlet, branch circuit breakers, and wiring for temporary service to the

Contractor's field office service connections. Contractor shall provide equipment and appurtenances in accordance with electricity service provider and applicable standards and codes

c. Contractor shall register the 120/240 V electrical service meter in the Contractor's name and shall be responsible for electrical charges at no additional cost to the Owner.

d. Contractor shall provide electrical service other than 120/240 V, single phase, 3-wire service as required for the Work at the Contractor's own expense.

3. General lighting requirements:

a. Contractor shall provide a minimum of 10 foot candles for enclosed and partially enclosed structures for performing the Work.

b. Contractor shall provide a night lighting circuit for security. Light intensity shall be a minimum of 2 foot candles.

4. Contractor shall energize the electrical system 15-minutes prior to and following regular work day hours at the Site. Required from Monday through Friday, all inclusive.

5. Contractor shall energize the night lighting system at end of typical working day and de-energize at start of typical working day. System shall be continuously energized on Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays.

6. Contractor shall provide an independent grounding cable connected directly to the structure, building, and equipment for erection and fabrication by electrical welders. Grounding by adjacent conduit, piping, etc. shall be prohibited at the Site.

7. Contractor shall coordinate usage of temporary electrical system with Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Owner including the following:

a. Usage is suitable for 120V, single phase, 60 Hz operation with a maximum operating input of 1,500 volt-amperes.

b. One unit connected to a single outlet.

c. Restrict usage in case of overloading circuits to correct loading.

B. Telephone and communications: Contractor shall provide temporary telephone and communications required for its operations at the Site and for summoning emergency medical assistance.

C. Heating:

1. Contractor shall provide temporary heating, ventilation coverings and enclosures necessary to protect the Work and materials against wetness and temperature damage, to dry out the Work, and to facilitate the Work in structures.

2. Equipment, fuel, materials, personnel and methods used shall be adequate to maintain critical installation temperatures and ventilation of Work at all times in areas where necessary to perform the Work.

3. Enclosed structures shall have a minimum temperature of 50°F, unless otherwise specified, where Work is performed.

4. Contractor shall provide sufficient heat to maintain a minimum temperature of 65°F before and during application of interior finishing, painting, coating, etc.

5. Contractor shall replace any Work damaged by dampness or insufficient/abnormal heating at no cost to the Owner.

D. Sanitary facilities:

1. Contractor shall provide suitably-enclosed chemical or self-contained toilets for Contractor's employees and visitors to the Site. Location of temporary toilets shall be acceptable to Owner and screened from public observation.

2. Facilities shall be maintained and provided in accordance with State or Commonwealth Labor Regulations and local ordinances. Contents shall be removed and disposed in accordance with local and state or commonwealth regulations as required.

3. Contractor shall be prohibited from committing nuisances within, on, or in the vicinity of the Site.

E. Water service:

1. Contractor shall provide temporary water service for the Work including for construction purposes, sanitary facilities, fire protection, field office, and cleaning purposes.

2. Contractor shall provide potable water for Contractor's personnel either by portable containers or drinking fountains.

3. Contractor shall provide temporary hose bibs, hoses, and watertight barrels for the distribution of water.

4. Contractor shall provide freeze protection for water service.

F. First-aid facilities:

1. Contractor shall provide temporary first-aid stations at or immediately adjacent to the Site's major work areas. Contractor shall provide temporary first-aid stations

inside its temporary field office. Locations of first-aid stations shall be determined by Contractor's safety representative.

2. Contractor shall provide list of emergency telephone numbers at each hardwired telephone at the Site. List shall be in accordance with the list of emergency contact information required in Section 01 31 19 – Project Meetings.

G. Fire protection:

1. Contractor shall comply with NFPA 241, Safeguarding Building Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations, and requirements of fire marshals and authorities having jurisdiction at the Site.

2. Contractor shall provide temporary fire exits, fire extinguishers, hoses and safety devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Contractor shall notify Engineer, Owner, and fire marshals in the event of fire at the Site including, but not limited to, fuel tanks and similar hazardous utilities and devices. Contractor shall cooperate with Owner of fuel tank and utilities to prevent occurrence of fire or explosion.

4. Contractor shall perform safety precautions and comply with fire marshal's instructions in the event of fire.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT

A. Materials and equipment for temporary systems may be new or used but shall be adequate for purposes intended and shall not create unsafe conditions and shall comply with Laws and Regulations.

B. Provide required materials, equipment, and facilities, including piping, wiring, and controls.

C. Electrical system requirements: System shall consist of wiring, switches, insulated supports, poles, fixtures, sockets, receptacles, lamps, guards, cutouts and fuses as required for completion of the Work.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install temporary facilities in neat, orderly, manner, and make structurally, mechanically, and electrically sound throughout.

B. Location of Temporary Utilities and Temporary Facilities:

1. Locate temporary systems for proper function and service.

2. Temporary systems shall not interfere with or provide hazards or nuisances to: the Work under this and other contracts, movement of personnel, traffic areas, materials handling, hoisting systems, storage areas, finishes, and work of utility companies.

3. Do not install temporary utilities on the ground, with the exception of temporary extension cords, hoses, and similar systems in place for short durations.

C. Modify and extend temporary systems as required by progress of the Work.

3.02 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain temporary systems to provide safe, continuous service as required.

B. Properly supervise operation of temporary systems:

1. Enforce compliance with Laws and Regulations.

2. Enforce safe practices.

3. Prevent abuse of services.

4. Prevent nuisances and hazards caused by temporary systems and their use.

5. Prevent damage to finishes.

6. Ensure that temporary systems and equipment do not interrupt continuous progress of construction.

C. At end of each work day, check temporary systems and verify that sufficient consumables are available to maintain operation until work is resumed at the Site. Provide additional consumables if the supply on hand is insufficient.

D. Contractor shall replace broken and burned out lamps, blown fuses, and damaged wiring and appurtenances as required to maintain adequate and safe operating conditions.

E. Contractor shall permit subcontractors and others at a mutually agreed arrangement to use temporary electrical system that meet the following requirements:

1. Equipment are suitable for 120 V, single phase, 60 Hz operation.

2. Operating input does not exceed 1,500 volt-amperes.

3. Single piece of equipment connected to one outlet.

4. Contractor shall restrict use of equipment as required to prevent overloading circuits.

3.03 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITES

A. Completely remove temporary utilities, facilities, equipment, and materials when no longer required. Repair damage caused by temporary systems and their removal and restore the Site to condition required by the Contract Documents; if restoration of damaged areas is not specified, restore to preconstruction condition.

B. Contractor is responsible for and shall return to original condition those portions of permanent electric system used in completing the Work.

C. Where temporary utilities are disconnected from existing utility, provide suitable, watertight or gastight (as applicable) cap or blind flange, as applicable, on service line, in accordance with requirements of utility owner.

D. When permanent utilities and systems that were used for temporary utilities, upon Substantial Completion replace all consumables such as filters and light bulbs and parts used during the Work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 55 00
CONTRACTOR ACCESS AND PARKING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Contractor shall provide and maintain temporary laydown and employee parking areas and appurtenances required during the Project for use by Contractor, other contractors employed on the Project, Owner's, and emergency vehicles, as shown on the Drawings.

2. Laydown and employee parking areas shall be designed and maintained by Contractor and shall be fully passable to vehicles in all weather conditions.

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Access roads:

1. Contractor shall construct and maintain such temporary access roads as required to perform the Work.

2. Contractor shall construct access roads, where possible, in locations over the areas of future road systems.

3. Access roads shall be located within the property lines of the Owner unless the Contractor independently secures easements for use and convenience.

a. Contractor shall submit written documentation to the Engineer for Contractor secured easements across privately held property.

b. Easement agreements shall specify terms and conditions of use and provisions for Site restoration.

c. Written release from property owner certifying that terms of the easement agreement have been complied by the Contractor shall be furnished to the Engineer prior to final payment.

B. Use of existing access roads:

1. Contractor will be allowed to use Owner's existing roads as shown on the Drawings.

2. Prevent interference with traffic on existing roads and parking areas. At all times, keep access roads and entrances serving the Site clear and available to Owner,

032619

Owner's employees, emergency vehicles, and other contractors. Do not use access roads or Site entrances for parking or storage of materials or equipment.

3. Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer from expenses caused by Contractor's operations over existing roads and parking areas.

4. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and Site entrances.

5. Contractor shall suitably maintain existing access road at Contractor's expense for the duration of the Contract time.

C. Contractor parking areas:

1. Contractor employee vehicles shall park in area(s) designated by Owner or as shown on the Drawings.

2. Contractor shall construct and maintain parking area at the Site.

D. State/Commonwealth and local regulations:

1. Contractor shall obtain and pay all cost associated with bonds required by authorized entity (i.e. State or Commonwealth Department of Transportation) for the use of State or Commonwealth maintained roads.

2. Contractors shall obey traffic laws and comply with requirements, rules and regulations of the authorized entity (i.e. State or Commonwealth Department of Transportation), including local authorities having jurisdiction, to maintain warning signs, lights, barriers, etc. for the protection of traffic on public roadways.

E. Site security:

1. Contractor shall safely guard all the Work, the Project, products, equipment, and property from loss, theft, damage, and vandalism until Substantial Completion. Contractor's duty includes safely guarding Owner's property in vicinity of the Work and Project, and other private property in the vicinity of the Project from injury and loss in connection with performance of the Project.

2. Employ watchmen as required to provide required security and prevent unauthorized entry.

3. Costs for security required under this Section shall be paid by Contractor.

4. Make no claim against Owner for damage resulting from trespass.

5. Pay full compensation for, or repair or replace, damage to property of Owner and others arising from failure to furnish adequate security.

6. Provide temporary fencing in accordance with the Contract Documents.

7. Security requirements specified in the Section shall begin as soon as the contractor delivers materials to the Site and/or begins work, and shall continue until the date of Final Completion.

8. Procedures:

    a. Contractor shall conform to Owner's security procedures and access restrictions at Site throughout entire Project.

    b. Contractor, including Subcontractors and Suppliers, shall comply with the following:

        1) Personnel Identification: All Contractor personnel shall wear at all times on-Site a badge bearing Contractor's name, employee's name and, as applicable, employee number.

        2) Parking: Do not park outside of designated Contractor parking area. Prepare and maintain parking area as required. Personal vehicles are not allowed outside Contractor parking area.

9. Contractor shall provide and maintain temporary security fencing if existing security fencing or barriers are breached or temporarily removed for the Project at no additional cost to the Owner. Temporary security fencing shall be equal to existing, unless otherwise specified, and provided and maintained in a manner satisfactory to Engineer and Owner.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Contractor shall determine if and where temporary fencing is necessary, unless existing security fencing is damaged, which will be determined by Engineer and Owner.

B. Install temporary fencing used for site security in accordance with the Contract Documents and fence manufacturer's instructions. Provide temporary fencing for site security so that integrity of site security is maintained throughout the Project.

C. Maintain temporary fencing. Repair damage to temporary fencing and replace fencing when required to maintain site security.

D. Remove temporary fencing when permanent site security fencing is in place and fully functional, or when otherwise directed by Owner or Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 57 00
TEMPORARY CONTROLS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contractor shall provide and maintain methods, equipment, and temporary construction as required to control environmental conditions at the Site and adjacent areas.

B. Maintain controls until no longer required.

C. Temporary controls include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Dust control.

2. Noise controls.

3. Pest and rodent control.

4. Pollution control.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 DUST CONTROL

A. Contractor shall take measures to control dust from Contractor's operations and prevent spillage of excavated materials on public roads.

B. Contractor shall remove spillage of excavated materials, debris and dust from public roads by methods approved by Engineer.

C. Contractor shall provide temporary dust-proof partitions where required to protect unaltered portions of existing structures and facilities and as directed by Engineer or Owner. Temporary partitions shall be provided where demolition Work is required, to protect equipment and material, and shall consist of the following:

1. Wood studs with plywood on both sides and extend from floor to ceiling.

2. Closure plate at floor and ceiling.

3. One door (minimum) with hardware.

032619

D. Contractor shall refer to applicable sections of local and state/commonwealth regulations on dust control for additional guidance.

1. Contractor shall apply water at locations, quantities, and frequencies required by Engineer to control dust for nuisance prevention to Owner, Engineer, and properties in the vicinity of the Site.

2. Dust control and cleaning measures shall be provided at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.02 NOISE CONTROL

A. Contractor's vehicles and equipment shall minimize noise emissions to greatest degree practicable. Provide mufflers, silencers, and sound barriers when necessary.

B. Noise levels shall comply with Laws and Regulations, including OSHA requirements and local ordinances.

C. Noise emissions shall not interfere with the work of Owner or others.

3.03 PEST AND RODENT CONTROL

A. Provide rodent and pest control as required to prevent infestation of the Site and storage areas.

B. Employ methods and use materials that do not adversely affect conditions at the Site or on adjoining properties.

C. In accordance with laws and regulations, promptly and properly dispose of pests and rodents trapped or otherwise controlled.

3.04 POLLUTION CONTROL

A. General:

1. Provide means, methods, and facilities required to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere caused by discharge of noxious substances from construction operations.

2. Equipment used during construction shall comply with Laws and Regulations.

B. Spills and Contamination:

1. Provide equipment and personnel to perform emergency measures required to contain spills and to remove contaminated soils and liquids.

2. Excavate contaminated material and properly dispose of off-site, and replace with suitable compacted fill and topsoil.

C. Protection of Surface Waters: Implement special measures to prevent harmful substances from entering surface waters. Prevent disposal of wastes, effluents, chemicals, and other such substances in or adjacent to surface waters and open drainage routes, in sanitary sewers, or in storm sewers.

D. Atmospheric Pollutants:

1. Provide systems for controlling atmospheric pollutants related to the Work.

2. Prevent toxic concentrations of chemicals and vapors.

3. Prevent harmful dispersal of pollutants into atmosphere.

E. Solid Waste:

1. Provide systems for controlling and managing solid waste related to the Work.

2. Prevent solid waste from becoming airborne, and from discharging to surface waters and drainage routes.

3. Properly handle and dispose of solid waste.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 61 00

PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS AND OPTIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Common requirements for products.

2. Contractor's options for selecting products.

3. Requirements for consideration of "or equal" products.

4. Warranty requirements of products.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions:

1. "Products" includes materials, equipment, machinery, components, fixtures, systems, and other goods incorporated in the Work. Products do not include machinery and equipment used for preparing, fabricating, conveying, erecting, or installing the Work. Products include Owner-furnished goods incorporated in the Work where use of such goods is specifically required in the Contract Documents.

2. "Special Warranties" includes additions or modifications to standard warranty requirements specified in the Contract Documents.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty Log Book:

1. Submit warranty log book prepared specifically for this Project. Submittal shall include a summary listing of all equipment and material warranties furnished in the Contract, date received, and start/end date of warranty period. Individual warranty documentation shall be provided in the submittal.

2. Submit prior to submittal of final application for payment.

B. Patent Documentation: Submit licensing arrangement and agreement documentation.

1.04 REQUIREMENT

A. All products that come into contact with drinking water shall be certified as meeting or exceeding the requirements of ANSI/NSF 61, whether explicitly stated in other

equipment and material specification sections or not. This requirement applies to both permanently and temporarily installed equipment, components, and materials. The intent of this contract requirement is to ensure construction is performed in strict compliance with the requirements set forth in North Carolina Rule 15A NCAC 18C .1537.

B. Common Products:

1. Provide products that have not been previously incorporated into another project or facility unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.

2. Provide products of the same generic kind from a single source.

3. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items shown, indicated, or required for a complete installation for the indicated use and performance.

4. Standard Products: When available, and unless custom or nonstandard options are specified or indicated, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.

5. Visual Matching: Where required in the Contract Documents, provide products that match referenced existing construction, approved mock-ups, or approved Sample, as determined by Engineer.

6. Where the Contract Documents include the phrase “as selected” for product color, finish pattern, option, or similar phrase, provide products selected by Engineer as follows:

a. Standard Range: Where the Contract Documents include the phrase “standard range of colors, patterns, textures” or similar phrase, provide color, pattern, density, or texture selected by Engineer from manufacturer’s product line that does not include premium items.

b. Full Range: Where the Contract Documents include the phrase “full range of colors, patterns, textures” or similar phrase, Engineer will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer’s entire product line, including standard and premium items.

C. Product Compatibility:

1. Similar products by the same Supplier shall be compatible with each other, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.

2. Provide products compatible with products previously selected or installed on the Project.

D. Product Options:

1. For products specified only by reference standard or description, without reference to Supplier, provide products meeting that standard, by a Supplier or from a source that complies with the Contract Documents.

2. For products specified by naming one or more products or Suppliers, provide the named products that comply with the Contract Documents, unless an “or equal” or substitute product is approved by Engineer.

3. For products specified by naming one or more products or Suppliers and the term, “or equal”, when Contractor proposes a product or Supplier as an “or equal”, submit to Engineer a request for approval of an “or equal” product or Supplier.

4. For products specified by naming only one product or manufacturer and followed by words indicating that no substitution is allowed, there is no option and no substitution will be allowed.

E. Concerning Patents:

1. Owner shall be provided a guarantee by Contractor and equipment Supplier that equipment and material furnished in accordance with the Contract Documents is not the subject of patent litigation.

2. Patent litigation or controversy shall include, but not limited to, the following:

a. Actual furnished equipment and material the is subject or could be subject to patent litigation or is known to infringe on a patent.

b. Furnished equipment and material that may result in a process that use of equipment and material in a manner that infringes upon or violates a patent.

3. When patent infringement may occur, Contractor and Supplier shall submit license arrangements among parties, including Contractor, Supplier, and patent owner (controller of patent) at a minimum, which shall permit use of equipment and material as specified in the Contract Documents.

4. Supplier shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer against all claims, costs, losses, and damages arising out of or relating to any infringement or patent rights or copyrights incident to the use of equipment and material specified in the Contract Documents and as required in General Conditions and as modified in the Supplemental Conditions.

F. “Or Equal” Products:

1. For proposed products not named in the Contract Documents and considered as an “or equal” as defined in the General Conditions, Contractor shall request in writing Engineer’s approval of the “or equal”. Request for approval of an “or equal” product shall accompany the Shop Drawing or product data submittal for the proposed product and shall include:

a. Contractor's request that the proposed product be considered as an "or equal" in accordance with the General Conditions, accompanied by Contractor's certifications required in the General Conditions.

b. Documentation adequate to demonstrate that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that proposed product is consistent with the Contract Documents, and that proposed product will produce results and performance required in the Contract Documents, and that proposed product is compatible with other portions of the Work.

c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with the products and manufacturers named in the Contract Documents. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, performance and specific features and requirements shown or indicated.

d. Evidence that proposed product manufacturer will furnish warranty equal to or better than specified, if any.

e. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and physical addresses of installation along with the names, telephone numbers, email addresses and physical address of design professionals and owners associated with the referenced installation, if requested.

f. Samples, if requested.

g. Other information requested by Engineer.

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Warranties specified for products shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, Contractor's general warranty and guarantee and requirements for the required correction period. Disclaimers and limitations in specific product warranties do not limit Contractor's general warranty and guarantee.

1. Product manufacturer's warranty is preprinted written warranty published by product manufacturer and specifically endorsed by product manufacturer to Owner.

2. Equipment and material shall be guaranteed to be free from defects in workmanship, design, and/or materials for a period of one (1) year unless otherwise specified in the individual Specification Section for a Special Warranty.

3. Warranty period shall start on the date of the particular equipment and material is substantially complete, which includes requirements specified in Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures for start-up certification and specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

4. Warranty requirements may be added to or modified in the individual Specification Sections. Special warranty is written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by product manufacturer's warranty or to provide increased rights to Owner.

5. Special warranty information, if any, will be located in the Specification Section for that product.

B. Requirements for Special Warranties: Provide written special warranty document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution by product manufacturer and Owner. Submit draft warranty with submittals required for product.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed by product manufacturer and other parties as appropriate.

2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Contract Documents, prepare written document, properly executed by product manufacturer and Owner, using appropriate form.

3. Refer to Specifications for content and requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submit product manufacturer's warranties and special warranties as submittals in accordance with Schedule of Submittals accepted by Engineer.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 65 00
PRODUCT DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. General requirements for preparing for shipping, delivering, and handling materials and equipment.

2. Contractor shall make all arrangements for transporting, delivering, and handling of materials and equipment required for prosecution and completion of the Work.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to individual Specification Sections for submittal requirements relative to delivery and handling materials and equipment.

1.03 SHIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. When practical, factory-assemble materials and equipment. Match mark or tag separate parts and assemblies to facilitate field assembly. Cover machined and unpainted parts that may be damaged by the elements with strippable, protective coating.

B. Package materials and equipment to facilitate handling, and protect materials and equipment from damage during shipping, handling, and storage. Mark or tag outside of each package or crate to indicate the associated purchase order number, bill of lading number, contents by name, Owner's contract name and number, Contractor name, equipment number, and approximate weight. Include complete packing lists and bills of materials with each shipment.

C. Protect materials and equipment from exposure to the elements and keep thoroughly dry and dust-free at all times. Protect painted surfaces against impact, abrasion, discoloration, and other damage. Lubricate bearings and other items requiring lubrication in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

D. Advance Notice of Shipments:

1. Keep Engineer informed of delivery of all materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work.

E. Do not ship materials and equipment until:

05-04-20

1. Related Shop Drawings, Samples, and other submittals have been approved or accepted (as applicable) by Engineer, including, but not necessarily limited to, Submittals associated with the materials and equipment being delivered.

2. Manufacturer's instructions for handling, storing, and installing the associated materials and equipment have been submitted to and accepted by Engineer in accordance with the Specifications.

3. Results of source quality control testing (factory testing), when required by the Contract Documents for the associated materials or equipment, have been reviewed and accepted by Engineer.

4. Facilities required for handling materials and equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions are in place and available.

5. Required storage facilities have been provided.

1.04 DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS

A. Scheduling and Timing of Deliveries:

1. Arrange deliveries of materials and equipment in accordance with the accepted Progress Schedule and in ample time to facilitate inspection prior to installation.

    a. Equipment and material shall not be delivered to the Site prior to 90 days in advance of scheduled installation.

    b. Partial payment requests will not be processed for materials delivered prior to 90 days before installation or for materials that are improperly stored.

2. Schedule deliveries to minimize space required for and duration of storage of materials and equipment at the Site or delivery location, as applicable.

3. Coordinate deliveries to avoid conflicting with the Work and conditions at Site, and to accommodate the following:

    a. Work of other contractors and Owner.

    b. Owner's operations and maintenance.

    c. Storage space limitations.

    d. Availability of equipment and personnel for handling materials and equipment.

    e. Owner's use of premises.

4. Deliver materials and equipment to the Site during regular working hours.

5. Deliver materials and equipment to avoid delaying the Work and the Project, including work of other contractors, as applicable. Deliver anchor system materials, including anchor bolts to be embedded in concrete or masonry, in ample time to avoid delaying the Work.

B. Deliveries:

1. Shipments shall be delivered with Contractor's name, Subcontractor's name (if applicable), Site name, Project name, and contract designation clearly marked.

2. Site may be listed as the "ship to" or "delivery" address; but Owner shall not be listed as recipient of shipment unless otherwise directed in writing by Engineer.

3. Provide Contractor's telephone number to shipper; do not provide Owner's telephone number.

4. Arrange for deliveries while Contractor's personnel are at the Site. Contractor shall receive and coordinate shipments upon delivery. Shipments delivered to the Site when Contractor is not present will be refused by Owner, and Contractor shall be responsible for the associated delays and additional costs, if incurred.

C. Containers and Marking:

1. Have materials and equipment delivered in manufacturer's original, unopened, labeled containers.

2. Clearly mark partial deliveries of component parts of materials and equipment to identify materials and equipment, to allow easy accumulation of parts, and to facilitate assembly.

D. Inspection of Deliveries:

1. Immediately upon delivery, Contractor shall inspect shipment to verify that:

a. Materials and equipment comply with the Contract Documents and approved or accepted (as applicable) submittals.

b. Quantities are correct.

c. Materials and equipment are undamaged and unstained or discolored.

d. Containers and packages are intact and labels are legible.

e. Materials and equipment are properly protected.

2. Promptly remove damaged materials and equipment from the Site and expedite delivery of new, undamaged materials and equipment, and remedy incomplete or lost materials and equipment to furnish materials and equipment in accordance with the Contract Documents, to avoid delaying progress of the Work. Do not

install damaged materials or equipment without written authorization from the Engineer.

3. Materials that create a finished architectural surface (e.g., hollowcore planks, split-face concrete masonry units, metal roofing, etc.) that are stained, discolored, and/or possessing non-uniform coloring shall be considered damaged and shall be handled in the same manner as other damaged materials.

4. Advise Engineer in writing when damaged, incomplete, or defective materials and equipment are delivered, and advise Engineer of the associated impact on the Progress Schedule.

1.05 HANDLING REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide equipment and personnel necessary to handle materials and equipment, including those furnished by Owner, by methods that prevent soiling or damaging materials and equipment and packaging.

B. Provide additional protection during handling as necessary to prevent scraping, marring, staining, and otherwise damaging materials and equipment and surrounding surfaces.

C. Handle materials and equipment by methods that prevent bending and overstressing.

D. Lift heavy components only at designated lifting points.

E. Handle materials and equipment in safe manner and as recommended by the manufacturer to prevent damage. Do not drop, roll, or skid materials and equipment off delivery vehicles or at other times during handling. Hand-carry or use suitable handling equipment.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 66 00
PRODUCT STORAGE AND PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. General requirements of storing and protecting equipment and materials.

1.02 STORAGE

A. Store and protect materials and equipment in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and the Contract Documents.

B. Contractor shall make all arrangements and provisions necessary for, and pay all costs for, storing materials and equipment. Construction equipment, and materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work shall be placed to avoid injuring the Work and existing facilities and property, and so that free access is maintained at all times to all parts of the Work and to public utility installations in vicinity of the Work. Store materials and equipment neatly and compactly in locations that cause minimum inconvenience to Owner, other contractors, public travel, and owners, tenants, and occupants of adjoining property. Arrange storage in manner to allow easy access for inspection.

C. Areas available at the Site for storing materials and equipment shall be limited to within the project's limits of disturbance as shown in the Contract Documents, or as approved by Engineer.

D. Store materials and equipment to become Owner's property to facilitate their inspection and ensure preservation of quality and fitness of the Work, including proper protection against damage by freezing, moisture, and high ambient temperatures. Store in indoor, climate-controlled storage areas all materials and equipment subject to damage by moisture, humidity, heat, cold, and other elements, unless otherwise acceptable to Owner.

E. Contractor shall be fully responsible for loss or damage (including theft) to stored materials and equipment.

F. Do not open manufacturer's containers until time of installation, unless recommended by the manufacturer, directed by Engineer or otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.

G. Do not store materials or equipment in structures being constructed unless approved by Engineer in writing.

H. Do not use lawns or other private property for storage without written permission of the Owner or other person in possession or control of such premises.

05-04-20

I. Contractor shall not store unnecessary equipment and materials at the Site.

J. Contractor shall prevent structures from being loaded with a weight that endanger its security and/or safety of persons.

K. Stored equipment and materials shall not be placed within 10 feet of fire hydrants.

L. Gutters, drainage channels and inlets shall be kept unobstructed at all times.

1.03 PROTECTION

A. Contractor shall provide temporary storage containers/facilities, if required, to protect equipment and materials at the Site.

B. Equipment to be incorporated into the Work shall be boxed, crated, or otherwise completely enclosed and protected during shipping, handling, and storage, in accordance with Section 01 65 00 – Product Delivery Requirements.

C. Store all materials and equipment off the ground (or floor) on raised supports such as skids or pallets.

D. Protect painted surfaces against impact, abrasion, discoloration, and other damage. Painted equipment surfaces that are damaged or marred shall be repainted in their entirety in accordance with equipment manufacturer and paint manufacturer requirements, to the satisfaction of Engineer.

1.04 SPECIFIC STORAGE REQUIREMENTS

A. Uncovered:

1. The following types of materials may be stored outdoors without cover on supports so there is no contact with the ground:

    a. Piping, except polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or chlorinated PVC (CPVC) pipe.

B. Covered:

1. The following materials and equipment may be stored outdoors on supports and completely covered with covering impervious to water:

    a. Grout and mortar materials.

    b. Rough lumber.

    c. PVC and CPVC pipe.

2. Tie down covers with rope, and slope covering to prevent accumulation of water.

C. Fully Protected:

1. All materials and equipment not named as uncovered or covered in this Section, shall be stored on supports in buildings or trailers that have concrete or wooden flooring, roof, and fully closed walls on all sides. Covering with plastic sheeting or similar material in space without floor, roof, and walls is not acceptable. Comply with the following:

    a. Provide heated storage for materials and equipment that could be damaged by low temperatures or freezing.

    b. Provide air-conditioned storage for materials and equipment that could be damaged by high temperatures.

    c. Protect mechanical and electrical equipment from being contaminated by dust, dirt, and moisture.

    d. Maintain humidity at levels recommended by manufacturers of electrical and electronic equipment.

    e. Energize space heaters for electrical equipment and material.

D. Maintenance of Storage: On scheduled basis, periodically inspect stored materials and equipment to ensure that:

1. Condition and status of storage facilities is adequate to provide required storage conditions.

2. Required environmental conditions are maintained on continuing basis.

3. Materials and equipment exposed to elements are not adversely affected.

1.05 RECORDS

A. Keep up-to-date account of materials and equipment in storage to facilitate preparation of Applications for Payment, if the Contract Documents provide for payment for materials and equipment not incorporated in the Work but delivered and suitably stored at the Site or at another location agreed to in writing.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 71 23
FIELD ENGINEERING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contractor shall provide field engineering and professional services of the types indicated for the Project, including:

1. Furnishing civil, structural, and other professional engineering services specified or required to execute Contractor's construction methods.

2. Developing and making all detail surveys and measurements required for construction.

3. Keeping a transit, theodolite, or total station (theodolite with electronic distance measurement device); leveling instrument; and related implements such as survey rods and other measurement devices, at the Site at all times, and having a skilled instrument person available when necessary for laying out the Work.

4. Being solely responsible for all locations, dimensions and levels. No data other than Change Order, Work Change Directive, or Field Order shall justify departure from dimensions and levels required by the Contract Documents.

5. Rectifying all Work improperly installed because of not maintaining, not protecting, or removing without authorization established reference points, stakes, marks, and monuments.

6. Providing such facilities and assistance necessary for Engineer to check lines and grade points placed by Contractor.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures

2. Section 01 26 00 – Contract Modification Procedures

3. Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options

4. Section 01 78 39 – Project Record Documents

071521

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Departures from Contract Drawings:

1. Contract Drawings show the extent and arrangement of the Work.

2. Contractor shall notify Engineer of departures from the Drawings that the Contractor deems required for incorporation of the Work at the Site in accordance with Section 01 26 00 – Contract Modification Procedures.

3. Contractor shall provide field engineering services for equipment and materials that require modifications to existing structures, auxiliary equipment, piping, electrical controls that are not indicated for modifications in the Contract Documents.

B. Structural Design Criteria:

1. Structural design in the Contract Documents of facilities, structures, supports, roofs and floors are based on typical weights for equipment and materials and design criteria in the Contract Documents.

2. Contractor shall notify Engineer of equipment and materials to be considered as substitutions and “or equals” in accordance with Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures and Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options.

3. Contractor shall provide services for incorporation of equipment and materials that exceed structural design criteria at no additional cost to Owner.

1.03 SERVICES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor’s Field Engineer:

1. Contractor shall employ and retain field engineer at the Site capable of performing field engineering tasks required, including:

a. Provide reports to Engineer on the Work.

b. Check formwork, reinforcing, inserts, structural steel, bolts, sleeves, piping and other equipment and materials for conformance with Contract Documents.

c. Maintain field office files and drawings, record documents, and coordination with Subcontractors.

d. Prepare layout and coordination drawings for construction operations.

e. Check and coordinate Work for conflicts, interferences, and discrepancies with notification to Engineer.

f. Cooperate with Engineer and Owner in observing the Work and field inspections.

g. Review and coordinate the Work with Shop Drawings and other submittals.

B. Contractor’s Surveyor:

1. Contractor shall employ or retain the services, as needed, at the Site a surveyor with experience and capability of performing surveying and layout tasks required in the Contract Documents and as required for the Work. Surveyor's tasks include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following:

a. Providing required surveying equipment, including transit or theodolite, level, stakes, and surveying accessories.

b. Establishing required lines for constructing all facilities, structures, pipelines, and site improvements.

c. Preparing and maintaining professional-quality, accurate, well organized, legible notes of all measurements and calculations made while surveying and laying out the Work.

d. Complying with requirements of the Contract Documents relative to surveying and related work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals:

1. Surveying:

a. Plan for conducting survey Work, submitted ten days prior to beginning of survey Work.

b. Field books after completing survey Work.

c. Certified survey in accordance with this Section.

2. Certificates: Signed Contractor or Contractor’s surveyor certifying elevations and locations of Work are in conformance with Contract Documents, with explanations of deviations.

3. Qualification Statements: Contractor’s surveyor.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SURVEYING

A. Contractor shall establish baselines for location of equipment, materials and structures of the Work with bench marks and batter boards adjacent to Work.

B. Contractor shall provide detailed surveys necessary for the Work including, but not limited to, slope stakes, batter boards, working points, lines and elevations.

C. Specific surveying:

1. Contractor shall have weirs surveyed by professional, licensed surveyor.

2. Contractor shall adjust weirs within a tolerance of +/- 0.05-inches of elevations shown on the Contract Documents.

3. Surveyed points for weirs shall be no greater than 10-feet spacing, and no less than two points per section of weir plate.

3.02 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITES

A. Contractor shall provide Project record documents for field engineering and surveying in accordance with Section 01 78 39 – Project Record Documents.

B. Contractor shall provide certified weir elevation survey report in accordance with the requirements specified in this Section.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Contractor shall preserve and protect bench marks, reference points and stakes. Contractor shall re-establish damaged, destroyed, or lost bench marks, reference points and stakes. Contractor shall remove and re-install equipment and material installed based on Contractor established bench marks, reference points and stakes that have been damaged, destroyed, or lost at no additional cost to Owner.

B. Contractor shall preserve and protect existing and new control points, property markers and monuments during construction of the Work. Contractor shall establish and replace damaged or lost control points, property markers and monuments due to Contractor's construction activities at no cost to the Owner. Contractor shall provide computations and calculations to establish location of replacement Work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 71 33
PROTECTION OF WORK AND PROPERTY

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Protection of existing utilities and structures.

2. Protection of installed equipment and materials.

3. Protection during inclement weather.

4. Reporting of accidents.

5. Barricades and warning signals.

B. Contractor shall be responsible for taking all precautions, providing all programs, and taking all actions necessary to protect the Work and all public and private property and facilities from damage, as specified in the General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and this Section.

C. To prevent damage, injury, or loss, Contractor's actions shall include the following:

1. Storing apparatus, materials, supplies, and equipment in an orderly, safe manner that does not unduly interfere with progress of the Work or work of other contractors or utility companies.

2. Providing suitable storage facilities for equipment and materials subject to damage or degradation by exposure to weather, theft, breakage, or other cause.

3. Placing upon the Work or any part thereof only loads consistent with the safety and integrity of that portion of the Work and existing construction.

4. Frequently removing and disposing of refuse, rubbish, scrap materials, and debris caused by Contractor's operations so that, at all times, the Site is safe, orderly, and workmanlike in appearance.

D. Contractor has full responsibility for preserving public and private property and facilities on and adjacent to the Site. Direct or indirect damage done by, or on account of, any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct by Contractor in executing the Work, shall be restored by Contractor, at their expense to condition equal to that existing before damage was done.

032619

E. Contractor shall comply with safety regulations required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction. Contractor shall comply with and correct unsafe conditions created or caused by Contractor's personnel. In the event Contractor fails to comply, Owner receives the right to take necessary measures to correct conditions or practices for reimbursement by Contractor.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions:

1. "Existing utilities" shall refer to both publicly-owned and privately-owned utilities such as, but are not limited to, electric power and lighting, telephone, water, gas, storm drains, process lines, sanitary sewers and all appurtenant structures.

2. "Surface structures" are existing buildings, structures, and other facilities at or above ground surface, including their foundations or any extension below ground surface. Surface structures include, but are not limited to, buildings, tanks, walls, channels, open drainage, exposed piping and utilities, poles, exposed wires, posts, signs, markers, curbs, walks, fencing, and other facilities visible at or above ground surface.

1.03 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Location of Existing Utilities and Structures:

1. Contractor shall confirm and verify location of existing utilities and structures at the Site prior to commencing the Work.

2. Contractor shall notify and obtain approval from authority having jurisdiction prior to performing the Work in the vicinity of the existing utilities and structures.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PROTECTION OF EXISTING UTILITIES AND STRUCTURES

A. General:

1. Contractor shall satisfy Engineer that methods and procedures for protection have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to proceeding with the Work.

2. Contractor shall provide temporary support and protection, as required, to existing utilities and structures during the Work, including support of excavation.

a. Temporary support and protection of existing utilities shall be provided in accordance with requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

b. Temporary support and protection of existing structures shall be provided as required to ensure structural integrity is not compromised.

3. Contractor shall be responsible for costs incurred for temporary support or protection provided by a third-party or authority having jurisdiction to insure safety of the existing utility, Owner, and public and private parties.

B. Existing Buried Utilities:

1. Contractor shall perform field investigate to identify conflicts or interferences between existing utilities and utility Work prior to excavation Work.

a. Investigation of conflicts and interferences shall be performed on Site locations, elevations, slopes, etc. of the existing utilities determined during the field investigations.

b. Contractor shall notify Engineer and Owner in writing of identified conflicts or interferences. Contractor shall not proceed with the Work until written authorization is provided by the Engineer.

c. Identified conflicts and interferences shall be handled in accordance with the Contract Documents. If required, potential modification to the Contract Documents shall be performed in accordance with Section 01 26 00 – Contract Modification Procedures.

2. Contractor shall perform the Work to prevent disruption of existing service and damage to existing utilities.

a. Temporary connections shall be provided, as required, to provide un-interrupted service of existing utilities.

b. Contractor shall repair damage to existing utilities as directed by the Engineer or the authority having jurisdiction at Contractor’s own expense.

c. Contractor shall be responsible for damages and repair costs to the authority having jurisdiction if third-party or authority having jurisdiction personnel repair damaged existing utilities.

C. Protection of Existing Structures:

1. Contractor shall sustain existing surface structures in existing place and protect from direct or indirect injury located within or adjacent to the limits of the Work. Such sustaining and supporting shall be done carefully and as required by the party owning or controlling such structure or facility.

2. Contractor shall bear all risks attending the presence or proximity of all surface structures within or adjacent to limits of the Work, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3. Contractor shall be responsible for damage and expense for direct or indirect injury caused by their Work to structures and facilities.

4. Contractor shall repair immediately damage caused by their Work, to the satisfaction of owner of damaged structure or facility at no cost to the Owner.

5. Contractor shall provide temporary weather protection for existing structures and buildings where exterior walls or roofs are modified or disturbed in the Work. Contractor shall be responsible for damages due to inadequate protection of existing structures and building.

D. Relocation of Surface Structures: Existing surface facilities, including but not limited to guard rails, posts, guard cables, signs, poles, markers, curbs, and fencing, that are temporarily removed to facilitate the Work shall be replaced and restored to their original condition at Contractor's expense.

E. Specific requirements:

1. Take precautions and perform work to not damage trees, bushes, shrubs not included in areas to clear and grub as well as trees, bushes, and shrubs to remain within areas to clear and grub.

2. Take precautions and perform work in a manner to protects existing road pavement and road striping/paint/markings adjacent to portions to be removed/replaced.

3.02 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

A. Contractor shall protect installed equipment and materials to prevent damage, injury or loss from subsequent operations. Remove protection facilities when no longer needed prior to completion of the Work.

B. Control traffic to prevent damage to equipment, materials, and surfaces.

C. Coverings: Provide coverings to protect materials and equipment from damage.

3.03 PROTECTION DURING INCLEMENT WEATHER

A. Contractor shall not perform Work during inclement or unsuitable weather that will affect the quality of the completed Work.

B. Contractor shall take necessary precautions in the event of impending inclement weather to protect equipment, materials and Work from damage or deterioration due to floods, driving rain, wind, or snow storms.

1. Owner reserves the right to require additional protection measures beyond Contractor's proposed protection measures to protect the Work.

2. Contractor shall not claim additional compensation for additional protection measures required by Owner nor for damages to equipment, material, or Work due to the inclement weather.

C. When directed by Engineer, Contractor shall stop Work and protect new Work by protective covering during rain storms for, but not limited to, the following:

1. Concrete mixing and placement.

2. Paving placement.

3. Masonry installation.

4. Buried piping, valve and appurtenance installation.

5. Additional inclement weather requirements and limitations are specified in individual Specification Sections.

3.04 REPORTING OF ACCIDENTS

A. Contractor shall immediately report, in writing, to Engineer and Owner accidents out of, or in conjunction with, the performance of Work.

1. Accident reporting includes on Site and adjacent to Site, which cause death, personal injury, or property damage.

2. Written report shall provide full details and witness statements.

3. If claim is made against Contractor, Supplier, or Subcontractor due to accident, Contractor shall promptly report facts, in writing, to Engineer and Owner, with full account of the claim.

B. Contractor shall immediately report death, serious injury, or serious damage caused by telephone or messenger to Engineer and Owner.

3.05 BARRICADES AND WARNING SIGNALS

A. General:

1. Where the Work is performed on or adjacent to roadway, access road, right-of-way, or public place:

a. Provide barricades, fences, lights, warning signs, danger signals, watchmen, and take other precautionary measures for protecting persons, property, and the Work.

b. Paint barricades to be visible at night.

c. From sunset to sunrise, furnish and maintain at least one light at each barricade.

d. Erect sufficient barricades to keep vehicles from being driven on or into Work under construction.

e. Furnish watchmen in sufficient numbers to protect the Work.

B. Provide temporary barricades to protect personnel and property for Work not in or adjacent to vehicular travel areas, including indoor work, in accordance with Laws and Regulations.

C. Contractor's responsibility for maintaining temporary barricades, signs, lights, and for providing watchmen shall continue until the Work is accepted in accordance with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 73 23

ANCHORAGE AND BRACING OF NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all equipment, labor, materials, and services required to design and provide anchorage and bracing for all nonstructural components in accordance with the Contract Documents and Building Code requirements, including the seismic design requirements of Chapter 13 in ASCE 7.

B. This Section covers requirements for only the anchorage and bracing of nonstructural components. Design requirements for nonstructural components (other than their anchorage and bracing) are covered in the Section for that component.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 45 33 – Special Inspections

B. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

C. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

D. Further requirements for anchorage and bracing are included in other Sections of the Specifications. See Section for the specific nonstructural component in question.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Nonstructural components: All architectural, mechanical, electrical, or plumbing elements or systems and their supports or attachments provided under this contract which are permanently attached to new or existing structures.

1. Architectural nonstructural components include, but are not limited to, interior nonstructural walls and partitions, exterior wall panels and glazing elements, glass curtain walls, skylights, cabinets, suspended ceilings, fascia, and cladding.

2. Mechanical nonstructural components include, but are not limited to, HVAC units, fans, water and wastewater treatment process equipment, instrumentation cabinets, piping and ductwork.

3. Electrical nonstructural components include, but are not limited to, conduit systems, cable tray systems, boxes, transformers, panelboards, switchboards,

121322

switchgear, busway, individual motor controllers, motor control centers, variable frequency drives, automatic transfer switches, and lighting systems.

4. Plumbing nonstructural components include, but are not limited to, sprinkler systems and associated piping, and sump pumps.

B. Attachment: Elements including anchor bolts, welded connections, and mechanical fasteners which secure nonstructural components or supports to the structure.

C. Essential Components: Nonstructural components considered necessary to public safety for which the component importance factor I_p is required by chapter 13 in ASCE 7 to be taken as 1.5, including:

1. Life safety systems which must function following an earthquake, including but not limited to, sprinklers for fire protection, emergency lighting, egress corridors and stairways, and smoke purge systems.

2. Components which contain, convey or support toxic, highly toxic, or explosive substances where the quantity of the material exceeds a threshold quantity established by the Building Code.

3. Components which are within or attached to an Occupancy or Risk Category IV structure as defined in ASCE 7 Chapter 1 and are needed for continued operation of the facility or failure could impair the continued operation of the facility.

4. Components which contain, convey, or support hazardous substances and are attached to a structure or portion thereof classified by the Building Code as a hazardous occupancy.

5. Process systems and elements designated below:

a. Water pumping systems required to maintain water pressure used for fire suppression.

b. Generator

c. Pumps and piping

d. Variable Frequency Drives (VFD)

e. HVAC equipment

D. Nonbuilding Structures: All self-supporting structures which are supported by an independent foundation or by other structures which include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, silos, exhaust stacks, storage racks, and towers.

E. Delegated Design: Design of a structure or structural element(s) which has been deferred by the contract documents to be performed during the project construction

stage, by a registered design professional retained by the Contractor and with the design submitted as a shop drawing to the Engineer.

1.04 REQUIREMENTS

A. Anchorage and bracing of nonstructural components shall be designed and installed to resist the controlling load combination of gravity loads, operational forces (including static and dynamic), wind forces, seismic forces and any other applicable forces required in accordance with the governing Building Code.

B. Anchorage and bracing of nonstructural components shall comply with seismic design requirements of ASCE 7 Chapter 13 unless the nonstructural component meets the criteria to be exempt. The following nonstructural components are exempt from requirements specific to seismic anchorage and bracing: (See paragraph 1.07.F.3 herein for Seismic Design Category)

1. Storage cabinets no more than 6 feet tall, furniture, and movable equipment, regardless of Seismic Design Category.

2. All architectural, mechanical, electrical, and plumbing nonstructural components in Seismic Design Category A.

3. All mechanical, electrical, and plumbing nonstructural components in Seismic Design Category B.

4. Architectural nonstructural components in Seismic Design Category B, other than parapets, provided that $I_p = 1.0$.

5. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing nonstructural components in Seismic Design Category C provided that either:

   a. $I_p = 1.0$, and the component is positively attached to the structure, or

   b. Component weighs 20 lbs. or less, or 5 lb/ft or less for distribution systems.

6. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing nonstructural components in Seismic Design Category D, E or F that are positively attached to the structure, provided that either:

   a. $I_p = 1.0$, component weighs 400 lbs or less and its center of mass is 4 ft or less above a floor level, and flexible connections are provided between the components and associated ductwork, piping and conduit: or

   b. Component weighs 20 lbs. or less, or 5 lb/ft or less for distribution systems.

7. Other exemptions as allowed by the Specifications, Codes and Standards referenced herein.

1.05 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to or exceed the applicable requirements of the following documents. The Building Code shall be the version in effect at the time of Bid within the jurisdiction where the Work is located. All other referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the version as referenced by the Building Code. If no version is referenced by the Building Code, then the most current issue available at the time of Bid shall be used.

1. North Carolina Building Code
2. ASCE/SEI 7 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures
3. NFPA 13 Standard for Installation of Sprinkler Systems
4. FEMA 412 Installing Seismic Restraints for Mechanical Equipment
5. FEMA 413 Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment
6. FEMA 414 Installing Seismic Restraints for Duct and Pipe
7. SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems
8. ACI 318 Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary
9. ACI 355.2 Qualifications of Post-Installed Mechanical Anchors in Concrete
10. ACI 355.4 Qualifications of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Anchorage and bracing submittals for all architectural, mechanical, electrical, and plumbing nonstructural components, elements and systems that do not have a design for anchorage and bracing provided within the Contract Documents. Submittals shall include the following:

    a. Component manufacturer's cut sheets and fabrication details for equipment bases and foundations, including dimensions, structural member sizes, support point locations and equipment operational loads. Equipment anchorage details shall clearly indicate anchor size, pattern, embedment, and edge distance requirements to satisfy operational, wind, seismic and other forces required by the governing Building Code. Details shall also indicate grout, bearing pads, isolators, etc. required for complete installation.

b. Design calculations, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina. Design shall include all loads and load combinations required by the governing Building Code. Separate calculation submittals for vertical and lateral load support systems shall not be allowed.

c. Detailed Shop Drawings, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina, showing specific details of the support design including material, installation, attachments, connection hardware, etc., and the layout and location of all hangers and supports (resisting both gravity and lateral loads), including bracing orientation and direction of force(s) to be resisted.

d. Seismic loads and requirements are not required to be included in design for anchorage and bracing of components which are exempt in accordance with Section 1.04B.

e. For components required to be certified as seismically qualified in accordance with paragraph 1.06.A.1.f below, submit installation guidelines provided by the equipment manufacturer for proper seismic mounting of the equipment.

f. Seismic qualification testing shall be based on ASCE 7 and on a nationally recognized testing standard procedure such as ICC-ES AC 156.

1.07 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Mechanical fasteners used to secure nonstructural components shall meet the requirements of Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening. Post-installed concrete anchors shall be prequalified for use in seismic applications.

B. No reaction loads (either vertical or lateral) from nonstructural component anchorage and bracing shall be allowed on any element where design has been delegated unless the additional loads on the element have been coordinated with the delegated designer and the submittal is accompanied by a sealed letter from the delegated designer indicating the element has been designed to support the reaction loads.

C. Reaction loads from nonstructural component anchorage and bracing shall be transferred directly to the primary structural members (girders, beams, etc.), with no components supported from secondary members (purlins, bracing, etc.) unless otherwise approved.

D. No holes shall be drilled into any structural steel for attachment of component supports without prior approval of the Engineer.

E. Attachments of nonstructural component anchorage and bracing that cause overstressing of any structural element shall not be permitted.

F. Seismic Requirements

1. Seismic anchorage and bracing for nonstructural components shall be subject to the current local Building Code in conjunction with the seismic provisions of the North Carolina Building Code (NCBC) Section 1613 and referenced ASCE 7 Chapter 13.

2. Where the weight of a nonstructural component is greater than or equal to 25 percent of the effective seismic weight (as defined by ASCE 7) of the structure it is attached to, the component shall be classified as a nonbuilding structure for purposes of seismic design. Seismic design for nonbuilding structures shall comply with Building Code requirements in conjunction with the provisions of ASCE 7 Chapter 15.

3. Nonstructural components shall be assigned to the same Seismic Design Category as the structure they occupy or to which they are attached. Design of seismic support system and anchorage shall incorporate the site-specific seismic criteria given on the Contract Drawings. Criteria shall include site-specific spectral response coefficients, Site Class, Seismic Design Category, and Risk Category.

4. Component Importance Factor Ip shall be 1.5 for all essential nonstructural components noted in item 1.03.E above. All other nonstructural components shall utilize I_p = 1.0 unless noted otherwise.

5. Components shall be anchored and braced for earthquake forces both in the vertical and each orthogonal direction. Seismic anchorage and bracing shall limit deflections of components per ASCE 7, and the displacements shall not impede component functionally and containment.

6. Anchorage design shall account for disparate seismic response behavior of supporting structures. Seismic supports or bracing shall not cross structural expansion joints. Nonstructural components shall not be attached to multiple structural elements which may respond differently during a seismic event without provisions to accommodate independent movement. Flexible expansion loops or offsets, flexible joints, bellows type pipe expansion joints, couplings, etc. shall be provided at structure expansion joints to allow for independent structure movement and thermal movement of piping, ductwork, and conduit. Minimum movement capability in the vertical and each orthogonal direction shall equal the width of the joint.

7. Provide flexible connections, piping, conduit, etc. at foundation levels where below grade utilities enter the structure.

8. Design of support system for components with multiple attachments shall consider the stiffness and ductility of the supporting members. Equipment designed as free-standing shall only be attached at its base. Use of non-free-standing equipment requiring both vertical and lateral attachment is contingent upon loads applied to the structure and requires approval by the Engineer.

9. The seismic anchorage and bracing design shall be based on actual equipment data (dimensions, weight, center of gravity, etc.) obtained from the specifications or the approved equipment manufacturer. The equipment manufacturer shall verify the attachment points on the equipment can safely withstand the combination of seismic, self-weight and other loads imposed.

G. Powder actuated fasteners in steel or concrete shall not be used for sustained tension loads in Seismic Design Categories D, E or F unless approved for seismic loading or specifically exempted by ASCE 7. Powder actuated fasteners in masonry shall not be used unless approved for seismic loading regardless of Seismic Design Category.

H. Friction clips shall not be used in Seismic Design Categories D, E or F for supporting sustained tension loads in combination with resisting seismic forces. C-type and large flange clamps may be used for hanger attachments provided restraining straps meeting NFPA 13 requirements are utilized and loosening of threaded connections is prevented by lock nuts, burred threads, etc.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Anchorage and bracing of nonstructural components shall be constructed of appropriate materials and connecting hardware to provide a continuous load path between the component and supporting structure of sufficient strength and stiffness to resist the calculated design seismic forces and displacements.

B. Component anchorage, bracing and connection materials shall be compatible with and in general match the component and component gravity support materials. Contact between dissimilar metals shall be prevented.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORAGE AND BRACING

A. No anchorage and bracing of nonstructural components shall be installed prior to review and acceptance by the Engineer and permitting agency.

B. Equipment shall be installed per the manufacturer’s recommendations. Fasteners shall meet manufacturer’s requirements.

C. Following installation, all anchorage and bracing and seismically qualified equipment shall be inspected. See Section 01 45 33 – Special Inspections for requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 74 00
CLEANING AND WASTE MANAGEMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Administrative and procedural requirements for progress and closeout cleaning at the Site.

1. Contractor shall execute cleaning during the Project, at completion of the Work, and as required by the General Conditions and this Section.

2. Maintain in a clean manner the Site, the Work, and areas adjacent to or affected by the Work.

B. Administrative and procedural requirements for disposing of non-hazardous excavation and construction waste.

1. Contractor shall comply with the requirements and procedures for construction waste management and disposal, including developing and implementing a plan for construction waste management and disposal.

2. Extent of required construction waste management and disposal includes within the Project limits, as shown or indicated.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions:

1. “Waste Management Coordinator” is the person responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting the status of the Waste Management Plan. Although available for other assignments, the Waste Management Coordinator shall be present at the Site full time for the duration of the Work.

2. “Construction waste” is building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.

3. “Demolition waste” is building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.

4. “Disposal” is removal to an off-Site location of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or disposal in a landfill or incinerator conforming to Laws and Regulations and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

032619

B. Reference Standards: NFPA 241, Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations

1.03 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Waste Management Plan:

1. General: Develop preliminary plan consisting of waste identification. Indicate quantities by weight or volume. Use the same units of measure throughout waste management plan.

2. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of excavation waste generated by the Work.

3. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether waste will be disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.

a. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in the Work, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporating them into the Work.

b. Disposed Materials: Provide information on how and where materials will be disposed. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility that will be used.

c. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Provide information on the method(s) that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location at the Site where materials separation will be located.

B. Failure of Contractor to Maintain Clean Site and Waste Management Plan:

1. Owner will provide written notification to Contractor for failure to maintain a clean Site and waste management plan.

2. Written notification shall provide five (5) days for Contractor to remedy Site cleaning and waste management to the Engineer’s and Owner’s satisfaction.

3. Following the five (5) day remedy period, Owner shall without prejudice to any other rights provide services to clean Site to the satisfaction of Owner and Engineer. Contractor shall be responsible for reimbursement of Owner’s costs and expenses for the cleaning work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals:

1. Preliminary Waste Management Plan: Prepare in accordance with this Section and submit within 14 days of the Notice to Proceed and prior to removing waste from the Site.

2. Final Waste Management Plan: Submit within 14 days of receiving Engineer's comments on the preliminary waste management plan.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Provide copy of receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Submit manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Replace loaded containers with empty containers as demand requires.

B. Deposit recyclable materials in containers free from debris.

C. Transport and deposit waste in containers to minimize dust. Close container covers immediately after materials are deposited.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. General: Clean the Site, work areas, and other areas occupied by Contractor at least weekly. Dispose of materials in accordance with the General Conditions and the following:

1. Comply with NFPA 241 for removing combustible waste materials and debris.

2. Do not hold non-combustible materials at the Site more than three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 degrees F. When temperature is less than 80 degrees F, dispose of non-combustible materials within seven days of their generation.

3. Provide suitable containers for storage of waste materials and debris.

4. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately.

B. Work Areas:

1. Clean areas where the Work is in progress to level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.

2. Remove liquid spills promptly and immediately report spills to Owner, Engineer, and authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum entire work area, as appropriate.

4. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

C. Installed Work: Keep installed Work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of material or equipment installed, using only cleaning agents and methods specifically recommended by material or equipment manufacturer. If manufacturer does not recommend specific cleaning agents or methods, use cleaning agents and methods that are not hazardous to health and property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

D. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration until Substantial Completion.

E. Cutting and Patching:

1. Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

2. Thoroughly clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

F. During handling and installation of materials and equipment, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials and equipment already in place. Apply protective covering where required for protection from damage or deterioration, until Substantial Completion.

G. Clean completed construction as frequently as necessary throughout the construction period.

3.02 EXCAVATION WORK NEAR PUBLIC OR PRIVATE PROPERTY

A. Contractor shall provide cleaning and either temporary or permanent restoration where Work is located in or near streets, right of ways, easements, or private property.

B. Contractor shall backfill, compact, grade, and restore excavation or disturbed area to functional condition to permit pedestrian or vehicular traffic and original use of the area as the Work progresses.

C. Temporary storage of excavation spoils, including earth, stones, boulders, and debris, shall be removed from the Site or area of disturbance.

3.03 CLOSEOUT CLEANING

A. Complete the following prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion:

1. Clean and remove from the Site rubbish, waste material, debris, and other foreign substances.

2. Sweep paved areas broom-clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.

3. Hose-clean sidewalks and loading areas.

4. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.

5. Repair pavement, roads, sod, and other areas affected by construction operations and restore to specified condition; if condition is not specified, restore to pre-construction condition.

6. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to dirt-free condition, free of spatter, grease, stains, fingerprints, films, and similar foreign substances.

7. Leave the Site clean, and in neat, orderly condition, satisfactory to Owner and Engineer.

3.04 WASTE MANAGEMENT IMPLEMENTATION

A. General: Implement the waste management plan approved by Engineer. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items required to implement the waste management pan during the Project.

B. Training: Train all installers, Subcontractors, and Suppliers as required on proper waste management procedures required for the Work.

1. Distribute the waste management plan as required within three days of Engineer’s approval.

2. Distribute the waste management plan to Contractor’s personnel, Subcontractors, and Suppliers prior to these entities starting the Work. Review with installers, Subcontractors, and Suppliers the waste management plan’s procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.

C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent facilities. Designate and label specific areas of the Site necessary for separating materials to be disposed.

3.05 WASTE DISPOSAL

A. General: Except for items or materials to be recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from the Site and properly dispose of waste in facility such as permitted landfill or incinerator or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

   1. Except as otherwise specified, remove from the Site all waste and debris from the Work as it accumulates. Upon completion of the Work, remove materials, equipment, waste, and debris and leave the Site clean, neat, and orderly. Comply with the Contract Documents regarding cleaning and removal of trash, debris, and waste.

   2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.

   3. Properly dispose of waste materials, surplus materials, debris, and rubbish off the Site.

   4. Do not discharge volatile or hazardous substances, such as mineral spirits, oil, or paint thinner, into storm sewers or sanitary sewers.

   5. Do not discharge wastes into surface waters or drainage routes.

B. Burying: Do not bury rubbish and waste materials at the Site.

C. Burning: Do not burn waste materials at the Site.

D. Disposal: Transport waste materials to proper location at site other than Owner's property for disposal in accordance with Laws and Regulations. Contractor shall be solely responsible for complying with Laws and Regulations regarding storing, transporting, and disposing of waste.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 75 00
CHECKOUT AND STARTUP PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Checkout of products and equipment.

2. Startup procedures of products and equipment

B. Contractor shall initially start up and place equipment installed under the Contract into successful operation, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's written instructions and as instructed by Supplier at the Site.

C. Provide all material, labor, tools, and equipment required to complete equipment checkout and start-up.

D. Provide chemicals, lubricants, and other required operating fluids.

E. General activities include:

1. Cleaning, as required under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

2. Removing temporary protective coatings.

3. Checking and correcting (if necessary) leveling plates, grout, bearing plates, anchorage devices, fasteners, and alignment of piping, conduits, and ducts that may place stress on the connected equipment.

4. All adjustments required.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Definitions:

1. Displacement, as used herein, shall mean total peak-to-peak movement of vibrating equipment, in mils; velocity or speed of the vibration cycle, measured in distance per time, velocity and acceleration of the vibration cycle. Displacement, velocity and acceleration shall be measured by instruments/equipment equal to IRD Mechanalysis, Bentley, Nevada.

05-04-20

B. Coordination:

1. Coordinate checkout and start-up with other contractors performing Work at the Site.

2. Do not start up system or subsystem for continuous operation until all components of that system or subsystem, including instrumentation and controls, have been tested to the extent practicable and proven to be operable as intended by the Contract Documents.

3. Responsibility for proper operation is by Contractor.

4. Supplier shall be present during checkout, start-up, and initial operation, except as otherwise specified.

5. Do not start up system, unit process, or equipment without submitting acceptable preliminary operations and maintenance manuals by Contractor, in accordance with Section 01 78 23 – Operations and Maintenance Data.

C. Contractor's Requirements Prior to Owner's Responsibility:

1. Owner will assume responsibility for the equipment upon Substantial Completion.

2. Prior to turning over to Owner responsibility for operating and maintaining system or equipment shall be in accordance with this Section and the following requirements:

a. Submit acceptable final operations and maintenance manuals in accordance with Section 01 78 23 – Operations and Maintenance Data.

b. Provide training of operations and maintenance personnel in accordance with Section 01 79 00 – Instruction of Owner's Personnel.

c. Complete system field quality control testing in accordance with the Contract Documents including, but not limited to, the following:

1) Start-up certification shall be performed and completed by the equipment Supplier for the equipment and material prior to be placed into intended use by Owner as specified in the Contract Documents.

2) Equipment and material shall be operated for a minimum 30-day operational period to verify performance. In addition to specific requirements specified in the individual specification sections, process data that is recorded in the PLC shall be submitted to the Engineer in tabular format showing hourly process performance data. A log of all alarms shall also be submitted, along with notes describing corrective measures applied in response to alarm condition.

3) If equipment and material does not perform satisfactorily during the 30-day operational period, then the warranty period start shall be delayed until satisfactorily performance is verified.

a) Contractor shall repair or replace equipment and material that does not perform satisfactorily at no cost to Owner.

b) Contractor shall furnish all equipment and material, labor, and incidentals necessary to provide equipment and material to the performance level required by the Contract Documents.

d. Obtain from Engineer final certificate of Substantial Completion for either entire Work or the portion being turned over to Owner.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Startup Schedule: Detailed summary of schedule, duration, manpower requirement, and Contractor's means and methods for startup.

B. Vibration testing results

C. Closeout Submittals: Manufacturer's certification of installation in accordance with this Section.

D. Startup testing and operational demonstration performance data.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PRELIMINARY REQUIREMENTS

A. Prior to the start-up of the facilities, Contractor shall have prepared and tested all equipment, subsystems and systems in accordance with the requirements of the individual Specification Section to check its ability for sustained operation, including inspections and adjustments by Manufacturer's representative.

B. Contractor shall develop and submit schedule in accordance with this Section.

C. After the facilities are sufficiently complete to permit start-up, Contractor shall furnish competent personnel to start-up the facilities. Contractor will be responsible for startup of all facilities constructed under this Contract. During the initial start-up period the Contractor shall check and provide for mechanical operation in accordance with the Contract Documents.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturers' Field Services:

1. When specified, furnish services of factory trained representatives of material and equipment manufacturers as specified, including supervising installation, adjusting, checkout, start-up, and testing of materials and equipment.

2. Certification:

a. When services by manufacturer are required at the Site, within 14 days after first test operation of equipment, submit to Engineer a letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating that materials and equipment are installed in accordance with manufacturer's requirements and installation instructions, and in accordance with the Contract Documents.

b. Include in the final operations and maintenance manual for the associated equipment a copy of the letter or completed form, as applicable.

3. Manufacturer shall bring any discrepancies to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction. Contractor shall promptly correct any discrepancies noted by the Manufacturer. Manufacturer shall coordinate correction of discrepancies with the Contractor. Discrepancies and their correction shall be noted in inspection records and in all required reports. Any corrections that result in changes to the work as shown on the Contract Documents shall be approved by the Engineer prior to their execution.

3.03 VIBRATION TESTING

A. Stationary rotating equipment, products and materials shall have vibration testing performed at the Site with a rated horsepower exceeding 20 horsepower.

B. Vibration testing shall be performed by an experienced factory-trained and authorized third-party analysis expert shall be provided for and paid for by the Contractor. Each unit or pump system shall be tested separately without duplicate equipment running. All field testing shall be done in the presence of the Engineer. The Engineer shall be furnished with seven (7) certified copies of vibration test data for each test performed.

C. General testing requirements:

1. Variable speed drives – Tests shall be conducted at the full range of speeds between maximum and minimum.

2. Two-speed drives – Tests shall be conducted at both speeds.

3. Constant-speed drives – Tests shall be conducted under various loading conditions as determined by the Engineer.

4. Frequency of vibration, in frequency (i.e. Hz, cycles per second) and cycles per minute (cpm), shall be determined when vibration exceeds specified levels or as otherwise necessary. Vibration shall be measured on the bearing housing and the motor, unless other additional locations are deemed necessary by the Engineer and/or specified, the vibration analyst and/or published industry standards.

5. Vibration shall be checked in the radial and axial directions. Vibration for pumps shall be limited to the latest version of ANSI/HI 9.6.4 (Rotodynamic Pumps for Vibration Measurements and Allowable Values).

6. Noise or vibration in any rotating equipment which the Engineer judges to be excessive or damaging, shall be cause for rejection.

D. Test results:

1. Contractor shall correct deficiencies within thirty (30) days when vibration field test results exceed source quality control tests results, Manufacturer's recommendations, or the limits specified in the Contract Documents.

2. After corrections have been completed, the vibration testing shall be performed again at the Contractor's expense and the results submitted again to the Engineer for review.

3.04 SYSTEM START-UP

A. Equipment and materials shall be provided in conformance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and in accordance with the Contract Documents.

B. Provide start-up services as specified in the individual Specification Sections.

C. Contractor shall furnish consumables required for startup including, but not limited to, electricity, water, chemicals and lubrication. Contractor shall provide a plan for disposal of water used for testing unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.

D. General system requirements:

1. Start-up of the plant by Contractor shall include all mechanical systems, including but not limited to, pumps, compressors, and like equipment, and the ventilating, air conditioning (or heating), plumbing, and electrical systems. Start-up of either the heating or air conditioning systems is dependent upon the time of year that the plant start up is initiated. Contractor will be required to return at the beginning of the next heating or air conditioning season (whichever is applicable) to start the appropriate system.

2. Cleaning as required under provisions of the Contract Documents.

3. Remove temporary protective coatings.

4. Flushing and replacing greases and lubricants as required by Manufacturer

5. Lubrication.

6. Verify the following:

    a. Shaft and coupling alignments and reset where needed.

    b. Set motor, pump and other equipment rotation, safety interlocks, and belt tensions.

    c. Leveling plates, grout, bearing plates, anchor bolts, fasteners, and alignment of piping, conduits and ducts that may apply stress on equipment.

7. Valves:

    a. Tighten packing glands to ensure no leakage but allow valve stems to operate without galling.

    b. Replace packing in valves to retain maximum adjustment after system is determined to be complete.

    c. Replace packing on valves that continue to leak.

    d. Remove and repair bonnets that leak.

    e. After cleaning, coat packing gland threads and valve stems with surface preparation of “Molycote” or “Fel-Pro”.

8. Verify that control valve seats are free of foreign matter and are properly positioned for intended service.

9. Tighten flanges and other pipe joints after system has been placed in operation.

10. Replace gaskets that show signs of leakage after tightening.

11. Inspect all joints for leakage:

    a. Promptly remake each joint that appears to be faulty; do not wait for rust other corrosion to form.

    b. Clean threads on both parts and apply compound and remake joints.

12. After system has been placed in operation, clean valve seats and headers in fluid system to ensure freedom from foreign matter.

13. Remove rust, scale, and foreign matter from equipment and renew defaced surfaces.

14. Repair damaged insulation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 77 19
CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Substantial Completion.

2. Final inspection.

3. Request for final payment.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. Definitions:

1. Substantial completion procedures for requesting and documenting are in the General Conditions, as modified by Supplemental Conditions.

2. Final inspection procedures for requesting and documenting are in the General Conditions, as modified by Supplemental Conditions.

1.03 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Request for Final Payment:

1. Procedure: Submit request for final payment in accordance with the Agreement and General Conditions, as may be modified by the Supplementary Conditions.

B. Request for final payment shall include:

1. Documents required for progress payments in Section 01 29 76 – Progress Payment Procedures.

2. Documents required in the General Conditions, as may be modified by the Supplementary Conditions.

3. Releases or Waivers of Lien Rights:

a. Provide a final release or waiver by Contractor and each Subcontractor and Supplier that provided Contractor with labor, material, or equipment totaling $10,000 or more.

b. Provide list of Subcontractors and Suppliers for which release or waiver of Lien is required.

032619

c. Each release or waiver of Lien shall be signed by an authorized representative of the entity submitting release or waiver to Contractor, and shall include Subcontractor's or Supplier's corporate seal, when applicable.

d. Release or waiver of Lien may be conditional upon receipt of final payment.

e. Manufacturer's Affidavit of Release of Liens – furnish a separate, completed form from the manufacturer.

4. Consent of Surety Company to Final Payment.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 77 19.10

CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

Owner:	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer:	Engineer's Project No.:
Project:	Contract Name:

This [preliminary] [final] Certificate of Substantial Completion applies to:

☐ All Work ☐ The following specified portions of the Work:

Date of Substantial Completion

The Work to which this Certificate applies has been inspected by authorized representatives of Owner, Contractor, and Engineer, and found to be substantially complete. The Date of Substantial Completion of the Work or portion thereof designated above is hereby established, subject to the provisions of the Contract pertaining to Substantial Completion. The date of Substantial Completion in the final Certificate of Substantial Completion marks the commencement of the contractual correction period and applicable warranties required by the Contract.

A punch list of items to be completed or corrected is attached to this Certificate. This list may not be all-inclusive, and the failure to include any items on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract.

The responsibilities between Owner and Contractor for security, operation, safety, maintenance, heat, utilities, insurance, and warranties upon Owner's use or occupancy of the Work shall be as provided in the Contract, except as amended as follows: *[Note: Amendments of contractual responsibilities recorded in this Certificate should be the product of mutual agreement of Owner and Contractor; see Paragraph 14.04 of the General Conditions.]*

Amendments to Owner's responsibilities: ☐ None
☐ As follows:

Amendments to Contractor's responsibilities: ☐ None
☐ As follows:

The following documents are attached to and made a part of this Certificate: *[punch list; others]*

This Certificate does not constitute an acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract documents, nor is it a release of Contractor's obligation to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract.

EXECUTED BY: ENGINEER:	RECEIVED:	RECEIVED:
By: _____	By: _____	By: _____
(Authorized signature)	Owner (Authorized Signature)	Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

END OF CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

SECTION 01 78 23
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Requirements for operation and maintenance data, manuals, and documentation.

1. Submit operation and maintenance data, in accordance with this Section and in accordance with requirements elsewhere in the Contract Documents, as instructional and reference manuals by operations and maintenance personnel at the Site.

2. Required operation and maintenance data groupings are listed in this Section. At minimum, submit operation and maintenance data for:

a. All equipment and systems

b. Valves, gates, actuators, and related accessories

c. Instrumentation and control devices

d. Electrical gear

3. For each operation and maintenance manual, submit the following:

a. Preliminary Submittal: Printed and bound copy of entire operation and maintenance manual or electronic copy, except for test data and service reports by Supplier.

b. Final Submittal: Printed and bound copy of complete operations and maintenance manual and electronic copy, including test data and service reports by Supplier.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Quantity Required and Timing of Submittals:

1. Preliminary Submittal:

a. Printed Copies: One copy, exclusive of copies required by Contractor.

b. Electronic Copies: One copy.

c. Submit to Engineer, whichever occurs first:

05-04-20

1) 60 days prior to starting training of operations and maintenance personnel.

2) 30 days prior to field quality control testing at the Site.

3) 30 days prior to unloading equipment and material at the Site.

d. Furnish preliminary operation and maintenance data submittal in acceptable form and content, as determined by Engineer, before associated materials and equipment will be eligible for payment.

2. Preliminary Submittal shall be reviewed by Engineer. One printed or electronic copy shall be returned to Contractor with required revisions noted.

3. Final Submittal: Provide 14 days prior to checkout and startup procedures specified in Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures, unless Submittal is specified as required prior to an interim Milestone.

a. Printed Copies: Two copies.

b. Electronic Copies: One copy.

B. Format of Printed Copies:

1. Binding and Cover:

a. Bind each operation and maintenance manual in durable, permanent, stiff-cover binder(s), comprising one or more volumes per copy as required. Binders shall be minimum one-inch wide and maximum of three-inch wide. Binders for each copy of each volume shall be identical.

b. Provide the following information on cover of each volume:

1) Title: “OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS”.

2) Name or type of material or equipment covered in the manual.

3) Volume number, if more than one volume is required, listed as “Volume __ of __”, with appropriate volume-designating numbers filled in.

4) Name of Project and, if applicable, Contract name and number.

5) Name of building or structure, as applicable.

c. Provide the following information on spine of each volume:

1) Title: “OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS”.

2) Name or type of material or equipment covered in the manual.

3) Volume number, if more than one volume is required, listed as "Volume __ of __", with appropriate volume-designating numbers filled in.

4) Project name and building or structure name.

2. Drawings:

a. Bind into the manual drawings, diagrams, and illustrations up to and including 11 inches by 17 inches in size, with reinforcing.

b. Documents larger than 11 inches by 17 inches shall be folded and inserted into clear plastic pockets bound into the manual. Mark pockets with printed text indicating content and drawing numbers. Include no more than three drawing sheets per pocket.

3. Copy Quality and Document Clarity:

a. Contents shall be original-quality copies. Documents in the manual shall be either original manufacturer-printed documents or first-generation photocopies indistinguishable from originals. If original is in color, copies shall be in color.

b. Clearly mark in ink to indicate all components of materials and equipment on catalog pages for ease of identification. In standard or pre-printed documents, indicate options furnished or cross out inapplicable content.

4. Organization:

a. Provide table of contents in each volume for each chapter or section.

b. Use dividers and indexed tabs between major categories of information, such as operating instructions, preventive maintenance instructions, and other major subdivisions of data in each manual.

C. Format of Electronic Copies:

1. Each electronic copy shall include all information included in the corresponding printed copy.

2. Submit electronic copy via transferable method and format acceptable to Engineer.

3. File Format:

a. Acceptable formats include Adobe PDF, Microsoft Word, Autodesk DWF, and AutoCAD.

b. Files shall be electronically searchable.

c. Submit separate file for each separate document in the printed copy.

d. Within each file, provide bookmarks for the following:

1) Each chapter and subsection listed in the corresponding printed copy document's table of contents

2) Each figure

3) Each table

4) Each appendix

4. Submit drawings and figures in one of the following formats: ".bmp", ".tif", ".jpg", ".gif", ".pdf", ".dwf", or ".dwg".

D. General Content Requirements:

1. Prepare each operations and maintenance manual specifically for the Project. Include in each manual all pertinent instructions, as-built drawings as applicable, bills of materials, technical bulletins, installation and handling requirements, maintenance and repair instructions, and other information required for complete, accurate, and comprehensive data for safe and proper operation, maintenance, and repair of materials and equipment furnished for the Project. Include in manuals specific information required in the Specification Section for the material or equipment, data required by Laws and Regulations, and data required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Submit complete, detailed written operating instructions for each material or equipment item including: function; operating characteristics; limiting conditions; operating instructions for start-up, normal and emergency conditions; regulation and control; operational troubleshooting; and shutdown. Also include, as applicable, written descriptions of alarms generated by equipment and proper responses to such alarm conditions.

3. Submit written explanations of all safety considerations relating to operation and maintenance procedures.

4. Submit complete, detailed, written preventive maintenance instructions including all information and instructions to keep materials, equipment, and systems properly lubricated, adjusted, and maintained so that materials, equipment, and systems function economically throughout their expected service life. Instructions shall include:

a. Written explanations with illustrations for each preventive maintenance task such as inspection, adjustment, lubrication, calibration, and cleaning. Include

pre-startup checklists for each equipment item and maintenance requirements for long-term shutdowns.

b. Recommended schedule for each preventive maintenance task.

c. Lubrication charts indicating recommended types of lubricants, frequency of application or change, and where each lubricant is to be used or applied.

d. Table of alternative lubricants.

e. Troubleshooting instructions.

f. List of required maintenance tools and equipment.

5. Submit complete bills of material or parts lists for materials and equipment furnished. Lists or bills of material may be furnished on a per-drawing or per-equipment assembly basis. Bills of material shall indicate:

a. Manufacturer's name, address, telephone number, fax number, and Internet website address.

b. Manufacturer's local service representative's or local parts supplier's name, address, telephone number, fax number, Internet website address, and e-mail addresses, when applicable.

c. Manufacturer's shop order and serial number(s) for materials, equipment or assembly furnished.

d. For each part or piece include the following information:

1) Parts cross-reference number. Cross-reference number shall be used to identify the part on assembly drawings, Shop Drawings, or other type of graphic illustration where the part is clearly shown or indicated.

2) Part name or description.

3) Manufacturer's part number.

4) Quantity of each part used in each assembly.

5) Current unit price of the part at the time the operations and maintenance manual is submitted. Price list shall be dated.

6. Submit complete instructions for ordering replaceable parts, including reference numbers (such as shop order number or serial number).

7. Submit manufacturer's recommended inventory levels for spare parts, extra stock materials, and consumable supplies for the initial two years of operation. Consumable supplies are items consumed or worn by operation of materials or

equipment, and items used in maintaining the operation of material or equipment, including items such as lubricants, seals, reagents, and testing chemicals used for calibrating or operating the equipment. Include estimated delivery times, shelf life limitations, and special storage requirements.

8. Submit manufacturer's installation and operation bulletins, diagrams, schematics, and equipment cutaways. Where materials pertain to multiple models or types, mark the literature to indicate specific material or equipment supplied. Marking may be in the form of checking, arrows, or underlining to indicate pertinent information, or by crossing out or other means of obliterating information that does not apply to the materials and equipment furnished.

9. Submit original-quality copies of each approved and accepted Shop Drawing, product data, and other submittal, updated to indicate as-installed condition. Reduced drawings are acceptable only if reduction is to not less than one-half original size and all lines, dimensions, lettering, and text are completely legible on the reduction.

10. Submit complete electrical schematics and wiring diagrams, including complete point-to-point wiring and wiring numbers or colors between all terminal points.

11. Submit copy of warranty bond and service contract as applicable.

12. When copyrighted material is used in operations and maintenance manuals, obtain copyright holder's written permission to use such material in the operation and maintenance manual.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals: Submit preliminary schedule (listing) of operations and maintenance data for Engineer's review. Preliminary operations and maintenance data shall be grouped as major equipment and material systems and divided into sub-systems as required for clarity, subject to Engineer's approval.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operation and maintenance data: Submit the operations and maintenance data indicated in the Contract Documents, grouped into submittals as approved by Engineer.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 78 39
PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Requirements for recording changes to record documents.

2. Requirements for electronic files furnished by Engineer.

B. Contractor shall maintain and submit to Engineer with record documents in accordance with the Specifications, General Conditions, and Supplementary Conditions.

1.02 ADMINSTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Maintenance of Record Documents:

1. The following record documents shall be maintained in the Contractor's field office:

a. Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda.

b. Shop Drawings, Samples, and other Contractor submittals, including records of test results, approved or accepted as applicable, by Engineer.

c. Change Orders, Work Change Directives, Field Orders, photographic documentation, survey data, and all other documents pertinent to the Work.

2. Update record documents on a monthly basis, minimum.

3. Provide files and racks for proper storage and easy access to record documents.

4. Make record documents available for inspection upon request of Engineer or Owner.

5. Do not use record documents for purpose other than serving as Project record. Do not remove record documents from Contractor's field office without Engineer's approval.

B. Submittal of Record Documents:

1. Submit to Engineer the following record documents: Drawings.

2. Prior to readiness for final payment, submit to Engineer one copy of final record documents. Submit complete record documents; do not make partial submittals.

032619

3. Submit record documents with transmittal letter on contractor letterhead complying with letter of transmittal requirements in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

4. Record documents submittal shall include certification, with original signature of official authorized to execute legal agreements on behalf of Contractor.

C. Electronic Files Furnished by Engineer:

1. CADD files will be furnished by Engineer upon the following conditions:

a. Contractor shall submit to Engineer a letter on Contractor letterhead requesting CADD files and providing specific definition(s) or description(s) of how files will be used, and specific description of benefits to Owner (including credit proposal, if applicable) if the request is granted.

b. Contractor shall execute Engineer's standard agreement for release of electronic files and shall abide by all provisions of the agreement for release of electronic files.

c. Layering system incorporated in CADD files shall be maintained as transmitted by Engineer. CADD files transmitted by Engineer containing cross-referenced files shall not be bound by Contractor. Drawing cross-references and paths shall be maintained. If Contractor alters layers or cross-reference files, Contractor shall restore all layers and cross-references prior to submitting record documents to Engineer.

d. Contractor shall submit record drawings to Engineer in same CADD format that files were furnished to Contractor.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Closeout Submittals: Provide record documentation as specified in this Section.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. At the start of the Project, label each record document to be submitted as, "PROJECT RECORD" using legible, printed letters. Letters on record copy of the Drawings shall be two inches high.

B. Keep record documents current. Make entries on record documents within two working days of receipt of information required to record the change.

C. Do not permanently conceal the Work until required information has been recorded.

D. Accuracy of record documents shall be such that future searches for items shown on the record documents may rely reasonably on information obtained from Engineer-accepted record documents.

E. Marking of Entries:

1. Use erasable, colored pencils (not ink or indelible pencil) for marking changes, revisions, additions, and deletions to record documents.

2. Clearly describe the change by graphic line and make notations as required. Use straight-edge to mark straight lines. Writing shall be legible and sufficiently dark to allow scanning of record documents into legible electronic files.

3. Date all entries on record documents.

4. Call attention to changes by drawing a “cloud” around the change(s) indicated.

5. Mark initial revisions in red. In the event of overlapping changes, use different colors for subsequent changes.

3.02 RECORDING CHANGES TO DRAWINGS

A. Record changes on copy of the Drawings. Submittal of Contractor-originated or -produced drawings as a substitute for recording changes on the Drawings is unacceptable.

B. Record changes on plans, sections, schematics, and details as required for clarity, making reference dimensions and elevations (to Project datum) for complete record documentation.

C. Record actual construction including:

1. Depths of various elements of foundation relative to Project datum.

2. Field changes of dimensions, arrangements, and details.

3. Changes made in accordance with Change Orders, Work Change Directives, and Field Orders.

4. Changes in details on the Drawings. Submit additional details prepared by Contractor when required to document changes.

3.03 RECORDING CHANGES FOR SCHEMATIC LAYOUTS

A. In some cases, on the Drawings, arrangements of conduits, circuits, piping, ducts, and similar items are shown schematically and are not intended to portray physical layout. For such cases, the final physical arrangement shall be determined by Contractor subject to acceptance by Engineer.

B. Record on record documents all revisions to schematics on Drawings, including: piping schematics, ducting schematics, process and instrumentation diagrams, control and circuitry diagrams, electrical one-line diagrams, motor control center layouts, and other schematics when included in the Contract. Record actual locations of equipment, lighting fixtures, in-place grounding system, and other pertinent data.

C. When dimensioned plans and dimensioned sections on the Drawings show the Work schematically, indicate on the record documents, by dimensions accurate to within one inch in the field, centerline location of items of Work such as conduit, piping, ducts, and similar items

1. Clearly identify the Work item by accurate notations such as “cast iron drain”, “rigid electrical conduit”, “copper waterline”, and similar descriptions.

2. Show by symbol or note the vertical location of Work item; for example, “embedded in slab”, “under slab”, “in ceiling plenum”, “exposed”, and similar designations. For piping not embedded, also provide elevation dimension relative to Project datum.

3. Descriptions shall be sufficiently detailed to be related to Specifications.

D. Engineer may furnish written waiver of requirements relative to schematic layouts shown on plans and sections when, in Engineer’s judgment, dimensioned layouts of Work shown schematically will serve no useful purpose. Do not rely on waiver(s) being issued.

3.04 REQUIREMENTS FOR SUPPLEMENTAL DRAWINGS

A. In some cases, drawings produced during construction by Engineer or Contractor supplement the Drawings and shall be included with record documents submitted by Contractor. Supplemental record drawings shall include drawings provided with Change Orders, Work Change Directives, and Field Orders and that cannot be incorporated into the Drawings due to space limitations.

B. Supplemental drawings provided with record drawings shall be integrated with the Drawings and include necessary cross-references between drawings. Supplemental record drawings shall be on sheets the same size as the Drawings.

C. When supplemental drawings developed by Contractor using computer-aided drafting/design (CADD) software are to be included in record drawings, submit electronic files for such drawings in AutoCAD (latest version) as part of record drawing submittal.

3.05 RECORDING CHANGES TO SPECIFICATIONS AND ADDENDA

A. Mark each Section to record:

1. Manufacturer, trade name, catalog number, and Supplier of each product and item of equipment actually provided.

2. Changes made by Addendum, Change Orders, Work Change Directives, and Field Orders.

3.06 RECORDING CHANGES TO DRAWING MODELS

A. Record changes on Engineer supplied electronic models to generate record drawings.

B. Record changes on plans, sections, schematics, and details as required for clarity, making reference dimensions and elevations (to Project datum) for complete record documentation.

C. Record actual construction including:

1. Field changes of dimensions, arrangements, and details.

2. Changes made in accordance with Change Orders, Work Change Directives, and Field Orders.

3. Changes in details on the Drawings. Submit additional details prepared by Contractor when required to document changes.

D. When required, electronic models shall be updated with as-built asset information in accordance with the Contract Documents. Asset information shall be entered and coordinated with electronic model files. Asset information includes equipment, instrumentation, and appurtenance tagging, pipe and valve identification information, and Owner identified equipment and material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 78 43
SPARE PARTS AND EXTRA MATERIAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contractor shall furnish spare parts data and extra materials for materials and equipment in accordance with the Contract Documents.

B. Spare Parts and Extra Materials:

1. Provide spare parts, extra stock materials, maintenance supplies, and special tools required for maintenance (“spare parts and extra materials”) for one year of operation (unless otherwise specified in the individual Specification Section).

a. Provide Supplier recommended lubricating oil and grease in accordance with this Section and the Contract Documents.

2. Provide list of Supplier recommended spare parts and extra material.

a. Include list of four standard lubricants, minimum, that shall be interchangeable for each type of lubricant required in the Contract Documents.

b. Include unit prices in current United States funds

c. Source(s) of supply for each.

C. Packaging and Labeling:

1. Furnish spare parts and extra materials in manufacturer’s unopened cartons, boxes, crates, or other original, protective covering suitable for preventing corrosion and deterioration for maximum length of storage normally anticipated by manufacturer.

2. Packaging of spare parts and extra materials shall be clearly marked and identified with name of manufacturer, applicable equipment, part number, part description, and part location in the equipment.

3. Protect and package spare parts and extra materials for maximum shelf life normally anticipated by manufacturer.

D. Finishes: Spare parts and extra material shall have painting, protective coating, and finishes identical to original installed equipment and material. Where painting, protective coating, or finishes are not specified, suitable provisions shall be furnished to protect from corrosion.

05-04-20

E. Special Tools: Contractor shall provide special tools necessary to operate, disassemble, service, repair, and adjust equipment and material in accordance with the manufacturer's operation and maintenance manual. Special tool requirements shall be the same as spare parts and extra material specified in this Section.

F. Storage Prior to Delivery to Owner: Prior to furnishing spare parts and extra materials to Owner, store spare parts and extra materials in accordance with the Contract Documents and manufacturers' recommendations.

G. Delivery Time and Eligibility for Payment:

1. Deliver to Owner spare parts and extra materials prior to date of Substantial Completion for equipment or system associated with the spare parts and extra materials. Do not deliver spare parts and extra materials before commencing start-up for associated equipment or system.

2. Spare parts and extra materials are not eligible for payment until delivered to Owner and Contractor's receipt of Owner's countersignature on letter of transmittal.

H. Procedure for Delivery to Owner:

1. Deliver spare parts and extra materials to Owner's permanent storage rooms at the Site or area(s) at the Site designated by Owner.

2. When spare parts and extra materials are delivered, Engineer and Owner will mutually inventory the spare parts and extra materials delivered to verify compliance with the Contract Documents regarding quantity and part numbers.

3. Additional procedures for delivering spare parts and extra materials to Owner, if required, will be developed by Engineer and complied with by Contractor.

I. Transfer Documentation:

1. Furnish on Contractor letterhead a letter of transmittal for spare parts and extra materials furnished under each Specification Section. Letter of transmittal shall accompany spare parts and extra materials. Do not furnish letter of transmittal separate from associated spare parts and extra materials.

2. Furnish three original, identical, signed letters of transmittal for each Specification Section. Upon delivery of specified quantities and types of spare parts and extra materials to Owner, designated person from Owner will countersign each original letter of transmittal indicating Owner's receipt of spare parts and extra materials.

a. Owner will retain one fully signed original.

b. Contractor shall submit one fully signed original to Engineer.

c. Contractor shall retain one fully signed original for Contractor's file.

3. Letter of transmittal shall include the following:

a. Information required for letters of transmittal in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

b. Transmittal shall list spare parts and extra materials furnished under each Specification Section. List each individual part or product and quantity furnished.

c. Provide space for countersignature by Owner as follows: space for signature, space for printed name, and date.

J. Contractor shall be fully responsible for loss or damage to spare parts and extra materials until spare parts and extra materials are received by Owner.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals: Individual Specification Sections that require spare parts, extra material, or tools, Contractor shall submit inventory checklist for each individual Specification Section that includes the following information:

1. Specification Section number and title.

2. Name of spare parts, extra material, or tools.

3. Manufacturer, part number and description.

4. Quantity specified and furnished.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 79 00
INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contractor shall furnish services of operation and maintenance training specialists to instruct Owner's personnel in recommended operation and maintenance procedures for materials and equipment furnished, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

B. Contractor shall provide a combination of classroom and field training at the Site, unless otherwise required elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

C. Owner reserves the right to record training sessions on video for Owner's later use in instructing Owner's personnel.

1.02 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Definitions:

1. Training -Manufacturer's verbal, visual, and written presentation of materials to Owner's staff to ensure that any Owner personnel undergoing training understand the Manufacturer's recommended procedures to properly operate and maintain the equipment and systems for the expected service life.

B. Qualifications:

1. Contractor's instructors shall be factory-trained by manufacturer of material or equipment.

2. Contractor's instructors shall be proficient and experienced in conducting training of type required.

3. Qualifications of instructors are subject to acceptance by Engineer. If Engineer does not accept qualifications of proposed instructor, furnish services of replacement instructor with acceptable qualifications.

C. Scheduling:

1. General:

a. Contractor shall coordinate training services with start-up and initial operation of materials and equipment on days and times, and in manner, acceptable to Owner, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

073019CB

b. Training may be required outside of normal business hours to accommodate schedules of operations and maintenance personnel. Furnish training services at the required days and times at no additional cost to Owner.

c. Prerequisites to Training: Training of Owner's personnel shall commence after acceptable preliminary operation and maintenance data has been submitted and work required in Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures is complete.

2. Training Schedule Submittal:

a. Training Schedule Required: Contractor shall prepare and submit proposed training schedule for review and acceptance by Engineer and Owner. Proposed training schedule shall show all training required in the Contract Documents, and shall demonstrate compliance with specified training requirements relative to number of hours of training, number of training sessions, and scheduling.

b. Timing of Training Schedule Submittal: Submit initial training schedule at least thirty days before scheduled start of first training session. Submit final training schedule, incorporating revisions in accordance with Engineer's comments, no later than seven days prior to starting the first training session.

c. Owner reserved the right to modify personnel availability for training in accordance with process or emergency needs at the Site.

D. Video Recording

1. The Owner reserves the right to video training for future reference and training of their own employees. If the Owner elects to video record the training, coordinate the training so the lighting, acoustics, and delivery are sufficient to capture the training content.

1.03 TRAINING REQUIREMENTS

A. General Lesson Plan Requirements:

1. Contractor's lesson plan shall describe specific instruction topics, system components for which training will be furnished, and training procedures. Handouts, if any, to be used in training shall be included with the lesson plan. Describe in lesson plan "hands-on" demonstrations planned for training sessions.

2. Submit acceptable lesson plan seven (7) days prior to starting associated training.

3. Lesson plan shall include estimated duration of each training segment.

B. Specific Lesson Plans Requirements:

1. Equipment overview shall cover the following:

    a. Equipment's operating (process) function, performance objectives, and fundamental operating principles.

    b. Equipment's mechanical, electrical, and electronic components and features. Group related components into subsystems and describe function of subsystem and subsystem's interaction with other subsystems.

    c. Support equipment and appurtenances.

    d. Safety and potential hazards.

    e. Safety and control interlocks.

2. Operations personnel training shall cover the following:

    a. Equipment overview: As described in this Section.

    b. Operation:

        1) Principles, operating, start-up, and shutdown procedures.

        2) Abnormal or emergency start-up, operating, and shutdown procedures.

        3) Alarm conditions and responses.

        4) Monitoring and recordkeeping.

        5) Housekeeping.

    c. Troubleshooting: Required corrective maintenance or an operating parameter adjustment.

3. Maintenance personnel training:

    a. Equipment overview: As described in this Section.

    b. Equipment preventive maintenance:

        1) Inspection procedures:

            a) Operation.

            b) Trouble symptoms and anticipate breakdowns.

            c) Predictive maintenance.

        2) Preventative maintenance intervals.

3) Lubricant and replacement parts.

4) Cleaning practices and intervals.

5) Special tools required.

6) Removal, installation, and disassembly and assembly procedures.

7) “Hands-on” demonstrations of preventive maintenance procedures.

8) Measuring instruments and procedures

9) Torqueing, mounting, calibrating, and aligning procedures and settings requirements.

10) Check and test equipment following corrective maintenance.

4. Equipment Troubleshooting:

a. Systematic troubleshooting procedures.

b. Checklists.

c. Testing and diagnostic procedures.

d. Corrective maintenance procedures with “hands on” demonstrations.

C. Training Aids:

1. Contractor’s instructor shall incorporate training aids as appropriate to assist in the instruction. Provide handouts of text, tables, graphs, and illustrations as required. Other appropriate training aids include:

a. Audio-visual aids

b. Equipment cutaways and samples

c. Tools, including special tools

2. Podium presentation aids: Presentation shall cover equipment, products and materials provided. Provide electronic version of presentation material to Engineer.

a. Electronic version of presentation aids shall be Microsoft PowerPoint or equivalent format.

b. Presentation shall include the following sections:

1) Complete system overview including, but not limited to, related and associated equipment specific to the system.

2) Specific equipment requirements and how equipment functions within the overall system.

3) Site specific system and equipment requirements.

c. Hardcopy handouts of the electronic presentation aids shall be provided prior to each training section for review during podium presentation.

3. Handouts:

a. Contractor's instructor shall distribute and use descriptive handouts during training.

b. Handouts should be coordinated with the instruction

c. Provide at least ten copies of handouts for each training session

4. Audio-visual Equipment: Training provider shall provide audio-visual equipment required for training sessions.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Action/Informational Submittals:

1. Training Schedule: Detailed schedule of training sessions, demonstrating compliance with number of training sessions, hours required in the Contract Documents, and complying with the Contract Times. Submit training schedule submittals in accordance with timeframes specified in this Section.

2. Lesson Plan: Acceptable lesson plan for training on each material or equipment item, in accordance with the Contract Documents. Lesson plan shall comply with requirements of this Section. Include with lesson plan copy of handouts that will be used during training sessions. Provide lesson plan submittals in accordance with timeframes specified in this Section.

3. Podium presentation material, electronic version.

4. Qualifications: Credentials of Contractor's proposed operations and maintenance instructor(s). Credentials shall demonstrate compliance with requirements of this Section and shall include brief resume and specific details of instructor's operating, maintenance, and training experience relative to the specific material and equipment for which instructor will provide training.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Trainee sign-in sheet for each training session. Submit to Owner's training coordinator.

C. Quality Assurance Submittals:

1. Qualifications: Credentials of Contractor's proposed operations and maintenance instructor(s). Credentials shall demonstrate compliance with requirements of this Section and shall include brief resume' and specific details of instructor's operating, maintenance, and training experience relative to the specific material and equipment for which instructor will provide training.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 "HANDS-ON" DEMONSTRATIONS

A. Contractor's instructor shall provide "hands-on" demonstration of operations and maintenance of equipment and materials for each training session.

B. Contractor shall furnish tools and appurtenances required for demonstrations.

3.02 SCHEDULE

A. Travel time and expenses are the responsibility of the manufacturer and are excluded from required training time indicated in the Contract Documents.

B. Owner's operations at the Site occur 24 hours per day, divided into three shifts. Training shall be scheduled during day shift, normal working hours unless otherwise approved by Engineer.

C. Training shall be provided for a minimum of two identical sessions, unless otherwise specified, with each session scheduled for different weeks.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02 41 00
SITE DEMOLITION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, and equipment in accordance with the requirements of applicable sections of Divisions 01 and 02.

B. In addition, the Contractor shall demolish and remove all concrete and asphalt paving, curbs, sidewalk, and miscellaneous yard piping, utilities, and structures as required and shown on the Contract Drawings during the construction work.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 14 00 – Coordination with Owner's Operations

B. Section 01 42 00 – References

C. Section 01 73 00 – Demolition and Execution of Work

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. References shall be in accordance with reference standards, codes, and specifications as set forth herein and in Section 31 10 00 – Clearing, Grubbing, and Site Preparation.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall submit the following:

1. Copies of all photographs and other records from the joint existing conditions surveys.

PART 2 – EXECUTION

2.01 DEMOLITION

A. Existing concrete and asphalt paving, curbs, sidewalk and miscellaneous yard piping, utilities, and structures within the areas designated for new construction work shall be completely demolished and all debris removed from the site.

B. Excavation caused by demolition shall be backfilled with fill free from rubbish and debris. Select fill or structural fill shall be used where specifically required on Contract Drawings.

05-02-23

C. Work shall be performed in such manner as not to endanger the safety of the workmen or the public or cause damage to nearby structures.

D. Provide all barriers and precautionary measures in accordance with Owner's requirements and other authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Where parts of existing pavements or structures are to remain in service, demolish the portions to be removed, repair damage, and leave the pavement or structure in proper condition for the intended use. Remove asphalt or concrete pavement, concrete, and masonry to the lines designated by saw-cutting, drilling, chipping, or other suitable methods. Leave the resulting surfaces reasonably true and even, with sharp straight corners that will result in neat joints with new construction and be satisfactory for the purpose intended. Where existing reinforcement extends into new construction, remove the concrete so that the reinforcing is clean and undamaged. Cut off other reinforcing 1/2-inch below the surface and fill with epoxy resin binder flush with the surface.

F. Prior to the execution of the work, the Contractor, Owner and Engineer shall jointly survey the condition of the adjoining and/or nearby pavements and structures. Photographs and records shall be made of any prior settlement or cracking of structures, pavements, and the like, that may become the subject of possible damage claims. Contractor shall provide Owner a copy of all records of the joint survey of conditions before demolition activities may begin.

2.02 DISPOSAL OF MATERIAL

A. All debris resulting from the demolition and removal work shall be disposed of by the Contractor at a properly permitted facility as part of the work of this Contract. All regulations covering material handling and disposal shall be followed. Material designated by the Engineer to be salvaged shall be stored on the construction site as directed. All other material shall be disposed of off-site by the Contractor at the Contractor’s expense.

B. Burning of any debris resulting from the demolition will not be permitted at the site.

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 11 00
CONCRETE FORMWORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Provide materials, labor, and equipment required for the design and construction of all concrete formwork, bracing, shoring and supports in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

B. Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories

C. Section 03 15 16 – Joints in Concrete

D. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

3. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete

4. ACI 347 – Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork

5. U.S. Product Standard for Concrete Forms, Class I, PS 1

6. ACI 117 – Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary

1.04 SUBMITTALS

093022

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Manufacturer's data on proposed form release agent

2. Manufacturer's data on proposed formwork system including form ties

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Concrete formwork shall be in accordance with ACI 301, ACI 318, and ACI 347.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 FORMS AND FALSEWORK

A. All forms shall be smooth surface forms unless otherwise specified.

B. Wood materials for concrete forms and falsework shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Lumber for bracing, shoring, or supporting forms shall be Douglas Fir or Southern Pine, construction grade or better, in conformance with U.S. Product Standard PS20. All lumber used for forms, shoring or bracing shall be new material.

2. Plywood for concrete formwork shall be new, waterproof, synthetic resin bonded, exterior type Douglas Fir or Southern Pine high density overlaid (HDO) plywood manufactured especially for concrete formwork and shall conform to the requirements of PS1 for Concrete Forms, Class I, and shall be edge sealed. Thickness shall be as required to support concrete at the rate it is placed, but not less than 5/8-inch thick.

C. Other form materials such as metal, fiberglass, or other acceptable material that will not adversely affect the concrete and will facilitate placement of concrete to the shape, form, line and grade indicated may be submitted to the Engineer for approval, but only materials that will produce a smooth form finish equal or better than the wood materials specified will be considered.

2.02 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES

A. Form ties shall be provided with a plastic cone or other suitable means for forming a conical hole to ensure that the form tie may be broken off back of the face of the concrete. The maximum diameter of removable cones for rod ties, or of other removable form-tie fasteners having a circular cross-section, shall not exceed 7/8-inch, and all such fasteners shall be such as to leave holes of regular shape for reaming.

B. Form release agent shall be a blend of natural and synthetic chemicals that employs a chemical reaction to provide quick, easy and clean release of concrete from forms. It shall not stain the concrete and shall leave the concrete with a paintable surface. Formulation of the form release agent shall be such that it would minimize formation of "bug holes" in cast-in-place concrete.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FORM DESIGN

A. Forms and falsework shall be designed for total dead load, plus all construction live load as outlined in ACI 347. Design and engineering of formwork and safety considerations during construction shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

B. Forms shall be of sufficient strength and rigidity to maintain their position and shape under the loads and operations incident to placing and vibrating the concrete. The maximum deflection of facing materials reflected in concrete surfaces exposed to view shall be 1/240 of the span between structural members.

C. All forms shall be designed for predetermined placing rates per hour, considering expected air temperatures and setting rates.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION

A. The type, size, quality, and strength of all materials from which forms are made shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer. No falsework or forms shall be used which are not clean and suitable. Deformed, broken or defective falsework and forms shall be removed from the work.

B. Forms shall be smooth and free from surface irregularities. Suitable and effective means shall be provided on all forms for holding adjacent edges and ends of panels and sections tightly together and in accurate alignment so as to prevent the formation of ridges, fins, offsets, or similar surface defects in the finished concrete. Joints between the forms shall be sealed to eliminate any irregularities. The arrangement of the facing material shall be orderly and symmetrical, with the number of seams kept to a practical minimum.

C. Forms shall be true to line and grade and shall be sufficiently rigid to prevent displacement and sagging between supports. Curved forms shall be used for curved and circular structures. Straight panels joined at angles will not be acceptable for forming curved structures. Forms shall be properly braced or tied together to maintain their position and shape under a load of freshly placed concrete. Facing material shall be supported with studs or other backing which shall prevent both visible deflection marks in the concrete and deflections beyond the tolerances specified.

D. Forms shall be mortar tight to prevent the loss of water, cement and fines during placing and vibrating of the concrete. Specifically, the bottom of wall forms that rest on concrete footings or slabs shall be provided with a gasket to prevent loss of fines and paste during placement and vibration of concrete. Such gasket may be a 1 to 1-1/2-inch diameter polyethylene rod held in position to the underside of the wall form.

E. All vertical surfaces of concrete members shall be formed, and side forms shall be provided for all footings, slab edges and grade beams, except where placement of the concrete against the ground is called for on the Drawings. Not less than 1-inch of

concrete shall be added to the thickness of the concrete member as shown where concrete is permitted to be placed against trimmed ground in lieu of forms. Such permission will be granted only for members of comparatively limited height and where the character of the ground is such that it can be trimmed to the required lines and will stand securely without caving or sloughing until the concrete has been placed.

F. All forms shall be constructed in such a manner that they can be removed without hammering or prying against the concrete. Wood forms shall be constructed for wall openings to facilitate loosening and to counteract swelling of the forms.

G. Adequate clean-out holes shall be provided at the bottom of each lift of forms. Temporary openings shall be provided at the base of column forms and wall forms and at other points to facilitate cleaning and observation immediately before the concrete is deposited. The size, number and location of such clean-outs shall be as acceptable to the Engineer.

H. Construction joints shall not be permitted at locations other than those shown or specified, except as may be acceptable to the Engineer. When a second lift is placed on hardened concrete, special precautions shall be taken in the way of the number, location and tightening of ties at the top of the old lift and bottom of the new to prevent any unsatisfactory effect whatsoever on the concrete. For flush surfaces at construction joints exposed to view, the contact surface of the form sheathing over the hardened concrete in the previous placement shall be lapped by not more than 1 inch. Forms shall be held against hardened concrete to prevent offset or loss of mortar at construction joints and to maintain a true surface.

I. The formwork shall be cambered to compensate for anticipated deflections in the formwork due to the weight and pressure of the fresh concrete and due to construction loads. Set forms and intermediate screed strips for slabs accurately to produce the designated elevations and contours of the finished surface. Ensure that edge forms and screed strips are sufficiently strong to support vibrating screeds or roller pipe screeds if the nature of the finish specified requires the use of such equipment. When formwork is cambered, set screeds to a like camber to maintain the proper concrete thickness.

J. Positive means of adjustment (wedges or jacks) for shores and struts shall be provided and all settlement shall be taken up during concrete placing operation. Shores and struts shall be securely braced against lateral deflections. Wedges shall be fastened firmly in place after final adjustment of forms prior to concrete placement. Formwork shall be anchored to shores or other supporting surfaces or members to prevent upward or lateral movement of any part of the formwork system during concrete placement. If adequate foundation for shores cannot be secured, trussed supports shall be provided.

K. Runways shall be provided for moving equipment with struts or legs. Runways shall be supported directly on the formwork or structural member without resting on the reinforcing steel.

3.03 TOLERANCES

A. Unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents, formwork shall be constructed so that the concrete surfaces will conform to the tolerance limits listed in ACI 117.

B. The Contractor shall establish and maintain in an undisturbed condition and until final completion and acceptance of the project, sufficient control points and benchmarks to be used for reference purposes to check tolerances. Plumb and string lines shall be installed before concrete placement and shall be maintained during placement. Such lines shall be used by Contractor's personnel and by the Engineer and shall be in sufficient number and properly installed. During concrete placement, the Contractor shall continually monitor plumb and string line form positions and immediately correct deficiencies.

C. Regardless of the tolerances specified, no portion of the structure shall extend beyond the legal boundary of the structure.

3.04 FORM ACCESSORIES

A. Suitable moldings shall be placed to bevel or round all exposed corners and edges of beams, columns, walls, slabs, and equipment pads. Chamfers shall be 3/4 inch unless otherwise noted.

B. Form ties shall be so constructed that the ends, or end fasteners, can be removed without causing appreciable spalling at the faces of the concrete. After ends, or end fasteners of form ties have been removed, the embedded portion of the ties shall terminate not less than 2 inches from the formed face of the concrete that is exposed to water or enclosed surfaces above the water surface, and not less than 1 inch from the formed face of all other concrete. Holes left by the removal of form tie cones shall be reamed with suitable toothed reamers to leave the surface of the holes clean and rough before being filled with mortar as specified in Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes. No form-tying device or part thereof, other than metal, shall be left embedded in the concrete. Ties shall not be removed in such manner as to leave a hole extending through the interior of the concrete member. The use of snap-ties which cause spalling of the concrete upon form stripping or tie removal will not be permitted. No snap ties shall be broken off until the concrete is at least three days old. If steel panel forms are used, rubber grommets shall be provided where the ties pass through the form in order to prevent loss of cement paste.

3.05 APPLICATION – FORM RELEASE AGENT

A. Forms for concrete surfaces that will not be subsequently waterproofed shall be coated with a form release agent. Form release agent shall be applied on formwork in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.06 INSERTS AND EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Sleeves, pipe stubs, inserts, anchors, expansion joint material, waterstops, and other embedded items shall be positioned accurately and supported against displacement prior to concreting. Voids in sleeves, inserts, and anchor slots shall be filled temporarily with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete into the voids.

3.07 FORM CLEANING AND REUSE

A. The inner faces of all forms shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to concreting. Forms may be reused only if in good condition and only if acceptable to the Engineer. Light sanding between uses will be required wherever necessary to obtain uniform surface texture. Unused tie rod holes in forms shall be covered with metal caps or shall be filled by other methods acceptable to the Engineer.

3.08 FORM REMOVAL AND SHORING

A. Forms shall not be disturbed until the concrete has attained sufficient strength. Sufficient strength shall be demonstrated by structural analysis considering proposed loads, strength of forming and shoring system, and concrete strength data. Shoring shall not be removed until the supported member has acquired sufficient strength to support its weight and the load upon it. Members subject to additional loads during construction shall be adequately shored to sustain all resulting stresses. Forms shall be removed in such manner as not to impair safety and serviceability of the structure. All concrete to be exposed by form removal shall have sufficient strength not to be damaged thereby.

B. Provided the strength requirements specified above have been met and subject to the Engineer's approval, forms may be removed at the following minimum times. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility for the strength of all such components from which forms are removed prior to the concrete attaining its full design compressive strength. Shoring may be required at the option of the Engineer beyond these periods.

Ambient Temperature (°F.) During Concrete Placement

	Over 95°	**70°-95°**	**60°-70°**	**50°-60°**	**Below 50°**
Edge Forms for Slabs on Grade	1 day	1 day	1 day	1 day	
Walls	5 days	2 days	2 days	3 days	Do not remove until directed by Engineer (7 days minimum)
Columns	7 days	2 days	3 days	4 days	
Beam Soffits	10 days	7 days	7 days	7 days	
Elevated Slabs	12 days	7 days	7 days	7 days	

C. When, in the opinion of the Engineer, conditions of the work or weather justify, forms may be required to remain in place for longer periods of time.

D. An accurate record shall be maintained by the Contractor of the dates of concrete placings and the exact location thereof and the dates of removal of forms. These records shall always be available for inspection at the site, and two copies shall be furnished the Engineer upon completion of the concrete work.

3.09 RESHORING

A. When reshoring is permitted or required the operations shall be planned and subjected to approval by the Engineer.

B. Reshores shall be placed after stripping operations are complete but in no case later than the end of the working day on which stripping occurs.

C. Reshoring for the purpose of early form removal shall be performed so that at no time will large areas of new construction be required to support their own weight. While reshoring is under way, no construction or live loads shall be permitted on the new construction. Reshores shall be tightened to carry their required loads but they shall not be overtightened so that the new construction is overstressed. Reshores shall remain in place until the concrete has reached its specified 28-day strength, unless otherwise specified.

D. For floors supporting shores under newly placed concrete, the original supporting shores shall remain in place or reshores shall be placed. The shoring or reshoring system shall have a capacity sufficient to resist the anticipated loads and, in all cases, shall have a capacity equal to at least one-half of the capacity of the shoring system above. Reshores shall be located directly under a reshore position above unless other locations are permitted.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 15 00
CONCRETE ACCESSORIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor and equipment required to provide all concrete accessories including expansion joint material, joint sealants, expansion joint seals, epoxy bonding agent, and neoprene bearing pads.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 15 16 – Joints in Concrete

C. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

D. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants, and Caulking

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ASTM C881 – Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete

2. ASTM D412 – Standard Tests for Rubber Properties in Tension

3. ASTM D471 - Standard Test Method for Rubber Properties

4. ASTM D624 – Standard Test method for Rubber Property - Tear Resistance

5. ASTM D638 – Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics

6. ASTM D1171 – Standard Test Method for Ozone Resistance at 500 pphm

7. ASTM D1751 – Standard Specifications for Preformed Expansion Joint fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (non-extruding and resilient bituminous types)

8. ASTM D1752 – Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction

062022

9. ASTM D2240 – Standard Test for Rubber Property – Durometer Hardness

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Manufacturer's literature on all products specified herein including material certifications.

2. Samples of products if requested by the Engineer.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 JOINT SEALANTS

A. Joint sealants shall comply with Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants, and Caulking.

2.02 EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

A. Preformed expansion joint material shall be non-extruding, and shall be of the following types:

1. Type I – Sponge rubber, conforming to ASTM D1752, Type I.

2. Type II –Cork, conforming to ASTM D1752, Type II.

3. Type III – Self-expanding cork, conforming to ASTM D1752, Type III.

4. Type IV – Bituminous fiber, conforming to ASTM Designation D1751.

2.03 EXPANSION JOINT SEAL

A. Expansion Joint Seal System shall consist of a preformed neoprene profile, installed using the same dimensions as the joint gap, bonded with a two-component epoxy adhesive, and pressurized during the adhesive cure time.

B. The expansion joint system shall be Hydrozo/Jeene Structural Sealing joint system by Hydrozo/Jeene, Inc.

2.04 EPOXY BONDING AGENT

A. Epoxy bonding agent shall conform to ASTM C881 and shall be Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod, Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, N.J.; Euco #452 Epoxy System, Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH, MasterEmaco ADH Series by Master Builders Solutions.

2.05 EPOXY RESIN BINDER

A. Epoxy resin binder shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C881, Type III, Grade 3, Class B and C for epoxy resin binder and shall be Sikadur 23, Low-Mod-Gel, manufactured by the Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, N.J., Flexocrete Gel manufactured by DuraJoint Concrete Accessories or Euco #352 Gel, Euclid Chemical Company, MasterEmaco ADH 327 or 327 RS by Master Builders Solutions.

2.06 BEARING PADS

A. Neoprene bearing pads shall conform to requirements of A4-F3-T.063-B2, Grade 2, Method B, in accordance with the RMA Rubber Handbook. Pads shall be nonlaminated pads having a nominal Shore A durometer hardness of 70 in accordance with ASTM D2240. Adhesive for use with neoprene pads shall be an epoxy-resin compound compatible with the neoprene having a sufficient shear strength to prevent slippage between pads and adjacent bearing surfaces. Adhesive shall be 20+F Contact Cement by Miracle Adhesives Corporation, Neoprene Adhesive 77-198 by IGI Adhesives, Sikadur 31, Hi-Mod Gel by Sika Corporation, or DP-605 NS Urethane Adhesive by 3M Adhesive Systems.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL AND SEALANTS

A. Type I, II, or III shall be used in all expansion joints in structures and concrete pavements unless specifically shown otherwise on the Drawings. Type IV shall be used in sidewalk and curbing and other locations specifically shown on the Drawings.

B. All expansion joints exposed in the finish work, exterior and interior, shall be sealed with the specified joint sealant. Expansion joint material and sealants shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures and as shown on the Drawings.

C. Expansion joint material that will be exposed after removal of forms shall be cut and trimmed to ensure a neat appearance and shall completely fill the joint except for the space required for the sealant. The material shall be held securely in place and no concrete shall be allowed to enter the joint or the space for the sealant and destroy the proper functions of the joint.

D. A bond breaker shall be used between expansion joint material and sealant. The joint shall be thoroughly clean and free from dirt and debris before the primer and the sealant are applied. Where the finished joint will be visible, masking of the adjoining surfaces shall be carried out to avoid their discoloration. The sealant shall be neatly tooled into place and its finished surfaces shall present a clean and even appearance.

E. Type 1 joint sealant shall be used in all expansion and crack inducing joints in concrete, except where other specific types are required as stated below, and wherever else

specified or shown on the Drawings. Sealant shall be furnished in pour grade or gun grade depending on installation requirements. Primers shall be used as required by the manufacturer. The sealant shall be furnished in colors as directed by the Engineer.

3.02 EXPANSION JOINT SEAL

A. The expansion joint seal system shall be installed as shown on the Drawings in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.03 EPOXY BONDING AGENT

A. The Contractor shall use an epoxy bonding agent for bonding fresh concrete to existing concrete as shown on the Drawings.

B. Bonding surface shall be clean, sound, and free of all dust, laitance, grease, form release agents, curing compounds, and any other foreign particles.

C. Application of bonding agent shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Fresh concrete shall not be placed against existing concrete if epoxy bonding agent has lost its tackiness.

3.04 EPOXY RESIN BINDER

A. Epoxy resin binder shall be used to seal all existing rebar cut and burned off during demolition operations. Exposed rebar shall be burned back 1/2-inch minimum into existing concrete and the resulting void filled with epoxy resin binder.

3.05 BEARING PADS

A. Care shall be taken in fabricating pads and related metal parts so effects detrimental to the proper performance of the pads, such as uneven bearing and excessive bulging, will not occur.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 15 16
JOINTS IN CONCRETE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide all materials, labor and equipment required for the construction of all joints in concrete specified herein and shown on the Drawings.

B. Types of joints in concrete shall be defined as follows:

1. Construction Joints – Intentionally created formed joints between adjacent concrete placements with 100% of reinforcement continuous through joint.

2. Expansion Joints – Formed joints in concrete which separate adjacent sections to allow movement due to dimensional increases and reduction of adjacent sections (temperature and shrinkage). Reinforcement terminates within concrete on each side of joint. Expansion joints may also be considered isolation joints.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories

C. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

D. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants and Caulking

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings

2. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

3. ACI 350 – Code Requirements for Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures

4. ACI 224.3 – Joints in Concrete Construction

062122

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Layout drawings showing location and type of all joints to be placed in each structure.

2. Details of proposed joints in each structure.

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. All materials required for joint construction shall comply with Section 03 15 00 - Concrete Accessories and Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants and Caulking.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. Construction joints shall be as shown on the Drawings. Otherwise, Contractor shall submit description of the joint and proposed location to Engineer for approval. All joints shall be construction joints or expansion joints unless otherwise specified on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer on the joint plan submittal.

B. Unless noted otherwise on the Drawings, construction joints shall be located near the middle of the spans of slabs, beams, and girders unless a beam intersects a girder at this point. In this case, the joints in the girders shall be offset a distance equal to twice the width of the beam. Joints in walls and columns shall be at the underside of floors, slabs, beams, or girders and the top of footings or floor slabs unless noted otherwise on Drawings. Beams, girders, brackets, column capitals, haunches, and drop panels shall be placed at the same time as slabs. Joints shall be perpendicular to the main reinforcement.

C. Maximum distance between horizontal joints in slabs and vertical joints in walls shall be 50’-0”. For exposed walls with fluid or earth on the opposite side, the spacing between vertical and horizontal joints shall be a maximum of 25’-0”.

D. All corners shall be part of a continuous placement, and should a construction joint be required, the joint shall not be located closer than five feet from a corner.

E. All reinforcing steel and welded wire fabric shall be continued across construction joints. Keys and inclined dowels shall be provided as shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer. Longitudinal keys shall be provided in all joints in walls and between walls and slabs or footings, except as specifically noted otherwise on the Drawings. Size of keys shall be as shown on the Drawings.

F. Joint plan of walls and slabs shall consider aspect ratio to create placement of sections as close to square as possible. Aspect ratio is defined as the ratio of plan dimensions for

slab sections and length to height placement of wall sections. Aspect ratios shall be between 0.65 and 1.5.

3.02 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Size and location of expansion joints shall be as shown on the Drawings. All joints shall be construction joints or expansion joints unless otherwise specified on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer on the joint plan submittal.

B. All expansion joints in water-bearing structures shall have a center-bulb type waterstop. All expansion joints below grade in walls or slabs which enclose an accessible area shall have a center-bulb type waterstop. Waterstop shall be as shown on Drawings and specified in Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories.

3.03 JOINT PREPARATION

A. No concrete shall be allowed to enter the joint or the space for the sealant and destroy the proper functions of the joint.

B. The surface of the concrete at all joints shall be thoroughly cleaned and all laitance removed by wire brushing, air or light sand blasting.

C. The joint shall be thoroughly clean and free from dirt and debris before the primer and the sealant are applied. Where the finished joint will be visible, masking of the adjoining surfaces shall be carried out to avoid their discoloration. The sealant shall be neatly tooled into place and its finished surface shall present a clean and even appearance.

D. All joints shall be sealed as shown on the Drawings and specified in Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 21 00
REINFORCING STEEL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide all concrete reinforcing including all cutting, bending, fastening and any special work necessary to hold the reinforcing steel in place and protect it from injury and corrosion in accordance with the requirements of this section.

B. Provide deformed reinforcing bars to be grouted into reinforced concrete masonry walls.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories

C. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

D. Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete

E. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Institute Manual of Standard Practice

3. ACI MNL-66 - ACI Detailing Manual

4. ACI 315 - Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcing

5. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

6. WRI - Manual of Standard Practice for Welded Wire Fabric

7. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

07222024

8. ASTM A706 – Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Low-Alloy Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

9. ASTM A 1064 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

10. ASTM E 3121 – Standard Test Methods for Field Testing of Anchors in Concrete or Masonry

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Detailed placing and shop fabricating drawings, prepared in accordance with ACI 315 and ACI Detailing Manual - (MNL-66), shall be furnished for all concrete reinforcing. These drawings shall be made to such a scale as to clearly show joint locations, openings, and the arrangement, spacing and splicing of the bars.

2. Detailed placing and shop fabricating drawings, prepared in accordance with ACI 315 and ACI Detailing Manual - (MNL-66), shall be furnished for all deformed bar reinforcing used in masonry. These drawings shall be made to such a scale as to clearly show joint locations, openings, and the arrangement, locations, spacing and splicing of the bars.

3. Mill test certificates - 3 copies of each.

4. Description of the reinforcing steel manufacturer's marking pattern.

5. Requests to relocate any bars that cause interferences or that cause placing tolerances to be violated.

6. Proposed supports for each type of reinforcing.

7. Request to use splices not shown on the Drawings.

8. Request to weld reinforcement.

9. Request to use mechanical couplers along with manufacturer's literature on mechanical couplers with instructions for installation, and certified test reports on the couplers' performance, including International Code Council–Evaluation Services Report (ICC-ES ESR)..

10. Request for placement of column dowels without the use of templates.

11. Request and procedure to field bend or straighten partially embedded reinforcing.

12. International Code Council–Evaluation Services Report (ICC-ES ESR) for dowel adhesives.

13. Certification that all installers of dowel adhesive systems in horizontal to vertically overhead applications are certified as Adhesive Anchor Installers in accordance with the ACI-CRSI Anchor Installer Certification Program.

14. Adhesive dowel testing plan.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. If requested by the Engineer, the Contractor shall provide samples from each load of reinforcing steel delivered in a quantity adequate for testing. Costs of initial tests will be paid by the Owner. Costs of additional tests due to material failing initial tests shall be paid by the Contractor.

B. Provide a list of names of all installers who are trained by the Manufacturer's Field Representative on this jobsite prior to installation of products. Record must include the installer name, date of training, products included in the training and trainer name and contact information.

C. Provide a copy of the current ACI/CRSI "Adhesive Anchor Installer" certification cards, or equivalent, for all installers who will be installing adhesive anchors in the horizontal to vertically overhead orientation.

D. Special inspections for adhesive dowels shall be conducted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Specification Section 01 45 33 – Special Inspections. Downward installations require periodic inspection and horizontal and overhead installations require continuous inspection.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Bar reinforcing shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 615 for Grade 60 deformed billet-steel reinforcing unless noted otherwise. All reinforcing steel shall be from domestic mills and shall have the manufacturer's mill marking rolled into the bar which shall indicate the producer, size, type, and grade. All reinforcing bars shall be deformed bars. Smooth reinforcing bars shall not be used unless specifically called for on Drawings.

1. Reinforcement to be welded shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A706, Grade 60.

B. Welded wire fabric reinforcing shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 1064 and the details shown on the Drawings.

C. A certified copy of the mill test on each load of reinforcing steel delivered showing physical and chemical analysis shall be provided, prior to shipment. The Engineer reserves the right to require the Contractor to obtain separate test results from an independent testing laboratory in the event of any questionable steel. When such tests

are necessary because of failure to comply with this Specification, such as improper identification, the cost of such tests shall be borne by the Contractor.

D. Use of coiled reinforcing steel will not be allowed.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

A. Accessories shall include all necessary chairs, slab bolsters, concrete blocks, tie wires, dips, supports, spacers, and other devices to position reinforcing during concrete placement. Wire bar supports shall be plastic protected (CRSI Class 1).

B. Concrete blocks (dobies), used to support and position bottom reinforcing steel, shall have the same or higher compressive strength as specified for the concrete in which it is located.

2.03 MECHANICAL COUPLERS

A. Mechanical couplers shall comply with ACI 318 Type 2 and develop a tensile strength which exceeds 100 percent of the ultimate tensile strength and 125 percent of the yield strength of the reinforcing bars being spliced. The reinforcing steel and coupler used shall be compatible for obtaining the required strength of the connection.

B. Where the type of coupler used is composed of more than one component, all components required for a complete splice shall be supplied by the same coupler manufacturer.

C. Hot forged sleeve type couplers shall not be used. Acceptable mechanical couplers are Dayton Superior Dowel Bar Splicer System by Dayton Superior, Dayton, Ohio, or approved equal. Mechanical couplers shall only be used where shown on the Drawings or where specifically approved by the Engineer.

D. Tension-compression mechanical splices may only be used where shown on the Drawings or where specifically approved by the Engineer. Tension-compression mechanical splices shall be shear screw coupling sleeve type. Acceptable mechanical couplers are Bar Lock L-series or XL-series couplers by Dayton Superior, Dayton, Ohio, or approved equal.

E. Dowel bar mechanical splices shall only be used at construction joints where shown on the Drawings or where specifically approved by the Engineer. Acceptable dowel bar mechanical couplers are the DBDI Splicing System by Dayton Superior, Dayton, Ohio, or approved equal.

F. Where the threaded rebar to be inserted into the coupler reduces the diameter of the bar, the threaded rebar piece and all components of the coupler system shall be provided by the same coupler manufacturer.

G. Mechanical couplers shall have a valid evaluation report from ICC-ES in accordance with the Building Code.

H. All mechanical couplers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

2.04 DOWEL ADHESIVE SYSTEM

A. Where shown on the Drawings, reinforcing bars anchored into hardened concrete with a dowel adhesive system shall use a two-component adhesive mix which shall be injected with a static mixing nozzle following manufacturer's instructions.

B. All holes shall be drilled in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions except that core drilled holes shall not be permitted unless specifically allowed by the Engineer. Cored holes, if allowed by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer, shall be roughened in accordance with manufacturer’s requirements.

C. Thoroughly clean drill holes of all debris, drill dust, and water in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions prior to installation of adhesive and reinforcing bar.

D. Degree of hole dampness shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Installation conditions shall be dry, or water saturated unless otherwise permitted by the engineer. If water saturated installation is approved, appropriate reduction factors in accordance with manufacturer’s design requirements should be considered. Water filled or submerged holes shall not be permitted unless specifically approved by the Engineer.

E. Injection of adhesive into the hole shall be performed in a manner to minimize the formation of air pockets in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

F. Embedment Depth:

1. The embedment depth of the bar shall be as shown on the Drawings. Although all manufacturers listed below are permitted, the embedment depth shown on the Drawings is based on “SET-3G” by Simpson Strong-Tie Co. ESR 4057 issued 4/2024. If the Contractor submits one of the other named dowel adhesives from the list below, the Engineer shall evaluate the required embedment and the Contractor shall provide the required embedment depth stipulated by the Engineer specific to the approved dowel adhesive.

2. Where the embedment depth is not shown on the Drawings, the embedment depth shall be determined to provide the minimum allowable bond strength equal to the tensile strength of the rebar according to the manufacturer’s ICC-ES ESR.

3. The embedment depth shall be determined using design parameters listed below. In no case shall the embedment depth be less than the minimum, or more than the maximum, embedment depths stated in the manufacturer’s ICC-ES ESR.

4. Design of adhesive anchor system shall be based on the following parameters:

    a. Actual compressive strength of concrete.

    b. Cracked concrete state.

    c. Dry or water saturated condition for installation.

    d. Base material temperature between 40- and 104-degrees Fahrenheit.

    e. Installation with either a hammer drill with carbide bit or hollow-drill bit system drilling methods.

    f. Minimum age of concrete of 21 days at time of installation.

G. Engineer's approval is required for use of this system in locations other than those shown on the Drawings.

H. The adhesive system shall be IBC compliant for use in both cracked and uncracked concrete in all Seismic Design Categories and shall be "HIT-HY 200 Adhesive Anchoring System" as manufactured by Hilti, Inc. “SET-3G Epoxy Adhesive Anchors” as manufactured by Simpson Strong-Tie Co. or “Pure 110+ Epoxy Adhesive Anchor System” by DeWalt. Fast-set epoxy formulations shall not be acceptable. No or equal products will be considered, unless pre-qualified and approved.

I. All individuals installing dowel adhesive systems in horizontal to vertically overhead applications shall be certified as an Adhesive Anchor Installer in accordance with the ACI-CRSI Anchor Installation Certification Program, or equivalent.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. Reinforcing steel shall be accurately formed to the dimensions and shapes shown on the Drawings and the fabricating details shall be prepared in accordance with ACI 315 and ACI 318, except as modified by the Drawings.

B. The Contractor shall fabricate reinforcing bars for structures in accordance with the bending diagrams, placing lists and placing Drawings.

C. No fabrication shall commence until approval of Shop Drawings has been obtained. All reinforcing bars shall be shop fabricated unless approved to be bent in the field. Reinforcing bars shall not be straightened or bent in a manner that will injure the material. Heating of bars will not be permitted.

D. Welded wire fabric with longitudinal wire of W9.5 size or smaller shall be either furnished in flat sheets or in rolls with a core diameter of not less than 10 inches. Welded wire fabric with longitudinal wires larger than W9.5 size shall be furnished in flat sheets only.

3.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. All reinforcing shall be neatly bundled and tagged for placement when delivered to the job site. Bundles shall be properly identified for coordination with mill test reports.

B. Reinforcing steel shall be stored above ground on platforms or other supports and shall always be protected from the weather by suitable covering. Reinforcing steel shall be stored in an orderly manner and plainly marked to facilitate identification.

C. Reinforcing steel shall always be protected from conditions conducive to corrosion until concrete is placed around it.

D. The surfaces of all reinforcing steel and other metalwork to be in contact with concrete shall be thoroughly cleaned of all dirt, grease, loose scale and rust, grout, mortar and other foreign substances immediately before the concrete is placed. Where delay in depositing concrete occurs, reinforcing shall be inspected again and if necessary recleaned.

3.03 PLACING

A. Reinforcing steel shall be accurately positioned as shown on the Drawings and shall be supported and wired together to prevent displacement, using annealed iron wire ties or suitable clips at intersections. All reinforcing steel shall be supported by concrete, plastic or plastic protected (CRSI Class 1) metal supports, spacers or metal hangers which are strong and rigid enough to prevent any displacement of the reinforcing steel. Where concrete is to be placed on the ground, supporting concrete blocks (or dobies) shall be used in sufficient numbers to support the reinforcing bars without settlement. In no case shall concrete block supports be continuous.

B. The portions of all accessories in contact with the formwork shall be made of plastic or steel coated with a 1/8-inch minimum thickness of plastic which extends at least 1/2 inch from the concrete surface. Plastic shall be gray in color.

C. Tie wires shall be bent away from the forms to provide the specified concrete coverage.

D. Reinforcing bars additional to those shown on the Drawings, which may be found necessary or desirable by the Contractor for the purpose of securing reinforcing in position, shall be provided by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

E. Reinforcing placing, spacing, and protection tolerances shall be within the limits specified in ACI 318 except where in conflict with the Building Code, unless otherwise specified.

F. Reinforcing bars may be moved within one bar diameter as necessary to avoid interference with other concrete reinforcing, conduits, or embedded items. If bars are moved more than one bar diameter, or enough to exceed placing tolerances, the resulting arrangement of bars shall be as acceptable to the Engineer.

G. Welded wire fabric shall be supported on slab bolsters spaced not less than 30 inches on centers, extending continuously across the entire width of the reinforcing mat and supporting the reinforcing mat in the plane shown on the Drawings.

H. Reinforcing shall not be straightened or bent unless specifically shown on the drawings. Bars with kinks or bends not shown on the Drawings shall not be used. Coiled reinforcement shall not be used.

I. Dowel Adhesive System shall be installed in strict conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as required in Article 2.04 above. A representative of the manufacturer must be on site prior to adhesive dowel installation to provide instruction on proper installation procedures for all adhesive dowel installers. Testing of adhesive dowels shall be as indicated below. If the dowels have a hook at the end to be embedded in subsequent work, an approved mechanical coupler shall be provided at a convenient distance from the face of existing concrete to facilitate adhesive dowel testing while maintaining required hook embedment in subsequent work.

J. All adhesive dowel installations in the horizontal or overhead orientation shall be conducted by a certified Adhesive Anchor Installer as certified by ACI/CSRI Adhesive Anchor Installer Certification program, or equivalent, per ACI 318-14 17.8.2.2. Current AAI Certificates must be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to commencement of any adhesive anchor installations.

K. Adhesive Dowel Testing

1. At all locations where adhesive dowels are shown on the Drawings, at least 10 percent of all adhesive dowels installed shall be tested to 80% of the yield load of the reinforcing bar, with a minimum of one tested dowel per group.

2. Contractor shall submit a plan and schedule indicating locations of dowels to be tested, load test values, and proposed dowel testing procedure (including a diagram of the testing equipment proposed for use) prior to conducting any testing. Proof testing procedures shall be in accordance with ASTM E 3121.

3. Where Contract Documents indicate adhesive dowel design is the Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall submit a plan and schedule indicating locations of dowels to be tested and load test values, sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. The Contractor shall also submit documentation indicating the Contractor's testing procedures have been reviewed and the proposed procedures are acceptable.

4. Adhesive Dowel shall have no visible indications of displacement or damage during or after the load test. Dowels exhibiting damage shall be removed and replaced. If more than 5 percent of tested dowels fail, then 100 percent of dowels shall be load tested.

5. When special inspections are not required for the installation, load testing of adhesive dowels shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory retained

directly by the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for costs of all testing, including additional testing required due to previously failed tests. If special inspections are required for installation, the independent testing laboratory shall be retained directly by the Owner.

3.04 SPLICING

A. Reinforcing bar splices shall only be used at locations shown on the Drawings. When necessary to splice reinforcing at points other than where shown, the splice shall be as acceptable to the Engineer.

B. The length of lap for reinforcing bars, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings shall be in accordance with ACI 318 for a class B splice.

C. Laps of welded wire fabric shall be in accordance with ACI 318. Adjoining sheets shall be securely tied together with No. 14 tie wire, one tie for each 2 running feet. Wires shall be staggered and tied in such a manner that they cannot slip.

D. Mechanical splices shall be used only where shown on the drawings or when approved by the Engineer. Splices shall also meet the requirements of Section 2.03.

E. Mechanical couplers for dowel bar mechanical splices at construction joints which are located at a joint shall be a type which can be set either flush or recessed from the concrete surface. The couplers shall be sealed during concrete placement to eliminate concrete, or cement paste from entering. After the concrete is placed, couplers intended for future connections shall be plugged and sealed to prevent any contact with water or other corrosive materials. Threaded couplers shall be plugged with plastic plugs which have an O-ring seal.

3.05 WELDING OF REINFORCEMENT

A. Welding of reinforcement shall only occur where shown on the Drawings or where specifically approved by the Engineer.

B. Welding shall comply with all requirements of AWS D1.4.

C. Welding shall be performed by certified welders in conformance with AWS D1.4.

D. Material of reinforcement to be welded shall be as specified in Section 2.01.A.1.

3.06 INSPECTION

A. The Contractor shall advise the Engineer of his intentions to place concrete and shall allow him adequate time to inspect all reinforcing steel before concrete is placed.

B. The Contractor shall advise the Engineer of his intentions to place grout in masonry walls and shall allow him adequate time to inspect all reinforcing steel before grout is placed.

3.07 CUTTING OF EMBEDDED REBAR

A. The Contractor shall not cut embedded rebar cast into structural concrete without prior approval.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 23 00
STRESSING TENDONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall furnish and place all stressing tendons for pretensioned and post-tensioned prestressed concrete, including all burning, measuring, draping, preventing bond, jacking and any special work necessary to hold the tendons in place and protect them from injury and corrosion in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

B. Section 03 31 14 – Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, all work specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ASTM A416 – Uncoated 7-Wire Stress-Relieved Strand for Prestressed Concrete
2. ASTM A421 – Uncoated Stress-Relieved Wire for Prestressed Concrete
3. ASTM A910 – Uncoated, Weldless, 2 and 3 Wire Steel Strand for Prestressed Concrete
4. AASHTO M203 – American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
5. ACI 222R – Protection of Metals in Concrete Against Corrosion
6. ACI 222.2R – Report on Corrosion of Prestressing Steels
7. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
8. ACI 350 – Code Requirements for Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit the following in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Records of standard, certified mill tests run by the tendon manufacturer shall be kept on file, and current copies shall be submitted to the Engineer.

2. The manufacturer's certification and load-elongation curve, in accordance with the prestressed concrete fabricator for each lot of tendon. The Contractor shall obtain and submit the data to the Engineer for approval, in permanent record form.

3. Tubular conduit for preventing bond, when breaking bond at specific locations as required by the design.

4. Bed layout showing method of draping and tensioning, including calculations.

5. Records of initial jacking load, final jacking load and respective elongation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PRESTRESSING TENDONS

A. Prestressing tendons for use in pretensioned and post-tensioned, prestressed concrete shall consist of multi-wire (2, 3 or 7) stress-relieved strands, stress-relieved single wire, or low-relaxation strands conforming to the requirements of ASTM A910, ASTM A416, and ASTM A421, respectively.

B. Wires shall be uncoated and shall be of a size and of a stress relieved or low relaxation type such as to insure sufficient prestress transfer bond. Only cold-drawn wire shall be utilized, no quenched and tempered steel shall be allowed.

C. Oil tempered wires shall not be used.

D. The tendons shall be clean and free of excessive rust, scale and pitting.

E. Strands or wires used in units of any one bed layout shall be manufactured by the same plant.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 TENSIONING DEVICES

A. Devices for tensioning shall be adequate to produce and maintain the required tension in all tendons until the concrete has reached the required transfer strength. All jacks shall be equipped with accurate and calibrated gages for registering jacking loads. Gages shall be calibrated for the jacks with which they are used. All jacks and gages shall be calibrated by an approved testing company at no cost to the Owner at intervals not to

exceed 12 months. During progress of the work, if gage readings and elongations indicate materially differing loads, recalibration may be required. Gages shall have a full load capacity of 1-1/2 to 2 times their normal working load. The loads to be gaged shall be not less than one-fourth or more than three-fourths of the total graduated capacity unless calibration data clearly establishes consistent accuracy over a wider range. Gages shall have indicating dials at least 6 inches in diameter and the gage pointers shall not fluctuate, preventing an accurate reading, but shall remain steady until the jacking load is released. All gages shall have an accuracy of reading within 2 percent. Means shall be provided for measuring the elongation of tendons within 1/4-inch.

3.02 PLACING STRANDS

A. Tendons shall be positioned in accordance with the detailed dimensions shown on the Drawings or as detailed by the supplier and effectively secured against displacement from their correct positions. The steel reinforcing shall be placed in final position after tensioning of the tendons. All tie wires shall be bent to the inside of the member so that the ends are farther from the edge than the material being tied. Bottom tendons shall be supported at spacings not to exceed 20 feet by supports meeting the requirements of Section 03 21 00 –Reinforcing Steel or by other means approved by the Engineer.

B. Tendons with kinks, bends, nicks, scale, excessive rust or other defects will not be permitted. No more than one broken wire per casting bed will be permitted. Slight rusting will not be cause for rejection, provided it is not sufficient to cause visible pits. Precautions shall be taken to prevent contamination of tendons and reinforcing steel. The tendons and reinforcing steel shall be cleaned to an acceptable condition before concrete is poured. Concrete shall not be placed in the forms until the tendon and reinforcement condition and arrangement have been inspected by the plant inspector.

C. Tendon splices will only be permitted at the end of a reel and when using a single strand jack. The tendon lengths to be spliced together shall have the same lay of wire to avoid unraveling and the splice shall be positioned so that it does not fall within a member. The ends of the tendon lengths to be spliced shall not be torch cut. They shall be cut by shears, abrasive grinders, or other means approved by the Engineer. No more than one strand splice will be permitted on an individual strand and the reuse of strands will not be permitted.

D. Where bonding of tendons is to be prevented, it shall be accomplished by encasing the tendons in a tubular conduit capable of resisting the pressure exerted by the concrete. Slit conduit shall not be used. The conduit used shall be of high density polyethylene or polypropylene with a minimum wall thickness of 0.025 inch. The inside diameter of the conduit shall be of sufficient size to allow free movement of the encased tendon but it shall not be greater than the diameter of the tendon plus 1/8-inch. The conduit shall be secured so that longitudinal movement along the tendon will be prevented, and bonding of the tendon will be prevented at the location shown on the Drawings plus or minus 1 inch. Concrete shall be prevented from entering the conduit by taping. The tape shall be manufactured from a non-corrosive material compatible with the concrete, conduit, and steel.

3.03 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. All tendons, including all trimmed strand ends, shall be protected by multi-level corrosion protection appropriate for an aggressive environment. Examples of multi-level protection include adequate concrete or grout cover, use of low permeability concrete and grout, use of corrosion inhibiting admixtures, water resistant grease, sheathing, encapsulated strands, etc.

B. Time between tendon stressing and grouting shall not exceed 7 days to limit corrosion risk of unprotected tendons. Temporary corrosion protection is required when time between tendon stressing and grouting will exceed 7 days.

3.04 TENSIONING PROCEDURE

A. Each tendon shall be tensioned to the required load prior to placing the concrete.

B. The load induced in the tendon shall be measured both by jacking gages and strand elongations on at least the first 5 tendons and every third tendon thereafter on each pour. Loads on all other tendons shall be measured by either jacking gages or tendon elongations. When both methods of measurement are used, if a discrepancy between gage and elongation of more than 5 percent is apparent, the entire operation shall be carefully checked and the source of error determined before proceeding further. The computed elongation and jacking loads shall make appropriate allowances for load losses due to friction and all possible slippage or relaxation of the anchorage. References shall be established periodically at each tendon anchorage to indicate any yielding or slippage that may occur between the time of initial tensioning and final release of the tendons.

C. In determining the applied load by measuring the elongation of the tendon, a modulus of elasticity taken from the typical stress-strain curve for the brand, size, and type of tendon being tensioned shall be used. The Contractor shall submit stress-strain curve data for the actual heats of material used in the tendons to the plant inspector before the tendons are used. Each reel or tendon shall be identified by tagging in accordance with AASHTO M203. A standard color marking every 100 ft. on the tendons will be required. The standard color markings shall be white for stress relieved tendons, green for low relaxation tendons and a double marking of green and red for special low relaxation tendons.

D. Tendons may be tensioned in a group or individually. Prior to being given its full tensioning, each tendon shall be brought to an initial tension of 2,000 lbs, for all beds under 150 ft in length, 3,000 lbs, for all beds 150 to 300 ft in length, and 4,000 lbs for all beds longer than 300 ft. in length. This initial tension shall be measured by a calibrated gauge or other approved means, and the elongation due to initial tensioning shall then be computed. The difference between the required final tension and the initial tension shall be used to compute the expected additional elongation.

E. After initial tensioning, the tendons shall be tensioned until the required elongation and jacking load are attained and reconciled with the limits specified above. A permanent

record shall be kept of the initial jacking load, the final jacking load and the elongation produced thereby. In single tendon tensioning, rotation of the jacking ram will not be allowed.

F. When draped tendons are to be used, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer for his approval a bed layout showing the method of draping and tensioning the draped tendons and also calculations determining the loads required for tensioning the draped tendons. The tendons for all members to be cast in any one tensioning operation shall be draped before any beam is cast. End templates or bulkheads at ends of beams shall remain vertical or as otherwise shown on the Drawings. Unless otherwise approved by the Engineer, draping for all members shall be done either simultaneously or in increments not to exceed one-fourth of the total draping.

G. The device used for deflecting the draped tendons shall be of a type and dimensions approved by the Engineer. The part in contact with the tendon shall be rounded to a diameter of not less than 3/4-inch. Support and hold-down devices shall be of sufficient rigidity and have adequate support so that the final position of the tendons will be as shown on the Drawings.

H. With tendons tensioned in accordance with the above requirements and with other reinforcement in place, the concrete members shall be cast so as to achieve the required lengths. Tendon load shall be maintained between anchorages until the concrete has reached the required compressive strength for transfer of load from the anchorages to the members.

3.05 TRANSFER OF LOAD

A. Transfer of load procedures shall be such as to not cause cracks in members. Transfer of load shall be by gradual release of the tendons as a group, by gradual release of part of the group, or by burning of the fully tensioning tendons at the ends of the members. If tendons are to be released by a method other than gradual release of the entire group, the proposed method and pattern of release, if not so shown on the Drawings, shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Engineer for his approval. The approved method and pattern of release shall be rigidly followed. When the fully tensioned tendons are being burned each tendon or group of tendons shall be burned simultaneously at each end of the bed in its indicated order in the pattern and at each end of each member before proceeding to the tendons in the next group in the pattern at any point.

B. When detensioning all beams, girders, cored slabs, and piles, tendons shall not be burned quickly but shall be heated with a low oxygen flame played along the tendon for a minimum of 5 inches until the metal gradually loses its strength. Heat shall be applied at such a rate that failure of the first wire in each tendon shall not occur until at least 5 seconds after heat is first applied. When detensioning other members, the above procedure shall be followed unless an alternate procedure has been approved by the Engineer. Detensioning by arc welder will not be allowed.

C. All tendon releases shall be in a manner as to cause a minimum shock and lateral eccentricity of loading and shall meet the Engineer's approval. Failure to follow the above procedures for transfer of load will be grounds for rejection of the members involved.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Provide all labor, equipment, materials, and services necessary for the manufacture, transportation, and placement of all plain and reinforced concrete work, as shown on the Drawings or as required by the Engineer.

B. The requirements in this section shall apply to the types of concrete listed below. See Article 2.11 for concrete mix design and properties of concrete.

1. Class A1 Concrete: Normal weight structural concrete to be used in all structures qualifying as environmental concrete structures designed in accordance with ACI 350 including any structures containing water, wastewater or any other fluid, process chemicals, or other materials used in treatment process.

2. Class A2 Concrete: Normal weight structural concrete in all structures other than structures as described above, and for all sidewalks and pavement.

3. Class A3 Concrete: Normal weight structural concrete to be used for interior slabs where a Type “D” Steel Troweled Finish or Type “G” Hardened Finish is required. Class A3 concrete shall not contain entrained air.

4. Class B Concrete: Normal weight structural concrete used for duct bank encasements, catch basins, fence and guard post embedment, concrete fill, and other areas where specifically noted on Contract Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

C. Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories

D. Section 03 15 16 – Joints in Concrete

E. Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes

F. Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing

G. Section 03 60 00 – Grout

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to or exceed the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code
2. ACI 214 – Guide to Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete
3. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete
4. ACI 304 – Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
5. ACI 305 – Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
6. ACI 306 – Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
7. ACI 309R – Guide for Consolidation of Concrete
8. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary
9. ACI 350 – Code Requirements for Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures
10. ASTM C 31 – Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field
11. ASTM C 33 – Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
12. ASTM C 39 – Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
13. ASTM C42 – Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete
14. ASTM C 88 – Standard Test Method for Soundness of Aggregates by use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
15. ASTM C 94 – Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete
16. ASTM C 114 – Standard Test Method for Chemical Analysis of Hydraulic Cement
17. ASTM C 136 – Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
18. ASTM C 138 – Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete

19. ASTM C 143 – Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

20. ASTM C 150 – Standard Specification for Portland Cement

21. ASTM C 157 - Standard Test Method for Length Change of Hardened Hydraulic Cement, Mortar and Concrete

22. ASTM C 172 – Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete

23. ASTM C 192 – Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory

24. ASTM C 231 – Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method

25. ASTM C 260 – Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

26. ASTM C 295 – Standard Guide for Petrographic Examination of Aggregates for Concrete

27. ASTM C 457 – Standard Test Method for Microscopical Determination of the Air-Void System in Hardened Concrete

28. ASTM C 494 – Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

29. ASTM C 595 – Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements

30. ASTM C 618 – Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete

31. ASTM C 989 – Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars

32. ASTM C 1012 – Standard Test Method for Length Change of Hydraulic Cement Mortars Exposed to a Sulfate Solution

33. ASTM C 1077 – Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation

34. ASTM C 1157 – Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement

35. ASTM C 1260 – Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates (Mortar Bar Method)

36. ASTM C 1567 – Standard Test Method for Determining the Potential Alkali-Silica Reactivity of Combinations of Cementitious Materials and Aggregate (Accelerated Mortar-Bar Method)

37. ASTM C 1579 – Standard Test Method for Evaluating Plastic Shrinkage Cracking of Restrained Fiber Reinforced Concrete (Using a Steel Form Insert)

38. ASTM C 1602 – Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete

39. ASTM C 1609 – Standard Test Method for Flexural Performance of Fiber Reinforced Concrete (Using Beam with Third-Point Loading)

40. ASTM C 1778 – Standard Guide for Reducing the Risk of Deleterious Alkali – Aggregate Reaction in Concrete

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Sources of all materials and certifications of compliance with specifications for all materials.

2. Certified current (less than 6 months old) chemical analysis (mill test report) of the Portland Cement or Blended Cement to be used. The chemical analysis must include the equivalent alkali content of the Portland Cement or Blended Cement. For Type IL cement, submit updated cement mill test reports every 6 months while active concrete work is being performed.

3. Certified current (less than 1 year old) chemical analysis of fly ash or slag cement to be used.

4. Aggregate test results showing compliance with required standards, i.e., sieve analysis, potential reactivity, aggregate soundness tests, petrographic analysis, mortar bar expansion testing, etc.

5. Manufacturer's data on all admixtures stating compliance with required standards.

6. Concrete mix design for each class of concrete specified herein.

7. Verification that concrete mix and individual constituents in concrete meet requirements for NSF 61 approval for potable water applications where required.

8. Field experience records and/or trial mix data for the proposed concrete mixes for each class of concrete specified herein.

9. Drying shrinkage test results from trial concrete mixes.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Tests on materials used in the production of concrete shall be required as specified in Part 2 – Products. These tests shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory approved by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Trial concrete mixes shall be tested when required in accordance with Article 3.01 at no additional cost to the Owner. Where historical data is utilized for mix design verification, submit certified cement chemical analysis (mill test report) for the historical concrete.

C. Field quality control tests, as specified in Article 3.10, unless otherwise stated, will be performed by a materials testing consultant employed by the Owner. However, the Contractor shall be charged for the cost of any additional tests and investigation on work performed which does not meet the Specifications. Any individual who samples and tests concrete to determine if the concrete is being produced in accordance with this Specification shall be certified as a Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade I, in accordance with ACI CP-2. Testing laboratory shall conform to requirements of ASTM C-1077.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 HYDRAULIC CEMENT

A. Portland Cement

1. Portland Cement shall be Type II conforming to ASTM C 150. Type I cement may be used provided either fly ash or slag cement is also included in the mix in accordance with Articles 2.03 or 2.04, respectively.

2. The proposed Portland Cement shall not contain more than 8% tricalcium aluminate and more than 12% tetracalcium aluminoferrite.

3. Portland Cement shall also meet performance requirements of ASTM C 1157.

B. Blended Cement

1. Blended cements shall be Type IP (Portland Fly Ash Cement), Type IS (Portland Slag Cement), or Type IL (Portland Limestone Cement) conforming to ASTM C 595.

2. Type IP cement shall be an inter-ground blend of Portland Cement and fly ash in which the fly ash constituent is between 15% and 25% of the weight of the total blend.

3. Type IS cement shall be an inter-ground blend of Portland Cement and slag cement in which the slag cement constituent is between 30% and 40% of the weight of the total blend.

4. Type IL cement shall be an inter-ground blend of Portland Cement and limestone in which the limestone constituent is between 5% and 15% of the weight of the total blend.

5. Fly ash, slag cement, and limestone used in the production of blended cements shall meet the requirements of Articles 2.02, 2.03, and 2.04 respectively.

6. Cements meeting ASTM C 1157 shall not be used in manufacture of blended cements.

7. Blended cement shall meet the Physical Requirements of Tables 2 and 3 of ASTM C 595 including the requirements for high sulfate resistance in Table 3 as tested per ASTM C1012.

C. Different types of cement shall not be mixed, nor shall they be used alternately except when authorized in writing by the Engineer. For Type IP, Type IS or Type I/II cement, different brands of cement or the same brand from different mills may be used alternately. For Type IL cement, use of a different cement brand or same brand from a different mill requires resubmittal of the mix design with current mill test report for review. A resubmittal will be required if different cements are proposed during the Project.

D. Cement shall be stored in a suitable weather-tight building to prevent deterioration or contamination. Cement which has become caked, partially hydrated, or otherwise damaged will be rejected.

2.02 FLY ASH

A. Fly ash shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 618 for Class F, except that the loss on ignition shall not exceed 4%. Fly ash shall also meet the optional physical requirements for uniformity as shown in Table 3 of ASTM C 618. Fly ash shall be considered as a supplemental cementitious material.

B. For fly ash to be used in the production of Type IP cement, the Pozzolan Activity Index shall be greater than 75% as specified in Table 3 of ASTM C 595.

C. Where reactive aggregates as defined in Article 2.08 are used in the concrete mix, the fly ash constituent shall be as needed to satisfy the concrete alkali loading requirements stipulated in Section 2.06. The percentage of fly ash shall also be set to meet the mean mortar bar expansion requirements in provisions of Article 2.08.G.2. Where fly ash is used, the minimum fly ash content shall be 15%.

D. For Type A1 concrete as required for use in environmental concrete structures, i.e., process structures or fluid containing structures, inclusion of fly ash or slag cement in the concrete mix, is mandatory.

E. Additional fly ash shall not be included in concrete mixed with Type IS or IP cement.

2.03 SLAG CEMENT

A. Slag cement shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 989 including tests for effectiveness of slag in preventing excessive expansion due to alkali-aggregate reactivity as described in Appendix X-3 of ASTM C 989.

B. Where reactive aggregates as defined in Article 2.08 are used in concrete mix, the slag cement constituent shall be as needed to satisfy the concrete alkali loading requirements stipulated in Section 2.06. The percentage of slag cement shall also be set to meet the mean mortar bar expansion requirements in provisions of Article 2.08.G.2. Where Slag Cement is used, the minimum Slag Cement content shall be 30%, and the maximum Slag Cement content shall be 40%.

C. For Type A1 concrete as required for use in environmental concrete structures, i.e., process structures or fluid containing structures, inclusion of fly ash or slag cement in the concrete mix, is mandatory.

D. Additional slag cement shall not be included in concrete mixed with Type IS or IP cement.

2.04 PORTLAND LIMESTONE CEMENT (TYPE IL)

A. Portland Limestone Cement (Type IL) cement shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 595.

B. Limestone used for blended cement Type IL shall be naturally occurring and meet the requirements of ASTM C 33.

C. Fly ash or slag cement shall be used with Type IL cement to meet requirements for durability, ASR resistance, sulfate resistance, and use for environmental structures, as specified herein.

2.05 CONCRETE ALKALI LOADING

A. All concrete mixes containing potentially reactive aggregates shall have a maximum alkali loading of the concrete of 3.0 pounds per cubic yard.

B. The alkali loading of concrete is the Portland Cement equivalent alkali content multiplied by the Portland Cement content of the mix in pounds per cubic yard divided by 100. The Portland Cement equivalent alkali content shall be included in the certified chemical analysis of the Portland Cement.

C. Means of evaluating alkali loading of concrete and proportioning constituents of concrete to minimize alkali loading of content shall also conform to the guidelines of ASTM C1778.

2.06 WATER

A. Water used for mixing concrete shall be clear, potable, and free from deleterious substances such as objectionable quantities of silty organic matter, alkali, salts, and other impurities.

B. Water shall not contain more than 100 PPM chloride.

C. Water shall not contain more than 500 PPM dissolved solids.

D. Water shall have a pH in the range of 4.5 to 8.5.

E. Water shall meet requirements of ASTM C 1602.

2.07 AGGREGATES

A. All aggregates used in normal weight concrete shall conform to ASTM C 33.

B. Fine Aggregate (Sand) in the various concrete mixes shall consist of natural or manufactured siliceous sand, clean and free from deleterious substances, and graded within the limits of ASTM C 33.

C. Coarse aggregates shall consist of hard, clean, durable gravel, crushed gravel, or crushed rock. Coarse aggregate shall be size #57 or #67 as graded within the limits given in ASTM C 33 unless otherwise specified.

D. Aggregates shall be tested for gradation by sieve analysis tests in conformance with ASTM C 136.

E. Aggregates shall be tested for soundness in accordance with ASTM C 88. The loss resulting after five cycles shall not exceed 10 percent for fine or coarse aggregate when using either magnesium sulfate or sodium sulfate.

F. All aggregates shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM C 1778 to determine potential reactivity. All aggregates shall be considered reactive unless they meet the requirements below for non-reactive aggregates. Aggregates with a lithology like sources in the same region found to be reactive in service shall be considered reactive regardless of the results of the tests above.

    1. Non-reactive aggregates shall meet the following requirements:

        a. A petrographic analysis in accordance with ASTM C295 shall be performed to identify the constituents of the fine and coarse aggregate. Non-reactive aggregates shall meet the following limitations:

            1) Optically strained, micro-fractured, or microcrystalline quartz, 5.0%, maximum.

            2) Chert or chalcedony, 3.0%, maximum.

            3) Tridymite or cristobalite, 1.0%, maximum.

            4) Opal, 0.5%, maximum.

            5) Natural volcanic glass in volcanic rocks, 3.0%, maximum.

    2. Concrete mixed with reactive aggregates shall meet the following requirements:

a. If aggregates are deemed potentially reactive as per ASTM C1778 and fly ash or slag cement is included in proposed concrete mix design, proposed concrete mix including proposed aggregates shall be evaluated by ASTM C-1567. Mean mortar bar expansions at 16 days shall be less than 0.08%. Tests shall be made using exact proportion of all materials proposed for use on the job in design mix submitted.

b. If aggregates are deemed potentially reactive as per ASTM C-1778 and a straight cement mix without fly ash or slag cement is proposed for concrete mix design, aggregates shall be evaluated by ASTM C-1260. Mean mortar bar expansions at 16 days shall be less than 0.08%.

c. If the proposed aggregates are deemed potentially reactive, the concrete mix shall be evaluated and confirmed to meet the requirements for concrete alkali loading as stipulated in Section 2.06.

G. Contractor shall submit a new trial mix to the Engineer for approval whenever a different aggregate or gradation is proposed.

2.08 ADMIXTURES

A. Admixtures containing intentionally added chlorides shall not be used.

B. Admixtures containing 1,4 Dioxane shall not be used in Projects located in a State or Commonwealth where 1,4 Dioxane limits are required.

C. Air entraining admixture shall be added to all concrete unless noted otherwise. The air entraining admixture shall conform to ASTM C 260. The admixture proposed shall be selected in advance so that adequate samples may be collected, and the required tests made. Air content of concrete, when placed, shall be within the ranges given in the concrete mix design.

D. The following admixtures are required or used for water reduction, slump increase, and/or adjustment of initial set, and enhancing durability. Admixtures permitted shall confirm to the requirements of ASTM C 494. Admixtures shall be non-toxic after 30 days and shall be compatible with and made by the same manufacturer as the air-entraining admixtures.

1. Water reducing admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type A and shall contain no more than 0.05% chloride ions. Acceptable products are “Eucon Series” by the Euclid Chemical Company, “Master Pozzolith Series or Master Polyheed Series” by Master Builders Solutions, and “Plastocrete Series” by Sika Corporation.

2. High range water reducer shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type F or G. The high range water reducer shall be added to the concrete at the batch plant and may be used in conjunction with a water reducing admixture. The high range water reducer

shall be accurately measured, and pressure injected into the mixer as a single dose by an experienced technician. A standby system shall be provided and tested prior to each day's operation of the job site system. Concrete shall be mixed at mixing speed for a minimum of 100 mixer revolutions after the addition of the high range water reducer. Acceptable products are "Eucon 37" or Plastol 5000 by the Euclid Chemical Company, "Master Rheobuild 1000 or Master Glenium Series" by Master Builders Solutions, and "Daracem 100 or Advaflow Series" by W.R. Grace.

3. A non-chloride, non-corrosive accelerating admixture may be used where specifically approved by the Engineer. The admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type C or E. The admixture manufacturer must have long-term non-corrosive test data from an independent testing laboratory (of at least a year's duration) using an acceptable accelerated corrosion test method such as that using electrical potential measures. Acceptable products are "MasterSet AC 534 or MasterSet FP 20" by Master Builders Solutions, "Accelguard 80/90 or NCA" by the Euclid Chemical Company and "Daraset" by W.R. Grace.

4. A retarding admixture may be used where specifically approved by the Engineer. The admixture shall conform to ASTM C494, Type B or D. Acceptable products are "Eucon NR or Eucon Retarder 100" by the Euclid Chemical Company, "MasterSet R Series or MasterSet DELVO Series" by Master Builders Solutions, and "Plastiment" by Sika Corporation.

5. Workability Retaining Admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type S. The admixture shall retain concrete workability without affecting time of setting or early-age strength development. Acceptable products are "MasterSure Z 60" by Master Builders Solutions, ViscoFlow-2020 by Sika Corporation, PLASTOL AMP-X3 by Euclid Chemical Company, or equal.

E. Admixtures containing calcium chloride, thiocyanate or more than 0.05 percent chloride ions are not permitted. The addition of admixtures to prevent freezing is not permitted.

F. The Contractor shall submit manufacturer's data including the chloride ion content of each admixture and certification from the admixture manufacturer that all admixtures utilized in the design mix are compatible with one another and properly proportioned prior to mix design review.

2.09 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

A. The proportions of cement, aggregates, admixtures, and water used in the concrete mixes shall be based on laboratory trial mixes in conformance with ACI 301. Trial mixes shall also conform to Article 3.01 of this Specification. Trial mix data used as the basis for the proposed concrete mix design shall be submitted to the Engineer along with the proposed mix.

B. Structural concrete shall conform to the following requirements. Cementitious materials refer to the total combined weight of all cement, fly ash, and slag cement contained in the mix.

1. Compressive Strength (28-Day)

Concrete Class A1, A2, A3	4,500 psi (min.), 6500 psi (max.)
Concrete Class B	3,000 psi (min.), 5000 psi (max.)

2. Water/cementitious materials ratio, by weight

	Maximum	**Minimum**
Concrete Class A1, A2, A3	0.42	0.39
Concrete Class B	0.50	0.39

3. Slump range

a. 4" nominal unless high range water reducing admixture is used.

b. 10” max if high range water reducing admixture is used.

4. Air Content

Concrete Class A1, A2	6% ±1.5%
Concrete Class A3, B	3% Max (non-air-entrained)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 TRIAL MIXES

A. Trial mixes shall be used to confirm the quality of a proposed concrete mix in accordance with ACI 301. An independent qualified testing laboratory designated and retained by the Contractor shall test a trial batch of each of the preliminary concrete mixes submitted by the Contractor. The trial batches shall be prepared using the aggregates, cement, supplementary cementitious materials, and admixtures proposed for the project. The trial batch materials shall be of a quantity such that the testing laboratory can obtain enough samples to satisfy requirements stated below. Tests on individual materials stated in PRODUCTS should already be performed before any trial mix is done. The cost of laboratory trial batch tests for each specified concrete mix will be borne by the Contractor and the Contractor shall furnish and deliver the materials to the testing laboratory at no cost to the Owner.

B. The independent testing laboratory shall prepare a minimum of fifteen (15) standard test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C 31 in addition to conducting slump (ASTM C 143), air content (C 231) and density (C 138) tests. Compressive strength test on the cylinders shall subsequently be performed by the same laboratory in accordance with ASTM C 39 as follows: Test 3 cylinders at age 7 days; test 3 cylinders at age 21 days; test 3 cylinders at age 28 days and test 3 cylinders at 56 days. The cylinders shall be carefully identified as "Trial Mix, Contract No. “. If the average 28-day compressive strength of the trial mix is less than that specified, or if any single cylinder falls below the required strength by more than 500 psi, the mix shall be corrected, another trial batch prepared, test cylinders taken, and new tests performed as before. Any such additional trial batch testing required shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner. Adjustments to the mix shall be considered refinements to the mix design and shall not be the basis for extra compensation to the Contractor.

3.02 SHRINKAGE TESTS

A. Concurrent with the trial batch requirements stated in Article 3.01, the testing laboratory shall perform drying shrinkage tests for the trial batches as specified herein. Shrinkage testing is only required for concrete to be used for environmental concrete structures (Class A1).

B. Fabricate, cure, dry, and measure specimens in accordance with ASTM C157 modified as follows.

1. Remove specimens from molds at an age of 23 hours ± 1 hour after trial batching.

2. Place specimens immediately in water at 70 ^{o}F ± 3 ^{o}F for at least 30 minutes.

3. Measure within 30 minutes thereafter to determine original length, then submerge in saturated lime water at 73 ^{o}F ± 3 ^{o}F.

4. At age seven days, measure to determine expansion, expressed as a percentage of original length. This length at age seven days shall be the base length for drying shrinkage calculations (zero days’ drying age).

5. Store specimens immediately in a humidity-controlled room maintained at 73 ^{o}F ± 3 ^{o}F and 50 percent ± 4 percent relative humidity for the remainder of the test.

6. Make and report separately measurements to determine shrinkage expressed as base length percentage for 7, 14, 21, and 28 days of drying after 7 days of moist curing.

C. Compute the drying shrinkage deformation for each specimen as the difference between the base length (at zero days’ drying age) and the length after drying at each test age. Compute the average drying shrinkage deformation for the specimens to the nearest 0.0001 inch at each test age. If the drying shrinkage for any specimen departs from the average test age for that test by more than 0.0004 inch, disregard the results obtained

from that specimen. Report results from the shrinkage test to the nearest 0.001 percent of shrinkage. Take compression test specimens in each case from the same concrete used for preparing drying shrinkage specimens. These tests shall be considered part of the normal compression tests for the project.

D. The maximum concrete shrinkage for specimens cast in the laboratory from the trial batch, as measured at 21-day drying age or at 28-day drying age, shall be 0.036 or 0.042 percent, respectively. Use a mix design for construction that has first met the trial batch shrinkage requirements.

E. If the trial batch specimens do not meet both the strength and shrinkage requirements, revise the mix designs and/or materials and retest.

3.03 PRODUCTION OF CONCRETE

A. All concrete shall be machine mixed. Hand mixing of concrete will not be permitted. The Contractor may supply concrete from a ready-mix concrete plant or from a site mixed plant. In selecting the source for concrete production, the Contractor shall carefully consider its capability for providing quality concrete at a rate commensurate with the requirements of the placements so that well bonded, homogenous concrete, free of cold joints, is assured.

B. Ready-Mixed Concrete

1. At the Contractor's option, ready-mixed concrete may be used meeting the requirements for materials, batching, mixing, transporting, and placing as specified herein and in accordance with ASTM C 94.

2. Truck mixers shall be equipped with electrically actuated counters by which the number of revolutions of the drum or blades may be readily verified. The counter shall be of the resettable, recording type, and shall be mounted in the driver's cab. The counters shall be actuated at the time of starting mixers at mixing speeds.

3. Each batch of concrete shall be mixed in a truck mixer for not less than 100 revolutions of the drum or blades at the rate of rotation designated by the manufacturer of equipment. Additional mixing, if any, shall be at the speed designated by the manufacturer of the equipment as agitating speed. All materials including mixing water shall be in the mixer drum before actuating the revolution counter for determining the number of revolutions of mixing.

4. Truck mixers and their operation shall be such that the concrete throughout the mixed batch, as discharged, is within acceptable limits of uniformity with respect to consistency, mix and grading. If slump tests taken at approximately the 1/4 and 3/4 points of the load during discharge give slumps differing by more than one inch when the specified slump is 3 inches or less, or if they differ by more than 2 inches when the specified slump is more than 3 inches, the mixer shall not be used on the work unless the causing condition is corrected and satisfactory performance is verified by additional slump tests. All mechanical details of the mixer, such as

water measuring and discharge apparatus, condition of the blades, speed of rotation, general mechanical condition of the unit and clearance of the drum, shall be checked before a further attempt to use the unit will be permitted.

5. Ready-mixed concrete shall be delivered to the site for the work and discharge shall be completed within the time requirements stated in Article 3.04 of this Section.

6. Every concrete delivery shall be accompanied by a delivery ticket containing at least the following information:

    a. Date and truck number

    b. Ticket number

    c. Mix designation of concrete

    d. Cubic yards of concrete

    e. Cement brand, type, and weight in pounds

    f. Weight in pounds of fine aggregate (sand)

    g. Weight in pounds of coarse aggregate (stone)

    h. Air entraining agent, brand, and weight in pounds and ounces

    i. Other admixtures, brand, and weight in pounds and ounces

    j. Water, in gallons, stored in attached tank

    k. Water, in gallons, maximum that can be added without exceeding design water/cementitious materials ratio

    l. Water, in gallons, used (by truck driver)

    m. Time of loading

    n. Time of delivery to job (by truck driver)

7. Any truck delivering concrete to the job site, which is not accompanied by a delivery ticket showing the above information will be rejected and such truck shall immediately depart from the job site.

8. The use of non-agitating equipment for transporting ready-mixed concrete will not be permitted. Combination truck and trailer equipment for transporting ready-mixed concrete will not be permitted. The quality and quantity of materials used in ready-mixed concrete and in batch aggregates shall be subject to inspection at the batching plant by the Engineer.

C. Site Mixed Concrete

1. Site Mixed Concrete shall only be used where specifically approved by the Engineer.

2. Scales for weighing concrete ingredients shall be accurate when in use within ±0.4 percent of their total capacities. Standard test weights shall be available to permit checking scale accuracy.

3. Operation of batching equipment shall be such that the concrete ingredients are consistently measured within the following tolerances:

a.	Cement, fly ash, or slag cement	± 1 percent
b.	Water	± 1 percent
c.	Aggregates	± 2 percent
d.	Admixtures	± 3 percent

4. Each batch shall be so charged into the mixer that some water will enter in advance of the cement and aggregates. Water shall continue for a period which may extend to the end of the first 25 percent of the specified mixing time. Controls shall be provided to prevent batched ingredients from entering the mixer before the previous batch has been completely discharged.

5. The concrete shall be mixed in a batch mixer capable of thoroughly combining the aggregates, cement, and water into a uniform mass within the specified mixing time, and of discharging the concrete without harmful segregation. The mixer shall bear a manufacturer's rating plate indicating the rate capacity and the recommended revolutions per minute and shall be operated in accordance therewith.

6. Mixers with a rated capacity of one cubic yard or larger shall conform to the requirements of the Plant Mixer Manufacturers' Division of the Concrete Plant Manufacturers' Bureau.

7. Except as provided below, batches of one cubic yard or less shall be mixed for not less than one minute. The mixing time shall be increased 15 seconds for each cubic yard or fraction thereof of additional capacity.

8. Shorter mixing time may be permitted provided performance tests made in accordance with of ASTM C 94 indicate that the time is sufficient to produce uniform concrete.

9. Controls shall be provided to ensure that the batch cannot be discharged until the required mixing time has elapsed. At least three-quarters of the required mixing time shall take place after the last of the mixing water has been added.

10. The interior of the mixer shall be free of accumulations that will interfere with mixing action. Mixer blades shall be replaced when they have lost 10 percent of their original height.

11. Air-entraining admixtures and other chemical admixtures shall be charged into the mixer as solutions and shall be measured by means of an approved mechanical dispensing device. The liquid shall be considered a part of the mixing water. Admixtures that cannot be added in solution may be weighed or may be measured by volume if recommended by the manufacturer.

12. If two or more admixtures are used in the concrete, they shall be added separately to avoid possible interaction that might interfere with the efficiency of either admixture or adversely affect the concrete.

13. Addition of retarding admixtures shall be completed within one minute after addition of water to the cement has been completed, or prior to the beginning of the last three-quarters of the required mixing, whichever occurs first. Retarding admixtures shall not be used unless approved by the Engineer.

14. Concrete shall be mixed only in quantities for immediate use and within the time and mixing requirements of ASTM C 94.

3.04 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. No concrete shall be placed prior to approval of the concrete mix design. Concrete placement shall conform to the recommendations of ACI 304.

B. Prior to concrete placement, all reinforcement shall be securely and properly fastened in its correct position. Formwork shall be clean, oiled and form ties at construction joints shall be retightened. All bucks, sleeves, castings, hangers, pipe, conduits, bolts, anchors, wire, and any other fixtures required to be embedded therein shall be in place. Forms for openings to be left in the concrete shall be in place and anchored by the Contractor. All loose debris in bottoms of forms or in keyways shall be removed and all debris, water, snow, ice, and foreign matter shall be removed from the space to be occupied by the concrete. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer in advance of placement, allowing sufficient time for a concurrent inspection and for any corrective measures required.

C. On horizontal joints where concrete is to be placed on hardened concrete, flowing concrete containing a high range water reducing admixture shall be placed with a slump not less than 8 inches for the initial placement at the base of the wall. Concrete or cement grout shall meet all strength and service requirements specified herein for applicable class of concrete. This concrete shall be worked well into the irregularities of the hard surface.

D. All concrete shall be placed during the daylight hours except with the consent of the Engineer. If special permission is obtained to carry on work during the night, adequate lighting must be provided.

E. When concrete arrives at the project with slump below that suitable for placing, as indicated by the Specifications, water may be added to bring the concrete within the specified slump range provided the design water-cementitious materials ratio is not exceeded. The water shall be incorporated by additional mixing equal to at least half of the total mixing required. Water may be added only to full trucks. On-site tempering shall not relieve the Contractor from furnishing a concrete mix meeting all specified requirements.

F. Concrete shall be conveyed as rapidly as practical to the point of deposit by methods which prevent the separation or loss of the ingredients. The concrete shall be deposited so that additional handling will be unnecessary. Discharge of the concrete to its point of deposit shall be completed within 90 minutes after the addition of the cement to the aggregates unless workability-retaining admixtures are included and approved by the Engineer. In hot weather, or under conditions contributing to quick stiffening of the concrete, the time between the introduction of the cement to the aggregates and discharge shall not exceed the requirements stated in Article 3.10 of this Section.

G. Where concrete is conveyed to position by chutes, a continuous flow in the chute shall be maintained. The angle and discharge arrangement of the chute shall be such to prevent segregation of the concrete ingredients. The delivery end of the chute shall be as close as possible to the point of deposit and in no case shall the free pour from the delivery end of the chute exceed five feet, unless approved otherwise.

H. Special care must be exercised to prevent splashing of forms or reinforcement with concrete, and any such splashes or accumulations of hardened or partially hardened concrete on the forms or reinforcement above the general level of the concrete already in place must be removed before the work proceeds.

I. Placing of concrete shall be regulated so the pressure caused by the wet concrete shall not exceed that used in the design of the forms.

J. All concrete for walls shall be placed through openings in the form spaced at frequent intervals or through tremies (heavy duct canvas, rubber, etc.), equipped with suitable hopper heads. Tremies shall be of variable lengths so the free fall shall not exceed five (5) feet, and enough tremies shall be placed in the form to ensure the concrete remains level.

K. When placing concrete which will be exposed, sufficient illumination shall be provided in the interior of the forms so the concrete, at places of deposit, is visible from deck and runways.

L. Concrete shall be placed to thoroughly embed all reinforcement, inserts, and fixtures.

M. When forms are removed, surfaces shall be even and dense, free from aggregate pockets or honeycomb. Concrete shall be consolidated using mechanical vibration, supplemented by forking and spading by hand in the corners and angle of forms and along form surfaces while the concrete is plastic under the vibratory action. Consolidation shall conform to ACI 309.

N. Mechanical vibration shall be applied directly to the concrete, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. The bottom of vibrators used on floor slabs must not be permitted to ride the form supporting the slab. Vibration shall be applied at the point of deposit and in freshly placed concrete by a vertical penetration of the vibrator. Vibrators shall not be used to move concrete laterally within the forms.

O. The intensity of vibration shall be sufficient to cause settlement of the concrete into place and to produce monolithic joining with the preceding layer. Vibration shall be of sufficient duration to accomplish thorough compaction and complete embedment of reinforcement and fixtures with a vibrator transmitting not less than 7,500 impulses per minute. Since the duration of vibration per square foot of surface is dependent on the frequency (impulses per minute), size of vibrator, and slump of concrete, the length of time must therefore be determined in the field. Vibration shall not be continued in any one location to the extent that pools of grout are formed.

P. Care shall be taken to prevent cold joints when placing concrete in any portion of the work. The concrete placing rate shall ensure that each layer is placed while the previous layer is soft or plastic, so the two layers can be made monolithic by penetration of the vibrators. Maximum thickness of concrete layers shall be 18 inches. The surface of the concrete shall be level whenever a run of concrete is stopped.

Q. To prevent featheredges, construction joints located at the tops of horizontal lifts near sloping exposed concrete surfaces shall be inclined near the exposed surface, so the angle between such inclined surface and the exposed concrete surface will be not less than 50°.

R. In placing unformed concrete on slopes, the concrete shall be placed ahead of a non-vibrated slip-form screed extending approximately 2-1/2 feet back from its leading edge. The method of placement shall provide a uniform finished surface with the deviation from the straight line less than 1/8 inch in any concrete placement. Concrete ahead of the slip-form screed shall be consolidated by internal vibrators to ensure complete filling under the slip-form. Prior to placement of concrete on sloped walls or slabs, the Contractor shall submit a plan specifically detailing methods and sequence of placements, proposed concrete screed equipment, location of construction joints and water stops, and/or any proposed deviations from the stated requirements to the Engineer for review and approval.

S. Concrete shall not be placed during rains sufficiently heavy or prolonged to prevent washing of mortar from coarse aggregate on the forward slopes of the placement. Once placement of concrete has commenced in a block, placement shall not be interrupted by diverting the placing equipment to other uses.

3.05 PLACING FLOOR SLABS ON GROUND

A. The subgrade for slabs on ground shall be well drained and of adequate and uniform loadbearing nature. The in-place density of the subgrade soils shall be at least the minimum required by the specifications. No foundation, slab, or pavement concrete shall

be placed until the depth and character of the foundation soils have been inspected and approved by the materials testing consultant.

B. The subgrade shall be free of frost before concrete placing begins. If the temperature inside a building where concrete is to be placed is below freezing, the temperature shall be raised and maintained above 50° long enough to remove all frost from the subgrade.

C. The subgrade shall be moist at the time of concreting. If necessary, the subgrade shall be dampened with water in advance of concreting, but no free water shall remain standing on the subgrade nor any muddy or soft spots when the concrete is placed.

D. Thirty-pound felt-paper shall be provided between edges of slabs-on-ground and vertical and horizontal concrete surfaces, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

E. Contraction joints shall be provided in slabs-on-ground at locations indicated on the Drawings. Contraction joints shall be installed as per Section 03 15 16 – Joints in Concrete.

F. Floor slabs shall be screeded level or pitched to drain as indicated on the Drawings. Finishes shall conform with requirements of Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes. Interior floor slabs shall be placed with non-air-entrained concrete (Class A3) if a steel troweled or hardened finish is required.

3.06 PLACING CONCRETE UNDER PRESSURE

A. Where concrete is conveyed and placed by mechanically applied pressure, the equipment shall have the capacity for the operation. The operation of the pump shall produce a continuous stream of concrete without air pockets. To obtain the least line resistance, the layout of the pipeline system shall contain minimum bends with no change in pipe size. If two sizes of pipe must be used, the smaller diameter should be used at the pump end and the larger at the discharge end. When pumping is completed, the concrete remaining in the pipelines shall be ejected in such a manner that there will be no contamination of the concrete or separation of the ingredients.

B. Priming of the concrete pumping equipment shall be with cement grout only. Use of specialty mix pump primers or pumping aids will not be allowed.

C. No aluminum parts shall be in contact with the concrete during the placing of concrete under pressure.

D. Prior to placing concrete under pressure, the Contractor shall submit the concrete mix design together with test results from a material’s testing consultant proving the proposed mix meets all requirements. In addition, an actual pumping test under field conditions is required prior to acceptance of the mix. This test requires a duplication of anticipated site conditions from beginning to end. The batching and truck mixing shall be the same as will be used during construction, and the pipe and pipe layouts will reflect the maximum height and distance contemplated. All submissions shall be subject to approval by the Engineer.

E. If the pumped concrete does not produce satisfactory end results, the Contractor shall discontinue the pumping operation and proceed with the placing of concrete using conventional methods.

F. The pumping equipment must have two cylinders and be designed to operate with one cylinder only in case the other one is not functioning. In lieu of this requirement, the Contractor may have a standby pump on the site during pumping.

G. The minimum diameter of the hose (conduits) shall be four inches.

H. Pumping equipment and hoses (conduits) that are not functioning properly shall be replaced.

I. Concrete samples for quality control in accordance with Article 3.10 will be taken at the placement (discharge) end of the line.

3.07 ORDER OF PLACING CONCRETE

A. To minimize the effects of shrinkage, the concrete shall be placed in units as bounded by construction joints shown on the Drawings and maximum lengths as indicated on Drawings. Where required on the Drawings and wherever else practical, the placing of such units shall be done in a strip pattern in accordance with ACI 302.1. A minimum of 72 hours shall pass prior to placing concrete directly adjacent to previously placed concrete.

3.08 CONCRETE WORK IN COLD WEATHER

A. Cold weather concreting procedures shall conform to the requirements of ACI 306.1.

B. The Engineer may prohibit the placing of concrete at any time when air temperature is 40°F. or lower. If concrete work is permitted, the concrete shall have a minimum temperature, as placed, of 55°F. for placements less than 12" thick, 50°F. for placements 12" to 36" thick, and 45°F. for placements greater than 36" thick. The temperature of the concrete as placed shall not exceed these minimum values by more than 20°F, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

C. All aggregate and water shall be preheated. Precautions shall be taken to avoid the possibility of flash set when aggregate or water are heated to a temperature greater than 100°F. to meet concrete temperature requirements. The addition of admixtures to the concrete to prevent freezing is not permitted. All reinforcement, forms, and concrete accessories shall be defrosted by an approved method. No concrete shall be placed on frozen ground.

3.09 CONCRETE WORK IN HOT WEATHER

A. Hot weather concreting procedures shall conform to the requirements of ACI 305.1.

B. When air temperatures exceed 85°F., or when extremely dry or high wind conditions exist even at lower temperatures, the Contractor and the Contractor’s concrete supplier shall exercise special and precautionary measures in preparing, delivering, placing, finishing, curing, and protecting the concrete mix. The Contractor shall consult with the Engineer regarding such measures prior to each day's placing operation, and the Engineer reserves the right to modify the proposed measures consistent with the requirements herein. All necessary materials and equipment shall be in place prior to each placing operation.

C. Preparatory work at the job site shall include thorough wetting of all forms, reinforcing steel and, in the case of slab pours on ground or subgrade, spraying the ground surface on the preceding evening and again just prior to placing. No standing puddles of water shall be permitted in those areas which are to receive the concrete.

D. The temperature of the concrete mix when placed shall not exceed 95°F.

E. Temperature of mixing water and aggregates shall be carefully controlled and monitored at the supplier's plant, with haul distance to the job site being considered. Stockpiled aggregates shall be shaded from the sun and sprinkled intermittently with water. If ice is used in the mixing water for cooling purposes, the ice must be entirely melted prior to addition of the water to the dry mix.

F. Delivery schedules shall be carefully considered in advance to ensure concrete is placed as soon as practical after mixing. For hot weather concrete work (air temperature greater than 85°F), discharge of the concrete to its point of deposit shall be completed within 60 minutes from the time the concrete is batched, unless workability-retaining admixtures are included and approved by the Engineer.

G. The Contractor shall arrange for an ample work force to be on hand to accomplish transporting, vibrating, finishing, and covering of the fresh concrete as rapidly as possible.

3.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Testing of Concrete

1. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Engineer's project representative the on-site scheduling of the materials testing consultant personnel as required for concrete testing.

2. Concrete for testing shall be supplied by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner, and the Contractor shall assist the materials testing consultant in obtaining samples. The Contractor shall dispose of and clean up all excess material.

B. Consistency

1. The consistency of the concrete will be checked by the materials testing consultant by standard slump cone tests. The Contractor shall make any necessary

adjustments in the mix as the Engineer and/or the materials testing consultant may direct and shall upon written order suspend all placing operations in the event the consistency does not meet the intent of the specifications. No payment shall be made for any delays, material, or labor costs due to such occurrences.

2. Slump tests shall be made in accordance with ASTM C 143. Slump tests will be performed as deemed necessary by the materials testing consultant and each time compressive strength samples are taken.

3. Concrete with a specified nominal slump shall be placed having a slump within 1” (higher or lower) of the specified slump. Concrete with a specified maximum slump shall be placed having a slump less than the specified slump.

C. Density

1. Samples of freshly mixed concrete shall be tested for density by the materials testing consultant in accordance with ASTM C 138.

2. Density tests will be performed as deemed necessary by the Engineer and each time compressive strength samples are taken.

D. Air Content

1. Samples of freshly mixed concrete will be tested for entrained air content by the materials testing consultant in accordance with ASTM C 231.

2. Air content tests will be performed as deemed necessary by the materials testing consultant and each time compressive strength samples are taken.

3. In the event test results are outside the limits specified, additional testing shall occur. Admixture quantity adjustments shall be made immediately upon discovery of incorrect air entrainment.

E. Compressive Strength

1. Samples of freshly mixed concrete will be taken by the materials testing consultant and tested for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C 172, C 31, and C 39, except as modified herein.

2. In general, one sampling shall be taken for each placement more than five (5) cubic yards, with a minimum of one (1) sampling for each day of concrete placement operations, or for each one hundred (100) cubic yards of concrete, or for each 5,000 square feet of surface area for slabs or walls, whichever is greater.

3. Each sampling shall consist of at least five (5) 6x12 cylinders or (8) 4x8 cylinders. Each cylinder shall be identified by a tag, which shall be hooked or wired to the side of the container. The materials testing consultant will fill out the required

information on the tag, and the Contractor shall satisfy themselves that such information shown is correct.

4. The Contractor shall be required to furnish labor to the Owner for assisting in preparing test cylinders. The Contractor shall provide approved curing boxes for storage of cylinders on site. The insulated curing box shall be of sufficient size and strength to contain all the cylinders made in any four consecutive working days and to protect the specimens from falling over, being jarred, or otherwise disturbed during the period of initial curing. The box shall be erected, furnished, and maintained by the Contractor. The box shall be equipped to provide the moisture conditions and to regulate the temperature necessary to maintain the proper curing conditions required by ASTM C 31. The curing box shall be placed in an area free from vibration such as pile driving and traffic of all kinds and such that all cylinders are shielded from direct sunlight and/or radiant heating sources. No concrete requiring testing shall be delivered to the site until the storage curing box has been provided. Cylinders shall remain undisturbed in the curing box until ready for delivery to the testing laboratory, but not less than sixteen hours.

5. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining the temperatures of the curing box during the initial curing of cylinders with the temperature preserved between 60°F and 80°F as measured by a maximum-minimum thermometer. The Contractor shall maintain a written record of curing box temperatures for each day the curing box contains cylinders. Temperature shall be recorded a minimum of three times a day with one recording at the start of the day and one recording at the end of the day.

6. When transported, the cylinders shall not be thrown, dropped, allowed to roll, or be damaged in any way.

7. Compression tests shall be performed in accordance with ASTM C 39. For 6x12 cylinders, two test cylinders will be tested at seven days and two at 28 days. For 4x8 cylinders, three test cylinders will be tested at seven days, three at 28 days. The remaining cylinders will be held to verify test results, if needed.

F. Evaluation and Acceptance of Concrete

1. Evaluation and acceptance of the compressive strength of concrete shall be according to the requirements of ACI 214, ACI 318, and ACI 350.

2. The strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if the following conditions are satisfied.

   a. Every arithmetic average of any three consecutive strength tests equals or exceeds the minimum specified 28-day compressive strength for the mix (see Article 2.11).

   b. No individual compressive strength test result falls below the minimum specified strength by more than 500 psi.

3. If any of the conditions listed above are not met, the mix proportions shall be corrected for the next concrete placing operation.

4. If condition 3.10.F.2.b is not met, additional tests in accordance with Article 3.10, Paragraph H shall be performed.

5. When a ratio between 7-day and 28-day strengths has been established by these tests, the 7-day strengths shall subsequently be taken as a preliminary indication of the 28-day strengths. Should the 7-day test strength from any sampling be more than 10% below the established minimum strength, the Contractor shall:

    a. Immediately provide additional periods of curing in the affected area from which the deficient test cylinders were taken.

    b. Maintain or add temporary structural support as required.

    c. Correct the mix for the next concrete placement operation, if required to remedy the situation.

6. All concrete which fails to meet the ACI requirements, and these specifications is subject to removal and replacement at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. When non-compliant concrete is identified, test reports shall be sent immediately to the Engineer for review.

H. Additional Tests

1. When ordered by the Engineer, additional tests on in-place concrete shall be provided and paid for by the Contractor.

2. If the 28-day test cylinders fail to meet the minimum strength requirements as outlined in Article 3.10, Paragraph F, the Contractor shall have concrete core specimens obtained and tested from the affected area immediately.

    a. Three cores shall be taken for each sample in which the strength requirements were not met.

    b. The drilled cores shall be obtained and tested in conformance with ASTM C 42. The tests shall be conducted by a materials testing consultant approved by the Engineer.

    c. The location from which each core is taken shall be approved by the Engineer. Each core specimen shall be located, when possible, so its axis is perpendicular to the concrete surface and not near formed joints or obvious edges of a unit of deposit.

    d. The core specimens shall be taken, if possible, so no reinforcing steel is within the confines of the core.

e. The diameter of core specimens should be at least 3 times the maximum nominal size of the coarse aggregate used in the concrete but must be at least 2-inches in diameter.

f. The length of specimen, when capped, shall be at least twice the diameter of the specimen.

g. The core specimens shall be taken to the laboratory and when transported, shall not be thrown, dropped, allowed to roll, or damaged in any way.

h. Two (2) copies of test results shall be mailed directly to the Engineer. The concrete in question will be considered acceptable if the average compressive strength of a minimum of three test core specimens taken from a given area equal or exceed 85% of the specified 28-day strength and if the lowest core strength is greater than 75% of the specified 28-day strength.

3. If the concrete placed by the Contractor is suspected of not having proper air content, the Contractor shall engage a materials testing consultant approved by the Engineer, to obtain and test samples for air content in accordance with ASTM C 457.

3.11 CARE AND REPAIR OF CONCRETE

A. The Contractor shall protect all concrete against injury or damage from excessive heat, lack of moisture, overstress, or any other cause until final acceptance by the Owner. Care shall be taken to prevent the drying of concrete and to avoid roughening or otherwise damaging the surface. Care shall be exercised to avoid jarring forms or placing any strain on the ends of projecting reinforcing bars. Any concrete found to be damaged, or which may have been originally defective, or which becomes defective at any time prior to the final acceptance of the completed work, or which departs from the established line or grade, or which, for any other reason, does not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, shall be satisfactorily repaired or removed and replaced with acceptable concrete at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Areas of honeycomb shall be chipped back to sound concrete and repaired as directed.

C. Concrete formwork blowouts or unacceptable deviations in tolerances for formed surfaces due to improperly constructed or misaligned formwork shall be repaired as directed. Bulging or protruding areas, which result from slipping or deflecting forms shall be ground flush or chipped out and redressed as directed.

D. Areas of concrete in which cracking, spalling, or other signs of deterioration develop prior to final acceptance shall be removed and replaced or repaired as directed. This stipulation includes concrete that has experienced cracking due to drying or thermal shrinkage of the concrete. Structural cracks shall be repaired using an approved epoxy injection system. Non-structural cracks shall be repaired using an approved hydrophilic resin pressure injected grout system unless other means of repair are deemed

necessary and approved. All repair work shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner.

E. Concrete which fails to meet the strength requirements as outlined in Article 3.10, Paragraph F, will be analyzed as to its adequacy based upon loading conditions, resultant stresses, and exposure conditions for the area of concrete in question. If the concrete in question is found unacceptable based upon this analysis, that portion of the structure shall be strengthened or replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. The method of strengthening or extent of replacement shall be as directed by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 35 00
CONCRETE FINISHES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide finishes of all concrete surfaces specified herein and shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

C. Section 03 60 00 – Grout

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings

2. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Manufacturer's literature on all products specified herein.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER

A. Floor sealer shall be Diamond Clear VOX or Super Diamond Clear VOX by the Euclid Chemical Company, MasterKure CC 300 SB by Master Builders Solutions.

2.02 CONCRETE LIQUID DENSIFIER AND SEALANT

A. Concrete liquid densifier and sealant shall be a high performance, deeply penetrating concrete densifier and sealant. Product shall be odorless, colorless, VOC-compliant, non-yellowing siliconate based solution designed to harden, dustproof, and protect

concrete floors subjected to heavy vehicular traffic and to resist black rubber tire marks on concrete surfaces. The product must contain a minimum solids content of 20% of which 50% is siliconate. Acceptable products are Diamond Hard by the Euclid Chemical Company, and Seal Hard by L&M Construction Chemicals, and Masterkure HD 200 WB by Master Builders Solutions.

2.03 NON-OXIDIZING HEAVY DUTY METALLIC FLOOR HARDENER

A. Non-oxidizing heavy-duty metallic floor hardener shall be formulated, processed, and packaged under stringent quality control at the manufacturer's owned and controlled factory. The hardener shall be a mixture of specifically processed non-rusting aggregate, selected Portland cement, and necessary plasticizing agents. Product shall be "Diamond-Plate" by the Euclid Chemical Company, or MasterTop 200 by Master Builders Solutions.

2.04 NON-SLIP FLOORING ADDITIVE

A. Non-slip flooring additives for slip resistant floors shall be non-metallic. Non-slip flooring additives shall be MasterTop 120SR by Master Builders Solutions, A-H Alox by Anti-Hydro, or Euco Grip by the Euclid Chemical Company.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FINISHES ON FORMED CONCRETE SURFACES

A. After removal of forms, the finishes described below shall be applied in accordance with Article 3.06 - Concrete Finish Schedule. Unless the finish schedule specifies otherwise, all surfaces shall receive at least a Type I finish. See Article 3.05 for surfaces to receive paint or protective coatings. The Engineer shall be the sole judge of acceptability of all concrete finish work.

1. Type I - Rough: All fins, burrs, offsets, marks, and all other projections left by the forms shall be removed. Projections, depressions, etc. below finished grade required to be removed will only be those greater than ¼-inch. All holes left by removal of ends of ties, and all other holes, depressions, bug holes, air/blow holes or voids shall be filled solid with cement grout after first being thoroughly wetted and then struck off flush. The only holes below grade to be filled will be tie holes and any other holes larger than ¼-inch in any dimension. Honeycombs shall be chipped back to solid concrete and repaired as directed by the Engineer. All holes shall be filled with tools, such as sponge floats and trowels, that will permit packing the hole solidly with cement grout. Cement grout shall consist of one-part cement to three parts sand, epoxy bonding agent (for tie holes only) and the amount of mixing water shall be as little as consistent with the requirements of handling and placing. Color of cement grout shall match the adjacent wall surface.

2. Type II - Grout Cleaned: Where this finish is required, it shall be applied after completion of Type I finish. After the concrete has been pre-dampened over an

extended amount of time to reach the condition of saturated surface dry (SSD), a slurry consisting of one part cement (including an appropriate quantity of white cement to produce a color matching the surrounding concrete) and 1-1/2 parts sand passing the No. 16 sieve, by damp loose volume, shall be spread over the surface with clean burlap pads or sponge rubber floats. Mix proportions shall be submitted to the Engineer after a sample of the work is established and accepted. Any surplus shall be removed by scraping and then rubbing with clean burlap.

3. Type III - Smooth Rubbed: Where this finish is required, it shall be applied after the completion of the Type II finish. No rubbing shall be done before the concrete is thoroughly hardened and the mortar used for patching is firmly set. A smooth, uniform surface shall be obtained by wetting the surface and rubbing with a carborundum stone to eliminate irregularities. Unless the nature of the irregularities requires it, the general surface of the concrete shall not be cut into. Corners and edges shall be slightly rounded using a carborundum stone. Brush finishing or painting with grout or neat cement will not be permitted. A 100 square foot example shall be established at the beginning of the project to establish acceptability.

3.02 SLAB AND FLOOR FINISHES

A. The finishes described below shall be applied to floors, slabs, flow channels and top of walls in accordance with Article 3.05 - Concrete Finish Schedule. The Engineer shall be the sole judge of acceptability of all such finish work.

1. Type "A" - Screeded: This finish shall be obtained by placing screeds at frequent intervals and striking off to the surface elevation required. When a Type "F" finish is subsequently to be applied, the surface of the screeded concrete shall be roughened with a concrete rake to 1/2” minimum deep grooves prior to final set.

2. Type "B" - Wood or Magnesium Floated: This finish shall be obtained after completion of a Type "A" finish by working a previously screeded surface with a wood or magnesium float or until the desired texture is reached. Floating shall begin when the water sheen has disappeared and when the concrete has sufficiently hardened so that a person's foot leaves only a slight imprint. If wet spots occur, water shall be removed with a squeegee. Care shall be taken to prevent the formation of laitance and excess water on the finished surface. All edges shall be edged with an 1/8-inch tool as directed by the Engineer. The finished surface shall be true, even, and free from blemishes and any other irregularities.

3. Type "C" - Cork Floated: This finish shall be similar to Type "B" but slightly smoother than the finish obtained with a wood float. The finish shall be obtained by power or band floating with cork floats.

4. Type "D" - Steel Troweled: This finish shall be obtained after completion of a Type "B" finish. When the concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent excess fine

material from working to the surface, the surface shall be compacted and smoothed with not less than two thorough and complete steel troweling operations. In areas which are to receive a floor covering such as tile, resilient flooring, or carpeting, the applicable Specification Sections and Contract Drawings shall be reviewed for the required finishes and degree of flatness. In areas that are intermittently wet such as pump rooms, only one troweling operation is required to provide some trowel marks for slip resistance. All edges shall be edged with an 1/8-inch tool as directed by the Engineer. The finish shall be brought to a smooth, dense surface, free from defects and blemishes.

5. Type "E" - Broom or Belt: This finish shall provide the surface with a transverse scored texture by drawing a broom or burlap belt across the surface immediately after completion of a Type "B" finish. All edges shall be edged with an 1/8-inch tool as directed by the Engineer.

6. Type "F" - Swept in Grout Topping: This finish shall be applied after a completion of a Type "A" finish. The concrete surface shall be properly cleaned, washed, and coated with a mixture of water and Portland Cement. Cement grout with inclusion of macro-synthetic fibers in accordance with Section 03 60 00 – Grout shall be plowed and swept into neat conformance with the blades or arms of the apparatus by turning or rotating the previously positioned mechanical equipment. Special attention shall be paid to true grades, shapes and tolerances as specified by the manufacturer of the equipment. Before beginning this finish, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer and the equipment manufacturer of the details of the operation and obtain approval and recommendations.

   Type “G” Hardened Finish: This finish shall be applied after completion of a Type “B” or Type “C” finish and prior to application of a Type “D” finish. Hardeners shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer’s requirements. Hardeners shall be applied using a mechanical spreader. The hardener shall be applied in two shakes with the first shake comprising 2/3 of the total amount. Type “D” finish shall be applied following completion of application of the hardener. Non-oxidizing, heavy-duty metallic floor hardener shall be applied at the loading docks and where specifically required on the Contract Drawings or specified herein at the rate of 1.5 pounds/ft.2.

7. Type "H" - Non-Slip Finish: This finish shall be provided by applying a non-slip flooring additive concurrently with the application of a Type "D" finish and/or installation of floor sealants. Application procedure shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Finish shall be applied where specifically required on the Contract Drawings or specified herein.

8. Type "J" - Raked Finish: This finish shall be provided by raking the surface as soon as the condition of the concrete permits by making depressions of ±1/4 inch.

3.03 CONCRETE SEALERS

A. Concrete sealers shall be applied where specifically required on the Contract Drawings or specified herein. Concrete sealers and densifiers shall not be used as concrete curing compounds. Curing compounds, when allowed, shall be in accordance with Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing.

B. Sealers shall be applied after installation of all equipment, piping, etc. and after completion of any other related construction activities. Application of sealers shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

C. Sealers shall be applied to all floor slabs not painted and not intended to be immersed.

D. Floor slabs subjected to vehicular traffic shall be sealed with the concrete liquid densifier and sealer.

E. All other floor slabs to receive sealer shall be sealed with concrete floor sealer.

3.04 FINISHES ON EQUIPMENT PADS

A. Formed surfaces of equipment pads shall receive a Type III finish.

B. Top surfaces of equipment pads, except those surfaces subsequently required to receive grout and support equipment bases, shall receive a Type "D" finish, unless otherwise noted. Surfaces which will later receive grout shall, before the concrete takes its final set, be made rough by removing the sand and cement that accumulates on the top to the extent that the aggregate will be exposed with irregular indentations in the surface up to 1/2 inch deep.

3.05 FINISHES FOR SURFACES TO RECEIVE PAINT OR COATINGS

A. Surfaces indicated or specified to receive paint or special coatings shall be prepared per specifications in Division 09. All products applied to the concrete surfaces during the placement, finishing, and curing process shall be compatible with the painting or coating system as required by the manufacturer.

3.06 CONCRETE FINISH SCHEDULE

Item	Type of Finish
Concrete surfaces indicated to receive textured coating (as noted on Drawings and in Section 09 97 00 – Special Coatings)	I
Exterior exposed concrete walls, ceilings, beams, manholes, hand holes, miscellaneous structures, and columns (including top of wall) to one foot below grade. All other exposed concrete surfaces not specified elsewhere	II
All interior exposed concrete walls and vertical surfaces	III
Interior exposed ceiling, including beams	III
All interior finish floors of buildings and structures which are not continuously or intermittently wet	D

Item	Type of Finish
Exterior concrete sidewalks, steps, ramps, decks, slabs on grade and landings exposed to weather	E
Garage, storage area floors, and loading docks	G
Precast concrete form panels, hollow core planks, double tees	J

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 39 00
CONCRETE CURING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Protect all freshly deposited concrete from premature drying and from the weather elements. The concrete shall be maintained with minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for a period necessary for the hydration of the cement and proper hardening of the concrete in accordance with the requirements specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 11 00 – Concrete Formwork

B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete

C. Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete
2. ACI 304 – Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete
3. ACI 305.1 – Specification for Hot Weather Concreting
4. ACI 306.1 – Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting
5. ACI 308.1 – Specification for Curing Concrete
6. ASTM C171 – Standard Specifications for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete
7. ASTM C309 – Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
8. ASTM C1315 – Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds Having Special Properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete

091421

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Proposed procedures for protection of concrete under wet weather placement conditions.

2. Proposed normal procedures for protection and curing of concrete.

3. Proposed special procedures for protection and curing of concrete under hot and cold weather conditions.

4. Proposed method of measuring concrete surface temperature changes.

5. Manufacturer's literature and material certification for proposed curing compounds.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 LIQUID MEMBRANE-FORMING CURING COMPOUND

A. Clear curing and sealing compound shall be a clear styrene acrylate type complying with ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A with a minimum solids content of 30%. Moisture loss shall not be greater than 0.40 kg/m2 when applied at manufacturer’s recommended volume for square feet of area. Manufacturer’s certification is required. Acceptable products are Super Diamond Clear VOX by the Euclid Chemical Company.

B. Where specifically approved by Engineer, on slabs to receive subsequent applied finishes, compound shall conform to ASTM C 309. Acceptable products are “Kurez DR VOX” or “Kurez W VOX” by the Euclid Chemical Company. Install in strict accordance with manufacturer’s requirements.

2.02 EVAPORATION REDUCER

A. Evaporation reducer shall be "MasterKure ER 50” by Master Builders Solutions, or "Euco-Bar" by Euclid Chemical Company.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PROTECTION AND CURING

A. All freshly placed concrete shall be protected from the elements, flowing water and from defacement of any nature during construction operations.

B. As soon as the concrete has been placed and horizontal top surfaces have received their required finish, provisions shall be made for maintaining the concrete in a moist condition for at least a 7-day period thereafter, except for high early strength concrete, for which the period shall be at least the first three days after placement. Horizontal surfaces shall be kept covered, and intermittent, and localized drying will not be permitted.

C. Walls that will be exposed on one side with either fluid or earth backfill on the opposite side shall be continuously wet cured for a minimum of seven days. Use of a curing compound will not be acceptable for applications of this type.

D. The Contractor shall use one of the following methods to ensure that the concrete remains in a moist condition for the minimum period stated above.

1. Ponding or continuous fogging or sprinkling.

2. Application of mats or fabric kept continuously wet.

3. Continuous application of steam (under 150°F).

4. Application of sheet materials conforming to ASTM C171.

5. If approved by the Engineer, application of a curing compound in accordance with Article 3.04.

E. The Contractor shall keep absorbent wood forms wet until they are removed. After form removal, the concrete shall be cured by one of the methods in paragraph D.

F. Any of the curing procedures used in Paragraph 3.01-D may be replaced by one of the other curing procedures listed in Paragraph 3.01-D after the concrete is one-day old. However, the concrete surface shall not be permitted to become dry at any time.

3.02 CURING CONCRETE UNDER COLD WEATHER CONDITIONS

A. Suitable means shall be provided for a minimum of 72 hours after placing concrete to maintain it at or above the minimum as placed temperatures specified in Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete, for concrete work in cold weather. During the 72-hour period, the concrete surface shall not be exposed to air more than 20°F above the minimum as placed temperatures.

B. Stripping time for forms and supports shall be increased as necessary to allow for retardation in concrete strength caused by colder temperatures. This retardation is magnified when using concrete made with blended cements or containing fly ash or slag cement. Therefore, curing times and stripping times shall be further increased as necessary when using these types of concrete.

C. The methods of protecting the concrete shall be approved by the Engineer and shall be such as will prevent local drying. Equipment and materials approved for this purpose shall be on the site in sufficient quantity before the work begins. The Contractor shall assist the Engineer by providing holes in the forms and the concrete in which thermometers can be placed to determine the adequacy of heating and protection. All such thermometers shall be furnished by the Contractor in quantity and type which the Engineer directs.

D. Curing procedures during cold weather conditions shall conform to the requirements of ACI 306.

3.03 CURING CONCRETE UNDER HOT WEATHER CONDITIONS

A. When air temperatures exceed 85°F, the Contractor shall take extra care in placing and finishing techniques to avoid formation of cold joints and plastic shrinkage cracking. If ordered by the Engineer, temporary sunshades and/or windbreakers shall be erected to guard against such developments, including generous use of wet burlap coverings and fog sprays to prevent drying out of the exposed concrete surfaces.

B. Immediately after screeding, horizontal surfaces shall receive an application of evaporation reducer. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Final finish work shall begin as soon as the mix has stiffened sufficiently to support the workmen.

C. Curing and protection of the concrete shall begin immediately after completion of the finishing operation. Continuous moist-curing consisting of method 1 or 2 listed in paragraph 3.01D is mandatory for at least the first 24 hours. Method 2 may be used only if the finished surface is not marred or blemished during contact with the coverings.

D. At the end of the initial 24-hour period, curing and protection of the concrete shall continue for at least six (6) additional days using one of the methods listed in paragraph 3.01D.

E. Curing procedures during hot weather conditions shall conform to the requirements of ACI 305.

3.04 USE OF CURING COMPOUND

A. Curing compound shall be used only where specifically approved by the Engineer. Curing compound shall never be used for curing exposed walls with fluid or earth backfill on the opposite side. A continuous wet cure for a minimum of seven days is required for these applications. Curing compound shall not be used on surfaces exposed to water in potable water storage tanks and treatment plants unless curing compound is certified in accordance with ANSI/NSF Standard 61.

B. When permitted, the curing compound shall maintain the concrete in a moist condition for the required time, and the subsequent appearance of the concrete surface shall not be affected.

C. The compound shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations after water sheen has disappeared from the concrete surface and after finishing operations. Coverage rates for the curing and sealing compound shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer’s requirements for the specific type of finish required. For rough surfaces, apply in two directions at right angles to each other.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 40 00
PRECAST CONCRETE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall construct all precast concrete items as required in the Contract Documents, including all appurtenances necessary to make a complete installation.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 33 05 61 – Utility Structures

B. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

C. Section 03 23 00 – Stressing Tendons

D. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

E. Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes

F. Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing

G. Section 03 41 13 – Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks

H. Section 03 60 00 – Grout

I. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

J. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

K. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of these Specifications, all work specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of the Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. ACI 301 – Structural Concrete for Buildings

3. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

4. ASTM D2240 – Standard Test for Rubber Property – Durometer Hardness

5. PCI Standard MNL-116 – Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Precast and Prestressed Concrete Products

6. PCI Standard MNL-120 - Design Handbook Precast and Prestressed Concrete

7. PCI Standard MNL-123 – Manual on Design of Connections for Precast Prestressed Concrete

8. PCI Standard MNL-124 – PCI Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit the following for review in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Shop Drawings for all precast members including layout and dimensions, unit locations, unit identification marks, reinforcement connection details, support items, dimensions, openings, temporary supports, and relationship to adjacent materials. Indicate design loads, deflections, cambers, bearing requirements, and special conditions. The submittal shall be sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina.

2. A list of the design criteria used by the manufacturer for all manufactured, precast items.

3. Design calculations, showing at least the design loads and stresses on the item and assumptions, shall be submitted. Calculations shall be sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the in the State of North Carolina.

4. Certified reports for all lifting inserts, indicating allowable design loads.

5. Information on lifting and erection procedures.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All manufactured precast concrete units shall be produced by an experienced manufacturer regularly engaged in the production of such items. All manufactured precast concrete and site-cast units shall be free of defects, spalls, and cracks. Care shall be taken in the mixing of materials, casting, curing, and shipping to avoid any of the above. The Engineer may elect to examine the units at the casting yard or upon arrival of the same at the site. The Engineer shall have the option of rejecting any or all the precast work if it does not meet with the requirements specified herein or on the Drawings. All rejected work shall be replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: The precast concrete manufacturing plant shall be certified by the Prestressed Concrete Institute, Plant Certification Program, prior to the start of

production. Certification is required for plants providing prestressed structural members such as hollow core planks, double-T members, etc.

C. Plant production and engineering must be under direct supervision and control of an Engineer who possesses a minimum of five years' experience in precast concrete work.

D. Erector of precast and prestressed items shall be a company specializing in erecting members specified with a minimum of three years documented experience and specifically approved by the fabricator of precast and prestressed members specified.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Precast and prestressed members shall be designed to support superimposed loads indicated on the Drawings and as required by current Building Code of the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. Design shall also consider loads and stresses due to handling, transporting, and erecting of units.

B. Maximum live load deflections for members shall be L/240 for roof members and L/360 for floor members.

C. Members shall be designed to accommodate construction tolerances, and clearances of intended openings.

D. Design shall be performed by a qualified professional engineer registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

E. Fire Rating shall be established in accordance with PCI MNL 124 to achieve the fire ratings required on the Drawings for floor, wall, and roof assemblies.

2.02 CONCRETE

A. Concrete materials including Portland cement, aggregates, water, and admixtures shall conform to Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete. Precast concrete manufacturer has option of using Type III cement for prestressed concrete members to expedite release of prestressing and erection.

B. For prestressed concrete items, minimum compressive strength of concrete at 28 days shall be 5,000 psi unless otherwise specified. Minimum compressive strength of concrete at transfer of prestressing force shall be 3,500 psi unless otherwise specified.

C. For non-prestressed concrete items, minimum compressive strength of concrete at 28 days shall be 4,500 psi for fluid containing and other environmental concrete structures and 4,000 for other structural concrete structures, unless otherwise specified.

2.03 GROUT

A. Grout for joints between members shall be a cement grout in conformance with Section 03 60 00 – Grout.

B. Minimum compressive strength of grout at 7 days shall be 3,000 psi.

2.04 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Reinforcing steel used for precast concrete construction shall conform to Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel.

2.05 PRESTRESSING STRANDS

A. Prestressing strands shall be 7-wire, stress-relieved, high-strength strands Grade 250K or 270K in conformance with Section 03 23 00 – Stressing Tendons.

2.06 STEEL INSERTS

A. Steel inserts shall be in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials.

B. All steel inserts protruding from or occurring at the surface of precast units shall be galvanized in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing.

2.07 WELDING

A. Welding shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

2.08 BEARING PADS

A. Neoprene bearing pads shall conform to the requirements of A4-F3-T.063-B2, Grade 2, Method B, in accordance with the RMA Rubber Handbook. Pads shall be nonlaminated pads having a nominal Shore A durometer hardness of 70 in accordance with ASTM D2240. Adhesive for use with neoprene pads shall be an epoxy-resin compound compatible with the neoprene having a sufficient shear strength to prevent slippage between pads and adjacent bearing surfaces. Adhesive shall be 20+F Contact Cement by Miracle Adhesives Corporation, Neoprene Adhesive 77-198 by IGI Adhesives, Sikadur 31, Hi-Mod Gel by Sika Corporation, or DP-605 NS Urethane Adhesive by 3M Adhesive Systems.

B. Plastic bearing pads shall be multi-monomer plastic strips which are non-leaching and support construction loads with no visible overall expansion, manufactured specifically for the purpose of bearing precast concrete.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION AND CASTING

A. All precast members shall be fabricated and cast to the shapes, dimensions and lengths shown on the Drawings and in compliance with PCI MNL-116. Precast members shall be straight, true, and free from dimensional distortions, except for camber and tolerances permitted later in this clause. All integral appurtenances, reinforcing, openings, etc., shall be accurately located and secured in position. Form materials shall be steel and the systems free from leakage during the casting operation.

B. Manufacturer shall maintain plant records and quality control program during production of precast members.

C. Ensure reinforcing steel anchors, inserts, plates, angles, and other cast-in items are embedded and located as indicated on shop drawings.

D. Openings with a 10-inch minimum dimension in either direction shall be cast in place. Smaller openings shall be considered in the design and arrangement of reinforcement and strands. These openings may be field cut, but only in the size and location approved by the precast manufacturer.

E. All cover of reinforcing shall be the same as detailed on the Drawings.

F. Because of the critical nature of the bond development length in prestressed concrete panel construction, if the transfer of stress is by burning of the fully tensioned strands at the ends of the member, each strand shall first be burned at the ends of the bed and then at each end of each member before proceeding to the next strand in the burning pattern.

G. The Contractor shall coordinate the communication of all necessary information concerning openings, sleeves, or inserts to the manufacturer of the precast members.

H. Concrete shall be finished in accordance with Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes. Grout all recesses due to cut tendons which will not otherwise be grouted during erection.

I. Curing of precast members shall be in accordance with Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing. Use of a membrane curing compound will not be allowed.

J. The manufacturer shall provide lifting inserts or other approved means of lifting members.

3.02 HANDLING, TRANSPORTING AND STORING

A. Precast members shall not be transported away from the casting yard until the concrete has reached the minimum required 28-day compressive strength and a period of at least 5 days has elapsed since casting.

B. No precast member shall be transported from the plant to the job site prior to approval of that member by the plant inspector. This approval will be stamped on the member by the plant inspector.

C. During handling, transporting, and storing, precast concrete members shall be lifted and supported only at the lifting or supporting points as indicated on the shop drawings.

D. All precast members shall be stored on solid, unyielding, storage blocks in a manner to prevent torsion, objectionable bending, and contact with the ground.

E. Precast concrete members shall not be used as storage areas for other materials or equipment.

F. Precast members damaged while being handled or transported will be rejected or shall be repaired in a manner approved by the Engineer.

3.03 ERECTION

A. Erection shall be carried out by the manufacturer or under the manufacturer's supervision using labor, equipment, tools, and materials required for proper execution of the work.

B. Contractor shall prepare all bearing surfaces to a true and level line prior to erection. All supports of the precast members shall be accurately located and of required size and bearing materials.

C. Installation of the precast members shall be made by leveling the top surface of the assembled units keeping the units tight and at right angles to the bearing surface.

D. Connections which require welding shall be properly made in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

E. Grouting between adjacent precast members and along the edges of the assembled precast members shall be accomplished as indicated on the drawings, care being taken to solidly pack such spaces and to prevent leakage or droppings of grout through the assembled precast members. Any grout which seeps through the precast members shall be removed before it hardens.

F. In no case shall concentrated construction loads, or construction loads exceeding the design loads, be placed on the precast members. In no case shall loads be placed on the precast members prior to the welding operations associated with erection, and prior to placing of topping (if required).

G. No Contractor, Subcontractor or any of their employees shall arbitrarily cut, drill, punch or otherwise tamper with the precast members.

H. Precast members damaged while being erected will be rejected or shall be repaired in a manner approved by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 41 13
PRECAST PRESTRESSED CONCRETE
HOLLOW CORE PLANKS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor, equipment, tools, etc., required for the design, fabrication, delivery and erection of precast, prestressed concrete hollow core planks in accordance with the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of these Specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ACI 423 – Recommendations for Concrete Members Prestressed with Unbonded Tendons

2. PCI Design Handbook

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Quality assurance shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Materials shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete, except as stated below.

B. Minimum compressive strength of concrete at transfer of prestressing force shall be 3,500 psi.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. All units shall be designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of ACI 318 and PCI Design Handbook, prestressed to sustain the superimposed dead and live loads indicated herein, from the Retrofit Roof Framing System design data submitted prior to preparation of the roof plank submittal, and as indicated on the Drawings. Design and subsequent fabrication shall provide for a camber in each unit to eliminate total dead load deflection.

B. Superimposed Roof Loads

1. Dead Loads - Uniform load shall be that resulting from weight of member and weights of insulation material, built-up roofing, ballast, and concrete, as shown on the Drawings.

2. Live Loads - Uniform live load shall be 30 psf unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.

3. Other applicable loads per the North Carolina Building Code and as transferred from the Retrofit Roof Framing system to the Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Plank roof system.

3.02 FABRICATION AND CASTING

A. All hollow core planks shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete.

B. Hollow core plank dimensions shall comply with PCI Design Handbook and as indicated on the Drawings.

C. Curing of hollow core planks shall be equivalent to three days moist curing at 70°F.

D. Unless otherwise noted on the Drawings, permitted dimensional tolerances are as follows:

Length	±1/2"
Width	±1/4" Max.
Depth	±1/4" Max.
Differential Camber Between Adjacent Units	1/4" Max.
Horizontal Alignment	±1/8" per 10' ±1/2" Max.
Location of openings, blockouts, anchors, plates and inserts	±1/2" Max.
Square Ends	±1/8" per 12" of Height

3.03 HANDLING, TRANSPORTING, AND STORING

A. Handling, transporting, and storing shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete.

3.04 ERECTION

A. Erection shall comply with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete.

B. All hollow core planks shall bear on bearing pads at each end.

1. All hollow core planks shall bear on plastic or neoprene bearing pads at each end in accordance with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete. Pads shall be the size shown on the Contract Drawings.

2. Where neoprene pads are shown on the Drawings, hollow core planks shall bear on neoprene bearing pads at each end in accordance with Section 03 40 00 – Precast Concrete. Pads shall be the size shown on the Contract Drawings and shall be adhered to the supporting concrete surface below with an approved adhesive.

C. The top of all hollow core planks which receive concrete topping shall be cleaned of all contaminants and thoroughly wetted just prior to placing the topping.

3.05 ANCHORS FOR ITEMS SUSPENDED FROM PLANKS

A. Anchors for hangers attached to the bottom of hollow core planks shall be designed by the Contractor and coordinated with the hollow core plank manufacturer to support the loads imposed on the anchors.

B. The anchors shall be designed for the forces indicated on the Contract Drawings. Where forces are not indicated, the Contractor shall determine the applied forces.

C. The anchor design for all anchors with applied forces over 400 pounds shall be sealed and signed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State or Commonwealth where the Project is located. All anchor forces and anchor designs shall be submitted to the Engineer for record purposes.

D. Prior to installing anchors, the Contractor shall consult with the manufacturer of the hollow core planks to determine locations of prestressing strands and interior voids in planks. Prestressing strands shall not be cut or damaged under any circumstances.

E. Anchors shall be embedded and installed as directed by the anchor manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 60 00
GROUT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide all grout used in concrete work and as bearing surfaces for base plates, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Requirements of related work are included in Division 01 and Division 02 of these Specifications.

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. CRD-C 621 – Corps of Engineers Specification for Non-shrink Grout
2. ASTM C 33 – Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
3. ASTM C 109 – Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2 inch or 50 mm cube Specimens)
4. ASTM C 531 – Standard Test Method for Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts and Monolithic Surfacings
5. ASTM C 579 – Test Method for Compressive Strength of Chemical-Resistant Mortars and Monolithic Surfacings
6. ASTM C 827 – Standard Test Method for Early Volume Change of Cementitious Mixtures
7. ASTM C 1107 – Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic Cement Grout (Nonshrink)

06272024

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Certified test results verifying the compressive strength and shrinkage and expansion requirements specified herein.

2. Manufacturer's literature containing instructions and recommendations on the mixing, handling, placement, and appropriate uses for each type of grout used in the work.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Field Tests

1. Compression test specimens will be taken during construction from the first placement of each type of grout and at intervals thereafter as selected by the Engineer to ensure continued compliance with these Specifications. The specimens will be made by the Engineer or its representative.

    a. Compression tests and fabrication of specimens for cement grout and non-shrink grout will be performed as specified in ASTM C 109 at intervals during construction as selected by the Engineer. A set of three specimens will be made for testing at seven days, 28 days, and any additional times as appropriate.

    b. Compression tests and fabrication of specimens for epoxy grout will be performed as specified in ASTM C 579, Method B, at intervals during construction as selected by the Engineer. A set of three specimens will be made for testing at seven days and any other time as appropriate.

2. The cost of all laboratory tests on grout will be borne by the Owner, but the Contractor shall assist the Engineer in obtaining specimens for testing. The Contractor shall be charged for the cost of any additional tests and investigation on work performed which does not meet the specifications. The Contractor shall supply all materials necessary for fabricating the test specimens, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3. All grout, already placed, which fails to meet the requirements of these Specifications, is subject to removal and replacement at no additional cost to the Owner.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Cement Grout

1. Cement grout shall be composed of Portland Cement and sand in the proportion specified in the Contract Documents and the minimum amount of water necessary to obtain the desired consistency. If no proportion is indicated, cement grout shall

consist of one-part Portland Cement to three parts sand. Water amount shall be as required to achieve desired consistency without compromising strength requirements. White Portland Cement shall be mixed with the Portland Cement as required to match color of adjacent concrete.

2. The minimum compressive strength at 28 days shall be 4000 psi.

3. For beds thicker than 1-1/2 inch and/or where free passage of grout will not be obstructed by coarse aggregate, 1-1/2 parts of coarse aggregate having a top size of 3/8 inch should be added. This stipulation does not apply for grout being swept in by a mechanism. These applications shall use a plain cement grout without coarse aggregate regardless of bed thickness. Cement grout used for surfaces swept in by a mechanism shall also contain macro-synthetic fibers in accordance with Section 03 30 00.

4. Sand shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C33.

B. Non-Shrink Grout

1. Non-shrink grout shall conform to CRD-C 621 and ASTM C 1107, Grade B or C when tested at a max. fluid consistency of 30 seconds per CDC 611/ASTM C939 at temperature extremes of 45°F and 90°F and an extended working time of 15 minutes. Grout shall have a min. 28-day strength of 7,000 psi. Non-shrink grout shall be, "NS Grout" by the Euclid Chemical Company, "Sikagrout 212" by Sika Corporation, “Conspec 100 Non-Shrink Non-Metallic Grout” by Conspec, “MasterFlow 928” by Master Builders Solutions.

C. Epoxy Grout

1. Epoxy grout shall be "Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod" by Sika Corporation, "Duralcrete LV" by Tamms Industries, or "E3 Series" by Euclid Chemical, “MasterEmaco ADH 1090 RS” by Master Builders Solutions.

2. Epoxy grout shall be modified as required for each application with aggregate per manufacturer's instructions.

D. Epoxy Base Plate Grout

1. Epoxy base plate grout shall be “Sikadur 42, Grout-Pak” by Sika Corporation, or “MasterFlow 648” by Master Builders Solutions.

2.02 CURING MATERIALS

A. Curing materials shall be as specified in Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing for cement grout and as recommended by the manufacturer for prepackaged grouts.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The different types of grout shall be used for the applications stated below unless noted otherwise in the Contract Documents. Where grout is called for in the Contract Documents which does not fall under any of the applications stated below, non-shrink grout shall be used unless another type is specifically referenced.

1. Cement grout shall be used for grout toppings and for patching of fresh concrete, when approved by the Engineer. Grout toppings swept in by equipment mechanisms shall contain macro-synthetic fibers as specified in Section 03 30 00.

2. Non-shrink grout shall be used for grouting beneath base plates of structural metal framing.

3. Epoxy grout shall be used for bonding new concrete to hardened concrete.

4. Epoxy base plate grout shall be used for precision seating of base plates including base plates for all equipment such as engines, mixers, pumps, vibratory and heavy impact machinery, etc.

B. New concrete surfaces to receive cement grout shall be as specified in Section 03 35 00 – Concrete Finishes, and shall be cleaned of all dirt, grease, and oil-like films. Existing concrete surfaces shall likewise be cleaned of all similar contamination and debris, including chipping, or roughening the surface if a laitance or poor concrete is evident. The finish of the grout surface shall match that of the adjacent concrete. Curing and protection of cement grout shall be as specified in Section 03 39 00 – Concrete Curing.

C. All mixing, surface preparation, handling, placing, consolidation, and other means of execution for prepackaged grouts shall be done according to the instructions and recommendations of the manufacturer.

D. The Contractor, through the manufacturer of a non-shrink grout and epoxy grout, shall provide on-site technical assistance upon request, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.02 CONSISTENCY

A. The consistency of grouts shall be that necessary to completely fill the space to be grouted for the application. Dry pack consistency is such that the grout is plastic and moldable but will not flow.

3.03 MEASUREMENT OF INGREDIENTS

A. Measurements for cement grout shall be made accurately by volume using containers. Shovel measurement shall not be allowed.

B. Prepackaged grouts shall have ingredients measured by means recommended by the manufacturer.

3.04 GROUT INSTALLATION

A. Grout shall be placed quickly and continuously, shall completely fill the space to be grouted and be thoroughly compacted and free of air pockets. The grout may be poured in place, pressure grouted by gravity, or pumped. The use of pneumatic pressure or dry-packed grouting requires approval of the Engineer. For grouting beneath base plates, grout shall be placed from one side only and allowed to flow across to the open side to avoid air-entrapment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 05 13
MORTAR AND MASONRY GROUT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment, and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Mortar for unit masonry work.

2. Grout for grouting masonry.

3. Mortar for pointing and touchup.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 04 05 23 – Masonry Accessories

B. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. ASTM C91 – Standard Specification for Masonry Cement

2. ASTM C144 – Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar

3. ASTM C150 – Standard Specification for Portland Cement

4. ASTM C207 – Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes

5. ASTM C270 – Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry

6. ASTM C476 – Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry

7. ASTM C979 – Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete

8. ASTM C1019 – Standard Methods of Sampling and Testing Grout

9. TMS 602 – Specification for Masonry Structures

111122

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's data and mixing instructions for each product.

2. Certificate of compliance with these specifications for each material specified below.

3. Mix Design for Masonry Grout.

4. Test reports.

5. Samples of colored masonry mortar.

1.05 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original containers, bearing labels indicating product and manufacturer's name.

B. Store cementitious materials in waterproof locations to prevent damage by elements. Reject containers showing evidence of damage.

C. Store aggregates in separate bins to prevent intrusion of foreign particles. Do not use bottom 6 inches of sand or other aggregate stored in contact with the ground.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications provide products manufactured by one of the following:

1. LaFarge, Reston, VA

2. Lehigh Cement Company, Allentown, PA

3. Holcim, Inc., Dundee, MI

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Mortar and Grout Materials

1. Materials used in the production of masonry grout shall meet the requirements of specification 03 33 00, Cast – in – Place Concrete, PART 2 – Products, except coarse and fine aggregate shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 404.

2. Hydrated lime: ASTM C-207, Type "S".

3. Sand: Clean, coarse, free of loam, salt, organic and foreign matter and conforming to ASTM C-144.

4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91, Type S and meet the following criteria:

   a. Prepackaged masonry cement shall contain Portland Cement, hydrated lime and plasticizing admixtures or hydraulic hydrated lime. Masonry cements which contain other materials, including ground limestone, ground slag, or other cementitious and non-cementitious materials, are not acceptable.

5. Water - clean, fresh, potable, and free from injurious amounts of oil, acids, alkalis, salts, organic matter or other deleterious substances.

B. Admixtures

1. Do not use calcium chloride.

2. Provide water repellant admixture in mortar used for architectural concrete masonry units. Admixture shall be compatible with ACMU water repellant admixture.

3. Do not use admixtures, without written approval of Engineer.

C. Mortar pigment

1. Natural or synthetic iron oxide and chromium oxides meeting the requirements of ASTM C979.

2. Pigment shall not exceed 10% of the weight of Portland cement. Carbon black shall not exceed 2% of Portland cement.

3. Color shall be selected by the Owner from the manufacturer's full range of colors.

2.03 GROUT AND MORTAR MIXES

A. Masonry mortar shall be Type "S" according to ASTM C-270. Proportions for masonry mortar shall be one of the following:

1. Proportions by volume: 1 part Portland cement to 1/4 - 1/2 parts hydrated lime, and aggregate volume of not less than 2-1/4 or more than 3 times the sum of the volumes of cement and lime.

2. Proportions by volume: 1/2 part Portland cement to 1 part masonry cement, and aggregate volume of not less than 1-1/4 or more than 3 times the sum of the volumes of cement and lime.

B. Proportions for pointing mortar.

1. Proportions by volume: 1 part Portland cement to 1/4 part hydrated lime and 2 parts extra fine sand.

C. Masonry Grout shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 476 and ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, strength of grout, tested in accordance with ASTM C 1019 shall be equal to f'm as specified in Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry, but not less than 2,000 psi.

1. Test grout for every 5,000 square feet of masonry, with a minimum of one test per structure.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FIELD MORTAR MIXING

A. Mixing shall be by mechanically operated batch mixer. Entirely discharge before recharging. Mix sand, lime, cement and admixtures dry for two (2) minutes minimum, add water and mix for three (3) minutes minimum. Control batching procedures by measuring materials by volume. Measurement by shovel count shall not be permitted. Mix mortar with less water than the maximum amount, consistent with workability, to provide near maximum tensile bond strength. Mix only quantity that can be used before initial set, or within the first one-half hour.

B. Mixers, wheel barrows, mortar boards, etc., shall be kept clean.

C. Retempering of mortar will not be permitted and mortar allowed to stand more than one (1) hour shall not be used.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install mortar and grout in accordance with TMS 602.

3.03 REPOINTING MORTAR

A. Prehydrate the mortar by mixing ingredients together dry, and then add only enough water to make a damp, stiff mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. After one to two hours, add water to bring it to the proper consistency.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 05 23
MASONRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Metal joint reinforcement for masonry.

2. Accessories for masonry construction.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout

B. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications, Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. ASTM A1064/1064M – Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete

2. ASTM A153 – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

3. ASTM A 951 – Standard Specification for Steel Wire Masonry Joint Reinforcement

4. ASTM D1056 – Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Extruded Rubber

5. TMS 602 – Specifications for Masonry Structures

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Provide manufacturer's complete product data.

011416

2. Provide manufacturer's certification attesting compliance of material and source of each material specified below.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS FOR MASONRY REINFORCEMENT

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products manufactured by the following:

1. AA Wire Products, Company, Chicago, IL

2. Dur-O-Wal, Inc., Arlington Heights, IL

3. Heckmann Building Products, Inc., Chicago, IL.

4. Holman and Barnard, Inc., Hauppauge, NY.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Multi Wythe Joint Reinforcement

1. Steel ladder type reinforcement conforming to ASTM A 951 with adjustable pintel and eye assembly; 3/16 inch side rods and 9 gauge continuous cross rods; manufactured with wire conforming to ASTM A1064/1064M, with widths 2-inches less than nominal wall thickness. Provide seismic clip with 9 gauge continuous wire.

B. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement

1. Steel ladder type reinforcement conforming to ASTM A 951 with 3/16 inch side rods and 9 gauge continuous cross rods; manufactured with wire conforming to ASTM A1064/1064M, with widths 2-inches less than nominal wall thickness.

C. Anchors: Cast into concrete or weld to steel.

1. Dovetail Slot shall be 1 inch back by 1 inch deep by 5/8 inch throat, 22 gauge, foam filled.

2. Dovetail Anchor - accessory for anchoring triangular flexible tie to dovetail slot, shall be 12 gauge by 1 inch wide 1/2 inch long dovetail section.

3. Wire/Strap Anchor - 1/4 inch wire or 12 gauge x 3/4 inch x length required, welded or mechanically attached to back up structure.

D. Ties

1. Triangular Flexible Tie: 3/16 inch wire, sized to suit application.

2. Adjustable Tie: Pintel and eye full tie; properly sized for application, 3/16 inch cold drawn steel.

E. Seismic Clip and Continuous Wire

1. Seismic clip shall be impact resistant PVC with retaining ridges to accept continuous wire.

2. Continuous wire shall be 9 gauge galvanized steel.

F. Top of Wall Anchor

1. Top of wall anchor shall be a 3/8” diameter rod welded to a 3/16” plate with two anchor holes. Provide a plastic tube to allow vertical deflection.

G. Finish

1. Reinforcements, anchorages and ties shall be hot dipped galvanized, Class B-2, after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A153.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Expansion and Joint Filler Material

1. Closed cell neoprene material conforming to ASTM D 1056, with a minimum compressibility of 50%. Horizontal joint filler shall be 1/4 inch thick. Expansion joints shall be a minimum 3/8" thick.

B. Weep and Vent Holes

1. Cellular vent 3/8” wide by 2 ½" high x 3 5/8” length. CellVent by Mortar Net or equal. Color to closely match mortar.

C. Control Joint

1. Wide flange rapid preformed neoprene or PVC gasket.

D. Hardware Cloth

1. ½-inch hardware cloth.

E. Through Wall Flashing

1. Self-sealing, fully adhering composite flashing consisting of 32 mil rubberized asphalt bonded to an 8 mil cross laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall 40 mil thickness.

2. Provide Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing by W.R. Grace, Flash-Bond by Wire-Bond or Poly-Barrier Wall Flashing by Polytite Manufacturing Corporation.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

A. In masonry wall panels, place horizontal joint reinforcement at a vertical spacing of 16 inches on center, unless otherwise noted.

B. Lap side rods at each end joint a minimum of 6 inches.

C. Install prefabricated corner and tee assemblies at each wall corner and intersection.

D. Mitre and butt end joints are prohibited.

E. Place horizontal joint reinforcement in approximate center of out-to-out wall assembly and assuring a 5/8 inch, minimum, mortar coverage on exterior face and 1/2 inch on interior face.

F. Veneer ties and wire anchors shall be length required to provide a minimum of 1 ½" engagement into the veneer and assuring a 5/8 inch, minimum, mortar coverage on exterior face and 1/2 inch on interior face.

G. Adjustable anchor assemblies may be offset no more than that which is stated in manufacturer's published instructions. Pintles may be installed either up or down.

H. Install horizontal joint reinforcement continuous, terminating only at vertical control joints.

I. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend 24 inches minimum each side of opening.

J. Place joint reinforcement continuous and at 8 inches on center vertically above roof.

K. Place reinforcing bars supported and secured against displacement. Maintain position with ½ inch to true dimension.

L. Coordinate and verify that dowels and anchorages embedded in concrete and attached to structural steel members are properly placed.

M. Provide wall ties for masonry veneer at maximum 16 inches on center vertically and 16 inches on center horizontally. Place at maximum 8 inches on center each way around perimeter of openings, within 12 inches of openings.

N. Masonry adjacent to steel and concrete columns to be attached to the column with masonry anchors at 16 inches on center. Anchors to be attached to each face of the column which is adjacent to a masonry wall, unless otherwise noted.

3.02 DOVETAIL SLOTS AND ANCHORS

A. Provide dovetail slots to concrete contractor for placement into the concrete construction. Dovetail slots shall be placed vertically and spaced 16 inches on center horizontally.

B. Remove slot filler after forms are removed.

C. Hook dovetail anchor into slots and set in masonry joints at 16 inches on center.

3.03 BENDING, CUTTING AND SPLICING REINFORCEMENT

A. Make bends and splices in reinforcement only where indicated, or prior-approval by Engineer. Bend reinforcement only when cold, and prior to any placement in construction, forming around a steel pin of diameter at least 6 times the reinforcement size. Cut bars only by approved sawing, shearing or welding methods. Make ends of reinforcement straight, square, clean and free of defects before splicing. Do not heat or weld bends and splices at points of maximum stress. Clip and bend any tie wires as required to direct the ends away from external surfaces of masonry walls.

B. Where welding is necessary, provide materials and perform welding in accordance with AWS requirements.

C. All lap splices to be 48 bar diameters, unless otherwise noted.

3.04 THROUGH WALL FLASHING

A. Clean areas to receive flashing. Surface shall be free of voids, spalled areas, or sharp protrusions. Concrete surfaces shall be cured a minimum of 7 days.

B. Apply Primer as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Apply flashing in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Sidelaps shall be a minimum of 2½ inches. End laps shall have a 6" minimum lap. Provide end dams at ends of lintels and other interruptions.

D. Seal flashing where vertical reinforcing penetrates flashing with a mastic approved for use by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 20 00
UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment, and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified work.

1. Principal items of work include:

a. Exterior masonry wall construction.

b. Interior masonry wall construction.

c. Installation of masonry reinforcement and accessories.

d. Masonry unit lintels.

e. Installing dampproofing, insulation, flashing and work required to be built into masonry work.

f. Building into masonry work all anchors, inserts, hangers, and other appurtenances provided under other Sections.

g. Pointing and cleaning of exposed masonry surfaces.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

B. Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout

C. Section 04 05 23 – Masonry Accessories

D. Section 07 21 00 – Building Insulation

E. Section 07 60 00 – Flashing and Sheet Metal

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. TMS 402 – Building Code Requirements for Masonry Structures

2. TMS 602 – Specifications for Masonry Structures

a. TMS 602 shall be considered minimum specifications for all materials, workmanship, methods, and techniques for all masonry work.

b. Obtain a copy of the above Specifications prior to beginning any work in this Section.

3. ASTM C62 – Standard Specification for Building Brick

4. ASTM C90 – Standard Specification for Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units

5. ASTM C140 – Standard Methods for Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units

6. ASTM C216 – Standard Specification for Facing Brick

7. ASTM C744 – Standard Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units

8. ANSI A41.1 R70 – Code Requirements for Masonry

1.04 TESTING

A. Tests

1. The Owner reserves the right to test materials for compliance with these specifications. Sampling and testing will be done in accordance with the ASTM standard, by an independent testing agency employed by the Owner. Materials that fail to meet requirements are considered defective. Subsequent tests to establish compliance (of the same or new materials) shall be paid for by the Contractor.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Samples of each material to be used showing full range of colors.

2. Manufacturer's specifications and certifications of compliance to the Specifications, including results of tests on masonry units showing such compliance, for each type of masonry. Provide handling, storage, and installation instructions along with protection instructions. Indicate by transmittal that installer has received copies of each instruction.

3. Detailed placing and shop fabricating drawings, prepared in accordance with ACI 315 and ACI Detailing Manual - (SP66), shall be furnished for all deformed bar reinforcing. These drawings shall be made to such a scale as to clearly show joint locations, openings, and the arrangement, locations, spacing and splicing of the bars.

4. Cold and/or hot weather construction procedures in accordance with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 sections 2.3.2.2. and 2.3.2.3.

5. Cleaning procedures and cleaner for each masonry type.

1.06 MOCK-UPS

A. Build mock-ups at the site, where directed, full thickness and approximately 4 feet x 4 feet, indicating the proposed color range, texture, and workmanship for each type of masonry. Obtain Engineer's acceptance of visual qualities of the mock-up before start of masonry work. Do not alter, move, or destroy mock-ups until Work is completed and removal is directed by the Engineer.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in the manufacturer's original unbroken, undamaged, and unopened packaging with labels bearing the name of the manufacturer and the product. Masonry units and brick shall be factory packaged and strapped, delivered to the site and stored on skids.

B. Store and handle materials to prevent inclusion of water or foreign matter and to prevent damage of any nature.

C. Distribute materials on floor slabs to prevent overloading. Designated live loads shown for floor shall not be exceeded.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Provide special shape, type or size indicated or for application requiring a form, size or finish which cannot be produced from standard masonry units by sawing. Provide solid units where masonry unit is exposed.

B. Masonry units for fire-rated walls shall comply with Underwriter's Laboratory requirements for fire rating shown on the Drawings.

C. Deformed bar reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of specification 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Mortar

1. In accordance with Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout

B. Concrete Masonry Units

1. Provide units conforming to ACI 530.1 unless otherwise specified.

2. Provide light weight units meeting the requirements of ASTM C90 for hollow and solid load bearing CMU.

3. Manufacture units of Portland Cement, conforming to ASTM C-150 and light weight aggregate conforming to ASTM C331 and ASTM C33. Weight of unit shall not exceed 105 lb. per cu. ft. when measured in accordance with provisions of ASTM C140. Units shall be nominally 8 inches x 16 inches x thicknesses shown or as required. Masonry units shall be manufactured not less than 30 days prior to being used and stored under cover until shipment. All units shall have true, sharp edges and corners, free from cracks or other defects. Provide half special sizes and shapes as required by the Drawings or to meet job conditions.

4. Net area compressive strength of concrete masonry units shall be a minimum of 2,000 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM C140. Compressive strength of masonry (f'm) shall be a minimum of 2,000 psi in accordance with ACI 530.1 when these units are used with the mortar specified in Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout.

C. Concrete Masonry Lintels

1. Specially formed units with reinforcing bars and grout fill provided where shown and wherever openings in masonry are indicated without structural steel or other supporting lintels.

D. Insulated Block System

1. Pre-Insulated specially formed masonry units with individually molded insulation. Units shaped to reduce cross-web thermal conductance. CMU and Insulation shall be configured to provide a near continuous insulated plane within wall.

    a. Provide light weight units conforming to ASTM C90. Weight of unit shall not exceed 105 lb. per cu. ft. when measured in accordance with provisions of ASTM C140.

    b. Individually molded expandable polystyrene, conforming to ASTM C578.

    c. Reinforced insulated block system wall thermal resistance shall be R-10, minimum.

    d. Exterior finish shall be split faced and ground face. Color to be throughout the block. Interior finish to be the same color as the exterior finish.

    e. Provide units with integral water repellant admixture. Absorption shall not exceed 10 lbs per cubic foot.

f. Color shall be selected from manufacturer full range of colors. This includes any premium colors and finishes. Up to two colors shall be selected.

g. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1) Korfil Hi-R Masonry Wall System, by Concrete Block Insulating Systems, West Brookfield, MA.

2) Omni Block Insulated Concrete Block, by Omni Block, Las Vegas, NV.

3) Johnson Concrete Products, 106 Old Davidson Place NW, Concord, NC.

4) Or Approved Equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Examine areas and conditions under which masonry is to be installed and notify the Engineer in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Do not wet concrete masonry units.

C. Brick having absorption rates in excess of 0.025 oz. per square inch per minute (as determined per ASTM C 67) shall be wetted sufficiently so that the rate of absorption, when brick is laid, does not exceed this amount.

D. Clean reinforcing, removing loose rust, ice, or other coatings from bars, before placement.

E. Thickness of cavity and composite walls, and other masonry construction shall be the full thickness shown. Build single wythe walls to the actual size of masonry units.

F. Build chases and recesses as shown and as required for the work of other trades.

G. Build other work into masonry work as shown, fitting masonry units around other work and grouting to assure anchorage.

H. Cut masonry units with motor driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide pattern shown or specified, and to fit adjoining work neatly.

I. Cold and hot weather construction.

1. No masonry shall be erected when ambient temperature has dropped below 45°F unless it is rising and at no time when it has dropped below 40°F. Provisions shall be made for heating and drying of materials, and the complete work shall be protected in accordance with the ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 Section 2.3.2.2. Masonry shall not be laid with ice or frost on its surfaces, and no masonry shall be laid on frozen work. Any work which freezes before the mortar has set shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's own expense. Do not use any admixtures or antifreeze in the mortar.

2. When the temperature is above 100°F or 90°F with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph, mortar beds shall be spread no more than 4 feet ahead of masonry and masonry units shall be set within one minute of spreading mortar.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Variation from plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of columns, walls and arises do not exceed 1/4" in 10', or 3/8" in a story height not to exceed 20', nor 1/2" in 40' or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4" in any story or 20' maximum, nor 1/2" in 40' or more. For vertical alignment of head joints do not exceed plus or minus 1/4" in 10', 1/2" maximum.

B. Variation from level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines do not exceed 1/4" in any bay or 20' maximum, nor 1/2" in 40' or more. For top surface of bearing walls do not exceed 1/8" between adjacent floor elements in 10' or 1/16" within width of a single unit.

C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown on plan and related portion of columns, walls, and partitions, do not exceed 1/2" in any bay or 20' maximum, nor 3/4" in 40' or more.

D. Variation in Cross Sectional Dimensions: For columns and thickness of walls, from dimensions shown, do not exceed minus 1/4" nor plus 1/2".

E. Variation in Mortar Joint Thickness: Do not exceed bed joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8", with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2". Do not exceed head joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8".

3.03 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Layout walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns, with uniform joint widths and to properly locate openings, movement-type joints, returns and offsets. Avoid the use of less-than-half size units at corners, jambs, and wherever possible at other locations.

B. Lay-up walls to comply with specified construction tolerances, with courses accurately spaced and coordinated with other work.

C. Pattern Bond: Lay exposed masonry in the bond pattern shown or, if not shown, lay in running bond with vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below.

D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Rack back 1/2 unit length in each course; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet units lightly, and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh mortar.

E. Cover top of walls at the end of each day. Protect wall from water infiltration from the top until wall is capped.

F. Built-In Work: As work progresses, build-in items specified under this and other sections of these Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

1. Fill space between hollow metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of hardware cloth in the joint below and rod grout into core.

3. Fill cores in hollow masonry units with grout 3 courses (24") under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts and similar items, unless otherwise noted.

4. Seal masonry tight around wall penetrations such as beams, joists, pipes, ducts, and conduit by cutting masonry units to fit as tightly as possible, then closing final gap all around with mortar, or joint filler and caulking as necessary.

3.04 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay solid masonry units with filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not slush head joints.

B. Lay hollow concrete masonry units with full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells; also bed webs with mortar in starting courses on footing or floors, and where adjacent cells are to be reinforced or filled with grout. For starting courses where cells are not grouted, spread full mortar bed including areas under cells.

C. Maintain joint widths of 3/8", except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment.

D. Tooling: Joints shall be tooled to a uniform concave joint. Head joints first and then the bed joints.

E. Remove masonry units disturbed after laying; clean and reset in fresh mortar. Do not pound corners and jambs to shift adjacent stretcher units which have been set in position. If adjustments are required, remove units, clean, and reset in fresh mortar.

3.05 JOINT REINFORCING

A. Use continuous horizontal joint reinforcement installed in horizontal mortar joints not more than 16" o.c. vertically.

B. Parapets: Use continuous horizontal joint reinforcement installed in horizontal joints at 8" o.c. vertically.

C. Reinforced masonry openings greater than 12" wide, with horizontal joint reinforcing placed in 2 horizontal joints immediately above the lintel and immediately below the sill. Extend reinforcements 2'-0" beyond jambs of the opening except at control joints.

D. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by use of prefabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend reinforcement units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, pipe enclosures and other special conditions.

F. Intersecting Load-bearing Walls: Provide rigid steel anchors at not more than 2'-0" o.c vertically. Embed ends in mortar-filled cores.

G. Non-loadbearing Interior Partitions: Build full height of story to underside of solid floor or structure above, unless shown otherwise. Fill joint with mortar after dead load deflection of structure above approaches final position.

3.06 CAVITY WALLS

A. Keep cavity clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Strike joints facing cavity, flush.

B. Tie exterior wythe to back-up wythe of masonry with horizontal joint reinforcement at 16" o.c. vertically.

C. Coordinate placement of dampproofing and insulation board with work to ensure there are no gaps or air spaces between pieces of insulation board.

D. Weep joints shall be placed in exterior wythe of cavity wall, spaced a maximum of 32" o.c. horizontally, immediately above ledges, at lintels over openings, and as shown.

3.07 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Provide vertical and horizontal expansion, control and isolation joints in masonry where shown. Build-in related items as the masonry work progresses.

3.08 LINTELS

A. Install galvanized steel lintels where indicated.

B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and wherever openings of more than 8" for brick size units and 1'-4" for block size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels. Provide precast or poured-in-place masonry lintels. Cure precast lintels before handling and installation. Temporarily support formed-in-place lintels.

C. For hollow concrete masonry unit walls, use specially formed "U"-shaped lintel units with reinforcement bars placed as shown and filled with grout.

D. Provide minimum bearing of 8" at each jamb.

3.09 FLASHING

A. Provide flashing as shown and as specified in Section 07 60 00 – Flashing and Sheet Metal.

3.10 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

A. Vertical reinforcement shall be held in place by means of frames or other suitable means. Place horizontal joint reinforcement as masonry work progresses. Provide minimum clear distance between longitudinal bars equal to nominal diameter of bar. Minimum thickness of mortar or grout between masonry and reinforcement shall be 1/4", except 6 gage or smaller wires may be laid in 3/8" mortar joints. Collar joints which contain both horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall have a minimum width of 1/2" larger than the diameter of the horizontal and vertical reinforcement.

B. Bar splices shall be contact lap splices. Length of splice shall be as shown on Structural Drawings.

C. Low lift grouting shall be used when grout space is less than 2" in width. Place grout at maximum intervals of 24" in lifts of 6 to 8 inches as the work progresses. Cores to be grouted shall be clean of mortar, mortar dropping and debris. Agitate grout to assure complete filling and coverage of reinforcement. Hold grout 1-1/2 inches below to top of masonry if work is discontinued for more than an hour.

D. High lift grouting may be used when the grout space is greater than 2". Grout shall not be placed in lifts greater than 4 feet. Grout core shall be kept clean of mortar, mortar dripping and debris. Provide cleanout holes as required for inspection and cleaning. Replace cleanout plugs after inspection and acceptance. Place grout in accordance with TMS 402 and TMS 602. Hold grout 1-1/2 inches below top of masonry if work is discontinued for more than an hour.

E. Forms and shoring shall be substantial and tight to prevent leakage of mortar or grout. Brace and shore forms to maintain position and shape. Do not remove forms or shoring until masonry gains enough strength to sufficiently carry its own weight and any other loads, temporary or permanent, placed on it during construction.

3.11 PROTECTION OF WORK

A. Exposed masonry surfaces shall be protected from staining. Tops of wall shall be covered with nonstaining waterproof coverings when work is not in progress. Installed material shall be secure in high winds.

B. Protection shall be provided for all openings in the walls to prevent damage to sills, jambs, etc., from all causes. Aluminum or steel frames and other finish materials shall be protected from damage during masonry work.

3.12 REPAIR, POINTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units which are loose, chipped, broken, stained or otherwise damaged, or if units do not match adjoining units as intended. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install fresh mortar or grout, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing of Masonry: At the completion of the masonry work, all holes in exposed masonry shall be pointed. Defective joints shall be cut out and tuckpointed solidly with mortar. Pointing and tuckpointing shall be done with a pre-hydrated mortar. The mortar cement shall be controlled so that, after curing of the mortar, no difference in texture or color exists with that of adjacent masonry.

C. Masonry Cleaning: While laying masonry units, good workmanship and job housekeeping practices shall be used to minimize the need for cleaning the masonry work. Protect the base of the wall from mud splashes and mortar droppings. The technique for laying masonry shall be such that mortar does not run down the face of the wall or smear onto the face.

1. After the joints are tooled, cut off mortar failings with the trowel and brush excess mortar burrs and dust from the face of the masonry, use a bricklayer's brush made with medium soft hair.

2. Remove all large mortar particles with a hardwood scraper.

3. If, after using the above outlined techniques, additional cleaning of the walls is found necessary, allow the walls to cure one month prior to initiating further cleaning processes.

D. Clean masonry to comply with the masonry manufacturer's directions and applicable NCMA "Tek" bulletins or BIA technical notes and the following requirements.

1. Saturate the wall with clean water. The wall shall be thoroughly saturated prior to and at the time the cleaning solution is applied.

2. Clean masonry with an approved cleaning solution for each type of masonry applied with a brush, starting at the top of the wall. Approved cleaners shall be composed primarily of detergents, wetting agents, buffering agents, and a

maximum of 10% muriatic acid. Do not use acids on masonry surfaces that will be damaged by use of an acid cleaner. The use of any of the above cleaning agents shall first be approved in writing by the manufacturer of the masonry being cleaned and the Engineer. The concentration, method of application of the cleaning solution, and method of scraping shall be as outlined on the container by the manufacturer.

3. High pressure water and sandblasting shall not be used for cleaning except with the recommendation of the masonry manufacturer and the written approval of the Engineer.

4. Immediately after cleaning a small area, the wall shall be rinsed thoroughly with quantities of water.

5. Protect adjacent surfaces and materials during masonry cleaning operations.

6. After the walls are cleaned, take the necessary precautions to ensure that other contractors and subcontractors do not damage or soil the walls. Mud protection around the base of walls shall be left in place until the grading work is done.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 05 13
GALVANIZING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Where galvanizing is called for in the Contract Documents, the galvanizing shall be performed in accordance with the provisions of this Section unless otherwise noted.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Further requirements for galvanizing specific items may be included in other Sections of the Specifications. See section for the specific item in question.

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. ASTM A123 – Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Galvanized) Coatings on Products Fabricated from Rolled, Pressed, and Forged Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars, and Strip

3. ASTM A153 – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

4. ASTM A653 – Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized), or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

5. ASTM A924 – Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process

6. ASTM A780 – Standard Practice of Repair of Damaged Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

7. ASTM F2329 – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating, Hot-Dip, Requirements for Application to Carbon and Alloy Steel Bolts, Screws, Washers, Nuts, and Special Threaded Fasteners

090817

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Certification that the item(s) are galvanized in accordance with the applicable ASTM standards specified herein. This certification may be included as part of any material certification that may be required by other Sections of the Specifications.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GALVANIC COATING

A. Material composition of the galvanic coating shall be in accordance with the applicable ASTM standards specified herein.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATED PRODUCTS

A. Products fabricated from rolled, pressed, and forged steel shapes, plates, bars, and strips, 1/8 inch thick and heavier which are to be galvanized shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123. Products shall be fabricated into the largest unit which is practicable to galvanize before the galvanizing is done. Fabrication shall include all operations necessary to complete the unit such as shearing, cutting, punching, forming, drilling, milling, bending, and welding. Components of bolted or riveted assemblies shall be galvanized separately before assembly. When it is necessary to straighten any sections after galvanizing, such work shall be performed without damage to the zinc coating. The galvanizer shall be a member of American Galvanizers Association.

B. Components with partial surface finishes shall be commercial blast cleaned prior to pickling.

C. Sampling and testing of each lot shall be performed prior to shipment from the galvanizer's facility per ASTM A123.

3.02 HARDWARE

A. Iron and steel hardware which is to be galvanized shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153 and ASTM F2329.

3.03 ASSEMBLED PRODUCTS

A. Assembled steel products which are to be galvanized shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123. All edges of tightly contacting surfaces shall be completely sealed by welding before galvanizing.

B. Assemblies shall be provided with vent and drain holes as required by the fabricator. Vent and drain hole sizes and locations shall be included in the structural steel shop drawings required in Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel for approval. All vent and drain holes shall be plugged and finished to be flush with and blend in with the surrounding

surface. Where water intrusion can occur, the plug shall be carefully melted into the surrounding zinc coating using an appropriate fluxing agent.

3.04 METAL DECK

A. Unless noted otherwise, metal deck shall be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653 G60 minimum. In moist environments or as indicated on the Contract Drawings, galvanizing shall meet the requirements of ASTM A653 G90.

B. Galvanized metal deck shall meet the requirements of ASTM A924.

3.05 REPAIR OF GALVANIZING

A. Galvanized surfaces that are abraded or damaged at any time after the application of zinc coating shall be repaired by thoroughly wire brushing the damaged areas and removing all loose and cracked coating, after which the cleaned areas shall be painted with 2 coats of zinc rich paint meeting the requirements of Federal Specification DOD-P-21035A and shall be thoroughly mixed prior to application. Zinc rich paint shall not be tinted. The total thickness of the 2 coats shall not be less than 6 mils. In lieu of repairing by painting with zinc rich paint, other methods of repairing galvanized surfaces in accordance with ASTM A780 may be used provided the proposed method is acceptable to the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 05 23
METAL FASTENING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide all metal welds and fasteners not otherwise specified, in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

B. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

C. Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel

1.3 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. AC 193 – Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements

3. AC 308 – Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements

4. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

5. ACI 355.2 – Qualifications of Post-Installed Mechanical Anchors in Concrete

6. ACI 355.4 – Qualifications of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete

7. AISC – RCSC Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts

8. AISC – Code of Standard Practice

072324

9. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code – Steel

10. AWS D1.2 – Structural Welding Code – Aluminum

11. AWS D1.6 – Structural Welding Code – Stainless Steel

12. Aluminum Association – Specifications for Aluminum Structures

13. ASTM A572/A572M-94C – Standard Specification for High Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel Grade 50

14. ASTM A36 – Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

15. ASTM A489 – Standard Specification for Eyebolts

16. ASTM A563 – Standard Specifications for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

17. ASTM D1785 – Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Pipe

18. ASTM E3121 – Standard Test Methods for Field Testing of Anchors in Concrete or Masonry

19. ASTM F436 – Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers

20. ASTM F467 – Standard Specification for Nonferrous Nuts for General Use

21. ASTM F593 – Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bolts; Hex Cap Screws, and Studs

22. ASTM F594 – Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Nuts

23. ASTM F1554 – Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

24. ASTM F3125 – Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch and Metric Dimension

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Shop Drawings providing the fastener's manufacturer and type and certification of the fastener's material and capacity.

2. Anchor design calculations sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina. Only required if design not shown on Contract Drawings.

3. A current Evaluation Report shall be submitted for all anchors that will be considered for use on this project.

4. Manufacturer’s installation instructions.

5. Copy of valid certification for each person who is to perform field welding.

6. Certified weld inspection reports, when required.

7. Welding procedures.

8. Installer qualifications.

9. Certification of Installer Training.

10. Inspection Reports.

11. Results of Anchor Proof Testing.

12. Manufacturer's Literature for Resistance of Adhesive to Appropriate Chemical Exposure, where deemed necessary.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fasteners not manufactured in the United States shall be tested and certification provided with respect to specified quality and strength standards. Certifications of origin shall be submitted for all U.S. fasteners supplied on the project.

B. Evaluation Report: A current Evaluation Report from an independent testing and evaluation agency (ITEA) shall be submitted for all anchors that will be used on this project. The ITEA producing the evaluation report shall be accredited in accordance with the requirements for ITEA's in ACI 355.2 (mechanical anchors) or 355.4 (adhesive anchors). Acceptable ITEA's include but are not necessarily limited to the International Code Council Evaluation Service (ICC-ES) and the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials Uniform Evaluation Service (IAPMO-UES).

C. Installer Qualifications: All concrete anchors shall be installed by an Installer with at least three years of experience performing similar installations. Concrete adhesive anchor installers for anchor installations shall be certified as an Adhesive Anchor Installer in accordance with ACI-CRSI Adhesive Anchor Installation Certification Program.

D. Installer Training: For concrete anchors, conduct a thorough training with the manufacturer or the manufacturer's representative for the Installer on the project. Training shall consist of a review of the complete installation process to include but not be limited to the following:

1. Hole drilling procedure.

2. Hole preparation and cleaning technique.

3. Adhesive injection technique and dispenser training/maintenance.

4. Concrete adhesive anchor preparation and installation.

5. Proof loading/torquing.

6. Provide a list of names of all installers who are trained by the Manufacturer's Field Representative on this jobsite prior to installation of products. Record must include the installer name, date of training, products included in the training and trainer name and contact information.

7. Provide a copy of the current ACI/CRSI "Adhesive Anchor Installer" certification cards for all installers.

E. All steel welding shall be performed by welders certified in accordance with AWS D1.1. All aluminum welding shall be performed by welders certified in accordance with AWS D1.2. All stainless-steel welding shall be performed by welders certified in accordance with AWS D1.6. Certifications of field welders shall be submitted prior to performing any field welds.

F. Welds and high strength bolts used in connections of structural steel will be visually inspected in accordance with Article 3.04.

G. The Owner may engage an independent testing agency to perform testing of welded connections and to prepare test reports in accordance with AWS. Inadequate welds shall be corrected or redone and retested to the satisfaction of the Engineer and/or an acceptable independent testing laboratory, at no additional cost to the Owner.

H. Provide a welding procedure for each type and thickness of weld. For welds that are not prequalified, include a Performance Qualification Report. The welding procedure shall be given to each welder performing the weld. The welding procedure shall follow the format in Annex E of AWS D1.1 with relevant information presented.

I. Special inspections for concrete adhesive anchors shall be conducted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Section 01 45 33 – Special Inspections. Downward installations require periodic inspection and horizontal and overhead installations require continuous inspection.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 ANCHOR RODS

A. Anchor rods shall conform to ASTM F1554 Grade 55 except where stainless steel or other approved anchor rods are shown on the Drawings or stated herein. Anchor rods shall have hexagonal heads and shall be supplied with hexagonal nuts meeting the requirements of ASTM A563 Grade A. Washers shall meet the requirements of ASTM A436.

B. All anchors into concrete shall be cast-in-place anchors unless specifically referenced otherwise on Drawings.

C. Where anchor rods are used to anchor galvanized steel or are otherwise specified to be galvanized, anchor rods and nuts shall be hot dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM F1554.

D. Where pipe sleeves around anchor rods are shown on the Drawings, pipe sleeves shall be cut from Schedule 40 PVC plastic piping meeting the requirements of ASTM D1785.

2.2 HIGH STRENGTH BOLTS

A. High strength bolts and associated nuts and washers shall be in accordance with ASTM F3125, Grade A325 Type 1 or Grade F1852 Type 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers shall meet the requirements of RCSC “Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts”.

B. Where high strength bolts are used to connect galvanized steel or are otherwise specified to be galvanized, bolts, nuts, and washers shall be hot dipped galvanized in accordance with ASTM A325.

2.3 STAINLESS STEEL BOLTS

A. Stainless steel bolts shall conform to ASTM F-593 for alloy groups 1 and 2, Condition CW1, or ASTM F-3125. All fasteners for aluminum and stainless steel members that are underwater, in confined areas containing fluid, and in corrosive environments shall be Type 316 stainless steel unless noted otherwise. Fasteners for aluminum and stainless-steel members not subject to the above conditions shall be Type 304 stainless steel unless otherwise noted.

B. Stainless steel bolts shall have hexagonal heads with a raised letter or symbol on the bolts indicating the manufacturer and shall be supplied with hexagonal nuts meeting the requirements of ASTM F594. Nuts, washers, and lock washers shall be of the same alloy as the bolts.

2.4 CONCRETE ANCHORS

A. General

1. Where concrete anchors are called for on the Drawings, one of the types listed below shall be used. Where one of the types listed below is specifically called for on the Drawings, only that type shall be used. If no specific type is indicated on the Drawings, the concrete anchor shall be a cast-in-place anchor. The determination of anchors equivalent to those listed below shall be based on test data performed by an approved independent testing laboratory. Two types of anchors shall be used:

    a. Mechanical anchors include any of the following anchors:

        1) Expansion anchors shall be mechanical anchors of the wedge, sleeve, or drop-in type that are set by expanding against the sides of the drilled hole.

2) Screw anchors are mechanical anchors that derive tensile holding strength by the mechanical interlock provided by threads cutting into the concrete during installation. Screw anchors shall be one-piece, heavy duty screw anchors with a finished head.

b. Adhesive anchors shall consist of threaded rods anchored with an adhesive system into hardened concrete. Adhesive anchors shall be two-part injection type using the manufacturer's static mixing nozzle and shall be supplied as an entire system.

2. Adhesive anchors shall conform to the requirements of ACI 355.4 or alternately to AC 308. Mechanical anchors shall conform to the requirements of ACI 355.2 or alternately to AC 193. Anchors in Seismic Design Categories C through F shall conform to the International Building Code and ACI 318 Chapter 17 requirements as applicable, including seismic test requirements.

3. Fire Resistance: All anchors installed within fire resistant construction shall either be enclosed in a fire-resistant envelope, be protected by approved fire-resistive materials, be used to resist wind and earthquake loads only, or be only as anchors for non-structural elements.

4. Engineer's approval is required for use of concrete anchors in locations other than those shown on the Drawings.

B. Wedge Anchors:

a. Do not use when subjected to vibration.

b. Do not use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Do not use in submerged, intermittently submerged, or buried locations.

d. Suitable for use in overhead applications.

C. Screw Anchors:

a. Do not use when subjected to vibration.

b. Do not use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Do not use in submerged, intermittently submerged, or buried locations.

d. Suitable for use in overhead applications.

D. Sleeve Anchors:

a. Do not use when subjected to vibration.

b. Do not use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Do not use in submerged, intermittently submerged, or buried locations.

d. Suitable for use in overhead applications.

E. Undercut Anchors:

a. Suitable for use where subjected to vibration.

b. Do not use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Do not use in submerged, intermittently submerged, or buried locations.

d. Suitable for use in overhead applications.

F. Adhesive Anchors in Concrete:

a. Suitable for use where subjected to vibration.

b. Suitable for use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Suitable for use in submerged, intermittently submerged, or buried locations.

d. Do not use in overhead applications, unless otherwise shown or approved by Engineer.

e. Suitable for use in chemical areas provided manufacturer's literature confirms appropriate chemical resistance.

f. Do not use for pipe hangers, unless otherwise shown or approved by Engineer.

G. Adhesive Anchors in Masonry (where cells have been fully grouted)

a. Suitable for use where subjected to vibration.

b. Suitable for use in exterior locations or locations subjected to freezing.

c. Do not use for pipe hangers, unless otherwise shown or approved by Engineer.

d. Suitable for use in precast hollow core planks provided cores have been fully grouted.

H. Concrete Anchor Design:

1. Basis of design shall include the following design parameters:

a. Actual compressive strength of concrete.

b. Cracked concrete conditions.

c. Dry or water saturated installation conditions.

d. Base material temperature between 40- and 104-degrees Fahrenheit.

e. Installation with hammer drill or hollow-drill bit system drilling methods.

f. Installation not prior to 21-day minimum age of concrete.

2. An anchor design consists of specifying anchor size, quantity, spacing, edge distance and embedment to resist all applicable loads. Where an anchor design is indicated on the Drawings, the anchors shall be installed to the prescribed size, spacing, embedment depth, and edge distance. If all parts of an anchor design are provided on the Drawings except embedment depth, the Contractor shall provide the embedment depth as indicated in Paragraph B.3 unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Where an anchor design is not indicated on the Drawings, the Contractor shall provide the anchor design per the requirements listed below.

a. The Contractor shall submit design with sealed calculations and drawings performed by an Engineer currently registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. Anchors shall be of a type recommended by the anchor manufacturer for use in cracked concrete and shall be designed by the Contractor in accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 17.

b. Embedment Depth

1) Minimum anchor embedment shall be as indicated on the Drawings unless anchor design is stipulated to be by Contractor or equipment provider. The provider of equipment including pumps, blowers, etc. shall provide anchor design including size of anchors, pattern, and embedment depth. If the equipment provider is unable to provide design of embedment depth, the design shall be provided by the contractor using the loads furnished by the equipment provider. Although all manufacturers listed are permitted, the embedment depth indicated on the Drawings is based on “Set -3G by Simpson” ESR 4057 issued 4/2024. **Engineer to indicate product design is based on ** If the contractor submits one of the other concrete adhesive anchors listed, the Engineer shall evaluate the required embedment and the Contractor shall provide the required embedment depth stipulated by the Engineer specific to the approved dowel adhesive.

2) Where the embedment depth is not shown on the Drawings, concrete anchors shall be embedded no less than the manufacturer’s standard embedment (mechanical anchors) or to provide a minimum allowable bond strength equal to the allowable yield capacity of the rod according to the manufacturer (adhesive anchors).

3) The embedment depth shall be determined using the actual concrete compressive strength, a cracked concrete state, maximum long-term

temperature of 110 degrees F, and maximum short-term temperature of 140 degrees F. In no case shall the embedment depth be less than the minimum or more than the maximum stated in the manufacturer's literature.

I. Anchors:

1. Mechanical Anchors:

a. Wedge Anchors: Wedge anchors shall be "Kwik Bolt TZ" by Hilti, Inc., "Strong-Bolt 2" by Simpson Strong-Tie Co. or "Power-Stud+SD1" or "Power-Stud+ SD-2" by DeWalt.

b. Screw Anchors: Screw anchors shall be "KWIK HUS-EZ", "KWIK HUS-EZ-I", or "KWIK HUS-EZ CRC" by Hilti, Inc., "Titen HD" or "Stainless Steel Titen HD" by Simpson Strong-Tie Co., or "Screw-Bolt+" by DeWalt.

c. Sleeve Anchors: Sleeve anchors shall be "HSL-3 Heavy Duty Sleeve Anchor" by Hilti, Inc. or "Power-Bolt +" by DeWalt.

d. Shallow Embedment Internally Threaded Insert (3/4" max embedment): "Mini-Undercut +Anchor" by DeWalt, "HDI-P-TZ" by Hilti, Inc. or approved equal.

e. Concrete Undercut Anchors: Concrete undercut anchors shall be "HDA Undercut Anchors" by Hilti, Inc, "DUC Ductile Undercut Anchor", by USP Structural Connectors, or approved equal.

f. Mechanical anchor systems shall comply with ACI 355.2 or alternatively the latest revision of AC 193 and shall have a valid evaluation report in accordance with the applicable building code.

2. Adhesive Anchors:

a. Adhesive anchors shall be "HIT HY-200 Adhesive Anchoring System" by Hilti, Inc., "SET-3G Epoxy Adhesive Anchors" by Simpson Strong-Tie Co., or "Pure 110+ Epoxy Adhesive Anchor System" by DeWalt.

b. Adhesive anchor systems shall be IBC compliant and capable of resisting short term wind and seismic loads (Seismic Design Categories A through F) as well as long term and short term sustained static loads in both cracked and uncracked concrete in all Seismic Design Categories. Adhesive anchor systems shall comply with ACI 355.4 or alternatively the latest revision of AC308 and shall have a valid evaluation report in accordance with the applicable building code. **No or equal products will be considered unless prequalified and approved by the Engineer and Owner**.

J. Concrete Anchor Materials:

1. Concrete anchors used to anchor structural steel shall be a threaded steel rod per anchor manufacturer's recommendations but shall not have a yield strength (fy) less than 58 ksi nor an ultimate strength (fu) less than 72.5 ksi, unless noted otherwise. Where steel to be anchored is galvanized, concrete anchors shall also be galvanized unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

2. Concrete anchors used to anchor aluminum, FRP, or stainless steel shall be manufactured from stainless steel unless noted otherwise. All underwater fasteners, fasteners in confined areas containing fluid, and fasteners in corrosive environments shall be Type 316 stainless steel unless noted otherwise. Fasteners for aluminum and stainless-steel members not subject to the above conditions shall be Type 304 stainless steel unless otherwise noted.

3. Nuts, washers, lock washers and other hardware shall be of a material to match the anchors.

2.5 MASONRY ANCHORS

A. Adhesive anchors for fastening to solid or grout-filled masonry shall be anchors consisting of threaded rods anchored with an adhesive system. The adhesive system shall be "HIT HY-270 System" as manufactured by Hilti, Inc., "AC100+ Acrylic Adhesive" by DeWalt, or "SET-3G" as manufactured by Simpson Strong-Tie Co.

B. Adhesive anchors for fastening to hollow masonry or brick shall be adhesive anchors consisting of threaded rods anchored with an adhesive system dispensed into a screen tube inserted into the masonry. The adhesive system shall use a two-component adhesive mix and shall inject into the screen tube with a static mixing nozzle. Thoroughly clean drill holes of all debris and drill dust prior to installation of adhesive and anchor. Contractor shall follow manufacturer's installation instructions. The adhesive system shall be "HIT HY-270 System" as manufactured by Hilti, Inc., "AC100+ Acrylic Adhesive" by DeWalt, or "SET-3G" as manufactured by Simpson Strong-Tie Co.

C. Masonry anchors used to anchor steel shall be a threaded steel rod per manufacturer's recommendations for proposed adhesive system but shall not have a yield strength (fy) less than 58 ksi nor an ultimate strength (fu) less than 72.5 ksi, unless noted otherwise. Where steel to be anchored is galvanized, masonry anchors shall also be galvanized.

D. Masonry anchors used to anchor aluminum, FRP, or stainless steel shall be manufactured from stainless steel unless noted otherwise. All underwater fasteners, fasteners in confined areas containing fluid, and fasteners in corrosive environments shall be Type 316 stainless steel unless noted otherwise. Fasteners for aluminum and stainless-steel members not subject to the above conditions shall be Type 304 stainless steel unless otherwise noted.

E. Nuts, washers, lock washers and other hardware shall be of a material to match the anchors.

F. Although all manufacturers listed are permitted, the masonry anchor design is based on “SET-3G by Simpson Strong-Tie ESR 4844 Revised 10-2023. If the contractor submits one of the other concrete adhesive anchors listed, the Engineer shall evaluate the proposed product and the Contractor shall provide the conditions stipulated by the Engineer specific to the approved adhesive anchor.

G. If the masonry cells are fully grouted and the application is not an exterior application where freezing is a concern, a submerged or below grade application, or an application where vibrations could occur, screw anchors may be considered for anchoring items to masonry walls.

2.6 WELDS

A. Electrodes for welding structural steel and all ferrous steel shall comply with AWS Code, using E70 series electrodes for shielded metal arc welding (SMAW), or F7 series electrodes for submerged arc welding (SAW).

B. Electrodes for welding aluminum shall comply with the Aluminum Association Specifications and AWS D1.2.

C. Electrodes for welding stainless steel and other metals shall comply with AWS D1.6.

2.7 WELDED STUD CONNECTORS

A. Welded stud connectors shall conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1 Type C.

2.8 EYEBOLTS

A. Eyebolts shall conform to ASTM A489 unless noted otherwise.

2.9 HASTELLOY FASTENERS

A. Hastelloy fasteners and nuts shall be constructed of Hastelloy C-276. Hastelloy fasteners shall be used for fasteners located in chemical areas containing Hydrochloric Acid (Muriatic Acid), Hydrofluosilicic Acid (Fluoride), or Sulfuric Acid.

2.10 TITANIUM FASTENERS

A. Titanium fasteners, washers, and nuts shall conform to ASTM B348, Grade 2. Titanium fasteners shall be used for fasteners located in chemical areas containing Ferric Chloride or Sodium Hypochlorite.

2.11 ANTISEIZE LUBRICANT

A. Antiseize lubricant shall be C5-A Anti-Seize by Loctite Corporation, Molykote P-37 Anti-Seize Paste by Dow Corning, 3M Anti-Seize by 3M, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 MEASUREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall verify all dimensions and review the Drawings and shall report any discrepancies to the Engineer for clarification prior to starting fabrication.

3.2 FASTENER INSTALLATION

A. Anchor Rods, Concrete Anchors, and Masonry Anchors

1. Anchor rods shall be installed in accordance with AISC "Code of Standard Practice" by securing rods where concrete will be placed and positioned by means of a rigidly secured template. Overhead anchors, and base plates or elements being anchored, shall be shored as required and securely held in place during anchor setting to prevent movement during anchor installation. Movement of anchors during curing is prohibited.

2. The Contractor shall verify that all concrete and masonry anchors have been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and that the capacity of the installed anchor meets or exceeds the specified safe holding capacity.

3. Post-installed concrete anchors shall not be used in place of cast-in-place anchor rods without Engineer's approval.

4. All stainless-steel threads shall be coated with anti-seize lubricant.

B. High Strength Bolts

1. All bolted connections for structural steel shall use high strength bolts. High strength bolts shall be installed in accordance with RCSC “Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts”. All bolted joints shall be Type N, snug-tight, bearing connections in accordance with AISC Specifications unless noted otherwise on the Drawings.

C. Stainless Steel Bolts

1. Where connections indicate the use of stainless-steel bolts, the bolts shall be installed to the snug tight condition. Connections shall include stainless steel washers under both the bolt head and the nut head. Lock washers shall be utilized for all connections and shall be placed under the nut head.

D. Concrete Anchors

1. Concrete at time of anchor installation shall be a minimum age of 21 days, have a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi, and ambient temperature at time of installation shall be at least 50 degrees F.

2. Concrete Anchor Testing:

    a. At all locations, at least 10 percent of all concrete anchors installed shall be proof tested to 80% of the yield strength of the anchor rod, with a minimum of one tested anchor per anchor group.

    b. Contractor shall submit a plan and schedule indicating locations of anchors to be proof tested, load test values and proposed anchor testing procedure (including a diagram of the testing equipment proposed for use) to the Engineer for review prior to conducting any testing. Proof testing of anchors shall be in accordance with ASTM E3121 for the static tension test. If additional tests are required, inclusion of these tests shall be as stipulated on Contract Drawings.

    c. Where Contract Documents indicate anchor design to be the Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall submit a plan and schedule indicating locations of anchors to be proof tested and load test values, sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina. Documentation shall also be submitted indicating the Contractor's proof testing procedures have been reviewed and the proposed procedures are acceptable. Proof testing procedures shall be in accordance with ASTM E3121.

    d. Concrete Anchors shall have no visible indications of displacement or damage during or after the proof test. Concrete cracking in the vicinity of the anchor after loading shall be considered a failure. Anchors exhibiting damage shall be removed and replaced. If more than 5 percent of tested anchors fail, then 100 percent of anchors shall be proof tested.

    e. Proof testing of concrete anchors shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory hired directly by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer. The Contractor shall be responsible for costs of all proof testing, including additional testing required due to previously failed tests.

3. All concrete anchors shall be installed in strict conformance with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions. A representative of the manufacturer shall be on site when required by the Engineer.

4. All holes shall be drilled in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions except that cored holes shall not be allowed unless specifically approved by the Engineer. If cored holes are allowed, cored holes shall be roughened in accordance with manufacturer requirements. If hammer drills are used to drill holes in slabs, the drills shall be equipped with a depth stop device. The depth of hole shall be the minimum depth required for anchor embedment and development of required

capacity. Prior to drilling, the contractor shall use GPR or other means to confirm anchor installation will not interfere with reinforcement or embedded items, especially electrical conduit. Thoroughly clean drill holes of all debris, drill dust, and water in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions prior to installation of adhesive and threaded rod unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer. Degree of hole dampness shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Installation conditions shall be either dry or water saturated. Water filled or submerged holes shall not be permitted unless specifically approved by the Engineer. Injection of adhesive into the hole shall be performed to minimize the formation of air pockets in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Wipe rod free from oil that may be present from shipping or handling.

5. All adhesive anchor installations shall be conducted by a certified Adhesive Anchor Installer as certified by ACI/CSRI per ACI 318-14 17.8.2.2. Current AAI Certificate must be submitted to the Engineer of Record prior to commencement of any adhesive anchor installations.

E. Other Bolts

1. All dissimilar metal shall be connected with appropriate fasteners and shall be isolated via an approved dielectric.

2. All stainless-steel bolts shall be coated with anti-seize lubricant.

3.3 WELDING

A. All welding shall comply with AWS Code for procedures, appearance, quality of welds, qualifications of welders and methods used in correcting welded work.

B. Welded stud connectors shall be installed in accordance with AWS D1.1.

C. Welds shown on the Drawings with a field weld symbol shall be field welded. All other welds shall be shop welded unless specifically approved by the Engineer.

3.4 INSPECTION

A. High strength bolting will be visually inspected in accordance with RCSC "Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts". Rejected bolts shall be either replaced or retightened as required.

B. Field welds will be visually inspected in accordance with AWS Codes. Inadequate welds shall be corrected or redone as required in accordance with AWS Codes.

C. Post-installed concrete anchors shall be inspected as required by ACI 318.

3.5 CUTTING OF EMBEDDED REBAR

A. The Contractor shall not cut embedded rebar cast into concrete during installation of post-installed anchors without prior approval of the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 10 00
METAL MATERIALS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Metal materials not otherwise specified shall conform to the requirements of this Section.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Materials for fasteners are included in Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

B. Requirements for specific products made from the materials specified herein are included in other sections of the Specifications. See the section for the specific item in question.

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. ASTM A36 – Standard Specification for Structural Steel

B. ASTM A47 – Standard Specification for Malleable Iron Castings

C. ASTM A48 – Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings

D. ASTM A53 – Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless

E. ASTM A167 – Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

F. ASTM A276 – Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Bars and Shapes

G. ASTM A307 – Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners

H. ASTM A446 – Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) quality

I. ASTM A500 – Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes

J. ASTM A501 – Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing

012224

K. ASTM A529 – Standard Specification for Structural Steel with 42 000 psi (290 Mpa) Minimum Yield Point (1/2 in. (12.7 mm) Maximum Thickness)

L. ASTM A536 – Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

M. ASTM A570 – Standard Specification for Hot-Rolled Carbon Steel Sheet and Strip, Structural Quality

N. ASTM A572 – Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel

O. ASTM A992 – Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes

P. ASTM A666 – Standard Specification for Austenitic Stainless Steel, Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar for Structural Applications

Q. ASTM A1085 – Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded Carbon Steel Hollow Structural Sections (HSS)

R. ASTM B26 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings

S. ASTM B85 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Die Castings

T. ASTM B108 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings

U. ASTM B138 – Standard Specification for Manganese Bronze Rod, Bar, and Shapes

V. ASTM B209 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

W. ASTM B221 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes

X. ASTM B308 – Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Standard Structural Shapes, Rolled or Extruded

Y. ASTM B574 – Standard Specification for Nickel-Molybdenum-Chromium Alloy Rod

Z. ASTM F468 - Standard Specification for Nonferrous Bolts, Hex Cap Screws, and Studs for General Use

AA. ASTM F593 – Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Fasteners

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Material certifications shall be submitted along with any shop drawings for metal products and fabrications required by other sections of the Specifications.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Owner may engage the services of a testing agency to test any metal materials for conformance with the material requirements herein. If the material is found to be in conformance with Specifications the cost of testing will be borne by the Owner. If the material does not conform to the Specifications, the cost of testing shall be paid by the Contractor and all materials not in conformance as determined by the Engineer shall be replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. In lieu of replacing materials, the Contractor may request further testing to determine conformance, but any such testing shall be paid for by the Contractor regardless of outcome of such testing.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEEL

A. Material types and ASTM designations shall be as listed below:

Steel W, C, and MC Shapes	A992
Steel HP Shapes	A572 Grade 50
Steel M and S shapes and Angles, Bars, and Plates	A36
Rods	F 1554 Grade 55
Pipe - Structural Use	A53 Grade B
Hollow Structural Sections	A500 Grade C or A1085 Grade A
Cold-Formed Steel Framing	A 653

2.02 STAINLESS STEEL

A. All stainless steel fabrications exposed to underwater service shall be Type 316. All other stainless steel fabrications shall be Type 304, unless noted otherwise.

B. Material types and ASTM designations are listed below:

Plates and Sheets	ASTM A167 or A666 Grade A
Structural Shapes	ASTM A276
Fasteners (Bolts, etc.)	ASTM F593

2.03 ALUMINUM

A. All aluminum shall be alloy 6061-T6, unless otherwise noted or specified herein.

B. Material types and ASTM designations are listed below:

Structural Shapes	ASTM B308
Castings	ASTM B26, B85, or B108
Extruded Bars	ASTM B221 - Alloy 6061
Extruded Rods, Shapes and Tubes	ASTM B221 - Alloy 6063
Plates	ASTM B209 - Alloy 6061
Sheets	ASTM B221 - Alloy 3003

C. All aluminum shall be provided with mill finish unless otherwise noted.

D. Where bolted connections are indicated, aluminum shall be fastened with stainless steel bolts.

2.04 CAST IRON

A. Material types and ASTM designations are listed below:

Gray	ASTM A48 Class 30B
Malleable	ASTM A47
Ductile	ASTM A536 Grade 60-40-18

2.05 BRONZE

A. Material types and ASTM designations are listed below:

Rods, Bars and Sheets	ASTM B138 - Alloy B Soft

2.06 HASTELLOY

A. All Hastelloy shall be Alloy C-276.

2.07 DISSIMILAR METALS

A. Dielectric isolation shall be installed wherever dissimilar metals are connected according to the following table.

	Zinc	Galvanized Steel	Aluminum	Cast Iron	Ductile Iron	Mild Steel/ Carbon Steel	Copper	Brass	Stainless Steel
Zinc			●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Galvanized Steel			●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Aluminum	●	●		●	●	●	●	●	●
Cast Iron	●	●	●				●	●	●
Ductile Iron	●	●	●				●	●	●
Mild Steel/ Carbon Steel	●	●	●				●	●	●
Copper	●	●	●	●	●	●			●
Brass	●	●	●	●	●	●			●
Stainless Steel	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	

1. "●" signifies dielectric isolation is required between the two materials noted.
2. Consult Engineer for items not listed in table.

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 12 00
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all equipment, labor, materials, and services required to provide all structural steel work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The term "structural steel" shall include items as defined in the AISC "Code of Standard Practice".

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

B. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

C. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, all work specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. AISC – "Code of Standard Practice"

3. AISC – "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings"

4. AISC – RCSC “Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts”

5. AWS – "Structural Welding Code"

6. ASTM A786 – Hot-Rolled Carbon, Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy, and Alloy Steel Floor Plates

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Certified Mill Test Reports

2. Affidavit of Compliance with grade specified

3. Shop Drawings which include the following:

a. Layout drawings indicating all structural shapes, sizes, and dimensions.

080722

b. Beam and column schedules.

c. Detailed drawings indicating jointing, anchoring and connection details and vent and drain holes where required.

4. Structural Steel Survey

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Shop inspection may be required by the Owner at the Owner's expense. The Contractor shall give ample notice to the Engineer prior to the beginning of any fabrication work so that inspection may be provided. The Contractor shall furnish all facilities for the inspection of materials and workmanship in the shop, and the inspectors shall be allowed free access to the necessary parts of the work. Inspectors shall have the authority to reject any materials or work which do not meet the requirements of these Specifications. Inspection at the shop is intended as a means of facilitating the work and avoiding errors, but is expressly understood that it will in no way relieve the Contractor from the responsibility for furnishing proper materials or workmanship under this Specification.

B. The structural steel erector shall be a qualified installer who participates in the AISC Certification program and is designated an AISC Certified Erector.

C. The structural steel fabricator shall be a qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Certification program and is designated an AISC Certified Building Fabricator.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel

1. Structural steel for W, C, and MC shapes shall conform to ASTM A992 unless otherwise indicated.

2. Structural steel for HP shapes shall conform to ASTM A572 Grade 50 unless otherwise indicated.

3. Structural steel for S and M shapes and angles and plates shall conform to ASTM A36 unless otherwise indicated.

4. Steel pipe shall be ASTM A53, Grade B.

5. HSS shall be ASTM A500, Grade C or ASTM A1085. All members shall be furnished full length without splices unless otherwise noted or accepted by the Engineer.

6. All unidentified steel will be rejected and shall be removed from the site and replaced by the Contractor, all at the expense of the Contractor.

7. Fasteners for structural steel shall be in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

B. Welds

1. Electrodes for welding shall be in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 MEASUREMENT

A. The Contractor shall verify all dimensions and shall make any field measurements necessary and shall be fully responsible for accuracy and layout of work. The Contractor shall review the Drawings and any discrepancies shall be reported to the Engineer for clarification prior to starting fabrication.

3.02 FABRICATION

A. Fabrication shall be in accordance with the AISC "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings and AISC "Code of Standard Practice". Fabrication shall begin only after Shop Drawing approval.

B. Except where otherwise noted on the Drawings or in this Specification, all shop connections shall be welded.

C. All holes in structural steel members required for anchors, anchor rods, bolts, sag rods, vent and drain holes or other members or for attachment of other work shall be provided by the fabricator and detailed on the Shop Drawings.

D. All materials shall be properly worked and match-marked for field assembly.

E. Where galvanizing of structural steel is required, galvanizing shall be done in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing.

F. Checkered floor plate shall meet the requirements of ASTM A786.

3.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Structural members shall be loaded in such a manner that they may be transported and unloaded without being over-stressed, deformed or otherwise damaged.

B. Structural steel members and packaged materials shall be protected from corrosion and deterioration. Material shall be stored in a dry area and shall not be placed in direct contact with the ground. Materials shall not be placed on the structure in a manner that

might cause distortion or damage to the members or the supporting structures. The Contractor shall repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

3.04 ERECTION

A. The erection of all structural steel shall conform to the applicable requirements of the AISC "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and AISC "Code of Standard Practice". All temporary bracing, guys and bolts as may be necessary to ensure the safety of the structure until the permanent connections have been made shall be provided by the Contractor.

B. Structural members shall be set accurately to the lines and elevations indicated. The various members shall be aligned and adjusted to form a part of a complete frame or structure before permanently fastened. A licensed land surveyor shall survey the structural steel during erection and shall provide a final survey indicating elevations and locations of all major members. Necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignments shall be performed.

C. No cutting of structural steel members in the field will be allowed except by the written approval of the Engineer.

D. Bearing surfaces and other surfaces which will be in permanent contact shall be cleaned before assembly.

E. Field welding shall not be permitted unless specifically indicated in the Drawings or approved in writing by the Engineer. All field welding shall comply with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

F. All bolted connections shall use high strength bolts in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening. High strength bolts shall be installed in accordance with RCSC “Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts”. Bolts specified or noted on the Drawings to be a tension or slip critical “SC” type connection shall be fully pretensioned with proper preparation of the faying surfaces. All other bolts shall be snug tightened unless otherwise noted on the Drawings.

G. All field connections shall be accurately fitted up before being bolted. Drifting shall be only such as will bring the parts into position and shall not be sufficient to enlarge the holes or to distort the metal. All unfair holes shall be drilled or reamed.

H. Misfits at Bolted Connections

1. Where misfits in erection bolting are encountered, the Engineer shall be immediately notified. The Contractor shall submit a method to remedy the misfit for review by the Engineer. The Engineer will determine whether the remedy is acceptable or if the member must be refabricated.

2. Incorrectly sized or misaligned holes in members shall not be enlarged by burning or by the use of drift pins. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer immediately and shall submit a proposed method of remedy for review by the Engineer.

3. Where misalignment between anchor rods and rod holes in steel members are encountered, the Engineer shall be immediately notified. The Contractor shall submit a method to remedy the misalignment for review by the Engineer.

I. Grouting of Base Plates and Bearing Plates

1. The bottom surface of the plates shall be cleaned of all foreign materials, and concrete or masonry bearing surface shall be cleaned of all foreign materials and roughened to improve bonding.

2. Accurately set all base and bearing plates to designated levels with steel wedges or leveling plates.

3. Baseplates shall be grouted with non-shrink grout to assure full uniform bearing. Grouting shall be done prior to placing loads on the structure. Non-shrink grout shall conform to Section 03 60 00 – Grout.

4. Anchor rods shall be tightened after the supported members have been positioned and plumbed and the non-shrink grout has attained its specified strength.

J. Where finishing is required, assembly shall be completed including bolting and welding of units before start of finishing operations.

3.05 PAINTING

A. Painting shall be performed according to Section 09 90 00 – Painting and the following additional requirements.

1. Concrete Encased Steel: Steel members which will be encased in concrete shall be cleaned but not painted prior to encasement.

2. Contact Surfaces: Contact surfaces such as at field connections, shall be cleaned and primed but not painted.

3. Finished Surfaces: Machine finished surfaces shall be protected against corrosion by a rust-inhibiting coating which is easily removed prior to erection or which has characteristics that make removal unnecessary prior to erection.

4. Surfaces Adjacent to Field Welds: Surfaces within 2 inches of any field weld location shall be free of materials that would prevent proper welding or produce objectionable fumes while welding is being done.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 13 00
STAINLESS STEEL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install and erect the stainless steel work as shown on the Contract Drawings and specified herein.

B. Stainless steel work shall be furnished complete with all accessories, mountings and appurtenances of the type of stainless steel and finish as specified or required for a satisfactory installation.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

B. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

C. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

D. Section 05 50 00 – Metal Fabrications

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A193 – Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service

B. ASTM A194 – Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts for Bolts for High-Pressure and High-Temperature Service

C. ASTM A262 – Practice for Detecting Susceptibility to Intergranular Attack in Austenitic Stainless Steel

D. ASTM A276 – Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Bars and Shapes

E. ASTM A314 – Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Billets and Bars for Forging

F. ASTM A380 – Practice for Cleaning and Descaling Stainless Steel Parts, Equipment and Systems

G. ASTM A473 – Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Forgings

H. ASTM A666 – Austenitic Stainless Steel, Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar

I. ASTM A774 – Stainless Steel Pipe Fittings

020924

J. ASTM A778 – Stainless Steel Pipe

K. ASTM A967 – Standard Specification for Chemical Passivation Treatments for Stainless Steel Parts

L. ASTM F593 – Stainless Steel Bolts, Hex Cap Screws and Studs

M. ASTM F594 – Stainless Steel Nuts

N. ANSI/ASME B1.1 – Unified Inch Screw Thread (UN and UNR Thread Form)

1.04 TESTS

A. All stainless steel materials including stainless test welds, shall be checked for compliance with tests for susceptibility to intergranular attack. Such tests shall be Practices A, B and E of ASTM A262. Detailed procedures for the tests shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to start of work. Practice A shall be used only for acceptance of materials but not for rejection of materials, and shall be used for screening material intended for testing in Practice B and Practice E. The maximum acceptable corrosion rate under Practice B shall be 0.004 inch per month, rounded off to the third decimal place. If the certified mill report indicates that such test has been satisfactory performed, the fabricator may not be required to repeat the test. Material passing Practice E shall be acceptable.

B. Sample selection for the susceptibility to intergranular attack tests shall be as follows:

1. One (1) sample per heat treatment lot for plates and forgings;

2. One (1) sample per each Welding Procedure Qualification regardless of the joint design;

3. If tests indicate a reduction in corrosion resistance, welding procedure shall be adjusted or heat treatment determined as needed to restore required corrosion resistance.

4. The samples so chosen shall have received all the post-weld heat treatments identical to the finished part.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall prepare and submit for approval shop drawings for all stainless steel fabrication in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Submittals shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Certified test reports for susceptibility to intergranular attack.

2. Affidavit of compliance with type of stainless steel shown on the Contract Drawings or specified herein.

3. Certified weld inspection reports.

4. Cleaning and handling of stainless steel in accordance with Paragraph 3.04, Cleaning and Handling.

C. Samples of finish, on each type of stainless steel to be furnished, shall be submitted to the Engineer upon request.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Shop inspections may be made by the Engineer. The Contractor shall give ample notice to the Engineer prior to the beginning of any stainless steel fabrication work so that inspection may be provided. The Contractor shall furnish all facilities for the inspection of materials and workmanship in the shop, and the inspectors shall be allowed free access to the necessary parts of the works.

B. Inspectors shall have the authority to reject any materials or work which does not meet the requirements of the Contract Drawings or the Specifications.

C. Inspection at the shop is intended as a means of facilitating the work and avoiding errors, but is expressly understood that it will in no way relieve the Contractor from the responsibility for furnishing proper materials or workmanship.

1.07 HANDLING, STORAGE AND DELIVERY

A. Mechanical damage (e.g., scratches and gouges) to the stainless steel material shall not be permitted and is cause for rejection. Care shall be taken in the material handling since such mechanical damage will result in the passive oxide film being "punctured" leading to a possible lower resistance to the initiation of corrosion than the surrounding chemically-passivated surface.

B. Stainless steel plates and sheets shall be stored vertically in racks and not be dragged out of the racks or over one another. Racks shall be protected to prevent iron contamination.

C. Heavy stainless steel plates shall be carefully separated and chocked with wooden blocks so that the forks of a fork-lift could be inserted between plates without mechanically damaging the surface.

D. Stainless steel plates and sheets laid out for use shall be off the floor and be divided by wooden planks to prevent surface damage and to facilitate subsequent handling.

E. Plate clamps, if used, shall be used with care as the serrated faces can dig in, indent and gouge the surface.

F. Stainless steel fabrications shall be loaded in such a manner that they may be transported and unloaded without being overstressed, deformed or otherwise damaged.

G. Stainless steel fabrications and packaged materials shall be protected from corrosion and deterioration and shall be stored in a dry area. Materials stored outdoors shall be supported above ground surfaces on wood runners and protected with approved effective and durable covers.

H. Stainless steel fabrications shall not be placed in or on a structure in a manner that might cause distortion or damage to the fabrication. The Contractor shall repair or replace damaged stainless steel fabrications or materials as directed by the Engineer.

1.08 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall verify all dimensions and shall make any field measurements necessary and shall be fully responsible for accuracy and layout of the work.

B. The Contractor shall review the Contract Drawings and any discrepancies shall be reported to the Engineer for clarification prior to starting fabrication.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. Stainless steel shall be Type 304 unless noted otherwise herein or on the Contract Drawings. Stainless steel for underwater service, in confined areas containing fluid, or in corrosive environments shall be Type 316. Minimum mechanical finish shall be No. 4 as stated in Table 2 unless otherwise noted on the Contract Drawings.

B. The basic mill forms (sheet, strip, plate and bar) are classified by size as shown on Table 1. Tables 2, 3 and 4 identify finishes and conditions in which sheet, bar and plate are available.

C. Tables 2, 3 and 4 show numbered finishes and conditions for sheet, bar and plate. While there are no specific designations for polished finishes on bar or plate, the sheet finish designations are used to describe the desired effect. This also applies to finishes on ornamental tubing.

D. There are three standard finishes for strip, which are broadly described by the finishing operations employed:

1. No. 1 Strip Finish

    a. No. 1 strip finish is approximately the same as No. 2D Sheet Finish. It varies in appearance from dull gray matte to a fairly reflective surface, depending largely on alloy composition and amount of cold reduction.

2. No. 2 Strip Finish is approximately the same as a No. 2B sheet finish. It is smoother, more reflective than No. 1, and likewise varies with alloy composition.

3. Bright annealed finish is a highly reflective finish that is retained by final annealing in a controlled atmosphere furnace.

Table 1: Classification of Stainless Steel Product Form

Item	Description	Dimensions		
		Thickness	Width	Diameter or Size
Sheet	Coils and cut length:			
	Mill finishes Nos. 1, 2D and 2B	under 3/16"	24" and over all widths	-
	Polished finishes Nos. 3, 4, 6, 7 & 8			
Strip	Cold finished, coils or cut lengths:			
	Polished finishes Nos. 3, 4, 6,7 & 8	under 3/16"	under 24" all widths	-
Plate	Flat rolled or forged	3/16" and over	over 10"	-
Bar	Hot finished rounds, squares, octagons and hexagons	-	-	1/4" and over
	Hot finished flats	1/8" to 8" incl.	1/4" to 10" incl.	-
	Cold finished rounds, squares, octagons and hexagons	-	-	over 1/8"
	Cold finished flats	1/8" to 4-1/2"	3/8" to 4-1/2"	-
Wire	Cold finishes only: (in coil)			
	Round, square, octagon, hexagon and flat wire	under 3/16"	under 3/8"	-
Pipe & Tubing	Several different classifications, with differing specifications, are available.			
Extrusion	Not considered “standard” shapes. Currently limited in size to approximately 6-1/2" diameter or structurals.			

Table 2: Standard Mechanical Sheet Finishes

Unpolished or Rolled Finishes		Polished Finishes	
No. 1	A rough dull surface which results from hot rolling to the specified thickness followed by annealing and descaling.	**No. 3**	An intermediate polish surface obtained by finishing with a 100 grit abrasive. Generally used where a semi-finished polished surface is required. A No. 3 finish usually receives additional polishing during fabrication
No. 2D	A dull finish which results from cold rolling followed by annealing and descaling, and may perhaps get a final light roll pass through unpolished rolls. A 2D finish is used where appearance is of no concern.	**No. 4**	A polished surface obtained by finishing with a 120-150 mesh abrasive, following initial grinding with coarser abrasives. This is a general purpose bright finish with a visible "grain" which prevents mirror reflection.
No. 2B	A bright cold-rolled finish resulting in the same manner as No. 2D finish, except that the annealed and descaled sheet receives a final light roll pass through polished rolls. This is the general purpose cold-rolled finish that can be used as is, or as a preliminary step to polishing.	**No. 6**	A dull satin finish having lower reflectivity than No. 4 finish. It is produced by Tampico brushing the No. 4 finish in a medium of abrasive and oil. It is used for architectural applications and ornamentation where a high luster is undesirable, and to contrast with brighter finishes.
		No. 7	A high reflective finish that is obtained by buffing finely ground surfaces but not to the extent of completely removing the "grit" lines. It is used chiefly for architectural and ornamental purposes.
		No. 8	The most reflective surface, which is obtained by polishing with successively finer abrasives and buffing extensively until all grit lines from preliminary grinding operations are removed. It is used for applications such as mirrors and reflectors.

Table 3: Conditions and Finishes for Bar

Conditions	Surface Finishes[1]
Hot worked only	(a) Scale not removed (excluding spot conditioning) (b) Rough turned[2] (c) Pickled or blast cleaned and pickled.
Annealed or otherwise heat treated	(a) Scale not removed (excluding spot conditioning) (b) Rough turned (c) Pickled or blast cleaned and pickled (d) Cold drawn or cold rolled (e) Centerless ground (f) Polished
Annealed and cold worked to high tensile strength[3]	(a) Cold drawn or cold rolled (b) Centerless ground (c) Polished

Table 4: Conditions and Finishes for Plate

Condition and Finish	Description and Remarks
Hot rolled	Scale not removed. Not heat treated. Plates not recommended for final use in this condition.[4]
Hot rolled, annealed or heat treated	Scale not removed. Use of plates in this condition is generally confined to heat resisting applications. Scale impairs corrosion resistance.[1]
Hot rolled, annealed or heat treated, blast cleaned or pickled	Condition and finish commonly preferred for corrosion resisting and most heat resisting applications.
Hot rolled, annealed, descaled and temper passed	Smoother finish for specialized applications.
Hot rolled, annealed, descaled cold rolled, annealed, descaled, optionally temper passed	Smooth finish with greater freedom from surface imperfection than the above.
Hot rolled, annealed or heat treated, surface cleaned and polished	Polished finishes refer to Table 2.

[1] Surface finishes (b), (e) and (f) are applicable to round bars only.

[2] Bars of the 4xx series stainless steels which are highly hardenable, such as Types 414, 420, 420F, 431, 440A, 440B and 440C, are annealed before rough turning. Other hardenable grades, such as Types 403, 410, 416 and 416Se, may also require annealing depending on their composition and size.

[3] Produced in Types 302, 303Se, 304 and 316.

[4] Surface inspection is not practicable on plates which have not been pickled or otherwise descaled.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. Holes for bolts and screws shall be drilled. Fastenings shall be concealed where practicable. Joints exposed to the weather shall be formed to exclude water.

B. As far as practicable, all fabricated units shall be fitted and assembled in the shop, with all cuts and bends made to precision measurements in accordance with details shown on approved shop drawings.

C. Work shall be fabricated so that it is installed in a manner that will provide for expansion and contraction, prevent the shearing of bolts, screws and other fastenings, ensure rigidity, and provide close fitting of sections.

D. All finished and/or machined faces shall be true to line and level. Stainless steel sections shall be well formed to shape and size with sharp lines and angles; curved work shall be sprung evenly to curves.

E. All work shall be fitted together at the shop as far as possible, and delivered complete and ready for erection. Proper care shall be exercised in handling all work so as not to injure the finished surfaces.

3.02 WELDING

A. Welding shall be done in a manner that will prevent buckling and in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening, and as modified hereinafter.

B. All welds exposed in the work shall be ground smooth and finished to match the finish of the adjacent stainless steel surfaces.

C. Select weld rods that provide weld filler metal having corrosion resistant properties as nearly identical or better than the base metal to insure preservation of the corrosion-resistant properties. Provide heat treatment at welds where testing of weld procedure indicates it is required to restore the corrosion resistance.

D. Thermal conductivity of stainless steel is about half that of other steels; and the following methods may be used to accommodate this situation:

1. Use lower weld current setting.

2. Use skip-weld techniques to minimize heat concentration.

3. Use back-up chill bars or other cooling techniques to dissipate heat.

E. Edges of the stainless steel to be welded shall be cleaned of contaminants.

3.03 FASTENERS

A. Stainless steel fasteners shall be used for joining stainless steel work.

B. Stainless steel fasteners shall be made of alloys that are equal to or more corrosion resistant than the materials they join.

3.04 CLEANING AND HANDLING

A. All stainless steel surfaces shall be precleaned, descaled, passivated and inspected before, during and after fabrication in accordance with the applicable sections of ASTM A380 and as detailed in the procedures to be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to start of work. Chemical passivation in accordance with ASTM A967 is required for all stainless steel in contact with process water. Degreasing and passivation of stainless steel articles shall be conducted as the last step after fabrication.

B. Measures to protect cleaned surfaces shall be taken as soon as final cleaning is completed and shall be maintained during all subsequent handling, storage and shipping.

1. The Contractor shall submit for approval specific procedures listing all the steps to be followed in detecting contamination and in descaling, cleaning, passivation and protecting of all stainless steel.

2. Area showing clear indications of contamination shall be recleaned, repassivated and reinspected.

C. At approved stages in the shop operations, contaminants such as scale, embedded iron, rust, dirts, oil, grease and any other foreign matter shall be removed from the metal, as directed or approved by the Engineer. The adequacy of these operations shall be checked by the Engineer. Operations in the shop shall be conducted so as to avoid contamination of the stainless steel and to keep the metal surfaces free from dirt and foreign matter.

D. In order to prevent incipient corrosion during fabrication, special efforts shall be made at all times to keep all stainless steel surfaces from coming in contact with other metals.

1. Stainless steel and stainless steel welds shall be cleaned with clean sand free of iron, stainless steel wool, stainless steel brushes, or other approved means and shall be protected at all times from contamination by any materials, including carbon steel, that shall impair its resistance to corrosion.

2. Approved methods of cutting, grinding and handling shall be used to prevent contamination. If air-arc, or carbon-arc cutting is used, additional metal shall be removed by approved mechanical means so as to provide clean, weldable edges. All grinding of stainless steel shall be performed with aluminum oxide or silicon carbide grinding wheels bonded with resin or rubber. Grinding wheels used on carbon steel shall not be used on stainless steel.

3. Sand, grinding wheels, brushes and other materials used for cleaning stainless steel shall be checked periodically by the Engineer for contaminants. Cleaning aids found to contain contaminants shall not be used on the work.

3.05 INSTALLATION

A. All stainless steel fabrications shall be erected square, plumb and true, accurately fitted, adequately anchored in place, set at proper elevations and positions.

B. All inserts, anchor rods and all other miscellaneous work specified in the Detailed Specifications or shown on the Contract Drawings or required for the proper completion of the work, which are embedded in concrete, shall be properly set and securely held in position in the forms before the concrete is placed.

C. All stainless steel fabrications shall be installed in conformance with details shown on the Contract Drawings or on the approved shop drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 40 00
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish and install cold-formed metal framing in accordance with the Contract Documents. Exterior walls, load-bearing walls, and walls taller than 12’-0” shall be provided under this specification section.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 44 13 – Retrofit Roof Framing System

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of these specifications, all work hereunder shall conform to the applicable requirements of the reference portions of the following documents, to the extent that the requirements therein are not in conflict with the provisions of this Section.

1. Commercial Standards

a. ASTM A653 – Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process

b. ASTM A153 – Standard Specification for Zinc-Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

c. ASTM C1007 – Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories.

d. ASTM C1513 – Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections

e. ASTM C955 – Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Track), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Board and Metal Poster bases

f. A.I.S. (American Iron and Steel Institute) – Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

052416

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Submit manufacturer's data sheets and erection instruction for each item specified.

C. Submit shop drawings for load bearing framing members showing size and gauge designations, number, type, location, and spacing. Indicate supplemental strapping, bracing, splices, bridging, accessories, and details required for proper installation. Shop drawings shall be sealed by an independent Professional Engineer registered in the State of North Carolina.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Calculate structural properties of studs and joist in accordance with AISI "Specification for Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members".

B. Welding shall be accomplished by qualified welders and comply with American Welding Society (AWS) D1.3, "Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel".

C. Where framing units are components of assemblies indicated for a fire-resistance rating provide units which have been approved by governing authorities having jurisdiction.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Protect metal framing units from rusting and damage. Deliver to protect site in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, fully identified with name, brand, type, and grade. Store off ground in a dry ventilated space or protect with breathable waterproof tarpaulins.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements of these Specifications, provide a metal framing system consisting of steel studs, furring, runners (tracks), blocking, lintels, clips angles, shoes, reinforcements, fasteners, and accessories required to provide a complete framing system and as manufactured by Dale/INCOR, Gold Bond Building Products, Unimast Corporation, ClarkDietrich, Marino\Ware, or equal.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. For 16-gage and heavier units, fabricate metal framing components of structural quality steel sheet with a minimum yield point of 40,000 psi; ASTM 653.

B. For 18-gage and lighter units, fabricate metal framing of commercial quality steel sheet with a minimum yield point of 33,000 psi; ASTM A 653.

2.03 PRODUCTS

A. Provide manufacturer's standard steel runners (tracks), blocking, lintels, clip angles, shoes, reinforcements, fasteners, and accessories as recommended by manufacturer for

applications indicated, and as needed to provide a complete metal framing system as required by the Shop Drawings and Contract Documents.

B. "C"-Shape studs shall be manufacturer's standard load bearing steel studs of size, shape, and gage indicated, with 1. 25 inch minimum flange and flange return lip.

C. Punched channel studs shall be manufacturer's standard, factory punched, load bearing steel studs of size, shape, and gage indicated, with 1.375 inch flange.

D. Joists shall be manufacturer's standard C-shape sections of size, shape and gage required for the spans and loads.

E. Furring members with spans less than 4 feet shall be hat shaped, 0.0179 inch minimum thickness base metal, and comply with ASTM C 645.

F. Furring members with spans greater than 4 feet shall be C-shape, 0.0179 inch minimum thickness base metal, and comply with ASTM C 645.

2.04 FINISHES

A. Provide galvanized finish to metal framing components minimum G 60 coating.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Verification: The Contractor shall examine all Contract Drawings covering the work of this Section and refer to all other Contract Drawings which may affect this work or require coordination by this trade. Execution of work of this trade constitutes acceptance of adjoining work and other conditions as being satisfactory in every respect. Later claims of defects in such cases will not constitute relief in any way from the requirement of these Specifications.

B. Cooperation: The Contractor shall cooperate with all trades supplying materials or performing work in connection with the work under this Section to those other trades whose work is affected by the work of this Section. The Contractor shall provide to the job any and all items required to be built into the other work in ample time to avoid delaying the normal progress of such other work.

3.02 FABRICATION

A. Framing components may be prefabricated into panels prior to erection. Fabricate panels plumb, square, true to line and braced against racking with joints welded. Perform lifting of prefabricated panels in a manner to prevent damage or distortion. Fabricate panel to a maximum allowable tolerance variation from plumb, level, and true to line of 1/8" in 10'-0".

B. Attach similar components by welding. Attach dissimilar components by welding, bolting or screw fasteners, as standard with manufacturer. Wire tying of framing is not permitted. Repair of galvanized surfaces damaged by welding with zinc rich paint.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install metal framing system in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations.

B. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately to layout base and tops of studs. Secure tracks as recommended by stud manufacturer for type of construction involved, except do not exceed 24". Provide fasteners at corners and end of track.

C. Set studs plumb where stud system abuts structural columns or walls, included masonry walls, anchor ends of stiffeners to supporting structure.

D. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in metal framing system wherever walls or partitions are indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, case work, heavy trim and furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to wall or partition. Where type of supplementary support is not otherwise indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards, considering weight or loading resulting from each item supported.

E. Secure studs to top and bottom runner tracks by either welding or screw fastening at both inside and outside flanges.

F. Frame openings larger than 2'-0" wide with double stud at each jamb, unless more are indicated, or indicated by manufacturer's instructions.

G. Provide load bearing headers at each opening.

H. Install horizontal stiffeners in stud system, spaced vertically at not more than 4'-6" on center. Weld at each intersection.

I. Install joist level and plumb, complete with bracing and reinforcing recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 44 13
RETROFIT ROOF FRAMING SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all labor, materials, services, and equipment necessary to complete all work including steel framing, metal decking, and supports for Retrofit Roof Framing System as shown on the Contract Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 41 13 – Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks

B. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

C. Section 07 61 13 – Standing Seam Metal Roofing and Wall Panels

1.03 REFERENCES SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specification, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. Current Building Code of the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

2. AISC 14th Ed. – Steel Construction Manual

3. AISI 2012 Ed. – Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

4. ASCE 7-10 – Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

5. LGSI – Light Gage Structural Steel Framing System Design Handbook

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Show roof framing system with accessories in plan, sections and details. Include complete drawing/description of each framing component and fastener, including metal thicknesses and finishes, connection details, anchorage details, and special fabrication provisions. Indicate relationships with adjacent and interfacing work including Standing Seam Metal Roofing and Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks. Indicate fastener types and spacing; and provide fastener pullout values. Shop drawings and structural calculations must be completed by the Retrofit Roof Framing System manufacturer. Any changes must be approved by the Manufacturer in writing

061908

prior to submittal. Shop drawings and calculations shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina.

B. Product Data: Include Manufacturer's detailed material and system description, engineering performance data and finish specifications. Indicate fastener types and spacing; and required fastener pullout values.

C. Design Calculations: Submit design calculations for all elements of the Retrofit Roof Framing System according to ASCE 7. All loading types shall be considered: dead, live, snow, wind, and seismic. Loads shall be coordinated with Standing Seam Metal Roofing and Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks. Design calculations shall be sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina.

D. Submit clearly tabulated wind, seismic, snow and gravity Loads transferred from the Retrofit Roof Framing system to the Precast Prestressed Concrete Hollow Core Planks.

E. System Certification: Provide statement certifying the proposed system's capacity to safely resist the calculated design loads.

F. Warranty

G. Certification verifying proposed roof installer is authorized by manufacturer of Retrofit Roof Framing System.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor must be certified by Manufacturer as supplier of retrofit roof framing systems and obtain written certification from Manufacturer that installer is approved for installation of the Retrofit Roof Framing System.

B. Certified installer must have a minimum of 5 years of experience of acceptable installation of the Retrofit Roof Framing System.

C. All components of the Retrofit Roof Framing System must be obtained from a single manufacturer. Any secondary products that are required which cannot be supplied by the specified manufacturer must be recommended and approved in writing by primary manufacturer.

D. Provide a minimum 20 year warranty for all materials comprising Retrofit Roof Framing System.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Manufacturer's Responsibility

1. Protect components during fabrication and packing from mechanical abuse and corrosion.

B. Contractor's Responsibility

1. Store materials off ground providing for drainage; under cover providing for air circulation; and protected from wind movement, foreign material contamination, mechanical damage, cement, lime or other corrosive substances.

2. Handle materials to prevent damage. Damaged material shall be rejected and removed from the site.

3. Protect materials from wind-related damages.

4. Inspect materials upon delivery. Reject and remove physically damaged or marred material from project site.

5. Do not overload roof deck with stored materials.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications provide products from one of the following manufacturers or approved equal.

1. The Garland Company

2. ReRoof America, Inc.

3. IMETCO

2.02 RETROFIT ROOF FRAMING SYSTEM

A. Materials

1. Cold Formed Steel Framing Components

a. All light gauge cold formed steel framing components shall be formed from structural quality sheet steel meeting the requirements of an appropriate ASTM standard. The minimum acceptable yield strength shall be 40,000 psi. Section properties shall conform to the LGSI Light Gage Structural Steel Framing System Design Handbook and/or the AISI Specifications for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members.

2. Hot Rolled Steel Framing Components

a. All hot rolled steel components shall be formed from structural quality steel meeting the requirements of ASTM Standard A36. Section properties shall conform to the AISC Steel Construction Manual.

3. Fasteners

a. Concrete and masonry anchors shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Finishes

1. Cold formed components shall receive a G-90 galvanized coating conforming to Section 05 05 13– Galvanizing.

2. Hot rolled steel components shall be finished with one coat of red oxide rust inhibiting paint.

3. All welded areas shall be protected with a cold-galvanizing coating after fabrication.

4. Fasteners which are concealed by the finished roofing system shall be stainless steel.

5. Fasteners which are exposed after installation of the finished roofing system shall be stainless steel with painted heads matching the color of the standing seam panels.

C. Assembly

1. The framing system shall be a post and beam type system and shall include base components for attachment to the roof deck structure, vertical column members, horizontal top members, and strapping and cross bracing as required.

2. The base members shall be continuous or discontinuous lengths as determined by evaluation of the roof deck.

3. The vertical column members shall be capable of 1" minimum field adjustment to accommodate uneven roof deck elevations without field cutting.

4. The horizontal top member shall be a minimum 16 gauge Zee shape with stiffening lips. The top member shall be spaced appropriately to accommodate the required standing seam panel clip spacing as specified by the Standing Seam Metal Roofing Manufacturer. The top flange of the zee shall be (minimum) 1 3/4" wide to provide for attachment of the standing seam panel clips.

5. Flat strap bracing shall be 22 gauge minimum and shall only be acceptable for flange bracing of the framing members.

6. The framing system shall use cross bracing for transferring all lateral loads to the main structure. The standing seam panel system shall NOT be considered as a lateral diaphragm. All cross bracing for the transfer of lateral loads shall be formed/stiffened angles or sections/shapes; flat straps are not acceptable.

7. Provide components necessary for framing of overhang and fascia as shown on the Contract Drawings.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. Shop fabricate metal framing components to the maximum extent possible, forming metal work with clear, sharp, straight, and uniform bends and rises.

B. All welding shall be performed under shop conditions. Field welding is not acceptable.

C. Horizontal and bracing framing components may be cut to length at the factory or in the field. Vertical framing components may not be cut to length in the field.

D. Fabricate framing and related sheet metal work in accordance with approved shop drawings and applicable standards.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Inspection: Examine the alignment and placement of the building structure and substrate. Correct any objectionable warp, waves or buckles in the substrate before proceeding with installation of the Retrofit Roof Framing System.

B. Check roof deck for square and straightness and establish straight side and crosswise benchmarks. Set a true line for the Retrofit Roof Framing System with a string line.

C. Measure the roof lengthwise to confirm lengths, overhangs, and coverage of flashings at eaves and ridges.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate installation of metal roofing, roof deck, carpentry, miscellaneous furring members, insulation, vapor barriers, and/or infiltration barriers as indicated on the Contract Drawings.

B. Install framing system in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer’s product data, within specified erection tolerances.

C. Isolate dissimilar metals and masonry or concrete from metals with bituminous coating. Use gasketed fasteners where required to prevent corrosive action between fastener, substrate, and components.

D. Limit exposed fasteners to extent indicated on Shop Drawings.

E. Attach framing system to structural substrate using fasteners of size and spacing as determined by manufacturer’s design analysis to resist all specified design loads.

F. Installed system shall be true to line and plane and free of dents, and physical defects.

G. Maximum variation from true planes or lines shall be 1/4” in 20 feet and 3/8” in 40 feet of more.

H. Remove damaged work and replace with, undamaged components.

I. Touch up exposed fasteners using paint furnished by roofing panel manufacturer and matching exposed panel surface finish.

J. Remove all miscellaneous materials and debris from roof.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 50 00
METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide all metal fabrications not specifically included in other Sections, complete and in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Work shall include but may not be limited to lintels and guard posts.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

B. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

C. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

D. Certain specific items are included in other Sections of the Specifications. See the section for the specific item in question.

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of the Specifications, all work specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. AISC – Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

3. AISI – Specifications for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members

4. Aluminum Association Specifications for Aluminum Structures

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Complete fabrication and erection drawings of all metalwork specified herein.

2. Other submittals as required in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials and Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

011705

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL MATERIALS

A. Metal materials used in metal fabrications shall conform to Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials, unless noted otherwise.

2.02 METAL FASTENING

A. All welds and fasteners used in metal fabrication shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening, unless noted otherwise.

2.03 LINTELS

A. Provide lintels as shown on the Drawings and specified herein with 8 inches minimum bearing each side unless noted otherwise.

B. All lintels shall be steel in accordance with Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel and shall be galvanized in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing, unless noted otherwise.

2.04 GUARD POSTS (BOLLARDS)

A. Guard posts shall be 6-inch diameter Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe in accordance with ASTM A53.

B. Guard posts shall be concrete filled and crowned, as detailed in the Drawings.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. All measurements and dimensions shall be based on field conditions and shall be verified by the Contractor prior to fabrication. Such verification shall include coordination with adjoining work.

B. All fabricated work shall be shop fitted together as much as practicable, and delivered to the field, complete and ready for erection. All miscellaneous items such as stiffeners, fillets, connections, brackets, and other details necessary for a complete installation shall be provided.

C. All work shall be fabricated and installed in a manner that will provide for expansion and contraction, prevent shearing of bolts, screws, and other fastenings, ensure rigidity, and provide a close fit of sections.

D. Finished members shall conform to the lines, angles, and curves shown on the Drawings and shall be free from distortions of any kind.

E. All shearings shall be neat and accurate, with parts exposed to view neatly finished. Flame cutting is allowed only when performed utilizing a machine.

F. All shop connections shall be welded unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or specified herein. Bolts and welds shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening. All fastenings shall be concealed where practicable.

G. Fabricated items shall be shop painted when specified in Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Assembly and installation of fabricated system components shall be performed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. All miscellaneous metalwork shall be erected square, plumb and true, accurately fitted, adequately anchored in place, and set at proper elevations and positions.

C. Metal work shall be field painted when as specified in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 51 33
LADDERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide all ladders in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

B. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the Specifications, all work specified herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents.

1. Northh Carolina Building Code

2. Aluminum Association Specifications for Aluminum Structures

3. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Regulations

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Complete fabrication and erection drawings of all metalwork specified herein.

2. Other submittals as required in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials and Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL MATERIALS

A. Metal materials used for ladders shall conform to Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials, unless noted otherwise.

050423

2.02 METAL FASTENING

A. All welds and fasteners used for ladders shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening, unless noted otherwise.

2.03 LADDERS

A. Ladders shall be furnished with all mounting brackets, baseplates, fasteners, and necessary appurtenances for a complete and rigid installation.

B. Unless noted otherwise on the Drawings, all ladders shall be aluminum alloy 6061-T6 or 6063-T5, with a clear, anodized finish, Aluminum Association M12C22A41.

C. All ladders shall conform to dimensions indicated on the Drawings and shall comply with OSHA requirements.

D. Side rails shall be 1-1/2 inch diameter Schedule 80 pipe, minimum.

E. Rungs shall be serrated 3/4 inch diameter, minimum.

F. All exposed connections shall be welded and ground smooth.

G. Ladders shall be as manufactured by Thompson Fabricating Company, or equal.

2.04 LADDER SAFETY SYSTEM

A. All ladders with an uninterrupted climb length exceeding 24 feet between rest platform landings or floors shall be installed with a ladder safety system.

B. Ladder safety system shall comply with all OSHA requirements and meet ANSI A14.3 design requirements.

C. Ladder safety system shall include all necessary components to provide a fully operational system, including one full body safety harness with a 310 lb. weight capacity for each ladder safety system.

D. Ladder Safety Systems shall be Miller Vi-Go by Honeywell, LAD_SAF by DBI Sala, or approved equal.

2.05 LADDER RETRACTABLE SAFETY EXTENSION

1. Where the Contract Documents indicate fixed ladders are required under access doors and checkered floor plates, they shall be provided with “LadderUp, Model LU-4” by Bilco Company, “L1E Ladder Extension” by Halliday Products Inc., or “Ladder Climb-out Device” by Thompson Fabricating.

2. For access doors, the safety extension shall be manufactured from the same material as the access door with telescoping tubular sections that lock automatically when fully extended.

3. Upward and downward movement shall be controlled by a stainless-steel balancing mechanism.

4. Safety extension shall be assembled in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. All measurements and dimensions shall be based on field conditions and shall be verified by the Contractor prior to fabrication. Such verification shall include coordination with adjoining work.

B. All fabricated work shall be shop fitted together as much as practicable, and delivered to the field, complete and ready for erection.

C. All work shall be fabricated and installed in a manner that will provide for expansion and contraction, prevent shearing of bolts, screws, and other fastenings, ensure rigidity, and provide a close fit of sections.

D. Finished members shall conform to the lines, angles, and curves shown on the Drawings and shall be free from distortions of any kind.

E. All shearings shall be neat and accurate, with parts exposed to view neatly finished. Flame cutting is allowed only when performed utilizing a machine.

F. All shop connections shall be welded unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or specified herein. Bolts and welds shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening. All fastenings shall be concealed where practicable.

G. Fabricated items shall be shop painted when specified in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Assembly and installation of fabricated system components shall be performed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. All miscellaneous metalwork shall be erected square, plumb and true, accurately fitted, adequately anchored in place, and set at proper elevations and positions.

C. Metalwork shall be field painted when specified in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 53 00

GRATINGS, CHECKERED FLOOR PLATES, AND ACCESS DOORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, and equipment required to provide all gratings, floor plates, and access doors in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

B. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

C. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Building Code

2. Aluminum Association Specifications for Aluminum Structures

3. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Regulations

4. ANSI/NAAMM MBG 531 – NAAMM Metal Bar Grating Manual

5. ASTM C1802 – Design, Testing, Manufacture, Selection, and Installation of Fabricated Metal Access Hatches for Utility, Water, and Wastewater Structures

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Complete fabrication and erection Drawings of all gratings, floor plates, and access doors specified herein.

2. For access doors provided by a manufacturer not specifically named herein, structural calculations signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in the State of North Carolina verifying the proposed access door meets the minimum load and deflection requirements stipulated herein. For access doors

06-02-22

provided by a named manufacturer, sealed calculations are not required provided the applicable ASTM C1802 load rating is clearly indicated in the submittal for each proposed product.

3. Other submittals as required in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials and Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL MATERIALS

A. Metal materials used for gratings, floor plates, and access doors shall conform to Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials, unless noted otherwise.

2.02 METAL FASTENING

A. All welds and fasteners used for gratings, floor plates, and access doors shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening, unless noted otherwise.

2.03 GRATING

1. Not used

2.04 CHECKERED FLOOR PLATES

1. Not used.

2.05 ACCESS DOORS

A. General

1. Door opening sizes, number, and direction of swing of door leaves, and locations shall be as shown on the Drawings. The Drawings shall indicate the dimensions of the openings in the concrete. Clear opening dimensions shall be no smaller than six inches less than the concrete opening.

2. All doors shall be aluminum unless otherwise noted.

3. All door components shall have a minimum tensile yield strength of 23,000 psi and a minimum compressive yield strength of 21,000 psi. Yield strengths shall be indicated on both the structural calculations and the fabrication drawings.

4. Openings larger than 42 inches in either direction shall have double leaf doors.

5. Doors shall be designed for flush mounting and for easy opening from both inside and outside.

6. All doors shall be provided with an automatic hold-open arm with release handle.

7. Double leaf doors shall be provided with safety bars to go across the open sides of the door, when in the open position. Brackets shall be provided on the underside of the doors to hold the safety bars when not in use.

8. All hardware, including but not limited to, all parts of the latch and lifting mechanism assemblies, hold open arms and guides, brackets, hinges, springs, pins, and fasteners shall be stainless steel.

9. All doors specifically required to be watertight shall be installed with a continuous gasket.

10. Access door frames with integral gutter systems shall be equipped with a 1-1/2-inch minimum drainpipe located by the manufacturer. The drainpipe shall be provided by the Contractor and shall extend to the nearest point of discharge acceptable to the Engineer.

11. All doors shall be clearly marked with the information listed below. Markings shall be indicated on metal or plastic tags permanently attached to the door or frame or shall be permanently painted or printed.

    a. The manufacturer’s name or trademark, location, and telephone contact number.

    b. The manufacturer’s model number and ASTM designation.

    c. The design load level as indicated in ASTM C1802. If the design requires deviation from the Load Level requirements specified in ASTM C1802, a description of the modifications shall be included.

    d. The nominal door opening dimensions and/or the manufacturer’s model number.

    e. Date of manufacture and/or serial number.

B. Floor, Wet Well and Dry Pit Access Doors

1. Door leaves shall be 1/4 inch, minimum, diamond pattern plate with an approved raised pattern, non-skid surface. Plate shall be stiffened as required to maintain allowable stress and deflection requirements. Stiffeners shall consist of angles or bars welded to the bottom of plate.

2. Doors shall be designed for flush mounting and for easy opening from both inside and outside.

3. All doors shall have an enclosed compression spring assist and open to 90 degrees.

4. Doors not required to support traffic loading shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1802 for Load Level 2 – Pedestrian Load as a minimum and the following:

   a. Doors shall be designed to carry a minimum service level live load of 300 psf or a concentrated load of 600 pounds applied over a 5.50 inch by 5.50 inch area, whichever produces the greatest stress, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings. Loading shall be positioned to produce the maximum stresses, both due to maximum moment and maximum shear load conditions.

   b. Live load deflection shall be limited to L/200 of the span, but not greater than 3/16 inch.

   c. Unless otherwise noted, exterior doors shall have an integral gutter system and be Type “FDDP” by Nystrom, Type ”W1S” or “W2S” by Halliday Products Inc., Type "TPS" or "TPD", by U.S.F. Fabrication Inc., or Type "THG" or "THG-D", by Thompson Fabricating LLC, or Type “J-AL” or “JD_AL” by the Bilco Company.

   d. Unless otherwise noted, interior doors shall be Type "FDNP” by Nystrom, Type ”S1S” or “S2S” by Halliday Products Inc., Type "APS300" or "APD300", by U.S.F. Fabrication Inc., or Type "TH" or "TH-D", by Thompson Fabricating LLC.

C. Roof Access Doors

   1. Doors shall be designed for 40 psf live load unless noted otherwise.

   2. Doors for service stairs shall be Bilco Type L roof Scuttles.

   3. Doors for ladder access shall be Bilco Type S or SS Roof Scuttle.

2.06 FALL THROUGH PREVENTION SYSTEM

A. All checkered floor plates and access doors covering openings measuring 12 inches or more in its least dimension through which persons may fall shall be equipped with a fall through prevention system, except as noted on the Contract Drawings. Checkered floor plates and access doors shall be provided with a permanent installed fall through prevention grate system that provides continuous safety assurance in both its closed and open positions. The grate system shall be made with 6061-T6 aluminum or FRP and be designed for a 300 psf minimum live load, unless noted otherwise.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. All measurements and dimensions shall be based on field conditions and shall be verified by the Contractor prior to fabrication. Such verification shall include coordination with adjoining work.

B. All fabricated work shall be shop fitted together as much as practicable, and delivered to the field, complete and ready for erection. All miscellaneous items such as stiffeners, fillets, connections, brackets, and other details necessary for a complete installation shall be provided.

C. All work shall be fabricated and installed in a manner that will provide for expansion and contraction, prevent shearing of bolts, screws, and other fastenings, ensure rigidity, and provide a close fit of sections.

D. Finished members shall conform to the lines, angles, and curves shown on the Drawings and shall be free from distortions of any kind.

E. All shearings shall be neat and accurate, with parts exposed to view neatly finished. Flame cutting is allowed only when performed utilizing a machine.

F. All shop connections shall be welded unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or specified herein. Bolts and welds shall conform to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening. All fastenings shall be concealed where practicable.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Assembly and installation of fabricated system components shall be performed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. All gratings, checkered floor plates, and access doors shall be erected square, plumb and true, accurately fitted, adequately anchored in place, and set at proper elevations and positions. Embedded support frames shall be set level and square.

C. Where access doors utilize leveling bolts, or are placed on irregular surfaces, and are not to be embedded in concrete, the area beneath the frames shall be fully grouted with non-shrink grout to create a uniformly loaded bearing surface.

D. Grating shall not be field cut or modified unless approved by Engineer.

E. Grating shall not be used for equipment support or anchorage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 10 00
ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Wood blocking, nailers, grounds, furring, ties, centering, etc., necessary or required for attachment or support of work under this Section and other Sections.

2. Fasteners, including nails, screws, bolts, anchors and other fastenings, required to secure work under this Section.

3. Temporary enclosures and protective boarding.

4. Wood preservative treatment for all wood members in contact with roofing, masonry, concrete, and exposed to the elements.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. AWPA-CA – Preservative Standards, Lumber and Plywood

2. AWPA-C20 – Structural Lumber Fire-Retardant Treatment by Pressure Process

3. AWPC-C27 – Plywood Fire-Retardant Treatment by Pressure Process

4. AWPA-M4 – Standards for Care of Preservative Treated Wood Products

5. APA – Guide to Plywood Grades

6. FM 1-49 – Perimeter Flashing

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

060817

1. Certifications of Preservative and Fire Retardant Treatment.

2. Warranty of treatment manufacturer.

3. Certification of type and grade of lumber to be used.

4. Certification of type, rating and conformance to APA Standards.

1.04 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Take all measures necessary to protect products against damage during delivery and storage.

B. Store lumber in enclosed places in such a manner to provide ventilation and protection from the weather.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Blocking, nailers, grounds and the like: Eastern Spruce or Douglas Fir - No. 3 Dimension Lumber or Construction Grade, with a moisture content not to exceed 19%.

B. Plates, blocking, and nailers in contact with concrete or masonry: Pressure treated southern yellow pine or Douglas Fir.

C. Plywood: Identified with APA Grade trademarks of the American Plywood Association, in thickness as shown on the Drawings.

1. Exterior: AC-EXT-APA where exposed to view or a finish is required, CD-EXT-APA where concealed.

2. Interior: AC-INT-APA where exposed to view or a finish is required, CD-INT-APA where concealed.

D. Structural Framing Lumber: Douglas Fir No.1 grade with fb = 1,500 pounds per square inch and E = 1,700,000 pounds per square inch, 19 percent moisture content.

E. Fasteners: Provide clamps, connectors, straps, nails, bolts, screws, anchors, ties and other accessories and fasteners shown or required to properly secure all rough carpentry. Fasteners and accessories shall be stainless steel, galvanized, or other noncorrosive metal recommended for use. Fasteners used with pressure treated wood shall be compatible with the wood preservative treatment to prevent corrosion of fasteners.

F. Wood Preservative Treatment: Waterborne pressure treatment in conformance with the American Wood Preservers' Association standard P5. Retention shall be in accordance with AWPA Standards and be a minimum of 0.40 pounds per cubic foot for contact with or below ground, concrete, or masonry and 0.25 pounds per cubic foot for above ground. Stamp each piece of treated wood with a trademark identifying the classification of the treatment or a certificate from the processor for each shipment.

G. Fire Retardant Treatment: Fire-retardant lumber and plywood must have an Underwriters Laboratories stamp signifying a FR-S rating and certifying a 25 or less flame spread and smoke developed value, when tested in accordance to UL 723, ASTM E 84, and NFPA 255 "Tunnel Test", and when the test is extended for 20 additional minutes. Treatment formulation shall contain no halogens, sulfates, chlorides or ammonium phosphate. Smoke toxicity shall be no more than that of untreated wood.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate with all trades as to nailers, blocking, grounds and the like required for the attachment of their work and other items requiring same. Carry out all work as required to cooperate work of other trades.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Perform work in conformance manufacturer's recommendations and specifications, industry, national and local standards and codes.

B. Layout, cut, fit and erect rough blocking, nailers, furring and other rough carpentry. Do cutting work in connection with carpentry and finish for other trades. Brace plumb and level all members in true alignment and rigidly secure in place with sufficient nails, spikes, screws and bolts. Defects which render any piece or part unable to serve its intended purpose shall be discarded or, cut out and replaced.

C. Provide all bracing, supports and shoring required to support construction.

D. Protect all masonry including edges of concrete platforms and similar items. Remove protective covering when directed. Take special precautions at masonry openings and corners of the building.

E. Set all rough hardware, such as plates, spikes, bolts, nails, lag screws, lagging bolts, anchors, etc., as required to hold woodwork together or to anchor or secure it to other materials and construction.

F. Provide wood grounds, nailing strips and similar items wherever necessary or required throughout the project for the support, proper erection or installation of the work and support of mirrors, cabinets, shelf cleats, base and similar items. Thoroughly secure in place by approved means.

G. Secure wood grounds, nailing strips and similar items to metal plugs set in masonry, toggle or expansion bolts. Give the mason all necessary information to enable them to lay out correctly the location for metal wall plugs. Wood plugs will not be accepted.

H. Construct joints to support dead loads, live loads, snow loads, wind loads, or combinations in conformance with "National Design Specifications for Stress Grade Lumber and its Fastenings", recommended by National Forest Products Association.

I. Nailers and Blocking: Provide and secure wood nailers, blocking, for the reception of roof curbs, roofing, etc. in accordance with FM I-49, or as required by the Building Code, whichever is most stringent. Coordinate attachment with roofing system, where roofing system design includes design of nailers provide attachment in accordance with engineered roofing design.

1. Provide nailers of sizes, shapes and profiles indicated on the Drawings. Nailers shall not be less than 2 x6. Build up nailers as required to achieve thickness of insulation or as required to provide proper attachment of roofing and curbs. Provide anchors as required for secure attachment of roofing systems, copings, gravel stops or other edge terminations.

3.03 TEMPORARY PROTECTION

A. Provide and install all temporary protection in accordance with applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, OSHA regulations, and as follows:

1. Temporary protection shall include wood doors, railings, protection of floor or roof openings, temporary partitions, and the like; adequately maintained in good repair during the life of the Contract.

2. Furnish and set temporary partitions with wood doors at all exterior doorways, exterior openings or in locations exposed to weather. Substantially build and hang, with proper hinges, locks and other necessary hardware, and remove and reset whenever required to accommodate the Work and keep in good repair.

3. Provide substantial temporary wood covering or guards for openings left in floor or roof slabs for ducts, shafts, etc., using rough planking at least 2 inch thick, cleated together and otherwise made sufficiently strong and put in place wherever required immediately after the forms have been removed.

3.04 JOB CONDITIONS

A. If the installation of metal frames and glass does not promptly follow the completion of the exterior enclosures, and if the absence of enclosures would cause damage, close in all such openings temporarily by the use of heavy polyethylene plastic sheeting, or canvas stretched over and nailed to frames of 1 inch x 2 inch or heavier strips.

3.05 REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY WORK

A. Remove all temporary protection when so directed, or prior to acceptance of this project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 19 00
LIQUID APPLIED WATER REPELLANTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of Work as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work

1. Seal all masonry exposed to exterior weather conditions.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's product data.

2. Test reports confirming compliance with specifications.

1.03 SHIPPING, HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Deliver material in manufacturer's original sealed containers.

B. B. Store materials in such a way as to prevent any damage to container or product and protect from freezing temperatures.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. L&M Construction Chemicals

B. BASF Master Builder Solutions

C. Tex-Cote

D. Tnemec

E. Prosoco

010219

2.02 ACCEPTABLE MATERIALS

A. Liquid applied water repellant shall be a clear penetrating, water-based silane and/or Siloxane product.

2.03 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

A. Water Permeance: ASTM E514 – 99% Improvement

B. Moisture Vapor

1. Transmission Rate: ASTM D1653 – 24.4 gm/sq ft/24 hrs

C. Freeze Thaw Resistance: ASTM C672 – No Scaling

D. Resistance to chloride: Excellent

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Verify that masonry surfaces are ready to receive water repellant. Report any unacceptable conditions to the Engineer and do not begin application until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Alkali or efflorescence shall be removed or neutralized prior to application. Neutralizing shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Caulking, glazing, painting and other materials shall be protected from damage prior to application.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Flood surface with water repellant as recommended by manufacturer. Apply material to assure that water repellant has soaked into surface and penetrated, hairline cracks and similar opening. Apply product at a minimum rate of 100 square feet per gallon.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean windows, metals, caulking, and other materials not required to coated, which get coated, immediately in manner approved by manufacturer of item coated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 21 00
BUILDING INSULATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work as shown on Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

B. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications Work shall conform to applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. ASTM C726 – Insulation Board, Thermal (Mineral Fiber)

2. ASTM C 578 – Specification for Preformed, Block Type Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation

3. ASTM C 665 – Specification for Mineral fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's literature, specifications, installation instructions, technical data, and general recommendations.

2. Samples of each type of insulation specified.

3. Shop drawing for tapered insulation.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in unopened, undamaged original packaging with bearing the manufacturer's name.

010219

B. Store materials in clean, dry, protected areas. Do not leave materials exposed to the weather or sunlight, except to the extent necessary to perform the work.

C. Protect against ignition.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide products as manufactured by the following:

1. Manufacturers of Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation

    a. Amoco Foam Products Company

    b. DuPont

    c. UC Industries

2. Manufacturers of Glass Fiber Insulation

    a. CertainTeed Corporation

    b. Manville Corporation

    c. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corporation

3. Manufacturers of Polyisocyanurate Foam Insulation

    a. RMax.

    b. Atlas Energy Products.

    c. Johns Manville.

4. Manufacturers of Sprayed Polyurethane Foam

    a. Demilec LLC

    b. BASF

    c. NCFI Polyurethanes

    d. Icynene

5. Manufacturers of Sprayed Polyurethane Foam (Gap Sealant)

    a. The DuPont

b. Or approved equal

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Cavity Wall Insulation: Extruded polystyrene insulation boards meeting or exceeding the requirements of ASTM C578, Type IV, and with a "K" factor of 0.20 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM C 518. Provide insulation 1-1/2 inches thick unless otherwise shown. See 04 20 00 Unit Masonry for insulation in CMU.

B. Roof Insulation: Roof insulation shall be approved by roofing manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of the roofing warranty. Roof insulation shall meet the requirements of roof manufacturer. Insulation shall have a minimum aged R-value of 5 per inch. The minimum R-Value of the insulation system shall be R-30 unless otherwise noted. Secure insulation as required by the roofing manufacturer to resist wind. Install ½" glass faced gypsum roof cover board above insulation in accordance with roof manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

C. Mineral Wool Batt Insulation: Semi-rigid boards for use as fire stop. Materials shall conform to requirements of UL penetration systems. Mineral wool material shall meet the requirements of ASTM E-136.

D. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam: Apply by factory trained or certified installers. Foam blowing agent shall have zero ozone depleting potential, no VOC's and be formaldehyde free. Foam shall be a closed cell with a 2 lb. density and provide a minimum R value of 5 per inch. Foam shall be Class I product in accordance with ASTM E84. Exposed surfaces shall be sprayed with an approved 15 minute intumescent barrier or approved thermal barrier.

E. Spray-Applied Slag/Rock-Wool-Fiber Insulation: Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Slag/Rock-Wool-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type I (materials applied with liquid adhesive; suitable for either exposed or enclosed applications), and Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications). Insulation shall have postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 60 percent. Insulation shall have maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5 and 0, respectively, per ASTM E 84 and rated as non-combustible as defined by NFPA 220 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 136. Provide K-13 Cellulose Spray-Applied Insulation manufactured by International Cellulose Corporation, Houston, TX, or acceptable equal.

F. Adhesive and Fasteners: Type compatible with insulation, masonry, concrete, or other substrate and as recommended or produced by the insulation manufacturer.

G. Sealer and Tape: Type recommended by insulation manufacturer and having perm rating and fire resistance characteristics similar to that of the insulation.

H. Gap Sealant: General Purpose Type: single-component polyurethane sealant. Gun-applied and Straw-applied products, Thermal Value R3.5 per inch. Provide GREATSTUFF PRO™ Gaps & Cracks Insulating Foam Sealant as manufactured by The

Dow Chemical Company or approved equal. Provide Substrate Cleaner as recommended by foam sealer manufacturer.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Insulation shall be provided in walls, and roofs and where shown on Drawings. See 04 20 00 Unit Masonry.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

A. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions to provide maximum sound and thermal benefits for material specified. Install to fill or cover voids. Cut neatly to snugly fit angles, corners and irregular areas and carefully wrapped around pipes, conduits, outlets, switches, beams, etc., to maintain continuity of insulation. Avoid gaps or bridges.

B. Cavity Wall Insulation

1. On vertical surfaces of masonry adhere to inner wythe of block.

2. Joints between insulation board units shall coincide with masonry joint reinforcing.

C. Roofing Insulation: Install roofing insulation in accordance with insulation and roofing manufacturer printed instructions and recommendations.

D. Mineral Wool Batt Insulation: Install insulation in accordance with UL design requirements and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam: Install in strict accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations. Separate final installation with code approved thermal barrier.

F. Spray-Applied Slag/Rock-Wool-Fiber Insulation: Install in strict accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

G. Gap Sealant: Seal all gaps at perimeter of walls and penetrations and openings. Install in strict accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations. Remove excess gap sealant to finish flush with the adjacent materials where visible or required to allow installation of finish materials.

3.03 ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING

A. Adequately protect Work from damage resulting from subsequent construction operations. Replace damaged or soiled Work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 26 16
VAPOR BARRIER

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, material, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Vapor barrier below structural slabs on grade.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's data and installation instructions.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 VAPOR BARRIER

A. Vapor Barrier: A reinforced laminate membrane with a minimum tensile strength of 55 lbs/in. in accordance with ASTM D-882, vapor transmission rating of 0.02 perms in accordance with E-96, and a puncture resistance of 25 lbs in accordance with ASTM D4833 or 2,200 grams in accordance with ASTM D-1709.

B. Adhesive/Tape: Type approved by the Manufacturer of the vapor material.

C. Penetration sealing: Provide manufacturer’s recommended penetration seals at all pipe, conduit, and similar penetrations.

2.02 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Viper Vapercheck 10 by Insulation Solutions, Inc.

2. Griffolyn Type-85, by Reef Industries, Inc.

010219

3. Or Equal

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 VAPOR BARRIER

A. Vapor barrier shall be placed on top of 4 inches minimum of compacted structural fill stone, free of debris and protrusions for structural slabs.

B. Lap edges 12 inches and seal with adhesive tape. Lay with seams perpendicular to and lapped in the direction of placement. Do not penetrate vapor barrier.

C. Protect from damage until concrete is placed. Punctures and tears in vapor barrier shall be repaired using patches of the material which overlaps puncture or tear a minimum of 12 inches; seal with tape or adhesive.

D. Penetrations through vapor barrier, such as pipe, drains, conduits and similar penetrations, shall be sealed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 61 13
STANDING SEAM METAL ROOFING AND WALL PANELS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

B. Work includes:

1. Standing seam metal roofing, wall panels, trim, flashing and accessories associated with a complete and weathertight roofing system and as indicated on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 07 21 00 – Building Insulation

B. Section 07 60 00 – Flashing and Sheet Metal

C. Section 07 70 00 – Roof Specialties and Accessories

D. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants and Caulking

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Drawings of proposed work, including fastener type and spacing, roof panels, support framing, flashing, snow retention system, and accessory details. Details shall be drawn to show the entire assembly including all accessories required for complete installation.

2. Manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions.

3. Submit calculations signed by a professional engineer indicating loads, uplifts, spacing of clips, fasteners, snow retention system, and accessories. Calculations shall be project specific in accordance with ASCE 7.

4. Submit certification that installer is authorized by manufacturer.

5. Structural design data and calculations.

6. Drawing showing spacing of fasteners and supports.

010219

7. Letter verifying that panels are factory roll formed.

8. Sample warranties.

9. Copy of 20-year Manufacturer's warranty.

1.04 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Use the following standards and criteria where applicable in the structural design of the roof support system:

1. Current Building Code of the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

2. "Steel Construction Manual", American Institute of Steel Construction

3. "Cold Formed Steel Design Manual", American Iron and Steel Institute

4. ASCE 7 – Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures

B. Design Loads

1. Design loads include live, snow, wind, earthquake and dead loads.

2. Loads and combination of loads shall be as prescribed and recommended in the standards and codes listed above.

3. Design roof to withstand structural information provided on Structural Drawings and in accordance with building code and any local regulations.

4. Thermal expansion and contraction expected for this location.

C. FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheets

1. FM Global Data Sheet 1-28, Wind Design

2. FM Global Data Sheet 1-29, Roof Deck Securement and Above Deck roof Components

3. FM Global Data Sheet 1-49, Perimeter Flashing

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Roof and Wall Panels

1. Exterior finish shall be warranted by the manufacturer for twenty years against blistering, peeling, cracking, flaking, checking and chipping.

2. Color change and chalking shall be warranted for twenty years. Color change shall not exceed 5 NBS units per ASTM D 224. Chalking shall be not less than a rating of 8 per ASTM D 4214.

B. Weathertightness

1. Single Source manufacturer’s roof system warranty including roof panels, fascia, trim flashing, penetrations, and other materials integral to the roof system, against leaks for a period of twenty years.

a. The warranty shall cover wind damage up to 90 mph.

b. No dollar limit.

C. Provide all materials required by roofing manufacturer to obtain specified warranty whether or not specifically indicated.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer shall have been regularly engaged in the fabrication of metal standing seam roof systems for at least ten years.

B. Installer shall be authorized by the Manufacturer as trained and qualified to erect the Manufacturer's product.

C. Conduct a preroofing conference with the following attendees; Contractor, metal-roofing Contractor, metal roofing systems manufacturer's representative, all sub-Contractors whose work penetrates the roof, the Owner and Engineer.

D. Metal roofing system manufacturer’s representative will observe the installation of the roof system at the start of the project and as required by the manufacturer to ensure warranty provisions are adhered to. The manufacturer’s representative will produce a report based on observations of the roofing system that indicates that the roofing system, trim, accessories have been installed in accordance with all requirements of the manufacturer. If any deficiencies in materials or installation are found during this inspection the deficiencies shall be corrected.

E. System shall be tested in accordance with UL 580 or ASTM E 1592.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications provide products from one of the following:

1. IMETCO, Series 300

2. Centria, SRS 3

3. The Garland Company, R MER SPAN

2.02 PRODUCTS

A. Standing Seam Roof Panels

1. Factory finished 0.040 Aluminum sheets factory finished with two coat, baked-on full-strength (70% resin) fluorocarbon coating system. Color shall be selected by the Owner.

2. Panels shall be 16” or 18” wide by length required to cover roof to minimize end laps. Panels shall include striated profile or pencil ribs to minimize oil-canning.

B. Roof System

1. Structural standing seam incorporating with continuous “T” batten and secured to concealed anchor clips allowing unlimited thermal movement, and of configurations that will prevent entrance or passage of water.

2. Roof system shall comply with UL90 classification.

3. Fastening system shall allow the roof covering to move independently of any differential thermal movement by the framing system.

4. Provide interlocking batten cap with a plant applied, and non-hardening sealant. Mechanically lock or crimp seams during installation.

5. Seal panel termination and perimeter flashing with sealant approved by manufacturer.

6. Provide metal closures matching roof profile at ridge, headwall, rake, jamb and hip conditions.

7. Panels length shall be full length from factory. Field formed panels will not be allowed.

8. Coordinate structural support locations for wall and roof panels. Provide additional structural support, if required by panel manufacturer to resist required design loads.

9. Roof and wall panels shall be furnished in continuous lengths from ridge to eave of top of wall to bottom of wall panel.

10. Seam height will be a minimum of 2-3/8”.

C. Sub-framing System

1. Provide a minimum of 16-gauge galvanized steel cold formed framed sub-framing system.

D. Trim System

1. Design trim to provide for expected movement of roof panels due to thermal expansion.

2. Use manufacturer's standard trim pieces, except where field formed pieces are recommended by the manufacturer.

3. Use .032 or.040 Aluminum trim with factory finish to match roof panels.

4. Concealed fasteners shall be used to the greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are used, they shall be installed neatly and aligned with other fasteners in straight rows and lines and finished to match roof panels.

E. Roof Accessories

1. Use EPDM roof jacks with aluminum sealing ring for openings 12 inches in diameter or less. Do not use roof jacks where ribs are altered.

2. Provide .032 or .040 gutters and downspouts with a 20-year factory applied fluorocarbon finish. Color shall match roof panels.

3. Underlayment: Provide underlayment over entire roof area. Underlayment shall be 40 mil self-adhesive membrane. Underlayment may not be shown on drawings.

F. Fascia and Soffit Panels

1. Shall be interlocking flush panels with concealed fasteners. Panels shall be nominal 12” wide by 1” deep and of lengths required to complete work. Finish to match roof panels with 20-year warranty.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Manufacturer shall inspect conditions of structural system and work below. Verify that work is complete to a point where this work can commence and installation can be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.

B. Replace damaged or defective items.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 70 00
ROOF SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 06 10 00 – Rough Carpentry

B. Section 07 61 13 – Standing Seam Metal Roofing and Wall Panels

C. Section 07 60 00 – Flashing and Sheet Metal

D. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants and Caulking

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. TT-P-641 (1) – Primer Coating, Zinc Dust - Zinc Oxide (for galvanized surfaces)

2. ASTM A 525 – Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process

3. ASTM A 526 – Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Commercial Quality

4. ASTM B 209 – Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate

5. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" (ASMM)

6. The Aluminum Association "Specification for Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction."

7. American Welding Society (AWS).

8. FM Global Data Sheet 1-28 Wind Design

9. FM Gobal Data Sheet 1-49 Perimeter Flashing

010219

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturers literature and installation instructions.

2. Samples, of each material listed.

3. Provide shop drawings for the full extent of each item to be provided. Provide overall plans and details of each transition. Provide details of each item.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver all materials in factory packed unopened cartons and crating bearing the manufacturer's labels.

B. Store materials in clean, dry protected area in such manner to preclude damage of any nature.

C. Handle all materials with proper care to avoid denting, marring, warping or other distortions during delivery, storage and handling.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide roof specialties and accessories of design and construction compatible and approved for use with roofing manufacturer.

B. Fasteners: Provide all fasteners and attachments required to secure item to substrate and support loads required by applicable Building Code. Use only non-corrosive fasteners which are compatible with materials being joined.

C. Colors: Colors shall be selected by Owner.

2.02 GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS

A. Material: 0.040 inch aluminum.

B. Design: Manufacture gutters tapered and notched to provide telescoping joint. Design gutters and downspouts to accommodate expected thermal movement.

C. Supports and Fasteners: Provide manufacturers' standard straps, brackets and fasteners. Place supports and fasteners at 36 inches on center or as recommended by the manufacturer. Finish of supports, brackets and fasteners shall match gutter and downspout.

D. Accessories: Provide end caps, flashing, trim, and other items required for a complete installation.

E. Finish: Baked on Kynar, with 20 year warranty.

2.03 ROOF CURBS

A. Material: 18 gauge, G-90 galvanized steel, 12 inches high with mitered and continuous welded corners and seams, factory installed pressure treated wood nailers, and rigid fiberglass insulation.

B. Design: Provide roof curb units manufactured to fit manufactured roof panels. Provide integral water diverter. Design roof curb to support weight of equipment. Coordinate roof curb unit with roof panel manufacturer to ensure proper fit. Roof curb shall be approved for use by manufacturer.

C. Accessories: Provide interior liner, flashing, trim and other items required for a complete installation.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Install roof accessories and specialties in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Provide a complete watertight and weatherproof installation. Install with provision for expansion and contraction.

3.02 DAMAGED MATERIAL

A. Repair or replace materials damaged during installation.

3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Check levels and adjust as necessary after roofing and flashing is complete.

B. Protect materials from damage by other trades. Remove protective coatings at completion of project.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 90 00
JOINT FILLERS, SEALANTS AND CAULKING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of Work shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 15 00 – Concrete Accessories

B. Section 03 15 16 – Joints in Concrete

C. Section 08 80 00 – Glass and Glazing

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ASTM C-920 – Elastomeric Joint Sealants

2. ASTM D-1056 – Flexible Cellular Materials – Sponge or Expanded Rubber

3. SWRI – Sealant and Caulking Guide Specification

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturers literature and installation instructions. Label each product submitted with Type as indicated in paragraph 2.01 A.

2. Color samples of each type of sealant.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator shall be a company specializing in the installation of sealants with a minimum of five years of experience.

010219

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in unopened labeled packages.

B. Store materials in location protected from freezing or damages.

C. Reject and remove from the site materials within broken or damaged packaging.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Sealants

1. Type 1: Multi-component, non-sag, low-modulus polyurethane rubber sealant meeting ASTM C-920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT, M, A, and O. Capable of withstanding 25% in extension or compression such as Sikaflex-2C NS/SL, Sika Corporation, or Sonolastic NP-2, Sonneborn, or DynaTrol II by Pecora Corporation.

2. Type 2: Single component polyurethane sealant meeting ASTM C-920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT, M, A, and O. Capable of withstanding 25% in extension or compression such as Sikaflex 1A by Sika Corporation, DynaTrol 1-XL by Pecora Corporation, or Sonolastic NP-1 by Master Builders Solutions.

3. Type 3: Single component, low-modulus moisture curing silicone meeting ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT, M, G, and A. Capable of withstanding 50% extension and compression. Pecora 890 by Pecora Corporation, Sonolastic Omni Seal by Master Builders Solutions.

4. Type 4: Single component, mildew resistant, moisture-curing silicone meeting ASTM C-920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT, M, G, and A. Pecora 898 by Pecora Corporation, Sonolastic Omni Plus by Master Builders Solutions.

5. Type 5: Single component, acrylic latex meeting ASTM C-834. AC-20+ Silicone by Pecora Corporation, Sonneborn Sonolac by Master Builders Solutions.

6. Type 6: High grade butyl sealant meeting Federal Specification TT-S-00-1657. BC-158 by Pecora Corporation or equal.

7. Type 7: Multi-component chemical resistant polysulfide sealant conforming to ASTM C-920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25 such as Deck-O-Seal by W.R. Meadows, Tammsflex by DuraJoint Concrete Accessories, or Synthacalk GC2+ by Pecora Corporation.

8. Type 8: Nonsag, Multi Component, traffic grade polyurethane sealant meeting ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, use T, M, A, and O. DynaTread by Pecora Corporation, MasterSeal CR 195 by Master Builders Solutions.

B. Primer: Non-staining primer recommended by sealant manufacturer for the substrates on this project.

C. Backer Rod: Closed cell foam, nonreactive with caulking materials, non-oily, and approved by the sealant manufacturer. Minimum density shall be 2.00 pounds per cubic foot. Use no asphalt or bitumen-impregnated fiber with sealants.

D. Joint Cleaner: Recommended by sealant or caulking compound manufacturer.

E. Bond breaker: Either polyethylene film or plastic tape as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.

F. Color: Where manufacturer's standard colors do not closely match materials being sealed, provide a custom color.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Coordinate work with details shown on approved shop drawings prepared by other trades.

B. Verify conditions in the field.

C. Schedule work to follow closely the installation of other trades.

D. Apply sealants and related items in temperatures and dry conditions recommended by the manufacturers.

E. Do not paint sealant, unless recommended by sealant and paint manufacturer.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect finished surfaces adjoining by using masking tape or other suitable materials.

B. Clean and prime joints before starting any caulking or sealing work.

C. Thoroughly clean joints and spaces of mortar and other foreign materials. Cleaning agent shall be Xylol or similar non-contaminating solvent to remove any film from metal surfaces. Masonry or concrete surfaces shall be brushed or air jet cleaned.

D. Joint Requirements

1. All joints and spaces to be sealed in exterior work shall be less than ½-inch deep and not less than 1/4 inch wide. If joints in masonry are less than that specified herein, the mortar shall be cut out to the required width and depth. All joints and spaces to receive sealant shall be completely prepared and thoroughly dry before installation of sealant.

2. Unless otherwise specified, joints and spaces which are open to a depth of 1/2 inch or greater shall be solidly filled with backup material to within 1/4 inch of the surface. Backup material shall be packed tightly and made continuous throughout the length of the joints. Bond breaker shall be applied as required. If joints are less than ¼-inch deep, the backup material may be omitted, a bond breaker substituted and the joint completely filled with sealant. The backup material shall not project beyond the ¼-inch depth of the open space in any joint. The following width to depth ratio table shall be adhered to, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer.

	Sealant Depth	
Joint Width	**Minimum**	**Maximum**
¼ inch	1/4 inch	1/4 inch
Over 1/4 inch to 1/2 inch	1/4 inch	Equal to width
Over 1/2 inch to 1 inch	1/2 inch	Equal to width
Over 1 inch to 2 inches	1/2 inch	1/2 of width

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Exercise care before, during, and after installation so as not to damage any material by tearing or puncturing. All finished work shall be approved before covering with any other material or construction.

B. Apply sealant by an approved type of gun except where the use of a gun is not practicable, suitable hand tools shall be used. Avoid applying the compound to any surface outside of the joints or spaces to be sealed. Mask areas where required to prevent overlapping of sealant.

C. All joints shall be waterproof and weathertight.

D. Point sealed joints to make a slightly concave joint, the edges of which are flush with the surrounding surfaces. Exposed joints in the interior side of the door and other frames shall be neatly pointed flush or to match adjacent jointing work.

E. Adjacent materials which have been soiled shall be cleaned immediately and the work left in neat and clean condition.

F. Comply with sealant manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified and except where manufacturer's technical representative directs otherwise.

3.04 ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING

A. Remove misplaced sealant compounds promptly using methods and materials recommended by the manufacturer, as the work progresses.

B. Allow sealants to cure and remove protective edging, of doors, louvers, saddles windows etc. as directed by the Engineer.

3.05 SCHEDULE

Schedule of Sealants

Application	Sealant	Color
Vertical and horizontal expansion and construction joints in concrete structures unless noted otherwise herein or on Drawings.	Type 1	To closely match adjacent surfaces or mortar and as selected by the Owner.
Vertical and horizontal joints bordered on both sides by masonry, precast concrete, natural stone or other porous building material, unless noted otherwise herein or on Drawings.	Type 2	To closely match adjacent surfaces or mortar and as selected by the Owner.
Vertical and horizontal joints bordered on both sides by painted metals, anodized aluminum, mill finished aluminum, PVC, glass or other non-porous building material.	Type 3	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.
Masonry expansion and control joints less than 1¼" wide.	Type 2	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.
Masonry expansion and control joints equal or greater than 1¼ inches wide and not to exceed 2”.	Type 1	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.
Interior – wood trim and finish joints.	Type 5	Color to be selected by Owner
Sanitary areas, joints in ceramic tile, around plumbing fixtures, countertops, and back splashes.[1]	Type 4	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.
Perimeter sealing of doors, windows, louvers, piping, ducts, and electrical conduit.[2]	Type 2 OR Type 3	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.
Below thresholds.	Type 6	Manufacturer's standard
Submerged in liquids.[3,4]	Type 1	Manufacturer's standard
Submerged in liquids with high concentration of chlorine (> 2 ppm) or wastewater.	Type 7	Manufacturer’s standard
Horizontal Joints exposed to vehicular or pedestrian traffic.	Type 8	To closely match adjacent surfaces.
Other joints indicated on the drawings or customarily sealed but not listed.	Type recommended by manufacturer	To closely match adjacent surfaces and as selected by the Owner.

[1] Sealant for Laboratory Countertop shall be as recommended by countertop manufacturer.
[2] Not used.

[3] Sealants which will come in contact with potable water shall meet the requirements of NSF 61.
[4] Where sealant will be immersed in liquid chemicals verify compatibility prior to installation of sealant.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 11 13
STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, material, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 04 20 00 – Unit Masonry

B. Section 08 71 00 – Finish Hardware

C. Section 09 90 00 – Painting

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications, the work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. ANSI/DHI A115 – Series Specifications for Steel Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware

2. ANSI/SDI 100 – Recommended Specifications: Standard Steel Doors and Frames

3. ASTM A153 – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

4. ASTM A366/A 366M – Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Cold-Rolled Commercial Quality

5. ASTM A525 – Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process

6. ASTM E152 – Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

7. NFPA 80 – Standard for Fire Doors and Windows

1.04 SUBMITTALS

021816

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's product data.

2. Complete layout and installation drawings and schedules with clearly marked dimensions. Indicate details of construction, profiles, gauges, reinforcing and location of doors and frames.

3. Certify that shop applied primer is compatible with finish coats specified in Section 09 90 00 - Painting.

4. Florida Product Approval for windloads shown on Drawings.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI/SDI 100.

B. Locations where fire-rated door and frame assemblies are required, provide assemblies which comply with NFPA 80 and have been tested and labeled in accordance with ASTM E152 by agency acceptable to governing authorities.

C. Provide certificate or label for fire-rated doors which exceed sizes tested from a independent testing and inspection agency. Certificate or label shall indicate that door and frame assembly conforms to the requirements of the design.

D. Provide stairwell doors which have temperature rise rating of 450 degrees F maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products boxed or crated suitable for storage.

B. Store products under cover, raised above ground level, and stacked to prevent warping and damage.

C. Replace items damaged during delivery, storage, or handling.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Curries Company, Mason City, Iowa

2. Amweld Building Products, Inc.

3. Steelcraft, Cincinnati, Ohio

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheets: Commercial quality hot or cold rolled. Galvanize sheet steel in accordance with ASTM A525, commercial quality, A60 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.

B. Anchorages: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge.

C. Fasteners and Inserts: Galvanized units standard with manufacturer.

D. Primer: Rust-inhibitive coating, suitable to receive finish coatings specified in Section 09 90 00 - Painting.

2.03 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop-fabricate assemblies to greatest extent possible.

B. Fabricate exterior and interior doors, frames and louvers from hot-dip galvanized steel.

C. Where exposed screws and fasteners are used, provide countersunk, flat Phillips-head fasteners.

D. Fabricate exterior, vestibule and other doors indicated to be insulated in the schedule with foam in place insulation. Door and frame assembly shall have a maximum calculated core U-Value of 0.10 BTU per hour per square foot per degree F in accordance with ASTM C518.

E. Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series specifications for door and frame hardware preparation. Prepare door and frame using final hardware schedule and templates from hardware supplier.

F. Shop Painting

1. Clean surfaces thoroughly before beginning painting operations, removing rust, scale, oil, grease and other contaminants.

2. Apply primer evenly to provide full protection of all exposed surfaces.

2.04 STEEL (HOLLOW METAL) DOORS

A. Provide doors of size and style indicated.

1. Exterior Doors: SDI-100, Grade III, extra heavy-duty, Model 4, seamless, 16 gauge for doors less than four feet wide and 14 gauge for doors greater than four feet wide.

2. Interior Doors: SDI 100, Grade II, heavy-duty, Model 3, seamless, 18 gauge for doors less than four feet wide and 16 gauge for doors greater than four feet wide.

B. Top and bottom closures on all doors and a weather tight cap on all exterior doors.

C. Where indicated, provide doors with sightproof and weatherproof louvers with frames formed of 18-gauge (minimum) frame and 24-gauge (minimum) galvanized steel blades. Provide louvers with 50% free area. Exterior doors indicated to have louvers shall include an 18x14 aluminum insect screen.

D. Glass lite kits shall be provided to accommodate glass shown or specified. Fame material shall be 20 gauge (minimum) cold rolled steel with mitered corners.

2.05 STEEL (HOLLOW METAL) DOOR FRAMES

A. Fabricate door frames with mitered and welded corners.

B. Provide concealed fastenings, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide galvanized plaster guards or mortar boxes at back of finish hardware cutouts.

D. Drill frames to receive three silencers on strike jamb of side swinging doors, and two silencers on heads of double doors, unless doors are to receive weatherstripping.

E. Provide a minimum of three jamb anchors per jamb for doors 96 inches or less in height and one additional anchor for each additional 24 inches of height.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. All doors and frames specified herein shall be neatly installed in designated locations indicated on Drawings.

B. Install frames in accordance with SDI-105 and as herein specified.

C. Install doors in accordance with SDI-100 and as herein specified.

D. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.

3.02 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Provide protection against stains, dirt or damage to the finished installation. Adjust doors for proper operation.

B. Immediately after erection and prior to finish painting, remove rusted or damaged prime coat and apply touch-up primer compatible with original primer and final coats.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 33 23
ROLL-UP DOORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 08 71 00 – Finish Hardware

B. Section 09 90 00 – Painting

C. Electrical connections for motors, and accessories are specified in Division 26.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's literature and installation instructions.

2. Drawings showing details of the products, connections to adjoining materials, and schedules showing sizes and types.

3. Finish and color samples.

4. UL certification for fire-rated doors and frames, including oversized doors.

5. Florida Product Approval for windloads shown on Drawings.

1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products in original and unbroken packages, containers, or bundles bearing the name of the manufacturer.

B. Store materials carefully in an area that is protected from the elements, and in a manner that will prevent damage or marring of the door.

090111

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with these specifications provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Cornell Iron Works, Inc.

2. Atlas Roll-lite Door Corporation.

3. The Cookson Company.

4. Overhead Door Corporation.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Door Curtains

1. Provide insulated aluminum curtain slats with interlocking sections designed to meet windload shown on Structural Drawings. Provide high strength endlocks on alternating slats and windlocks as required to meet design windload. Bottom bar as recommended by manufacturer for type of curtain specified with combination weatherstrip and reversing edge for motor operated doors.

B. Guides

1. Form from galvanized structural steel angles with a minimum 3/16 inch thickness. Provide windlock bars as required to meet design windload. Attach guides to jamb with not less than 3/8 inch steel bolts anchored not more than 30 inches on center.

C. Counterbalance Assembly

1. Counterbalance by means of adjustable steel helical torsion springs, mounted around a steel shaft and mounted in a spring barrel and connected to the door curtain with the required barrel rings. Use grease -sealed ball bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for all rotating members.

a. Fabricate spring barrel of hot-formed, structural-quality carbon steel, galvanized welded or seamless pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support the roll-up of curtain without distortion of slats and limit barrel deflection to not more than .03 inches per foot of span under full load.

b. Fabricate spring balance of one or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs.

c. Fabricate torsion rod for counterbalance shaft of case-hardened steel, of required size to hold the fixed spring ends and carry the torsional load.

d. Provide mounting brackets of manufacturer's standard design, either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate with bellmouth guide groove for curtain.

D. Door Hoods

1. Formed of 24 gauge galvanized steel with baked on polyester primer. Form to enclose coiled curtain at opening head. Reinforce top and bottom edges. Provide closed ends for surface mounted units. Provide intermediate supports as required to prevent excessive sag.

E. Operation: Provide motor operator with auxiliary hand chain.

1. Endless hot-dip galvanized hand chain of length so bottom of chain is four feet above finished floor. Provide sprockets and reduction gears for ease of operation and a maximum pull of 35 pounds.

2. Provide heavy duty motor operator, 480v, single phase, with open drip-proof motor, removable without affecting auxiliary hand chain or setting of limit switches. Furnish motor complete with controller, over-current protection and push-button station marked "Open-Close-Stop".

F. Weatherstripping

1. Equip bottom bar with vinyl weatherstrip. Provide motor operated doors with vinyl sensing/weather edge interlocked with motor to reverse the door if sensing edge encounters an obstruction. Equip end guides with weatherstripping to seal exterior face of door curtain. Equip hood with neoprene air baffle to close top of hood with curtain.

G. Finish

1. Aluminum to be color anodized. Aluminum shall receive manufacturer’s premium powder coat system. Galvanized steel to be chemically cleaned and shop primed. Parts inaccessible after installation shall be given an additional coat in the shop. Color shall be selected by Owner from full range of colors.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine substrates and adjoining conditions, where roll-up door is to be installed. Correct unsatisfactory conditions prior to proceeding with the work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install units and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, jamb, and head moldings, anchors, inserts, hangers and equipment supports in accordance with

final approved shop drawings, manufacturer's printed instructions and as specified herein.

B. Field touch-up shop applied finishes of surfaces scratched or abraded during installation.

C. Do all cutting, drilling, fitting and other work of similar character required for fitting and setting units in connection with this work and adjoining work of other trades.

3.03 PROTECTION, CLEANING AND ADJUSTMENT

A. Protect units prior, during and after installation.

B. After installation, lubricate, test and adjust to operate easily and freely from warps, twists or distortion and weathertight fit.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 71 00
FINISH HARDWARE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of Work as shown on Drawings and specified herein.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 08 11 13 – Steel Doors and Frames

1.3 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. ANSI/BHMA 156

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturers data for each item of hardware. Include installation and maintenance instructions.

2. Furnish templates to fabricators of other work which is to receive hardware.

3. Hardware schedule organized into "hardware sets," indicating complete designation of every item required for each door or opening. Furnish initial draft of schedule at the earliest possible date, in order to facilitate the fabrication of other work (such as hollow metal frames) which may be critical in the project construction schedule. Furnish final draft of schedule after samples, manufacturer's data sheets, coordination with shop drawings for other work, delivery schedules and similar information has been completed and accepted.

4. Prepare a keying schedule in consultation with the Owner.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

010815

A. Provide materials, assemblies, equipment and services from a single source for each category except that locksets, latchsets and cylinders must originate from the same manufacturer.

B. Replace any item of finish hardware which cannot be installed or will not function properly.

C. Provide hardware complying with NFPA 80 and UL labeled for fire rated openings.

D. Furnish templates or information to door and frame manufacturer. Coordinate between the manufacturers where two or more articles of hardware are to be mounted on the same door. Verify all dimensions, new and existing.

E. Coordinate hardware with other work. Furnish hardware items of proper design for use on doors and frames of the thicknesses, profile, swing, security and similar requirements indicated, as necessary for proper installation and function.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Handle, store, distribute, protect and install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions or recommendations. Deliver packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact.

B. Properly mark or label, so each piece of hardware is readily identifiable with the approved hardware schedule. Tag each change key or otherwise identifying the door of which its cylinder is intended. Where double cylinder functions are used or where it is not obvious which is the key side of a door, appropriate instructions shall be included with the lock and hardware schedule.

C. Provide secure storage area for hardware.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

A. Hand of Door

1. Drawings show swing or hand of each door leaf (left, right, reverse bevel, etc.). Furnish hardware for proper installation and operation of door.

B. Manufacturer's Name Plate

1. Do not use manufacturer's products which have name or trade name displayed in a visible location (omit removable nameplates), except in conjunction with required UL labels.

C. Base Metals

1. Produce hardware units of the basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's non-corrosive metal alloy, composition, temper and hardness but in no case of lesser quality material than specified.

D. Fasteners

1. Manufacture hardware to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation. Do not provide hardware which has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.

2. Furnish stainless steel fasteners for installation with each hardware item. Exposed finish (under any condition) to match hardware finish or surfaces of adjacent work. Match the finish of adjacent work as closely as possible, including surfaces to receive painted finish.

3. Provide fasteners which are compatible with unit fastened and the substrate, and which will not cause corrosion of deterioration of finish hardware, base material or fastener.

E. Tools for Maintenance

1. Furnish a complete set of specialized tools as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, removal and replacement of builder’s hardware.

F. Hardware Finishes

1. Stainless steel, US32D unless otherwise noted.

2. Closers shall have a USP finish unless otherwise noted.

G. Field Checks

1. Make periodic checks during installation of finish hardware to ascertain the correctness of the installation. After completion of the work, certify in writing, that all items of finish hardware have been installed, adjusted and are functioning in accordance with Specification requirements.

2.2 DESCRIPTION OF PRODUCTS

A. Hinges

1. Stainless steel full mortise concealed oil impregnated ball bearing type, five knuckle with non-rising pins for interior doors, and non-removable and non-rising pins for exterior doors. Tips shall be flat.

2. Sizes and weights of hinges:

a. Doors up to 36 inches – 4-1/2 inches regular weight.

b. Doors 36 inches to 40 inches – 5 inches regular weight.

c. Doors 40 inches to 48 inches – 5 inches heavy weight.

d. Fire Rated Doors up to 36 inches – 5 inches regular weight.

3. Provide three hinges per door leaf up to and including 90 inches and one additional hinge for each 30 inches of additional height.

4. Acceptable Manufacturers: Stanley Hardware, Hager Hardware

B. Continuous Geared Hinges

1. Acceptable manufacturers:

Ives	Hager	Select
112HD	780-112HD	SL11HD
224HD	780-224HD	SL24HD

2. Provide one of the above models of continuous hinges as specified. Coordinate hinge types with the door supplier. Hinges shall be provided by a single manufacturer.

3. Clearance: Coordinate clearance requirements between hinge, door and frame.

4. Fasteners: Per manufacturer's recommendations.

5. Material: Aluminum 6063-T6

6. Length: Hinge length shall be full height of door minus manufacturer requirements (1" max).

7. Door Reinforcement: Minimum 16 gauge channel.

8. Frame Reinforcement: Minimum 16 gauge channel.

9. Provide electric power transfer (EPT) cutouts, or electric through-wire options as specified in hardware groups.

C. Locksets and Latchsets

1. Stainless steel, heavy-duty mortise type conforming to ANSI A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1.

2. Wrought steel box strikes.

3. Stainless steel deadbolt with 1" throw approval.

4. 2 3/4 inch back set, 3/4 inch throw, two-piece anti-friction latchbolt.

5. Non-ferrous critical internal parts.

6. Cylinders shall be manufactured to conform to grand master key program.

7. Trim Design: LWM with wrought escutcheon by Corbin\Russwin or equal lever with return. Provide knurling on all levers leading into hazardous rooms and electrical rooms.

8. Acceptable Manufacturers: Yale, Corbin\Russwin, Schlage

D. Keys and Keying

1. Provide construction keyed, removable core master key system as directed by the Owner.

2. Furnish ten core removal keys and a quantity of master keys as directed by the Owner, not to exceed ten each per group. Furnish a minimum of 15 change keys per cylinder.

3. Furnish cylinders with six pin cores.

4. Provide a key schedule showing all key numbers and spaces to which each permits entry. The schedule and key cabinet, along with key gathering envelopes containing keys for each lock endorsed with lock number and space designation, shall be turned over to the Owner. Install keys with proper tags in the key cabinet. Establish a construction master key, and apply to locks and cylinders, except for closets, within major spaces. Locks for closets shall be shipped unlocked and the keys delivered to the Owner with the balance of the keys.

5. Acceptable Manufacturers: Yale, Corbin\Russwin, Schlage

E. Key Cabinet

1. Provide a wall mounted key cabinet with baked enamel interior finish and exterior prime coat with cylinder keyed to project master key system. Cabinet shall accommodate all keys in the project, plus twenty (20) percent additional.

a. Provide cabinet with key control system consisting of permanent key markers, temporary key markers, "out" key control tags, and cross indexing cards. Instruct Owner personnel how to use system.

b. Acceptable Manufacturers: Yale, Bommer

F. Panic Hardware

1. Heavy duty push bar exit device, U.L. labeled, with corrosive resistant construction.

2. ANSI A156.3, Grade 1.

3. Exterior trim to closely match locksets.

4. Single/active doors: mortise type.

5. Double doors: concealed vertical rod.

6. ANSI Function 08.

7. Acceptable manufacturer's: Von-Duprin, Adams Rite Manufacturing Company, Corbin/Russwin

G. Closers

1. Cast iron case with seamless one-piece forged steel spring tub.

2. Heavy duty forged steel arm.

3. Non-sized fully adjustable from size 1-6.

4. Backcheck intensity and location valves.

5. Delayed action closing.

6. Full metal cover.

7. Mechanical hold open device, except at fire rated doors.

8. ANSI 156.4, Grade 1.

9. Conforms to ADA 5 lbf. maximum door opening force requirement for non-fire rated interior doors.

10. Provide mounting brackets, and fasteners required for proper attachment.

11. Provide closers at fire rated doors.

12. Acceptable manufacturers: Corbin/Russwin, LCN, Norton

H. Overhead Door Holder

1. Heavy duty bronze, surface mounted with positive grip holder.

2. Track: extruded bronze.

3. Degree of opening: 85 – 110.

4. Finish: Satin Chrome Plated.

5. Acceptable manufacturers: Corbin/Russwin, Glynn-Johnson, Norton.

I. Door Stops and Bumpers

1. Finish: Satin chrome plated.

2. Floor mounted door stops.

    a. Acceptable manufacturers and products: H.B. Ives 444, Hager Hardware Model 267F, and Glynn-Johnson Model FB36.

3. Wall bumpers

    a. Acceptable manufacturers and products: H.B. Ives Model 407, Hagar Hardware Model 234W, and Glynn-Johnson Model 60C.

J. Flush Bolts

1. U.L. listed.

2. Forged brass construction, 1/2" diameter flattened bolt tip, 12" long rod for doors 7’-4” tall or less. Provide longer rod for taller doors to keep lever about six foot above floor.

3. Provide flush bolts top and bottom of door.

4. Fit standard ANSI door preparation.

5. Acceptable manufacturers: Glynn-Johnson, Hager Hardware, and H.B. Ives.

K. Automatic Flush Bolts

1. U.L. listed.

2. Forged brass or stainless steel construction, 1/2" diameter flattened bolt tip, 12" long rod.

3. Fully automatic.

4. Provide top and bottom bolts.

5. Operation shall incorporate an override function.

6. Tested for a minimum of 100,000 cycles.

7. Provide dust proof strikes.

8. Acceptable manufacturers: Glynn-Johnson, Hager Hardware, and H.B. Ives.

L. Push Plates and Pulls

1. Push and pull plates: 4"x16"x0.050" stainless steel.

2. Pulls: through bolted, 1" diameter, 2 1/2" projection, 12" centers, stainless steel.

3. Acceptable manufacturers: H.B. Ives, Hager Hardware, and Builders Brass Works.

M. Coordinator

1. U.L. labeled and tested for 100,000 cycles.

2. Stop mounted, provide filler strips to fully cover stop.

3. Adjustable holding power and override feature.

4. Acceptable manufacturers: Gylnn-Johnson, Hager Hardware, and H.B. Ives.

N. Kickplates

1. Stainless steel, 0.050" thick, beveled 3 sides, 8" high, width 2 inches less than door width.

2. Acceptable manufacturers: H.B. Ives, Hagar Hardware, and Builders Brass Works.

O. Silencers

1. Rubber silencers: 3 for each single door and 2 for each double doors.

2. Rubber Silencers at fiberglass door locations shall be self-adhesive type.

3. Acceptable manufacturers and products: (Hollow metal doors and frames): Glynn-Johnson Models 64 or 65, Hager Hardware Models 308D or 307D, H.B. Ives Models 20 or 21.

4. Acceptable manufacturers and products: (Fiberglass doors and frames): H. B. Ives Model SR66 or equal.

P. Thresholds

1. Extruded aluminum saddle type and fiberglass for opening with fiberglass door and frames. Provide with stainless steel fasteners. Six inches wide or as shown on drawings.

2. Acceptable manufacturers: Pemko, National Guard Products, Incorporated, and Zero International. Fiberglass threshold by fiberglass door and frame manufacturer.

Q. Door Bottom Seal

1. Extruded aluminum with neoprene seal.

2. Acceptable manufacturers and products: Pemko Model 57, Zero International Model 328 and National Guard Products, Inc. Model 96.

R. Weatherstripping

1. Extruded aluminum with neoprene seal.

2. U.L. Labeled.

3. Acceptable manufacturers and products: Pemko Model 294, National Guard Products, Inc. Model 190, and Zero International Model 328.

S. Knox Box

1. Furnish a Knox Box for emergency entry access mounted to main gate or as directed by the local fire official. Knox Box shall be Model required by fire official complete with spare key to unlock doors on site.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Templates

1. After the hardware schedule is approved furnish to the various manufacturers, required blueprint templates for fabrication purposes. Templates shall be made available not more than ten (10) days after receipt of the approved hardware schedule.

B. Packaging and Marking

1. Ship hardware with proper non-corrosive fastenings for secure application. Each package of hardware shall be legibly marked indicating the part of the work for which it is intended. Markings shall correspond with the item numbers shown on the approved hardware schedule. Keys shall be tagged within each package set and plainly marked on the face of the envelope with the key control number, door designation and all identification as necessary.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install hardware in a manner which will eliminate cracks on surfaces.

B. Mount hardware units at heights recommended in "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware" by BHMA, except as otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

C. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.

D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as is necessary for proper installation and operation.

E. Drill and countersink units which are not factory-prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with factory standards.

F. Cut and fit thresholds and floor covers to profile of door frames, with mitered corners and hair-line joints. Join units with concealed welds or concealed mechanical joints. Cut smooth openings for spindles, bolts and similar items, if any.

G. Screw thresholds to substrate with No. 10 or larger screws, of the proper type for permanent anchorage and of bronze or stainless steel which will not corrode in contact with the threshold metal.

H. Set thresholds in a bed of either butyl rubber sealant or polyisobutylene mastic sealant to completely fill concealed voids and exclude moisture. Do not plug drainage holes or block weeps. Remove excess sealant.

3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN

A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function. Lubricate moving parts as recommended by manufacturer. Replace units which cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application.

B. Final Adjustment

1. One week prior to acceptance or occupancy make a final check and adjustment of all hardware items. Clean and relubricate operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices and compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

C. Instruct Owner personnel in proper adjustment and maintenance of hardware and hardware finishes, during the final adjustment of hardware.

3.4 HARDWARE SETS

A. The door hardware sets on the Drawings indicates functional and general requirements. Items shall be quality and finish as specified. Hardware set identification refers to set numbers indicated on the Drawings. Provide hardware required to meet Code requirements. Consult Drawings for set number required.

B. Hardware shall be as follows:

Table 1: Hardware Sets

Set	Items	Set	Items
1	1. Cylinder (Provide Padlocks for Roll Up Doors) 2. Remainder of hardware by door manufacture		
2	1. Hinges 2. Panic Hardware 3. Door Closer 4. Kickplate 5. Weatherstripping 6. Threshold 7. Door Bottom Seal		

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 90 00
PAINTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for complete execution of Work shown on Drawings and Specified herein.

B. Section Includes:

1. Paint Materials
2. Shop Painting
3. Field Painting
    a. Surface Preparation
    b. Piping and Equipment Identification
    c. Schedule of Colors
    d. Work in Confined Spaces
    e. OSHA Safety Colors

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants, and Caulking

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these specifications, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. SSPC – The Society for Protective Coatings Standards
    a. SSPC-Vis 1 – Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Structures
    b. SSPC-SP2 – Hand Tool Cleaning
    c. SSPC-SP3 – Power Tool Cleaning
    d. SSPC-SP5/NACE 1 – White Metal Blast Cleaning

021219

e. SSPC-SP6/NACE 3 – Commercial Blast Cleaning

f. SSPC-SP7/NACE 4 – Brush-off Blast Cleaning

g. SSPC-SP10/NACE 2 – Near-White Metal Blast

h. SSPC-SP11 – Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal

i. SSPC-SP13/NACE6 – Surface Preparation of Concrete

2. ICRI – International Concrete Repair Institute

3. NACE – National Association of Corrosion Engineers

4. NAFP – The National Association of Pipe Fabricators

5. ASTM D1737 – Test Method for Elongation of Attached Organic Coatings with Cylindrical Mandrel Apparatus

6. ASTM B117 – Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing

7. ASTM D4060 – Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coating by the Taber Abraser

8. ASTM D3359 – Method for Measuring Adhesion by Tape Test

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Manufacturer's literature and Material Safety Data Sheets for each product.

2. Painting schedule identifying surface preparation and paint systems proposed. Cross reference with Tables 1 and 2. Provide the name of the paint manufacturer, and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer's representative who will inspect the work. Submit schedule for approval as soon as possible following the Award of Contract, so approved schedule may be used to identify colors and specify shop paint systems for fabricated items. Manufacturer shall substitute paint system with equal performance where required for VOC compliance.

3. Contractor shall submit Q.C. Inspection plan describing all tests and inspections task to be performed. Include copy of daily log showing environmental conditions measurements and frequency. Copy of completed log shall be provided at completion of work.

1.05 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Work shall include surface preparation, paint application, inspection of painted surfaces and corrective action required, protection of adjacent surfaces, cleanup and appurtenant work required for the proper painting of all surfaces to be painted. Surfaces to be painted are designated within the Painting Schedule and may include new and existing piping, miscellaneous metals, equipment, buildings, exterior fiberglass, exposed electrical conduit and appurtenances.

B. Perform Work in strict accordance with manufacturer's published recommendations and instructions, unless the Engineer stipulates that deviations will be for the benefit of the project.

C. Paint surfaces which are customarily painted, whether indicated to be painted or not, with painting system applied to similar surfaces, areas and environments, and as approved by Engineer.

D. Submerged ferrous metal, piping, and internal pump surfaces within potable water facilities or potable water distribution systems shall be painted with NSF 61/600 approved coatings.

E. Piping and equipment shall receive color coding and identification. Equipment shall be the same color as the piping system.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Painting operations shall be accomplished by skilled craftsman and licensed by the state/commonwealth to perform painting work.

B. Provide a letter indicating that the painting applicator has five years of experience, and 5 references which show previously successful application of the specified or comparable painting systems. Include the name, address, and the telephone number for the Owner of each installation for which the painting applicator provided services.

C. Contractor shall coordinate Q.C Inspections.

D. Notify Owner and Engineer at completion of surface preparation, priming application and final cure to allow inspection by Owner and Engineer or their Third-Party Inspector.

1.07 STORAGE AND DELIVERY

A. Bring materials to the job site in the original sealed and labeled containers.

B. Container label to include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.

C. Store paint materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and a maximum of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 GENERAL INFORMATION

A. The term "paint" is defined as both paints and coatings including emulsions, enamels, stains, varnishes, sealers, and other coatings whether organic or inorganic and whether used as prime, intermediate, or finish coats.

B. Purchase paint from an approved manufacturer. Manufacturer shall assign a representative to inspect application of their product both in the shop and field. The manufacturer's representative shall submit a report to the Engineer at the completion the Work identifying products used and verifying that surfaces were properly prepared, products were properly applied, and the paint systems were proper for the exposure and service.

C. Provide primers and intermediate coats produced by same manufacturer as finish coat. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer, and only within manufacturer's recommended limits.

D. Ensure compatibility of total paint system for each substrate. Test shop primed equipment delivered to the site for compatibility with final paint system. Provide an acceptable barrier coat or totally remove shop applied paint system when incompatible with system specified, and repaint with specified paint system.

E. Use painting materials suitable for the intended use and recommended by paint manufacturer for the intended use.

F. Require that personnel perform work in strict accordance with the latest requirements of OSHA Safety and Health Standards for construction. Meet or exceed requirements of regulatory agencies having jurisdiction and the manufacturer's published instructions and recommendations. Maintain a copy of all Material Safety Data Sheets at the job site of each product being used prior to commencement of work. Provide and require that personnel use protective and safety equipment in or about the project site. Provide respiratory devices, eye and face protection, ventilation, ear protection, illumination and other safety devices required to provide a safe work environment.

2.02 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Tnemec Company Inc.

2. PPG

3. CARBOLINE

4. Sherwin-Williams

5. International Paints (Akzo Nobel)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SHOP PAINTING

A. Shop prime fabricated steel and equipment with at least one shop coat of prime paint compatible with finish paint system specified. Prepare surface to be shop painted in strict accordance with paint manufacturer's recommendations and as specified. Finish coats may be shop applied, if approved by the Engineer. Package, store and protect shop painted items until they are incorporated into Work. Repair painted surfaces damaged during handling, transporting, storage, or installation to provide a painting system equal to the original painting received at the shop.

B. Identify surface preparation and shop paints on Shop Drawings. Verify compatibility with field applied paints.

C. Coordinate shop painting and field coating to ensure item is delivered and field coating occurs within recoat window of shop painted system requirements.

3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. General

1. Surfaces to be painted shall be clean and dry, and free of dust, rust, scale, and foreign matter. No solvent cleaning, power or hand tool cleaning shall be permitted unless approved by the Engineer.

2. Protect or remove, during painting operations, hardware, accessories, machined surfaces, nameplates, lighting fixtures, and similar items not intended to be painted prior to cleaning and painting. Reposition items removed upon completion of painting operations.

3. Examine surfaces to be coated to determine that surfaces are suitable for specified surface preparation and painting. Report to Engineer surfaces found to be unsuitable in writing. Do not start surface preparation until unsuitable surfaces have been corrected. Starting surface preparation precludes subsequent claim that such surfaces were unsuitable for the specified surface preparation or painting.

4. Surface preparation shall be in accordance with specifications and manufacturer's recommendations. Provide additional surface preparation, and fill coats where

manufacturer recommends additional surface preparation, in addition to requirements of specification.

5. Touch-up shop or field applied coatings damaged by surface preparation or any other activity, with the same shop or field applied coating; even to the extent of applying an entire coat when required to correct damage prior to application of the next coating. Touchup coats are in addition to the specified applied systems, and not considered a field coat.

6. Protect motors and other equipment during blasting operation to ensure blasting material is not blown into motors or other equipment. Inspect motors and other equipment after blasting operations and certify that no damage occurred, or where damage occurred, the proper remedial action was taken.

7. Field paint shop painted equipment in compliance with Color Coding and as approved by Engineer.

B. Metal Surface Preparation

1. Prepare all welds to a minimum NACE weld preparation level “C” per NACE Standard SP0178. Provide additional weld preparation where required by the coating manufacturer. Contractor shall provide NACE SP0178 weld mold visual aids on site for evaluation of all weld preparation.

2. Conform to current The Society for Protective Coatings Standards (SSPC) Specifications for metal surface preparation. Use SSPC-Vis-1 pictorial standards or NACE visual standards TM-01-70 or TM-01-75 to determine cleanliness of abrasive blast cleaned steel.

3. Perform blast cleaning operations for metal when following conditions exist:

   a. Moisture is not present on the surface.

   b. Relative humidity is below 80%.

   c. Ambient and surface temperatures are 5°F or greater than the dew point temperature.

   d. Painting or drying of paint is not being performed in the area.

   e. Equipment is in good operating condition.

   f. Proper ventilation, illumination, and other safety procedures and equipment are being provided and followed.

4. Abrasive blast ferrous metals to be shop primed, or component mechanical equipment in accordance with SSPC-SP5, White Metal Blast.

5. Abrasive blast field prepared ferrous metals in accordance with SSPC-SP10, Near White Metal Blast, where metal is to be submerged, in a corrosive environment, or in severe service. Provide a 3.0 mil minimum angular anchor profile unless recommended otherwise by the coating manufacturer in writing.

6. Abrasive blast field prepared ferrous metals in accordance with SSPC-SP6 Commercial Blast, where metal is to be used in mild or moderate service, or non-corrosive environment or weathering exposure. Provide a 1.5 mil minimum angular anchor profile unless recommended otherwise by the coating manufacturer in writing.

7. Clean nonferrous metals, copper, or galvanized metal surfaces in accordance to SSPC-SP1, Solvent Cleaning, or give one coat of metal passivator or metal conditioner compatible with the complete paint system. Galvanized metal shall be prepared in accordance with SSPC SP-16. Abrasive blast clean to increase mechanical adhesion in accordance with ASTM D6386, Standard Practice for Preparation of Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coated Iron and Steel Product and Hardware Surfaces for Painting when required by coating manufacturer. Provide a 1.5 mil minimum angular anchor profile unless recommended otherwise by the coating manufacturer in writing.

8. Abrasive blast clean internal and external ductile iron pipe surfaces prior to coating in accordance with NAPF 500-03-04, Surface Preparations Standard for Abrasive Blast Cleaning of Ductile Iron Pipe. Abrasive blast clean internal and external cast ductile iron and cast-iron fitting surfaces in accordance with NAPF-03-05.

9. Prime cleaned metals immediately after cleaning to prevent rusting.

10. Clean rusted metals down to bright metal by abrasive blasting and immediately field primed.

C. Concrete Surface Preparation

1. Cure concrete a minimum of 28 days at 75° F before surface preparation, and painting begins. Allow more time at lower temperatures if specified by paint manufacturer.

2. Test concrete for pH and salts using test methods recommended by the paint manufacturer. A minimum of one test per 1000 square feet of area to be coated shall be performed unless approved otherwise by Engineer. Do not begin surface preparation, or painting until acceptable to manufacturer.

3. Moisture content of concrete and masonry surfaces shall conform to manufacturer's recommended limits, and as listed in SSPC-SP13/NACE 6 Section 6 Acceptance Criteria Table 1. Floor surfaces to be coated shall be tested in accordance with ASTM F1869 – Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride or as required by the coating manufacturer. Moisture vapor transmission shall not

exceed three pounds per 1,000 square feet in a 24-hour period or less if specified by Coating Manufacturer. Vertical and horizontal overhead surfaces shall be tested in accordance with ASTM F2170 – Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete using in situ Probes (relative humidity shall not exceed 80% or as required by the coating manufacturer) or with ASTM D4263 – Standard Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Test Method (test results shall be no moisture present). Engineer or Coating Manufacturer Representative shall specify all test locations. A minimum of one test per 1000 square feet of area to be coated shall be performed unless approved otherwise by Engineer.

4. Prepare concrete surfaces to receive coatings in accordance with NACE 6/SSPC-13 – Joint Surface Preparation Standards and ICRI Technical Guidelines. Remove contaminants, open bugholes, surface voids, air pockets, and other subsurface irregularities using abrasive blasting, shot blasting, water jetting or mechanical abrading. Use dry, oil-free air for blasting operations. Surface texture after blasting shall achieve profile as required by manufacturer or where not defined by manufacturer, profile shall be a minimum ICRI-CSP 5 surface profile. Remove residual abrasives, dust, and loose particles by vacuuming or other approved method.

5. Surface defects, such as hollow areas, bugholes, honeycombs, and voids shall be filled with polymeric or waterborne epoxy cementitious filler compatible with painting system. Complete fill coats may be used in addition to specified painting system and as approved by the Engineer. Fins, form marks, and all protrusions or rough edges shall be removed.

6. Repair existing concrete surfaces which are deteriorated to the point that surface preparation exposes aggregate with fill coats or patching mortar as recommended by paint manufacturer and as directed by the Engineer.

7. Clean concrete of all dust, form oils, curing compounds, oil, tar, laitance, efflorescence, loose mortar, and other foreign materials before paints are applied.

8. To ease coating around outside corners, provide ¾-inch chamfered edges on all new concrete outside corners and grind existing concrete outside corners to a minimum radius of ¾-inch.

9. Unless recommended otherwise by the coating manufacturer, provide ¼” deep by ¼” wide tool cut terminations at 1-inch maximum from all coating edges for anchorage. Provide terminations around all equipment, piping, openings, gates, top and bottom of walls, stop locations of each day’s work and overlap onto previously completed work. Transition coating 3-inches onto interior lining of piping except where coating compatibility concerns are noted by coating manufacturer.

10. Apply epoxy or polymeric filler compatible with painting system to all inside corners of areas to be coated with a margin trowel to form a continuous 45-degree cant cove across corners with a minimum dimension of 1.5-inch. Roughen or prepare cured filler as recommended by coating manufacturer for proper coating adhesion.

11. All equipment grouting shall be installed and cured prior to starting coating work. Coating shall be applied over grout up to the edges of all equipment, gates and uninterrupted piping unless specifically noted otherwise.

D. Wood

1. Clean wood surfaces free of all foreign matter, with cracks and nail holes and other defects properly filled and smoothed. Remove sap and resin by scraping and wipe clean with rags dampened with mineral spirits.

2. Saturate end grain, cut wood, knots, and pitch pockets with an appropriate sealer before priming.

3. Prime and backprime wood trim before setting in place.

4. After prime coat has dried, fill nailholes, cracks, open joints, and other small holes with approved spackling putty. Lightly sand wood trim prior to applying second coat of paint.

E. Castings

1. Prepare castings for painting by applying a brush or a knife-applied filler. Fillers are not to be used to conceal cracks, gasholes, or excessive porosity.

2. Apply one coat of primer with a minimum thickness of 1.2 mils in addition to coats specified. Allow sufficient drying time before further handling.

F. Masonry

1. Cure for a minimum of 30 days prior to paint application.

2. Clean masonry surfaces free from all dust, dirt, oil, grease, loose mortar, chalky deposits, efflorescence, and other foreign materials.

3. Test masonry for moisture content. Use test method recommended by paint manufacturer. Do not begin painting until moisture content is acceptable to manufacturer.

G. Gypsum Drywall

1. Sand joint compound with sandpaper to provide a smooth flat surface. Avoid sanding of adjacent drywall paper.

2. Remove dust, dirt, and other contaminants.

H. Previously-Painted Surfaces

1. Totally remove existing paint when: surface is to be submerged in a severe environment, paint is less than 75% intact, brittle, eroded or has underfilm rusting.

2. Surfaces which are greater than 75% intact require removal of failed paints and then spot primed. Spot priming is in addition to coats specified.

3. Remove surface contamination such as oil, grease, loose paint, mill scale, dirt, foreign matter, rust, mold, mildew, mortar, efflorescence, and sealers.

4. Clean and dull glossy surfaces prior to painting in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

5. Check existing paints for compatibility with new paint system. If incompatible, totally remove existing paint system or apply a barrier coat recommended by the paint manufacturer. Remove existing paints of undetermined origin. Prepare a test patch of approximately 3 square feet over existing paint. Allow test patch to dry thoroughly and test for adhesion. If proper adhesion is not achieved remove existing paint and repaint.

3.03 APPLICATION OF PAINT

A. Apply paint by experienced painters with brushes or other applicators approved by the Engineer, and paint manufacturer.

B. Apply paint without runs, sags, thin spots, or unacceptable marks.

C. Apply at rate specified by the manufacturer to achieve at least the minimum dry mil thickness specified. Apply additional coats, if necessary, to obtain thickness.

D. Special attention shall be given to nuts, bolts, edges, angles, flanges, welds, etc., where insufficient film thicknesses are likely. Stripe paint outside corners and edges in accordance with SSPC PA Guide 11. Stripe painting shall be in addition to coats specified.

E. Perform thinning in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and with the full knowledge and approval of the Engineer and paint manufacturer.

F. Allow paint to dry a minimum of twenty-four hours between application of any two coats of paint on a particular surface, unless shorter time periods are a requirement by the manufacturer. Longer drying times may be required for abnormal conditions as defined by the Engineer and paint manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended drying time between coats.

G. Suspend painting when any of the following conditions exist:

1. Rainy or excessively damp weather.

2. Relative humidity exceeds 85%.

3. General air temperature cannot be maintained at 50°F or above through the drying period, except on approval by the Engineer and paint manufacturer.

4. Relative humidity will exceed 85% or air temperature will drop below 40°F within 18 hours after application of paint.

5. Surface temperature of item is within 5 degrees of dewpoint.

6. Dew or moisture condensation are anticipated.

7. Surface temperature exceeds the manufacturer's recommendations.

H. Where application of coating across concrete control joints or expansion joints has the potential to crack, turn coating into joints and caulk joints with a sealant compatible with coating rated for the intended service per Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants, Caulking.

3.04 INSPECTION

A. Each field coat of paint will be inspected and approved by the Engineer or the Engineer's authorized representative before succeeding coat is applied. Tint successive coats so that no two coats for a given surface are exactly the same color. Tick-mark surfaces to receive black paint in white between coats.

B. Use magnetic dry film thickness gauges and wet fiber thickness gauges for quality control. Furnish magnetic dry film thickness gauge for use by the Engineer.

C. Coatings shall pass a holiday detector test.

D. Determination of Film Thickness: Randomly selected areas, each of at least 107.5 contiguous square feet, totaling at least 5% of the entire control area shall be tested. Within this area, at least 5 squares, each of 7.75 square inches, shall be randomly selected. Three readings shall be taken in each square, from which the mean film thickness shall be calculated. No more than 20 percent of the mean film thickness measurements shall be below the specified thickness. No single measurement shall be below 80 percent of the specified film thickness. Total dry film thickness greater than twice the specified film thickness shall not be acceptable. Areas where the measured dry film thickness exceeds twice that specified shall be completely redone unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. When measured dry film thickness is less than that specified additional coats shall be applied as required.

E. Holiday Testing: Holiday test painted ferrous metal surfaces which will be submerged in water or other liquids, or surfaces which are enclosed in a vapor space in such structures. Mark areas which contain holidays. Repair or repaint in accordance with paint manufacturer's printed instructions and retest.

1. Dry Film Thickness Exceeding 20 Mils: For surfaces having a total dry film thickness exceeding 20 mils: Pulse-type holiday detector such as Tinker & Rasor Model AP-W, D.E. Stearns Co. Model 14/20, shall be used. The unit shall be adjusted to operate at the voltage required to cause a spark jump across an air gap equal to twice the specified coating thickness.

2. Dry Film Thickness of 20 Mils or Less: For surfaces having a total dry film thickness of 20 mils or less: Tinker & Rasor Model M1 non-destructive type holiday detector, K-D Bird Dog, shall be used. The unit shall operate at less than 75-volts. For thicknesses between 10 and 20 mils, a non-sudsing type wetting agent, such as Kodak Photo-Flow, shall be added to the water prior to wetting the detector sponge.

F. Paint manufacturer's NACE certified representative shall provide their services as required by the Engineer. Services shall include, but not be limited to, inspecting existing paint, determination of best means of surface preparation, inspection of completed work, and final inspection of painted work 11 months after the job is completed.

3.05 PROTECTION OF ADJACENT PAINT AND FINISHED SURFACES

A. Use covers, masking tape, other method when protection is necessary, or requested by Owner or Engineer. Remove unwanted paint carefully without damage to finished paint or surface. If damage does occur, repair the entire surface adjacent to and including the damaged area without visible lapmarks and without additional cost to the Owner.

B. Take all necessary precautions to contain dispersion of abrasive blasting debris and paint to the limits of the work. Take into account the effect of wind and other factors which may cause dispersion of the abrasive blasting debris and paint. Suspend painting operations when abrasive blasting debris or paint cannot be properly confined. Assume all responsibilities and cost associated with damage to adjacent structures, vehicles, or surfaces caused by the surface preparation and painting operations.

3.06 PIPING AND EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Piping and equipment identification shall be in accordance with Section 40 05 97 – Piping and Equipment Identification Systems.

3.07 SCHEDULE OF COLORS

A. Match colors indicated. Piping and equipment colors are indicated in Section 40 05 97 – Piping and Equipment Identification Systems. Colors which are not indicated shall be selected from the manufacturer's full range of colors by the Engineer. No variation shall be made in colors without the Engineer's approval. Color names and numbers shall be identified according to the appropriate color chart issued by the manufacturer of the particular product in question.

3.08 WORK IN CONFINED SPACES

A. Provide and maintain safe working conditions for all employees. Supply fresh air continuously to confined spaces through the combined use of existing openings, forceddraft fans and temporary ducts to the outside, or direct air supply to individual workers. Exhaust paint fumes to the outside from the lowest level in the contained space. Provide explosionproof electrical fans, if in contact with fumes. No smoking or open fires will be permitted in, or near, confined spaces where painting is being done. Follow OSHA, state/commonwealth, and local regulations at all times.

3.09 OSHA SAFETY COLORS

A. Paint wall around wall-mounted breathing or fire apparatus with the appropriate safety red color; area not to exceed 2 feet wide by 3 feet high, unless apparatus covers the area. Fire apparatus include fire hoses, extinguisher, and hydrants.

B. Paint hazardous areas and objects in accordance with OSHA regulations.

3.10 VOC REGULATIONS

A. Provide paint systems in accordance with local, state, and federal regulations. Where paint systems shown in schedule do not comply, substitute equal products with VOC limits which comply with local, state, and federal regulations.

Table 1: Painting Schedule

Surface	Application	Painting System and No. of Coats	Product Reference (Table 2)	Total Min. Dry Film Thickness (Mils)
Concrete and Masonry				
Concrete floor slab	New pump station building	See Specification 03 35 00	-	-
CMU Block Walls (Exterior Faces)	New pump station building	See Specification 07 19 00	-	-
Metals				
Interior and exterior nonsubmerged (gloss)	All pumps, pump motors and mechanical equipment; All piping and fittings except stainless steel; All valves, valve motors	1 coat epoxy polyamide primer 1 coat epoxy polyamide 1 coat aliphatic polyurethane	104 102 115	4-6 4-6 3-5
Steel doors and door frames, monorails, structural steel, misc. metals (steel), galvanized lintels		1 coat epoxy polyamide 1 coat aliphatic polyurethane	102 115	5-8 3-4
Aluminum surfaces in contact with concrete		2 coats coal tar	107	26

1 Refer to Room Finish Schedule on Contract Drawing A101.

Table 2: Product Listing

Ref.	System	Purpose	Product			
			Tnemec Series	PPG	CARBOLINE	Sherwin-Williams
101	Acrylic filler	Primer-sealer	130-6601	BLOXFIL 400BF	Sanitile 100	Pro-Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler
102	Epoxy polyamide	Finish coat semi-gloss or gloss	N69	AMERLOCK 600 (SEMI-GLOSS)	Carboguard 890	Macropoxy 646
103	Acrylic latex	Sealer	1028/1029	PITT TECH PLUS	Carbocrylic 3359DTM	DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish
104	Epoxy Polyamide – metal	Primer	66	AMERCOAT 600	Carboguard 893SG	Macropoxy 646
105	Epoxy polyamide	Primer/Finish	L140	AMERLOCK 2 VOC	Carboguard 61/891VOC	Macropoxy 646 PW
106	Coal tar epoxy	Finish high-coat build	46H-413	AMERCOAT 78HB	Bitumastic 300M	Hi-Mil Sher Tar Epoxy
107	Coal tar	Sealer	46-465	AMERCOAT 78HB	Bitumastic 300M	Hi-Mil Sher Tar Epoxy
108	Alkyd-medium oil	Finish coat	2H	HP INDUSTRIAL ALKYD 4308	Carbocoat 8215	Industrial Enamel
109	Alkyd-long oil	Finish coat	1029	HP INDUSTRIAL ALKYD 4308	Carbocoat 8215	Industrial Enamel
110	Epoxy polyamide	Primer	66-1211	AMERCOAT 600	Carboguard 893SG	Macropoxy 646
112	Epoxy polyamide	Sealer	66-1211	AMERLOCK SEALER	Carboguard 893SG	Macropoxy 920 Pre-Prime
113	Urethane	Barrier coat	530	AMERLOCK SEALER	Rustbond	-
114	Polyamine Epoxy	Intermediate coat	27	AMERLOCK 600	Carboguard 893SG	-
115	Aliphatic Polyurethane	Finish coat	1094 or 1095	PITTHANE ULTRA SERIES	Carbothane 134HG	Acrolon 218HS
116	Acrylic epoxy	Finish coat	113 or 114	AQUAPON WB EP	Sanitile 255	Pro-Industrial Water-Based Catalyzed Epoxy
117	Epoxy block filler	Sealer	1254	AMERLOCK 400BF	Sanitile 500	Kem Cati-Coat HS Epoxy Filler
118	Catalyzed epoxy	Finish coat	84	AMERLOCK 2/400	Carboguard 890	Macropoxy 646
119	High solids epoxy	Finish coat	104	AMERLOCK 240	Carboguard 890	Dura-Plate 235
120	Epoxy	Top coat	N69	AMERLOCK 240	Carboguard 890	-

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 14 00
IDENTIFYING DEVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of the Work as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Plastic room name and number signs.

2. Safety signs

3. Building name or number

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Color and finish samples for all nameplates, signs and building name letters.

2. Shop Drawings shall include, but not be limited to:

a. Complete details for all signs and building name letters giving sizes and styles of lettering and colors.

b. Complete schedules for all nameplates, signs, and building name letters giving location, message, letter, size, color, and method of attachment.

c. Details of fabrication and attachment of all items.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver all materials in unopened, unbroken and undamaged original packaging bearing the manufacturer's label and identification for installation.

B. Handle all materials with care to prevent defacement of any nature.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Interior Room, ADA Signs, and Site Signage

    a. Mohawk Sign Systems

    b. Innerface Architectural Signage Incorporated

    c. Gemini Incorporated

    d. Or equal

2. Exterior and Interior Scheduled Signage

    a. Seton Corporation

    b. Safety Sign a division of Brimar Industries, Inc.

    c. Emedco

    d. Or equal

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Signs

1. Interior room signs shall be self-extinguishing plastic with raised letters meeting the requirements of the American with Disabilities Act; total thickness minimum of 0.125 inch; rounded corners. Signs shall be 8”x8” or as indicated on Drawings with room name above and room number below.

    a. Character size and style shall be 5/8 inch high minimum upper case Helvetica. Spacing and proportions of letters shall be in strict accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act.

    b. Colors shall be as selected by the Owner from the manufacturer standard colors.

2. Scheduled signs shall be 0.040” minimum aluminum with vinyl lettering and numbering.

3. Building signage shall be 12” high laser cut aluminum letters with Helvetica Font. Each building shall receive building name generally following naming with schedule shown in Part 3. Building signage shall be post mounted to building wall.

111512

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Exterior and Interior Mounting Hardware: Stainless steel screws.

B. Interior Room Name and Signs in Administrative Areas: Tape Adhesive: Double sided tape, permanent adhesive.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. All items specified herein to be factory fabricated to the extent practicable.

B. Provide all attachments and anchors necessary for concealed installments for door numbers, room name plates, and bulletin boards.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. All materials specified herein shall be installed in compliance with the approved manufacturer's printed specifications. Mounting devices, bolts, screws, nuts and the like shall be of high strength aluminum or stainless steel. The final location of each sign shall be as determined by the Engineer.

B. Plastic door numbers and room name plates shall be attached stainless steel oval Phillips head screw at each corner.

1. Submit a schedule of door numbers and name plates to the Engineer for approval.

2. Install door and name plates after final field finish has been applied and thoroughly dried.

3.2 ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING

A. After completion of project, remove all protective devices, touch up as necessary and clean all exposed surfaces with a mild solution of detergent and warm water. Leave all surfaces in a neat and clean condition.

3.3 SCHEDULES

A. Fire-related signs provide each sign with wording and pictogram. Signs shall have red background and white letters and pictogram. (ADA Compliant.)

Wording	Size (in)	Quantity
FIRE EXTINGUISHER	7x10	2

B. Caution signs shall have a yellow background with the word CAUTION 2 inches high with black letters and yellow background centered above wording below in black letters. Each sign shall be provided with pictogram showing figure in compliance with sign (i.e. a figure wearing glasses).

Wording	Size	Quantity
EAR PROTECTION MUST BE WORN IN THIS AREA	7x10	**1**

C. Safety Signs. Signs shall comply with ANSI Z 535 requirements.

Wording	Size (in)	Quantity
NOTICE AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY (with pictogram)	7x10	2

D. Exterior Hazardous Material Building Signage

1. The authority have jurisdiction shall be consulted regarding the quantity and placement of identification NFPA 704 placards.

Wording	Size (in)	Quantity
As required with NFPA 704	12x2	2

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 44 16
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish and install fire extinguishers as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of these Specifications, the Work shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents:

1. NFPA 10 – Portable Fire Extinguishers

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, submit the following:

1. Complete detail and installation drawings for Fire Extinguisher Cabinets.

2. Manufacturer's data sheets and verification of U.L. ratings.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with the Specifications provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Kidde Fire Extinguisher Company

2. Ansul Fire Protection

3. Potter – Roemer

4. J. L. Industries

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) Fire Extinguishers

1. Provide two (2) 10 lb. capacity, portable carbon dioxide type with wall mounts, having Underwriters' Laboratories rating of 10-BC.

111505

B. Cabinet: Surface mounted cabinets #4 finish 304 stainless steel, Dual Vertical door with 1/8-inch thick DSA glass size. Doors shall be minimum of 1/2" thick. Hardware shall include pull handle, self-adjusting roller catch and continuous piano hinge constructed of stainless steel.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Fire extinguishers shall be installed where directed by the Engineer.

B. Wall mounts for extinguishers shall be securely mounted to masonry with lag bolts and shields.

C. Fire extinguishers shall be installed so that the top of the fire extinguisher is not more than 5 feet above the floor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 73 16
CANOPIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Work in this Section includes furnishing and installation of extruded aluminum, post supported canopies and hanger rod canopies with perimeter gutter. Door are to be located over the two personnel doors.

B. Coordination Items and Considerations

1. Concrete footings for post supported canopies. Footing styrofoam block outs and/or anchor rods shall be provided by manufacturer to be installed as part of concrete work.

2. Flashing.

3. Water drainage away from canopy.

4. Coordination of all electrical fixtures and conduits or other items that are planned to be attached to the canopy.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Products meeting these specifications established standard of quality required as manufactured by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years of experience manufacturing and designing canopy systems.

1.03 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Confirm dimensions prior to preparation of shop drawings when possible.

B. Supply manufacturer's standard literature and specifications for canopies.

C. Submit shop drawings and structural calculations. Shop drawings shall include plan dimensions, elevations, and details, including drainage, connections, and means of anchoring posts. Shop drawings and structural calculations shall be sealed by a currently licensed Professional Engineer in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

D. Coordinate and show location and approved attachment methods for electrical fixtures, lightning protection, and conduits and other items that require attachment to the canopy on the Shop Drawings.

021423

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Canopy must be designed for gravity loads, collateral loads, wind, seismic, snow, and live load requirements of the governing building code.

B. Canopy must be designed to support additional accessories (electrical conduits and fixtures, etc.) attached to canopy system (posts, beams, ceiling, fascia, etc.).

C. Electrical accessories including but not limited to lighting, switches and associated electrical conduits shall be coordinated with the canopy manufacturer. Attachment points shall not penetrate roof system or water conveying systems (wet columns and beams).

D. Process control panels, electrical panels, etc. and associated conduits shall be provided with a support system independent of the canopy system.

1.05 DELIVER, STORAGE, HANDLING

A. Deliver and store all canopy components in protected areas.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Mapes Industries, Inc.

B. Peachtree Protective Covers, Inc., Hiram, Georgia.

C. Dittmer Architectural Aluminum, Winter Springs, Florida.

D. AVAdeck, Houston, Texas.

E. E.L. Burns Company

F. Mitchell Metals

G. MASA Architectural Canopies

H. Or approved equal.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Decking, beams, posts, and fascia shall be extruded aluminum, alloy 6063-T6, in profile and thickness indicated.

B. Decking shall be extruded and shall be at least 0.078” thick.

C. Thickness of metal comprising posts shall be 0.125” minimum. Thickness of metal comprising beams shall be 0.125” minimum.

D. Fascia shall be standard 6” extruded members with a minimum metal thickness of 0.0625”.

E. All bolts and fasteners shall be stainless steel and sized by designer of canopy system.

F. Galvanized steel hanger rods shall be 3/4” minimum diameter. Provide required accessories for complete installation.

2.03 FINISHES

A. Finish shall be standard two-coat Kynar. Color shall be selected by the Owner from manufacturer’s standard range of colors. Steel hanger rods and accessories shall match color of canopy.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Welding shall follow AWS 1.2.

B. Connections between posts and beams shall be designed to resist a minimum force of 350 lb.

C. Decking shall be designed with interlocking extruded aluminum members with mechanical fasteners field applied to provide structural integrity for the completed assembly.

D. Concealed drainage. Water shall drain from covered surfaces into integral gutter beam and be directed to ground level discharge via one or more designated support posts or downspout for cantilevered canopies.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Confirm that surrounding area is ready for the canopy installation.

B. Installer shall confirm dimensions and elevations to be as shown on drawings provided by manufacturer.

C. Erection shall be performed by an approved installer and scheduled after all concrete, masonry and roofing in the area is completed.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Installation shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer’s erection drawings. Particular attention should be given to protecting the finish during handling and erection. Canopy shall be erected true to line, level, and plumb.

B. Do not install items to the canopy system which have not been coordinated and approved by the canopy manufacturer.

C. After installation, entire system shall be left in a clean condition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 00 00
BASIC HVAC REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment and material for the complete installation of the heating, ventilation, air conditioning, piping, etc. as indicated on the drawings and specified herein.

B. Air conditioning systems shall be furnished and installed to operate as a system. The Contractor shall coordinate all requirements between manufacturers to ensure unit responsibility and compatibility of the systems.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit shop drawings on all equipment, accessories and appurtenances and all fabrication work or other mechanical and air conditioning work required, all in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Data to be submitted shall include but not be limited to:

1. Catalog data consisting of specifications, illustrations and a parts schedule that identifies the materials to be used for the various parts and accessories. The illustrations shall be in sufficient detail to serve as a guide for assembly and disassembly.

2. Complete assembly, and installation drawings with clearly marked dimensions. This information shall be in sufficient detail to serve as a guide for assembly and disassembly and for ordering parts.

3. Weight of all component parts and assembled weight.

4. Electrical characteristics, wiring, diagrams, etc.

5. Sample data sheet of equipment nameplate(s) including information contained thereon.

6. Insulation materials, coating, jackets, detail density, thermal conductivity and thickness of all insulation materials to be furnished.

7. Details of special fasteners and accessories.

8. Type of adhesives, binders, joint cement, mastics.

03-29-22

9. Proposed insulation procedures and installation methods.

10. Spare parts list

C. The Contractor shall obtain from the manufacturer and submit to the Engineer copies of the results of all certified shop tests.

D. The Contractor shall obtain from the manufacturer and submit to the Engineer copies of certified letters of compliance in accordance with the Specifications.

1.03 RELATED WORK

A. Division 01 – General Requirements

B. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

C. Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Non-Structural Components

D. Section 01 74 00 – Cleaning and Waste Management

E. Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures

F. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete

G. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Fillers, Sealants, and Caulking

H. Section 09 90 00 – Painting

I. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

J. Section 26 05 60 – Low Voltage Electric Motors

1.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manual in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01.

B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall be submitted for all equipment.

1.05 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Installation of all equipment shall be in accordance with manufacturer's data.

B. All changes from the installation procedures in manufacturers' data shall be submitted for approval in accordance with the requirements for shop drawings.

C. Keep all manufacturers' data provided in a secure manner at the job site at all times. Catalog and index this data for convenient reference.

D. Manufacturers' data shall be available for the information of the Owner, Engineer, and the use of other trades.

E. Turn over all data to the Owner through the Owner's representative at completion of the Work and final testing.

F. Furnish Owner, indexed and bound in loose leaf binders, three (3) complete sets of Operating and Maintenance Instructions and pertinent manufacturers' literature and information on all of the apparatus and equipment under this Division of the Specifications.

G. Submit all instruction books and manuals in accordance with Division 01.

1.06 CODES, PERMITS AND STANDARDS

A. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits and shall comply with all laws and codes that apply to the Work.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for all added expense due to their choice of equipment, materials or construction methods.

C. All work and materials shall be in full accordance with the latest State rules and regulations or publications including those of the State Fire Marshall, the Uniform Plumbing Code, and all local codes. Nothing in the Plans and/or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to the above codes, rules and regulations.

D. All equipment, materials and installations shall conform to the requirements of the most recent edition with latest revisions, supplements and amendments of the following, as applicable:

1. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)

2. Air Diffusion Council (ADC)

3. Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA)

4. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE)

5. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

7. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

8. Factory Mutual (FM)

9. National Electric Code (NEC)

10. NFPA 90A - Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems

11. Occupational Safety and Health Standards (OSHA)

12. Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA)

13. North Carolina Building Code - 2018 edition

14. North Carolina Mechanical Code - 2018 edition

15. North Carolina Plumbing Code - 2018 edition

16. State and local codes, ordinances and statutes

17. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

18. Others as designated in the specifications.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All material and equipment shall be the latest design, new, undeteriorated, and the first quality standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such material and equipment.

B. When two or more units of the same class of material or equipment are required, they shall be products of a single manufacturer.

C. All work shall be performed in a neat and workmanlike manner by workers skilled in their respective trades, and all materials and equipment shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturers and in accordance with specified codes and standards.

D. Touch up and/or repaint to match original finishes all factory finished or painted equipment and materials which are scratched or marred during shipment or installation.

E. Products Criteria:

1. Standard Products: Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 3 years (or longer as specified elsewhere). The design, model and size of each item shall have been in satisfactory and efficient operation on at least three installations for approximately three years. However, digital electronics devices, software and systems such as controls, instruments, computer work station, shall be the current generation of technology and basic design that has a proven satisfactory service record of at least three years. See other Specification Sections for any exceptions and/or additional requirements.

2. Refer to all other Sections for quality assurance requirements for systems and equipment specified therein.

3. All items furnished shall be free from defects that would adversely affect the performance, maintainability and appearance of individual components and overall assembly.

4. The products and execution of work specified in Division 23 shall conform to the referenced codes and standards as required by the specifications. Local codes and amendments shall be enforced, along with requirements of local utility companies. The most stringent requirements of these specifications, local codes, or utility company requirements shall always apply. Any conflicts shall be brought to the attention of the Owner’s representative.

5. Multiple Units: When two or more units of materials or equipment of the same type or class are required, these units shall be of the same manufacturer and model number, or if different models are required they shall be of the same manufacturer and identical to the greatest extent possible (i.e., same model series).

6. Assembled Units: Performance and warranty of all components that make up an assembled unit shall be the responsibility of the manufacturer of the completed assembly.

7. Nameplates: Nameplate bearing manufacturer's name or identifiable trademark shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on equipment, or name or trademark cast integrally with equipment, stamped or otherwise permanently marked on each item of equipment.

8. Use of asbestos products or equipment or materials containing asbestos is prohibited.

F. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Where installation procedures or any part thereof are required to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the material being installed, printed copies of these recommendations shall be furnished to the Owner’s representative with submittals. Installation of the item will not be allowed to proceed until the recommendations are received. Failure to furnish these recommendations can be cause for rejection of the material and removal by the Contractor and no additional cost or time to the Owner.

G. Execution (Installation, Construction) Quality:

1. Apply and install all items in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Refer conflicts between the manufacturer's instructions and the contract documents to the Owner’s representative for resolution. Provide written hard copies and computer files of manufacturer’s installation instructions to the Owner’s representative with submittals prior to commencing installation of any item. Installation of the item will not be allowed to proceed until the recommendations are received and approved by the Owner’s representative. Failure to furnish these recommendations is a cause for rejection of the material.

2. All items that require access, such as for operating, cleaning, servicing, maintenance, and calibration, shall be easily and safely accessible by persons standing at floor level, or standing on permanent platforms, without the use of portable ladders. Examples of these items include, but are not limited to, all types of valves, filters and strainers, transmitters, control devices. Prior to commencing installation work, refer conflicts between this requirement and contract documents to the Owner's representative for resolution. Failure of the Contractor to resolve, or point out any issues will result in the Contractor correcting at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

3. Complete coordination/shop drawings shall be required in accordance with Paragraph, SUBMITTALS. Construction work shall not start on any system until the coordination/shop drawings have been approved by the Owner's representative.

4. Workmanship/craftsmanship will be of the highest quality and standards. The Owner reserves the right to reject any work based on poor quality of workmanship this work shall be removed and done again at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

H. Upon request by the Owner's representative, provide lists of previous installations for selected items of equipment. Include contact persons who will serve as references, with current telephone numbers and e-mail addresses.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Protection of Equipment:

1. Equipment and material placed on the job site shall remain in the custody of the Contractor until phased acceptance, whether or not the Owner has reimbursed the Contractor for the equipment and material. The Contractor is solely responsible for the protection of such equipment and material against any damage or theft.

2. Large equipment such as air handling units if shipped on open trailer trucks shall be covered with shrink on plastics or water proof tarpaulins that provide protection from exposure to rain, road salts and other transit hazards. Protection shall be kept in place until equipment is moved into a building or installed as designed.

3. Repair damaged equipment in first class, new operating condition and appearance; or, replace same as determined and directed by the Owner's representative. Such repair or replacement shall be at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

4. Protect interiors of new equipment and piping systems against entry of foreign matter. Clean both inside and outside before painting or placing equipment in operation.

5. Existing equipment and piping being worked on by the Contractor shall be under the custody and responsibility of the Contractor and shall be protected as required for new work.

6. Protect plastic piping and tanks from ultraviolet light (sunlight).

B. Cleanliness of Piping and Equipment Systems:

1. Exercise care in storage and handling of equipment and piping material to be incorporated in the work. Remove debris arising from cutting, threading and welding of piping.

2. Piping systems shall be flushed, blown or pigged as necessary to deliver clean systems.

3. Contractor shall be fully responsible for all costs, damage, and delay arising from failure to provide clean systems.

1.09 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS IDENTIFICATION

A. Use symbols, nomenclature and equipment numbers specified, shown on the contract documents and shown in the maintenance manuals. Identification for piping is specified in Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

B. Use symbols, nomenclature and equipment numbers specified, shown on the contract documents and shown in the maintenance manuals. In addition, provide bar code identification nameplate for all equipment which will allow the equipment identification code to be scanned into the system for maintenance and inventory tracking. Identification for piping is specified in Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

C. Interior (Indoor) Equipment: Engraved nameplates, with letters not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) high of brass with black-filled letters, or rigid black plastic with white letters specified in Section 09 90 00 – Painting permanently fastened to the equipment. Identify unit components such as coils, filters, fans, etc.

D. Exterior (Outdoor) Equipment: Brass nameplates, with engraved black filled letters, not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) high riveted or bolted to the equipment.

E. Control Items: Label all instrumentation, temperature and humidity sensors, controllers and control dampers. Identify and label each item as they appear on the control diagrams.

1.10 GASKETS AND CONNECTORS

A. Provide new gaskets wherever gasketed mating equipment items or pipe connections have been dismantled. Gaskets shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Replace all assembly bolts, studs, nuts and fasteners of any kind which are bent, flattened, corroded or have their threads, heads or slots damaged.

C. Furnish all bolts, studs, nuts and fasteners for make-up of all connections to equipment and replace any of these items damaged in storage, shipment or moving.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Each item of equipment shall be furnished and installed complete with all supports, mounting frames, ductwork, piping, louvers, panels, grilles, electric drive units and controls, mechanical equipment, electrical work, insulation and appurtenances ready for operation.

B. All equipment and appurtenances shall be anchored or connected to supporting members as specified or as indicated on the Plans.

C. All mechanisms or parts shall be amply proportioned for the stresses which may occur during operation or for any other stresses which may occur during fabrication and erection. Individual parts furnished which are alike in all units shall be alike in workmanship, design, and materials and shall be interchangeable. All equipment shall be of the manufacturer's top line, industrial-commercial grade.

D. The Contractor shall ascertain that all chassis, shafts, and openings are correctly located, otherwise they shall cut all new openings required at the Contractor’s expense. Cutting of new openings shall be coordinated with other trades. Proposed new cutting shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and acceptance prior to cutting.

E. The Plans shall be taken as diagrammatic. The Contractor shall check the Structural Plans and sections for detail dimensions and clearances. Sizes of ducts and their locations are indicated, but not every offset, fitting, or structural obstruction is shown.

F. Alignment of ducts may be varied where necessary to account for slight architectural changes or to avoid conflict with the Work of other trades without additional expense to the Owner.

G. All supports required for the proper installation of the equipment, but not forming an integral part of the building structure, shall be provided, unless specifically noted otherwise. Equipment shall be supported on spring-type vibration isolators.

2.02 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

A. Furnish, and turn over to the Owner’s representative, tools not readily available commercially, that are required for disassembly or adjustment of equipment and machinery furnished.

B. Grease Guns with Attachments for Applicable Fittings: One for each type of grease required for each motor or other equipment.

C. Refrigerant Tools: Provide system charging/Evacuation equipment, gauges, fittings, and tools required for maintenance of furnished equipment.

D. Tool Containers: Hardwood or metal, permanently identified for intended service and mounted, or located, where directed by the Owner's representative.

E. Lubricants: A minimum of 0.95 L (1 quart) of oil, and 0.45 kg (1 pound) of grease, of equipment manufacturer's recommended grade and type, in unopened containers and properly identified as to use for each different application.

2.03 ASBESTOS

A. Materials containing asbestos are prohibited.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. If an installation is unsatisfactory to the Owner's representative, the Contractor shall correct the installation at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

3.02 ARRANGEMENT AND INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND PIPING

A. Location of piping and equipment, access provisions shall be coordinated with the work of all trades. The coordination/shop drawings shall be submitted for review. Locate piping,ductwork and equipment clear of windows, doors, openings, light outlets, and other services and utilities. Equipment coordination/shop drawings shall be prepared to coordinate proper location and personnel access of all facilities. The drawings shall be submitted for review. Follow manufacturer's published recommendations for installation methods not otherwise specified.

B. Operating Personnel Access and Observation Provisions: Select and arrange all equipment and systems to provide clear view and easy access, without use of portable ladders, for maintenance and operation of all devices including, but not limited to: all equipment items, valves, filters, strainers, transmitters, sensors, control devices. All gauges and indicators shall be clearly visible by personnel standing on the floor or on permanent platforms. Do not reduce or change maintenance and operating space and access provisions that are shown on the contract documents.

C. Equipment and Piping Support: Coordinate structural systems necessary for pipe and equipment support with pipe and equipment locations to permit proper installation.

D. Cutting Holes:

1. Cut holes through concrete and masonry by rotary core drill. Pneumatic hammer, impact electric, and hand or manual hammer type drill is prohibited, except as permitted by Owner's representative where working area space is limited.

2. Locate holes to avoid interference with structural members such as slabs, columns, ribs, beams or reinforcing. Holes shall be laid out in advance and drilling done only after approval by Owner's representative. If the Contractor considers it necessary to drill through structural members, this matter shall be referred to Owner's representative for approval.

3. Do not penetrate membrane waterproofing.

E. Electrical Interconnection of Instrumentation or Controls: This generally not shown but must be provided. This includes interconnections of sensors, transmitters, transducers, control devices, control and instrumentation panels, instruments and computer workstations. Devices shall be located so they are easily accessible for testing, maintenance, calibration, etc. The Owner's representative has the final determination on what is accessible and what is not. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Protection and Cleaning:

1. Equipment and materials shall be carefully handled, properly stored, and adequately protected to prevent damage before and during installation, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as approved by the Owner's representative. Damaged or defective items in the opinion of the Owner's representative, shall be replaced.

2. Protect all finished parts of equipment, such as shafts and bearings where accessible, from rust prior to operation by means of protective grease coating and wrapping. Close pipe openings with caps or plugs during installation. Tightly cover and protect fixtures and equipment against dirt, water chemical, or mechanical injury. At completion of all work thoroughly clean fixtures, exposed materials and equipment.

G. Concrete and Grout: Use concrete and non-shrink grout 20 MPa (3000 psig) minimum, specified in Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete.

H. Install gauges, thermometers, valves and other devices with due regard for ease in reading or operating and maintaining said devices. Locate and position thermometers and gauges to be easily read by operator or staff standing on floor or walkway provided. Servicing shall not require dismantling adjacent equipment or pipe work.

I. Install steam piping expansion joints as per manufacturer's recommendations.

J. Switchgear/Electrical Equipment Drip Protection: Every effort shall be made to eliminate the installation of pipe above electrical and data/telephone switchgear. If this is not possible, encase pipe in a second pipe with a minimum of joints. Installation of piping, ductwork, leak protection apparatus or other installations foreign to the electrical

installation shall not be located in the space equal to the width and depth of the equipment and extending from to a height of 1.8 m (6 feet) above the equipment or to ceiling structure, whichever is lower (NFPA 70).

K. Inaccessible Equipment:

1. Where the Owner determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance or inspections, equipment shall be removed and reinstalled or remedial action performed as directed at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

2. The term "conveniently accessible" is defined as capable of being reached without the use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling under or over obstacles such as, but not limited to motors, fans, pumps, belt guards, transformers, high voltage lines, conduit and raceways, piping, hot surfaces, and ductwork. The Owner’s representative has final determination on whether an installation meets this requirement or not.

3.03 RIGGING

A. Design is based on application of available equipment. Openings in building structures are planned to accommodate design scheme.

B. Alternative methods of equipment delivery may be offered by Contractor and will be considered by Owner under specified restrictions of phasing and maintenance of service requirements as well as structural integrity of the building.

C. Close all openings in the building when not required for rigging operations to maintain proper environment in the facility for Owner’s operation and maintenance of service.

D. Contractor shall provide all facilities required to deliver specified equipment and place on foundations. Attachments to structures for rigging purposes and support of equipment on structures shall be Contractor's full responsibility. Upon request, the Owner’s representative will check structure adequacy and advise Contractor of recommended restrictions.

E. Contractor shall check all clearances, weight limitations and shall offer a rigging plan designed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

F. All modifications to structures, including reinforcement thereof, shall be at Contractor's cost, time and responsibility.

G. Follow approved rigging plan.

H. Restore building to original condition upon completion of rigging work.

3.04 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. For seismic anchoring, refer to Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Non-Structural Components.

3.05 CLEANING AND PAINTING

A. Prior to final inspection and acceptance of the plant and facilities for beneficial use by the Owner, the plant facilities, equipment and systems shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted. Refer to Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

B. In addition, the following special conditions apply:

1. Cleaning shall be thorough. Solvents, cleaning materials and methods recommended by the manufacturers shall be used for the specific tasks. All rust shall be removed prior to painting and from surfaces to remain unpainted. Repair scratches, scuffs, and abrasions prior to applying prime and finish coats.

2. The following material and equipment shall not be painted:

    a. Motors, controllers, control switches, and safety switches.

    b. Control and interlock devices.

    c. Control valves and thermostatic elements.

    d. Lubrication devices and grease fittings.

    e. Copper, brass, aluminum, stainless steel and bronze surfaces.

    f. Nameplates.

3. Control and instrument panels shall be cleaned, damaged surfaces repaired, and shall be touched-up with matching paint obtained from panel manufacturer.

4. Final result shall be smooth, even-colored, even-textured factory finish on all items. Completely repaint the entire piece of equipment if necessary to achieve this.

5. Lead based paints are prohibited.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

A. Provide laminated plastic signs, with engraved lettering not less than 5 mm (3/16 inch) high, designating functions, for all equipment and control devices. Nomenclature and identification symbols shall correspond to that used in maintenance manual, and in diagrams specified elsewhere. Attach by chain, adhesive, or screws.

B. Factory Built Equipment: Metal plate, securely attached, with name and address of manufacturer, serial number, model number, size, performance.

C. Pipe Identification: Refer to Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

3.07 LUBRICATION

A. All equipment and devices requiring lubrication shall be lubricated prior to initial operation. Field-check all devices for proper lubrication.

B. All devices and equipment shall be equipped with required lubrication fittings or devices. A minimum of 1 quart of oil and 1 pound of grease of manufacturer's recommended grade and type for each different application shall be provided; also provide 12 grease sticks for lubricated plug valves. Deliver all materials to Owner’s representative in unopened containers that are properly identified as to application.

C. All lubrication points shall be accessible without disassembling equipment, except to remove access plates.

D. All lubrication points shall be extended to one side of the equipment.

3.08 STARTUP, TEMPORARY OPERATION AND TESTING

A. Perform tests as recommended by product manufacturer and listed standards and under actual or simulated operating conditions and prove full compliance with design and specified requirements. Tests of the various items of equipment shall be performed simultaneously with the system of which each item is an integral part.

B. When any defects are detected, correct defects and repeat test at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

C. Startup of equipment shall be performed as described in equipment specifications. Vibration within specified tolerance shall be verified prior to extended operation. Temporary use of equipment is specified in Section 00 72 00 – General Conditions.

3.09 OPERATING AND PERFORMANCE TESTS

A. Prior to the final inspection, perform required tests as specified in Section 00 72 00 – General Conditions and in individual Division 23 Specification Sections and submit the test reports and records to the Owner’s representative.

B. Should evidence of malfunction in any tested system, or piece of equipment or component part thereof, occur during or as a result of tests, make proper corrections, repairs or replacements, and repeat tests at no additional cost or time to the Owner.

C. When completion of certain work or system occurs at a time when final control settings and adjustments cannot be properly made to make performance tests, then conduct such performance tests and finalize control settings for heating systems and for cooling

systems respectively during first actual seasonal use of respective systems following completion of work. Rescheduling of these tests shall be requested in writing to Owner's representative for approval.

D. No adjustments may be made during the acceptance inspection. All adjustments shall have been made by this point.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Provide services of manufacturer's technical representative to instruct the personnel responsible in operation and maintenance of the system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 95
HVAC FIELD TESTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. The requirements of this Section apply to all sections of Division 23.

B. This Section specifies the requirements and procedures for field testing the HVAC systems. Requirements include developing a detailed testing plan and executing the testing plan to meet design requirements as indicated in this specification. Actions include but are not limited to measurement of the fluid quantities of the HVAC systems, operating HVAC equipment, proving control strategy requirements, and adjustments to meet control strategy requirements.

C. The testing and balancing of the equipment and systems of the facility shall be performed in the following order:

1. Equipment Checkout – Physical Checkout

2. Equipment Testing – Short Run Test

3. System Testing – Full Controls Test and Control Strategy Proving

D. The Contractor shall submit and obtain approval for the Equipment Checkout and Equipment Testing prior to beginning balancing.

E. The Contractor shall submit and obtain approval for the HVAC System Balancing prior to beginning the System Test.

F. Where a system consists of multiple pieces of equipment (i.e., air handler units) all parts of the system shall have their Equipment Checkout and Equipment Testing submitted and approved before Balancing begins.

1. Where this action would be deleterious or prohibitive to the system or component parts, the Contractor shall specifically include the reason in the Testing Procedure submittal and receive approval.

G. The following HVAC systems shall be field tested:

1. Air Handling Equipment including integral and external fans

2. HVAC Automatic Temperature Controls Systems

01-18-2023

H. This Section does not include specifications for materials for patching HVAC systems, or specifications for materials and installation of temporary devices. If devices must be added to achieve proper system testing or to execute the system control strategy, they shall be provided.

I. The respective equipment manufacturer's representative shall be present for Equipment Checkout and Equipment Testing activities. The representative shall sign all testing reports related to these portions of the testing report.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. Systems testing is the process of checking and adjusting all the building environmental systems to produce the design objectives. It includes the balance of air distribution, the adjustment of total system to provide design quantities, the electrical measurement, and the verification of performance of all equipment and automatic controls.

1. Test: To determine quantitative performance of equipment.

2. Adjust: To regulate the specified fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment (e.g., reduce fan speed, throttling).

3. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system (submains, branches, and terminals) according to specified design quantities.

4. Procedure: Standardized approach and execution of sequence of work operations to yield reproducible results.

5. Report Forms: Test data sheets arranged for collecting test data in logical order for submission and review. These data should also form the permanent record to be used as the basis for required future testing, adjusting, and balancing.

6. Terminal: The point where the controlled fluid enters or leaves the distribution system. These are supply inlets or supply outlets on air terminals and exhaust or return inlets on air terminals such as registers, grilles, diffusers, louvers, and hoods.

7. Main: Duct containing the system's major or entire fluid flow.

8. Submain: Duct containing part of the systems' capacity and serving two or more branch mains.

9. Branch Main: Duct serving two or more terminals.

10. Branch: Duct serving a single terminal.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Division 01 requirements.

B. All testing shall be witnessed by the Owner, Owner's representative, or the Resident Engineer.

C. The Contractor shall submit a detailed testing procedure for approval. The Contractor shall have the testing procedure approved 30 days before testing is scheduled to begin. The detailed testing procedure shall include forms, procedures and diagrams for the Equipment Checkout, Equipment Test, and System Test procedures described in Part 3 of this specification. The testing procedure shall include:

1. Detailed step by step instructions as to how the equipment tests will be performed including but not limited to temporary layout modifications, any special procedures for testing equipment functionality, and how system actions will be activated.

2. All testing for systems that require seasonal outside air conditions shall be conducted when outside air conditions are suitable for such testing. When approved by the Engineer, the Contractor may conduct seasonal testing of the system during off-seasonal conditions. When this condition is approved, the report shall indicate how the test will accommodate testing of seasonal systems when seasonal conditions are not present.

3. A list of any additional or temporary equipment necessary to perform the tests such as pumps, heat exchangers, heating or cooling equipment.

4. A list of any instruments necessary to verify instrument signals in the HVAC system. The list shall include current calibration information. All instruments shall be within their calibration expiration at the date the testing is performed.

5. Provide tables for recording all required readings, action results, and comments.

6. Provide a checklist of items that will be checked during the test as listed in relative sections of Part 3 of this specification. Each action or step shall have a separate row. Each action or step shall be initialed by the Contractor's Testing Technician conducting the test. All tests shall be signed and dated by the Contractor, the Testing Technician, and the Owner, Owner's Representative, or Resident Engineer. The Equipment Checkout and Equipment Test shall also be signed by the respective equipment manufacturer's representative.

D. As each section of the Testing Procedure is completed, the Contractor shall compile and submit all signed results to the Owner for acceptance.

E. The equipment manufacturer's representative shall be present for all testing. The Equipment Checkout and Equipment Testing results shall include a letter from the Manufacturer's representative stating that the equipment has been installed per the Manufacturer's installation requirements and is in satisfactory working order.

F. Submit proof that the Testing Technician assigned to supervise the procedures, and the individual technicians proposed to perform the procedures meet the qualifications specified below.

G. The Contractor shall submit the signed results of the testing to the Owner for acceptance. The equipment manufacturer's representative shall be present for all testing. The results shall include a letter from the Manufacturer's representative stating that the equipment has been installed per the Manufacturer's installation requirements and is in satisfactory working order. Any deficiencies noted by the Manufacturer's representative shall be corrected and testing repeated.

1. The calibration data for all instruments used to verify HVAC system instrument readings shall be refreshed. All instruments shall be within their calibration expiration at the date the testing was performed.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Personnel Qualifications: The personnel responsible for testing the specified systems shall have at least three years of experience in testing systems similar to this project and shall be an employee of the installer or an independent testing agency.

B. Codes and Standards:

1. NEBB, "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

2. ASHRAE Handbook, 1984 Systems Volume, Chapter 37, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing.

C. The Contractor shall provide all necessary instrumentation, tools, ladders, and labor etc. to complete all testing activities.

D. Instrumentation shall be in accordance with NEBB, AABC, or SMACNA requirements and shall be calibrated to the accuracy standards demanded by these organizations.

E. The Contractor shall keep dust, dirt, and debris to an absolute minimum and reinstall all removed ceiling components to their original positions at the end of each day.

F. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for removal and reinstallation of ceiling system and replacement of any component damaged.

1.05 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Systems shall be fully operational prior to beginning procedures.

1.06 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 23 00 00 - Basic HVAC Requirements

B. Section 23 81 24 – Wall Mounted Packaged Air Conditioning Units

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 HVAC TESTING SEQUENCING

A. The HVAC testing shall be performed in the following sequence.

1. Pre-Start-up Inspection
2. Equipment Test
3. Individual System Test
4. Whole HVAC System Run Test

B. Cooling Equipment (Refrigerant based)

1. Pre Startup Inspection:
    a. Verify proper equipment mounting and setting
    b. Verify that control, interlock and power wiring is complete
    c. Verify proper duct connections and accessories
    d. Verify that lubrication is completed
    e. Verify that equipment is in good condition and free from damage
    f. Verify that all packing materials, temporary stops, and temporary supports used during shipping have been removed
    g. Verify that equipment and associated ducts are free from debris
    h. Verify that the refrigeration system has been evacuated and charged per the Manufacturer’s requirements
    i. Verify that equipment is installed per the Manufacturer’s requirements
2. Equipment Test:

a. Prior to energizing unit, verify and record voltage of power supply

b. Run the unit for 1 hour of continuous trouble free operation, with no unexpected shutdowns, alarms or operational issues. Any issues or stops required for tuning or repairs shall cause the test to be restarted from the beginning of this procedure. If the ambient air temperature is too low to have the refrigeration system running constantly for 1 hour, the Contractor shall take into account any additional measures required to accomplish the testing based on the ambient air temperature. The Contractor shall provide any temporary heating equipment required to run this test including but not limited to temporary fans, ductwork, heaters, generators, heat exchangers, combustion equipment, and fuel storage and pumping at no cost to the project. Use of any heating equipment that was installed as part of this work shall not be permitted to be used as a heat source.

c. Monitor discharge and return air temperatures and compare to the manufacturer's submitted values.

d. Monitor for any abnormal noises or vibration. Abnormal noises and vibration shall be assessed and determined by the equipment manufacturer's representative.

e. Record fan sound levels ten (10) feet from the surface of the equipment in five (5) minute intervals during 1 hour run period. The sound levels shall not exceed 90 dB.

3. Air Handling Units (Heating)

a. Pre Startup Inspection:

1) Verify proper equipment mounting and setting

2) Verify that control, interlock and power wiring is complete

3) Verify alignment of motors and drives

4) Verify proper belt tension

5) Verify proper duct connections and accessories

6) Verify that lubrication is completed

7) Verify that equipment is in good condition and free from damage

8) Verify that all packing materials, temporary stops, and temporary supports used during shipping have been removed

9) Verify that equipment and associated ducts are free from debris

10) Verify that equipment is installed per the Manufacturer's requirements

4. Equipment Test:

a. Prior to energizing unit, verify and record voltage of power supply

b. Run the unit for 1 hour of continuous trouble free operation with no unexpected shutdowns, alarms or operational issues in heating mode and for 1 hour of continuous trouble free operation in ventilating mode. Any issues or stops required for tuning or repairs shall cause the test to be restarted from the beginning of the respective 1 hour test. Any safety trips will cause this testing to be restarted from the beginning of this procedure. If the ambient air temperature is too high to have the unit heating constantly for 1 hour, the Contractor shall adjust the setpoint temperature of the unit. The Contractor shall coordinate this testing with all other trades. The Contractor is responsible for scheduling this testing and shall take into account any additional measures required to accomplish the testing based on the ambient air temperature. The Contractor shall not raise the temperature in the space to a point where it will cause damage to any equipment in the space or create unsafe or uncomfortable working conditions for the workers as determined by the Owner. If the Owner determines that the ambient conditions will not allow the testing of this equipment because the Contractor has scheduled the testing for a point in the season known to be warm, the Contractor shall provide any temporary cooling required to run this test including but not limited to temporary fans, ductwork, chillers, generators, cooling towers, make-up water supplies, heat exchangers, or air conditioners at no additional cost to the project.

c. Monitor heat build-up in bearings. Temperature shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendations.

d. Monitor for any abnormal noises or vibration. Abnormal noises and vibration shall be assessed and determined by the equipment manufacturer's representative.

e. Check unit loads against nameplate data

f. Record fan sound levels ten (10) feet from the surface of the fan in five (5) minute intervals during both 1 hour continuous operating periods.

3.02 ADDITIONAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Seasonal Periods: If initial balancing procedures were not performed during near-peak conditions, the engineer may request a temperature recheck to further verify performance at near-peak conditions.

B. Controls Verification

1. In conjunction with system balancing perform the following:

a. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with the approved drawings.

b. Verify that instruments and devices are calibrated and function as intended.

c. Verify that controller setpoints are as specified. Provide setpoints to Contractor where required by the strategies such as fan/pump speeds and modulating damper positions to achieve design flows.

d. Verify the operation of all valve and damper actuators.

e. Verify that all controlled devices are properly installed.

f. Verify that all controlled devices travel freely and are in the position indicated by the controller: open, closed, or modulating.

g. Verify the location and installation of all sensors to ensure they will sense only the intended temperatures.

2. Reporting

a. The report shall include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and any variations from specified conditions

3.03 INDIVIDUAL SYSTEM TESTING

A. The Contractor shall coordinate with other trades as required to complete the testing activities with minimal disruption to the owner's staff and operation of the facility.

B. All systems shall be tested to verify the system operates per the respective equipment specifications and Control Strategies. The testing shall systematically test all control functions including but not limited to all logic sequences, modes of operation, interlocks, alarms, safeties, adjustable setpoints, and instrument readings at all control panels.

3.04 REPAIR FOLLOWING TESTING PROCEDURES

A. All repair work shall be completed at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Mark equipment settings, including damper control positions, valve indicators, fan speed control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings. Mark with suitable permanent means of identification.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 81 24
WALL-MOUNTED PACKAGED AIR CONDITIONERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. These specifications describe requirements for an environmental control system. The system shall be designed to maintain temperature conditions in the rooms containing electronic equipment. The manufacturer shall design and furnish all equipment to be fully compatible with heat dissipation requirements of the room.

B. The equipment shall include the following items plus whatever anchor bolts, etc. that are required to mount the outdoor units and appurtenances, as required for a complete operational system and as shown on the Contract Drawings.

C. All necessary accessory equipment and appurtenances shall be provided for a complete and operating system whether or not specifically stated in the Specifications. This installation shall incorporate the highest standards for the type of service shown on the Drawings included field testing of the entire installation and instruction of the regular operating personnel in the care, operation, and maintenance of all equipment.

D. The equipment shall be furnished complete with all accessories, special tools, spare parts, extra set of filters, and other appurtenances as specified or as may be required for a satisfactory installation.

E. The entire packaged system of indoor unit and outdoor condenser shall be provided by one manufacturer with sole responsibility for the satisfactory manufacture, factory testing, installation supervision, and performance of the systems.

F. The unit shall be UL listed and meet or exceed ASHRAE 90.1 efficiency requirements.

G. Work Included Under Other Sections:

1. 480V, 3-phase power wiring and conduit under Division 26 – Electrical.

2. Motor starters under Division 26 – Electrical, unless factory mounted and wired by equipment manufacturer.

1.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to the Project Site under the provisions of Division 01.

B. Accept products on site in factory-fabricated protective containers, with factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs. Inspect for damage.

C. Store in clean dry place and protect from weather and construction traffic. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosures and finish.

D. Protect openings in casing and seal them with plastic wrap to keep dirt and debris. Protect coils from entry of dirt and debris with pipe caps or plugs.

1.03 SPARE PARTS

A. Provide one additional set of specified fan belts, sheaves, thermostat, and filters for each unit, packaged for storage. Tag products to identify associated unit.

1.04 SCHEDULES ON DRAWINGS

A. In general, all capacities of equipment and motor and starter characteristics are shown in schedules on the Drawings. Reference shall be made to the schedules for such information. The capacities shown are minimum capacities. Variations in capacities of the scheduled equipment supplied under this Contract will be permitted only with the written direction of the Engineer.

B. Motors and wheel diameters shown on the schedules are the minimum. If a larger wheel diameter or horsepower is required, it shall be so quoted and noted.

1.05 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Installation of all equipment shall be in accordance with manufacturer's data.

B. All changes from the installation procedures in manufacturers' data shall be submitted for approval in accordance with the requirements for shop drawings.

C. Keep all manufacturers' data provided in a secure manner at the job site at all times. Catalog and index this data for convenient reference.

D. Manufacturers' data shall be available for the information of the Owner, Engineer, and the use of other trades.

E. Turn over all data to the Owner through the Owner's representative at completion of the Work and final testing.

F. Submit all instruction books and manuals in accordance with Division 01.

1.06 CODES, PERMITS AND STANDARDS

A. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all permits (unless specifically excluded under Division 01 requirements) and shall comply with all laws and codes that apply to the Work.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for all added expense due to his choice of equipment, materials or construction methods.

C. All work and materials shall be in full accordance with the latest North Carolina rules and regulations or publications including those of the North Carolina Fire Marshall, the International Mechanical and Energy Codes, and all local codes. Nothing in the Plans and/or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to the above codes, rules and regulations.

D. All equipment, materials and installations shall conform to the requirements of the most recent edition with latest revisions, supplements and amendments of the following, as applicable:

1. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)

2. Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA)

3. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRAE)

4. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

5. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

6. National Electric Code (NEC)

7. NFPA 90A - Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems 2019 edition

8. International Mechanical Code Current edition in force.

9. State/Commonwealth and local codes, ordinances and statutes

10. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

1.07 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit shop drawings and other information in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 01 77 19 – Closeout Requirements.

1. Equipment specifications and data sheets identifying all materials used and methods of fabrication.

2. Rated performance and capacities of coils, fans, and motors.

3. Complete assembly, layout required clearances, installation and foundation drawings with clearly marked dimensions.

4. Include all specification technical exceptions in the submittal. The manufacturer agrees that the equipment is in compliance with Specification Sections that are not identified in the list of technical exceptions.

5. Refrigerant piping diagrams.

6. Interconnecting wiring diagram.

7. Motor nameplate data as specified in Section 26 05 60 – Low Voltage Electric Motors.

8. Example equipment nameplate data sheet.

9. Spare parts list.

10. Reports of certified shop tests.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this Section with minimum of five years of documented experience, who issues complete catalog data on total product.

B. The Manufacturer of the equipment shall provide documentation supporting compliance with ISO-9000:2000 (Model for Quality Assurance in Design/Development, Production, Installation and Servicing). Product literature provided by the manufacturer shall contain the ISO-9000:2000 Certification Mark from the applicable registrar.

C. All material and equipment shall be the latest design, new, not deteriorated, and the first quality standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such material and equipment.

D. When two or more units of the same class of material or equipment are required, they shall be products of a single manufacturer.

E. All work shall be performed in a neat and workmanlike manner by workers skilled in their respective trades, and all materials and equipment shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturers and in accordance with specified codes and standards.

F. Touch up and/or repaint to match original factory coatings/finishes for all coated, finished or painted equipment and materials which are scratched or marred during shipment or installation.

G. Factory Authorized Start-Up Services: The Contractor shall provide the services of a qualified manufacturer's technical representative who shall adequately supervise the installation and field testing of all equipment furnished under this Contract and instruct the Contractor's personnel and the Owner's operating personnel in its maintenance and operation as outlined in Division 01.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide precision control air conditioning unit(s) manufactured by one of the following:

1. Bard (Basis of Design).

2. Marvair

3. Or approved equal

2.02 WALL MOUNTED UNITS

A. The wall mounted packaged cooling unit is completely self-contained. All components are enclosed in the weatherproof cabinet. The unit does not use any of the valuable floor space inside the secure space. Instead, it is mounted on the outside wall. No additional space is required outside or on a roof. The unit shall be assembled, wired, piped, charged with R-454B refrigerant and fully factory-tested as a system. The system shall have the following built-in components:

B. Cabinet and Frame Construction: The exterior cabinet is constructed of galvanized steel panels. Internal structural parts (including base) are hot dipped galvanized steel. The evaporator compartment is insulated with 1/2-in. (13mm) thick, 2 lb. (0.9kg) density, neoprene faced, fiberglass insulation. The system shall be designed for 105 degrees F ambient. All coils shall be coated with the manufacturer’s coastal protective coating.

C. Scroll Compressor: The compressor shall be 2-stage scroll-type. The compressor shall feature a suction gas cooled motor, an internal centrifugal oil pump, vibration isolating mountings and internal thermal overloads.

D. The refrigeration circuit includes a liquid line filter drier, an externally equalized expansion valve and a high-pressure switch.

E. The evaporator coil shall be constructed of mechanically expanded copper tubes in enhanced surface aluminum fins. A stainless steel condensate drain pan shall be provided.

F. The air-cooled condenser coil is constructed of mechanically expanded copper tubes in enhanced surface aluminum fins. Components are rated for up to 130°F ambient. Provide Manufacturer’s coastal protective coating.

G. Evaporator air is supplied by a direct drive blower package. Fans are centrifugal, double width, double inlet.

H. Filter shall be 2-inch deep, pleated, with a minimum efficiency rating of MERV 8 per ASHRAE Standard 52.2 (20% efficient per ASHRAE 52.1). Located within the cabinet, the filter is serviceable from the front of the unit.

I. Provide a Low Pressure Switch, a Low Pressure Bypass and a Fan Cycle Control.

J. Condenser Fan Cycling Control: Consists of a reverse acting pressure switch. During low outdoor temperatures, the pressure switch cycles the condenser fan to maintain discharge pressures that will allow the system to function. Allows unit operation down to -20°F (Low ambient Operation).

K. Provide a lockout relay for the detection of a high-pressure condition in the refrigeration circuit to prohibit operation of the compressor until the abnormal pressure conditions is acknowledged. The lockout relay is reset by cycling the unit main power or by changing the set point on the thermostat to temporarily eliminate a call for cooling.

L. Common Alarm: A common alarm accessory shall include the necessary components to, high temperature to provide a customer signal via a contact closure. Dry contacts shall be provided for remote alarm/unit lockout notification.

M. Indoor supply and return grills: The supply grill shall be louvered, 4-wau deflection type grill allowing user adjustment of direction of air distribution. The return grill is an louvered, fixed, single deflection style grill.

2.03 CONTROLS

A. Provide manufacturer supplied multi- unit controller. Controller shall be wall mounted and capable of controlling the cooling and heating stage(s) with unit lead/lag, automatic changeover, and economizer functions, as applicable. The controller shall have a built-in space temperate sensor and also be capable of accepting outputs from additional. Controller shall provide remote high space temperature alarm output sent to SCADA.

B. Provide manufacturer multi-unit controller capable of controlling the cooling and heating stage(s) with automatic changeover, and economizer functions, as applicable.

1. Controllers shall have a means to adjust the space temperature setpoints on the controller.

2. Controllers shall have the capability to be programmed with separate “On” and “Off” equipment function setpoints to establish dead band ranges to limit equipment cycling.

3. Controllers shall have a display capable of showing the current space temperature,, space temperature setpoint, space, schedule, and mode of operation.

4. Controller shall be capable of fully executing the sequence of operation outlined on drawings.

2.04 ECONOMIZER

A. Air handling units shall be provided with economizer cycle options where indicated on drawings.

B. The economizer assembly shall include fully modulating 0-100 percent motor and dampers, minimum position setting, preset linkage, wiring harness with plug, spring return actuator and fixed dry bulb control.

C. The air handling shall have means for relieving/exhausting outside air through the units when operating in economizer mode to prevent over pressurization of the space.

D. The economizer option shall meet the low leak requirements for ASHRAE 90.1, IECC, and CA Title 24 standards (3 cfm/ft^2@1" wg exterior air, 4 cfm/ft^2@1" wg return air).

E. Economizer shall operate based on factory installed differential enthalpy control.

2.05 REFRIGERANT ACCESSORIES

A. The Contractor shall supply and install expansion valve, sight glass, shut-off valves, hot, solenoid valves, strainers, drier and any other refrigerant system accessories required for a complete installation.

2.06 SCHEDULE

A. All air conditioning units shall be furnished by one manufacturer. Units shall be furnished in accordance with the schedule shown on the Drawings.

2.07 CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPE

A. Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Pipe and Fittings:

1. Pipe: Drain, waste and sanitary pipes and fittings shall be DWV Schedule 40 PVC, ASTM D2665.

2. Joints: Chemical weld with manufacturers recommended solvent.

2.08 SUPPORTS

A. Wall mounted units shall be supported from the structure consistent with manufacturer recommended requirements.

B. Seismic & Wind Requirements: All units shall be provided with seismic and wind restraints in accordance with the Seismic Restraint Manual, Guidelines for Mechanical Systems in accordance with the 2018 North State Building Code: Building Code, the indicated design wind speed, and ASCE-7 to the extent that the most stringent provisions are utilized. Material of seismic and wind restraints shall be as specified herein. A calculation signed and sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer in the State of North Carolina shall be provided verifying that the installed supports meet the

seismic and wind requirements. See Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Non-Structural Components and the Structural Design Drawings for additional details and requirements.

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Installation shall meet or exceed all applicable federal, state/commonwealth and local requirements, referenced standards and conform to codes and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. All installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer’s published recommendations.

C. Install precision air-conditioning units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances.

D. Water and Drainage Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 piping installation sections. Provide adequate connections for condensate drain, and humidifier flushing system. Pipe condensate to nearest floor drain unless drawings indicate alternate pipe routing.

E. Install pre-charged refrigerant line sets per factory installation guidelines and per routing shown on drawings. Install refrigerant sight glass, shut-off and service valves and accessories and test all pipe joints and connections. Repair all leaks and charge complete system with correct refrigerant to factory specifications.

F. The air conditioning unit(s) shall be connected and placed in proper working order in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and details. Do not operate the air conditioning unit(s) until significant completion of construction, or without explicit approval from the engineer. The Contractor shall furnish and install interconnecting wiring and conduits between all low voltage factory field mounted devices and the unit.

3.02 MANUFACTURER’S SERVICES

A. Furnish services of qualified manufacturer's factory trained service personnel to assist in the installation of the equipment, check the installation before it is placed into operation, supervise initial operations and instruct plant operators in the care, operation and maintenance of the equipment.

3.03 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and marks and other debris from exterior of equipment weekly.

B. Remove debris and waste material resulting from installation weekly.

3.04 GUARANTEE

A. All components, parts, and assemblies shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year. The period of such warranties shall start

on the date the particular equipment is placed in use by the Owner with corresponding start-up certification provided by the manufacturer's technical representative as specified herein, provided that the equipment demonstrates satisfactory performance during the thirty-day operational period after the equipment startup. If the equipment does not perform satisfactorily during the thirty-day operational period, the start of the warranty period will be delayed until the equipment demonstrates proper operation. The Equipment Supplier shall repair or replace without charge to the Owner any part of equipment which is defective or showing undue wear within the guarantee period, or replace the equipment with new equipment if the mechanical performance is unsatisfactory; furnishing all parts, materials, labor, etc., necessary to return the equipment to its specified performance level.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 00
BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, tools, and equipment, and perform all work and services necessary for, or incidental to, the furnishing and installation of all electrical work as shown on the Drawings, and as specified in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents, and completely coordinate with the work of other trades involved in the general construction. Although such work is not specifically shown or specified, all supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, and devices incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure, and complete installation shall be furnished and installed as part of this work. The Contractor shall obtain approved Shop Drawings showing wiring diagrams, connection diagrams, roughing-in, and hook up details for all equipment and comply therewith. All electrical work shall be complete and left in operating condition in accordance with the intent of the Drawings and the Specifications for the electrical work.

B. Reference Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions and General Requirements in Division 01 for scope of work details as they relate to the Division 40 Instrumentation and Control System Subcontractor.

C. The electrical scope of work for this project primarily includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. Modifications to existing electrical equipment as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

2. Install new medium voltage transformers and termination cabinets

3. Furnish and install new medium voltage raceway.

4. Furnish and install low voltage motor control equipment including reduced voltage motor starters and variable frequency drives.

5. Furnish and install power panelboards, lighting panelboards, dry-type transformers, and other low voltage electrical power distribution equipment.

6. Furnish and install all aboveground raceway systems including conduit, fittings, boxes, supports, and other pertinent components.

7. Furnish and install all underground raceway systems including conduit, fittings, manholes, handholes and other pertinent components.

072023

8. Furnish and install all low voltage wire and cable resulting in a complete and operable electrical system.

9. Furnish and install new lighting systems and wiring devices.

10. Furnish and install facility lightning protection systems and grounding systems where specified or indicated on the Drawings.

11. Other electrical work as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

D. All material and equipment shall be the product of an established, reputable, and approved manufacturer; shall be new and of first-class construction; shall be designed and guaranteed to perform the service required; and shall bear the Label of approval of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., where such approval is available for the product of the listed manufacturer as approved by the Engineer.

E. When a specified or indicated item has been superseded or is no longer available, the manufacturer's latest equivalent type or model of material or equipment as approved by the Engineer shall be furnished and installed at no additional cost to the Owner.

F. Where the Contractor's selection of equipment of specified manufacturers or additionally approved manufacturers requires changes or additions to the system design, the Contractor shall be responsible in all respects for the modifications to all system designs, subject to approval of the Engineer. The Contractor's bid shall include all costs for all work of the Contract for all trades made necessary by such changes, additions or modifications or resulting from any approved substitution.

G. Furnish and install all stands, racks, brackets, supports, and similar equipment required to properly serve the equipment which is furnished under this Contract, or equipment otherwise specified or indicated on the Drawings.

H. All electrical components and systems (e.g., conduit and other raceways, freestanding equipment, etc.) and their anchorage, including electrical equipment foundations, shall be designed to resist the controlling load combination of gravity loads, operational forces, wind forces, seismic forces, thermal loads, and any other applicable forces required in accordance with the governing Building Code and Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components. Seismic design shall be in accordance with ASCE 7 Chapter 13 unless the nonstructural component meets the criteria to be exempt.

1.02 EQUIPMENT LOCATION

A. The Drawings show the general location of feeders, transformers, equipment, devices, conduits, and circuit arrangements. Because of the small scale of the Drawings, it is not possible to indicate all of the details involved. The Contractor shall carefully investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and shall arrange such work accordingly. Contractor shall furnish and install such fittings, junction boxes, and accessories as may be required to meet such conditions. The Contractor shall refer to

the entire Drawing set to verify openings, special surfaces, and location of other equipment, or other special equipment prior to roughing-in for panels, switches, and other outlets. The Contractor shall verify all equipment dimensions to ensure that proposed equipment will fit properly in spaces indicated.

B. Where outlets are shown near identified equipment furnished by this or other Contractors, it is the intent of the Specifications and Drawings that the outlet be located at the equipment to be served. The Contractor shall coordinate the location of these outlets to be near the final location of the equipment served whether placed correctly or incorrectly on the Drawings.

1.03 LOCAL CONDITIONS

A. The Contractor shall examine the site and become familiar with conditions affecting the work. The Contractor shall investigate, determine, and verify locations of any overhead or buried utilities on or near the site, and shall determine such locations in conjunction with all public and/or private utility companies and with all authorities having jurisdiction (AHJs). All costs, both temporary and permanent to connect all utilities, shall be included in the Bid. The Contractor shall be responsible for scheduling and coordinating with the local utility for temporary and permanent services.

B. In addition, the Contractor shall relocate all duct banks, lighting fixtures, receptacles, switches, boxes, and other electrical equipment as necessary to facilitate the Work included in this project. Costs for such work shall be included in the Bid.

C. The Contractor is responsible for coordinating all electric utility equipment installations with the serving electric utility. The Contractor shall furnish and install all electric utility equipment required by the electric utility to be installed by the Contractor whether specifically shown on the Drawings or not.

D. The Contractor shall furnish and install the following electric utility equipment as a minimum:

1. Concrete transformer/equipment pads constructed in accordance with utility requirements and/or as instructed by the electric utility.

2. Primary and /or secondary conduits/ductbank and manholes as shown on drawings.

3. Secondary conductors.

4. Secondary terminations.

E. The electric utility will furnish and install the following equipment:

1. Primary conductors and terminations.

2. Utility Transformer.

3. Termination Cabinets.

4. Metering Equipment.

F. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring all electric utility equipment and construction installed by the Contractor is furnished and installed in accordance with the electric utility's design specifications and requirements. The Contractor is fully responsible for coordinating all required work with the electric utility. Any additional required electric utility construction or equipment not specified herein or shown on the Drawings shall be supplied by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. The contact person at the serving electrical utility is:

Brandon Burks
City of Concord Electrical Systems
505 Alfred Brown Jr. Ct SW
Concord, NC 28025
704.920.6301
burksb@concordNC.gov

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and the requirements of the individual Specification Sections, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts List

4. Proposed Testing Methods and Reports of Certified Shop Tests

5. Reports of Certified Field Tests

6. Manufacturer's Representative's Certification

B. Submittals shall be sufficiently complete in detail to enable the Engineer to determine compliance with Contract requirements.

C. Submittals will be approved only to the extent of the information shown. Approval of an item of equipment shall not be construed to mean approval for components of that item for which the Contractor has provided no information.

D. Some individual electrical specification sections may require a Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter to be submitted. If the CD&E letter is required and shop drawings are submitted without the letter, the submittal will be rejected. The letter shall

include all comments, deviations, and exceptions taken to the Drawings and Specifications by the Contractor AND Equipment Manufacturer/Supplier. This letter shall include a copy of the applicable specification section(s). In the left margin beside each and every paragraph/item, a letter "C", "D", or "E" shall be typed or written in. The letter "C" shall be for full compliance with the requirement. The letter "D" shall be for a deviation from the requirement. The letter "E" shall be for taking exception to a requirement. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions is not acceptable. The CD&E letter shall also address deviations and exceptions taken to each Drawing related to the applicable specification section(s).

E. Submit design for all nonstructural electrical components and systems and their anchorage in accordance with the governing Building Code and Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components.

1.05 APPLICABLE CODES AND REQUIREMENTS

A. Conformance

1. Unless otherwise noted, all work, equipment, and materials furnished shall conform with the latest available version of the rules, requirements, and specifications of the following:

    a. Insurance Rating Organization having jurisdiction.

    b. The serving electric utility company.

    c. The currently adopted edition of the National Electrical Code (NEC).

    d. The National Electric Manufacturers Association (NEMA).

    e. The Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE).

    f. The Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA).

    g. The American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM).

    h. The American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

    i. The requirements of the Occupational Safety Hazards Act (OSHA).

    j. The National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA) Standard of Installation.

    k. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).

    l. InterNational Electrical Testing Association (NETA).

m. All other applicable Federal, State/Commonwealth, and local laws and/or ordinances.

2. All equipment and materials shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL), if the material and equipment is of the type/class inspected by said laboratories.

B. Nonconformance

1. Any paragraph of requirements in these Specifications or Drawings deviating from the rules, requirements, and specifications of the above organizations shall be invalid and their (the above organizations) requirements shall hold precedent thereto. The Contractor shall be held responsible for adherence to all rules, requirements, and specifications as set forth above. Any additional work or material necessary for adherence will not be allowed as an extra, but shall be included in the Bid. Ignorance of any rule, requirement, or specification shall not be allowed as an excuse for nonconformity. Acceptance by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor from the expense involved for the correction of any errors which may exist in the drawings submitted or in the satisfactory operation of any equipment.

C. Certification

1. Where applicable, upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall obtain certificate(s) of inspection and approval from the inspection organization having jurisdiction and shall deliver same to the Engineer and the Owner.

1.06 PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS

A. The Contractor shall reference the General Conditions and Section 01 11 00 – Summary of Work.

1.07 TEMPORARY LIGHTING AND POWER

A. The Contractor shall reference the General Conditions and Section 01 51 00 – Temporary Utilities.

1.08 TESTS

A. Upon completion of the installation, the Contractor shall perform tests for operation, load (Phase) balance, overloads, and short circuits. Tests shall be made with and to the satisfaction of the Owner and Engineer.

B. The Contractor shall perform all field tests and shall provide all labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing and shall pay for electric power required for the tests. All defective material and workmanship disclosed shall be corrected by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall show by demonstration in service that all circuits

and devices are in good operating condition. Test shall be such that each item of control equipment will function not less than five (5) times.

C. Refer to each individual specification section for detailed test requirements.

D. The Contractor shall complete the installation and field testing of the electrical installation at least two (2) weeks prior to the start-up and testing of any equipment served by that electrical equipment. During the period between the completion of electrical installation and the start-up and testing of all other equipment, the Contractor shall make all components of the Work available as it is completed for their use in performing Preliminary and Final Field Tests.

E. Before each test commences, the Contractor shall submit a detailed test procedure, and also provide test engineer resume, personnel, and scheduling information for the approval by the Engineer. In addition, the Contractor shall furnish detailed test procedures for any electrical equipment required as part of the field tests of other systems.

1.09 INFRARED INSPECTION

A. Just prior to the final acceptance of a piece of equipment, the Contractor shall perform an infrared inspection to locate and correct all heating problems associated with electrical equipment terminations. The infrared inspection shall be performed by a qualified, independent, third-party testing company, not the Electrical Contractor.

B. Equipment located in hazardous areas shall be excluded from infrared testing requirements since the equipment in those areas is not intended to be operated while the enclosure is open. The infrared inspection shall apply to all new equipment and existing equipment in non-hazardous areas that is in any way modified under this Contract. All heating problems detected with new equipment furnished and installed under the Scope of this Contract shall be corrected by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. All problems detected with portions of existing equipment modified under this Contract shall also be corrected by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Any issues detected with portions of existing equipment that were not modified under this Contract are not the responsibility of the Contractor. Despite the Contractor not being held responsible for these problems, the Contractor shall report them to the Owner and Engineer immediately for resolution.

D. The infrared inspection report shall include both digital photos and infrared (IR) photos positioned side by side. Both the digital and IR photos shall be clear and high quality. Fuzzy, grainy, or poorly illuminated photos are not acceptable. Each IR photo shall be provided with a temperature scale beside it, and an indication of the hot spot temperature in the photo. Reports shall be furnished in a 3-ring binder, with all pages printed in full color, with equipment assemblies separated by tabs.

1.10 PROTECTIVE DEVICE SETTING AND TESTING

A. The Contractor shall provide the services of a field services organization to adjust, set, calibrate and test all protective devices in the electrical system. The organization shall be a subsidiary of or have a franchise service agreement with the electrical equipment manufacturer. The qualifications of the organization and resumes of the technicians as well as all data forms to be used for the field testing shall be submitted.

B. All protective devices in the electrical equipment shall be set, adjusted, calibrated, and tested in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations, the coordination study, and best industry practice.

C. Proper operation of all equipment associated with the device under test and its compartment shall be verified, as well as complete resistance, continuity, and polarity tests of power, protective, and metering circuits. Any minor adjustments, repairs, and/or lubrication necessary to achieve proper operation shall be considered part of this Contract.

D. All solid state trip devices shall be checked and tested for setting and operation using manufacturers' recommended test devices and procedures.

E. Circuit breakers and/or contactors associated with the above devices shall be tested for trip and close functions with their protective device.

F. When completed, the Contractor shall provide a comprehensive report for all equipment tested indicating condition, readings, faults, and/or deficiencies in same. Inoperative or defective equipment shall be brought immediately to the attention of the Engineer.

G. Prior to placing any equipment in service, correct operation of all protective devices associated with this equipment shall be demonstrated by field testing under simulated load conditions.

1.11 POWER SYSTEM STUDIES

A. The Contractor shall provide coordination and arc flash power system studies performed by a licensed Professional Engineer (P.E.) in accordance with Section 26 05 73 – Power System Studies.

1.12 SCHEDULES AND FACILITY OPERATIONS

A. Since the equipment testing required herein shall require that certain pieces of equipment be taken out of service, all testing procedures and schedules shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval one (1) month prior to any work beginning. When testing has been scheduled, the Engineer shall be notified 48 hours prior to any work to allow time for load switching and/or alternation of equipment. In addition, all testing that requires temporary shutdown of facility equipment shall be coordinated with the Owner/Engineer so as not to affect proper facility operations.

B. At the end of the workday, all equipment shall be back in place and ready for immediate use should a facility emergency arise. In addition, should an emergency condition occur during testing, at the request of the Owner, the equipment shall be placed back in service immediately and turned over to Owner personnel.

C. In the event of accidental shutdown of Owner equipment, the Contractor shall notify Owner personnel immediately to allow for an orderly restart of affected equipment.

D. Maintaining the operation of these facilities during the duration of the construction period is essential and required. The Contractor shall furnish and install temporary equipment as required to maintain facility operation. Reference Section 01 14 00 – Coordination with Owner's Operations for construction sequencing and specific operational constraint information.

1.13 EQUIPMENT, MATERIALS, AND SPARE PARTS HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Materials arriving on the job site shall be stored in such a manner as to keep material free of rust and dirt and to keep material properly aligned and true to shape. Rusty, dirty, or misaligned material will be rejected. Electrical conduit shall be stored to provide protection from the weather and accidental damage. Rigid non-metallic conduit shall be stored on even supports and in locations not subject to direct sun rays or excessive heat. Cables shall be sealed, stored, and handled carefully to avoid damage to the outer covering or insulation and damage from moisture and weather. Adequate protection shall be required at all times for electrical equipment and accessories until installed and accepted. Materials damaged during shipment, storage, installation, or testing shall be replaced or repaired in a manner meeting with the approval of the Engineer. If space heaters are provided in a piece of electrical equipment, they shall be temporarily connected to a power source during storage. The Contractor shall store equipment and materials in accordance with Section 01 55 00 – Contractor Access and Parking.

B. Spare parts lists, included with the shop drawing submittal for each Section, shall indicate specific sizes, quantities, and part numbers of the items to be furnished. Terms such as "1 lot of packing material" are not acceptable.

C. Spare parts shall be completely identified with a numerical system to facilitate parts inventory control and stocking. Each part shall be properly identified by a separate number. Those parts which are identical for more than one size, shall have the same parts number.

D. Spare parts shall be packed in containers suitable for long term storage, bearing labels clearly designating the contents and the pieces of equipment for which they are intended.

E. Spare parts shall be delivered at the same time as the equipment to which they pertain. The Contractor shall properly store and safeguard such spare parts until completion of the work, at which time they shall be delivered to the Owner.

1.14 WARRANTIES

A. Unless otherwise specified in an individual specification section, all electrical equipment and electrical construction materials shall be provided with a warranty in accordance with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and the General Conditions.

1.15 TRAINING

A. Unless otherwise specified in an individual specification section, all training for electrical equipment shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

A. Unless otherwise indicated, the materials to be provided under this Specification shall be the products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of all such items and shall be the manufacturer's latest design. The products shall conform to the applicable standards of UL and NEMA, unless specified otherwise. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standards are not recognized. Equipment designed, manufactured, and labeled in compliance with IEC standards is not acceptable.

B. All items of the same type or ratings shall be identical. This shall be further understood to include products with the accessories indicated.

C. All equipment and materials shall be new, unless indicated or specified otherwise.

D. The Contractor shall submit proof if requested by the Engineer that the materials, appliances, equipment, and/or devices that are provided under this Contract meet the requirements of Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. with regard to fire and casualty hazards. Documentation indicating Listing and Labeling by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., will be accepted as meeting this requirement.

E. Where the above items are Labeled by (bearing the certification mark of) an OSHA Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) other than UL, and the NRTL is authorized by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) to test and certify those items to the same standard(s), then the certification mark of that NRTL shall be considered equivalent to the ‘UL’ certification mark.

2.02 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Unless specifically noted otherwise, any reference in the Specifications or on the Drawings to any article, service, product, material, fixture, or item of equipment by name, make, or catalog number shall be interpreted as establishing the type, function, and standard of quality and shall not be construed as limiting competition. The Contractor, in

such cases may use any article, device, product, material, fixture, or item of equipment which in the judgment of the Engineer, expressed in writing, is equal to that specified.

2.03 CONCRETE

A. The Contractor shall furnish all concrete required for the installation of all electrical work. Concrete shall be Class A unless otherwise specified. Concrete and reinforcing steel shall meet the appropriate requirements of Division 03 of the Specifications.

B. The Contractor shall provide concrete equipment pads for all free-standing electrical apparatus and equipment located on new or existing floors or slabs. The Contractor shall provide all necessary anchor bolts, channel iron sills, and other materials as required. The exact location and dimensions shall be coordinated for each piece of equipment well in advance of the scheduled placing of these pads. Equipment pads shall be 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and shall conform to the Standard Detail for equipment pads shown on the Drawings. Equipment pads shall not have more than 3 inches of excess concrete beyond the edges of the equipment.

C. The Contractor shall provide concrete foundations for all free-standing electrical apparatus and equipment located outdoors or where floors or slabs do not exist and/or are not or provided by others under this Contract. The Contractor shall provide all necessary anchor bolts, channel iron sills, and other materials as required. The location and dimensions shall be coordinated for each piece of equipment well in advance of the scheduled placing of the foundations. Equipment foundations shall be constructed as detailed on the Drawings or if not detailed on the Drawings shall be 6 inches thick minimum reinforced with #4 bars at 12-inch centers each way placed mid-depth. Concrete shall extend 6 inches minimum beyond the extreme of the equipment base and be placed on a compacted stone bed (#57 stone or ABC) 6 inches thick minimum.

2.04 RUBBER INSULATING MATTING

A. Rubber insulating matting shall be furnished and installed for each piece of electrical equipment that is located indoors and installed under this Contract. Rubber insulating matting shall not be installed outdoors. Matting shall be installed in the front of all equipment and in the rear of equipment that is rear accessible. The mat shall be long enough to cover the full length of the equipment. The mat shall be ¼-inch thick with beveled edges, canvas back, solid type with corrugations running the entire length of the mat. The matting shall meet OSHA requirements and the requirements of ASTM D-178 for Type 2, Class 2 insulating matting. Matting shall be 36 inches wide, minimum. However, matting width shall be no less than the NEC working clearance for the equipment with which it is associated.

B. Matting shall be provided for the following equipment:

1. PLC/RTU Enclosures

2. Motor Control Centers

3. Switchgear Assemblies

4. Switchboard Assemblies

5. Variable Frequency Drives

6. Reduced Voltage Starters

7. Unit Substations

8. Panelboards

9. Automatic Transfer Switches

10. Generator Output Circuit Breakers

11. Generator Control Panels

12. Fire Alarm Control Panels

13. Harmonic Correction Equipment

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Coordination

1. The Work shall be coordinated between all trades to avoid delays and unnecessary cutting, channeling, and drilling. Sleeves shall be placed in concrete for passage of conduit wherever possible.

B. Damage

1. The Contractor shall perform all chasing, channeling, drilling, and patching necessary to the proper execution of this Contract. Any damage to the building, structure, or any equipment shall be repaired by qualified mechanics of the trades involved at the Contractor's expense. If, in the Engineer's judgment, the repair of damaged equipment would not be satisfactory, then the Contractor shall replace damaged equipment at the Contractor’s expense.

C. Existing Equipment

1. Provide a suitable cover or plug for openings created in existing equipment as the result of work under this Contract. For example, provide round plugs in equipment enclosures where the removal of a conduit creates a hole and the enclosure. Covers and plugs shall maintain the NEMA rating of the equipment enclosure.

Covers and plugs shall be watertight when installed in equipment located outdoors.

3.02 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

A. The Contractor shall perform all excavation and backfill required for the installation of all electrical work. All excavation and backfilling shall be in complete accordance with the applicable requirements of Division 31.

3.03 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Wherever dissimilar metals, except conduit and conduit fittings, come into contact, the Contractor shall isolate these metals as required with neoprene washers, nine (9) mil polyethylene tape, or gaskets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 19
LOW VOLTAGE CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, connect, test, and place in satisfactory operating condition all low voltage wire and cable indicated on the Drawings, as specified herein, and/or required for proper operation. The work of connecting cables to equipment and devices shall be considered a part of this Section. All appurtenances required for the installation of wire and cable systems shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor.

B. The scope of this Section does not include internal wiring factory installed by electrical equipment manufacturers.

C. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 33.16 – Boxes for Electrical Systems

3. Section 26 28 16.16 – Enclosed Switches

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All low voltage wire, cable, and appurtenances shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Low voltage wire, cable, and appurtenances shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

a. IEEE 1202 – Standard for Flame Testing of Cables.

2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

a. ASTM B3 – Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire.

b. ASTM B8 – Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft.

c. ASTM B33 – Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes.

020824

d. ASTM D69 – Standard Test Methods for Friction Tapes.

e. ASTM D4388 – Standard Specification for Nonmetallic Semi-Conducting and Electrically Insulating Rubber Tapes.

3. Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA):

a. ICEA S-58-679 – Standard for Control, Instrumentation and Thermocouple Extension Conductor Identification.

b. ICEA T-29-250 – Conducting Vertical Cable Tray Flame Tests with Theoretical Heat Input Rate of 210,000 B.T.U./Hour.

4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 13 – Standard for Power-Limited Circuit Cables.

b. UL 44 – Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables.

c. UL 83 – Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables.

d. UL 486A-486B – Standard for Safety Wire Connectors

e. UL 1277 – Standard for Electrical Power and Control Tray Cables with Optional Optical-Fiber Members.

f. UL 1581 – Reference Standard for Electrical Wires, Cables, and Flexible Cords.

g. UL 1685 – Standard for Vertical-Tray Fire-Propagation and Smoke-Release Test for Electrical and Optical-Fiber Cables.

h. UL 2250 – Standard for Instrumentation Tray Cable.

i. UL 2556 – Wire and Cable Test Methods.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the wire and cable manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Reports of Field Tests

3. Circuit Logs

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed material's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible Submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets for the following:

a. Wire and cable

1) The product data sheets for wire and cable for up to four (4) manufacturers for each type of wire/cable specified herein will be reviewed if they are submitted at the same time under the same submittal cover for simultaneous review.

b. Power and control wire terminations, including wire ferrules

c. Instrumentation cable terminations

d. Shielded VFD cable terminations

e. Pulling lubricant.

2. Cable pulling calculations (if required).

3. Wiring identification methods and materials.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 CABLE PULLING CALCULATIONS

A. Prior to the installation of the wire and cable specified herein, the Contractor shall submit cable pulling calculations for Engineer review and approval when all of the following are true:

1. The amount of cable to be installed will be greater than 200 linear feet between pull points.

2. The installation will have one or more bends.

3. The wire/cable is size #1/0 AWG and larger.

B. Cable pulling calculations shall be performed by a Professional Engineer (P.E.) licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. Calculations shall define pulling tension and sidewall loading (sidewall bearing pressure values).

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The wire and cable to be furnished and installed for this project shall be the product of manufacturers who have been in the business of manufacturing wire and cable for a minimum of ten (10) years. Wire and cable shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

2.02 POWER AND CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Power wire installed between the output terminals of a VFD and the respective motor shall be shielded VFD cable as specified herein.

B. Power wire for all other loads and control wire shall consist of insulated copper conductors with a nylon (or equivalent) outer jacket. Conductor insulation shall be rated 90°C for dry locations, 75°C for wet locations, and 600V. Insulated conductors shall be UL 83 Listed as NEC Type THHN/THWN.

C. Unless specified otherwise herein, conductors shall be stranded copper per ASTM B-8 and B-3, with Class B or C stranding contingent upon the size. Power conductors for lighting and receptacle branch circuits shall be solid copper per ASTM B-3.

D. Power conductor size shall be no smaller than No. 12 AWG and Control conductor size shall be no smaller than No. 14 AWG.

E. Multi-conductor cable assemblies shall include a grounding conductor and an overall PVC jacket. The jacket shall be PVC and resistant to abrasion, sunlight, and flame in accordance with UL 1277. Multi-conductor cable assemblies shall be UL 1277 Listed as NEC Type TC (Power and Control Tray Cable).

F. Power wire and cable shall be as manufactured by the Okonite Company, the Southwire Company, General Cable, Encore Wire, or Engineer approved equal.

2.03 INSTRUMENTATION CABLE

A. For single-analog signal applications, instrumentation cable shall consist of a single, twisted pair or triad of individually insulated and jacketed copper conductors with an overall cable shield and jacket. Conductor insulation shall be rated 90°C in both wet and dry locations, and 600V. The jacket shall be PVC and resistant to abrasion, sunlight, and flame in accordance with UL 1277. Cable shall be UL 1277 Listed as NEC Type TC (Power and Control Tray Cable).

B. For multiple-analog signal applications, instrumentation cable shall consist of multiple, twisted pairs or triads (i.e., groups) of individually insulated and jacketed copper conductors with individual pair/triad shields (i.e., group shields) and an overall cable shield and jacket. Conductor insulation shall be rated 90°C in both wet and dry locations, and 600V. The jacket shall be PVC and resistant to abrasion, sunlight, and flame in accordance with UL 1277. Cable shall be UL 1277 Listed as NEC Type TC (Power and Control Tray Cable).

C. Cable and group shields shall consist of overlapped aluminum/polyester tape/foil providing 100% coverage. Instrumentation cables shall include an overall copper shield drain wire. Cables containing multiple twisted pairs or triads shall also include group shield drain wires.

D. Conductors, including drain wires, shall be tin or alloy coated (if available), soft, annealed copper, stranded per ASTM B-8, with Class B stranding unless otherwise specified.

E. Instrumentation signal conductor size shall be no smaller than No. 16 AWG.

F. Instrumentation cable shall be Okoseal-N Type P-OS (for single pair or triad applications) or Okoseal-N Type SP-OS (for multiple pair or triad applications) as manufactured by the Okonite Company, Belden equivalent, Southwire Company equivalent, or Engineer approved equal.

2.04 SHIELDED VFD CABLE

A. Where indicated on the Drawings, shielded VFD cable shall be installed between the output terminals of a VFD and the respective motor.

B. Shielded VFD cable shall consist of three (3) individually insulated copper phase conductors and three (3) bare copper grounding conductors with an overall cable shield and jacket, suitable for use with variable frequency drives. The phase conductors and ground conductors shall be symmetrically arranged within the cable assembly. Conductor insulation shall be rated 90°C in both wet and dry locations, and 2000V (2kV). Insulated conductors shall be UL Listed as NEC Type RHW-2 or XHHW-2. The jacket shall be PVC and resistant to abrasion, sunlight, and flame in accordance with UL 1277. Cable shall be UL Listed as NEC Type TC-ER (Tray Cable for Exposed Runs).

C. Phase conductors shall be sized as shown on the Drawings. Ground conductors shall have a combined circular mil area equivalent to the equipment grounding conductor size required by NEC Table 250.122, minimum. Filler material shall be included in the cable assembly as necessary to make the cable round.

D. Cable shields shall consist of a helically applied bare copper tape with 50% overlap, minimum. For small conductor sizes where copper tape shields are not available, shields shall be permitted to consist of a layer of tin-coated copper braid covered by a layer of overlapped aluminum/polyester tape/foil. All cable shields shall provide 100% coverage.

E. Conductors shall be annealed, tinned, stranded copper per ASTM B3, B8, and B33.

F. Shielded VFD cable shall be as manufactured by Belden Wire and Cable, the Okonite Company, General Cable, Southwire, or AmerCable Inc.

2.05 OTHER CABLES

A. Category 6 UTP communication cables and fiber optic cables shall be as specified in Specification Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment.

2.06 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION

A. Conductors shall be identified using a color-coding method. Color coding for individual power, control, lighting, and receptacle conductors shall be as follows:

1. 480/277V AC Power

    a. Phase A – BROWN

    b. Phase B – ORANGE

    c. Phase C – YELLOW

    d. Neutral – GREY

2. 120/208V or 120/240V AC Power

    a. Phase A – BLACK

    b. Phase B – RED

    c. Phase C – BLUE

    d. Neutral – WHITE

3. DC Power

    a. Positive Lead – RED

b. Negative Lead - BLACK

4. DC Control

a. All wiring – BLUE

5. 120 VAC Control

a. 120 VAC control wire shall be RED except for a wire entering a motor control center compartment, motor controller, or control panel which is an interlock. This interlock conductor shall be color coded YELLOW. For the purposes of this Section, an interlock is defined as any wiring that brings voltage into the above-mentioned equipment from a source outside that equipment.

6. 24 VAC Control

a. All wiring - ORANGE

7. Equipment Grounding Conductor

a. All wiring - GREEN

B. Individual conductors No. 2 AWG and smaller shall have factory color coded insulation. It is acceptable for individual conductors larger than No.2 AWG to be provided with factory color coded insulation as well, but it is not required. Individual conductors larger than No.2 AWG that are not provided with factory color coded insulation shall be identified by the use of colored tape in accordance with the requirements listed in Part 3 herein. Insulation colors and tape colors shall be in accordance with the color-coding requirements listed above.

C. Conductors that are part of multi-conductor cable assemblies shall have black insulation. The conductor number shall be printed on each conductor's insulation in accordance with ICEA S-58-679, Method 4. Each conductor No.2 AWG and smaller within the cable assembly shall also be identified with a heat shrink tag with color coded background. Each conductor larger than No.2 AWG within the cable assembly shall also be identified by the use of colored tape. Heat shrink tags and colored tape shall be in accordance with the requirements listed in Part 3 herein. Tape color and heat shrink tag background color shall be in accordance with the color-coding requirements listed above.

2.07 CABLE PULLING LUBRICANTS

A. Cable pulling lubricants shall be non-hardening type and approved for use on the type of cable installed. Lubricant shall be Yellow #77 Plus by Ideal, Cable Gel by Greenlee, Poly-Gel by Gardner Bender, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 WIRE AND CABLE INSTALLATION

A. General

1. All wire and cable furnished under this Contract, including wire and cable furnished under other Divisions, shall be installed in raceways (e.g., conduit) unless specifically noted otherwise.

2. Wire and cable shall be installed as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. Unless specifically indicated otherwise on the Drawings, wire and cable shall be installed in separate raceways according to wiring type. For example, power wiring shall not be combined with control wiring, and control wiring shall not be combined with instrumentation wiring.

3. Wire shall be furnished and installed as single conductor cables, with limited exceptions. Multi-conductor cable assemblies shall only be installed where indicated on the Drawings, required by the NEC, or after obtaining written permission from the Engineer.

4. Where instrumentation cables are installed in control panels, motor controllers, and other locations, the Contractor shall arrange wiring to provide maximum clearance between these cables and other conductors. Instrumentation cables shall not be installed in same bundle with conductors of other circuits.

5. Instrumentation cable shielding shall be continuous and shall be grounded at one point only.

B. Splices

1. Splices shall not be allowed in power or control wire and cable unless approved in writing by the Engineer. If unique field conditions exist or pulling calculations indicate that splices may be required, the Contractor shall submit a detailed request indicating why splices are required to the Engineer. The Engineer shall be under no obligation to grant such request.

2. Splicing materials shall be UL 486A Listed barrel type butt splice connectors and heat shrink tubing as manufactured by 3M, Ideal, or equal. The use of screw-on wire connectors (wire nuts) shall only be permitted for lighting and receptacle circuits.

3. No splicing of instrumentation cable is permitted.

C. Wire and Cable Sizes

1. The sizes of wire and cable shall be as indicated on the Drawings, or if not shown, as approved by the Engineer. If required due to field routing, the size of conductors

and respective conduit shall be increased so that the voltage drop measured from source to load does not exceed 2-1/2%.

D. Additional Conductor Identification

1. In addition to the color-coding identification requirements specified in Part 2 herein, individual conductors shall be provided with heat shrinkable identification tags. Identification tags for individual conductors shall have a white background where the conductor insulation is colored. Identification tags for individual conductors shall have a colored background where the conductor insulation is black. Background color shall match that of the taping provided on the individual black conductors.

2. Multi-conductor cables shall be provided with heat shrinkable identification tags in accordance with Part 2 herein.

3. All wiring shall be identified at each point of termination. This includes but is not limited to identification at the source, load, and in any intermediate junction boxes where a termination is made. The Contractor shall meet with the Owner and Engineer to come to an agreement regarding a wire identification system prior to installation of any wiring. Wire numbers shall not be duplicated.

4. Wire identification shall be by means of a heat shrinkable sleeve with appropriately colored background and black text. Wire sizes #14 AWG through #10 AWG shall have a minimum text size of 7 points. Wire sizes #8 AWG and larger shall have a minimum text size of 10 points. Sleeves shall be of appropriate length to fit the required text. The use of handwritten text for wire identification shall not be permitted.

5. Sleeves shall be suitable for the size of wire on which they are installed. Sleeves shall not be heat-shrunk onto control cables. Tags shall remain loose on cable to promote easier identification. For all other applications, sleeves shall be tightly affixed to the wire and shall not move. Sleeves shall be heat shrunk onto wiring with a heat gun approved for the application. Sleeves shall not be heated by any means which employs the use of an open flame. The Contractor shall take special care to ensure that the wiring insulation is not damaged during the heating process.

6. Sleeves shall be installed prior to the completion of the wiring terminations and shall be oriented so that they can be easily read.

7. Sleeves shall be polyolefin as manufactured by Brady, Seton, Panduit, or equal.

8. Wire identification in manholes, handholes, pull boxes, and other accessible components in the raceway system where the wiring is continuous (no terminations are made) shall be accomplished by means of a tag installed around the bundled group of individual conductors or around the outer conductor jacket of a multi-conductor cable. Identification shall utilize a FROM-TO system. Each group

of conductors shall consist of all the individual conductors in a single conduit or duct. The tag shall have text that identifies the bundle in accordance with the 'FROM' and 'TO' column for that specific conduit number in the conduit and wire schedule. Minimum text size shall be 10 point. The tag shall be affixed to the wire bundle using nylon wire ties and shall be made of polyethylene as manufactured by Brady, Seton, Panduit, or equal.

9. Where colored tape is used to identify cables, it shall be wrapped around the cable with a 25% overlap and shall cover at least 2 inches of the cable.

E. Wiring Supplies

1. Rubber insulating tape shall be in accordance with ASTM D4388. Friction tape shall be in accordance with ASTM D69.

F. Training of Cable in Manholes, Handholes, and Vaults

1. The Contractor shall furnish all labor and material required to train cables around cable vaults, manholes, and handholes. Sufficient length of cable shall be provided in each handhole, manhole, and vault so that the cable can be trained and racked in an approved manner. In training or racking, the radius of bend of any cable shall be not less than the manufacturer's recommendation. The training shall be done in such a manner as to minimize chaffing.

2. Instrumentation cable shall be racked and bundled separate from AC wiring to maintain the required separation as follows:

a. 18 inches for 480/277 VAC wiring

b. 12 inches for 208/120 VAC wiring

c. 6 inches for 24 VAC wiring

G. Conductor Terminations

1. Where wires are terminated at equipment which requires lugs, connections shall be made by solderless mechanical lug, crimp type ferrule, or irreversible compression type lugs. Reference individual equipment Specification Sections as applicable for additional termination requirements.

2. For conductors with stranding other than Class B or C, a UL 486A Listed wire ferrule shall be installed prior to each conductor termination. Ferrules shall be suitable for the size of conductors and shall be made of a material that is compatible with the conductors. Ferrules shall be crimped on in accordance with the ferrule manufacturer's instructions.

3. Where enclosure sizes and sizes of terminals at limit switches, solenoid valves, float switches, pressure switches, temperature switches, and other devices make

terminations impractical due to the size of the field wiring, the Contractor shall terminate field wiring in an adjacent junction box per the requirements of Section 26 05 33.16 – Boxes for Electrical Systems, complete with terminal strips. Contractor shall install the smaller wiring from the device to the junction box in a conduit, using the terminal strip as the means for joining the two different wire sizes. Splicing of wires in lieu of using terminal strips is not acceptable.

4. The cables shall be terminated in accordance with the cable and/or termination product manufacturer's instructions for the particular type of cable.

5. Shielded VFD cables shall be terminated with kits required by or recommended by the approved shielded VFD cable manufacturer. Termination kits shall be installed in strict accordance with the shielded VFD cable manufacturer's and termination kit manufacturer's instructions. Where disconnect switches are shown on the Drawings to be installed on circuits utilizing shielded VFD cables, the installation shall be coordinated and executed as specified in Specification Section 26 28 16.16 – Enclosed Switches.

6. To minimize oxidation and corrosion, selected wire and cable shall be terminated using an oxide-inhibiting joint compound recommended for electrical connections. The compound shall be Penetrox E for copper-to-copper connections, and Penetrox A for all other connections, as manufactured by Burndy Electrical, or equal. The joint compound shall be used in the following installations:

   a. Termination of aluminum conductors, where aluminum conductors are specifically allowed by the Engineer.

   b. Terminations in all Class I and Class II, Division 1 and 2 hazardous areas.

7. All spare conductors shall be terminated on terminal blocks mounted within equipment or junction boxes. Unless otherwise noted, coiling up of spare conductors within enclosure is not acceptable.

H. Pulling Temperature

1. Cable shall not be installed when the temperature of the jacket is such that damage will occur due to low temperature embrittlement. When cable will be pulled with an ambient temperature of 40°F or less within a three (3) day period prior to pulling, the cable reels shall be stored three (3) days prior to pulling in a protected storage area with an ambient temperature of 55°F or more. Cable pulling shall be completed during the workday for which the cable is removed from the protected storage. Any cable reels with wire remaining on them shall be returned to storage at the completion of the workday.

I. Circuit Log

1. The Contractor shall maintain a written log of installed circuit lengths for all single-phase and three-phase power circuits operating at 208VAC or greater. The log

shall be organized in a tabular format, recording the following items for each circuit:

a. Circuit ID or Conduit ID(s) as shown on the Drawings.

b. From (originating equipment).

c. To (terminating equipment).

d. Conductor sizes and counts.

e. Conductor length.

3.02 TESTING

A. All testing shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Shop Test

a. Wires and cables shall be tested in accordance with the applicable ICEA Standards. Wire and cable shall be physically and electrically tested in accordance with the manufacturer's standards.

2. Field Tests

a. After installation, all wires and cables shall be tested for continuity. Testing for continuity shall be "test light" or "buzzer" style.

b. After installation, wires and cables shall be tested for insulation resistance levels between conductors of the same circuit and between conductor and ground as follows:

1) For #8 AWG and larger 600V wire and cable, apply 1,000 VDC from a Megohmmeter for one (1) minute. Resistance shall be no less than 100 Megohms.

2) Instrumentation signal cable shall be tested from conductor to conductor, conductor to shield, and conductor to ground using a Simpson No. 260 volt-ohmmeter or approved equal. The resistance value shall be 200 Megohms or greater.

3) Insulation resistance testing is not required for power and control cables smaller than #8 AWG.

c. Wires and cables shall be tested after required terminations are made, but before being connected to any equipment.

d. If tests reveal defects or deficiencies, the Contractor shall make the necessary repairs or shall replace the cable as directed by the Engineer, without additional cost to the Owner. All conductors of a multi-phase circuit shall be replaced if one conductor fails the required testing. If part of a multi-set (parallel conductors per phase) circuit fails testing, only the set containing failure shall be replaced.

e. All tests shall be made by and at the expense of the Contractor who shall supply all testing equipment. Test reports shall be submitted to the Engineer.

Exhibit A
Test Data – Megohms
Test No. ____

Date:			Company:				
Time:			Location:				
Circuit:	Circuit Length:	Aerial:	Duct:	Buried:	No. of Conductors	Size:	AWG MCM Shield:
Insulation Material:			Insulation Thickness:		Voltage Rating:		Age:
Type: _____ Pothead _____ Terminal					Location: Indoors _____ Outdoors _____		
Number and Type of Joints:							
Recent Operating History:							
Manufacturer:							
State if Potheads or Terminals were grounded during test:							
List associated equipment included in test:							
Miscellaneous Information:							

Exhibit A
Test Data – Megohms
Test No. ____

Part Tested:	Test Performed: _____ Hours/Days: _____ After Shutdown: _____
Grounding Time:	Dry Bulb Temperature: _____ Wet Bulb Temperature: _____
Test Voltage:	Equipment Temperature: _____ How Obtained: _____ Relative Humidity: _____ Absolute Humidity: _____ Dew Point: _____

Megohmmeter: Serial Number: _____ Range: _____
Voltage: _____ Calibration Date: _____

Test Connections	To Line To Earth To Ground	To Line To Earth To Ground	To Line To Earth To Ground	Test Connections	To Line To Earth To Ground	To Line To Earth To Ground	To Line To Earth To Ground
1/4 Minute				5 Minutes			
1/2 Minute				6 Minutes			
3/4 Minute				7 Minutes			
1 Minute				8 Minutes			
2 Minutes				9 Minutes			
3 Minutes				10 Minutes			
4 Minutes				10/1 Minute Ratio			

Remarks:

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 26

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install grounding systems complete in accordance with the requirements established by Article 250 of the NEC. Article 250 of the NEC shall be considered a minimum requirement for compliance with this Specification.

B. Grounding of all instrumentation and control systems shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the manufacturer/system requirements and IEEE 1100. Conflicts shall be promptly brought to the attention of the Engineer.

C. In addition to the NEC requirements, building structural steel columns and metallic chemical storage tanks shall be permanently and effectively grounded:

D. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Equipment and materials covered under this Section shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

    a. IEEE 81 – Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System.

    b. IEEE 1100 – Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment.

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

    a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

    a. UL 467 – Grounding and Bonding Equipment.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

072123

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Reports of certified field tests.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Drawings and written description of how the Contractor intends to furnish and install the grounding system.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by these specifications shall be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

2.02 GROUND RODS AND GRID

A. Ground rods shall be rolled to a commercially round shape from a welded copper-clad steel manufactured by the molten-welding process or by the electro-formed process (molecularly bonded). They shall have an ultimate tensile strength of 75,000 pounds per square inch (psi) and an elastic limit of 49,000 psi. The rods shall be not less than 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length; and the proportion of copper shall be uniform throughout the length of the rod. The copper shall have a minimum wall thickness of 0.010 inch at any point on the rod. Ground rods shall be UL 467 Listed. The ground rods shall be manufactured by Erico Products, Blackburn, or Engineer approved equal.

B. Except where specifically indicated otherwise, all exposed non -current-carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, metallic raceway systems, grounding conductors in nonmetallic raceways, and neutral conductors of wiring systems shall be grounded.

C. The ground connection shall be made at the main service equipment and shall be extended to the ground grid surrounding the structure. The ground grid shall also be

connected to the point of entrance of the metallic water service. Connection to the water pipe shall be made by a suitable ground clamp or lug connection to a plugged tee. If flanged pipes are encountered, connection shall be made with the lug bolted to the street side of the flanged connection.

D. Where ground fault protection is employed, care shall be taken so that the connection of the ground and neutral does not interfere with the correct operation of the ground fault protection system.

2.03 FITTINGS

A. Grounding connections to equipment shall be bolted. Cable end connections shall be exothermically welded. Split bolt type connectors are not acceptable. Fittings shall be UL 467 Listed.

2.04 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

A. An insulated equipment grounding conductor, which shall be separate from the electrical system grounded (neutral) conductor, shall be furnished and installed for all circuits. Insulation shall be of the same type as the ungrounded conductors in the raceway and shall be green in color. Equipment grounding conductors shall be furnished and installed in all conduits. Use of conduits as the NEC required equipment grounding conductor is not acceptable.

2.05 EQUIPMENT GROUNDS

A. Equipment grounds shall be solid and continuous from a connection at earth to all distribution panelboards. Ground connections at panelboards, outlets, equipment, and apparatus shall be made in an approved and permanent manner.

B. For all control panels, disconnect switches, and other electrical enclosures, equipment grounds, and bonding jumpers shall be terminated individually on a ground bar or mechanical lugs. No wire nuts will be permitted.

2.06 GROUND BARS

A. Ground bars shall be furnished and installed where indicated on the Drawings and where required in the Specifications. Ground bars shall be tin-plated copper, 1/4-inch thick (minimum) with hole pairs spaced for NEMA 2-hole cable termination lugs. The number of hole pairs shall be as required for the number of cables terminated, plus four (4) spares (minimum). Ground bars shall be provided with insulated mounting hardware.

2.07 EXOTHERMIC WELDS

A. All exothermic welding shall be completed per welding kit manufacturer's instructions. Exothermic welds shall be CadWeld by Erico or ThermoWeld.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Metal surfaces where grounding connections are to be made shall be clean and dry. Steel surfaces shall be ground or filed to remove all scale, rust, grease, and dirt. Copper and galvanized steel shall be cleaned with emery cloth to remove oxide before making connections.

B. Ground Grid

1. A main ground grid shall be provided for each structure and interconnecting structure grids consisting of driven ground rods as shown on the Drawings. Ground rods shall be driven straight down into the earth, or if objects are encountered, at an angle to avoid the obstruction.

2. The ground rods shall be interconnected by the use of copper cable sized as shown on the Drawings. The interconnecting cables shall be connected to ground rods by hydraulic crimp or exothermic weld where buried, and removable bolted clamp where shown to be installed in test wells. The grounding cables shall be installed after the excavations for the building have been completed and prior to the pouring of concrete for the footings, mats, etc. Copper "pigtails" shall be connected to the ground grid and shall enter the buildings and structure from the outside, and shall be connected to steel structures, equipment as described in this Section, and as required to provide a complete grounding system. The copper pigtails shall be hydraulically crimped or exothermically welded to the ground grid and connected to building reinforcement steel by hydraulic crimp.

3. Grounding conductors shall be continuous between points of connection; splices shall not be permitted.

4. Where conductors are exposed and subject to damage from personnel, traffic, etc., conductors shall be installed in metal raceway. The raceway shall be bonded to the grounding system.

5. Where subsurface conditions do not permit use of driven ground rods to obtain proper ground resistance, rods shall be installed in a trench or plate electrodes shall be provided, as applicable and necessary to obtain proper values of resistance.

6. Buried hydraulic crimp connections, exothermic welds, and ground ring shall not be backfilled until inspected by Engineer.

C. Raceways

1. Conduit which enters equipment such as switchgear, switchboards, motor control centers, transformers, panelboards, variable frequency drives, instrument and

control panels, and similar equipment shall be bonded to the ground bus or ground lug, where provided, and as otherwise required by the NEC.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Witnessed Shop Tests

    a. None required.

2. Field Tests

    a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

    b. Fall of potential tests shall be performed on the ground grid per IEEE 81 recommendations by a third party, independent testing firm. A fall of potential plot shall be submitted at the conclusion of testing for Engineer review. Documentation indicating the location of the rod and grounding system as well as the resistance and soil conditions at the time the measurements were made shall be submitted. Testing shall show that the ground grid has 5 ohms resistance or less. Due to soil conditions and/or unforeseen field conditions, ground resistances greater than 5 ohms may be acceptable if specifically approved in writing by the Engineer. Ground resistance measurements shall be made in normally dry weather not less than 48 hours after rainfall and with the ground grid under test isolated from other grounds.

    c. Continuity tests for the grounding electrode conductor shall be performed. Test will be accepted when a resistance of less than 1 ohm is shown for this conductor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 29

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install structural supports for mounting and installing all conduits, electrical equipment, lighting, alarm systems, instrumentation, and control and communications equipment furnished under this Contract.

B. Equipment shall be installed strictly in accordance with recommendations of the manufacturer and best practices of the trade resulting in a complete, operable, and safe installation. The Contractor shall obtain written installation manuals from the equipment manufacturer prior to installation.

C. Support design for all nonstructural electrical components (e.g., conduit and other raceways, freestanding equipment, etc.) shall be provided in accordance with the governing Building Code and Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components.

D. Metal welds and fasteners shall be provided in accordance with the governing Building Code and Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

E. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components

2. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

3. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

4. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Equipment and materials covered under this Section shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

a. ASTM A123 – Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.

b. ASTM A153 – Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.

101524

c. ASTM A240 – Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications.

d. ASTM A276 – Standard Specification for Steel Bars and Shapes.

e. ASTM B783 – Standard Specification for Materials for Ferrous Powder Metallurgy Structural Parts.

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop drawings

2. Structural support calculations and designs in accordance with the governing Building Code and Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Complete assembly, layout, installation, and foundation drawings with clearly marked dimensions.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Support channel shall be 1-5/8” by 1-5/8” minimum, with 12-gauge material thickness.

B. Support channel, support channel fittings, and threaded rod shall be furnished with the following material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Material of Construction
Indoor Wet Process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Non-process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	Fiberglass
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Hazardous Areas	Type 304 Stainless Steel

C. Fastening hardware (bolts, nuts, washers, and screws) shall be furnished with the following material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Material of Construction
Indoor Wet Process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Non-process Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	Fiberglass
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Hazardous Areas	Type 304 Stainless Steel

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Concrete and Masonry Anchors

1. The Contractor shall be responsible for the furnishing and installation of all concrete anchors, masonry anchors, anchor screen tubes, bolts, and similar devices required for installation of equipment furnished under this Contract.

2. Where specific anchor types and sizes are called for on the Drawings, those anchor types and sizes shall be used. Where the Drawings call for anchors but do not have any type or size details shown, the anchors shall be designed and selected by an Engineer currently registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. Reference Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening for anchor product specifications and anchor design requirements.

B. The Contractor shall furnish leveling channels for all switchgear, switchboards, motor control centers, and similar floor mounted equipment. The leveling channels shall be provided for embedment in the equipment housekeeping pads. Coordination of the installation of these channels with the concrete pad is essential and required. Pad height shall be as required to maintain concrete coverage of the reinforcement bars while not causing associated equipment to exceed the maximum mounting height requirements of the NEC.

C. Support Fastening and Locations

1. All equipment fastenings to columns, steel beams, and trusses shall be by beam clamps or welded. No holes shall be drilled in the steel.

2. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or in the Specifications, guards/handrails shall not be utilized as supports for electrical equipment, devices, or appurtenances. Guards/handrails shall not be cut, drilled, or otherwise modified in order to accommodate electrical supports without written approval from the Engineer.

3. All holes made in reflected ceilings for support rods, conduits, and other equipment shall be made adjacent to ceiling grid bars, where possible, to facilitate removal of ceiling panels.

4. Support channel shall be provided wherever required for the support of starters, switches, panels, and miscellaneous equipment.

5. Equipment, devices, and raceways that are installed on the dry side of a water bearing wall shall not be installed directly onto the wall. Support channel shall be used to allow ventilation air to pass behind the equipment, devices, or raceway.

6. All supports shall be rigidly bolted together and braced to make a substantial supporting framework. Where possible, control equipment shall be grouped together and mounted on a single framework.

7. Aluminum support members shall not be installed in direct contact with concrete. Stainless steel or non-metallic "spacers" shall be used to prevent contact of aluminum with concrete.

8. Actual designs for supporting framework should take the nature of a picture frame of support channels and bracket with a plate for mounting the components. The Contractor is responsible for the design of supporting structure; Contractor shall submit design details to the Engineer for acceptance before proceeding with the fabrication.

9. Wherever dissimilar metals come into contact, the Contractor shall isolate these metals as required with neoprene washers, nine (9) mil polyethylene tape, or gaskets. Reference Section 05 10 00 - Metal Materials for guidance on dissimilar metals.

10. For all installations where fiberglass supporting materials are required, the Contractor shall submit structural calculations and the details of the proposed system of support. Structural calculations shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer (P.E.) licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

11. For the following installations where conduits are provided with a support system suspended from the above or attached to a vertical structure, the Contractor shall submit structural calculations and details of the proposed system of support. Structural calculations shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer (P.E.) licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

    a. A quantity of twelve (12) or more conduits trade size 1” and smaller are proposed for a conduit support rack.

    b. A quantity of eight (8) or more conduits trade sizes 1 ½” to 2 1/2” are proposed for a conduit support rack.

    c. A quantity of four (4) or more conduits trade sizes 3” and larger are proposed for a conduit support rack.

12. Single conduits installed exposed along walls and ceilings shall be secured to the wall or ceiling with a one-hole conduit clamp and clamp-back. Where multiple conduits are installed exposed together, support channel and conduit clamps shall be used.

D. Equipment, boxes, and enclosures which are factory-constructed with integral mounting provisions (such as brackets, mounting feet, bolt holes, etc.) shall be installed/supported utilizing those mounting provisions. Equipment, boxes and enclosures shall not be field-modified by any means which compromises the UL Listing or NEMA rating of the enclosure/assembly.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 33.13
CONDUIT FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install conduits, conduit fittings, and appurtenances to complete the installation of all electrically operated equipment as specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, and as required.

B. Reference Specification Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements.

C. Requirements for conduit clamps, support systems, and anchoring are not included in this Section. Reference Specification Section 26 05 29 – Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems, for these requirements.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment and materials shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Conduits, conduit fittings, and appurtenances shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

    a. ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 – Pipe Threads, General Purpose.

    b. ANSI C80.1 – Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit.

    c. ANSI C80.5 – Electrical Rigid Aluminum Conduit.

    d. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 – Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable.

2. National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA):

    a. NECA 1 – Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction.

3. National Electrical Manufacturer’s Association (NEMA):

    a. NEMA FB 2.40 – Installation Guidelines for Expansion and Expansion/Deflection Fittings.

    b. NEMA RN 1 – PVC Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit.

020824

c. NEMA RV-3 – Application and Installation Guidelines for Flexible and Liquid-tight Flexible Metal and Nonmetallic Conduits.

d. NEMA TC-2 – Electrical PVC Conduit.

e. NEMA TC-3 – PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.

4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 1 – Standard for Flexible Metal Conduit.

b. UL 6 – Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel.

c. UL 6A – Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Aluminum, Red Brass, and Stainless Steel.

d. UL 360 – Standard for Liquid-tight Flexible Metal Conduit.

e. UL 467 – Grounding and Bonding Equipment.

f. UL 514B – Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings.

g. UL 651 – Standard for Schedule 40 and 80 Conduit and Fittings.

h. UL 797 – Electrical Metallic Tubing-Steel.

i. UL 1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

j. UL 1479 – Standard for Fire Tests of Penetration Fire Stops.

k. UL 1660 – Liquid-tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit.

6. Others:

a. American Concrete Institute (ACI): ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.

b. Aluminum Association – Aluminum and It's Alloys.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Conduit identification methods and materials.

2. Product data sheets for conduits, fittings, and miscellaneous associated materials.

a. The product data sheets for conduits and fittings for up to three (3) manufacturers for each type of conduit specified herein will be reviewed if they are submitted at the same time under the same submittal cover for simultaneous review.

1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Conduits are categorized by the circuit type of the wiring to be installed inside. Conduits are defined as follows:

1. Power Conduits – Conduits that carry AC or DC power wiring from a source to a load. Conduits that carry lighting and receptacle wiring.

2. Control Conduits – Conduits that carry AC or DC discrete control wiring between devices and/or equipment. Also, conduits that carry fiber optic cables between devices and/or equipment.

3. Instrumentation Conduits – Conduits that carry AC or DC analog signal wiring between devices and/or equipment. Conduits that carry Category 5e or Category 6 unshielded twisted-pair cables.

B. Conduit categories are indicated on the Drawings by the leading letter of the conduit tag. Conduit tag leading letters are defined as follows:

1. P – Power Conduit

2. C – Control Conduit

3. I – Instrumentation Conduit

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Conduit and conduit fitting products are specified in the text that follows this article. Reference Part 3 herein for the application, uses, and installation requirements of these conduits and conduit fittings.

B. All metallic conduit fittings shall be UL 514B and UL 467 Listed and constructed in accordance with ANSI FB 1. All metallic conduit fittings for use in Class I, Division 1 hazardous areas shall be UL 1203 Listed with a visible certification tag on the outside of the fitting. All non-metallic fittings shall be UL 651 Listed and constructed in accordance with NEMA TC-3.

C. Flexible conduit couplings for use in Class I, Division 1 hazardous areas shall have threaded Type 316 stainless steel end fittings and a flexible braided core. Flexible braid shall be constructed of Type 316 stainless steel where available in the conduit trade size required for the application. Where Type 316 stainless steel braid is not available, the braid shall be provided with a factory-applied PVC coating. No other braid types or materials are acceptable.

D. Where threading is specified herein for conduit fitting connections, the fittings shall be manufactured to accept conduit that is threaded to ANSI B1.20.1 requirements.

E. Conduit expansion fittings for all conduit materials of construction shall be capable of 4 inches of movement along the axis of the conduit for trade sizes 2 inches or less. Expansion fittings shall be capable of 8 inches of movement along the axis of the conduit for trade sizes greater than 2 inches.

F. Conduit deflection fittings for all conduit materials of construction shall be provided with a flexible neoprene outer jacket that permits up to ¾ inch of expansion/contraction along the axis of the conduit as well as up to ¾ inch of parallel misalignment between the conduit axes. Outer jacket shall be secured to the conduit hubs by Type 304 stainless steel clamps.

G. Conduit seals shall either be Listed and Labeled for 40% fill, or conduit reducing fittings and a trade size larger conduit seal shall be provided to achieve 25% or less fill within the seal. Percentage fill calculation shall be based on the conductors to be installed. Conduit seals shall be provided with breathers and/or drains where required by the NEC.

H. Conduit insulating bushings shall be constructed of plastic and shall have internal threading.

I. Additional conduit and conduit fitting requirements are specified in the articles that follow based on the specific conduit material of construction to be used.

2.02 RIGID GALVANIZED STEEL (RGS) CONDUIT AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Conduit

1. Conduit shall be hot dip galvanized on the inside and outside and made of heavy wall high strength ductile steel. Conduit shall be manufactured in accordance with ANSI C80.1 and shall be UL 6 Listed.

2. Conduit shall be provided with factory-cut 3/4 inch per foot tapered threads at each end in accordance with ANSI B1.20.1. Threads shall be cut prior to galvanizing to ensure corrosion protection adequately protects the threads. Conduit shall be provided with a matching coupling on one end and a color-coded thread protector on the other.

B. Conduit Bodies for use with Rigid Galvanized Steel

1. Conduit bodies shall be constructed of an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated with an acrylic paint finish. Conduit bodies shall have integral threaded conduit hubs.

2. Conduit bodies for Class I, Division 1 hazardous areas shall be provided with integrally threaded covers constructed of an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated with an acrylic paint finish.

3. Conduit bodies for all other areas shall be provided with covers that are affixed in place by Type 304 stainless steel screws which thread directly into the conduit body. Covers that utilize wedge nuts or any other method of attachment to the conduit body are not acceptable. Covers shall be constructed of an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated with an acrylic paint finish. Covers shall be provided with matching gasket.

C. Conduit Couplings, Nipples, and Unions for use with Rigid Galvanized Steel

1. Couplings and nipples shall be threaded and shall be constructed of hot dipped galvanized steel. Split-type couplings that use compression to connect conduits are not acceptable.

2. Unions shall be threaded, rain-tight, and constructed of an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated with an acrylic paint finish.

D. Conduit Expansion and Deflection Fittings for use with Rigid Galvanized Steel

1. Conduit expansion fittings and conduit deflection fittings shall be constructed of bronze or an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy. Expansion and deflection fittings shall have threaded conduit connections.

2. Expansion fittings shall have an integral bonding jumper and deflection fittings shall have an external bonding jumper.

E. Conduit Seals for use with Rigid Galvanized Steel

1. Conduit seals shall be constructed of an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated with an acrylic paint finish. Conduit seals shall have threaded conduit connections.

F. Conduit Termination Fittings for use with Rigid Galvanized Steel

1. Conduit hubs shall be constructed of Type 316 stainless steel and shall have threaded connections to the conduit and enclosure. Hubs shall have a plastic insulated throat and shall be watertight when assembled to an enclosure.

2. Conduit locknuts shall be constructed of zinc plated steel. Locknuts shall have internal threading. Locknuts with integral gasket or seal are not acceptable. Locknuts shall have integral bonding screw where required for proper bonding.

3. Conduit bonding bushings shall be constructed of zinc plated malleable iron. Bonding bushings shall have a threaded conduit connection. Bonding bushing shall be provided with properly sized set screw for connecting bonding conductor and an integral plastic insulator rated for 150 degrees C located in the throat.

2.03 RIGID NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Conduit

1. Conduit shall be Schedule 40 or 80 (dependent on application) polyvinyl chloride (PVC) construction, manufactured in accordance with NEMA TC-2, UL 651 Listed, and suitable for conductors with 90 degree C insulation.

B. Conduit Bodies for use with Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

1. Conduit bodies shall be constructed of PVC. Conduit hubs shall be integral to the conduit body and shall be smooth inside to accept a glued conduit connection.

2. Conduit body shall be provided with cover that is affixed in place by Type 304 stainless steel screws which thread directly into the conduit body. Covers that utilize wedge nuts or any other method of attachment to the conduit body are not acceptable. Covers shall be provided with matching gasket.

C. Conduit Couplings and Unions for use with Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

1. Conduit couplings and unions shall be constructed of PVC and shall be smooth inside to accept a glued conduit connection.

D. Conduit Expansion and Deflection Fittings for use with Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

1. Conduit expansion fittings and conduit deflection fittings shall be constructed of PVC and shall be smooth inside to accept a glued conduit connection.

E. Conduit Termination Fittings for use with Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

1. Conduit hubs shall be constructed of PVC and shall be smooth inside to accept a glued conduit connection. Hubs shall have external threads and an accompanying PVC locknut and shall be watertight when assembled to an enclosure.

2. Conduit locknuts shall be constructed of zinc plated steel. Locknuts shall have internal threading. Locknuts constructed of PVC and locknuts with integral gasket or seal are not acceptable.

3. Conduit end bells shall be constructed of PVC and shall be smooth inside to accept a glued conduit connection. End bell shall have a smooth inner surface that curves outward towards the edge of the fitting.

2.04 RIGID ALUMINUM CONDUIT AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Conduit

1. Conduit shall be made of heavy wall high strength 6063 alloy aluminum with temper designation T1 as defined by the Aluminum Association. Conduit shall be manufactured in accordance with ANSI C80.5 and shall be UL 6A Listed.

2. Conduit shall be provided with factory-cut 3/4 inch per foot tapered threads at each end in accordance with ANSI B1.20.1. Threads shall be cut prior to galvanizing to ensure corrosion protection adequately protects the threads. Conduit shall be provided with a matching coupling on one end and a color-coded thread protector on the other.

B. Conduit Bodies for use with Rigid Aluminum Conduit

1. Conduit bodies shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum which is coated with an aluminum enamel finish. Conduit bodies shall have integral threaded conduit hubs.

2. Conduit bodies for Class I, Division 1 hazardous areas shall be provided with integrally threaded covers constructed of copper-free aluminum which is coated with an aluminum enamel finish.

3. Conduit bodies for all other areas shall be provided with stamped copper-free aluminum covers that are affixed in place by Type 304 stainless steel screws which thread directly into the conduit body. Covers that utilize wedge nuts or any other method of attachment to the conduit body are not acceptable. Covers shall be provided with matching gasket.

C. Conduit Couplings, Nipples, and Unions for use with Rigid Aluminum Conduit

1. Couplings and nipples shall be threaded and shall be constructed of heavy wall high strength 6063 alloy aluminum with temper designation T1. Split-type couplings that use compression to connect conduits are not acceptable.

2. Unions shall be threaded, rain-tight, and constructed of copper-free aluminum which is coated with an aluminum enamel finish.

D. Conduit Expansion and Deflection Fittings for use with Rigid Aluminum Conduit

1. Conduit expansion fittings and conduit deflection fittings shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum which is coated with an aluminum enamel finish. Expansion and deflection fittings shall have threaded conduit connections.

2. Expansion fittings shall have an integral bonding jumper and deflection fittings shall have an external bonding jumper.

E. Conduit Seals for use with Rigid Aluminum Conduit

1. Conduit seals shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum which is coated with an aluminum enamel finish. Conduit seals shall have threaded conduit connections.

F. Conduit Termination Fittings for use with Rigid Aluminum Conduit

1. Conduit hubs shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum and shall have threaded connections to the conduit and enclosure. Hubs shall have a plastic insulated throat and shall be watertight when assembled to an enclosure.

2. Conduit locknuts shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum. Locknuts shall have internal threading. Locknuts with integral gasket or seal are not acceptable. Locknuts shall have integral bonding screw where required for proper bonding.

3. Conduit bonding bushings shall be constructed of copper-free aluminum. Bonding bushings shall have a threaded conduit connection. Bonding bushing shall be provided with properly sized set screw for connecting bonding conductor and an integral plastic insulator rated for 150 degrees C located in the throat.

2.05 LIQUID TIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC) AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Conduit

1. Conduit shall be manufactured using a single strip of hot dip galvanized high strength steel alloy, helically formed into a continuously interlocked flexible metal conduit. Trade size 1-1/4 inch and smaller conduits shall be provided with an integrally woven copper bonding strip.

2. Conduit shall be covered with an outside PVC jacket that is UV resistant, moisture-proof, and oil-proof. Conduit shall be UL 360 Listed. Conduits shall be Listed for and marked with maximum temperature ratings as follows:

   a. 105 degrees C dry, 60 degrees C wet for all conduit installed against or within 2 inches of equipment capable of having a surface temperature of 80 degrees C or greater (e.g., blowers, incinerators, etc.)

   b. 80 degrees C dry, 60 degrees C wet for all other locations

B. Conduit Termination Fittings for use with LFMC

1. Conduit termination fittings shall be constructed of either [Type 304][Type 316] stainless steel or an electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy which is coated on the exterior with a 40 mil (minimum) PVC jacket and coated on the interior with a 2 mil (minimum) layer of urethane. PVC coated fittings shall have a sealing sleeve constructed of PVC which covers the connection to conduit.

2. Termination fittings shall have a threaded end with matching locknut and sealing ring for termination to equipment and shall have an integral external bonding lug where required for proper bonding. Termination fittings shall have a plastic insulated throat and shall be watertight when assembled to the conduit and equipment.

2.06 LIQUID TIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (LFNC) AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Conduit

1. Conduit shall be constructed of rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), fabricated to provide flexibility. Conduit shall be covered with an outside PVC jacket that is UV resistant, moisture-proof, and oil-proof. Conduit shall be UL 1660 Listed and be Type LFNC-B.

B. Conduit Termination Fittings for use with LFNC

1. Conduit termination fittings shall be constructed PVC and shall have a threaded end with matching locknut and sealing ring for termination to equipment. Termination fittings shall be watertight when assembled to the conduit and equipment.

2.07 CONDUIT BENDS

A. Rigid conduit bends, both factory-fabricated and field-fabricated, shall meet the same requirements listed in the articles above for the respective conduit type and material of construction.

B. Conduit bend radii for standard radius bends shall be no less than as follows:

Trade Size (inches)	3/4	1	1-1/4	1-1/2	2	2-1/2	3	3-1/2	4	5	6
Min. Radius (inches)	4-1/2	5-3/4	7-1/4	8-1/4	9-1/2	10-1/2	13	15	16	24	30

C. Conduit bend radii for long radius bends shall be no less than as follows:

Trade Size (inches)	3/4	1	1-1/4	1-1/2	2	2-1/2	3	3-1/2	4	5	6
Min. Radius (inches)	N/A	12	18	24	30	30	36	36	48	48	60

2.08 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Conduit Periphery Sealing

1. The sealing of the exterior surface of conduits to prevent water and/or air from passing around the conduit periphery from one space to another (where required) shall be through the use of one of the following:

   a. A conduit sleeve and pressure bushing sealing system. Acceptable products are FSK by OZ-GEDNEY, Link-Seal by Crouse-Hinds, or Engineer approved equal.

   b. A conduit sleeve that is two trade sizes larger than the conduit being sealed, with 2-hour fire rated UL 1479 Listed caulk filling the entire void between the conduit and sleeve. This method is only suitable for penetrations in non-fire rated walls and floors.

   c. Conduit penetrations through fire-rated walls and floors shall be made with an approved UL 1479 Listed product specifically intended for the trade size of the conduit.

2. See Part 3 herein for the specific application of the conduit periphery sealing requirements above that are to be used based on what the conduit will be penetrating.

B. Primer and Cement

1. Nonmetallic conduit shall be cleaned with primer and connected to fittings with the manufacturer’s recommended cement that is labeled Low VOC.

C. Galvanizing Compounds

1. Galvanizing compounds for field application shall be the cold-applied type, containing no less than 93% pure zinc.

D. Conduit Interior Sealing

1. For all conduits that have cables inside, the sealing of the inside of the conduits against water ingress shall be achieved through the use of one of the following:

   a. Two-part expanding polyurethane foam sealing compound, dispensed from a single tube which mixes the two parts as it is injected into the conduit. Expanding foam shall be compatible with the conduit material of construction as well as the outer jacket of the cables in the conduit. Acceptable products are Q-Pak 2000 by Chemque, FST by American Polywater Corporation, or Hydra-seal S-60 by Duraline.

   b. Inflatable bag that provides seal around cables and around inside diameter of conduit. Provide appropriate quantity of additional fittings for applications with three or more cables in the conduit to be sealed. Acceptable products are Rayflate by Raychem, or Engineer approved equal. This sealing method is only applicable to conduits trade size 2 inch and larger.

   c. Neoprene sealing ring provided with the required quantity and diameter of holes to accommodate the cables in each conduit. Sealing ring shall be compressed by two Type 304 stainless steel pressure plates. Acceptable products are type CSB by OZ-GEDNEY, or Engineer approved equal. This sealing method is only applicable to metallic conduits containing 4 or less cables.

2. The use of aerosol-based expanding foam sealants or any other method of sealing against water ingress not listed above is not acceptable.

3. For conduits identified as spares, the sealing of the inside of the conduit against water ingress shall be achieved by using appropriately sized rubber expanding-style conduit plugs.

E. Pull Rope

1. Pull ropes for empty and/or spare conduits shall be woven polyester, ½-inch wide, with a minimum tensile strength of 1250 lbs. In addition, pull ropes for conduits that are installed concealed shall also have a 22-AWG (minimum) tin-plated copper conductor woven in to make the rope detectable.

2. Pull ropes for the Contractors use in installing conductors shall be the size and strength required for the pull and shall be made of a non-metallic material.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. All conduit and associated fittings and appurtenances shall be installed in accordance with NECA 1.

B. Minimum trade size for all rigid conduits shall be 1 inch if any portion of the conduit is installed in a ductbank and 3/4 inch for all other applications. Conduits installed within ductbanks shall be allowed to be increased in size to trade size 2 inch, at the Contractor's option, to accommodate the saddle size of the ductbank spacers. However, no combining of circuits shall be allowed in the larger conduits.

C. Minimum trade size for flexible conduits (where specifically allowed herein) shall be 1/2 inch in all applications.

D. Conduit routing and/or homeruns within structures is not shown on the Drawings. Conduits shall be installed concealed wherever practical and within the limitations specified herein. All other conduits not capable of being installed concealed shall be installed exposed.

E. Empty and/or spare conduits shall be provided with pull ropes which have no less than 12 inches of slack at each end.

F. Nonmetallic conduits for installations requiring less than a factory length of conduit shall be field cut to the required length. The cut shall be made square, cleaned of debris, and primer shall be applied to ready each joint for fusing. Conduits shall then be fused together with the conduit manufacturer's approved cement compound.

G. Metallic conduits for installations requiring less than a factory length of conduit shall be field cut to the required length. The cut shall be made square, be cleaned of all debris and be de-burred, then threaded. Conduit threading performed in the field shall be ¾ inch per foot tapered threads in accordance with ANSI B1.20.1.

H. Conduits shall be protected from moisture, corrosion, and physical damage during construction. Install dust-tight and water-tight conduit fittings on the ends of all conduits immediately after installation and do not remove until conductors are installed.

I. Conduits shall be installed to provide no less than 12 inches clearance from pipes that have the potential to impart heat upon the conduit. Such pipes include, but are not limited to, hot water pipes, steam pipes, exhaust pipes, and blower air pipes. Clearance shall be maintained whether conduit is installed in parallel or in crossing of pipes.

J. Where non-metallic instrumentation conduits are installed exposed, the following clearances to other conduit types shall be maintained:

Installation Scenario	Clearance

Parallel to conduits with conductors energized at 480V or above	18 inches
Parallel to conduits with conductors energized at 240V and below	12 inches
At right angles to conductors energized at 480V and below	6 inches
At right angles to conductors energized at voltages above 480V	12 inches

K. Where conduit fittings do not include an integral insulated bushing, an insulated bushing shall be installed at all conduit termination points.

L. Conduits which serve multi-section equipment shall be terminated in the section where wiring terminations will be made.

M. Conduits shall not penetrate the floors or walls inside liquid spill containment areas without specific written authorization from the Engineer. Liquid spill containment areas are indicated on the Drawings.

N. Conduits shall only penetrate the walls of liquid-holding tanks or basins above the maximum liquid elevation. Conduits shall not penetrate walls below this elevation. Maximum liquid elevations are indicated on the Drawings.

O. Conduits that terminate at roof mounted equipment shall be installed through the roof curb for the associated equipment to avoid additional roof penetrations wherever possible. Conduits that are installed horizontally on roof surfaces shall be supported by roof blocks that do not impact the roof manufacturer's warranty and shall be installed at least 7/8 inch above the roof surface to avoid the need to further de-rate the conductors inside.

P. In no case shall conduit be supported or fastened to another pipe or be installed in a manner that would prevent the removal of other pipes for repairs.

Q. All field fabricated threads for rigid galvanized steel conduit shall be thoroughly coated with two coats of galvanizing compound, allowing at least two minutes to elapse between coats for proper drying.

R. Aluminum conduits shall not be installed in direct contact with concrete surfaces. Where aluminum conduits are routed along concrete surfaces, they shall be installed with one-hole electro-galvanized malleable iron alloy straps with matching clamp-backs to space the conduit ¼ inch away from concrete surface. Where aluminum conduit passes through concrete, CMU or brick walls, the penetration shall be made such that the aluminum conduit does not come in contact with concrete, CMU, brick or mortar.

3.02 CONCEALED AND EMBEDDED CONDUITS

A. Conduits are permitted to be installed concealed and/or embedded with the following requirements:

1. Conduits shall not be installed horizontally when concealed within CMU walls, only vertical installation is acceptable.

2. Conduits installed embedded within concrete floors or walls shall be located so as not to affect the designed structural strength of the floor or wall. Embedded conduits shall be installed in accordance with Standard Detail S-03-0403 and ACI 318.

3. Where conduit bends emerge from concrete embedment, none of the curved portion of the bend shall be visible. Only the straight portion of the bend shall be visible. The straight portion shall emerge perpendicular to the embedment (i.e., neatly oriented 90-degrees to floor/slab/grade). Conduits that emerge in a non-perpendicular orientation are not acceptable.

4. Where multiple conduits emerge from concrete embedment or from concealment below a concrete floor, ample clear space shall be provided between conduits to allow for the appropriate and required conduit termination fittings to be installed.

5. Conduits installed embedded within concrete encasement of any kind shall be installed such that conduit couplings for parallel conduits are staggered so that they are not side by side.

B. Conduits are NOT permitted to be installed concealed and/or embedded for the following situations:

1. Conduits shall not be installed embedded within any water-bearing floors or walls.

2. Conduits shall not be installed embedded within any liquid containment area floors or walls.

3. Conduits shall not be installed concealed within CMU walls or gypsum walls that are adjacent to Class I and II hazardous areas (Division 1 and Division 2).

4. Conduits shall not be installed concealed within CMU walls or gypsum walls that are adjacent to indoor Type 1 or Type 2 chemical storage/transfer areas.

3.03 CONDUIT USES AND APPLICATIONS

A. Rigid Conduit

1. Rigid conduit for non-hazardous areas shall be furnished and installed in the materials of construction as follows:

Rigid Conduit for Non-Hazardous Areas

Installation Area Designation / Scenario	Conduit Category by Wiring / Circuit Type	
	Power and Control	**Instrumentation**
Exposed in indoor wet process areas	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor dry process areas	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor dry non-process areas	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor Type 1 chemical storage/transfer areas	Schedule 80 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor Type 2 chemical storage/transfer areas	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in outdoor areas	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed within underground concrete-encased ductbanks	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Direct-buried conduits (where specifically permitted)	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed within non-elevated (i.e., "slab-on-grade" construction) concrete slabs	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed within elevated concrete slabs	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed below concrete slabs (within earth or fill material)	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed within concrete walls	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed within CMU walls	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit or Electrical Metallic Tubing	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Emerging from concealment within or below a concrete floor and transitioning to exposed conduit (Reference Detail E-26-0102)	Rigid galvanized steel conduit	Same as Power and Control

2. Rigid conduit for hazardous areas shall be furnished and installed in the materials of construction as follows:

Rigid Conduit for Hazardous Areas

Installation Area Hazard / Scenario	Conduit Category by Wiring / Circuit Type	
	Power and Control	**Instrumentation**
Exposed in Class I and II areas (Division 1 and Division 2)	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed within concrete slabs in Class I and II areas (Division 1 and Division 2)	Rigid galvanized steel conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed below concrete slabs (within earth or fill material) in Class I and II areas (Division 1 and Division 2)	Rigid galvanized steel conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed within concrete walls in Class I and II areas (Division 1 and Division 2)	Rigid galvanized steel conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed below concrete slabs encased in at least two inches of concrete and buried 24 inches below top of slab in Class I, Division 1 areas	Schedule 40 rigid non-metallic PVC conduit	Rigid galvanized steel conduit
Concealed above suspended ceilings in Class I and II areas (Division 1 and Division 2)	Rigid aluminum conduit	Same as Power and Control

3. The tables for the materials of construction for rigid conduits are intended to exhaustively cover all possible scenarios and installation areas under this Contract. However, if a scenario or installation area is found that is not explicitly governed by these tables, it shall be assumed for bid purposes that the conduit material of construction is to be rigid galvanized steel. This discrepancy shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer (in writing) immediately for resolution.

B. Conduit Bends

1. All conduit bends shall be the same material of construction as the rigid conduit listed in the tables above, with the following exceptions:

   a. All 90-degree bends or combinations of adjacent bends that form a 90-degree bend where concealed within concrete or below a concrete slab shall be rigid galvanized steel.

2. Field fabricated bends of metallic conduit shall be made with a bending machine and shall have no kinks. Field fabricated standard radius and long radius bends

shall have minimum bending radii in accordance with the associated tables in Part 2 herein.

3. Field bending of non-metallic conduits is not acceptable, factory fabricated bends shall be used.

4. Long radius bends shall be furnished and installed for the following specific applications, all other bends shall be standard radius:

    a. All conduits containing medium voltage cable.

    b. All conduits containing fiber optic cable.

    c. All conduits containing shielded VFD cable.

    d. All direct buried conduits where called for on drawings.

    e. Where specifically indicated on the Drawings.

C. Flexible Conduit

1. Flexible conduit shall only be installed for the limited applications specified herein. Flexible conduit shall not be installed in any other application without written authorization from the Engineer. Acceptable applications are as follows:

    a. Connections to motors and engine-generator sets (and similar vibrating equipment)

    b. Connections to solenoid valves and limit switches

    c. Connections to lighting fixtures installed in suspended ceilings

    d. Connections to lighting transformers and combination power units

    e. Connections to pre-fabricated equipment skids

    f. Connections to HVAC equipment

    g. Connections to instrument transmitters and elements

    h. Where specifically indicated in the Standard Details

2. Flexible conduit length shall be limited to three (3) feet, maximum. Flexible conduit shall not be installed buried or embedded within any material.

3. Unless otherwise specified herein, flexible conduits shall be installed in accordance with the Installation Guidelines published within NEMA RV-3.

4. Flexible conduit for non-hazardous areas shall be furnished and installed in the materials of construction as follows:

Flexible Conduit for Non-Hazardous Areas

Installation Area Designation / Scenario	Conduit Category by Wiring / Circuit Type	
	Power and Control	**Instrumentation**
Exposed in indoor wet process areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor dry process areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor dry non-process areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor Type 1 chemical storage/transfer areas	Liquid-tight flexible non-metallic conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in indoor Type 2 chemical storage/transfer areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in outdoor areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed above suspended ceilings (all indoor areas)	Same material as exposed conduit in same area	Same as Power and Control

5. For Class I, Division 1 hazardous areas, the NEC does not permit the installation of flexible conduit. In lieu of flexible conduit in these areas, flexible conduit couplings shall be installed as specified in Part 2 herein. Flexible conduit for all other hazardous areas shall be furnished and installed in the materials of construction as follows:

Flexible Conduit for Hazardous Areas

Installation Area Hazard / Scenario	Conduit Category by Wiring / Circuit Type	
	Power and Control	**Instrumentation**
Exposed in Class I, Division 2 areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Exposed in Class II (Division 1 and Division 2) areas	Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit	Same as Power and Control
Concealed above suspended ceilings in Class I (Division 2) and Class II (Division 1 and Division 2) areas	Same material as exposed conduit in same area	Same as Power and Control

3.04 CONDUIT FITTING USES AND APPLICATIONS

A. General

1. Conduit fittings shall be furnished and installed in the materials of construction as indicated in Part 2, herein. Conduit fitting materials of construction are dependent on the material of construction used for the associated conduit.

2. Conduit fittings shall be provided in the trade size and configuration required to suit the application.

B. Conduit Bodies

1. Conduit bodies shall be installed where wire pulling points are desired or required, or where changes in conduit direction or breaking around beams is required.

2. Where conduit bodies larger than trade size 2 inches are intended to be used as a pull-through fitting during wire installation, oversized or elongated conduit bodies shall be used. Oversized or elongated conduit bodies shall not be required if the conduit body is intended to be used as a pull-out point during wire installation.

C. Conduit Nipples and Unions

1. Conduits with running threads shall not be used in place of 3-piece couplings (unions) or close nipples. After installation of a conduit fitting of any kind, there shall be no more than ¼ inch of exposed threads visible. Factory fabricated all-thread nipples may be used between adjacent enclosures, however, the same restriction applies regarding the length of exposed threads that are visible.

D. Conduit Expansion and Deflection Fittings

1. Conduit expansion fittings shall be installed where required by the NEC and where indicated on the Drawings. Expansion fittings shall also be installed for exposed straight metallic conduit runs of more than 75 feet, in both indoor and outdoor locations. Expansion fittings for runs of non-metallic conduit shall be installed in accordance with the NEC.

2. Conduit deflection fittings shall be installed where required by the NEC and where conduits are installed (exposed and concealed) across structural expansion joints.

3. Unless otherwise specified herein, conduit expansion and deflection fittings shall be installed in accordance with the Installation Guidelines published within NEMA FB 2.40.

E. Conduit Seals

1. Conduit seals shall be installed for conduits installed within or associated with hazardous areas and other areas as required by the NEC. In addition, conduit seals shall also be furnished and installed as follows:

    a. All conduits entering or leaving enclosed areas which store or distribute chlorine gas.

    b. All conduits entering or leaving enclosed areas which store or distribute sulfur dioxide gas.

F. Conduit Termination Fittings

1. Where conduits terminate at enclosures with a NEMA 4, 4X, or 3R rating and the enclosure does not have integral conduit hubs, an appropriately sized watertight conduit hub shall be installed to maintain the integrity of the enclosure. The use of locknuts with integral gasket in lieu of watertight conduit hubs is not acceptable.

2. Where conduits terminate at enclosures that do not require conduit hubs, a two-locknut system shall be used to secure the conduit to the enclosure. One locknut shall be installed on the outside of the enclosure, and the other inside, drawn tight against the enclosure wall. The locknut on the interior of the enclosure shall be the type with integral bonding lug, or a conduit bonding bushing may be used in place of the interior locknut.

3. Conduits shall not be installed such that conduit fittings penetrate the top of any enclosure located outdoors, except in cases where specifically required by the serving electric utility. Conduits which serve outdoor equipment or an enclosure from above shall instead be routed into the side of the enclosure at the bottom. The conduit termination fitting shall be provided with a conduit drain to divert moisture from the raceway away from the enclosure.

3.05 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Conduit Periphery Sealing

1. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, below-grade conduit penetrations through exterior walls shall be sealed around the periphery using the appropriate products specified in Part 2 herein.

2. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, all conduit penetrations through interior walls and floors and above-grade exterior walls shall be sealed using conduit sleeves and caulk as specified in Part 2 herein. Alternatively, where concrete or masonry walls/floors are penetrated, mortar may be used to seal around the conduit periphery for conduit penetrations through interior walls and floors and above-grade exterior walls.

3. Conduit penetrations through fire-rated walls as floors shall be made with the appropriate fire rated penetration product.

B. Conduit Interior Sealing

1. All conduits (including spares) entering a structure below grade shall be sealed on the interior of the conduit against water ingress. Sealing shall be at an accessible location in the conduit system located within the building structure and shall be via one of the methods specified in Part 2 herein. If conduit sealing cannot be achieved at an accessible location within the building structure, sealing shall be placed in the conduits in the nearest manhole or handhole outside the structure.

2. Conduit interior sealing shall not be installed until conductors inside are tested and test results are deemed acceptable by the Engineer. Conduit interior sealing shall be installed prior to energization of the conductors inside.

3.06 CONDUIT IDENTIFICATION

A. Exposed conduits shall be identified at the source, load, and all intermediate components of the raceway system. Examples of intermediate components include but are not limited to junction boxes, pull boxes, and disconnect switches. Identification shall be by means of an adhesive label with the following requirements:

1. Labels shall consist of an orange background with black text. Text for the label shall be the conduit number as indicated in the conduit and wire schedules.

2. In addition, at the source end of the conduit, a second line of text shall be included to indicate the load equipment name. This second line shall consist of the word “TO:” and the text in the ‘TO’ column of the conduit and wire schedule (e.g., TO: Pump No. 1). At the load end of the conduit, a second line of text shall be included to indicate the source equipment name. This second line shall consist of the word “FROM:” and the text in the ‘FROM’ column of the conduit and wire schedule (e.g., FROM: SWBD-1000). This requirement applies only to the source and load ends of the conduit, and not anywhere in between.

3. For conduits trade sizes 3/4 inch through 1-1/2 inch, the text shall be a minimum 18-point font. For conduits trade size 2 inch and larger, the text shall be a minimum 24-point font.

4. Label height shall be 3/4 inch minimum, and length shall be as required to fit required text. The label shall be installed such that the text is parallel with the axis of the conduit. The label shall be oriented such that the text can be read without the use of any special tools or removal of equipment.

5. Labels shall be installed after each conduit is installed and, if applicable, after painting. Labels shall be printed in the field via the use of a portable label printing system using thermal transfer technology. Handwritten labels are not acceptable.

6. Labels shall be made of permanent vinyl with adhesive backing. Labels made of any other material are not acceptable.

B. Conduits that are not exposed but installed beneath free standing equipment enclosures shall be identified by means of a plastic tag with the following requirements:

1. The tag shall be made of white Tyvek material, and have an orange label with black text, as described above, adhered to it. Text for the label shall be the conduit number as indicated in the conduit and wire schedules.

2. The tag shall be affixed to the conduit by means of a nylon cable tie. The tag shall be of suitable dimensions to achieve a minimum text size of 18 points.

C. Conduits for lighting and receptacle circuits shall not require identification.

D. Any problems or conflicts with meeting the requirements above shall immediately be brought to the attention of the Engineer for a decision.

3.07 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. All conduit installed below grade or concrete encased shall be tested to ensure continuity and the absence of obstructions by pulling through each conduit a swab followed by a mandrel 85% of the conduit inside diameter. After testing, all conduits shall be capped after installation of a suitable pulling rope.

3.08 TRAINING OF INSTALLATION PERSONNEL

A. All Contractor personnel that install PVC coated rigid metal conduit shall be trained by the PVC coated conduit manufacturer. Training shall include proper conduit system assembly techniques, use of tools appropriate for coated conduit systems, and field bending/cutting/threading of coated conduit. Training shall have been completed within the past 24 months prior to the Notice to Proceed on this Contract to be considered valid. Contractor personnel not trained within this timeframe shall not be allowed to install coated conduit or shall be trained/re-trained as required prior to commencement of conduit installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 33.16
BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all pull boxes, junction boxes, and outlet boxes as specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, and as required. Requirements for other boxes and enclosures are not necessarily included in this Section. Reference each specific equipment specification section for requirements related to that equipment's respective enclosure.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 33.13 – Conduit for Electrical Systems

3. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All boxes shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Boxes shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

a. NEMA 250 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment.

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 50 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-environmental Considerations.

b. UL 50E – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations.

c. UL 514A – Metallic Outlet Boxes.

072123

d. UL 514C – Standard for Non-metallic Outlet Boxes, Flush Device Boxes, and Covers.

e. UL 1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer(s) and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible Submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets for boxes, terminal strips, and all accessories

1.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01.

B. As-built drawings showing dimensions, internal box layout, terminal strip information, and terminal strip identification information shall be provided for all junction boxes. As-built drawings are not required for pull boxes or outlet boxes.

1.06 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each pull and junction box shall be identified with the box name as indicated on the Contract Drawings (e.g., PPB-XXX, CJB-YYY) or as directed by the Engineer. A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on each box. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

2.02 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

A. General

1. All pull and junction boxes shall be UL Listed and Labeled.

2. Pull and junction boxes shall not be provided with eccentric or concentric knockouts.

3. Pull and junction boxes mounted embedded in concrete shall be UL Listed for embedment.

4. Where metallic boxes are used, they shall be of all welded construction. Tack welded boxes are not acceptable.

B. Pull Boxes

1. Metallic pull boxes in non-hazardous locations and in hazardous locations where general-purpose enclosures are permitted (e.g., Class I, Division 2 locations) shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. For covers with dimensions of less than 12 inches by 12 inches, the cover shall be held in place by stainless steel machine screws. Other screw types are not acceptable. For covers with dimensions 12 inches by 12 inches and larger, the cover shall be hinged and held in place by 1/4-turn style latches. Latch mechanism shall be all stainless steel. Hinge pins shall be removable.

2. Metallic pull boxes in hazardous locations where general-purpose enclosures are not permitted (e.g., Class I, Division 1 locations) shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. Cover shall be hinged and held in place by stainless steel bolts. Hinge pins shall be removable. Covers shall be installed and bolts torqued in accordance with manufacturer requirements to maintain the hazardous location rating of the enclosure.

3. Non-metallic pull boxes shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. The cover shall be hinged and held in place by quick-release (e.g., “flip”) latches. Latch material of construction shall match the box material, and include stainless steel hasps. For covers with dimensions 24 inches by 24 inches and larger, a 3-point latching mechanism with external pad-lockable handle may be substituted. Latch mechanism and handle shall be all stainless steel. Hinge pins shall be removable.

4. Pull boxes shall not have any wire terminations inside, other than those for grounding/bonding. A ground bar shall be provided with the necessary number of screw type terminals. Twenty (20) percent of the total amount of terminals otherwise required for the pull box (minimum of two) shall be provided as spare terminations. Boxes requiring any other wire terminations shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the requirements for junction boxes herein.

5. Pull boxes shall be 6 inches wide by 6 inches tall by 4 inches deep, minimum. For applications requiring larger boxes, the box shall be sized in accordance with the fill requirements and dimensional requirements of the NEC.

6. Barriers shall be provided in pull boxes to isolate conductors of different voltages, types, and functions. Barrier material of construction shall match that of the box. Isolation shall be provided between the following groups:

    a. Power wiring

    b. AC control wiring

    c. DC control wiring

    d. Instrumentation wiring

C. Junction Boxes

1. Metallic junction boxes in non-hazardous locations shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. For covers with dimensions of less than 12 inches by 12 inches, the cover shall be held in place by stainless steel machine screws. Other screw types are not acceptable. For covers with dimensions 12 inches by 12 inches and larger, the cover shall be hinged and held in place by 1/4-turn style latches. Latch mechanism shall be all stainless steel. Hinge pins shall be removable.

2. Metallic junction boxes in hazardous locations shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. Cover shall be hinged and held in place by stainless steel bolts. Hinge pins shall be removable. Covers shall be installed and bolts torqued in accordance with manufacturer requirements to maintain the hazardous location rating of the enclosure.

3. Non-metallic junction boxes shall be provided with a matching gasketed cover. The cover shall be hinged and held in place by quick-release (e.g., “flip”) latches. Latch material of construction shall match the box material and include stainless steel hasps. For covers with dimensions 24 inches by 24 inches and larger, a 3-point latching mechanism with external pad-lockable handle may be substituted. Latch mechanism and handle shall be all stainless steel. Hinge pins shall be removable.

4. Barriers shall be provided in junction boxes to isolate conductors and terminal blocks of different voltages, types, and functions. Barrier material of construction

shall match that of the box. Isolation shall be provided between the following groups:

a. Power wiring

b. AC control wiring

c. DC control wiring

d. Instrumentation wiring

5. Junction boxes used for lighting and receptacle circuits only shall be allowed to have screw-on (wire nut) type connectors for wire terminations/junctions.

6. Junction boxes for all uses other than lighting and receptacle circuits shall be provided with terminal strips, consisting of the necessary number of screw type terminals. Current carrying parts of the terminal blocks shall be of ample capacity to carry the full load current of the circuits connected, with a 10A minimum capacity. Terminal strips shall be rated for the voltage of the circuits connected. A separate ground bar shall be provided with the necessary number of screw type terminals. Twenty (20) percent of the total amount of terminals otherwise required for the junction box (minimum of two) shall be provided as spare terminations. When barriers are provided within the box, separate terminal strips shall be provided in each barrier area. Terminals shall be lettered and/or numbered to conform to the wiring labeling scheme in place on the project.

7. Junction boxes shall be 6 inches wide by 6 inches tall by 4 inches deep, minimum. For applications requiring larger boxes, the box shall be sized in accordance with the fill requirements and dimensional requirements of the NEC. Terminal blocks (including spare terminals) shall be considered when sizing the junction box.

D. Enclosure Types and Materials

1. In non-hazardous locations, pull and junction boxes shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	**Enclosure Type and Material**
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Non-Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Fiberglass or PVC

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

2. In hazardous locations, pull and junction boxes shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the classification of the area in which they are to be installed. Area classifications are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Classification	Enclosure Type and Material
Class I, Division 1, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class I, Division 2, Group D	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Class II, Division 1, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 2, Group F	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

3. Non-metallic enclosures, NEMA 7 enclosures, and NEMA 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded integral conduit hubs.

4. Where located outdoors or in indoor wet process areas, NEMA 7 and NEMA 9 enclosures shall also carry a NEMA 4X rating.

2.03 OUTLET BOXES

A. General

1. Outlet boxes shall be provided with a trim appropriate for the wiring device installed inside. Reference Section 26 27 26 – Wiring Devices for outlet box trim requirements. An appropriate outlet box trim is required to achieve the NEMA rating of the outlet boxes as specified herein.

B. Surface Mount Outlet Boxes

1. Outlet boxes shall be the deep type, no less than 2.5 inches deep.

2. Outlet boxes shall be provided in single or multi-gang configuration as required, sized in accordance with the requirements of the NEC.

3. In non-hazardous locations, outlet boxes shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Cast Aluminum
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 1, Cast Aluminum
Indoor Dry Non-process Area	NEMA 1, Cast Aluminum
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, PVC
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Cast Aluminum
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Cast Aluminum

4. In hazardous locations, outlet boxes shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the classification of the area in which they are to be installed. Area classifications are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Classification	Enclosure Type and Material
Class I, Division 1, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class I, Division 2, Group D	NEMA 4X, Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 1, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 2, Group F	NEMA 4X, Cast Aluminum

5. Outlet boxes shall be provided with integral threaded conduit hubs mounted external to the box. Boxes with threaded conduit hubs mounted internal to the box or as a part of the box wall are not acceptable.

C. Flush Mount Outlet Boxes

1. Outlet boxes shall be no less than 2-1/8 inches deep, and 4-11/16 inches square. Boxes shall be UL Listed and labeled. Pre-punched single diameter conduit knockouts are acceptable; however, concentric and eccentric knockouts are not acceptable.

2. Outlet boxes mounted flush in CMU walls shall be made of galvanized, tack welded steel, and suitable for installation in masonry walls. Sectional type boxes are not acceptable for this application.

3. Outlet boxes mounted flush in gypsum walls shall be made of galvanized pressed steel. Tack welded boxes are not acceptable for this application. Sectional type boxes are not acceptable for this application.

4. Outlet boxes mounted cast into concrete shall be concrete tight and made of galvanized steel or PVC.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Pull and Junction Boxes

1. Pull boxes and junction boxes shall be solidly attached to structural members prior to installation of conduit and set true and plumb. Boxes shall not be supported by their associated conduits.

2. Wooden plugs are not permitted for securing boxes to concrete. Appropriately rated anchors specifically suited for use in concrete shall be used.

3. Box penetrations for conduits shall be made with a punch tool, and penetrations shall be of the size required for the conduit entry and/or hub. Oversized penetrations in boxes are not acceptable.

4. Watertight conduit hubs shall be provided for boxes where a NEMA 4X enclosure rating is specified. Reference Section 26 05 33.13 – Conduit for Electrical Systems for conduit hub requirements.

5. Pull and junction boxes may be installed flush mounted in gypsum, concrete, or CMU walls where appropriate provided that covers are easily removed or opened.

6. Pull and junction boxes shall be provided in the enclosure type and material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

B. Outlet Boxes

1. Outlet boxes shall be solidly attached to structural members prior to installation of conduit and set true and plumb. Boxes shall not be supported by their associated conduits.

2. Wooden plugs are not permitted for securing boxes to concrete. Appropriately rated anchors specifically suited for use in concrete shall be used.

3. Flush mounted outlet boxes shall be arranged and located so that tile and grout lines fit closely around the boxes, and so placed that the cover or device plate shall fit flush to the finished wall surface.

4. Outlet boxes shall be flush mounted in finished areas and other areas where practical. Flush mounted outlet boxes shall not be installed in hazardous areas and type 1 or 2 chemical storage/transfer areas.

5. Depending on the type of wiring device to be installed in the outlet box, mounting heights from the finished floor or finished grade (as applicable) to the center of the

box shall be as follows, unless otherwise specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, or required by the Americans with Disability Act (ADA):

a. Light switches 48 inches

b. Receptacles in indoor dry process/non-process areas, 18 inches

c. Receptacles in indoor wet process areas and all indoor chemical storage/transfer areas, 42 inches in open areas, or 6 inches (minimum) above adjacent surfaces (e.g., countertops, tables, etc.) where applicable

d. Receptacles in outdoor locations, 26 inches

e. Flush mounted outlet boxes in CMU walls shall be adjusted to a slightly greater height than required above to align the center of the box with the center of the CMU block.

6. Outlet boxes shall be provided in the material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. All electrical equipment shall be properly identified in accordance with these Specifications and the Contract Drawings. All electrical equipment shall be identified in the manner described, or in an equally approved manner.

B. The types of electrical identification specified in this Section include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Operational instructions and warnings.

2. Danger signs.

3. Equipment/system identification signs.

4. Nameplates.

1.02 SIGNS

A. "DANGER-HIGH-VOLTAGE" signs shall be securely mounted on the entry doors of all electrical rooms.

1.03 LETTERING AND GRAPHICS

A. The Contractor shall coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in the electrical identification work with the corresponding designations shown, specified, or scheduled. Provide numbers, lettering, and wording as indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as recommended by manufacturers or as required for proper identification and operation/maintenance of the electrical systems and equipment.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit shop drawings. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.05 SHOP DRAWINGS

072123

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The material covered by these Specifications is intended to be standard material of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Material shall be fabricated, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as specified herein and shown on the Drawings.

2.02 NAMEPLATES

A. Nameplates shall be engraved, high pressure plastic laminate, black foreground with white lettering.

B. Nameplates shall be attached to NEMA 4X enclosures utilizing UL-recognized mounting kits designed to maintain the overall UL Type rating of the enclosure. Mounting kit fasteners shall be stainless steel Type AHK10324X as manufactured by Hoffman, or Engineer approved equal.

2.03 HIGH VOLTAGE SIGNS

A. Standard "DANGER" signs shall be of baked enamel finish on 20 gauge steel; of standard red, black, and white graphics; 14 inches by 10 inches size except where 10 inches by 7 inches is the largest size which can be applied where needed, and except where a larger size is needed for adequate identification.

2.04 CONDUIT IDENTIFICATION

A. Conduit identification shall be as specified in Section 26 05 33.13 – Conduit for Electrical Systems.

2.05 WIRE AND CABLE IDENTIFICATION

A. Field installed wire and cable identification shall be as specified in Section 26 05 19 – Low Voltage Conductors and Cable.

B. A plastic laminate nameplate shall be provided at each panelboard, motor control center, switchgear assembly, and switchboard assembly. This nameplate shall be used to clearly convey the conductor identification means used at that piece of equipment (i.e., Phase A=Brown, Phase B=Orange, C = Yellow).

C. Wiring identification for factory installed wiring in equipment enclosures shall be as specified in the respective Section.

2.06 BOX IDENTIFICATION

A. Pull, junction and device box identification shall be as specified in Section 26 05 33.16 – Boxes for Electrical Systems.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 NAMEPLATES

A. Nameplates shall be attached to the equipment enclosures with two (2) stainless steel sheet metal screws for nameplates up to 2-inches wide. For nameplates over 2-inches wide, four (4) stainless steel sheet metal screws shall be used, one (1) in each corner of the nameplate. The utilization of adhesives is not permitted.

3.02 OPERATIONAL IDENTIFICATION AND WARNINGS

A. Wherever reasonably required to ensure safe and efficient operation and maintenance of the electrical systems and electrically connected mechanical systems and general systems and equipment, including prevention of misuse of electrical facilities by unauthorized personnel, install plastic signs or similar equivalent identification, instruction, or warnings on switches, outlets, and other controls, devices, and covers or electrical enclosures. Where detailed instructions or explanations are needed, provide plasticized tags with clearly written messages adequate for the intended purposes. Signs shall be attached as specified above for nameplates.

3.03 POWER SOURCE IDENTIFICATION

A. After installation of all field equipment (e.g., valves, motors, fans, unit heaters, instruments, etc.) install nameplates at each power termination for the field equipment. Nameplate data shall include equipment designation (tag number), power source (MCC number, panelboard, etc.), circuit number, conduit number from schedule and voltage/phase.

B. Contractor to coordinate with the Engineer and the Owner regarding exact nameplate placement during construction.

C. Nameplates shall be as specified herein.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 60
LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRIC MOTORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, connect, test, and place in satisfactory operating condition, all low-voltage electric motors indicated on the Drawings, specified herein and in the individual equipment Sections, and/or required for proper operation. All appurtenances required for the installation of low-voltage electric motors shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor. All motors required for this Contract shall comply with this Section unless otherwise noted.

B. This Specification applies to motors rated 600V and below.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements and Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Motors and related accessories shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American Bearing Manufacturer's Association (ABMA)

2. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)

    a. IEEE 112 – Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators

    b. IEEE 841 – Standard for Petroleum and Chemical Industry--Premium-Efficiency, Severe-Duty, Totally Enclosed Squirrel Cage Induction Motors from 0.75 kW to 370 kW (1 hp to 500 hp)

    c. ANSI/IEEE C62.11 – Standard for Metal-Oxide Surge Arresters for AC Power Circuits (>1 kV)

3. National Electrical Code (NEC)

4. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)

    a. NEMA MG 1 – Motors and Generators

    b. NEMA MG 2 – Safety Standard for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation and Use of Electric Motors and Generators

5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

    a. UL 2111 – Standard for Overheating Protection for Motors

    b. UL 674 – Standard for Safety Electric Motors and Generators for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

    c. UL 1004-1 – Standard for Rotating Electrical Machines - General Requirements

    d. UL 1004-3 – Standard for Thermally Protected Motors

    e. UL 1004-8 – Standard for Inverter Duty Motors

6. US Department of Energy (DoE)

    a. 10 CFR Part 431 – Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment (Including 2016 Motor Efficiency Rule Updates)

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings.

2. Spare Parts List.

3. Proposed Testing Methods and Reports of Certified Shop and Field Tests.

4. Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Individual shop drawings for electric motors shall be submitted unless submitted as a part of the shop drawings for the driven equipment.

061417

D. Shop drawings shall identify electric characteristics and design, mechanical construction, manufacturer's name, type, and pertinent specifications for the use intended, along with the name of the equipment to be driven.

E. Shop drawings for electric motors shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Motor specifications and data sheets identifying all materials used and methods of fabrication

2. Motor outline, dimensions, weight, and mounting position

3. UL Listing and other applicable design/testing agency certifications (e.g., NEMA)

4. Manufacturer's type and frame designation

5. Motor enclosure type

6. Full load power (HP) rating

7. Service factor

8. Rated speed (RPM) and number of poles

9. Rated voltage, frequency, and number of phases

10. Rated load amperes

11. NEMA MG 1 locked rotor code letter (locked-rotor kVA per horsepower) **or** locked rotor amperes

12. Motor winding insulation system designation (class) and description

13. Maximum continuous ambient temperature rating (°C) under the usual service conditions specified herein

14. Temperature rise (°C) of the stator windings at full load operation under the usual service conditions specified herein

15. For hazardous (classified) location motors, the hazard designation(s) (Class, Division, and Group) and temperature code (T-code)

16. NEMA design letter

17. NEMA nominal efficiency

18. Power factor

19. Efficiency at 1/4, 1/2, 3/4, and full load

20. Power factor at 1/4, 1/2, 3/4, and full load

21. Bearing type/size

22. Rated torque at 100% load (ft-lbs), locked rotor torque (as % of rated), and breakdown torque (as % of rated)

23. For motors with field-lubricated (not sealed) bearings, datasheets for the required lubricant (oil/grease) product(s)

24. For vertical motors, inclined motors, and/or other applications where the driven equipment applies significant thrust/radial loads to the motor shaft (e.g., belt drives), provide bearing thrust/radial load ratings and any other applicable information indicating the motor bearings and motor assembly are suitable for use with the driven load.

25. Wiring diagrams for devices/accessories such as space heaters, temperature devices, vibration devices, and shaft grounding rings

26. For polyphase (three-phase) motors 250HP and larger, provide the following additional information:

    a. Rotor inertia (i.e., "WK^2" or "WR^2") ($lb\text{-}ft^2$)

    b. Fault contribution parameters: X/R ratio and per-unit subtransient reactance (X_d")

27. Stall time rating (i.e., "safe stall" or "locked rotor damage" time). For polyphase (three-phase) induction motors exceeding 500HP and/or the standard NEMA MG 1 defined load inertia (Wk^2) limits, provide thermal damage curve plots indicating the thermal limits of the motor. Where available, stall time ratings and/or thermal damage curve plots shall be provided for both "cold" starts and "hot" starts.

28. For inverter duty motors, applicable ratings adjusted for inverter operation (e.g., HP, service factor, hazardous location operation, temperature rise and/or T-code, etc.). Rated speed range(s) shall also be provided (expressed as an operating frequency range and/or speed turndown ratio). Where motors have separate speed range ratings for variable torque (VT) and constant torque (CT) applications, both ratings shall be provided.

29. For polyphase (three-phase) motors 250HP and larger, submit a Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter. If the shop drawings are submitted without this CD&E letter, the submittal will be rejected. The letter shall include all comments, deviations and exceptions taken to the Drawings and Specifications by the Contractor AND Equipment Manufacturer/Supplier. This letter shall include a copy of this Specification Section. In the left margin beside each and every paragraph/item, a letter "C", "D", or "E" shall be typed or written in. The letter "C"

shall be for full compliance with the requirement. The letter "D" shall be for a deviation from the requirement. The letter "E" shall be for taking exception to a requirement. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions is not acceptable. The CD&E letter shall also address deviations, and exceptions taken to each Drawing related to this Specification Section.

F. The aforementioned data shall also be verified after manufacture and shall be included with the information to be furnished in the operation and maintenance manuals specified.

G. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01. Where motors are furnished as part of a package with the driven equipment, the motor O&M information shall be included as part of the manuals for equipment package.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. All spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.

B. For motors with shaft grounding rings: furnish one (1) set of replacement brushes (or applicable consumable part for the grounding ring product furnished) for every three (3) shaft grounding rings of the same type/size furnished under the project scope. Where individual replacement parts are not available, one complete grounding ring kit/set shall be furnished in the same quantity described above.

1.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Motors shall be furnished with nameplate(s) as specified herein.

B. The motor manufacturer's nameplate shall be engraved, embossed, or stamped on a stainless steel sheet and fastened to the motor frame with No. 4 or larger oval head stainless steel screws or drive pins. Printed or laser-etched nameplates are not acceptable.

C. Nameplates shall include as a minimum, Items 3 through 21 listed in Article 1.04-E herein in addition to that required by the NEC and NEMA standards. The nameplate

shall be positioned to be readily visible for inspection as installed in the facility (not obscured from view due to orientation or the presence of other assemblies).

D. Additional nameplate information shall be included and/or a second/auxiliary nameplate shall be affixed to the motor which shall include all additional information required for the following:

1. Inverter duty motor applications in accordance with NEMA MG 1 Part 31.

2. Hazardous (classified) location motor applications in accordance with NEC Article 500.8.

3. Stall time rating (in seconds) for motors which exceed the standard horsepower and/or driven load inertia limits defined in NEMA MG 1. Reference the Design Requirements section herein for more information regarding motor thermal limits and stall time ratings.

4. Other special applications where additional nameplate information is required.

1.08 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors shall be designed, constructed, tested, and Listed/Labeled in accordance with the latest applicable editions of the NEC and standards of ANSI, IEEE, and NEMA (including, but not limited to, MG 1 and MG 2), UL, and to the requirements specified herein.

B. Motor ratings shall be based on continuous operation. Output torque and speed characteristics of each motor shall be suitable to operate the driven equipment through the full range of acceleration and operating load conditions without exceeding the nameplate current rating and/or temperature rise.

C. The rating of the motors offered shall in no case be less than the horsepower shown on the Drawings or elsewhere specified. It should be noted that the motor sizes specified or shown on the Drawings are the minimum motor sizes required to operate the specific driven equipment. Higher rated motor sizes, if determined to be necessary based upon the actual driven equipment submitted and approved, may be substituted if approved for use by the Engineer. In such cases, protective devices, motor starters, disconnect switches, conduits/wire, and other necessary equipment and appurtenances shall be furnished and installed for the actual motor sizes required at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Usual Service Conditions

1. Motor ratings shall be coordinated with the ambient environmental conditions and electrical service conditions of the specific project site and application(s).

2. Air-cooled motor ratings (e.g., temperature rise, service factor, etc.) shall, at a minimum, be based upon operation at the “usual service conditions” as defined in NEMA MG 1 for the specific type of motor, and as specified herein. Water-cooled motors and other special motor types/configurations may be subject to other applicable service conditions.

3. The usual ambient environmental conditions shall be as follows:

    a. Maximum altitude: 3300ft (1000m)

    b. Minimum ambient operating temperature: -15 degrees C for motors with grease lubricated bearings **or** 0 degrees C for motors with oil lubricated bearings

    c. Maximum ambient operating temperature: 40 degrees C

4. For operation at altitudes above 3300ft (1000m), or where ambient temperatures exceed 40 degrees C, motors shall have the maximum ambient temperature rating, service factor, temperature rise rating, and/or other applicable ratings adjusted per applicable NEMA MG 1 requirements. Where motors are installed within housings or enclosures where higher interior temperatures (above the ambient temperature rating) are likely to occur, motor ratings shall be similarly adjusted.

5. The usual electrical service conditions shall be as follows:

    a. Voltage variation (maximum): +/-10 percent of rated (except as noted in item ‘c’)

    b. Frequency variation (maximum): +/-5 percent of rated (except as noted in item ‘c’)

    c. Combined voltage and frequency variation (maximum): 10 percent (note that this is more restrictive than the individual variation allowance in item ‘a’ or ‘c’)

    d. Voltage unbalance (maximum): 1 percent

E. Motor selection with respect to the driven machine shall be such that the machine requirements do not exceed the motor’s maximum rating(s) at 1.0 service factor, adjusted for ambient temperature, enclosure, altitude, and electrical service when not operating within the defined usual service conditions herein.

F. Motor Thermal Limits and Stall Time

1. Polyphase (three-phase) motors rated up to 500HP and driving loads within NEMA MG 1 defined load inertia (Wk^2) limits shall be designed for a stall time (i.e., “safe

stall" or "locked rotor damage" time) of not less than 12 seconds when the motor is initially at normal operating temperatures.

2. Polyphase (three-phase) induction motors exceeding 500HP and/or driving loads that exceed the standard NEMA MG 1 defined load inertia (Wk^2) limits shall be sized/rated to start and drive the driven equipment load without exceeded the thermal limits of the motor (i.e., the thermal limit or "damage" curves/points) during both "cold" and "hot" starts.

G. Motors specified or shown on the Drawings for operation with variable frequency drives (VFD) shall be inverter duty rated. Motors shall only be considered inverter duty rated if they meet all of the requirements for NEMA MG 1 Part 31. Inverter duty motor selection and ratings shall be closely coordinated with the torque (e.g., variable or constant torque) and operating speed (e.g., operating frequency range and/or turndown speed ratio) characteristics of the driven equipment.

H. Performance

1. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, or as required by the dynamic characteristics of the load (as determined by the manufacturer of the machine to be driven), three-phase motors shall have the torque and locked rotor current characteristics as designated in NEMA MG 1 for NEMA Design B motors.

2. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, or as required by the dynamic characteristics of the load (as determined by the manufacturer of the machine to be driven), single-phase motors shall have the locked rotor current characteristics as designated in NEMA MG 1 for NEMA Design N motors.

3. Motors shall be designed to withstand the starting voltage/method (e.g., full-voltage, reduced voltage, variable frequency, etc.) as specified or shown on the Drawings. Motors shall be designed to output 100 percent of nameplate horsepower under continuous duty service without exceeding the temperature rise specified herein when controlled by the actual starter/controller or variable frequency drives (VFD) furnished.

4. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, electric motor service factors shall be in accordance with NEMA MG 1 as follows:

   a. Non-inverter duty motors: 1.15 service factor

   b. Inverter duty motors: 1.0 service factor

   c. Service factors for small single-phase motors may vary from the values shown herein, where applicable

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. Electric motors shall be manufactured by Baldor/Reliance (ABB); Nidec Motors; Toshiba Industrial and Power Systems, Inc.; Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.; TECO Westinghouse; GE Industrial Motors (Wolong); or Engineer approved equal.

2.02 MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Motor Types

1. These requirements are intended to establish standards for the most common types of motors applicable to the Work and may not exhaustively cover all possible motors. For applications where motors must deviate from these standard types, the Contractor shall submit the selected motor data for Engineer approval.

2. In all cases, motors shall be of the type, design, ratings, and construction in accordance with the applicable NEMA MG 1 Section(s) and Part(s).

3. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors shall be one of the following types:

a. Three-phase (polyphase) motors: Squirrel-cage induction type motor, NEMA Design B, designed for operation on a nominal 480 volts, 3-phase, 60Hz alternating current system. Three-phase motors shall have the numbers of poles as required for the operating speed of the driven equipment.

1) Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, all motors 1/4 horsepower or larger shall be the three-phase type as specified herein.

2) Motors designated by NEMA MG 1 as “large machines” due to a non-standard high horsepower or low speed (RPM) rating shall be in accordance with the applicable Part(s) of NEMA MG 1 Section III – Large Machines.

b. Single-phase motors: Capacitor-start or repulsion-start induction type motor, NEMA Design N, designed for operation on a nominal 120 through 240 volts (specific voltage as specified or shown on the Drawings), 1-phase, 60 Hz alternating current system. All single-phase motors shall be completely equipped with all necessary auxiliary components for starting and labeled as "Thermally Protected."

1) Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, all motors smaller than 1/4 horsepower shall be the single-phase type as specified herein.

2) Single-phase fan motors smaller than 1/4 horsepower may be split-phase or shaded-pole type.

c. Definite-purpose motors and/or other special types: Specialized equipment requiring a motor drive with unusual characteristics shall be equipped with a definite-purpose motor to meet the necessary requirements.

B. Construction

1. Frames, mounting means, and shafts shall meet NEMA Standards for the horsepower, RPM, and enclosure selected.

2. Unless otherwise specified in the individual equipment specifications, motors shall have cast iron or steel frames with cast iron end plates. Fan-cooled motors shall have cast iron or fabricated steel fan covers.

3. Unless otherwise specified in the individual equipment specifications, enclosures shall be selected as specified herein and (where separate from the frame) shall not be of aluminum or non-metallic (e.g., plastic or fiberglass) construction.

4. Motors weighing more than 50 pounds shall be equipped with at least one lifting eye. Motors shall be capable of being lifted in one piece and fully assembled when shipped.

5. All bolts and lifting hardware shall be corrosion resistant.

6. Motors for use in general applications shall have a manufacturer's standard shop machinery finish, consisting of a rust-resisting priming coat of zinc chromate and a finish coat of alkyd machinery enamel. Reference Section 09 90 00 – Painting. Motors for use in special applications/environments (e.g., submersible motors, severe duty motors, hazardous location motors, etc.) shall have special coatings (e.g., epoxy) suitable for duty in those applications/environments.

7. Motors used with belt drives shall have sliding bases to provide for belt take up and shall be provided with appropriate bearings as specified in the Bearings section herein for the radial loads associated with the application.

8. Motors for inclined mounting applications (e.g., inclined screw pumps) shall be suitable for inclined mounting and shall be provided with appropriate bearings as specified in the Bearings section herein for the thrust and/or radial loads associated with the application.

9. Horizontal motors shall not be installed in vertical applications where subjected to external thrust loads.

    a. Where specified for vertical applications, vertical hollow shaft (VHS) or vertical solid shaft (VSS) motors shall be furnished.

    b. VHS and VSS motors shall be designed to carry the motor's, machine/pump's, and associated equipment's full thrust loads, and shall be provided with appropriate bearings as specified in the Bearings section herein.

    c. VHS and VSS motors shall be fitted with non-reversing ratchet (NRR) assemblies where required by the equipment Specifications.

    d. Vertical adjustment of VHS motors shall be provided by means of a lockable nut at the top of the shaft.

    e. Vertical adjustment of VSS motors shall be provided by means of an adjustable shaft-mounted external coupling.

10. Rotors shall be statically and dynamically balanced. The rotor shall be fabricated of high grade electrical sheet steel laminations or copper/copper alloy adequately fastened together and to the shaft.

11. Stator windings and end turn connections shall be fully braced to withstand all mechanical, electrical, and thermal stresses.

12. The shaft shall be made of high grade machine steel or steel forging and of size and design adequate to withstand the load stresses.

C. Enclosures

1. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors located in non-hazardous (unclassified) locations shall be the totally-enclosed fan-cooled (TEFC) type.

    a. Vertically-oriented fan-cooled motors located outdoors shall be provided with a drip cover over the fan end to prevent accumulation of precipitation.

    b. Motors shall be provided with two (2) 1/4-inch drain holes drilled through the bottom of the frame (or lowest location), which allows complete drainage of the frame.

    c. Fan-Cooled inverter duty motors controlled by a variable frequency drive (VFD) shall be designed to operate down to the specified turndown speed range without the need for an auxiliary electric cooling fan.

1) Where sufficient cooling is not possible at the required turndown speed range, or where otherwise specified, these motors shall instead be a totally-enclosed blower-cooled (TEBC) type that utilize an external electric fan/blower (instead of a shaft-driven fan) to ensure proper cooling of the motor at low speeds.

d. Where required for other specific applications (e.g., for certain dry pit submersible pumps without integrated process liquid cooling), motors shall instead be a totally-enclosed blower-cooled (TEBC) type that utilize an external electric fan/blower (instead of a shaft-driven fan) to ensure proper cooling of the motor in open air.

e. Electric motor cooling fans, where required for TEBC motors, shall be suitable for 120VAC, 60Hz, 1-phase operation. Electric motor cooling fans shall be coordinated with the motor starter/controls for proper on/off and/or time delay operating in accordance with the motor manufacturer's requirements.

2. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors located in hazardous (classified) locations shall be totally-enclosed types suitable for the specific Class, Division, and Group for the application. The specific totally-enclosed type shall be TEFC, unless a special application consideration or hazardous location requirement necessitates the use of another type.

a. Motors located in Class I or II, Division 1 hazardous locations shall be UL-674 Listed and Labeled. These motors shall be explosion-proof for Class I hazardous locations or dust-ignition-proof for Class II hazardous locations.

b. Motors located in Class I or II, Division 2 hazardous locations shall be in accordance with <u>one</u> of the following (this requires careful coordination with the specific application, motor accessory types to be furnished, and motor and accessory operating/surface temperatures):

1) Be Class I or II, Division 1 hazardous location motors as specified herein.

2) Be identified for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations (not applicable to Class II, Division 2 hazardous locations).

3) Be a non-explosion-proof enclosed motor where permitted in accordance with NEC Article 501.125(B) for Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations

4) Be a non-dust-ignition-proof enclosed motor where permitted in accordance with NEC Article 502.125(B) for Class II, Division 2 hazardous locations.

c. Unless prohibited by the NEC (e.g., Class II, Division 2 location motors are not permitted to have external openings in accordance with NEC Article 502.125(B)), hazardous (classified) location motors shall be provided with a U.L. Listed breather/drain approved for the location. The breather/drain shall prevent the entrance of contaminants while allowing moisture to drain out of the motor.

3. Where specified in the individual equipment specification, motors shall be severe duty for operation in harsh/chemical environments. Severe duty motors shall be manufactured in accordance with, and Labeled as, IEEE 841 severe duty motors. The IEEE 841 Labeling shall be in addition to the other motor design, construction, and performance requirements herein for the respective motor.

D. Insulation

1. Winding insulation shall be as specified for each particular type or class of motor. The insulation system shall provide a high dielectric strength, long life covering for the windings which may be required to operate in a continually damp, corrosive, and/or chemically contaminated environment. The insulation shall be resistant to attack by moisture, acids, alkalis, abrasives, and mechanical and thermal shock. Leads shall be sealed with a non-wicking, non-hydroscopic insulation material.

2. Motor insulation resistance may be checked at any time after delivery to the job site or during the warranty period. Encapsulated motor stators may be subjected to insulation testing while completely submerged in water. Any motor not meeting the requirements specified herein will be rejected and shall be promptly replaced at no cost to the Owner.

3. Unless otherwise specified, insulation for three-phase motors shall be as follows:

a. Non-inverter duty motors shall be furnished with a Class F insulation system. Temperature rise shall be limited to that for Class B insulation while operating under the usual conditions specified herein.

b. Inverter duty motors shall be furnished with a Class H insulation system. Temperature rise shall be limited to that for Class F insulation while operating under the usual conditions specified herein.

c. All motors 250 horsepower and larger shall have stator windings vacuum impregnated with a polyester insulation compound.

4. Unless otherwise specified, insulation for single-phase motors shall be as follows:

a. Insulation shall be a Class B insulation system, minimum.

E. Terminal Boxes

1. Motors shall be furnished with a cast iron or heavy gauge steel terminal box and cover, with neoprene gaskets between the frame and the box and between the box and its cover. The box shall be diagonally split from top to bottom and shall be completely rotatable 360-degrees in 90-degree increments.

2. Motor terminal boxes shall be of sufficient size to accommodate the required quantity and size of conduit(s) to be terminated. This shall be carefully coordinated when large conduits and/or multiple/parallel sets of conduits must be terminated. Boxes shall be provided with conduit hub type fittings to permit threaded conduit connections.

3. Terminal boxes shall be sized to accommodate accessory equipment such as motor differential current transformers, capacitors, etc., where required. Where certain types of accessories are specified which require separate termination provisions, a separate accessory terminal box shall be furnished in addition to the main terminal box. Reference the Accessories section herein.

4. NEMA ratings of the terminal boxes shall be suitable for the application. Motors located in hazardous (classified) locations shall be furnished with terminal boxes suitable for the specific Class, Division, and Group for the application.

5. Terminal boxes for horizontal motors shall be located on the left-hand side when viewing the motor from the drive end and shall be so designed that conduit entrance can be made from above, below, or either side of the terminal box.

6. A grounding lug(s) shall be provided inside the terminal box.

7. All motors shall be provided with factory-installed one-hole terminations (e.g., ring terminals) on the ends of all motor leads. For fine-stranded motor leads (with other than Class B conductor stranding), terminations shall be identified for use with fine-stranded conductors and shall be the irreversible compression type.

F. Bearings

1. The bearing requirements herein are intended to establish minimum requirements for most motor applications, but do not exhaustively cover all possible motor and driven-equipment arrangements and operating conditions. All bearings shall be selected for suitability with the operating conditions and the type (e.g., centrifugal, radial, axial/thrust, etc.) and magnitude of loads associated with the specific motor-load combinations. Where the requirements herein may not be suitable for a specific application due to operating speed, bearing temperature limitations, environmental conditions, or other factors, the Contractor shall coordinate the requirements with the motor and driven equipment manufacturers and shall submit alternate bearing configurations for Engineer approval.

2. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, bearings shall have a minimum ABMA L-10 life of 100,000 hours.

3. Unless otherwise specified, shown on the Drawings, or required due to the application (e.g., operating speed, bearing temperature, etc.), all motor bearings shall be grease-lubricated anti-friction type. Unless specified as the sealed type, grease-lubricated bearings shall be the feed type and shall include conveniently located grease fittings and drain plugs. Fittings and drains shall be arranged so as to be accessible when the motor and driven equipment are installed. A means of preventing bearings from becoming over-greased shall be provided.

    a. Oil-lubricated bearings, where applicable, shall be provided with 90-degee fittings and drain valves on the oil drain ports for improved maintainability/serviceability. When required due to motor speed, bearing size, or other factors, provisions shall be made for forced lubrication. The oil supply shall be supplied with motor. In addition, oil rings and an adequate oil reservoir in the bearing housings shall be provided to permit orderly shutdown of the motor in the event of failure of the forced feed lubrication system.

4. Inverter duty motors where shaft grounding rings (SGR) are required (reference the Accessories section herein) shall be provided with an electrically insulated bearing at the opposite end (typically the NDE bearing) from the SGR. Insulated bearings shall have an electrically insulating ceramic coating with a dielectric breakdown voltage rating of 1000V. Inverter duty motors not provided with SGR shall be provided with electrical insulated bearings at both ends.

5. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, three-phase horizontal motors in direct drive or coupled arrangements shall be provided with single-row deep groove ball bearings on the drive end (DE) and non-drive end (NDE).

6. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, three-phase horizontal motors in belt drive arrangements shall be provided with cylindrical, spherical, or tapered roller bearings for high axial loading on the drive end (DE) and single-row deep groove ball bearings on the non-drive end (NDE).

7. Three-phase motors in direct, coupled, or belt drive inclined mounting arrangements shall be provided with the specific bearing types/combinations required for the specific mounting and drive geometry and loading. These arrangements require careful bearing selection for suitability and long life under the design operating conditions. Bearing lubrication type and method shall be subject to Engineer approval.

8. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, single-phase motors shall be provided with grease-lubricated sealed ball bearings, lubricated for 10 years of normal use.

G. Accessories

1. All motor accessories shall be coordinated with the motor design, construction, and enclosure type, and with respect to any requirements associated with the specific application and all applicable codes and standards. Special care shall be exercised in the selection and ratings of motor accessories specified herein and elsewhere for use in motors located in hazardous (classified locations).

2. Shaft Grounding Rings (SGR)

    a. Externally-mounted shaft grounding rings (SGR) shall be provided to protect motors controlled by VFDs against motor shaft and bearing currents, with the following exceptions:

        1) Motors located in hazardous (classified) locations

        2) Motors rated less than one (1) horsepower

        3) Submersible motors

    b. SGR shall be coordinated with the motor and bearing configuration to suit the specific application. Typically, SGR shall be installed on the drive end (DE) of the motor. Reference the Bearings section herein for additional requirements for bearings when SGR are provided.

3. Motor Space Heaters (MSH)

    a. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors rated 10 horsepower or greater that are located outdoors or in indoor wet locations shall be furnished with motor space heaters (MSH) for condensation prevention, with leads brought out to the motor terminal box.

    b. MSH shall be suitable for 120VAC operation and shall be of sufficient wattage to maintain the internal temperature of the motor at least 5 degrees C above the ambient temperature when the motor is not running, and shall meet the following surface temperature requirements:

        1) In non-hazardous (unclassified) locations, MSH shall have a maximum surface temperature of up to 200 degrees C.

        2) In Class I hazardous (classified) locations, MSH shall have a maximum surface temperature that does not exceed 80% of the autoignition temperature (AIT) of the gas or vapor to be encountered in accordance with the applicable requirements of NEC Articles 500 and 501.

        3) In Class II hazardous (classified) locations, the MSH rating shall be coordinated with the motor such that the maximum operating surface temperature of any exposed surface does not exceed the lower of either the ignition temperature of the specific dust to be encountered or

165 degrees C in accordance with the applicable requirements of NEC Articles 500 and 502.

4. Motor Winding Temperature Switches (MWTS)

   a. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors rated greater than or equal to 10HP and less than 200HP shall be furnished with normally-closed (N.C.) motor winding high temperature switches (MWTS) embedded in the stator windings, wired in series, with the leads brought out to the motor terminal box.

   b. Embedded MWTS shall be the thermostat type (not thermistor type) and shall operate at temperatures well below the temperature rating of the motor winding insulation system. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, MWTS are not required where other temperature monitoring devices (e.g., RTD's) are required.

5. Resistance Thermal Detectors (RTDs)

   a. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, motors rated 200HP or greater shall be furnished with resistance thermal detectors (RTDs) embedded in the stator windings, two (2) per phase. Where specified in the individual equipment specification, motors shall also be furnished with bearing RTDs, one per bearing.

   b. RTDs shall be 3-wire, platinum, 100-ohm precision type with calibrated resistance-temperature characteristics. RTDs shall be pre-wired to terminal blocks located in an accessory terminal box as specified herein.

6. Vibration Protection

   a. Where specified in the individual equipment specification, motors shall be furnished with vibration protection as follows.

      1) Provide each motor with two (2) fully self-contained electronic vibration switches. Install one switch along the thrust axis of the motor (either front or rear of the motor) and the other switch on the side of the motor.

      2) Vibration switches shall be a Metrix 440 (for unclassified and Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations), Metrix 450 (for Class I, Division 1 and Class II, Division 1 hazardous locations) or approved equal, with the following features:

         a) 120VAC input control power supply

         b) Internal accelerometer

c) Velocity measurement via seismic-type transducers with RMS amplitude detection (detection range: 0.1-1.5 inches/sec).

d) Fixed startup time delay (20 seconds) upon application of control power

e) Two Form C SPDT discrete output relays with field-adjustable vibration setpoints and time delay (2 to 15 seconds) for alarm and shutdown

f) One 4-20mA analog output for vibration monitoring]

7. Surge Protection

a. Lightning/Surge Arrestors

1) Where specified or shown on the Drawings, motors shall be furnished with lightning/surge arresters.

2) The arresters shall be of the of the metal-oxide station type with porcelain tops, rated 3kV (RMS) with a maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV) of 2.55kV (RMS) and maximum switching surge protection level of 6kV. Arrestors shall be rated in accordance with ANSI/IEEE C62.11.

3) Lightning/surge arresters shall be factory-installed in the motor terminal box. Where provided in conjunction with surge capacitors, they shall be part of a combined/coordinated assembly. Removable bus links shall be provided for motor testing. These links shall be treated to resist corrosion, designed to maintain a positive contact, and have low contact resistance.

b. Surge Capacitors

1) Where specified or shown on the Drawings, motors shall be furnished with surge capacitors, with the following exceptions:

a) Motors for operation on solid-state starters, including VFDs and RVSS, shall not utilize surge capacitors.

2) Surge capacitors shall be three-pole units rated 1.0 micro-farads per pole, equipped with built-in discharge resistors, and utilizing a non-polychlorinated biphenyl (non-PCB) insulating medium. Capacitors shall have hermetically-sealed bushings which allow for upright or horizontal/side mounting. Capacitors shall be rated for operation up to 650 volts (RMS) line-to-line, with a maximum peak voltage of 715 volts line-to-line.

3) Surge capacitors shall be factory-installed in the motor terminal box. Where provided in conjunction with lighting/surge arresters, they shall be part of a combined/coordinated assembly. Removable bus links shall be provided for motor testing. These links shall be treated to resist corrosion, designed to maintain a positive contact, and have low contact resistance.

2.03 EFFICIENCY AND POWER FACTOR

A. Efficiency

1. Motors shall meet or exceed the minimum energy efficiency requirements for the specific motor type and size in accordance with all applicable federal regulations (10 CFR Part 431) and US Department of Energy (DOE) rules.

2. Single-phase motors sized 1/4HP to 3HP (where included in the project scope), inclusive, shall be designed, tested, and Labeled as NEMA Premium Efficient motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1, utilizing the IEEE 114 test methods. Efficiency tests for these single-phase NEMA Premium Efficient motors shall be performed in accordance with the applicable procedures defined in NEMA MG 1 Part 12.60.

3. Three-phase motors sized 1/4HP to less than 1HP shall be designed, tested, and Labeled as NEMA Premium Efficient motors, utilizing the NEMA preferred IEEE 112 test Method A. Efficiency tests for NEMA Premium Efficient motors shall be performed in accordance with the applicable procedures defined in NEMA MG 1 Part 12.60.

4. Three-phase motors sized 1HP to 500HP, inclusive, shall be designed and Labeled as NEMA Premium Efficient motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1 when the motors are tested in accordance with the NEMA preferred test method IEEE 112, Method B (dynamometer). Efficiency tests for NEMA Premium Efficient motors shall be performed in accordance with the applicable procedures defined in NEMA MG 1 Parts 12.60 and 20.21.C.

5. Three-phase motors larger than 500HP shall be designed and Labeled as NEMA Premium Efficient motors in accordance with NEMA MG 1. Efficiency tests for these motors shall be performance in accordance with the applicable procedures defined in NEMA MG 1 Part 20.21.C.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Motors shall be installed as shown on the Drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Motors shall be properly protected from weather hazards. Motors shall not be allowed to be wrapped tightly in plastic while outdoors. Motors delivered to the site which will not be put in service for a time in excess of 30 calendar days, whether in storage or installed, shall have the shafts rotated a minimum of five (5) rotations every 30 days.

B. Motors provided with space heaters shall have temporary power applied to the heaters no later than 30 calendar days after delivery to the site until permanent power can be applied to the heaters.

C. Motors that, in the opinion of the Engineer, have not been properly protected shall be inspected by the manufacturer's representative. Any required electrical corrections for testing shall be made at the Contractor's expense prior to acceptance and/or use.

D. All motors shall operate without any undue noise or vibration and shall show no signs of phase unbalance.

3.03 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Witnessed Shop tests

    a. None required.

2. Shop Tests

    a. All motors shall be shop tested and inspected in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's standard procedures. The manufacturer's testing and inspection procedures shall demonstrate that the equipment tested conforms to the requirements specified, all other applicable requirements, and shall be approved by the Engineer. At least 10 days’ notice shall be given the Engineer prior to tests and inspection dates.

    b. In addition to the efficiency and power factor testing specified herein, each motor shall be tested to determine compliance with the applicable requirements of the IEEE, ANSI and NEMA. Tests shall be as follows:

        1) Motors less than 50 HP:

            a) Each motor shall be subjected to a standard, short commercial test including the following:

                i. Running current, no load

                ii. Locked rotor current

iii. High potential

iv. Winding resistance

v. Bearing inspection

2) Motors 50 HP to less than 250 HP:

a) Each motor shall be subjected to the above tests in addition to the following:

i. Efficiencies at 100, 75, and 50 percent of full load

ii. Power factors at 100, 75, and 50 percent of full load

3) Motors 250 HP or larger:

a) Each motor shall be subjected to a complete test including the following:

i. Running current from no load to full rated load

ii. Locked rotor current

iii. High potential

iv. Winding resistance

v. Percent slip

vi. Bearing inspection

vii. Temperature rise at full rated load

viii. Starting torque

ix. Breakdown torque (calculated)

x. Secondary current and voltage at collector rings (wound rotor)

xi. Efficiencies at 100, 75, and 50 percent of full load

xii. Power factors at 100, 75, and 50 percent of full load

4) Test Reports

a) All test results for motors 50 horsepower or greater shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

c. Field tests shall be performed in accordance with requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

d. All field testing shall be witnessed by the Engineer.

e. All electric motors furnished for this project one (1) horsepower or larger shall have the information required in the following tabulation completed (see Exhibit "A" on following page).

(EXHIBIT A)

MOTOR TEST RECORD					
Motor Identification Remarks	**Location**	**Specified Horsepower**	**Nameplate Horsepower**	**Nameplate Amperage (FLA)**	**Measured Amperage Under Normal Operating Conditions**

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 73
POWER SYSTEM STUDIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall provide all power system studies for the project as specified herein. The following shall be performed:

1. Short Circuit Studies

2. Load Flow Analyses

3. Protective Device Coordination Studies

4. Equipment Evaluation

5. Arc Flash Risk Assessment

B. The scope of the work for these studies shall include all existing electrical equipment as well as new electrical equipment furnished under this Contract at the project site.

C. The studies shall include all electric utility protective devices, transformers, generators, cables, switchgear, switchboards, motor control centers, individual motor controllers, variable-frequency drives, panelboards, protection relays, and control panels.

D. Prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment shop drawings for the equipment proposed under this Contract and/or prior to release of that equipment for manufacture, the Preliminary Report, as specified herein, shall be submitted and approved. Contractor shall expedite the completion of the Preliminary Report so that final approval of proposed equipment is not delayed.

E. The studies shall be performed with the aid of SKM Systems Analysis Power Tools for Windows (PTW) software, Version 11.0 or newer. No other software analysis packages are acceptable.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All work shall be performed in accordance with the following Codes and Standards, as applicable (latest edition, unless otherwise specified):

020924

1. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

a. Standard 141, Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution for Industrial Plants

b. Standard 241, Recommended Practice for Electric Power Systems in Commercial Buildings

c. Standard 242, Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems

d. Standard 3002.2, IEEE Recommended Practice for Conducting Load Flow Studies and Analysis of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems

e. Standard 3002.3, IEEE Recommended Practice for Conducting Short-Circuit Studies and Analysis of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems

f. Standard 1584-2018, IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations

2. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

a. Standard C37.90, IEEE Standard for Relays and Relay Systems Associated with Electric Power Apparatus

b. Standard C37.91, Guide for Protective Relay Applications to Power Transformers

c. Standard C37.95, Guide for Protective Relaying of Utility-Consumer Interconnections

d. Standard C37.96, Guide for AC Motor Protection

e. Standard C57.12.59, Guide Dry-Type Transformer Through-Fault Current Duration

f. Standard C.57.13, Standard Requirements for Instrumentation Transformers

g. Standard C57.109, Guide for Liquid-Immersed Transformer Through Fault-Current Duration

h. Standard Z535.4, Product Safety Signs and Labels

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code (NEC)

b. NFPA 70E, Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace (2024 Edition)

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. The Contractor shall submit the following reports for review and approval:

1. One (1) printed copy and one (1) electronic copy of the Preliminary Report.

2. One (1) printed copy and one (1) electronic copy of the Pre-final Report.

3. Four (4) printed copies and one (1) electronic copy of the Final Report.

B. The Contractor shall submit one (1) complete electronic copy of the final power system model and all required database files generated by the software analysis package used. Files shall be placed on portable storage media (USB 3.0 flash storage device) or be uploaded to a cloud-based file sharing service and be submitted with the Final Report. Furnish any necessary documentation requiring the Owner's signature to allow model to be transferred to the Owner.

1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

A. The studies shall be performed by a professional electrical engineer actively licensed in the state or commonwealth in which the project is located. The licensed professional electrical engineer shall have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in performing power system studies.

B. The resume of the licensed professional electrical engineer shall be submitted for approval prior to the start of work. An experience table shall also be provided detailing the power system studies of similar scope to this Contract that have been performed by the proposed engineer over the last two (2) years. The table shall, at a minimum, list the facility owner's name, facility contact person with phone number and email address, and overall scope of work that was provided.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 DATA COLLECTION

A. The Contractor shall collect all required utility transformer and service information for use in these studies. The serving electric utility representative contact information can be found in Section 26 05 00, Basic Electrical Requirements.

B. Approved equipment shop drawings and product information for all equipment furnished under this Contract shall be used for these studies. Including data for equipment that is not yet approved is not acceptable.

C. One (1) field visit to the project site to collect pertinent data from existing equipment by the personnel performing the studies is permitted. The visit shall span as many days as required to collect all necessary information. This visit shall occur as soon after the Contract is awarded as possible and shall be coordinated with the Owner. The Contractor and personnel performing these studies are responsible for collecting all required data for these studies. If equipment is to be examined while energized parts

are exposed, the examining personnel shall wear appropriate PPE in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70E.

D. Using data from record drawings, “as-built” drawings, or a previous power system study is not acceptable. All data for existing equipment shall be field verified.

3.02 STUDY PARAMETERS

A. The following parameters shall be used for all studies:

1. Transformers 75kVA (nominal) and larger shall be modeled with actual nameplate data including impedance data. Motors 30hp and larger shall be modeled with actual nameplate power factor and efficiency data.

2. Room heating and cooling loads are mutually exclusive. Only the larger of these two load types shall be configured as in-service in the model.

3. Each set of pumps for a specific application (e.g. Booster Pump) has one redundant unit. For the purposes of these studies, that redundant unit shall be configured as out-of-service in the model.

4. The sources that shall be used in these studies are the serving electric utility and the standby generator. These sources are incapable of paralleling with each other, so each one shall be considered independent of the other for the purposes of these studies.

B. Other parameters may apply for specific studies if noted in the respective study requirements herein.

3.03 SHORT CIRCUIT STUDIES

A. The short circuit studies shall be performed in accordance with IEEE Standard 3002.3.

B. The study input data shall include the short circuit contribution obtained from each source. Short circuit close and latch duty values and interrupting duty values shall be calculated on the basis of assumed three-phase bolted short circuits at each bus. Single-line diagrams shall show the results of the analysis by using datablocks constructed as shown in Appendix A. Provide the results of this study in a tabular format as well, included as an appendix to the report.

C. The short circuit study report shall include an analysis of whether the equipment short circuit and withstand ratings shown in the Contract Documents are suitable.

3.04 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDIES

A. A protective device coordination study shall be performed to provide the necessary calculations and logic decisions required to select or to check the selection of power fuse ratings, protective relay characteristics and settings, ratios and characteristics of

associated current transformers, and low voltage circuit breaker trip characteristics and settings.

B. The coordination study shall include all equipment from the serving electric utility company source protective devices down to and including all adjustable circuit protective devices. The phase and ground overcurrent protection shall be included as well as settings of all other adjustable protective devices.

C. The time-current characteristics of the proposed protective devices shall be printed on log-log scale coordination plots as specified below.

1. Each plot shall be accompanied by a representative single-line diagram. The coordination plot and single-line diagram shall each occupy one-half of the same printed sheet for ease of cross reference. Each printed sheet shall have a distinct title that identifies the portion of the electrical system it represents.

2. Each coordination plot shall include the following:

a. Sufficient number of separate curves shall be used to clearly indicate the coordination achieved

b. Identification of each curve with its respective component's name

c. Complete operating bands for fuse and low voltage circuit breaker trip curves

d. Transformer magnetizing inrush and ANSI transformer withstand parameters

e. Cable thermal overcurrent withstand limits

f. Significant symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents for the portion of the electrical system represented by the plot

3. Each accompanying single-line shall include datablocks as described in Appendix A.

4. All restrictions of the National Electrical Code shall be adhered to, and proper coordination intervals and separation of characteristic curves shall be maintained.

D. The selection and settings of all protective devices shall be provided separately in the report in a tabulated form listing circuit identification, IEEE device number, current transformer ratios and connections, manufacturer and type, range of adjustment and recommended settings.

3.05 LOAD FLOW ANALYSIS

A. The load flow analysis shall be performed in accordance with IEEE Standard 3002.2.

B. A load flow analysis shall be performed to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system(s) being studied. From the results of the load flow analysis, the report shall indicate areas of overloaded conductors, busses, or other equipment in the power distribution system. The load flow analysis results shall be presented in a tabular format as well as a single-line diagram format. Single-line diagrams shall show the results of the analysis by using datablocks constructed as shown in Appendix A. All assumptions associated with the analysis shall be documented in the report.

3.06 EQUIPMENT EVALUATION

A. An equipment evaluation shall be performed to determine the adequacy of existing circuit breakers, panelboards, motor control centers, automatic transfer switches, busses, etc. located at the facility by tabulating and comparing the short circuit ratings of these devices with the calculated fault currents that result from the short circuit study.

B. Appropriate multiplying factors based on system X/R ratios and protective device rating standards shall be applied. A table shall be provided in the report showing the calculated fault currents and the corresponding short circuit ratings of the existing equipment along with a pass for fail status for each piece of equipment.

3.07 ARC FLASH RISK ASSESSMENT

A. An arc flash risk assessment shall be performed in accordance with IEEE Std. 1584-2018, NFPA 70E, and OSHA 29-CFR, Part 1910 Subpart S. The assessment shall use the incident energy analysis method. The arc flash PPE category method shall not be used.

B. The following parameters shall be used for the arc flash risk assessment:

1. Working distance for <u>all</u> equipment: 18 inches

2. Arcing duration limit: 2 seconds, or higher (based on engineering judgement) for equipment locations where additional time may be required to exit the arc flash boundary.

3. Equipment box dimensions and electrode configuration shall be entered for each piece of equipment (existing and/or new) to be assessed. Using software default dimensions and electrode configuration is not acceptable.

4. For equipment operating at 240VAC or below, report incident energy as “<1.2 cal/cm^2” if the bolted fault current is calculated to be less than 2000A.

5. Any protective device settings changes that were recommended as part of these studies shall be included. For devices where settings changes are recommended, the “as-found” settings shall be documented separately in dedicated tables for record purposes.

6. The following operational scenarios shall be used in the assessment, with the worst-case values from each scenario being shown in the study report and on the arc flash labels:

    a. Scenario 1: All tie circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the electric utility source.

    b. Scenario 2: All A-side main circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all tie circuit breakers are closed, all B-side main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the electric utility source.

    c. Scenario 3: All B-side main circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all tie circuit breakers are closed, all A-side main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the electric utility source.

    d. Scenario 4: All tie circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the standby generator source.

    e. Scenario 5: All A-side main circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all tie circuit breakers are closed, all B-side main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the standby generator source.

    f. Scenario 6: All B-side main circuit breakers at distribution equipment are open, all tie circuit breakers are closed, all A-side main circuit breakers are closed, and the facility is served by the standby generator source.

C. The arc flash risk assessment report shall include but not be limited to the following:

1. A brief overview of what arc flash hazards are and how to avoid them.

2. Definitions of key terms used in the report.

3. Confirmation of all parameters and scenarios used in the report.

4. Documentation of any assumptions made for the report.

5. Serving electric utility information received. Copies of the information received shall be included in an appendix.

6. Any recommendations to reduce the arc flash incident energies via protective device settings changes where incident energies are found to exceed 12 cal/cm^2. Protective device settings change recommendations shall not negatively impact selective coordination.

7. A copy of the PPE information from Table 130.5 G in NFPA 70E.

8. Arc flash labels as specified herein.

9. An NFPA 70E energized electrical work permit for each location where an arc flash label is provided.

10. An arc flash evaluation summary sheet, based on the worst-case scenario, that contains the following minimum information:

    a. Bus name

    b. Protective device name

    c. Bus line-to-line voltage

    d. Bus bolted fault

    e. Protective device bolted fault

    f. Protective device arcing fault

    g. Trip/delay time

    h. Breaker opening time

    i. Equipment type

    j. Gap

    k. Electrode configuration

    l. Box height, width, and depth

    m. Arc flash boundary

    n. Working distance

    o. Incident energy

    p. Notes

D. Arc Flash Labels

1. Arc flash labels shall be provided for each piece of equipment that is likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. When opening an enclosure exposes energized parts on both the line and load side of a device, provide a label with the worst case (line versus load) incident energy printed. The following equipment, at a minimum, shall be provided with labels in the quantities specified:

a. Switchgear/Switchboards – quantity of 1 label per section on front, 1 label per section on rear if rear is accessible. Provide second label at main circuit breaker sections where it is possible to open covers and separately expose line side and load side energized parts.

b. Motor control centers – quantity of 1 label per section on front, 1 label per section on rear if rear is accessible. Provide second label at main circuit breaker sections where it is possible to open covers and separately expose line side and load side energized parts.

c. Panelboards – quantity of 1

d. Variable frequency drives – quantity of 1 label per section

e. Other stand-alone motor starters/controllers – quantity of 1 label per section

f. Automatic and manual transfer switches – quantity of 1

g. Enclosed circuit breakers – quantity of 1

2. Arc flash labels shall be thermal transfer type that is printed on adhesive backed polyester material. Labels shall be ANSI Z535.4 compliant, 4 inches tall by 6 inches wide, and provided with a 5-year warranty. For incident energy values of less than 40 cal/cm^2, the labels shall have an orange-colored header with the word "WARNING". For incident energy values equal to and above 40 cal/cm^2, the labels shall have a red-colored header with the word "DANGER". Each label shall include the following information:

   a. Equipment name

   b. Date of issue and name of firm performing assessment

   c. Incident energy

   d. Working distance

   e. Arc flash boundary

   f. Nominal system voltage

3. A generic arc flash label that has a red-colored header with the word "DANGER" and text in large letters that shows "ENERGIZED WORK NOT PERMITTED" shall be provided for the following equipment:

   a. Any equipment that requires an arc flash label (as specified above) that is located within a hazardous area.

b. Any equipment found to be in poor working condition, where in the judgement of the engineer performing the study, energized work should not be performed at all, regardless of the outcome of the incident energy analysis at that equipment.

4. The owner reserves the right to require adjustments and customization of the label layout and displayed information to match internal standards.

3.08 STUDY REPORTS

A. The results of the studies shall be documented in a series of reports. A total of three (3) separate reports shall be provided as follows:

1. Preliminary Report – The Preliminary Report shall consist of all power systems studies as specified herein, with the following exceptions:

a. NFPA 70E energized electrical work permits shall not be included.

b. One (1) WARNING label and one (1) DANGER label shall be printed on plain paper for format review purposes only. Actual adhesive labels with calculated values shall not be included.

2. Pre-final Report – The Pre-final Report shall incorporate all comments received from the previous report review and shall include specific equipment data from the approved shop drawings of the proposed electrical equipment. The Pre-final Report shall consist of all power systems studies as specified herein, with the following exceptions:

a. NFPA 70E energized electrical work permits shall not be included.

b. Sample arc flash hazard warning labels one (1) WARNING label and one (1) DANGER label) shall be printed on the proposed adhesive material for review purposes.

3. Final Report – The Final Report shall consist of all power systems studies as specified herein, including final adhesive arc flash hazard warning labels. Final report shall incorporate all installed electrical equipment, including any field changes made during construction, and all comments received from the previous report review. All ‘as-left’ protective device settings shall be included in the report. The Final Report shall bear the signature and seal of the professional electrical engineer that performed the study.

B. Hard copies of reports shall be furnished in the quantities specified herein, neatly organized into properly identified 3-ring binders. Tabs shall clearly separate each section of the report.

C. Electronic copies of reports shall be provided in PDF file format. Electronic copies shall have searchable text and bookmarks for each section of the report.

D. Each report shall begin with a table of contents followed by an executive summary. The executive summary shall detail the configuration of the electrical system and summarize any concerns or recommendations for the electrical distribution system that resulted from the studies specified herein.

E. Reports shall include simplified single line diagrams with only the device name information displayed for all equipment, as well as single line diagrams with specific data displayed as specified herein for each study.

F. All data used in the reports such as conductor sizes and lengths, motor sizes, utility contribution information, fault analysis input, fault contributions, and the like shall be included in the appendices of the report.

G. All single line diagrams and time current curves shall be provided in the reports on 11x17 paper, properly folded to fit into the report binder. Use of standard 8.5x11 paper for these purposes is not permitted. Single line diagrams shall be appropriately split up between several sheets (if required) to allow the drawing scale to be adjusted as required to make text and symbols legible.

3.09 FIELD ADJUSTMENT

A. The Contractor shall adjust all relay and other protective device settings according to the recommended settings table provided in the approved Pre-Final Report.

B. The Contractor shall make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish conformance with short circuit and protective device coordination studies.

3.10 ARC FLASH LABEL PLACEMENT

A. The Contractor shall place approved adhesive arc flash labels on equipment after the Final Report is reviewed and approved.

3.11 TRAINING

A. The Contractor shall train the Owner's qualified electrical personnel of the potential arc flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment. The training shall be provided in two (2) separate sessions of no less than two (2) hours each. The training shall be certified for continuing education units (CEUs) by the International Association for Continuing Education Training (IACET), or equivalent. Training certificates shall be provided for all attendees.

END OF SECTION

100121

APPENDIX A – SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

REQUIRED DATABLOCK CONTENTS FOR POWER SYSTEM STUDIES

Component Type	Input Data	Load Flow	Short Circuit	TCC Plots*
Utility	Nominal Voltage	Nominal Voltage Current (A) Power Factor Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Fault Contribution (3P RMS) and X/R Ratio Fault Contribution (SLG RMS) and X/R Ratio	N/A
Generator	Nominal Voltage Rating (kW) Power Factor	Voltage Drop (%) Power Factor Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Fault Contribution (3P RMS) Fault Contribution (SLG RMS)	FLA
Bus	Voltage Manufacturer SCCR	Voltage Drop (%) Study Voltage Current (A) Power Factor Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Fault Magnitude (3P RMS) Fault Magnitude (SLG RMS)	N/A
Cable	Size (AWG or kcmil) Parallel Sets Length Type (Cu/Al/Cu-Al)	Voltage Drop (%) Current (A) Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Upstream Contribution (3P RMS) Upstream Contribution (SLG RMS) Downstream Contribution (3P RMS) Downstream Contribution (SLG RMS)	N/A
Transformer	Rating (kVA) Impedance (%Z) X/R Ratio	Voltage Drop (%) Sec. Current (A) Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Upstream Contribution (3P RMS) Upstream Contribution (SLG RMS) Downstream Contribution (3P RMS) Downstream Contribution (SLG RMS)	N/A
Motor	Rating (hp) Rated Voltage FLA Power Factor	Voltage Drop (%) Study Voltage Power Factor Power (kW) Power (kVA)	Upstream Contribution (3P RMS) Upstream Contribution (SLG RMS)	FLA LRA/FLA ratio

Component Type	Input Data	Load Flow	Short Circuit	TCC Plots*
Non-Motor Load	Rating (A, kW, kVA) Rated Voltage Power Factor	Voltage Drop (%) Study Voltage Power Factor Power (kW) Power (kVA)	N/A	N/A
Fuse	Manufacturer Model Rating (A)	N/A	N/A	Same as Input Data
Relay**	Manufacturer Model CT Ratio Curve Elements & Settings	N/A	N/A	Same as Input Data
Disconnect Switch	Manufacturer SCCR (kA)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Circuit Breaker (no integral trip unit)	Manufacturer SCCR (kA)	N/A	N/A	N/A
Circuit Breaker*** (all others)	Manufacturer Model SCCR (kA) Frame/Sensor/Plug Ratings Settings*** LTPU [LTD Curve Shape] [LTD] [STPU] [STD and I^2T On/Off] INST [GFPU] [GFD and I^2T On/Off] [AF Maint. Setting/Curve]	N/A	N/A	Same as Input Data

Component Type	Input Data	Load Flow	Short Circuit	TCC Plots*
Motor Circuit Protector	Manufacturer Model SCCR (kA) Frame/Trip Ratings	N/A	N/A	Same as Input Data
Motor Overload Relay	Manufacturer Model SCCR (kA) Frame/Trip Ratings Settings	N/A	N/A	Same as Input Data

* TCC single line diagrams shall not display datablocks.

** Complex and/or non-overcurrent settings for multifunction relays (e.g. bus/winding differential, motor thermal model parameters, under/overvoltage, RTD alarm and trip setpoints, etc.) are excluded from the model.

*** Hide setting elements where not applicable for a given circuit breaker. Recommended settings for non-overcurrent settings for electronic trip circuit breakers (e.g. under/overvoltage, zone-selective interlocking, alarm setpoints, etc.) are excluded from the model.

SECTION 26 09 16
ELECTRIC CONTROLS AND RELAYS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation all electric controls and relays as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. Electrical control and relay systems shall be assembled using NEMA rated components. Components designed and built to International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standards are not recognized. Equipment designed, manufactured, and Labeled in compliance with IEC standards is not acceptable.

C. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Products specified herein shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/International Society of Automation (ISA):

a. ANSI/ISA 12.12.01 – Nonincendive Electrical Equipment for Use in Class I and II, Division 2 and Class III, Divisions 1 and 2 Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

a. NEMA 250 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment.

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 508A – Standard for Industrial Control Panels.

b. UL-1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Spare Parts List

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 SPARE PARTS

A. All spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be furnished to the Owner by the Contractor. In addition to the manufacturer recommended spare parts, the following spare parts shall be provided for the local control stations:

1. One (1) contact block of each type furnished on the project

2. One (1) indicating light lens of each color furnished on the project

3. One (1) LED lamp of each color furnished on the project

B. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 CONTROL COMPONENTS

A. Manufacturers

1. Control components shall be manufactured by Eaton, The Square D Company, GE by ABB, Allen-Bradley, Siemens Energy and Automation, or Engineer approved equal.

B. Pilot Devices

1. General

a. All pilot devices shall be provided with a legend plate. Legend plates shall have a white background and black lettering and indicate the function of the respective pilot device. The text shown on the Drawings or indicated in the specifications shall be used as the basis for legend plate engraving (e.g., HAND-OFF-AUTO, RUN, EMERGENCY STOP, etc.).

b. All pilot devices shall be selected and properly installed to maintain the NEMA 250 rating of the enclosure in which they are installed. All pilot devices shall be UL 508 Listed.

c. All pilot devices shall be 30.5mm in diameter, unless otherwise indicated. 22mm devices are not acceptable.

d. Pilot devices for all electrical equipment under this Contract shall be of the same type and manufacturer unless otherwise specified herein or indicated on the Drawings.

e. In Class I Division 2 hazardous locations, pilot devices shall be the hermetically-sealed type, constructed in accordance with ANSI/ISA 12.12.01.

2. Pushbuttons

a. Pushbuttons shall be non-illuminated, black in color, and have momentary style operation unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

b. Pushbuttons shall have the quantity of normally closed and/or normally open contacts as indicated on the Drawings and as required. In addition to the required contacts, one (1) spare normally open and one (1) spare normally closed contact shall be installed at each pushbutton. Contacts shall be rated for 5A at 250VAC/DC (minimum), but no less than required for the application.

c. Pushbuttons shall be provided with a full guard around the perimeter of the button. Where a lockout style pushbutton is specified or indicated on the Drawings, provide a padlockable guard.

3. Selector Switches

a. Selector switches shall be non-illuminated, black in color, and have the number of maintained positions as indicated on the Drawings and as required. Handles shall be the extended type that provide a greater surface area for operation.

b. Selector switches shall have the quantity of normally closed and/or normally open contacts as indicated on the Drawings and as required. In addition to the required contacts, one (1) spare normally open and one (1) spare normally closed contact shall be installed at each selector switch. Contacts shall be rated for 5A at 250VAC/DC (minimum), but no less than required for the application.

c. Where indicated in the Drawings or Specifications, provide spring return positions.

d. Selector switches shall be provided with an indexing component that fits into the keyed portion of the cutout for the device and prevents the switch from spinning when operated.

4. Indicating Lights

a. Indicating lights shall be LED type, with the proper voltage rating to suit the application, and push-to-test feature.

b. Indicating light lens colors shall be as required in equipment specifications and/or as indicated on the Drawings. If lens colors are not indicated, the following colors shall be used:

Color	Designation
Red	"Run", "On", “Open”
Green	"Off", “Closed”
Amber	"Alarm", "Fail"
White	“Control Power On”

5. Emergency Stop and Tagline Switches

a. Emergency stop switches shall be non-illuminated, red in color, with a minimum 35mm diameter mushroom head. Once activated, switch shall maintain its position and require a manual pull to release/reset.

b. Tagline switches shall have a plunger that activates upon tension from the associated safety cable. Once activated, switch shall maintain its position and require a manual release/reset.

c. Emergency stop and tagline switches shall have the quantity of normally closed and/or normally open contacts as indicated on the Drawings and as required. In addition to the required contacts, one (1) spare normally open and one (1) spare normally closed contact shall be installed at each switch. Contacts shall be rated for 5A at 250VAC/DC (minimum), but no less than required for the application.

C. Relays and Timers

1. General

a. Relays and timers shall be furnished with an integral pilot light for positive indication of coil energization.

b. Relays and timers shall have tubular pin style terminals with matching 11-pin DIN rail mount socket. Spade or blade style terminals are not acceptable.

c. Relays and timers for all electrical equipment under this Contract shall be of the same type and manufacturer unless otherwise specified herein or indicated on the Drawings.

2. Control and Pilot Relays

a. Relays shall have a clear or translucent housing that allows the contacts to be visually inspected without disassembly.

b. Relays shall have coil voltage as required to suit the application and/or as indicated on the Drawings.

c. Relays shall be provided with contacts rated for 10A (resistive), minimum, at 120/240 VAC and 28 VDC. Relays shall have 3-pole, double-throw (3PDT) contact arrangement.

3. Time Delay Relays

a. Timers delay relays shall utilize electronic timing technology. Mechanical timing devices are not acceptable.

b. Relays shall have coil voltage as required to suit the application and/or as indicated on the Drawings.

c. Relays shall be provided with contacts rated for 10A (resistive), minimum, at 120/240 VAC and 28 VDC. Relays shall have double-pole double-throw (DPDT) contact arrangement.

d. Time delay ranges shall be as indicated on the Drawings and/or as required to suit the application. Timing range shall be adjustable from the front of the relay. On delay and off delay timer configurations shall be provided as indicated on the Drawings and/or as required to suit the application.

4. Elapsed Time Meters

a. Elapsed time meters shall be non-resettable type with no less than a four (4) digit display. Coil voltage shall be as required to suit the application and/or as indicated on the Drawings.

D. Control Terminal Blocks

1. Control terminal blocks shall be assembled on non-current carrying galvanized steel DIN mounting rails securely bolted to the enclosure or subpanel. Terminals shall be tubular screw type with pressure plate that will accommodate wire size range of #22 – #8 AWG.

2. Control terminal blocks shall be single tier with a minimum rating of 600 volts and 20A. Separate terminal strips shall be provided for each type of control used (e.g., 120VAC vs. 24VDC). Quantity of terminals shall be provided as required to suit the application. In addition, there shall be a sufficient quantity of terminals for the termination of all spare conductors.

3. Terminals shall be marked with a permanent, continuous marking strip, with each terminal numbered. One side of each terminal shall be reserved exclusively for incoming field conductors. Common connections and jumpers required for internal wiring shall not be made on the field side of the terminal.

2.02 LOCAL CONTROL STATIONS

A. Local control stations shall be furnished and installed complete with pushbuttons, selector switches, indicating lights, and other devices as indicated on the Drawings.

B. Specific devices installed in local control stations shall be provided in accordance with the requirements specified elsewhere in this Section.

C. In non-hazardous locations, local control stations shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 12, Die Cast Zinc
Indoor Dry Non-process Area	NEMA 12, Die Cast Zinc

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Fiberglass or Thermoplastic Polyester
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

D. In hazardous locations, local control stations shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the classification of the area in which they are to be installed. Area classifications are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Classification	Enclosure Type and Material
Class I, Division 1, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class I, Division 2, Group D	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Class II, Division 1, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 2, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum

E. Non-metallic enclosures, NEMA 7 enclosures, and NEMA 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded integral conduit hubs. Conduit hubs shall be external to the enclosure. Where located outdoors or in indoor wet process areas, NEMA 7 and NEMA 9 enclosures shall also carry a NEMA 4X rating.

F. Local control stations for use in non-hazardous locations shall be UL-508 Listed. Local control stations for use in Class I, Division 1 and Class II, Divisions 1/2 hazardous locations shall be UL-1203 Listed. Local control stations for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations shall be in accordance with ANSI/ISA 12.12.01-2013.

G. Provide a nameplate on each local control station in accordance with Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems. The name and/or number of the equipment associated with each control station shall be engraved on the nameplate, followed by the words “LOCAL CONTROL STATION”.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Local control stations shall be provided in the enclosure type and material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

B. Local control stations shall be mounted, nominally, at 4ft 6in above finished floor or finished grade to the centerline of the enclosure, at the equipment height where appropriate and permitted by the NEC, or as shown otherwise on the Drawings.

C. All control components shall be mounted in a manner that will permit servicing, adjustment, testing, and removal without disconnecting, moving, or removing any other component. Components mounted on the inside of panels shall be mounted on removable plates and not directly to the enclosure. Mounting shall be rigid and stable unless shock mounting is required otherwise by the manufacturer to protect equipment from vibration. Component's mounting shall be oriented in accordance with the component manufacturer's and industries' standard practices.

D. Pilot devices shall be properly bonded to the equipment enclosure door where they are installed. If proper bonding cannot be achieved through the locknuts that affix the device in place, a green colored bonding screw shall be provided on the pilot device. The device shall be bonded to the equipment enclosure with an insulated green bonding conductor.

E. Local control station covers shall be bonded to the local control station enclosure with an insulated green bonding conductor.

F. Wiring to devices at each local control station shall be provided with enough slack to permit the local control station cover to be removed and pulled at least 6 inches away from the enclosure.

G. Terminal strips, relays, timers, and similar devices shall not be installed on the rear of the panel/cabinet doors. Terminal strips, relays, timers, and similar devices shall not be installed on the side walls of panel/cabinet interiors without written permission from the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 22 00
LOW VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation transformers for power and lighting distribution systems as specified herein, as indicated on the Drawings, and as required to complete the electrical installations.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

C. All equipment specified in this Section shall be furnished by the transformer manufacturer who shall be responsible for the suitability and compatibility of all included equipment.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Transformers shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

a. ANSI/IEEE C57.12.01 – Standard for General Requirements for Dry -Type Distribution and Power Transformers.

2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

a. NEMA ST 20 – Dry Type Transformers for General Applications.

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 1561 – Dry-Type General Purpose and Power Transformers.

5. U.S. Department of Energy 2016 Efficiency Standards

072423

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings.

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

3. Spare Parts List.

4. Reports of Certified Shop Field Tests.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein, and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Drawings showing clearly marked dimensions and weight for each transformer.

3. Sample equipment nameplate diagram.

D. The submittal information shall reflect the specific equipment identification number as indicated on the Drawings (e.g., TX-LP-DWB).

E. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items that the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. All spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.

A. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each transformer shall be identified with the equipment item number indicated on the Contract Drawings and the accepted Shop Drawings. A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on each transformer. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. Dry type distribution transformers shall be Energy Star compliant and manufactured by the Square D Company, GE by ABB, Eaton, or Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc.

2.02 DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS

A. Furnish and install single-phase and three-phase general purpose, dry-type transformers, as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. The transformers shall be 60 Hz, self-cooled, quiet-design insulated of the two-winding type.

B. The transformers shall be UL 1561 Listed.

C. The primary windings shall be rated 480 VAC for use on 3-phase systems and connected delta unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings. KVA ratings shall be as shown on the Drawings. Furnish transformers with two 2-1/2% primary taps above, and four 2-1/2% primary taps below rated voltage for transformers 15 KVA and above, and two 2-1/2% primary taps above, and two 2-1/2% primary taps below rated voltage for transformers less than 15 kVA. All taps shall be full capacity rated.

D. The ratings of the secondary windings shall be as indicated on the Drawings.

E. Transformers shall be designed for continuous operation at rated KVA, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, with normal life expectancy as defined in ANSI/IEEE C57.96. This performance shall be obtainable without exceeding 150 degrees Celsius average temperature rise by resistance or 180 degrees Celsius hot spot temperature rise in a 40

degrees Celsius maximum ambient and 30 degrees Celsius average ambient. The maximum coil hot spot temperature shall not exceed 220 degrees Celsius. All insulating materials shall be flame retardant and shall not support combustion as defined in ASTM Standard Test Method D 635. All insulating materials shall be in accordance with NEMA ST 20 Standard for a 220 degrees Celsius UL component recognized insulation system.

F. Transformer coils shall be of the continuous wound aluminum construction and shall be impregnated with non-hygroscopic, thermosetting varnish.

G. All cores are to be constructed of high grade, non-aging, grain-oriented silicon steel with high magnetic permeability and low hysteresis and eddy current losses. Magnetic flux densities are to be kept well below the saturation point. The core laminations shall be tightly clamped and compressed with structural steel angles. The completed core and coil shall then be bolted to the base by means of vibration-absorbing mounts to minimize sound transmission. There shall be no metal-to-metal contact between the core and coil assembly and the enclosure.

H. All transformers shall be equipped with a wiring compartment suitable for conduit entry and large enough to allow convenient wiring. The maximum temperature of the enclosure shall not exceed 90 degrees Celsius. Transformers shall be furnished with lugs of the size and quantity required and suitable for termination of the field wiring.

I. The core of the transformer shall be visibly grounded to the enclosure by means of a flexible grounding conductor sized in accordance with applicable NEMA, IEEE, and ANSI standards.

J. Transformers shall have core and coil assemblies mounted on rubber isolation pads to minimize the sound levels. Transformers shall not exceed the sound levels listed in NEMA ST-20.

K. Transformers shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	**Enclosure Type and Material**
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 3R, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 2, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Non-Process Area	NEMA 2, Painted Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 3R, Painted Steel

L. The enclosure shall be made of heavy gauge steel and shall be degreased, cleaned, primed, and finished with a baked weather-resistant enamel using the manufacturer’s standard painting process. Color shall be ANSI 49 or 61 grey.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The transformers shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

B. Conduit routed to and from the transformer shall be arranged for easy removal of the transformer access covers.

C. Where transformers 50 kVA and smaller are shown to be wall mounted, a transformer **manufacturer supplied wall mounting kit shall be used**. The lowest point of the wall mounting bracket shall be no lower than 7’-0” above the finished floor. Field fabricated mounting hardware is not acceptable unless reviewed and approved in writing by the Engineer.

D. Prior to final completion of the work, all metal surfaces of the equipment shall be cleaned thoroughly, and all scratches and abrasions shall be retouched with the same lacquer as used for shop finishing coats.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Certified Shop Tests

    a. The transformers shall be given routine factory tests in accordance with the requirements of the ANSI and NEMA standards. Temperature rises may be certified from basic design.

    b. As a minimum, the following tests shall be made on all transformers:

        1) Ratio tests on the rated voltage connection and on all tap connections.

        2) Polarity and phase-relation tests on the rated voltage connection.

        3) Applied potential tests.

        4) Induced potential tests.

        5) No-load and excitation current at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection.

2. Field Tests

    a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

b. Insulation between windings shall be tested by 1000 VDC Megohmmeter for one (1) minute. Resistance value shall be no less than 100 Megaohms.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 24 13
LOW VOLTAGE SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation the low voltage switchboards (SWBDs) as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

3. Section 26 09 16 – Electric Controls and Relays

4. Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices

C. The SWBD line-ups shall contain circuit breakers, metering equipment, control devices, and all accessories as specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, and as required to result in a complete and operable power distribution equipment assembly.

D. The Contractor shall obtain the SWBDs from one manufacturer who shall also manufacture the structure and major equipment components, which includes, but is not limited to, circuit breakers, power monitoring equipment, meters, relays, instrument transformers, controls, and other components of the equipment assembly. Sub-contracting of wiring is not acceptable.

E. The SWBDs shall be assembled using NEMA rated components. Components designed and built to International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standards are not recognized. Equipment designed, manufactured, and labeled in compliance with IEC standards is not acceptable.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. The equipment shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

a. ANSI/IEEE C12.1 – Code for Electricity Metering.

072523

b. ANSI/IEEE C39.1 – Requirements for Electrical Analog Indicating Instruments.

c. ANSI/IEEE C57.13 – Instrument Transformers.

2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

a. NEMA AB 1 – Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches.

b. NEMA PB 2 – Deadfront Distribution Switchboards.

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 98 – Enclosed and Dead -Front Switches.

b. UL 489 – Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit Breaker Enclosures.

c. UL 891 – Switchboards.

d. UL 1066 – Low-Voltage AC and DC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts List

4. Proposed Testing Methods

5. Reports of Certified Shop and Field Tests

6. Manufacturer’s Representatives Installation Certification

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submissions will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings for each SWBD assembly shall include but not be limited to:

1. A Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter. If the shop drawings are submitted without this CD&E letter, the submittal will be rejected. The letter shall include all comments, deviations, and exceptions taken to the Drawings and Specifications by the Contractor AND Equipment Manufacturer/Supplier. This letter shall include a copy of this Specification Section. In the left margin beside each and every paragraph/item, a letter "C", "D", or "E" shall be typed or written in. The letter "C" shall be for full compliance with the requirement. The letter "D" shall be for a deviation from the requirement. The letter "E" shall be for taking exception to a requirement. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions is not acceptable. The CD&E letter shall also address deviations and exceptions taken to each Drawing related to this Specification Section.

2. Bill of material list for each SWBD assembly including each SWBD compartment.

3. Equipment specifications and product data sheets identifying all electrical ratings. This information shall include all equipment and devices comprising the SWBD.

4. Complete assembly, layout, anchoring, and installation drawings with clearly marked dimensions. Plan, front, and side view drawings, including overall dimensions of the SWBD assembly. Identify shipping splits and show conduit stub-up area locations on the Drawings.

5. Approximate total shipping weight of each shipping split and/or equipment assembly, and total assembled equipment line-up weight.

6. Complete, custom one-line diagram and complete three-line diagram for the SWBD line-up. The diagrams shall indicate the devices comprising the SWBD assembly including, but not limited to, circuit breakers, control power and instrument transformers, meters, relays, control devices, and other equipment comprising the complete assembly. Clearly indicate electrical ratings of all devices.

7. Complete, custom internal wiring diagram of each SWBD compartment/assembly. Each wiring diagram shall include wire identification and terminal numbers.

8. Internal compartment-to-compartment interconnection wiring diagrams including wiring identification and terminal numbers.

9. Example equipment nameplate data sheet.

10. Nameplate schedule for each compartment.

11. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.

12. Manufacturer's installation instructions.

13. Manufacturer's written warranty statement.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01. The manuals shall include:

1. Instruction books and/or leaflets.

2. Spare parts list.

3. Final as-built construction drawings (updated from those included in the shop drawings) incorporating all changes made in the manufacturing and installation process.

4. All other drawings, product information, and other materials originally included in the shop drawings, updated as necessary to reflect as-built conditions.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. The SWBDs shall be furnished with all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. Spaces in SWBDs shall be furnished with installed spare circuit breakers where indicated on the Drawings.

B. In addition to the spare parts recommended by the manufacturer, the Contractor shall furnish the following minimum spare parts for each SWBD assembly:

Number Required	Description
1 set	Fuses of each size and type provided.

Number Required	Description
1	Control power transformer of each size and type provided.
1	Lamps and lenses for indicating lights, each color.
1	Indicating lamp sockets for each type provided.
2	Pilot devices (e.g., pushbutton, selector switch, etc.) complete with contact blocks and legend plates for each type, color, size, and rating provided.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each SWBD line-up shall be identified with the identification name and/or number indicated on the Drawings (e.g., SWBD-ABB2). A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on the SWBD.

B. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Contractor and Manufacturer shall warrant that the material and workmanship of all components and the operation of the equipment is in accordance with the latest design practices and meets the requirements of this Specification.

B. Warranty shall include, but not be limited to the following:

1. Replace equipment/components found to be faulty, make changes in equipment arrangement, and/or make adjustments necessary to meet the equipment or functional requirements of this Specification.

2. System rewiring and component substitution/rebuild.

3. All accessories and appurtenances provided by the equipment manufacturer.

C. Warranty for each SWBD line-up shall be in effect for a period of 24 months following final acceptance of the SWBD.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by these specifications is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be

designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. It is the intent of these specifications that the SWBDs be manufactured and assembled by a single manufacturer who shall be responsible for matching all components and providing equipment which functions together as a system. Subcontracting of wiring and/or third-party assembly is not acceptable.

C. The SWBDs shall be Pow-R-Line Xpert (PRLX) as manufactured by Eaton, Spectra Series Switchboard from GE by ABB, QED-2 LV Series as manufactured by The Square D Company, or Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc. equivalent.

2.02 SWITCHBOARDS

A. General

1. Each complete SWBD assembly shall bear a UL Label. Where indicated on the Drawings, SWGR shall be suitable for use as service entrance equipment and bear a service entrance label.

2. The equipment assemblies shall be suitable for operation at the available fault current, 65,000 amperes rms symmetrical (minimum), unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings. The equipment assemblies shall be labeled to indicate the maximum available fault current rating, taking into account the structure, bussing, main/tie circuit breaker(s), and feeder/branch circuit devices. The short circuit current rating shall not be less than that specified herein or indicated on the Drawings. The distribution SWBD feeder/branch circuit devices short circuit current rating shall be fully rated, series rated systems are not acceptable.

3. SWBDs shall dead-front type, completely metal enclosed, with self-supporting sections that are **NEMA Type 3R** industrial use enclosures. The sections shall be totally accessible from the front and the sides. Equipment assemblies requiring rear access are not acceptable. The framework shall be of UL gauge steel. Ventilation shall be provided as required. Enclosure interior and exterior finish paint color shall be ANSI 49 or 61 grey, using the manufacturer's standard painting process. The color of the back panels located within the enclosure shall be white.

4. All wire troughs shall have hinged doors.

5. The Contractor shall wire heaters to provide temporary heating during storage.

B. Bus

1. Where 3-wire bus is indicated on the Drawings, the SWBD shall be furnished with 3 phase busses and a ground bus. In addition, if a transformer with a grounded wye secondary is shown on the Drawings to be supplying a 3-wire SWBD, a neutral landing pad shall be furnished within the SWBD for each incoming supply

to provide a place to terminate the grounded conductor. Providing a 4-wire bus (3 phases plus neutral) for a 3-wire system is not acceptable.

2. Where a 4-wire bus is indicated on the Drawings, the SWBD shall be furnished with 3 phase busses, a neutral bus of equal ampacity to the phase bus, and a ground bus.

3. All bus shall be tin-plated copper. The bussing shall be of sufficient cross-sectional area to meet UL 891 for temperature rise. The fully rated main bus shall have a maximum ampacity as indicated on the Drawings and extend the full length of the equipment. The main bus shall be 100 percent rated. The ground bus shall be sized per UL 891 and installed in the entire length of the equipment assemblies. The distribution SWBD bus shall be rated as required by the rating of the mounted feeder/branch devices, including spares or spaces. Full height vertical bus shall be provided to accommodate future circuit breakers. Less than full height vertical bus which will only accommodate the circuit breakers included for this project is unacceptable.

4. Where required by the NEC, a bonding jumper, sized in accordance with the NEC, shall be installed between the SWBD ground bus and the neutral bus or neutral landing pad.

C. Main/Tie Circuit Breaker Sections

1. The main/tie circuit breaker(s) shall be drawout or fixed type as indicated on the Drawings, UL 1066 and/or UL 489 Listed, and molded case construction. Circuit breakers shall be rated for 65,000 A (minimum) RMS symmetrical at 480V unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

2. The main/tie circuit breaker(s) shall be electrically operated where indicated on the Drawings and 100 percent rated where indicated on the Drawings.

3. The main/tie circuit breaker(s) shall be Eaton Magnum SB Series with Digitrip RMS 1150+ trip unit, Square D Company MasterPact NW Series with MICROLOGIC 5.0/6.0 trip unit, or GE by ABB Power Break II Series with EntelliGuard trip unit. Trip unit rating plug sizes shall be as indicated on the Drawings, and trip unit sensor ratings shall match the frame ratings. The trip units shall be furnished complete with all modules required to facilitate all trip unit functions. Trip units shall have adjustable instantaneous, long-time pick-up and delay, short-time pick-up and delay, ground fault pick-up and delay, and trip indicator, minimum (unless trip functions are indicated otherwise on the Drawings).

4. Main circuit breakers shall be configured for top or bottom conduit entry as required. Unless otherwise noted, the Contractor is responsible for coordinating top or bottom conduit entry requirements with the SWBD Manufacturer.

5. Where indicated on the Drawings, main/tie circuit breakers shall be provided with a shunt trip device to trip the breaker from a remote location by means of a trip coil

energized from a separate circuit. A 120 VAC shunt trip shall be capable of operating 55% or more of rated voltage. All other shunt trips shall be capable of operating at 75% or more of rated voltage. Provide a minimum of two (2) auxiliary contacts for remote indication of main/tie circuit breaker position.

6. The SWBD manufacturer shall provide all of the proper cable lugs for all cable connections as required to avoid field modifications. Reference the Drawings for the quantity and size of conductors.

7. For circuit breakers rated 1200A and larger, trip units shall be provided with a reduced energy let-thru mode to reduce arc-flash energy. Provide a lockable selector switch, normally open contacts, and an indicator light for control and indication of reduced energy let-thru mode.

8. Provide key interlocks as indicated on the Drawings. Key interlocks shall prevent more than two of the three circuit breakers in a main-tie-main breakers arrangement from being closed simultaneously.

D. Distribution Sections

1. The distribution SWBD shall include group-mounted and/or individually mounted feeder/branch circuit breakers which are to be totally front accessible and front connectable. The circuit breaker connections to the distribution panel bussing shall be of bolt-on design such that the connections grip the bus bars firmly under high-fault conditions.

2. Feeder/branch circuit breakers shall be UL 489 Listed molded case type with trip and frame ratings as indicated on the Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated, circuit breakers shall be manually operable, with automatic trip-free operation, and shall provide inverse-time-limit overload and instantaneous short-circuit protection.

3. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, feeder/branch circuit breakers shall be rated 480 VAC, 3-pole, and shall have 100-ampere or larger frames. The interrupting rating shall match that of the SWBD short circuit rating at 480V.

4. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, feeder/branch circuit breakers with smaller than 225-ampere frames shall be the thermal-magnetic type. Thermal and magnetic trip elements may be fixed or adjustable.

5. Where indicated on the Drawings, circuit breakers of 225-ampere frames and larger, the circuit breakers shall have interchangeable electronic trip units (ETU) and adjustable trip elements and time delays. Provide electronic trip units with the adjustable functions indicated on the Drawings (e.g., Long, Short, Instantaneous, Ground, etc.).

6. Where indicated on the Drawings, feeder/branch circuit breakers shall be 100% rated.

7. The SWBD manufacturer shall provide all of the proper lugs for all cable connections as required to avoid field modifications. Reference the Drawings for the quantity and size of conductors.

8. For circuit breakers rated 1200A and larger, trip units shall be provided with a reduced energy let-thru mode to reduce arc-flash energy. Provide a lockable selector switch, normally open contacts, and an indicator light for control and indication of reduced energy let-thru mode.

E. Current Transformers (CTs)

1. Ring type current transformers (CTs) shall be dry type, for indoor service, insulated for 600 volts, 10 kV BIL. Design shall have a mechanical and thermal rating to withstand short-circuit current, stresses, and heating effects equal to the rating of the circuit breaker of the application.

2. Current ratio shall be as indicated on the Drawings.

3. CTs shall be rated in accordance with ANSI Standard C37.20.1, with accuracy of the CTs suitable for BO.5 metering accuracy at rated burden. The CTs shall be sized for the necessary burden for the required devices, minimum.

4. Identify the CTs for polarity with standard marking or symbols. The CTs shall be capable of carrying rated primary current continuously without damage.

5. Run secondary wiring from CTs in suitable wiring trough, or conduit, to proper short-circuiting type terminal blocks for connection to relays, instruments, and other devices.

6. Door mounted test blocks for all CTs in the SWBD shall be provided.

F. Potential Transformers (PTs)

1. Potential transformers (PTs) shall be indoor dry type, single-phase, 60 hertz.

2. PTs shall have a 10kV BIL and an accuracy classification determined according to ANSI Standards. The PTs shall be suitable for 0.3 metering accuracy at the burden to be served for the required devices plus 20 percent. Primary and secondary voltages shall be as indicated on the Drawings.

3. Connect secondaries to potential buses as required. Protect PTs with primary and secondary fuses. Protect primary side with current-limiting fuses.

4. Door mounted test switches for all PTs in the SWBD shall be provided. Test switch wiring shall be plainly marked to indicate the respective circuits to each pole of the switch.

G. Control Power Transformers (CPTs)

1. Provide 480 to 120 VAC control power transformers as required. Verify that control power transformers have adequate capacity for the load to be served.

2. Protect control power transformers with both primary and secondary fuses. Protect primary side with current limiting fuses. Provide a manual disconnect ahead of the primary fuses.

3. Control power transformers for space heaters, lighting, receptacles, and other ancillary loads shall be separate from those used for control circuits.

H. Control Wiring and Control Terminal Blocks

1. Wire and factory test SWBD to satisfy the requirements of the operation described or as necessary.

2. All control wiring shall be No. 14 AWG (minimum). Power wiring shall be sized to suit the maximum load rating of unit; No. 12 AWG (minimum). For current transformer (CT) circuits, minimum wire size shall be No. 12 AWG (number 10 AWG or larger wire shall be used to decrease resistance as required). Wiring shall be type MTW rated for 105°C.

3. Route control wires for outgoing or "compartment-to-compartment" interconnecting wiring to master terminal blocks with suitable numbering strips numbered in agreement with the manufacturer's detailed wiring diagrams. Provide a minimum of 10 percent (10%) spare terminal blocks for each circuit breaker and auxiliary compartment.

4. Terminal blocks for control wiring shall be provided in accordance with Section 26 09 16 – Electric Controls and Relays.

5. Number wiring with shrink-type tag devices at both ends consistent with the manufacturer's detailed wiring diagrams. Duplication of wire numbers and terminal block numbers is not acceptable.

I. Power Monitoring, Instruments, and Control Devices

1. Where indicated on the Drawings, provide power monitors with door-mounted graphic display modules. Power monitors shall be Power Xpert Meter (PXM) 4000 Series as manufactured by Eaton, PowerLogic ION7650 as manufactured by Square D Company, or EPM 9000 by General Electric Company (ABB). Power monitor manufacturer shall match the manufacturer of the circuit breakers and other components of the SWBD assembly. All PTs and CTs, power supplies, wiring, and other devices indicated on the Drawings, and as required, shall be provided for a complete monitoring system.

2. Power monitors shall be provided with 1GB of memory, minimum, and a network communications port to communicate with the control system via Ethernet/IP protocol. Provide any necessary hardware gateways to provide this

communication capability. The following parameters shall be communicated as a minimum:

a. Current (all phases).

b. Voltage (all phases).

c. KW, KVAR, KVA.

d. Power Factor.

3. Furnish instruments, meters, and control devices complete with devices and associated circuitry necessary to perform the required functions in accordance with these Specifications.

4. Furnish and install control devices as required and/or shown on the Drawings. The following control devices shall be provided as specified in Section 26 09 16 – Electric Controls and Relays:

a. Pilot devices (e.g., switches, indicating lights, etc.).

b. Relays and timers, if required.

J. Nameplates and Legend Plates

1. Provide engraved plastic nameplates to identify each SWBD, each compartment, and associated door mounted devices and internal components. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

2. Equipment names and/or numbers and device identification text shown on the Drawings shall be used as the basis to engrave the nameplates and legend plates. Where the equipment identification text would exceed the capacity of the SWBD manufacturer’s standard nameplate/legend plate size, the manufacturer shall provide larger nameplates and/or additional nameplates as necessary. Abbreviating equipment names/numbers and device identification text is not acceptable.

3. Provide a master nameplate listing SWBD designation, voltage rating, ampere rating, short circuit rating, manufacturer's name, general order number, and item number.

4. Control components mounted as part of the assembly, such as fuse blocks, control relays, pushbuttons, switches, and similar devices, shall be suitably marked for identification corresponding to appropriate designations on the manufacturer's wiring diagrams.

K. Warning Signs

1. Provide a minimum of two (2) warning signs on the front of the SWBD line-up (and two (2) on the rear, where the rear of the line-up is accessible).

    a. Red laminated plastic engraved with white letters approximately ½-inch high.

    b. Signs shall read "DANGER HIGH VOLTAGE"

L. Source Quality Control

1. Completely assemble, wire, and test SWBDs at the factory. Detailed inspections before and after assembly shall assure correctness of design and workmanship. Provide groups of wires leaving the shipping-assembled equipment with terminal blocks with suitable numbering strips.

2. After assembly, provide the SWBDs with lifting channels having eyebolts for attachment of crane slings to facilitate lifting and handling each shipping-assembly unit. These lifting channels shall be removable after equipment is placed on permanent foundations.

M. Accessories

1. SWBD accessories shall be provided as follows:

    a. For drawout circuit breakers: an auxiliary power module to provide power for testing the trip unit when the breaker is in the DISCONNECTED or REMOVED position.

    b. Test plugs for draw-out relays and meters, if applicable.

    c. A 4” infrared inspection port in the front door of each main/tie circuit breaker section. IR ports shall be located to allow IR observation of the cable terminations within the compartment. IR ports shall meet requirements of IEEE C37.20.2, shall maintain NEMA rating of SWBD enclosure when in use.

N. Surge Protective Devices

1. Surge protective devices (SPD) shall be provided either integral to the SWBD enclosure or as a separate unit external to the SWBD enclosure, as indicated on the Drawings. See Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices for SPD requirements.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The SWBD shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. One (1) copy of these

instructions shall be included with the equipment at time of shipment. The equipment shall be suitably protected until accepted by the Owner.

B. The equipment shall be installed and checked in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. This shall include but not limited to:

1. Checking to ensure that the pad location is level to within .125 inches.

2. Checking to ensure that all bus bars are torqued to the manufacturer's recommendations.

3. Assemble all shipping sections, remove all shipping braces, and connect all shipping split mechanical and electrical connections.

4. Secure assemblies to foundation or floor channels.

5. Inspect and install all circuit breakers in their proper places.

3.02 PAINTING

A. Prior to final completion of the work, all metal surfaces of the equipment shall be cleaned thoroughly, and all scratches and abrasions shall be retouched with the same coating as used for factory finishing coats.

3.03 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Witness Shop Tests

a. Not required.

2. Certified Shop Tests and Reports

a. Submit description of proposed testing methods, procedures, and apparatus.

b. Submit notarized and certified copies of all test reports. As a minimum, the entire SWBD assembly shall go through a quality inspection before shipment. This inspection shall include, but is not limited to, the following:

1) Physical inspection of the structure and the electrical conductors including bussing, general wiring, and units.

2) General electrical tests including power circuit phasing, control circuit wiring, instrument transformers, meters, ground fault system, and device electrical operation.

3) AC dielectric tests of the power circuits and control circuits.

4) Markings/labels, including instructional type, Underwriters Laboratory (UL), and inspector's stamps.

c. The manufacturer shall use integral quality control checks throughout the manufacturing process to maintain the correctness of the SWBD.

3. Field Tests

a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, and Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements.

3.04 SERVICES OF MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

A. The Contractor shall provide the services of a qualified, factory-trained manufacturer's technical representative who shall adequately supervise the installation and testing of all equipment furnished under this Contract. The manufacturer's representative shall certify in writing that the equipment has been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. No further testing or equipment startup may take place until this certification is accepted by the Owner.

B. The manufacturer’s technical representative shall perform startup and functional testing of the SWBD and controls as specified herein.

C. The Contractor shall provide training for Owner personnel. Training shall be conducted by the manufacturer's factory-trained representative who shall instruct Owner personnel in operation and maintenance of all equipment provided under this Section. Training shall be provided for two (2) sessions of four (4) hours each. Training shall not take place until after all SWBD units have been installed and energized. Training shall be at times coordinated with the Owner.

D. The services of the manufacturer's representative shall be provided for a period of not less than as follows:

1. One (1) trip of two (2) working days during the installation of the SWBD.

2. One (1) trip of two (2) working days for the testing and startup of the SWBD.

3. One (1) trip of one (1) working day to perform training as specified herein.

4. One (1) trip of one (1) working day two (2) months before the warranty expiration to identify any issues to be corrected under warranty.

E. Any additional time required to achieve successful installation and operation shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

3.05 FIELD ADJUSTMENTS

A. The circuit breaker trip units shall be set in the field by a qualified representative of the manufacturer, or an outside testing company retained by the Contractor, in accordance with the settings designated in the coordination study. See Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 24 16
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation panelboards as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. Panelboards shall be furnished with circuit breaker ratings, number of breakers, number of poles, and arrangements/locations conforming to the panelboard schedules shown on the Drawings.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 –Identification for Electrical Systems

3. Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. The equipment shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. National Electrical Contractors Association (NECA):

   a. NECA 407 – Standards for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards.

2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

   a. NEMA PB 1 – Panelboards.

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

   a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

   a. UL 50 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-environmental Considerations.

   b. UL 67 – Standard for Panelboards.

020624

c. UL 489 – Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit Breaker Enclosures.

d. UL 943 – Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings.

2. Spare Parts List.

3. Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

4. Reports of Field Tests.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Complete assembly, layout, and installation drawings with clearly marked dimensions for each panelboard.

3. Complete panelboard schedules indicating circuit designations as shown on the Drawings for each panelboard.

4. The submittal information shall reflect the specific equipment identification number as indicated on the Drawings (e.g., LP-1, PP-2, etc.).

1.05 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01. The manuals shall include:

1. Instruction books and/or leaflets.

2. Recommended spare parts list.

3. Final as-built construction drawings included in the shop drawings incorporating all changes made in the manufacturing process and during field installation.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. For each panelboard, the Contractor shall furnish to the Owner all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. All spaces in the panelboards shall be furnished with a spare breaker as indicated in the panelboard schedules shown on the Drawings.

A. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each panelboard shall be identified with the identification name/number indicated on the Drawings. A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on each panelboard. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. It is the intent of these specifications that the panelboards be produced by a single manufacturer who shall be responsible for matching all components and providing equipment which functions together as a system.

C. Power panelboards, those identified with prefix “PP” on the Drawings, shall be the PRL3X Series by Eaton, NF Series by Square D, GE by ABB equivalent, or Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc. equivalent.

D. Lighting and instrument panelboards, those identified with prefix “LP” and “IP” respectively on the Drawings, shall be the PRL1X or PRL2X Series by Eaton, NQ Series by Square D, GE by ABB equivalent, or Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc. equivalent.

2.02 PANELBOARDS

A. General

1. Panelboards shall be dead-front type and shall be of the configuration and rating as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. Panelboards shall be UL 67 Listed and shall be constructed to NEMA PB1 standards.

2. Where specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, or required, panelboards shall be rated for service entrance and bear a service entrance label.

3. Panelboards shall be equipped with a main circuit breaker or main lugs complete with branch circuit breakers, as indicated on the Drawings. The panelboards shall be suitable for flush or surface mounting as indicated on the Drawings.

4. Panelboards shall be fully rated and shall have a minimum short circuit rating of 22,000 amperes symmetrical for units rated 240VAC and below, and 42,000 amperes symmetrical for units rated above 240VAC, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

B. Enclosures

1. Enclosures shall be UL 50 Listed and have a NEMA rating as indicated on the Drawings. An Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. inspection label shall appear on the interior of the cabinet. Enclosures designated as NEMA 4X shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel. Enclosures with all other NEMA ratings shall be constructed of No. 12 U.S.S. code gauge galvanized steel, painted ANSI 49 or 61 gray. The enclosure shall have wiring gutters on the sides and shall be at least 5-3/4 inches deep. Wiring gutters shall be large enough to allow compliance with NEC minimum bending radius requirements for all cables to be terminated, including future cables sized for any spare circuit breakers that are shown on the Drawings.

2. All panelboards shall be provided with a dead front style trim. Additional trim requirements are as follows:

   a. Distribution panelboards with enclosures that are rated other than NEMA 12 shall have hinged covers over each vertical wiring gutter to allow access to all branch mounted device terminations without removing the panel trim.

   b. Power, lighting, and instrumentation panelboards with enclosures that are rated other than NEMA 12 shall be provided with a full height hinge where it is attached to the panelboard box. Trim shall be attached to the panelboard enclosure using concealed trim clamps. Resultant trim assembly shall allow work inside the enclosure without the need to remove the panel trim from the enclosure.

3. Panelboard trims shall include a door over the dead front area to provide access to the circuit breakers and other devices. The access door shall be fastened to the trim with concealed hinges and be equipped with flush-type catches. Access doors exceeding 40 inches in height shall be equipped with a vertical bolt three-point locking mechanism, all other doors shall have a single-point mechanism. All locks shall be keyed alike.

4. The panelboard shall be provided with an information label. The information label shall include the panelboard designation, voltage, phase, number of wires, and bus ratings.

C. Bus Work

1. Where 3-wire bus is indicated on the Drawings, the panelboard shall be furnished with 3 phase busses and a ground bus. In addition, if a transformer with a grounded wye secondary is shown on the Drawings to be supplying a 3-wire panelboard, a neutral landing pad shall be furnished within the panelboard to provide a place to terminate the grounded conductor. Providing a 4-wire bus (3 phases plus neutral) for a 3-wire system is not acceptable.

2. Where a 4-wire bus is indicated on the Drawings, the panelboard shall be furnished with 3 phase busses, a neutral bus of equal ampacity to the phase bus, and a ground bus.

3. Main bus bars shall be of ample size so that a current density of not more than 1000 amperes per square inch of cross section will be attained. This current density shall be based on the application of the full load connected to the panel plus approximately 25% of the full load for spare capacity. The main bus shall be full capacity as based on the preceding for the entire length of the panel to provide full flexibility of circuit arrangement.

4. A separate ground bus shall be provided with lugs for termination of equipment grounding conductors.

5. Branch bus work shall be rated to match the maximum branch circuit breaker which may be installed in the standard space.

6. All bus shall be tin-plated copper and shall extend the entire useable length of the panelboard, including spaces.

7. Where required by the NEC, a bonding jumper, sized in accordance with the NEC, shall be installed between the panelboard ground bus and the neutral bus or neutral landing pad.

D. Circuit Breakers

1. Main and branch circuit breakers shall be bolt-on, UL 489 Listed molded-case type with trip ratings as indicated on the Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated, circuit breakers shall be manually operable, with automatic trip-free operation, and shall provide inverse-time-limit overload and instantaneous short-circuit protection. All circuit breakers shall have quick-make, quick-break, toggle mechanisms for manual as well as automatic operation.

2. Main circuit breakers shall be individually mounted. Branch-mounted main circuit breakers are not acceptable unless specifically indicated on the Drawings.

Coordinate top or bottom mounting of main circuit breaker with incoming conduit location(s).

3. Tandem or half-size circuit breakers are not acceptable.

4. Circuit breaker voltage ratings shall meet or exceed the panelboard voltage indicated on the Drawings. The number of poles and trip ratings shall be as indicated on the Drawings. Where a trip rating is not indicated on the Drawings, provide a 20A circuit breaker.

5. Circuit breakers for panelboards rated 240VAC and below shall have an interrupting rating at 240 VAC that matches the panelboard short circuit rating. Circuit breakers for panelboards rated above 240VAC shall have an interrupting rating at 480 VAC that matches the panelboard short circuit rating.

6. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, circuit breakers with smaller than 225-ampere frames shall be the thermal-magnetic type. Thermal and magnetic trip elements may be fixed or adjustable.

7. Where indicated on the Drawings, and for circuit breakers of 225-ampere frames and larger, circuit breakers shall have interchangeable electronic trip units (ETU) and adjustable trip elements and time delays. Provide electronic trip units with the adjustable functions indicated on the Drawings (e.g., Long, Short, Instantaneous, Ground, etc.).

8. Where indicated on the Drawings, or where required by Code, circuit breakers shall be equipped with integrally mounted ground fault circuit interrupters (i.e., GFI/GFCI) complete with "TEST" push button, and shall be of a type which fit standard panelboard spaces for the breaker continuous current rating required. Ground fault circuit interrupter style circuit breakers shall be UL 943 Listed. Circuit breakers used for lighting circuit switching shall be approved for the purpose and shall be marked "SWD". Where required by Article 440 of the NEC, circuit breakers installed for air conditioning units shall be HACR type.

9. Where indicated on the Drawings, circuit breakers shall be 100% rated.

10. Where indicated on the Drawings, main circuit breakers shall be provided with a shunt trip device to trip the breaker from a remote location by means of a trip coil energized from a separate circuit. A 120 VAC shunt trip shall be capable of operating at 55% or more of rated voltage. All other shunt trips shall be capable of operating at 75% or more of rated voltage.

11. Where indicated on the Drawings, or as required, circuit breakers shall be provided with a padlockable hasp or handle padlock attachment (lock-off device) for padlocking in the “OFF” position as required to meet the NEC requirement for disconnecting means and/or OSHA lock-out/tagout standard. Locking hardware shall remain in place even when the padlock is removed. Where indicated on the Drawings, or as required, branch circuit breakers shall be provided with a similar

attachment (lock-on device) for padlocking in the “ON” position for critical circuits (e.g., fire alarm control panel circuits) which must remain energized.

E. Directories

1. Approved directories with noncombustible plastic cover, and with typewritten designations of each branch circuit, shall be furnished and installed in each panelboard (including both new panelboards and existing panelboards modified under this project). The Contractor shall maintain in each panelboard, during the duration of the Contract, a handwritten directory clearly indicating the circuit breakers in service. This directory shall be updated as work progresses, and final, typewritten directories, as specified above, shall be installed at the end of the project. Designations and circuit locations shall conform to the panelboard schedules on the Drawings, except as otherwise authorized by the Engineer.

2.03 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Surge protective devices (SPD) shall be provided either integral to the panelboard or as a separate unit external to the panelboard enclosure, as indicated on the Drawings. See Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices for SPD requirements.

B. Integral SPDs shall be installed within the panelboard enclosure in a location that allows the required quantity and rating of branch circuit breakers to be installed. Reducing the quantity of branch circuit breakers to less than that required by the panel schedules is not acceptable.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Panelboards shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and as recommended by the equipment manufacturer, and as required by NECA 407.

B. Panelboards shall be set true and plumb in locations as shown on the Drawings. The top of panelboard enclosure shall not exceed six (6) feet above finished floor elevation.

C. Enclosures shall not be fastened to concrete or masonry surfaces with wooden plugs. Appropriate cadmium plated or galvanized steel bolts shall be used with expansion shields or other metallic type concrete insert for mounting on concrete or solid masonry walls. Cadmium plated or galvanized steel toggle bolts shall be used for mounting on concrete block or other hollow masonry walls. Bolt diameter shall be as required considering the size and weight of the completed panelboard and enclosure to provide adequate structural support.

D. The Contractor shall not use factory furnished knockouts with surface mounted back boxes. The Contractor shall punch or drill required openings during installation and shall equip flush mounted back boxes with manufacturer's standard pattern of knockouts.

E. The Contractor shall install cabinets (and other enclosure products) in plumb with the building construction. Flush mounted enclosures shall be installed so that the trim will rest against the surrounding surface material and around the entire perimeter of the enclosure.

F. Bus loads in all panelboards shall be balanced between phases to within a tolerance of one (1) KVA. Convenience receptacles shall be distributed evenly among all phase buses as much as practical.

G. Prior to final completion of the work, all metal surfaces of the equipment shall be cleaned thoroughly, and all scratches and abrasions shall be retouched with the same lacquer as used for shop finishing coats.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Field Tests

a. Prior to termination of any conductors to the circuit breakers, all bus work and circuit breakers shall be tested from phase to phase and phase to ground with a 1000 VDC megohmmeter for 1 minute in accordance with NECA 407. Resistance values shall be recorded and shall not be less than 100 megohms.

b. Prior to terminating any wires to the circuit breakers, the resistance of the connection between the bus work and each circuit breaker shall be tested through the use of a low-resistance ohmmeter. Record the resistance values for each circuit breaker.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 27 26
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all switches, and receptacles as shown on the Drawings.

B. All switches and receptacles shall be furnished and installed in outlet boxes. Reference Section 26 05 33.16 – Boxes for Electrical Systems for outlet box requirements.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements and Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Wiring devices shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

    a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

2. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

    a. UL 20 – General Use Snap Switches.

    b. UL 498 – Standard for Attachment Plugs and Receptacles.

    c. UL 943 – Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters.

    d. UL 1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit shop drawings. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

072423

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

1.05 SPARE PARTS

A. The Contractor shall furnish 10% (minimum of 1) spare of each receptacle, switch, and plug furnished and installed for this project.

B. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.06 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each switch and receptacle shall be identified with the equipment item number, manufacturer's name or trademark, and such other information as the manufacturer may consider necessary, or as specified, for complete identification.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by these Specifications is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. The Contractor shall use the products of a single manufacturer for each type of wiring device.

C. The Contractor shall use the products of a single manufacturer for all device plates. Plate variations are allowed for the following devices:

1. Where the selected plate manufacturer does not manufacture a suitable finish plate.

2. For heavy-duty receptacles rated at more than 30A.

3. Where non-standard plates are required, specified, or shown.

D. The Contractor shall furnish and install all wiring devices and device plates.

E. In non-hazardous areas, provide specification grade devices manufactured by Appleton, Crouse-Hinds, Leviton, Hubbell, Pass & Seymour, or Engineer approved equal.

F. In hazardous areas, provide devices manufactured by Appleton, Cooper Crouse-Hinds, Hubbell-Killark, or Engineer approved equal.

2.02 WIRING DEVICES

A. Wall switches for non-hazardous areas shall be rated for the current required to suit the application, but not less than 20A. Double -pole, three-way, and four-way switches shall be provided where indicated on the Drawings, and as required. Switches shall be rated for 120-277VAC and shall be UL 20 Listed.

B. Convenience receptacles for non-hazardous areas shall be rated for 20A at 125VAC and shall be UL 498 Listed. Receptacles shall be weather -resistant where installed in wet or damp locations.

C. Special purpose receptacles (e.g., welders, lab equipment, etc.) shall be provided with the proper NEMA configuration and ampacity as indicated on the Drawings. The coordinating plug for each special purpose receptacle shall be provided with the equipment which it is serving.

D. Ground fault circuit interrupter receptacles shall be rated for 20A at 125VAC and shall be UL 943 Listed. Receptacles shall be weather -resistant where installed in wet or damp locations.

E. Wall switches for hazardous areas shall be the factory sealed type, UL 1203 Listed for use in the hazardous area. Wall switches shall be rated for 120-277VAC, and shall be rated for the current required to suit the application, but not less than 20A.

F. Receptacles for hazardous areas shall be rated 20A at 120-240VAC. Receptacles shall be UL 1203 listed for use in the hazardous area, utilizing delayed-action construction.

G. Wiring devices shall be approved for use with stranded conductors if stranded conductors are to be used with the device. Reference Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cable for conductor requirements

2.03 DEVICE PLATES

A. Device plates for indoor flush-mounted receptacles and switches shall be made of Type 304 stainless steel, not less than 0.032 of an inch thick, with beveled edges and milled

on the rear so as to lie flat against the wall. Devices plates shall be provided with a gasket.

B. Device plates for outdoor installations, indoor wet process areas, and chemical storage/transfer areas shall be Appleton Type FSK-1VS-A, Crouse-Hinds #DS185, or Engineer approved equal for wall switches. Device plates for receptacles shall be “in-use” style, and shall be fully closable when a plug/cord is inserted. “In-use” weatherproof covers shall be rugged, minimum 3 ¼” depth, die-cast aluminum as manufactured by Thomas & Betts "Red Dot," Intermatic International, Inc., or Engineer approved equal.

C. Device plates for indoor dry process and non-process areas with surface mounted boxes shall be Crouse-Hinds DS32 or Engineer approved equal for switches, and Crouse-Hinds DS23 or Engineer approved equal for receptacles.

D. Device plates shall be labeled with the power source and circuit number.

2.04 PLUGS

A. The Contractor shall furnish suitable plugs with equipment furnished under the respective Specification Section. Plugs shall be black rubber or plastic. For waterproof receptacles, the plugs shall be similar in construction to the receptacles and shall be encased in corrosion resistant yellow housing provided with clamping nuts and stuffing gland cable outlets.

2.05 PROCESS INSTRUMENTS

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install a local disconnect switch at each process instrument (e.g., level transmitter, flow transmitter, analytical instrument, etc.) to disconnect the 120VAC power supply to the instrument. The device shall be a NSSC series manual motor starting switch without overload protection as manufactured by Crouse-Hinds, Appleton equivalent, or Engineer approved equal. For hazardous locations, the device shall be UL 1203 Listed.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Where more than one (1) switch occurs at one (1) location, gang plates shall be used.

B. All device plates shall be set true and plumb and shall fit tightly against the finished wall surfaces and outlet boxes.

C. Wiring device box (outlet box) mounting heights shall be as specified in Section 26 05 33.16 – Boxes for Electrical Systems.

D. When indicated height would place any of the equipment at an unsuitable location such as at a molding or break in wall finish, the Contractor shall bring it to the attention of the Engineer for a decision.

E. Receptacles installed in toilet, locker, and bathrooms, and within 6 feet of a sink, shall be of ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) type. GFCI receptacles shall also be furnished and installed in additional locations where indicated on the Drawings, and as required by the NEC.

F. All receptacles shall have a self-adhesive label installed on the top at the respective device plate that indicates which panel and which circuit number the receptacle is supplied from. Labels shall have a white background and black lettering in 14-point font.

3.02 CIRCUITING

A. Convenience receptacles shall be grouped on circuits separate from the lighting circuits. A maximum of eight (8) convenience receptacles are permitted per 20A, 120V circuit, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 16.13
ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install enclosed circuit breakers of voltage and current ratings as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. This specification is intended to apply to circuit breakers separately-mounted from other equipment in an individual enclosure. This Section does not apply to circuit breakers as part of an equipment assembly such as motor control centers, panelboards, switchboards, etc.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements, Section 26 05 53 – Identification of Electrical Systems, and Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Enclosed circuit breakers shall comply with the following codes and standards:

1. UL 489 – Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit Breaker Enclosures

2. UL 1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

3. NEMA 250 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment

4. National Electrical Code

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings.

2. Spare Parts List.

3. Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Complete assembly, layout, and installation drawings with clearly marked dimensions for each enclosed circuit breaker.

1.05 SPARE PARTS

A. For each enclosed circuit breaker, the Contractor shall furnish to the Owner all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

1.06 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each enclosed circuit breaker shall be identified with the identification name and/or number indicated on the Drawings. A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on the front of each enclosed circuit breaker. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The Equipment shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. Enclosed circuit breakers shall be manufactured by Eaton, the General Electric Company, the Square D Company, or Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc.

2.02 ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Circuit breakers shall be molded case type with trip and frame ratings as indicated on the Drawings. Provide electronic trip unit where indicated on the Drawings, with adjustable functions as indicated on the Drawings.

081621

B. Circuit breakers shall have an interrupting rating of 65,000 amperes symmetrical at 480 VAC, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

C. Enclosed circuit breakers in non-hazardous locations shall be UL 489 Listed. Circuit breakers in hazardous locations shall be UL 1203 Listed.

D. Enclosure Types and Materials

1. In non-hazardous locations, enclosed circuit breakers shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	**Enclosure Type and Material**
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Non-Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Fiberglass
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

2. In hazardous locations, enclosed circuit breakers shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the classification of the area in which they are to be installed. Area classifications are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Classification	**Enclosure Type and Material**
Class I, Division 1, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class I, Division 2, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 1, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 2, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum

3. Non-metallic enclosures, NEMA 7 enclosures, and NEMA 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded integral conduit hubs.

4. Where located outdoors or in indoor wet process areas, NEMA 7 and NEMA 9 enclosures shall also carry a NEMA 4X rating.

E. Enclosed circuit breakers shall be quick-make, quick-break and with an interlocked cover which cannot be opened when the breaker is in the “ON” position and capable of being locked in the “OPEN” position.

F. An Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. inspection label shall appear on the interior of the enclosure.

G. Enclosed circuit breakers shall be suitable for use as service entrance equipment where indicated on the Drawings and so labeled to suit the application.

H. Where indicated on the Drawings, enclosed circuit breakers shall be 100% rated.

I. Surge Protective Devices

1. Surge protective devices (SPD) shall be provided either integral to the circuit breaker enclosure or as a separate unit external to the circuit breaker enclosure, as indicated on the Drawings. See Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices for SPD requirements.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The enclosed circuit breaker shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

B. Enclosed circuit breakers shall be set true and plumb in locations as shown on the Drawings. The top of enclosure shall not exceed six (6) feet above finished floor elevation.

C. Enclosed circuit breakers shall be provided in the enclosure type and material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Witnessed Shop Tests

a. None required

2. Field Tests

a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 28 16.16
ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation separately mounted, individual disconnect switches as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. Disconnect switches for process instruments are not included in the scope of this Section and shall be as specified in Section 26 27 26 – Wiring Devices.

C. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. Disconnect switches shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):

a. NEMA 250 – Enclosures for Electrical Equipment.

b. NEMA KS 1 – Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum).

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 98 – Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches.

b. UL 1203 – Standard for Explosion-proof and Dust-ignition-proof Electrical Equipment for use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations.

072523

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Spare Parts List

3. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Complete layout and installation drawings with clearly marked dimensions for each type/size/rating of disconnect switch.

3. Assembled weight of each unit.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items that the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 SPARE PARTS

A. The equipment shall be furnished with all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

B. One (1) complete set of spare fuses for each ampere rating installed shall be furnished and delivered to the Owner at the time of final inspection.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

081621

1.06 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each equipment item shall be identified with a nameplate. The nameplate shall be engraved indicating the equipment name with which it is associated (e.g., Pump No.1 DSW). Equipment identification shall be in accordance with Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. Switches shall be manufactured by the Square D Company, Eaton, the GE by ABB, Rockwell Automation (Allen-Bradley), or Siemens Energy and Automation, Inc.

2.02 DISCONNECT SWITCHES

A. Disconnect switches shall be heavy-duty type and/or as specified in these Specifications. Switches shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and as required by the NEC. Handles shall be lockable.

B. Disconnect switches for non-hazardous areas shall be UL 98 Listed. Disconnect switches for hazardous areas shall be UL 1203 Listed.

C. Switches shall meet NEMA Standard KS 1 type HD requirements, be, single-throw, be externally operated, and be fused or non-fused as indicated on the Drawings. Switches shall have the number of the poles, voltage, and ampere ratings as shown on the Drawings.

D. Enclosure Types and Materials

1. In non-hazardous locations, disconnect switches shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Non-Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Fiberglass
Indoor Type 2 Chemical Storage/Transfer Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

2. In hazardous locations, disconnect switches shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the classification of the area in which they are to be installed. Area classifications are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Classification	Enclosure Type and Material
Class I, Division 1, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class I, Division 2, Group D	NEMA 7, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 1, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum
Class II, Division 2, Group F	NEMA 9, Die Cast Aluminum

3. Non-metallic enclosures, NEMA 7 enclosures, and NEMA 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded integral conduit hubs.

4. Where located outdoors or in indoor wet process areas, NEMA 7 and NEMA 9 enclosures shall also carry a NEMA 4X rating.

E. Disconnect switches shall be quick-make, quick-break and with an interlocked cover which cannot be opened when switch is in the "ON" position and capable of being locked in the "OPEN" position.

F. A complete set of fuses for all switches shall be furnished and installed as required. Time-current characteristic curves of fuses serving motors or connected in series with circuit breakers shall be coordinated for proper operation. Fuses shall have voltage rating not less than the circuit voltage.

G. Disconnect switches shall be furnished with a factory installed internal barrier kit that helps prevent accidental contact with live parts and provides “finger-safe” protection when the door of the enclosed switch is open.

H. Disconnect switches shall be furnished with a manufacturer-supplied ground lug kit for termination of equipment grounding conductors. Where a grounded (neutral) conductor is shown on the Drawings in the conduits connected to the disconnect switch, a manufacturer-supplied neutral bar shall be furnished for termination of the grounded conductors. Third party ground lug and neutral lug kits not supplied by the disconnect switch manufacturer are not acceptable.

I. Fused disconnect switches shall be furnished for motor operated valve and gate actuators where shown on the Drawings. The Contractor shall coordinate the supply of these fused switches with the specific requirements of the actuator. Fuses with fast fault clearing times may be required for modulating valve actuators.

J. Disconnect switches for all motors connected to variable frequency drives (VFDs) shall be furnished with a factory installed electrical interlock kit that includes one (1) early-break auxiliary contact rated for 5A (minimum) at 120 VAC to be used to open the control circuit before the main switch blades break.

K. Disconnect switches for use on circuits utilizing shielded VFD cable(s), shielded submersible pump cable(s), or similar special cable constructions, shall be furnished with the configuration, accessories, and/or appurtenances necessary for use with such cables as described in Part 3 herein.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Disconnect switches shall be mounted, nominally, at 4ft 6in above finished floor or finished grade to the centerline of the operating handle mechanism (and not to exceed 6ft 7in to the center of the operating handle grip when in its highest position), at the equipment height where appropriate and permitted by the NEC, or where shown otherwise.

B. Disconnect switches shall be provided in the enclosure type and material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

C. Where disconnect switches are shown on the Drawings to be installed on circuits utilizing shielded VFD cable(s), shielded submersible pump cable(s), or similar special cable constructions, the Contractor shall coordinate the configuration and installation of the disconnect switches with the switch manufacturer and respective cable and/or pump/equipment manufacturer(s). These types of cables require special methods to be utilized for termination, grounding, etc., and may also require the addition of isolated (from other ground conductors, enclosure/raceway grounding, etc.) ground/shield termination provisions in the disconnect switch for pass-through of the cable internal shield/ground conductor(s). Properly coordinating and executing the configuration and installation of disconnect switches with these cable types shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Field Tests

a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 29 23

LOW VOLTAGE VARIABLE FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, connect, test and place in satisfactory operating condition all variable frequency drives (VFDs) as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

3. Section 26 43 13 – Surge Protective Devices

4. Section 26 09 16 – Electric Controls and Relays

C. The Contractor is responsible for coordinating with the driven equipment manufacturer and the VFD manufacturer to ensure that the VFD is sized properly to meet all of the requirements herein. This includes, but is not limited to, accounting for motor RPM and variable or constant torque applications. The Contractor is responsible for including any costs related to equipment upsizing, conduit and wire upsizing, etc. that results from selecting equipment with a higher full load amp rating than was specified or used as the basis for design.

D. The variable frequency drives shall be assembled using NEMA rated components. Components designed and built to International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standards are not recognized. Equipment designed, manufactured, and labeled in compliance with IEC standards is not acceptable.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. VFDs shall be designed, manufactured, and/or listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. NEMA 250 – Enclosure for Electrical Equipment

2. IEEE 519 – Recommended Practice and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electric Power Systems

3. NEMA ICS 7 – Adjustable-Speed Drives

041322

4. NEMA ICS 61800-2 – Rating Specifications for Low Voltage Adjustable Frequency AC Power Drive Systems

5. UL 489 – Molded Case Circuit Breakers, Molded Case Switches, and Circuit Breaker Enclosures

6. UL 508A – Standard for Industrial Control Panels

7. UL 508C – Standard for Power Conversion Equipment

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. The following definitions are provided for clarity with regard to the language used in this Specification:

1. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) – The complete custom-engineered VFD as packaged within an overall enclosure, including the VFD unit and all other components within that enclosure as specified herein.

2. VFD Unit – The solid-state power electronic device or devices within the VFD.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in General Conditions and Section 01 30 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts List

4. Reports of Certified Shop and Field Tests

5. Manufacturer’s Field Start-up Report

6. Manufacturer’s Representative’s Installation Certification

1.05 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings **for each VFD** shall include but not be limited to:

1. A Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter. If the shop drawings are submitted without this CD&E letter, the submittal will be rejected. The letter shall include all comments, deviations and exceptions taken to the Drawings and Specifications by the Contractor AND Equipment Manufacturer/Supplier. This letter shall include a copy of this Specification Section. In the left margin beside each and every paragraph/item, a letter "C", "D", or "E" shall be typed or written in. The letter "C" shall be for full compliance with the requirement. The letter "D" shall be for a deviation from the requirement. The letter "E" shall be for taking exception to a requirement. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions is not acceptable. The CD&E letter shall also address deviations, and exceptions taken to each Drawing related to this Specification Section.

2. Complete bill of material and catalog data sheets for all equipment and devices comprising the VFD.

3. Heat loss data for each VFD.

4. Manufacturer’s warranty information.

5. Product data sheets for **all** system components, including but not limited to:

    a. VFD units

    b. Harmonic correction devices and/or equipment, e.g. line reactors, passive filters, and 18-pulse phase-shifting transformers

    c. Output reactors and/or output filters

    d. Pilot lights and pilot devices

    e. Control and timing relays

    f. Enclosure fans

    g. Contactors

    h. Power supplies

    i. Control power transformers

    j. Current transformers

    k. Potential transformers

    l. Circuit breakers and/or motor circuit protectors

m. Fuses

n. Terminal blocks (power, control, and shorting)

o. Surge protective devices

6. Layout drawings of the VFD that include:

a. All cabinet or enclosure dimensions, access details, and weights.

b. Required clearances around the enclosure, e.g. ventilation.

c. Conduit entry areas and/or stub-up locations.

d. Nameplate sizes, colors, and locations.

e. Physical arrangement of door mounted devices located on the variable frequency drive enclosure.

f. Physical arrangement of **all** interior components, including DIN-rail-mounted devices.

General "catalog data sheet" layout drawings which are not specific to the systems specified herein are not acceptable.

7. Custom schematic and interconnection wiring diagrams of all electrical work, including but not limited to, circuit breakers, motor circuit protectors, contactors, instrument transformers, meters, relays, timers, control devices, terminal blocks and identification numbers, wire numbers, and other equipment comprising the complete system.

a. These drawings shall be circuit specific for each motor-load combination (e.g. Blended Sludge Transfer Pumps, WAS Storage Aeration Blower, GBT Feed Pumps, etc.). Specific equipment names consistent with the Drawings shall appear on each respective diagram.

b. Indicate all devices, regardless of their physical location, on the schematic diagrams.

c. Electrical ratings of all equipment and devices shall be clearly indicated on the schematic diagrams.

Standard schematics and wiring diagrams that are not custom created by the manufacturer for the variable frequency drives for this project are not acceptable.

8. Confirmation of spare parts requirements as specified herein.

9. Table listing all motor loads connected to the VFD. Table shall include the full load amps of the APPROVED motors. Final approval of VFD shop drawings cannot be given until all motor loads for each VFD have been reviewed, approved, and shown in this table.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.06 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions, Section 01 30 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

B. Prior to completion and final acceptance of the project, the Contractor shall furnish and install "as-built" wiring diagrams for each VFD. These final drawings shall be included in the O&M manuals and an additional copy that is plastic laminated shall be securely placed inside each VFD.

C. The O&M manual shall include the “as-commissioned” parameters of each VFD in both print and digital formats.

D. If the VFDs require computer software or configuration, the O&M manual shall include copies of all programming guides/manuals.

1.07 SPARE PARTS

A. The VFDs and accessories shall be furnished with all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. In addition to the manufacturer recommended spare parts, the Contractor shall furnish the following spare parts:

1. Two (2) sets of fuses for each size and type of fuse provided.

2. One (1) HMI per type of HMI provided.

3. One (1) set of enclosure air filters for each VFD.

4. For each VFD unit **without** field-replaceable internals, furnish one (1) spare VFD unit per size provided.

5. For each VFD unit **with** field-replaceable internals, furnish one (1) fully functional main control circuit board per VFD unit size provided.

B. The spare parts shall be packed in containers suitable for long term storage, bearing labels clearly designating the contents and the pieces of equipment for which they are intended.

C. Spare parts shall be delivered at the same time as the equipment to which they pertain. The Contractor shall properly store and safeguard such spare parts until completion of the Work, at which time they shall be delivered to the Owner.

D. Spare parts lists included with the shop drawing submittal shall indicate specific sizes, quantities, and part numbers of the items to be furnished. Terms such as "1 lot of packing material" are not acceptable.

E. Parts shall be completely identified with a numerical system to facilitate parts inventory control and stocking. Each part shall be properly identified by a separate number. Those parts which are identical for more than one size, shall have the same parts number.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Contractor shall warrant that the material and workmanship of all components and the operation of the VFDs and auxiliary equipment is in accordance with the latest design practices and meets the requirements of this Specification.

B. Warranty shall include, but not be limited to the following:

1. Replace components found to be faulty and make changes in equipment arrangement or make adjustments necessary to meet the equipment or functional requirements or this Specification.

2. System rewiring and component substitution/rebuild.

3. All accessories and appurtenances provided by the VFD manufacturer.

C. Warranty shall be in effect for a period of 24 months following final acceptance of each VFD.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be equipment of proven performance. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. The Contractor shall obtain the VFDs from one manufacturer who shall also manufacture and assemble the enclosure and major equipment components including, but not limited to the VFD unit and bypass starters. The manufacturer shall have five years minimum of

experience in the manufacture of similar units and shall have a general distribution to the electrical trade. **Subcontracting of wiring and/or third-party assembly is not acceptable.**

C. The VFDs shall be manufactured by Eaton, the Square D Company, Rockwell Automation (Allen-Bradley), ABB, or Toshiba.

D. The Contractor shall be responsible for the successful application and operation of the entire drive and control system serving the motor and driven equipment. This includes the responsibility for obtaining all load, torque, speed and performance requirements from the appropriate sources and integrating these into a VFD that fulfills the requirements of this Specification.

2.02 VFD SYSTEMS

A. Operating Conditions

1. The following operating conditions are applicable for all equipment of this Specification.

a. Humidity: 0-95%.

b. Ambient Temperature: 0 degrees Celsius to plus 40 degrees Celsius.

c. Altitude: up to 3,300 feet

B. Basic Design and Performance

1. Each VFD shall be a complete alternating current electric drive system including all hardware and software necessary to accomplish variable speed operation of a motor and load combination. VFDs shall be provided in accordance with the requirements indicated on the Drawings and as described in these Specifications.

2. Each VFD shall be suitable for operation as part of a 480 VAC, 3-phase, 60 Hertz power distribution system. The complete VFD system shall have a minimum short circuit current rating of 65,000 amperes symmetrical at rated voltage.

3. **The Contractor** is fully responsible for the review of the full Contract Documents to determine specified motor speed, horsepower and full load ampere requirements for each motor-driven load. In addition, the Contractor shall size and select the VFD and components as follows:

a. Each VFD shall provide, continuously, motor load current equal to 100% of the direct on-line motor nameplate full load current.

b. Each VFD shall be selected for Variable Torque (Normal Duty) or Constant Torque (Heavy Duty) based on its respective load type served as shown in

the Load Type tables below and based on the final approved.

Variable Torque (Normal Duty) Load Types	Constant Torque (Heavy Duty) Load Types
Vertical Turbine Pumps	Rotary Lobe Pumps
Horizontal Non-Clog Pumps	Progressive Cavity Pumps
Horizontal Self-Priming Centrifugal Pumps	Horizontal Centrifugal Chopper Pumps
Submersible Non-Clog Pumps	Positive Displacement Blower Packages
Vertical Non-Clog Pumps	Dewatered Sludge Screw Conveyors
Vertical Turbine Mixers	Screw Pumps
Submersible Propeller (Window) Pumps	[etc]
[etc]	-

c. The Load Type tables above are intended to exhaustively cover all possible equipment controlled by VFDs to be provided under Division 26 for this Contract. If a piece of equipment is found that is not explicitly listed in these tables, this discrepancy shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer (in writing) immediately for resolution **prior to submitting the Bid for this Contract.**

4. Each VFD shall be suitable to operate, at times, on a limited power source engine-generator set. The VFD shall be provided with equipment and devices to prevent waveform distortion as specified herein.

5. Each VFD shall be provided with control and sequence logic as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings. Control and sequence logic shall be designed such that the motor-load combination can be operated in the manual mode upon control and sequence logic failure, including all necessary personnel and equipment safety interlocks. Each VFD shall be designed such that specific control and protection functions can be attained through simple programming by either factory engineers or Owner's trained operating personnel. In addition, refer to Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions, for a description of the operation of each VFD.

6. Unless otherwise accepted in writing by the Engineer, VFDs shall be provided with output reactors or filters to prevent elevated voltage levels at the motor terminals that exceed the ratings of the inverter duty rated motor winding insulation.

   a. **The Contractor** is responsible for providing the VFD manufacturer with estimated and field-verified cable lengths between each VFD and its respective motor. The VFD manufacturer shall select and size the output

reactors or filters based on the cable lengths provided by the Contractor. Any change in output filter or reactor selection and/or size from the Bid shall be immediately brought to the attention of the Engineer in writing for resolution.

b. The output filters or reactors shall be as manufactured by TCI, MTE Corporation, Mirus International, or engineer approved equal.

7. Motor control circuits shall be wired in accordance with the requirements specified herein and/or indicated on the Drawings.

C. Components

1. Each VFD shall contain the number of VFD units as shown on the Drawings and required for the applications.

2. Each VFD shall contain and/or be furnished with the harmonic correction equipment as shown on the Drawings and required for the applications. Harmonic correction equipment shall be as specified elsewhere in this Specification.

3. Each VFD shall contain the number of auxiliary contacts, control power transformer(s), pilot devices and indicating lights, control relays, elapsed time meters, and other devices as specified herein, shown on the Drawings and required for the applications. The following components shall meet the requirements of Section 26 09 16 – Electrical Controls and Relays:

a. Pilot devices (switches, indicating lights, etc.)

b. Relays and timers

c. Terminal blocks

4. Power terminal blocks for VFD output to the motor shall be fixed-mounted to a backplane or the enclosure. Mounting the terminal blocks on DIN rails is not acceptable.

5. Electrical bus, including ground bus, shall be tin-plated copper. Power and control wiring shall be copper, color coded and identified in accordance with these Specifications.

6. Each VFD shall be of modular construction allowing normal maintenance and repair to be done with ordinary hand tools. Design and install power electronic component assemblies so that, where practicable, components can be individually removed and replaced.

7. Auxiliaries, including fans, that are required for rated load operation at maximum ambient temperature, shall be 100% redundant. New and unused spare replacement fan(s) or air conditioning unit(s), shipped in original carton, may be

provided in lieu of 100% redundant auxiliaries if accepted in writing by the Engineer.

8. Circuit boards and electrical components shall meet the corrosion protection requirements specified in these Specifications. Varnished or epoxy encapsulated circuit boards and tropicalized contactors suitable for corrosive environments shall be furnished.

9. Circuit Breakers

    a. Each VFD shall be protected by a UL 489 Listed circuit breaker.

    b. Unless otherwise indicated, circuit breakers shall be manually operable and shall provide the protective features shown on the Drawings.

    c. Circuit breakers shall be molded case type, rated 480 VAC, 3 pole and have 100 ampere or larger frames. The interrupting rating shall match that of the VFD short circuit rating at 480V.

    d. Overload protection shall be provided on all poles with trip settings as indicated on the Drawings. Breakers of 225-ampere frames and larger shall have interchangeable solid-state electronic trip units.

    e. Where indicated on the Drawings, shunt trip devices shall be provided to trip a circuit from a remote location by means of a trip coil energized from a separate circuit. A 120V shunt trip shall be capable of operating at 55% or more of rated voltage. All other shunt trips shall be capable of operating at 75% or more of rated voltage.

D. Controls

1. Each VFD shall be provided with automatic and manual controls as shown on the Drawings and as required to comply with all Specifications. Controls and indicators to accomplish operation and maintenance shall be located on the variable frequency drive equipment assembly as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

2. The Elementary Control Schematics shown on the Drawings are **representative of design intent only.** The manufacturer shall be responsible for providing all additional components, controls, and internal wiring necessary to meet the design intent.

3. VFD circuitry shall be designed such that the enclosure cooling fans only run when the VFD unit is producing output power. Designs that allow the enclosure cooling fans to run continuously when the VFD unit is energized but not producing output power are not acceptable. Fans that are used exclusively to provide cooling for the

VFD unit (and not the overall enclosure) are permitted to run continuously if required by the VFD manufacturer's design standards/practices.

E. Enclosures

1. Equipment within the VFD enclosure shall be arranged so that it does not interfere with the entry of conduits and cables into the enclosure.

2. All pilot devices (selector switches, pushbuttons, indicating lights, etc.) and the human machine interface (HMI, specified elsewhere herein) shall be door mounted on the exterior of each VFD enclosure. Manipulation of the pilot devices or HMI, viewing of the information on the HMI, or viewing that status of pilot devices shall not require the VFD enclosure door to be opened.

3. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, VFDs in non-hazardous locations, shall be furnished with the following enclosure type and material of construction, dependent upon the designation of the area in which they are to be installed. Area designations are indicated on the Drawings.

Area Designation	Enclosure Type and Material
Indoor Wet Process Area	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel
Indoor Dry Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
Indoor Dry Non-Process Area	NEMA 12, Painted Steel
All Outdoor Areas	NEMA 4X, Type 304 Stainless Steel

4. VFDs shall not be installed in hazardous locations.

5. NEMA 1 and NEMA 12 VFD enclosures shall be force ventilated with front accessibility and the following:

   a. Enclosures shall be provided with washable enclosure air intake filters that can be replaced while the enclosure door remains closed.

   b. Enclosures shall be designed for bottom or top entry of conduits and cables as required.

   c. Enclosures shall be finished in ANSI-61 gray enamel or in a color to match the complete line-up of equipment as indicated on the Drawings and accepted by the Engineer.

6. NEMA 4X VFD enclosures located within climate controlled spaces shall be dead-front, with front accessibility and do not require an integral air conditioner.

7. NEMA 4X VFD enclosures located outdoors shall be air conditioned, dead-front, with front accessibility and the following:

    a. The air conditioning system shall utilize a heat-exchange method that allows for cooling of the enclosure interior without circulating outside air through the enclosure.

    b. Enclosures shall be furnished with tubular type enclosure space heaters. Space heaters shall be rated at 500V or 250V and operated at 240V or 120V, respectively.

    c. VFDs shall be furnished with an additional control power transformer sized to provide power exclusively for the air conditioning system and enclosure space heater.

    d. VFDs shall be furnished with a tamper-resistant hinged cover with a clear polycarbonate viewing window over the door-mounted pilot devices.

    e. VFDs shall be designed for bottom entry of cables/conduits only.

8. Each VFD shall be designed such that rear access to the enclosure is not required for operations, maintenance, or repair tasks.

9. The Contractor shall reference the Drawings for maximum dimensions of the VFDs. The Engineer shall be notified prior to the initial shop drawing submittal if exceptions to the dimensions indicated on the Drawings are to be requested.

10. Integrating VFDs into a motor control center assembly is not permitted unless specifically shown as integrated on the Drawings.

11. Enclosure doors shall have full length piano type hinges and shall be braced to prevent sag when fully open.

12. Each VFD enclosure shall be supplied with an industrial, heavy-duty flange-mount handle mechanism for the operation of the VFDs disconnecting means as follows:

    a. The mechanism shall be engaged with the disconnect device at all times as an integral part of the unit regardless of the unit door position.

    b. The operator handle shall have an up-down motion with the down position as off. The ON-OFF condition of the disconnecting means shall be permanently marked on the handle operator.

    c. It shall be possible to lock the handle in the "OFF" position with up to three (3) 3/8-inch diameter shackle padlocks and in the "ON" position with one (1) 3/8-inch diameter shackle padlock.

d. The operator handle shall be mechanically interlocked such that the disconnecting means cannot be closed with the enclosure door open, nor can the enclosure door be opened when the disconnecting means is closed. A defeater mechanism shall be provided so that qualified personnel can bypass these interlocks for maintenance and testing purposes. The defeater mechanism shall allow the enclosure door to be opened without interrupting the operation of the VFD.

F. Nameplates and Legend Plates

1. Provide engraved plastic nameplates and legend plates to identify each VFD and associated door mounted devices and internal components. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

2. Equipment names and/or numbers and device identification text shown on the Drawings shall be used as the basis to engrave the nameplates and legend plates. Where the equipment identification text would exceed the capacity of the VFD manufacturer's standard nameplate/legend plate size, the manufacturer shall provide larger nameplates and/or additional nameplates as necessary. Abbreviating equipment names/numbers and device identification text is not acceptable.

3. Control components mounted as part of the assembly, such as fuse blocks, control relays, pushbuttons, switches, and similar devices, shall be suitably marked with identification corresponding to appropriate designations on the manufacturer's wiring diagrams.

2.03 VFD UNITS

A. The VFD unit shall be the Eaton PowerXL DG1 series, Square D Altivar 600 series, Rockwell Automation (Allen-Bradley) PowerFlex 750 series, ABB ACQ 580 series, or Toshiba AS3/W7 series.

B. Basic Design and Performance

1. Each VFD unit shall be of adjustable frequency, adjustable voltage, pulse width modulated (PWM) design. The units shall be microprocessor controlled, fully digitally programmable, and capable of precise and repeatable speed regulation of three phase 480 VAC NEMA Design A or B induction motors. Units for other than NEMA Design A or B induction motors (e.g., NEMA Design C) shall be coordinated with the requirements of that respective load.

2. Each VFD unit shall consist of a semiconductor rectifier system, direct current link, and pulse width modulated inverter. The inverter shall invert the direct current voltage into an alternating current voltage at a frequency which shall be proportional to the desired speed. This alternating current voltage and frequency

shall both vary simultaneously at a constant "Volts-Per-Hertz" ratio to operate the motor at the desired speed.

3. Each VFD unit shall operate the motor and produce full rated nameplate horsepower at the motor output shaft without exceeding motor nameplate full load current and with the motor not exceeding rated total temperature not including the additional temperature increment that constitutes the motor service factor. Motor shall retain its service factor when operated by the variable frequency drive.

4. The overall efficiency of each VFD unit shall be a minimum of 95% when operating the specified motor-load combination at rated voltage, frequency, and current.

5. Each VFD unit shall provide smooth, stepless changes in motor speed and acceleration over the entire operating speed range from minimum to maximum speed. The VFD unit shall be provided with adjustable maximum and minimum frequency limits.

6. Each VFD unit shall maintain a desired output frequency (setpoint) with a steady state accuracy of 0.5% of rated frequency of 60 Hertz for a 24-hour period and a repeatability of 0.1% of rated frequency of 60 Hertz.

7. Each VFD unit shall be capable of operating the specified load continuously at any speed within the operating speed range of 10% to 100% of rated speed. The minimum and maximum continuous operating speeds shall each be adjustable within this speed range. The variable frequency drive shall provide for field adjustment of these setpoints.

8. Each VFD unit shall be capable of controlled linear acceleration and deceleration. Each VFD unit shall be capable of ramping the speed of the motor-load combination from the minimum selected operating speed to the maximum selected operating speed in a minimum of 30 seconds. Each VFD unit shall have two (2) field-adjustable speed setpoints for the variable frequency drive to skip equipment resonant frequencies. The acceleration and deceleration time limits shall be field adjustable to values up to 120 seconds.

9. Voltage or current unbalance between phases of the VFD unit output voltage shall not exceed 3% of the instantaneous values. The VFD unit shall continuously monitor the output voltages and generate an alarm condition when the unbalance exceeds 3%. The system shall detect and generate a separate alarm for loss of any output phase voltage (single phasing). Phase unbalance shall be as defined by NEMA Standard MG-1.

10. Each VFD unit shall operate continuously without interruption of service or damage to equipment during transient input voltage variations of plus or minus 10% for a duration of 15 cycles. VFD unit output voltage regulation shall be plus or minus 2%.

C. Features and Characteristics

1. Each VFD unit shall be furnished with a Human Machine Interface (HMI) to provide controls and indication to accomplish maintenance and operational functions as specified herein and shown on the Drawings. The HMI shall be password protected after startup to prevent unauthorized personnel from making changes. The HMI shall at minimum provide indication of the following:

    a. Input Voltage

    b. Output Voltage

    c. Output Current

    d. Output Frequency

    e. Output Speed from 0-100%

    f. Alarm Read-out

2. Each VFD unit shall provide a 4-20 mADC output signal that is proportional to the drive output frequency for use as speed feedback/speed indication to external equipment.

3. Each VFD unit shall accept a 4-20 mADC speed input command signal to control the output frequency in the automatic and/or manual control modes as specified herein or indicated on the Drawings. The system shall accept the input increase/decrease command with a resolution that permits incremental changes in speed equal to or less than 0.1% of rated speed.

    a. Where shown on the Drawings, VFD units shall also accept a 0-10VDC input from a speed potentiometer for manual speed control. Each VFD unit shall be capable of automatically switching between the input speed command signals as shown on the Drawings.

4. Input Voltage Loss Handling

    a. The VFD unit shall shut down upon a loss of one or more input phases, a 3-phase complete input power loss, or a sustained input undervoltage event. A sustained input undervoltage event is defined as voltage that is less 75% of nominal, for more than 0.5 seconds.

    b. Upon restoration of 3-phase power that is at an acceptable voltage level, the VFD unit shall automatically reset (after an adjustable time delay, 0-2 minutes) and be capable of being restarted and ramping up to speed when remotely commanded through the control system or locally commanded at any local controls. Personnel shall not be required to reset the VFD unit manually after a shutdown caused by any input voltage loss event.

c. Automatic reset of the VFD unit shall be achieved through programming/parameter setpoints, time delay relays, or a combination of both.

5. Each VFD unit shall have a multiple attempt restart feature.

6. Each VFD unit shall have an automatic current limit feature to control motor currents during startup and provide a "soft start" torque profile for the motor-load combination. The VFD unit shall also limit current due to motor winding or motor lead phase-to-phase short circuit or phase-to-ground short circuit. The current limit protection setting shall be field adjustable.

7. Each VFD unit shall be furnished with programmable electronic overload and torque limits.

8. Each VFD unit shall have an automatic trip feature which will remove the drive output from the motor and allow it to decelerate safely. This automatic system shall lock-out the VFD unit and indicate the fault only upon the following conditions:

   a. Output voltage unbalance (trip threshold field set).

   b. Loss of phase on output.

   c. Motor overload.

   d. Motor stator winding fault (phase-to-ground, phase-to-phase).

   e. Unacceptable voltage variation.

   f. High variable frequency drive equipment temperature.

   g. VFD failure as determined by the manufacturer.

   h. Component failure.

   i. Overcurrent.

9. Provide each VFD unit with transmitted and received radio interference protection. In addition, provide protection against starting a rotating motor, both directions (coasting to zero speed and backspin). In the event that a motor automatic restart feature (catch the motor "on-the-fly") is provided in the VFD unit, this feature shall be capable of being disabled.

10. Each VFD unit shall include on-line diagnostics, with an automatic self-check feature that will detect a variable frequency drive failure.

    a. Diagnostics shall operate a visual alarm indicator on the HMI.

b. Diagnostics shall provide an easily readable output that can be used to isolate a failure.

c. Provide an event and diagnostic recorder to printout in narrative English of the specific fault(s) and the sequence in which the faults occurred. An indication of the "First Out" failure is a minimum for fault sequence detection.

d. Provide normally open and/or normally closed dry contacts as indicated on the Drawings for VFD failure conditions .

11. Each VFD unit shall communicate the following parameters to the control system via Ethernet/IP protocol. Provide any necessary hardware gateways to provide this communication capability. The following parameters, at a minimum, shall be communicated:

    a. Motor current (all phases)

    b. Motor voltage (all phases)

    c. Motor KW

12. Where indicated on the Drawings, provide input cards that allow connection of speed encoders to the VFD unit.

13. Each VFD unit shall be provided with input/output (I/O) cards including expansion cards as necessary to facilitate connection of all I/O specified herein and shown on the Drawings.

2.04 HARMONIC CORRECTION

A. Harmonic correction devices for each VFD shall be as specified herein and located as shown on the Drawings.

B. Input Line Reactors

1. 6-pulse VFD units shall be provided with input line reactor and/or integral DC link reactor. Total reactor impedance shall be a minimum of 3% and shall not exceed 5%.

C. Passive Filters

1. Where indicated on the Drawings or where additional harmonic correction is required, 6-pulse VFD units shall be provided with a passive harmonic filter in addition to the integral DC link reactor specified above (if present.)

2. Passive harmonic filters shall be sized to attenuate harmonics resulting from operation of the VFD-driven motor load to no more than 5% THID when operating at full load, and no more than 8% THID when operating at 30% of full load. The

filter shall be equipped with power contactors configured to remove the capacitors from the circuit when the VFD-driven loads are not in operation. The harmonic filters shall be as manufactured by TCI, MTE Corporation, Mirus International, or Engineer approved equal.

3. Passive filters shall be integrated into the VFD unless accepted in writing by the Engineer or shown as separately mounted from the VFD on the Drawings.

D. Active Front End (AFE) VFDs

1. Where indicated on the Drawings, VFDs shall consist of:

a. a VFD unit with an IGBT-based active front end (AFE).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The VFDs shall be installed as shown on the Drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. Install VFDs to allow complete door swing required for component removal.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Witnessed Shop Tests

a. None required.

2. Certified Shop Tests and Reports

a. Submit description of proposed testing methods, procedures, and apparatus.

b. Factory test the complete VFD in accordance with IEEE and NEMA standards.

c. Submit factory bench-test data to indicate that the manufacturer's proposed equipment has been tested in the specified arrangement and found to achieve specified accuracy.

3. Field Tests

a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA acceptance testing

specifications referenced in Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements.

b. The Contractor shall field measure actual harmonic distortion with tests performed by an independent testing agency acceptable to the Owner after satisfactory full-load operation. The Contractor shall provide the harmonic distortion reports with the O&M Manual.

c. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, the harmonic distortion measurements shall be made at each load center where VFDs are present.

d. Harmonic distortion measurements shall be made after VFD installation. One set of measurements shall be made with the VFD loads inactive, and one set of measurements shall be made with the VFD loads running at design capacity.

B. Acceptance of a shop test does not relieve Contractor from requirements to meet field installation tests under specified operating conditions, nor does the inspection relieve the Contractor of responsibilities.

C. Certification on materials and records of shop tests necessary for the inspector to verify that the requirements of the Specifications are met, shall be made available to the inspector.

D. Submit signed and dated certification that all of the factory inspection and testing procedures described herein have been successfully performed by the Contractor prior to shipment.

3.03 SERVICES OF A MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

A. The Contractor shall provide the services of a qualified manufacturer's factory-trained technical representative who shall adequately supervise the installation and startup of all equipment furnished under this Contract. The manufacturer's representative shall certify in writing that the equipment has been installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. No further testing or equipment startup may take place until this certification is accepted by the Owner.

B. The manufacturer's technical representative shall perform all startup and field acceptance testing as specified herein. For VFD units provided with encoder input cards, the VFD shall be commissioned to operate in induction flux vector mode so that the specified turn-down for the associated motor may be achieved.

C. The Contractor shall provide training for the Owner's personnel. Training shall be conducted by the manufacturer's factory-trained representative who shall instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of all equipment provided under this Section. Training shall be provided for two (2) sessions of four (4) hours each. Training

shall not take place until after the VFDs have been installed and tested. Training shall be conducted at times coordinated with the Owner.

D. The services of the manufacturer's representative shall be provided for a period of not less than as follows:

1. One (1) trip of one (1) working day during installation of the motor controllers.

2. One (1) trip of one (1) working day to perform startup and field acceptance testing of the motor controllers.

3. One (1) trip of one (1) working day to perform training as specified herein.

4. One (1) trip of one (1) working day two (2) months before the expiration of the warranty to identify any issues to be corrected under warranty.

E. Any additional time required to achieve successful installation and operation shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

3.04 PAINTING

A. Prior to final completion of the work, all metal surfaces of the equipment shall be cleaned thoroughly, and all scratches and abrasions shall be retouched with the same coating as used for factory finishing coats.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 41 00
FACILITY LIGHTNING PROTECTION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in satisfactory operation a complete lightning protection system as specified herein. This is a performance specification. The Drawings do not show a complete lightning protection system design. The Contractor shall retain the services of a firm specializing in the design, installation, and testing of lightning protection systems.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. The system shall comply with the following codes and standards:

1. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

   a. UL 96 – Lightning Protection Components.

   b. UL 96A – Installation Requirements for Lightning Protection Systems.

   c. UL 467 – Safety Grounding and Bonding Equipment.

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

   a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

   b. NFPA 780 – Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems.

3. Lightning Protection Institute (LPI):

   a. LPI-175 – Standard for the Design – Installation – Inspection of Lightning Protection Systems.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

100724

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts List

4. Test Reports

5. UL Master Label Certification

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings for each lightning protection system shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Complete U.L. approved, full size layout and installation drawings/details with clearly marked dimensions. Drawings shall indicate the exact location of all system components. Drawings shall be signed by a full-time employee of the lightning protection system manufacturer who is in responsible charge of this project and has been engaged in the business for at least ten (10) years.

3. Weights of all major components.

4. Bill of material list for each lightning protection system.

5. Manufacturer's installation instructions.

6. Manufacturer's and installer's warranty information.

7. Evidence of the designer/installers UL listing.

D. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "soft-cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01. The manuals shall include:

1. Instruction books and/or leaflets.

2. Recommended spare parts list.

3. Final as-built construction drawings included in the shop drawings incorporating all changes made during the installation.

4. All other information that was included in the shop drawing submittal.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. The lightning protection system shall be furnished with all spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer. In addition to the manufacturer recommended spare parts, the Contractor shall furnish the following minimum spare parts for each structure provided with a lightning protection system under this Contract:

Number Required	Descriptions
2	Air Terminals
2	Point Tip Protectors

B. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The lightning protection systems covered by this Specification shall be furnished using standard components of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. The systems shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed.

B. System designer/supplier/installer qualifications shall be as follows:

1. System components shall be manufactured by a company specializing in lightning protection equipment with a minimum of 5 years documented experience. Company shall be Listed in the section entitled "Lightning Conductor, Air Terminals and Fittings" of the U.L. "Electrical Construction Materials Directory" for at least 5 years prior to this Contract's bid opening date.

2. The system designer/installer shall be an authorized installer of manufacturer with a minimum of 5 years of documented experience. Designer/Installer shall be Listed in the section entitled "Lightning Protection Installation" of the U.L. "Electrical Construction Materials Directory" for at least 5 years prior to this Contract's bid opening date.

2.02 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEMS

A. General

1. All components and parts of the lightning protection system shall be as specified herein. The materials used shall meet or exceed the material specification requirements of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. All materials shall be marked with a UL label or stamp.

2. The complete lightning protection system new structures shall be inspected and included in the Master Label certification.

B. Conductors

1. Conductors shall be aluminum cable, consisting of a minimum of 24 strands of No. 14 AWG aluminum wire. Copper conductors shall be furnished and installed only where required and when in contact with the earth. Where termination of copper conductors is required to aluminum parts, suitable bi-metallic connectors approved for the purpose shall be furnished and installed.

C. Fittings

1. Fittings shall be the bolted type with stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers. Fittings shall be of cast metal construction specifically designed for the application. Crimp-type fittings are not acceptable. Bi-metallic type fittings shall be furnished where required.

D. Fasteners

1. Fasteners shall be manufactured from non-corrosive material of ample strength and rigidity for the application.

E. Bases

1. Bases shall be bolted style provided with the model to suit the application (i.e., parapet, standing seam, etc.). Bolts, nuts, and washers shall be made of stainless steel. Bases shall be of aluminum or bronze construction, compatible with the material of the surface to which it is attached. Crimp-type bases are not acceptable.

F. Ground Rods

1. Ground rods shall be 3/4-inch by 10-foot 0-inch sectional type copper-clad steel rods; as specified in Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems; quantity as required. Ground rods and all associated hardware shall be UL 467 Listed.

G. Air Terminals

1. Air terminals shall be solid aluminum. Air terminals shall be tapered or blunt tip type to suit the application and furnished with air terminal bases and safety tips (ball or bullet type) for impalement protection.

H. Thru-Roof Hardware

1. Thru-roof penetrations shall have stainless steel nuts, bolts, and washers. Sealing washers and sealing boots shall be provided as required and shall be compatible with the roofing material. Conductor connections to this roof hardware shall be by bolted connection. Crimp type connections are not acceptable.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The lightning protection system shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. One (1) copy of these instructions shall be included with the system components at time of shipment. The system components shall be suitably protected until accepted by the Owner.

B. The equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Additional requirements shall include the following:

1. Course all main down conductors to maintain a downward or horizontal run free of pockets or sags. Maintain an eight-inch (8") minimum radius and make no bend greater than 90 degrees. Follow the most direct route with inductance bonding conductors maintaining the horizontal or downward course of the main conductor. Interconnect roof conductors to provide at least two paths to ground from each terminal and to form closed loops. Follow the most direct path possible with down conductors between roof conductors and ground terminals. All down conductors for new occupiable buildings shall be placed in a concealed manner. Down conductors for existing occupiable structures, tanks, basins, and other non-occupiable structures may be installed exposed.

2. Install ground connections at no less than 60-foot intervals and at each down conductor on perimeter. If the structure has a ground grid, the ground rods from that grid may be used for connection to the down conductors. At each ground connection, determine the extent of the grounding arrangement according to the volume and type of soil encountered and the lowest expected moisture content. Have the Owner's representative observe each ground connection. Bond together all electrical service, telephone service, and lightning protection grounds to all underground metallic piping systems as required by Article 250 of the NEC.

3. The structural steel frame (where provided) may substitute for main down conductors provided the frame is electrically continuous and of adequate cross-section. Where the steel frame is utilized, connect the roof conductor to steel at least as often and at the same column as the ground connections. Make

connections to steel with exothermic welds wherever possible. Provide bonding as required to make the entire metal frame continuous.

4. Bond all sizable metal objects within 6-feet of down, roof, or grounding conductors to the system. Use only approved fittings and conductors.

5. Wherever possible problems with corrosion are encountered, use substitute approved materials and/or provide corrosion protection. Use bimetallic or other specially designed and approved connectors where dissimilar metals are to be joined.

6. Install air terminals within 2-feet of the edge of structure and at intervals not greater than 20-feet along perimeter and peak. Provide additional terminals to limit spacing across roof to 50-feet maximum. Bond any exposed metallic object or surface to the roof conductor.

7. Air terminals shall not be installed for the following:

    a. On handrails or guardrails.

    b. On the stems or stem covers of gates or valves.

8. Handrails and/or guardrails that are at least 3/16 inch thick may be used as lightning strike devices. Bond handrail and guardrail sections as required to achieve the necessary electrical continuity for the installation.

9. All penetrations of conductors through the roof shall be made with thru-roof hardware as specified herein. Flash all thru-roof penetrations to conform to the roof manufacturer and installer's requirements.

10. Every effort shall be made to avoid creating tripping hazards by not routing conductors across walkways on structures including but not limited to tanks, basins, clarifiers, etc. If a conductor must be routed across a walkway, it shall be done in one of the following ways, creating a tripping hazard is not acceptable:

    a. Concrete walkways

        1) Use a flat tinned-copper strip across the walkway that is anchored down at no less than 6-inch intervals along the length of the strip.

        2) Embed a copper conductor in the walkway that is covered in no less than 2 inches of concrete embedment.

        3) Install an aluminum conductor within a PVC Schedule 40 conduit, with the conduit embedded across the walkway covered in no less than 3-1/2 inches of concrete embedment.

    b. Metallic walkways

1) Install the conductor under the metal walkway support structure, with the conductor material being compatible with the metal it will be fastened to. Drilling holes in the metal support structure is not acceptable.

11. Record each ground connection location and mark up a reproducible copy of the approved shop drawings with their location. Also, indicate any substantial field modifications on these drawings. These drawings shall be included in the O&M manual.

12. Log all continuity tests of metal framing, ground grid connections, bonding, and similar connections. Indicate the location of tests or plans. Include test results in the O&M manual.

13. Retain U.L. to inspect the completed installation and issue a Master Label Certification. Furnish a copy of the Certification to the Owner upon receipt.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Certified Shop Tests and Reports

   a. None Required.

2. Field Tests

   a. After installation, the lightning protection system shall be tested for continuity to the ground grid. The tests shall be made by the lightning protection system installer. Test shall be as follows:

      1) Record the resistance between each down conductor and the ground grid to ensure a suitable low-resistance connection. All resistance values shall be 1 ohm or less. Test shall be made after the ground grid has been installed and tested per the requirements of Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 43 13
SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and place in satisfactory operation the surge protective devices (SPD) as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables

2. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. The equipment shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Institute of Electrical & Electronic Engineers (IEEE):

a. C62.41.1 – IEEE Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits.

b. C62.41.2 – IEEE Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low -Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits.

c. C62.45 – IEEE Recommended Practice on Surge Testing for Equipment Connected to Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits.

d. C62.62 – IEEE Standard Test Specifications for Surge -Protective Devices (SPDs) for Use on the Load Side of the Service Equipment in Low Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits.

2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

a. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).

3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):

a. UL 1283, latest edition – Electromagnetic Interference Filters.

070624

b. UL 1449, latest edition – Surge Protective Devices.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts List

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for re-submittal.

C. Drawings submitted by the manufacturer shall be complete and documented to provide the Owner with operations and maintenance capabilities.

D. Shop drawings for each SPD shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product Data Sheets.

2. Detailed drawings showing weights and dimensions.

3. Wiring diagrams showing field connections.

4. Manufacturer’s Warranty Information

E. The shop drawing information shall be complete and organized in such a way that the Engineer can determine if the requirements of these Specifications are being met. Copies of technical bulletins, technical data sheets from "Soft Cover" catalogs, and similar information which is "highlighted" or somehow identifies the specific equipment items the Contractor intends to provide are to provide are acceptable and shall be submitted.

1.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit operation and maintenance manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. All spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner.

B. The Contractor shall furnish one (1) spare field replacement module of each type and rating provided under this Contract if modules are field replaceable.

C. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.07 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each SPD shall be identified by the circuit number and equipment name as indicated on the Drawings. A nameplate shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on each SPD. Nameplates shall be as specified in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. All SPDs, associated hardware, and supporting components shall be warranted to be free from defects in materials and workmanship, under normal use and in accordance with the instructions provided, for a period of ten (10) years after acceptance of the equipment by the Owner.

B. Any component or subassembly contained within the surge protection system that shows evidence of failure or incorrect operation during the warranty period, shall be replaced by the manufacturer at no additional cost to the Owner.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The SPD units shall be UL 1449 Listed. Units that are “manufactured in accordance with” UL 1449 or “component recognized” SPDs are not acceptable and will be rejected.

B. Type II SPD units shall be UL 1283 Listed. Units that are “manufactured in accordance with” UL 1283 or “component recognized” SPDs are not acceptable and will be rejected.

2.02 PRODUCTS

A. Type I surge protective devices (SPD) shall be furnished and installed when shown without upstream overcurrent protection on the Drawings. Type II SPDs shall be provided in all other locations. Type II SPDs shall not require the use of a specific upstream overcurrent device. SPDs shall be provided in the location and quantity as shown on the Drawings.

B. Each SPD shall be rated for the voltage and configuration of the equipment to which it is connected.

C. Each Type II SPD shall have UL 1283 EMI/RFI filtering with minimum attenuation of -50dB at 100kHz.

D. The short circuit current rating of each SPD shall match or exceed the rating of the equipment to which it is connected. The Contractor shall reference the Drawings for short circuit current rating of each piece of equipment.

E. Each SPD system shall provide surge protection in all possible modes. Surge protection shall be as follows:

System Configuration	Modes of Protection	Number of Modes
3-Phase Wye	L-N, L-G, N-G	7
3-Phase Delta	L-L, L-G	6
3-Phase Impedance Grounded	L-L, L-G	6
Single-Phase	L-N, L-G, N-G	3

F. Each SPD shall have a Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV) of at least 115% of the nominal voltage of the equipment to which it is connected.

G. The Nominal Discharge Current (In) of each SPD shall be 20kA. Peak surge current ratings shall not be used as a basis for applying the SPD to the system.

H. The Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) of each SPD shall not exceed the following:

System Voltage	L-N	L-G	L-L	N-G
208Y/120	800V	800V	1200V	800V
480Y/277	1200V	1200V	1800V	1200V
480 DELTA	N/A	1800V	1800V	N/A
240 DELTA	N/A	1200V	1200V	N/A
120/240	800V	800V	1200V	800V

I. The surge current rating for each SPD shall be as indicated on the Drawings. Surge current ratings are indicated on single line diagrams and in panel schedules. Surge current rating indicated is on a per phase basis.

J. SPDs which are indicated to be installed externally mounted from the equipment that they protect shall be provided within a separate enclosure. The enclosure shall match or

exceed the NEMA rating of the enclosure for the equipment that it is serving (e.g., NEMA1, NEMA 12, NEMA 4X, etc.).

K. Each SPD shall be provided with the following accessories:

1. Each individual module shall feature an LED indicating the individual module has all surge protection devices active. If any single component is taken off-line, the LED shall turn off and another LED shall illuminate, providing individual module as well as total system status indication.

2. Surge counter and audible alarm with reset/silence switch.

3. One set of Form C (SPDT) dry contacts rated for at least 5A at 120VAC.

L. SPDs which are indicated to be installed integral to (within) the equipment that they protect shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer as the equipment. SPDs which are indicated to be installed externally/separately mounted from the equipment that they serve shall be manufactured by Eaton, ASCO/Emerson Network Power, Current Technologies, GE by ABB, Siemens, or Square D.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. The SPD units shall be furnished and installed as shown on the Drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. SPDs which are indicated to be integral with the equipment that they protect shall be installed within the enclosure for that equipment.

C. Externally mounted SPDs shall be installed as follows:

1. The SPD units shall be mounted such that the conductor lengths are as short as possible, but no greater than 36 inches. Any installation resulting in a conductor length of greater than 36 inches shall be reviewed with the Engineer as a special type of cable may need to be installed. For equipment such as panelboards, the Contractor shall relocate the circuit breaker that is to be connected to the SPD as needed to achieve the shortest conductor length possible.

2. The Contractor shall use a close nipple to enclose the conductors between the SPD and the equipment served. However, if due to field conditions a 90-degree conduit bend is required to connect the SPD to the equipment that it serves, the bend shall have a minimum radius of 24 inches to eliminate any potential for sharp bends in the conductors.

3. Conductors between the equipment served and the SPD shall be 600V power wire and cable as specified in Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables.

The individual phase conductors shall be gently twisted and all conductors shall be sized as indicated on the Drawings.

D. Prior to energizing, the following shall be performed for each SPD:

1. Verify that the SPD unit voltage and configuration is suitable for the system to which it is connected.

2. Verify that any neutral-to-ground bonding jumpers are installed as required.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Shop Tests

a. Standard factory tests shall be performed on the equipment under this Section. All tests shall be in accordance with the latest version of NEMA, ANSI, and UL standards.

b. All surge protective devices, subassemblies, and components shall be 100% tested and certified by the manufacturer to meet their published performance parameters.

2. Field Tests

a. None required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 50 00
LIGHTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all lighting fixtures, labor, and material, in accordance with the preceding Specifications, the requirements of this Section, and as shown on the Drawings.

B. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

2. Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment shall be Listed by and shall bear the Label of Underwriter's Laboratories, Incorporated (UL).

B. The equipment shall be designed, manufactured, and/or Listed to the following standards as applicable.

1. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)

   a. IEEE C62.41.3 – Guide for Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

2. Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)

3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

   a. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code (NEC).

4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)

   a. UL 924 – Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment

   b. UL 844 – Luminaires for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations

   c. UL 916 – Standard for Energy Management Equipment

   d. UL 1012 – Standard for Safety Power Units Other Than Class 2

020624

e. UL 1598 – Luminaires

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit the following:

1. Shop Drawings

2. Operation and Maintenance Manuals

3. Spare Parts Lists

B. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor for resubmittal without review.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Catalog cuts for each fixture type showing performance and construction details of standard fixtures, and complete working drawings showing all proposed construction details of special or modified standard fixtures.

3. Photometric curves.

4. LED data including efficiency (Efficacy lumens/watt) information.

5. LED Driver information

6. Catalog data including applicable coefficients of utilization tables, isolux chart of illumination on a horizontal plane, beam efficiency, horizontal and vertical beam spread, and beam lumens.

7. Manufacturer’s warranty information.

8. Manufacturer's connection/wiring diagram for each astronomical time switch system used on the project.

9. System (entire fixture assembly) efficiency data.

D. Shop drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and acceptance for all fixtures before fixtures and poles are manufactured. Substitutions will be permitted only if acceptable to the Engineer.

E. Manufacturer's model/series and description in the fixture schedule on the Contract Documents establishes a level of quality, style, finish, etc. The use of a model/series describing the various types of fixtures shall be used as a guide only and does not exclude all the required accessories or hardware that may be required for a complete installation.

1.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall submit Operation and Maintenance Manuals in accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Division 01.

1.06 SPARE PARTS

A. All spare parts as recommended by the equipment manufacturer shall be furnished to the Owner by the Contractor. The following additional spare parts shall be furnished:

1. A minimum of one (1) LED driver for every ten (10) drivers (of the same type) installed.

A. Reference Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements for spare parts delivery and handling requirements.

1.07 LIGHTING CONTROLS

A. The lighting systems shall be controlled as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer's warranty shall in no event be for a period of less than five (5) years from date of delivery of fixtures to the project site and shall include repair labor, travel expense necessary for repairs at the jobsite, shipping costs, expendables used during the course of repair, or complete replacement of the failed lighting unit.

B. Warranty shall be provided for the entire fixture and shall include all parts and accessories.. Submittals received without written warranties as specified shall be rejected in their entirety.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by this Specification is intended to be standard equipment of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Equipment shall be designed, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as shown on the Drawings.

B. The fixture schedule indicates the basis-of-design manufacturer(s) for each fixture type. The Contractor shall submit photometric calculations for each space and/or area where the Contractor wishes to use an equivalent fixture in accordance with Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements. Fixtures will be approved or denied as equivalent on a per-fixture and/or per-space/area basis.

2.02 FIXTURES

A. All lighting fixtures shall be furnished complete with all fittings and hardware necessary for a complete installation. Lighting fixtures shall have all accessories, characteristics, and functionality as specified.

B. Fixture leads shall be as required by NEC. Fixtures shall be grounded by the equipment grounding conductor in the conduit.

C. All glassware shall be high quality, homogeneous in texture, uniform in quality, free from defects, of uniform thickness throughout, and properly annealed. Edges shall be well rounded and free from chips or rough edges.

D. Emergency and exit fixtures shall be UL 924 Listed and have a minimum 90 minutes battery back-up.

E. Fixtures for use in hazardous locations shall be UL 844 Listed.

F. Fixtures specified to be damp or wet locations rated shall be UL 1598 Listed.

G. Fixtures shall be as specified in the Choose an item

Fixture Type	Fixture Wattage	Description	Basis of Design Mfr. and Model
LW1	93W (max)	Wall-mounted LED light fixture, uses borosilicate glass refractor lens, grey die-cast aluminum housing, 12,000 nominal lumens at 4K CCT. IP66 Performance Package: P5 Color Temperature: 40K 4,000CCT Distribution: Type III Medium Voltage: Mvolt 120/277VAC	Holophane WCNG Series, or Engineer approved equal.
LW2	72W (max)	Wall-mounted full cutoff LED light fixture, acrylic lens, IP65 rated housing, 7800 lumens minimum Wet Location Listed. Cord and Plug cordset. Lumen Package: P30 Color Temperature: 4000K Voltage: Mvolt 120/277VAC Optics: Type III Medium Color: Grey Battery Back-up	Holophane HLWPC2 Series, or Engineer approved equal.
EW1	15W	Wall-mounted, emergency fixture, 120 VAC with lithium ion phosphate battery, gray corrosion and impact resistant polycarbonate housing, time delay shutoff, surge and brown-out protection, and low voltage battery cut-off. Battery shall be suitable for 90 minutes (including all remote heads as shown on Drawings). Two 6.6W LED heads. Wet location Listed. Cord and Plug cordset	Holophane Desoto DSL46 or Engineer approved equal
XW1	5W	Wall-mounted, red LED exit sign, 120/277VAC, black die cast aluminum housing, gasketed impact resistant polycarbonate cover, white aluminum stencil with field-selectable chevrons, single/double face as indicated on the drawings, nickel cadmium battery with self-diagnostics, low voltage battery disconnect, brownout and surge protected, wet location Listed. Cord and Plug cordset.	Holophane DeLeon DLTLX Series or Engineer approved equal

2.03 LED DRIVERS

A. Drivers shall have a voltage range of 347-480V or 120-277 (as required) +/- 10% at a frequency 60Hz.

B. All drivers shall be designed to a power factor >90% with a total harmonic distortion THD <20% at full load.

C. Case temperature shall be rated for -40°C through +80°C.

D. Drivers shall have overheat protection, self-limited short circuit protection and overload protected.

E. Drivers shall be furnished with a fused primary.

F. Drivers shall have an output current ripple <30%

G. Drivers shall be manufactured by Philips, Advance, Universal or equal.

H. Drivers shall be UL Listed for damp location, UL1012, ROHS.

I. Drivers shall meet FCC 47 Sub Part 15.

J. All drivers shall be provided with ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C (10kV/5kA) surge protection.

2.04 LEDS

A. Luminaires provided with LED technology shall utilize high brightness LEDs with a group binning code of P and/or Q.

B. Color Temperature: as specified in fixture schedule.

C. Junction point shall be designed and manufactured to allow adequate heat dissipation.

D. LEDs shall be rated for 50,000 hours of life, minimum (based on IESNA L70).

2.05 LIGHTING CONTROLS

A. Astronomical Time Switch System

1. Furnish and install astronomical time switch system(s) to control lighting as indicated on the Drawings. System shall be Model ET90000 as manufactured by Intermatic, or Engineer approved equal.

2. Integral programmable electronic astronomic controller shall be 365/7-day type, capable of permitting 48 ON and 48 OFF events, minimum. Controllers shall include selectable astronomic (dusk/dawn) settings for each day and each circuit to allow load switching at sunset and/or sunrise without a photo control device. Controller shall allow designation of the geographic location of the unit and whether the location participates in daylight savings time. Controllers shall operate on a 120 VAC, 60 Hz control power supply. The electronic controller shall be UL 916 Listed.

3. A minimum of four (4) SPST load switching contacts shall be provided, with the capacity to expand to up to 16 contacts. Reference Drawings to determine where more than the minimum number of load switching contacts may be required. Load

switching contacts shall be rated for 20A (minimum) for LED type lighting loads and be suitable for 120VAC through 277VAC lighting loads. A USB port and Ethernet communication port, both accessible from outside the enclosure, shall be provided. Enclosure shall be NEMA 3R painted steel for all non-hazardous locations. Astronomical time switch systems shall not be installed in hazardous locations or Indoor Type 1 Chemical Storage/Transfer Areas.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Lighting fixtures shall be located symmetrically with building lines as shown on the Drawings. The Contractor shall furnish and install the lighting fixtures to allow "convenient" access for maintenance. The Contractor shall install fixtures at mounting heights indicated on the Drawings or as instructed by the Engineer. In areas with exposed ducts and/or piping, installation of lighting fixtures shall be adapted to field conditions as determined by the Engineer. Where fixtures are shown in locations on the Drawings where maintenance would be difficult, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer for direction.

B. The Contractor shall provide and install all inserts, conduit, structural supports as required, mounting, poles, wiring, and any other items required for a complete system. Contractor shall properly adjust and test, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, the entire lighting system. The Contractor shall provide pigtails and flexible conduit connected to an outlet box where necessary or required resulting in a neat and complete installation.

C. The Contractor shall protect all fixtures at all times from damage, dirt, dust, and the like. Upon completion of work, and after the building area is broom clean, all fixtures shall be made clean and free of dust and all other foreign matter both on visible surfaces, and on surfaces that affect the lighting performance of the fixture including diffusers, lenses, louvers, reflectors, etc.

D. The Contractor shall furnish and install all pendant trapezes and pendant stem hangers with durable swivel or equivalent trapeze hanger permitting normal fixture motion and self-alignment. Fixture pendants shall be Appleton Type UNJ ball type flexible hanger at the fixture and supports from an Appleton JBLX junction box with JBLX hub cover, or equal. Pendant lengths shall be adequate and adjusted to provide uniformity of installation heights above the reference datum. Stems shall be one-piece, with matching canopies and fittings.

E. All wiring/cables associated with lighting equipment shall be installed in conduits or other raceways as specified. Installing wiring/cables exposed is not acceptable, unless specifically shown otherwise on the Drawings.

F. The Contractor shall furnish and install recessed fixtures with a separate junction box concealed and located as to be accessible when fixture is removed.

G. The Contractor shall furnish and install all boxes for lighting fixtures such that the box is not the sole support of the fixture. The boxes shall be offset to allow maintenance such that access to wiring within the box can be attained without having to consider supporting (holding) the fixture.

H. All lighting fixtures, when installed, shall be set true and be free of light leaks, warps, dents, and other irregularities. All hangers, cables, supports, channels, and brackets of all kinds for safely erecting this equipment in place, shall be furnished and erected in place by the Contractor.

I. The Contractor shall support each fixture securely. The Contractor shall not secure fixtures to the work of other trades, unless specified or noted otherwise, and shall not support fixtures from plaster. The Contractor shall furnish and install all members and supports as required to fasten and suspend fixtures from the structure.

J. In all mechanical equipment areas, the Contractor shall install lighting fixtures after all piping and equipment therein has been installed. Exact locations for such fixtures may be determined by the Engineer on the site during the course of the work.

K. All fixtures that require physical adjustment shall be so adjusted in accordance with the directions of the Engineer. The Contractor shall also adjust angular direction of fixtures as directed.

L. All optical control surfaces such as lenses and reflectors shall be safely and securely attached to fixtures and shall be easily and quickly removed and replaced for cleaning without the use of special tools.

M. Lighting contactors shall be provided in the enclosure type and material of construction required for the area in which it is installed. Reference the requirements in Part 2 herein, and the area designations indicated on the Drawings.

N. The Contractor shall commission astronomical time switch systems with input from the Engineer and Owner about on/off scheduling. The commissioning shall also include setup of the device’s geographic location and daylight savings time features.

3.02 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Certified Shop Tests

a. The lighting fixtures shall be given routine factory tests in accordance with the requirement of ANSI, NEMA and Underwriters Laboratories standards.

2. Field Tests

a. Field testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements specified in the General Conditions, Division 01, and NETA Acceptance Testing Specifications, latest edition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 00 01

EARTHWORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment, and materials required to complete all work associated with excavation (including off-site borrow excavation), fill and backfill placement and compaction, constructing embankments, dewatering, construction of drainage layers, installing foundation and backfill aggregate, placing filter and separation fabrics, stockpiling topsoil and any excess suitable material, designing, installing, maintaining and removing excavation support systems, disposing of all excess and unsuitable materials, providing erosion and sedimentation control, encasing utility conduits, site grading, preparation of pavement and structure subgrades, and other related and incidental work as required to complete the work shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

B. All excavations shall be in conformity with the lines, grades, and cross sections shown on the Drawings or established by the Engineer.

C. It is the intent of this Specification that the Contractor conduct the construction activities in such a manner that erosion of disturbed areas and off-site sedimentation be absolutely minimized.

D. Earthwork performed under this Contract shall be done in conformance with these specifications. Items and activities not addressed herein shall be subject to the limitations of the latest editions of the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures. If there is a conflict between this specification and the Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, the more conservative of the two shall take precedent.

E. Erosion and Sediment Control shall be performed in accordance with Section 31 25 00 Erosion and Sedimentation Control of these specifications and with the latest edition of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual (ESCPDM). If there is a conflict between this specification and the ESCPDM, the more conservative of the two shall take precedent.

F. All fill materials (soil, aggregate, topsoil, etc.) imported to the site and onsite materials to be reused as fill, backfill, or embankment shall be subjected to the testing requirements contained in Part 3.0 of this Section. The Contractor shall retain a Materials Testing Consultant who shall perform all testing. The test results shall be used to determine if a material meets the requirements included herein. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary samples for laboratory testing and shall provide assistance and cooperation

12-20-2023

during field tests. The Contractor shall plan their operations to allow adequate time for laboratory tests and to permit taking of field density tests during compaction.

G. Any costs for re-testing required as a result of failure to meet compaction requirements shall be borne solely by the Contractor.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Requirements of related work are included in Divisions 01, 02, 31, and 32 of these Specifications.

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced Specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition.

2. North Carolina Department of Transportation Materials and Test Manual, latest edition.

3. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR 1926 Subpart P

4. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

   a. ASTM C127 – Standard Test Method for Relative Density (Specific Gravity) and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate.

   b. ASTM C136 – Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

   c. ASTM D698 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3))

   d. ASTM D1140 – Standard Test Method for Determining the Amount of Material Finer than 75-µm (No. 200) Sieve in Soils by Washing

   e. ASTM D1556 – Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand Cone Method.

   f. ASTM D1557 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lb/lb^3 (2,700 kN-m/m^3)).

g. ASTM D1883 – Standard Test Method for California Bearing Ratio (CBR) of Laboratory-Compacted Soils.

h. ASTM D2216 – Test for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass.

i. ASTM D2487 – Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System).

j. ASTM D4253 – Standard Test Method for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table.

k. ASTM D4318 – Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

l. ASTM D5268-22 - Standard Specification for Topsoil Used for Landscaping and Construction Purposes

m. ASTM D6913 - Standard Test Methods for Particle-Size Distribution (Gradation) of Soils Using Sieve Analysis

n. ASTM D6938 – Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

1.04 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

A. Information on subsurface conditions is referenced under Division 01, General Requirements.

B. Attention is directed to the possible location of water pipes, sanitary pipes, storm drains, and other utilities located in the area of proposed excavation. In the event excavation activities disrupt service, the Contractor shall perform all repairs at no additional cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall contact NC811.com or 1-800-632-4949 to request underground utility location mark-out at least three (3) working days, not including the day the request is called in, but no more than ten (10) working days prior to the beginning of excavation. The Contractor shall also contact and request utility location mark-out from buried utility owners with utilities on the project site that are not participants of NC811.com.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall submit the following:

1. Evidence the Contractor has a minimum of five (5) years of experience performing excavation and backfill in flood embankments similar in size to the work for this project.

2. Name and location of all material suppliers.

3. Certificate of compliance with the standards specified herein for each source of each material.

4. List of disposal sites for waste and unsuitable materials and all required permits for use of those sites.

5. Plans and cross sections of open cut excavations showing side slopes and limits of the excavation at grade.

6. Procedures for dewatering proposed by the Contractor shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval prior to any earthwork operations.

7. Samples of synthetic filter fabric and reinforced plastic membrane with manufacturer's certificates or catalog cuts stating the mechanical and physical properties. Samples shall be at least one (1) foot wide and four (4) feet long taken across the roll with the warp direction appropriately marked.

8. Construction drawings and structural calculations for any types of excavation support required. Drawings and calculations shall be sealed by a currently registered Professional Engineer in North Carolina.

9. Monitoring plan and pre-construction condition inspection and documentation of all adjacent structures, utilities, and roadways near proposed installation of excavation support systems and near areas where dewatering is required to facilitate construction.

10. A representative sample of the on-site or off-site source of each class of fill material weighing approximately 50 lbs. The sample shall be delivered to a location designated by the Engineer.

11. The Contractor shall be required to submit plans of open cut excavation for review by the Engineer before approval is given to proceed.

12. Submit excavation support installer qualifications with installation history.

13. Drawings and calculations on proposed excavation support systems sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in North Carolina.

14. Contractor shall also submit a monitoring plan developed by the excavation support design engineer.

15. Earthwork contractor qualifications.

16. All required permits and a list of disposal sites for unsuitable materials within thirty (30) consecutive days after Notice to Proceed. If the disposal site is located on private property, the submittal shall also include written permission from the owner of record.

17. Except where borrow is to be obtained from a commercial source, a borrow source development, use, and reclamation plan jointly developed by the Contractor and the property owner prior to engaging in any land disturbing activity on the proposed source (other than material sampling that may be necessary). The Contractor's plan shall address the following

    a. Drainage: The source shall be graded to drain such that no water will collect or stand and a functioning drainage system shall be provided. If drainage is not practical, and the source is to serve as a pond, the minimum average depth below the water table shall be 4 feet or the source graded so as to create wetlands as appropriate, or as agreed to with the property owner

    b. Slopes: The source shall be dressed and shaped in a continuous manner to contours which are comparable to and blend in with the adjacent topography, but in no case will slopes steeper than 3:1 be permitted.

    c. Erosion Control: Except where borrow is to be obtained from a commercial source, the Contractor and the property owner shall jointly submit a Borrow Source Development, Use, and Erosion Control Plan to the appropriate State or Local permitting authority for approval and provide evidence of such to the Engineer for their approval prior to engaging in any land disturbing activity on the proposed source other than material sampling that may be necessary.

1.06 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Soil and rock material shall be excavated, transported, placed, and stored in a manner so as to prevent contamination, segregation and excessive wetting. Materials which have become contaminated or segregated will not be permitted in the performance of the work and shall be removed from the site.

1.07 USE OF EXPLOSIVES

A. The use of explosives is not allowed in the execution of the work.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 FILL MATERIALS

A. The contractor shall be responsible for providing fill materials meeting the gradation requirements included herein.

B. All fill materials shall be free of organic material, environmental contaminants, snow, ice, frozen soil, or other unsuitable material.

C. Bedding material installed above and below the water table shall meet the requirements of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures.

D. Below-grade walls shall be backfilled with Select Fill.

E. When the excavated material from required excavations meets the requirements of Select Fill or Common Fill, but is replaced with off-site borrow material for the Contractor's convenience, the costs associated with such work and material shall be borne by the Contractor.

F. Where excavated material does not meet requirements for Select Fill or Common Fill, the Contractor shall furnish off-site borrow material meeting the specified requirements herein. Determination of whether the borrow material will be paid for as an extra cost will be made based on the contract documents.

G. Contractor may stockpile excavated material to be used as Select Fill, Common Fill, Drainage Fill or Topsoil on site in areas designated in the Contract Documents. Soil materials may be stockpiled as necessary to sort, segregate, test, and transfer the materials. Excess material and materials considered unsuitable for reuse by the Engineer shall be removed from the site for off-site disposal. No stockpiling of excavated material is allowed in a manner or location that would permit erosion and its subsequent sedimentation in wetlands or other natural areas.

2.02 SELECT FILL

A. Select fill shall be used where shown on the Contract Drawings.

B. Select fill shall not include particles or lumps larger than 3 inches.

C. Select fill used as backfill against walls shall not contain any rock larger than 1½ -inches.

D. Select fill shall consist of non-plastic materials classifying as GW, GW-GM, GP, SW, SW-SM, SP-SM, or SP per ASTM D-2487. Select fill shall be free of organic material, environmental contaminants, snow, ice, frozen soil, or other unsuitable material.

E. Open-graded and dense-graded NCDOT aggregates meeting the gradation requirements above may be used as Select Fill.

F. Select Fill to be used as pavement subbase material shall be NCDOT Aggregate Base Course.

G. Select Fill shall be placed in 8-inch-thick lifts, with the exception of NCDOT No. 57 aggregate, which may be placed in 12-inch-thick lifts.

H. Select Fill shall be compacted to not less than 95 percent of the maximum dry density obtainable by ASTM D 698 and does not contain unsuitable material.

I. Select Fill shall be compacted at a moisture content within 20 percent of the optimum moisture content of the fill material in accordance with the ASTM D 698, Standard Proctor.

J. All materials used as Select Fill are subject to approval by the Engineer.

2.03 DRAINAGE FILL

A. Drainage Fill shall be used where shown on the Contract Drawings.

B. Drainage Fill shall consist of NCDOT No. 57 aggregate.

2.04 COMMON FILL

A. Common Fill shall be used where shown on the Contract Drawings.

B. Common Fill shall consist of non-organic on-site soils classifying as CL, ML, SC, SM, SP, SW, GC, GM, GP, or GW according to ASTM D 2487.

C. Common Fill shall be placed in 8-inch-thick loose lifts.

D. Common Fill shall be compacted to not less than 95 percent of the maximum dry density obtainable by ASTM D 698 and does not contain unsuitable material.

E. Common Fill shall be compacted at a moisture content within 20 percent of the optimum moisture content of the fill material in accordance with the ASTM D 698, Standard Proctor.

F. All material used as common fill is subject to approval by the Engineer. If there is insufficient suitable material onsite, import whatever additional material is required which conforms to the specifications, at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. Select Fill may be used as Common Fill, subject to approval by the Engineer. Select fill may be used as Common Fill at no change in the Contract Price.

2.05 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil shall be friable and loamy (loam, sandy loam, silt loam, sandy clay loam, clay loam). It shall be free of debris, trash, stumps, rocks, roots, and noxious weeds, and shall give evidence of being able to support healthy vegetation. It shall contain no substance potentially toxic to plant growth.

B. All topsoil shall be tested before use on site by a recognized laboratory for the following criteria according to local standards (or at a minimum according to ASTM D5268-22, Table 1): Organic matter content shall not be less than 3% by weight. pH range shall be from 5.5 -7.5. If pH is less than 5.5, lime shall be added in accordance with test results or in accordance with the recommendations of the vegetative establishment practice being used. Soluble salts shall not exceed 2.5 mmhos/cm ppm. If additional topsoil is needed, it must meet the standards stated above.

C. Soils falling within the ranges of ASTM D5268-22, Table 1 shall form a suitable topsoil. Soils being used as a topsoil with organic content matter contents between 10% and 90% may need to be amended prior to use. If soils proposed for use as topsoil do not meet the criteria of Table 1, an engineered soil amendment may be added to meet the requirements. When using an engineered soil amendment, the organic matter values need to be greater than 75%.

2.06 GEOTEXTILES

A. The Contractor shall provide geotextiles as indicated on the Contract Drawings and specified herein. The materials and placement shall be as indicated under Section 31 05 19 - Geotextiles.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 STRIPPING OF TOPSOIL

A. In all areas to be excavated, filled, or paved, the topsoil shall be stripped to its full depth.

B. Topsoil may be stockpiled for subsequent reuse on site at locations shown on the Contract Drawings or designated by the Owner or Engineer. Topsoil shall be kept separated from other excavated materials and shall be piled free of roots and other undesirable materials. Topsoil shall not be stored in areas where it will interfere with surface drainage or with the conservation of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain. No stockpile shall be placed within 50-feet of a pond, stream, wetland, or stormwater inlet.

3.02 EXCAVATION

A. **All material excavated, regardless of its nature or composition, shall be classified as UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION**. Excavation shall include the removal of all soil, rock, weathered rock, rocks of all types, boulders, conduits, pipe, all other obstacles encountered, and all other obstacles shown to be removed within the limits of excavation shown on the Contract Drawings or specified herein. The cost of excavation shall be included in the Lump Sum Bid Price and no additional payment will be made for the removal of obstacles encountered within the excavation limits shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. Excavation by blasting is strictly prohibited on this project.

C. All suitable material removed in the excavation shall be used as far as practicable in the formation of embankments, subgrades, and shoulders, and at such other places as may be indicated on the Drawings or indicated by the Engineer. No excavation shall be wasted except as may be permitted by the Engineer. Refer to the drawings for specific location and placement of suitable excavated materials in the formation of embankments, backfill, and structural and roadway foundations. THE ENGINEER AND/OR MATERIALS TESTING CONSULTANT WILL DESIGNATE MATERIALS THAT ARE UNSUITABLE. The Contractor shall furnish off-site disposal areas for the unsuitable material. Where suitable materials containing excessive moisture are encountered above grade in cuts, the Contractor shall construct above grade ditch drains prior to the excavation of the cut material when in the opinion of the Engineer and/or materials testing consultant such measures are necessary to provide proper construction.

D. All excavations shall be made in the dry and in such a manner and to such widths as will give ample room for properly constructing and inspecting the structures and/or piping they are to contain and for such excavation support, pumping and drainage as may be required. Excavation shall be made in accordance with the grades and details shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

E. Excavation slopes shall be flat enough to avoid slides that will cause disturbance of the subgrade or damage of adjacent areas. Excavation requirements and slopes shall be as indicated in the Drawings.

F. The Contractor shall intercept and collect surface runoff both at the top and bottom of cut slopes. The intersection of slopes with natural ground surfaces, including the beginning and ending of cut slopes, shall be uniformly rounded as shown on the Drawings or as may be indicated by the Engineer. Concurrent with the excavation of cuts the Contractor shall construct intercepting berm ditches or earth berms along and on top of the cut slopes at locations shown on the Drawings or designated by the Engineer. All slopes shall be finished to reasonably uniform surfaces acceptable for seeding and mulching operations. No rock or boulders shall be left in place which protrude more than 1 foot

within the typical section cut slope lines, and all rock cuts shall be cleaned of loose and overhanging material. All protruding roots and other objectionable vegetation shall be removed from slopes.

G. It is the intent of these Specifications that all structures shall bear on an aggregate base, crushed stone or screened gravel bedding placed to the thickness shown on the Drawings, specified in these Specifications, or not less than 6-inches. Bedding for process piping shall be as specified in Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements, or as shown on the Drawings.

H. The bottom of all excavations for structures and pipes shall be examined by the Engineer and/or materials testing consultant for bearing value and the presence of unsuitable material. If, in the opinion of the Engineer and/or materials testing consultant, additional excavation is required due to the low bearing value of the subgrade material, or if the in place soils are soft, yielding, pumping or wet, the Contractor shall remove such material to the required width and depth and replace it with thoroughly compacted select fill, and/or crushed stone or screened gravel as indicated by the Engineer. Payment for such additional work ordered by the Engineer shall be made as an extra by a Change Order in accordance with the General Conditions and Division 01, General Requirements. No payment will be made for subgrade disturbance caused by inadequate dewatering or improper construction methods.

I. All cuts shall be brought to the grade and cross section shown on the Drawings, or established by the Engineer, prior to final inspection and acceptance by the Engineer.

J. Slides and over-breaks which occur due to negligence, carelessness or improper construction techniques on the part of the Contractor shall be removed and disposed of by the Contractor as indicated by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner. If grading operations are suspended for any reason whatsoever, partially completed cut and fill slopes shall be brought to the required slope and the work of seeding and mulching or other required erosion and sedimentation control operations shall be performed.

K. Where the excavation exposes sludge, sludge contaminated soil or other odorous materials, the Contractor shall cover such material at the end of each workday with a minimum of 6 inches and a maximum of 24-inches of Common fill. The work shall be an odor abatement measure and the material shall be placed to the depth deemed satisfactory by the Engineer for this purpose.

3.03 EXCAVATION SUPPORT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, place, and maintain such excavation support which may be required to provide safe working conditions and support sides of excavation or to protect structures, pipes, and utilities from possible damage. The Contractor shall be exclusively responsible for maintaining safe working conditions and structure integrity without

overstressing or damaging existing structures, pipes, and utilities resulting from the Contractor temporarily placing, moving, or removing loads on or adjacent to existing structures, pipes, and utilities. If the Engineer is of the opinion that at any point sufficient or proper supports have not been provided, the Engineer may order additional supports put in at the expense of the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for the adequacy of all supports used and for all damage resulting from failure of support system or from placing, maintaining and removing the support system.

B. The selection of and design of any proposed excavation support systems is exclusively the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor shall submit drawings and calculations to the Engineer on the proposed systems sealed by a Professional Engineer currently registered in North Carolina.

C. The excavation support system shall be installed by a specialized contactor with a minimum of five (5) years' experience installing the type of excavation support system proposed.

D. The Contractor shall exercise caution in the installation and removal of supports to ensure no excessive or unusual loadings or vibrations are transmitted to any new or existing structure. The Contractor shall promptly repair at their expense any and all damage that can be reasonably attributed to installation or removal of excavation support system.

E. Contractor shall monitor movement and vibration in the excavation support systems as well as movement and vibration at adjacent structures, utilities and roadways near excavation supports. Contractor shall submit a monitoring plan developed by the excavation support design engineer. All pre-construction condition assessment and documentation of adjacent structures on-site and off-site shall be performed by the Contractor. If any sign of distress such as cracking or movement occurs in any adjacent structure, utility or roadway during installation of supports, subsequent excavation, service period of supports, subsequent backfill and construction, or removal of supports, Engineer shall be notified immediately. The Contractor shall be exclusively responsible for repair of any damage to any roadway, structure, utility, pipes, etc. both on-site and off-site, as a result of their operations.

F. All excavation supports shall be removed upon completion of the work except as indicated herein. The Engineer may permit supports to be left in place at the request and expense of the Contractor. The Engineer may order certain supports left permanently in place in addition to that required by the Contract. The cost of the materials so ordered left in place, less a reasonable amount for the eliminated expense of the removal work omitted, will be paid as an extra by a Change Order in accordance with the General Conditions and Division 01, General Requirements. Vibrations of new and existing structures shall be considered when the Contractor decides whether to remove excavation supports or leave them in place. Any excavation supports left in place shall

be cut off at least two (2) feet below the finished ground surface or as directed by the Engineer.

3.04 PROTECTION OF SUBGRADE

A. To minimize the disturbance of bearing materials and provide a firm foundation, the Contractor shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Use of heavy rubber tired construction equipment shall not be permitted on the final subgrade unless it can be demonstrated that drawdown of groundwater throughout the entire area of the structure is at least 3 feet below the bottom of the excavation (subgrade). Even then, the use of such equipment shall be prohibited should subgrade disturbance result from concentrated wheel loads.

2. Subgrade soils disturbed through the operations of the Contractor shall be excavated and replaced with compacted select fill or crushed stone at the Contractor's expense as indicated by the Engineer.

3. The Contractor shall provide positive protection against penetration of frost into materials below the bearing level during work in winter months. This protection can consist of a temporary blanket of straw or salt hay covered with a plastic membrane or other acceptable means.

3.05 PROOF-ROLLING

A. The subgrade of all structures and all areas that will support pavements or select fill shall be proof-rolled. After stripping of topsoil, excavation to subgrade and prior to placement of fills, the exposed subgrade shall be carefully inspected by probing and testing as needed. Any topsoil or other organic material still in place, frozen, wet, soft, or loose soil, and other undesirable materials shall be removed. The exposed subgrade shall be proof-rolled with a heavily loaded tandem-wheeled dump truck to check for pockets of soft material hidden beneath a thin crust of better soil. Any unsuitable materials thus exposed shall be removed and replaced with an approved compacted material, as directed by the Materials Consultant.

3.06 DEWATERING

A. The Contractor shall do all dewatering as required for the completion of the work. Procedures for dewatering proposed by the Contractor shall be submitted to the Engineer for review prior to any earthwork operations.

B. All water removed by dewatering operations shall be disposed of in accordance with the North Carolina Sedimentation Pollution Control Act.

C. The dewatering system shall be of sufficient size and capacity as required to control groundwater or seepage to permit proper excavation operations, embankment

construction and reconstruction, subgrade preparation, and to allow concrete to be placed in a dry condition. The system shall include a sump system or other equipment, appurtenances and other related earthwork necessary for the required control of water. The Contractor shall drawdown groundwater to at least 2 feet below the bottom of excavations (subgrade), over the entire tempo, at all times in order to maintain a dry and undisturbed condition.

D. The Contractor shall control, by acceptable means, all water regardless of source. Water shall be controlled, and its disposal provided for at each berm, structure, etc. The entire periphery of the excavation areas shall be ditched and diked to prevent water from entering the excavation. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for disposal of the water and shall provide all necessary means at no additional expense to the Owner. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for proper design, installation, proper operation, maintenance, and any failure of any component of the system.

E. The Contractor shall be responsible for and shall repair without cost to the Owner, any damage to work in place and the excavation, including damage to the bottom due to heave and including removal of material and pumping out of the excavated area. The Contractor shall be responsible for damages to any other area or structure caused by their failure to maintain and operate the dewatering system proposed and installed by the Contractor.

F. The Contractor shall be responsible for and shall repair, without cost to the Owner, any damage to work in place and nearby structures, roadways, and utilities which can be reasonably attributed to dewatering operations. This includes settlement of structures, roadways, and utilities due to dewatering of soils supporting the structures, roadways, and utilities.

G. The Contractor shall take all the steps that they consider necessary to familiarize himself with the surface and subsurface site conditions, and shall obtain the data that is required to analyze the water and soil environment at the site and to assure that the materials used for the dewatering systems will not erode, deteriorate, or clog to the extent that the dewatering systems will not perform properly during the period of dewatering. Copies of logs of borings and laboratory test results are available to the Contractor. This data is furnished for information only, and it is expressly understood that the Owner and Engineer will not be held responsible for any interpretations or conclusions drawn therefrom by the Contractor.

H. Prior to the execution of the work, the Contractor, Owner and Engineer shall jointly survey the condition of adjoining structures. Photographs and records shall be made of any prior settlement or cracking of structures, pavements, and the like, that may become the subject of possible damage claims.

3.07 FILL OR EMBANKMENTS

A. Contractor shall perform the construction of fill or embankments in such a manner that cut and fill slopes will be completed to final slopes and grade in a continuous operation. The operation of removing excavation material from any cut and the placement of embankment in any fill shall be a continuous operation to completion unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer.

B. Subgrades upon which fill or embankments are to be constructed shall be stripped of topsoil, organic material, rubbish and other extraneous materials. After stripping and prior to placing fill or embankment material, the Contractor shall compact the top 12inches of in place soil as specified under Paragraph 3.09, COMPACTION.

C. Any soft or unsuitable materials revealed before or during placement fill or embankment placement shall be removed as indicated by the Engineer and/or materials testing consultant and replaced with select fill and compacted as required.

D. Fill subgrades on which fill or embankment is to be placed, shall be scarified or stepped in a manner which will permit bonding of the embankment with the existing surface. The fill or embankment soils shall be as specified under Part 2 - Products, and shall be deposited and spread in successive, uniform, approximately horizontal layers. The loose thickness of each lift shall not exceed the thickness for each fill type noted in Paragraph 3.09, COMPACTION.

E. Hauling shall be distributed over the full width of the embankment, and in no case will deep ruts be allowed to form during the construction of the embankment. Fill or embankment subgrades shall be properly drained at all times and kept free of flowing or ponding water, snow, ice and frozen soils. Saturated soils, snow, ice, or frozen soils shall be removed as recommended by the Engineer.

F. Each layer of the embankment shall be thoroughly compacted to the density specified under Paragraph 3.09, COMPACTION.

G. The embankment or fill material in the layers shall be of the proper moisture content before rolling to obtain the prescribed compaction. Moisture conditions and manipulation of the fill or embankment material, when necessary, shall be performed to maintain a uniform moisture content throughout the layer. Should the material be too wet or too dry to permit proper compaction, earthwork operations shall be delayed until the material is adequately moisture conditioned. Samples of all fill or embankment materials for testing, both before and after placement and compaction, will be taken at frequent intervals. From these tests, corrections, adjustments, and modifications of methods, materials, and moisture content will be made to construct the embankment.

H. Where fill or embankments materials are to be placed and compacted on sloped subgrades steeper than 4:1 shall be benched. Benches shall be at least 6-feet wide.

I. When rock and other embankment material are excavated at approximately the same time, the rock shall be incorporated into the outer portions of the embankments and the other material which meets the requirements for select fill shall be incorporated into the formation of the embankments. Stones or fragmentary rock larger than 4inches in their greatest dimension will not be allowed within the top 6inches of the final grade. Stones, fragmentary rock, or boulders larger than 12inches in their greatest dimension will not be allowed in any portions of embankments and shall be disposed of by the Contractor as indicated by the Engineer. When rock fragments or stone are used in embankments, the material shall be brought up in layers as specified or directed and every effort shall be exerted to fill the voids with finer material to form a dense, compact mass which meets the densities specified for embankment compaction.

3.08 BACKFILLING

A. All structures and pipes shall be backfilled with the type of materials shown on the Drawings and specified herein. Fill placed as structure or utility backfill shall be deposited in successive, uniform, approximately horizontal lifts. The thickness of each lift shall not exceed the requirements of Paragraph 3.09, COMPACTION.

B. Each lift of fill placed backfill shall be thoroughly compacted to the density specified for each type of fill included in Paragraph 3.09, COMPACTION.

C. Where excavation support is used, the Contractor shall take all reasonable measures to prevent loss of support beneath and adjacent to pipes and existing structures when supports are removed. If significant volumes of soil cannot be prevented from clinging to the extracted supports, the voids shall be continuously backfilled as rapidly as possible. The Contractor shall thereafter limit the depth below subgrade that supports will be installed in similar soil conditions or employ other appropriate means to prevent loss of support.

D. Backfill against concrete or masonry structure shall not be performed until the Work has been reviewed and backfilling permitted. Backfill against walls shall also be deferred until the structural slab for floors above the top fill line have been placed and attained design strength or earlier at the discretion of the Engineer. Partial backfilling against adequately braced wall may be considered by the Engineer on an individual situation basis. Where walls are to be waterproofed, all Work shall be completed and membrane materials dried or cured according to the manufacturer’s instructions before backfilling.

E. Backfill against tanks and other structures which are to retain liquids shall not be performed until leakage tests are completed and accepted by the Engineer in accordance with the Section entitled “Water Tightness Testing”.

3.09 COMPACTION

A. The Contractor shall compact embankments, backfill, crushed stone, aggregate base, and in place subgrade in accordance with the requirements of this Section. The densities

specified herein refer to percentages of maximum density as determined by the noted test methods. Compaction of materials on the project shall be in accordance with the following schedule:

	Density % Standard Proctor (D 698)	Density % Mod. Proctor (D 1557)	Max. Lift Thickness as Compacted Inches
Embankments Beneath Structures, Roadways, and Sidewalks*	98	92	8
Common Fill Areas	95	90	8
Backfill Around Structures	95	90	8
Backfill in Pipe Trenches	95	90	8
Crushed Stone Beneath Structures	**	**	12
Select Sand	98	92	8
Aggregate Base Course (ABC) Beneath Structures, Roadways, and Sidewalks	**	**	8
Crushed Stone Backfill	**	**	12
Crushed Stone Pipe Bedding	**	**	12
In Place Subgrade Beneath Structures, Roadways, and Sidewalks	98	92	Top 12-inches

* Embankments beneath structures shall be considered to include a zone 10 feet out from the foundation of the structure extending down to the natural ground on a 45° slope.
** The aggregate shall be compacted to a degree acceptable to the Engineer by use of a vibratory compactor and/or crawler tractor.

B. Compaction Near Existing Structures

1. Vibratory equipment shall not be used with 25 feet of any existing structure.

2. Within 25 feet of any existing structure, non-vibratory compaction equipment such as a drum roller with a maximum weight of 4 tons should be used. Within 5 feet of any existing structure, a walk behind vibratory sled or roller shall be used.

C. Field density tests will be made by the Materials Testing Consultant to determine if the specified densities have been achieved, and these tests shall be the basis for accepting or rejecting the compaction. In-place density tests will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 1557, or ASTM D 6938. The Engineer, in conjunction with the Materials Testing Consultant, will be the judge as to which test method will be the most

appropriate. Failure to achieve the specified densities shall require the Contractor to recompact the material or remove it as required. The Contractor shall, if necessary, increase the compactive effort by increasing the number of passes, using heavier or more suitable compaction equipment, or by reducing the thickness of the layers. The Contractor shall adjust the moisture contents of the soils to bring them within the optimum range by drying them or adding water as required.

D. Testing will be performed as frequently as deemed necessary by the Engineer and/or Materials Testing Consultant. As a minimum, one in place density test shall be performed for each 1000 cubic yards of embankment placed and 500 cubic yards of backfill placed or one test performed each day for either or as directed by the Engineer or recommended by Material Testing Consultant.

3.10 VIBRATION MONITORING

A. Vibration monitoring shall be performed at nearby structures when compaction work is ongoing. A single monitoring point using vibration monitoring equipment capable of detecting velocities of 0.1 inch/second or less and survey measurements shall be used for vibration monitoring at each of the nearest structures. An elevation measurement on nearby structures shall be taken before compaction work starts, and then at least twice a day during the work with one reading taken at the conclusion of the day's operations. Elevation measurements shall be recorded to an accuracy of 0.005 foot. If at any time the Contractor detects settlement or heave of 0.005-feet or more, or vibration levels of 1.0 inch/second or more, the vibratory compaction shall be stopped immediately, and the Engineer notified.

3.11 REMOVAL OF EXCESS AND UNSUITABLE MATERIALS

A. The Contractor shall remove and dispose of off-site all excess and unsuitable materials. Within thirty (30) consecutive days after Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer for review all required permits and a list of disposal sites for the unsuitable materials. If the disposal site is located on private property, the submittal shall also include written permission from the owner of record.

B. All excess and unsuitable materials shall be disposed of in locations and under conditions that comply with federal, state/commonwealth and local laws and regulations.

C. The Contractor shall obtain an off-site disposal area prior to beginning demolition or excavation operations.

D. All excess and unsuitable materials shall be hauled in trucks of sufficient capacity and tight construction to prevent spillage. Trucks shall be covered to prevent the propagation of dust.

E. When all excess and unsuitable material disposal operations are completed, the Contractor shall leave the disposal sites in a condition acceptable to the Owner and Owner(s) of the disposal site(s).

3.12 BORROW EXCAVATION

A. Description

1. The work covered by this section consists of the excavation of approved material from borrow sources and the hauling and utilization of such material as required on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer. It shall also include the removing, stockpiling, and replacement of topsoil on the borrow source; the satisfactory disposition of material from the borrow source which is not suitable for use; and the satisfactory restoration of the borrow source and haul roads to an acceptable condition upon completion of the work.

2. Borrow excavation shall not be used before all available suitable unclassified excavation has been used for backfilling and incorporated into the embankments.

B. Coordination with Seeding Operations

1. The Contractor shall coordinate the work covered by this section with the construction of embankments and area fill so the requirements of Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping are met.

C. Borrow Materials

1. All material shall meet the requirements of Section 2 for Select Fill or shall meet the requirements of Common Fill and classify as SM or coarser according to ASTM D 2487.

D. Construction Methods

1. General

a. The surface of the borrow area shall be thoroughly cleared and grubbed and cleaned of all unsuitable material including all organics, topsoil, etc., before beginning the excavation. Disposal of material resulting from clearing and grubbing shall be in accordance with Section 31 10 00 – Clearing, Grubbing, and Site Preparation.

b. Each borrow operation shall not be allowed to accumulate exposed, erodible slope area in excess of 1 acre at any one given time without the Contractor's beginning permanent seeding and mulching of the borrow source or other erosion control measures as may be approved by the Engineer.

c. The topsoil shall be removed and stockpiled at locations that will not interfere with the borrow operations and that meet the approval of the Engineer. Temporary erosion control measures shall be installed as necessary to prevent the erosion of the stockpile material. Once all borrow material has been removed from the source or portion thereof, the stockpiled topsoil shall be spread uniformly over the source.

d. Where it is necessary to haul borrow material over existing roads, the Contractor shall use all necessary precautions to prevent damage to the existing roads. The Contractor shall also conduct hauling operations in such a manner as to not interfere with the normal flow of traffic and shall always keep the traffic lanes free from spillage.

2. Owner Furnished Sources

a. Where borrow sources are furnished by the Owner the location of such sources will be as designated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

b. The Owner will furnish the necessary haul road right-of-way at locations designated by the Engineer. All haul roads required shall be built, maintained, and when directed by the Engineer, obliterated, at no cost to the Owner. Where the haul road is to be reclaimed for cultivation the Contractor shall plow or scarify the area to a minimum depth of 8 inches, or to the depth requested by the property owner.

c. The borrow sources shall be left in a neat and presentable condition after use. All slopes shall be smoothed, rounded, and constructed not steeper than 3:1. Where the source is to be reclaimed for cultivation the source shall be plowed or scarified to a minimum depth of 8 inches, disc harrowed, and terraces constructed. The source shall be graded to drain such that no water will collect or stand, and a functioning drainage system shall be provided.

d. All sources shall be seeded and mulched in accordance with Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping.

3. Contractor Furnished Sources

a. Prior to the approval of any off-site borrow source(s) developed for use on this project, the Contractor shall obtain certification from the State/Commonwealth Historic Preservation Officer of the State/Commonwealth Department of Cultural Resources certifying that the removal of the borrow material from the borrow source(s) will have no effect on any known district, site building, structure, or object that is included or eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places. A copy of this

certification shall be furnished to the Engineer prior to performing any work on the proposed borrow source.

b. The approval of borrow sources furnished by the Contractor shall be subject to the following conditions:

1) The Contractor shall be responsible for acquiring the right to take the material and any rights of access that may be necessary; for locating and developing the source; and any clearing and grubbing and drainage ditches necessary.

a) Such right shall be in writing and shall include an agreement with the Owner that the borrow source may be dressed, shaped, seeded, mulched, and drained as required by these Specifications after all borrow has been removed.

2) The Contractor and the property owner shall jointly submit a borrow source development, use, and reclamation plan to the Engineer, as described in Paragraph 1.05, for approval prior to engaging in any land disturbing activity on the proposed source other than material sampling that may be necessary.

4. Maintenance

a. During construction and until final acceptance the Contractor shall use any methods approved by the Engineer which are necessary to maintain the work covered by this Section so that the work will not contribute to excessive soil erosion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 05 16
AGGREGATE MATERIALS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment and materials required to complete all work associated with the installation of aggregate material beneath foundations, as backfill and as roadway subgrades and other related and incidental work as required to complete the work shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 42 00 – References

B. Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork

C. Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control

D. Section 32 10 00 – Paving and Surfacing

E. Section 33 41 13 – Foundation Drainage Systems

F. Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures; South Carolina State Highway Department Standard Specifications for Highway Construction.

2. ASTM C 127 – Test for Specific Gravity and Absorption of Coarse Aggregate.

3. ASTM C 136 – Test for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.

4. ASTM C 535 – Test for Resistance to Degradation of Large Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine.

082905

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1. Materials gradation and certification.

2. ASTM C127, ASTM C136, and ASTM C535 test results

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 CRUSHED STONE, SCREENED GRAVEL AND AGGREGATE BASE COURSE (ABC)

A. Crushed stone or screened gravel shall meet the requirements of Aggregate Standard Size No. 57 or No. 67 as defined by NCDOT Standard Specifications.

B. ABC shall meet the requirements of ABC as defined by NCDOT Standard Specifications.

2.02 SELECT SAND

A. Select sand shall meet the requirements of Sections 1005 and 1014 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for materials and gradation. The size used shall be Standard Size No. 2S or 2MS as listed and defined in Table 1005-2, "Aggregate Gradation", of the NCDOT Standard Specifications.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 CRUSHED STONE, SCREENED GRAVEL AND AGGREGATE BASE COURSE (ABC)

A. Contractor shall install crushed stone, screened gravel and ABC in accordance with the NCDOT Standard Specifications and as shown on the Drawings and indicated in the Contract Documents.

1. Unless otherwise stated herein or shown on the Drawings, all mat foundations (bottom slabs) for the proposed structures shall have a blanket of crushed stone or ABC 6-inches thick minimum placed directly beneath the proposed mat. The blanket shall extend a minimum of 12 inches beyond the extremities of the mat.

2. For subgrade preparation at structures and structural fill, the foundation material shall be ABC where specifically specified on Drawings, otherwise, crushed stone or screened gravel shall be used.

3. For ground under drains, pipe bedding, and drainage layers beneath structures the coarse aggregate shall meet the requirements of aggregate standard Size No. 57 or No. 67, as defined by NCDOT Standard Specifications.

3.02 SELECT SAND

A. Contractor shall install select sand in accordance with the NCDOT Standard Specifications and as shown on the Drawings and indicated in the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 05 19
GEOTEXTILES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all Geotextiles, including all necessary and incidental items, as detailed or required for the Contractor to complete the installation in accordance with the Drawings and these Specifications.

B. For the location of each type of Geotextile see the Drawings.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. ASTM Standards

1. ASTM D4533 - Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles

2. ASTM D4632 - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles

3. ASTM D5261 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Mass per Unit Area of Geotextiles

4. ASTM D6241 - Standard Test Method for Static Puncture Strength of Geotextiles and Geotextile-Related Products Using a 50-mm Probe

B. AASHTO Standards

1. AASHTO M 288-06 (2011) Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Prior to shipping to the site, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer two copies of a mill certificate or affidavit signed by a legally authorized official of the Manufacturer for each type of Geotextile. The Supplier shall also submit three Geotextile samples of each product, 1 yard square each, seamed and unseamed as appropriate, with the mill certificate for each Geotextile type supplied. The mill certificate or affidavit shall attest that the Geotextile meets the chemical, physical and manufacturing requirements stated in the specifications. The samples shall be labeled with the manufacturer's lot number, machine direction, date of sampling, project number, specifications, manufacturer and product name.

B. The Engineer shall be furnished copies of the delivery tickets or other acceptable receipts as evidence for materials received that will be incorporated into construction.

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Filter Geotextile shall be a minimum 6-ounce per square yard (nominal) nonwoven needle punched synthetic fabric consisting of staple or continuous filament polyester or polypropylene manufactured in a manner accepted by the Engineer and the Owner. The Geotextiles shall be inert and unaffected by long-term exposure to chemicals or liquids with a pH range from 3 to 10. The Geotextiles shall have a minimum threshold water head of 0.25-inches in the "as received" condition.

1. Filter Geotextile shall have a Survivability Class of Class 1 or 2 in accordance with AASHTO M288, unless otherwise specified herein.

B. Cushion Geotextile shall be a minimum 16-ounce per square yard nonwoven needle punched synthetic fabric consisting of continuous filament or staple polyester or polypropylene manufactured in a manner accepted by the Engineer and the Owner. The Geotextiles shall be inert and unaffected by long-term exposure to chemicals or liquids with a pH range from 3 to 10.

1. Cushion Geotextile shall have a Survivability Class of Class 1 in accordance with AASHTO M288.

C. Type I Separator Geotextile shall be a minimum 8-ounce per square yard (nominal) nonwoven needle punched synthetic fabric consisting of staple or continuous filament polyester or polypropylene manufactured in a manner accepted by the Engineer and the Owner. The Geotextiles shall be inert and unaffected by long term exposure to chemicals or liquids with a pH range from 3 to 10.

1. Type I Separator Geotextile shall have a Survivability Class of Class 1 or 2 in accordance with AASHTO M288, unless otherwise specified herein.

D. Type II Separator Geotextile shall be a woven slit film or monofilament synthetic fabric consisting of polyester or polypropylene in a manner approved by the Engineer. Geotextile shall be treated to resist degradation due to exposure to ultraviolet light.

1. Type II Separator Geotextile shall have a Survivability Class of Class 1 in accordance with AASHTO M288, unless otherwise specified herein.

E. All Geotextiles shall conform to the properties listed using the test methods listed in Table 1. The Contractor shall be responsible for timely submittals of all confirmation test data for Geotextiles.

031513

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SHIPPING, HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. During all periods of shipment and storage, all Geotextiles shall be protected from direct sunlight, temperature greater than 140°F water, mud, dirt, dust, and debris.

B. To the extent possible, the Geotextile shall be maintained wrapped in heavy-duty protective covering until use. Geotextile delivered to the project site without protective covering shall be rejected. After the protective covering has been removed, the Geotextile shall not be left uncovered for longer than fourteen (14) days, under any circumstances.

C. The Owner shall approve the shipping and delivery schedule prior to shipment. The Owner shall designate the on-site storage area for the Geotextiles. Unloading and storage of Geotextiles shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

D. Geotextiles that are damaged during shipping or storage shall be rejected and replaced at Contractor expense.

3.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE CONFORMANCE TESTING

A. At the option of the Engineer representative samples of Geotextiles shall be obtained and tested by the Engineer to assure that the material properties conform to these Specifications. Conformance testing shall be conducted by the Engineer and paid for by the Owner.

B. Conformance testing shall be completed at a minimum frequency of one sample per 100,000 square feet of Geotextile delivered to the project site. Sampling and testing shall be as directed by the Engineer.

C. Conformance testing of the Geotextiles shall include but not be limited to the following properties:

1. Mass Per Unit Area (ASTM D5261)

2. Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4632)

3. Trapezoidal Tear (ASTM D4533)

4. Puncture Resistance (ASTM D6241)

D. The Engineer may add to, remove or revise the test methods used for determination of conformance properties to allow for use of improved methods.

E. All Geotextile conformance test data shall meet or exceed requirements outlined in Table 1 of these Specifications for the particular category of Geotextile prior to installation. Any materials that do not conform to these requirements shall be retested or rejected at the direction of the Engineer.

F. Each roll of Geotextile will be visually inspected by the Engineer or the Engineer's representative. The Engineer reserves the right to sample and test at any time and reject, if necessary, any material based on visual inspection or verification tests.

G. A Geotextile that is rejected shall be removed from the project site and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Sampling and conformance testing of the Geotextile supplied as replacement for rejected material shall be performed by the Engineer at Contractor's expense.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Geotextiles shall be placed to the lines and grades shown on the Drawings. At the time of installation, the Geotextile shall be rejected by the Engineer if it has defects, rips, holes, flaws, evidence of deterioration, or other damage.

B. It is the intent of these Specifications that Geotextiles used to protect natural drainage media be placed the same day as the drainage media to prevent soil, sediment or windblown soils to make contact with the drainage media.

C. The Geotextiles shall be placed smooth and free of excessive wrinkles. Geotextiles shall conform to and be in contact with the approved subgrade.

D. When the Geotextiles are placed on slopes, the upslope fabric portion shall be lapped such that it is the upper or exposed Geotextile.

E. Geotextiles shall be temporarily secured in a manner accepted by the Engineer prior to placement of overlying materials.

F. In the absence of specific requirements shown on the Drawings, the following shall be used for overlaps of adjacent rolls of Geotextile:

Geotextile Type / Application	Overlap of Adjacent Rolls[(1)] (Inches)	Transverse End Overlap (Inches)
Filter Geotextile	6 min	12 min
Cushion Geotextile	12 min	12 min
Separator - Roadway Applications	12 min	24 min
Separator - Slope Protection	18 min	24 min
Separator Geotextile	12 min	18 min

(1) Overlaps may be reduced if adjacent panels are sewn or heat bonded where approved by the Engineer.

G. Any Geotextile that is torn or punctured shall be repaired or replaced as directed by the Engineer by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner. The repair shall consist of

a patch of the same type of Geotextile placed over the failed areas and shall overlap the existing Geotextile a minimum of 12-inches from any point of the rupture.

H. Any Geotextile that is subjected to excessive sediment buildup on its surface during construction shall be replaced by the Contractor prior to placement of overlying material.

Table 1: Minimum Required Geotextile Properties*

Geotextile Property	Filter Geotextile	Cushion Geotextile	Type I Separator Geotextile	Type II Separator Geotextile
Geotextile Construction	Nonwoven Needle punched	Nonwoven Needle punched	Nonwoven Needle punched	Woven
Ultraviolet Resistance, (500 hrs.) ASTM D7238, Average % Strength Retention	70	70	70	70
Grab Tensile Strength (lbs.), ASTM D4632	120	340	160	315
Grab Tensile elongation (%) ASTM D4632	50	50	50	15
Trapezoid Tear Strength (lbs) ASTM D4533	50	155	60	120
Apparent Opening Size (AOS), (mm), ASTM D4751	0.212	N/A	0.212	0.425
Permittivity at 50 mm constant head (sec^{-1}), ASTM D4491	0.5	N/A	1.5	0.1
CBR Puncture Strength, ASTM D6241 (lb)	340	1100	410	900

* MINIMUM AVERAGE ROLL VALUE (MARV)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 10 00
CLEARING, GRUBBING, AND SITE PREPARATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Includes all labor, material, equipment and appliances required for the complete execution of any additions, modifications, or alterations to existing building(s) and new construction work as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. Principal items of work include:

1. Notifying all authorities owning utility lines running to or on the property. Protecting and maintaining all utility lines to remain and capping those that are not required in accordance with instructions of the Utility Companies, and all other authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Clearing the site within the Contract Limit Lines, including removal of grass, brush, shrubs, trees, loose debris and other encumbrances except for trees marked to remain.

3. Boxing and protecting all trees, shrubs, lawns and the like within areas to be preserved. Relocating trees and shrubs, so indicated on the Drawings, to designated areas.

4. Repairing all injury to trees, shrubs, and other plants caused by site preparation operations shall be repaired immediately. Work shall be done by qualified personnel in accordance with standard horticultural practice and as approved by the Engineer.

5. Removing topsoil to its full depth from designated areas and stockpiling on site where directed by the Engineer for future use.

6. Disposing from the site all debris resulting from work under this Section.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork

B. Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

082905

A. North Carolina Administrative Code, Title 15, Chapter 2.

1.04 STREET AND ROAD BLOCKAGE

A. Closing of streets and roads during progress of the work shall be in compliance with the requirements of the Owner and other authorities having jurisdiction. Access shall be provided to all facilities remaining in operation.

1.05 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

A. All work shall be performed in such a manner to protect all personnel, workmen, pedestrians and adjacent property and structures from possible injury and damage.

B. All conduits, wires, cables and appurtenances above or below ground shall be protected from damage.

C. Provide warning and barrier fence where shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

PART 2 – EXECUTION

2.01 CLEARING OF SITE

A. Before removal of topsoil, and start of excavation and grading operations, the areas within the clearing limits shall be cleared and grubbed.

B. Clearing shall consist of cutting, removal, and satisfactory disposal of all trees, fallen timber, brush, bushes, rubbish, sanitary landfill material, fencing, and other perishable and objectionable material within the areas to be excavated or other designated areas. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall survey the entire Contract site and shall prepare a plan which defines the areas to be cleared and grubbed, trees to be pruned, extent of tree pruning, and/or areas which are to be cleared but not grubbed. This plan shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval. Should it become necessary to remove a tree, bush, brush or other plants adjacent to the area to be excavated, the Contractor shall do so only after permission has been granted by the Engineer.

C. Excavation resulting from the removal of trees, roots and the like shall be filled with suitable material, as approved by the Engineer, and thoroughly compacted per the requirements contained in Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

D. Unless otherwise shown or specified, the Contractor shall clear and grub a strip at least 15-ft. wide along all permanent fence lines installed under this Contract.

E. In temporary construction easement locations, only those trees and shrubs shall be removed which are in actual interference with excavation or grading work under this Contract, and removal shall be subject to approval by the Engineer. However, the Engineer reserves the right to order additional trees and shrubs removed at no additional cost to the Owner, if such, in their opinion, are too close to the work to be maintained or have become damaged due to the Contractor's operations.

2.02 STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING EXISTING TOPSOIL

A. Erosion and sedimentation control measures shall be installed as per the Federal, State or Locally approved Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plan for the project and Specification Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control before any stripping and stockpiling of topsoil can occur.

B. Existing topsoil and sod on the site within areas designated on the Drawings shall be stripped to whatever depth it may occur and stored in locations directed by the Engineer.

C. The topsoil shall be free of stones, roots, brush, rubbish, or other unsuitable materials before stockpiling the topsoil.

D. Care shall be taken not to contaminate the stockpiled topsoil with any unsuitable materials.

2.03 GRUBBING

A. Grubbing shall consist of the removal and disposal of all stumps, roots, logs, sticks and other perishable materials to a depth of at least 6-inches below ground surfaces.

B. Large stumps located in areas to be excavated may be removed during grading operations, subject to the approval of the Engineer.

2.04 DISPOSAL OF MATERIAL

A. All debris resulting from the clearing and grubbing work shall be disposed of by the Contractor as part of the work of this Contract. Material designated by the Engineer to be salvaged shall be stored on the construction site as directed by the Engineer for reuse in this Project or removal by others.

B. Burning of any debris resulting from the clearing and grubbing work will not be permitted at the site.

2.05 WARNING AND BARRIER FENCE

A. The fence shall be made of a visible, lightweight, flexible, high strength polyethylene material. The fence shall be Guardian Visual Barrier as manufactured by TEMAX, or equal.

B. Physical Properties

Fence	
Color	International Orange
Roll Size	4' x 100'
Roll weight	9 lbs.

Mesh opening	1-3/4" x 1-3/4"
Posts	
ASTM Designation:	ASTM 702
Length:	6 feet long (T-Type)
Weight:	1.25 #/Foot (min)
Area of Anchor Plate:	14 Sq. In.

C. Drive posts 18 inches into ground every 8'. Wrap fence material around first terminal post allowing overlap of one material opening. Use metal tie wire or plastic tie wrap to fasten material to itself at top, middle and bottom. At final post, cut with utility knife or scissors at a point halfway across an opening. Wrap around and tie at final post in the same way as the first post.

D. Use tie wire or tie wrap at intermediate posts and splices as well. Thread ties around a vertical member of the fence material and the post and bind tightly against the post. For the most secure fastening, tie at top, middle and bottom. Overlap splices a minimum of four fence openings, tie as above, fastening both edges of the fence material splice overlap.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 25 00
EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor is responsible for implementing Stormwater Control Measures (SCMs) to prevent and minimize erosion and resultant sedimentation in all cleared and grubbed areas during and after construction. This item covers the work necessary for the installation of structures and measures for the prevention of soil erosion and control of sedimentation. The Contractor shall furnish all material, labor and equipment necessary for the proper installation, maintenance, inspection, monitoring, reporting, and removal (where applicable) of erosion prevention and sediment control measures and, if applicable, to cause compliance with all local permits and the State of North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Construction Stormwater Program General Permit – NCG 010000 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System for Construction Activities, for any land disturbance or construction activity of one (1) acre or more, under this Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control.

B. Any land disturbance as the result of modifications to a site's drainage features or topography requires protection from erosion and sedimentation.

C. All excavations shall be in conformity with the lines, grades, and cross sections shown on the Contract Drawings or established by the Engineer.

D. It is the intent of this Specification that the Contractor conducts the construction activities in such a manner that erosion of disturbed areas and off-site sedimentation be absolutely minimized.

E. All work under this Contract shall be done in conformance with and subject to the limitations of the North Carolina Rules and Regulations for Erosion and Sedimentation Control as adopted by the North Carolina Sedimentation Control Commission (15A NCAC, Chapter 4, latest edition).

F. The following excerpts from the regulations are particularly important:

1. Pursuant to North Carolina G.S. 113A-57(2), the angle of graded slopes and fills shall be no greater than the angle that can be retained by vegetative cover or other adequate erosion-control devices or structures.

2. As per North Carolina DEQ Construction Stormwater Program General Permit NCG01, perimeter dikes, swales, ditches and slopes, disturbed areas within High Quality Water (HWQ) Zones, and slopes steeper than 3H:1V following completion of any phase of grading, shall be planted or otherwise provided with temporary or

041612

permanent ground cover, devices, or structures sufficient to restrain erosion within 7 calendar days.

3. All other slopes of 3H: 1V or flatter, except those with slopes greater than 50 feet in length or within HWQ Zones, following completion of any phase of grading, shall be planted or otherwise provided with temporary or permanent ground cover, devices, or structures sufficient to restrain erosion within 14 calendar days.

G. Due to the nature of the work required by this Contract, it is anticipated that the location and nature of the erosion and sediment control devices will be adjusted on several occasions to reflect the current phase of construction. The construction schedule adopted by the Contractor will impact the placement and need for specific devices required for the control of erosion. The Contractor shall develop and implement such additional techniques as may be required to minimize erosion and off-site sedimentation. The location and extent of erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be revised at each phase of construction that results in a change in either the quantity or direction of surface runoff from constructed areas. All deviations from the erosion and sedimentation control provisions shown on the Contract Drawings shall have the prior acceptance of the Engineer and shall be completed at no additional cost to the Owner.

H. Erosion and sedimentation controls applicable to this project shall be as shown on the Contract Drawings, as specified herein, as indicated by the Engineer and as detailed in the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

B. Section 31 10 00 – Clearing, Grubbing, and Site Preparation

C. Section 31 00 10 – Earthwork

D. Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles

E. Section 32 11 00 – Surface Restoration

F. Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of these specifications, all work hereunder shall conform to the applicable requirements of the referenced portions of the following documents, to the extent that the requirements therein are not in conflict with the provisions of this Section.

1. 15A NCAC, Chapter 4

2. North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, latest edition

3. North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Construction Stormwater Program General Permit NCG 010000 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System for Construction Activities, for any land disturbance or construction activity of one (1) acre or more

4. North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, latest edition

5. North Carolina Division of Environmental Quality Stormwater Design Manual, latest edition

B. See Specification Section 01 42 00 – References.

1.04 REGULATORY COMPLIANCE

A. Land disturbance activities are not authorized to begin until after all required erosion and sediment control permits are obtained from the United States, the State of North Carolina and local authorities, as necessary. Contractor is the Co-Primary Permittee and Operator under the provisions of the NPDES Permit. As such, the Contractor will be required to sign certain certifications as described in the NPDES Permit. Contractor shall comply with requirements specified in the Contract Documents, on the approved Erosion Control Plan, and by the Engineer. Contractor shall also comply with all other laws, rules, regulations, ordinances and requirements concerning soil erosion and sediment control established in the United States, the State of North Carolina and local authorities as applicable. The following documents and the documents referenced therein define the regulatory requirements for this Section:

1. NPDES PERMIT: The North Carolina Department of Environmental Quality Construction Stormwater Program General Permit NCG 010000 to Discharge Stormwater under the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System for Construction Activities (NPDES permit) governs land disturbance or construction activities of one (1) acre or more. On applicable sites, Contractor is responsible for complying with terms and conditions of this permit.

2. Manual for Erosion and Sediment Control: Contractor shall follow Practices and Standards of the North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual (NC ESCPDM), latest edition.

B. During the period beginning on the effective date of the permit and lasting until expiration, the Permittee is authorized to discharge stormwater associated with construction activity including clearing, grading and excavation activities resulting in the disturbance of land and related support activities. Such discharges shall be controlled, limited and monitored as specified below.

1. The Contractor, as Co-Primary Permittee and Operator under the provisions of the NPDES Permit, shall submit a plan for compliance with the Owner-provided approved erosion and sedimentation control plan to the Engineer for approval. Plans must include designation of where 7 and 14-day ground stabilization requirements and where basins which comply with surface-withdrawal requirements of the NPDES permit, if applicable, are located. Land disturbing activity shall not commence until the plan is approved by the Engineer. Maintain an up-to-date copy of the approved plan on the site.

2. Implement the approved plan. Deviation from the plan is allowed only to correct emergency situations of sediment discharge offsite or when minor modifications are made to improve performance of the measures and the approval authority has been notified. Note allowed deviations on the plan maintained on the site.

3. Manage onsite activities such that no adverse impacts to water quality occur from site activities or allowed discharges. The following activities, and others on a site-specific basis, require oversight throughout the construction and development process to assure that all water quality standards are protected.

    a. Equipment Operation and Maintenance: Equipment utilized during the construction activity on a site must be operated and maintained in such a manner as to prevent the potential or actual pollution of the surface or ground waters of the State. Fuels, lubricants, coolants, and hydraulic fluids, or any other petroleum products, shall not be discharged onto the ground or into surface waters. Spent fluids shall be disposed of in a manner so as not to enter the waters, surface or ground, of the State and in accordance with applicable state and federal disposal regulations. Any spilled fluids shall be cleaned up to the extent practicable and disposed of in a manner so as not to allow their entry into the waters, surface or ground, of the State.

    b. Material Handling: Herbicide, pesticide, and fertilizer usage during the construction activity shall be consistent with the Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act and shall be in accordance with label restrictions.

    c. Building Material Waste Handling: All wastes composed of building materials shall be disposed of in accordance with North Carolina General Statutes, Chapter 130A, Article 9 - Solid Waste Management, and rules governing the disposal of solid waste (North Carolina Administrative Code Section 15A NCAC 13B). In particular, the following guidelines shall be followed:

        1) No paint or liquid wastes in streams or storm drains.

        2) Dedicated area for demolition, construction, and other wastes must be located a minimum of 50’ from storm drains and streams unless no reasonable alternatives are available.

3) Earthen-material stockpiles must be located a minimum of 50’ from storm drains and streams unless no reasonable alternatives are available.

4) Concrete materials onsite, including excess concrete, must be controlled to avoid contact with surface waters, wetlands, or buffers. (Note discharges from onsite concrete plants may require coverage under a separate NPDES permit – NCG140000).

d. Litter and Sanitary Waste: The Permittee shall control the management and disposal of litter and sanitary waste from the site.

C. Violations and Fines

1. Contractor shall be responsible for reimbursing the Owner for any fines incurred as a result of violations to the NC Sedimentation Pollution Control Act, the NPDES General Permit for Stormwater Discharges on Construction Sites, and any applicable delegated local program’s sediment control regulations until construction activities are complete and the project is accepted by the Owner. These include fines levied by the NCDEMLR Land Quality Section, NCDEQ Division of Water Quality and delegated local programs.

2. If violations result in the issuance of a Notice of Violation, the Contractor shall comply with the requirements of the Notice within the specified time period for compliance. Failure to comply could result in the assessment of a penalty for each day of the continuing violation, beginning with the date of the violation.

3. Violations may result in civil and/or criminal penalties which include fines and imprisonment.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Prior to the start of the work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a plan for implementing the temporary and permanent erosion and sedimentation control measures as shown on the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan approved by the appropriate regulatory authority. Construction work shall not commence until the schedule of work and the methods of operations have been reviewed and approved.

B. The Contractor shall perform inspections of erosion and sedimentation control measures and stormwater discharge outfalls and prepare inspection reports as described in Part 3.0 of this Section. Copies of the inspection reports shall be submitted to the Engineer on a monthly basis.

C. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions Division 01 and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall submit the following:

1. Name and location of all material suppliers.

2. Certificate of compliance with the standards specified above for each source of each material.

3. List of disposal sites for waste and unsuitable materials and evidence of all required permits for use of those sites.

1.06 GUARANTEE

A. All restoration and re-vegetation work shall be subject to the one-year guarantee period of the Contract as specified in the General Conditions.

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Materials for use in erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be in accordance with the NC ESCPDM.

B. All erosion and sediment control bid prices shall include all excavation, grading, maintenance, legal sediment disposal, permits and all other work and appurtenances necessary to design, install and maintain the sediment and erosion control measures as detailed herein and in accordance with the NC ESCPDM.

2.02 SILT FENCE

A. Silt (or sediment) fence shall be constructed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.62 of the NC ESCPDM. Silt fences shall be installed below small disturbed areas that are less than ¼ acre disturbed per 100-feet of fence when slopes are less than 2%. Contractor shall refer to Table 6.62a in the NC ESCPDM for criteria. Silt fence shall not be installed across streams, ditches, or waterways or other areas of concentrated flows.

B. Silt fence shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.62 of the NC ESCPDM. Silt fence shall be a woven geotextile filter fabric made specifically for sediment control. Filter fabric shall not rot when buried and shall resist attack from soil chemicals, alkalines and acids in the pH range from 2 to 13, and shall resist damage due to prolonged ultraviolet exposure. Filter fabric shall be C-50NW as manufactured by Contech Earth Stabilization Solutions, GT 142 as manufactured by SKAPS Industries, Soiltex ST 120N as manufactured by Geo-Synthetics, Inc., or approved equal. The cost of silt fence shall include the materials, excavation, backfill, aggregate, periodic sediment removal, etc. and all maintenance and restoration activities required.

C. Silt fence shall be stable for the 10-year peak storm runoff. Fabric shall meet the following specifications:

Temporary Silt Fence Material Property Requirements

	Test Material	Units	Supported[1] Silt Fence	Un-Supported[1] Silt Fence	Type of Value
Grab Strength	ASTM D 4632	N (lbs)			
Machine Direction			400	550	MARV
			(90)	(90)	
x-Machine Direction			400	450	MARV
			(90)	(90)	
Permittivity[2]	ASTM D 4491	sec-1	0.05	0.05	MARV
Apparent Opening Size 2	ASTM D 4751	mm	0.60	0.60	Max. ARV[3]
		(US Sieve #)	(30)	(30)	
Ultraviolet Stability	ASTM D 4355	% Retained Strength	70% after 500 hours exposure	70% after 500 hours exposure	Typical

Notes:

1 Silt Fence support shall consist of 14 gage steel wire with a mesh spacing of 150 mm (6 inches), or prefabricated polymer mesh of equivalent strength.

2 These default values are based on empirical evidence with a variety of sediment. For environmentally sensitive areas, a review of previous experience and/or site or regionally specific geotextile tests in accordance with Test Method D 5141 should be performed by the agency to confirm suitability of these requirements.

3 As measured in accordance with Test Method D 4632.

D. The synthetic filter fabric shall consist of at least 95% by weight of polyolefins or polyester, certified by the manufacturer, and as specified by Section 6.62 of the NC ESCPDM.

E. The posts for silt fences shall be 1.33 lb/linear feet steel with a minimum length of 5 feet; posts shall have projections to facilitate fastening of the fabric.

F. For reinforcement of standard strength filter fabric use wire fence with a minimum 14 gauge and a maximum mesh spacing of 6 inches.

2.03 STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall place stone for erosion control as shown on the Contract Drawings, as specified herein, as specified in Section 1610 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications, and as detailed in Section 6.15 of the NC ESCPDM. The stone for erosion control shall consist of field stone or rough un-hewn quarry stone. The stone shall be sound, tough, dense, and resistant to the action of air and water. The stone for erosion control shall be Class (A) or Class (B) as specified in the NCDOT Standard Specifications, Section 1610,

and underlain by a Type II Separator Geotextile, as specified in Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles, unless otherwise noted on the Contract Drawings.

B. Stone for erosion control shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section, Section 1610 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications, and Section 6.15 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost for stone for erosion control shall include furnishing, weighing, stockpiling, re-handling, placing and maintaining stone; disposal of any stone not incorporated into the project if directed by the Engineer; and any other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

2.04 RIP RAP

A. The Contractor shall place rip rap as shown on the Contract Drawings, as specified in Section 1042 of the NCDOT Standard specifications for plain rip rap, and as detailed in Section 6.15 of the NC ESCPDM. The stone for rip rap shall consist of field stone or rough un-hewn quarry stone. The rip rap shall be sound, tough, dense, and resistant to the action of air and water. Neither the width nor thickness of individual stones shall be less than one third their length. The rip rap shall be Class 1 or Class 2 as specified in the NCDOT Standard Specifications, Section 1042, and underlain by a Type II Separator Geotextile, as specified in Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles, unless otherwise noted on the Contract Drawings.

B. Rip rap shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section, Section 1042 of the NCDOT Standard Specifications, and Section 6.15 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost for rip rap shall include furnishing, weighing, stockpiling, rehandling, placing, and maintaining rip rap; disposal of any rip rap not incorporated into the project if directed by the Engineer; geotextile material and installation, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

2.05 ROLLED EROSION CONTROL (RECM) AND TURF REINFORCEMENT MAT (TRM)

A. Rolled Erosion Control Mat (RECM), and Turf Reinforcement Mat (TRM), shall be installed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM. RECMs should be utilized to aid stabilization of slopes greater than 2:1 and with more than 10 feet of vertical relief. RECMs should also be used when mulch cannot be adequately tacked and where immediate ground cover is required to prevent erosion damage. Examples of RECMs are blankets, nets and matting.

B. RECM’s utilizing plastic netting of any type – polypropylene, nylon, polyethylene, and polyester - shall not be used, including plastic netting designated as degradable, photodegradable, UV-degradable, oxo-degradable, or oxo-biodegradable. Use loose weave, non-welded, movable jointed netting (leno or gauze). Rectangle (elongated) mesh is preferred over square mesh.

C. RECMs shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost for RECMs shall include all excavation, grading, and materials, and all maintenance activities.

D. RECMs shall be used to aid in stabilization of vegetated channels where runoff velocity will exceed 2 feet/second on bare earth during the 2-year rainfall event that produces peak runoff.

E. RECMs shall be chosen based on the Design Criteria detailed in Section 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM. Typically, nets shall be used in conjunction with mulch; the use of mulch is typically not required with excelsior, woven straw blankets and coir blankets.

F. The recommended anchoring devices are 12-inch minimum length wooden stakes, or rigid, 100% biodegradable stakes of a minimum of 6 inches in length. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede.

G. The minimum tensile strength and bare soil shear stress values for specific RECMs are as follows:

1. Straw with net temporary RECM shall be North American Green BioNet S75BN, American Excelsior Co. Curlex I FibreNet, East Coast Erosion Control ECS-1B, or equal with a minimum tensile strength of 100 lbs/ft and minimum bare soil shear stress value of 1.5 lb/ft^2.

2. Curled wood or coconut fiber RECM shall be American Excelsior Curlex II FibreNet, North American Green BioNet C125BN, East Coast Erosion Control ECC-2B, or equal matting with a minimum tensile strength of 140 lbs/ft and a minimum bare soil shear stress value of 2.0 lb/ft^2.

3. Synthetic Turf Reinforcement Mat (TRM) shall be High Performance (HPTRM) woven products with continuous yarns woven into a tight, three-dimensional matrix with opening sizes less than 5 mm. HPTRM's shall be Propex Geosolutions Pyramat, North American Green TMax®, Nilex PP5-Xtreme, or equal matting with a minimum tensile strength of 3000 lbs/ft and a long-term vegetated shear stress value of 15.0 lb/ft^2.

H. The cost of RECM and TRM shall include the mat and anchoring materials, installation, and all maintenance activities required.

2.06 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT DIVERSIONS

A. Temporary diversions shall be constructed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.20 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. Permanent diversions shall be constructed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.21 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. Temporary diversions shall be constructed adjacent to disturbed areas to collect surface runoff from disturbed areas and direct the runoff to sediment basins or to divert non-sediment laden runoff away from undisturbed areas and/or sediment basins. All temporary diversions transporting sediment-laden runoff shall terminate in a sediment trapping device. Permanent diversions should be planned as a part of initial site development and should be coordinated with temporary diversions. All temporary and permanent diversions shall

be stabilized with vegetation or other means within 7 days of installation. Permanent diversions shall be used to divert water to locations where it can be used or released without erosion or flood damage. Dimensions shall be as shown on the Contract Drawings.

B. Temporary diversions shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.20 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, until the site has been stabilized. Permanent diversions shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.21 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of temporary and permanent diversions shall include the excavation, grading, materials, etc. and all maintenance and restoration activities required.

2.07 TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS

A. Temporary slope drains shall be constructed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.32 of the NC ESCPDM. Temporary slope drains are used to convey concentrated runoff down the face of a slope without causing erosion and are generally used in conjunction with temporary diversions.

B. The pipe diameter for temporary slope drains shall be selected according to Table 6.32a of the NC ESCPDM. The pipe shall be heavy-duty flexible material such as non-perforated, corrugated plastic pipe or specially designed flexible tubing.

C. Temporary slope drains shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.32 of the NC ESCPDM, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, until the site has been stabilized. The cost of the temporary slope drains shall include the piping, earthwork, stone for erosion control, and all maintenance activities required. Temporary slopes drains shall be removed from site and the materials disposed of in an approved manner once final stabilization has been achieved.

2.08 TEMPORARY GRAVEL CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCES/EXITS

A. Temporary gravel construction entrances/exits shall be located at points where vehicles enter and leave a construction site, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.06 of the NC ESCPDM.

B. Temporary gravel construction entrances/exits shall be constructed with a minimum 6-inch layer of 2 – 3 inch washed stone placed over a stable foundation and shall be a minimum of 100 feet in length and 25 feet in width. Geotextile fabric shall be used under stone as shown on the Contract Drawings.

C. Temporary gravel construction entrances/exits shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.06 of the NC ESCPDM, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, until the site has been stabilized. The cost of temporary gravel construction entrances/exits shall include the materials, including the application of additional stone, tire washing, and other maintenance as may be

necessary. Temporary gavel construction entrances/exists shall be removed from site and the materials disposed of in an approved manner once final stabilization has been achieved.

2.09 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT STABILIZATION OF DISTURBED AREAS

A. Temporary and permanent stabilization of disturbed areas will be provided at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.10, 6.11, 6.12 and 6.14 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide ground cover adequate to restrain erosion on disturbed areas that will be left un-worked for periods exceeding 7 to 14 days, as noted in Paragraph 1.01. F. of this Specification.

B. Soil amendments, including lime and fertilizer, shall be as detailed in Sections 6.10, 6.11 and 6.12 of the NC ESCPDM.

C. Seed mixtures shall be selected based on site location and seasonal recommendations outlined in Sections 6.10 and 6.11 of the NC ESCPDM. Sod shall be selected based on site location and intended use as outlined in Section 6.12 of the NC ESCPDM.

D. Mulch shall be as detailed in Section 6.14 of the NC ESCPDM. RECMs shall be as detailed in 2.05 herein and in Section 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM.

E. Temporary soil stabilizer shall consist of an especially prepared highly concentrated powder which, when mixed with water, forms a thick liquid such as "Enviroseal 2001" by Enviroseal Corporation, "Terra Control" by Quattro Environmental, Inc., or "CHEM-CRETE ECO-110” by International CHEM-CRETE Corporation, and having no growth or germination inhibiting factors. The agent shall be used for hydroseeding grass seed in combination with other approved amendments resulting in a highly viscous slurry which, when sprayed directly on the soil, forms a gelatinous crust.

F. Temporary and permanent stabilization of disturbed areas shall be achieved in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.10, 6.11, 6.12, 6.14 and 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of temporary and permanent stabilization of disturbed areas shall include all grading, excavation, materials, and all reseeding and other maintenance activities required until stabilization is achieved.

2.10 CHECK DAMS AND CHECK DAMS WITH WEIRS

A. Check dams shall be constructed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.83 of the NC ESCPDM. Check dams with weirs shall be constructed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.87 of the NC ESCPDM.

B. Check dams and check dams with weirs shall not be constructed in an intermittent or perennial stream. The drainage area for any one check dam or check dam with weir shall be limited to ½ acre.

C. Dimensions shall be as shown on the Contract Drawings. Check dams shall be constructed of stone or riprap with filter fabric, fiber filtration tubes, or sediment logs, as indicated on the Contract Drawings. Check dams with weirs shall be constructed of stone or riprap with filter fabric. Material specifications for stone, riprap, fiber filtration tubes, and sediment logs appear herein. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede. Filter fabric shall be Type II Separator Geotextile, as specified in Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles.

D. Check dams shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.83 of the NC ESCPDM. Check dams with weirs shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.87 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of check dams and check dams with weirs shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required. Check dams shall be removed from site and the materials disposed of in an approved manner once final stabilization has been achieved.

2.11 INLET EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Yard, Curb and other Inlet Erosion Control Measures shall be constructed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.50 through 6.55 of the NC ESCPDM. Inlet erosion control measures shall be used to prevent or limit the introduction of sediment to storm drain systems and allow early use of the of the storm drainage system. Maximum drainage areas for inlet erosion control measures vary from 1 acre for excavated drop inlet protection, hardware & cloth gravel inlet protection, and block and gravel inlet protection to more than 5 acres for rock pipe inlet protection. In addition to the inlet protection measures described in the NC ESCPDM, other measures may be specified by the Engineer. For measures not detailed in the NC ESCPDM, the materials will be as specified by the Engineer's and Manufacturer's instructions, with more stringent specifications superseding.

B. Materials for Inlet Erosion Control Measures consist of silt fence, riprap, stone (gravel), hardware wire, sod, concrete blocks, and sediment logs. Riprap and stone for erosion control shall be as specified herein. Hardware wire shall be as specified in Section 6.51 of the NC ESCPDM. Sod shall conform to the specifications set forth in Section 6.12 of the NC ESCPDM. Concrete blocks shall be as specified in Section 6.52 of the NC ESCPDM. Material specifications for sediment logs appear within. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede.

C. Inlet Erosion Control Measures shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and **Sections** 6.50 through 6.55 of the NC ESCPDM. Measures not described in the NC ESCPDM shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the Engineer's and Manufacturer's instructions, with more stringent instructions superseding. The cost of inlet erosion control measures shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required. Inlet Control Measures shall be removed from site and the materials disposed of in an approved manner once final stabilization has been achieved.

2.12 FIBER FILTRATION TUBES (FFTS)

A. FFTs shall be installed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, and as specified herein.

B. FFTs shall consist of straw, wood, or coconut fibers, with or without performance-enhancing polymers, encased with cylindrical tubes composed of a heavy-duty, loose-weave, biodegradable natural-fiber netting made of burlap, jute, or coir. The netting shall be oriented in a diamond or hexagonal pattern and shall move freely at all fiber intersections (Leno weave, or equal).

C. FFTs shall be designed, installed, and maintained as specified herein. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede. The cost of FFTs shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required. FFT's shall be removed from site and the materials disposed of in an approved manner once final stabilization has been achieved.

2.13 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT CHANNELS

A. Temporary and permanent channels shall be installed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.30, 6.31 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. Temporary and permanent channels shall be used to convey concentrated runoff without damage from erosion, deposition or flooding.

B. Temporary and permanent channels shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.30, 6.31 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of all temporary and permanent channels shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required.

2.14 TEMPORARY SEDIMENT TRAPS, SEDIMENT BASINS, AND SKIMMER SEDIMENT BASINS

A. Temporary sediment traps shall be constructed as shown on the Contract Drawings, at the termination of all temporary diversions diverting sediment laden runoff, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.60 of the NC ESCPDM. These temporary measures shall not be constructed within an intermittent or perennial stream and shall be installed prior to any land disturbance activities within the drainage area. Temporary sediment traps shall be constructed by excavating the appropriate size rectangular basin and constructing a rock-fill dam on the discharge end. Where specific elevations are not indicated on the Contract Drawings, Contractor shall maintain basins at the depths shown below working grades.

B. Sediment basins shall be installed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.61 and 8.07 of the NC ESCPDM. Skimmer sediment basins shall be installed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.64 of the NC ESCPDM.

Sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins shall be used where drainage areas are too large for temporary sediment traps. Outlet structures must withdraw from basin surface unless drainage area is less than 1 acre. They shall retain sediment on the site and prevent off site sediment in waterways, and they shall not be located in intermittent or perennial streams. Sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins shall be installed prior to any land disturbance activities within the drainage area.

C. Porous baffles shall be installed in temporary sediment traps, sediment basins, and skimmer sediment basins as shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.65 of the NC ESCPDM. Porous baffles are used to reduce the velocity and turbulence of the water flowing through the structure and to facilitate the settling of sediment in the water before discharge. They effectively spread the flow across the entire width of a structure.

D. Material used for porous baffles shall be as indicated on the Contract Drawings. Typical materials include silt fence, coir erosion blanket, coir mesh, and tree protection fence. Other materials may be used as noted on the Contract Drawings and indicated by the Engineer.

E. The structure life for temporary sediment traps shall be limited to 2 years. Temporary sediment traps shall be spaced to limit the maximum tributary drainage area to 5 acres. The basin life of sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins shall be limited to 3 years unless they are designed as permanent structures. The drainage area for sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins shall be limited to 100 acres.

F. The principal spillway for sediment basins shall consist of a riser and barrel. Ensure that the pipe is capable of withstanding the maximum expected load without yielding, buckling, or cracking. The basin should be provided with a skimmer or flashboard riser to dewater the basin from the water surface. The emergency spillway shall be constructed in undisturbed soil. The principal spillway outlet and emergency spillway shall be stabilized as shown on the Contract Drawings. Materials shall be as noted on the Contract Drawings.

G. The principal spillway for skimmer sediment basins shall consist of a skimmer which dewaters the basin from the top of the water surface at a controlled rate. A dewatering rate of 24 to 72 hours is required. The skimmer outlet pipe shall be capable of withstanding the maximum expected load without yielding, buckling, or cracking. The emergency spillway shall be constructed in undisturbed soil whenever possible and shall be lined with impermeable geotextile fabric in accordance with Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles. The principal spillway outlet and emergency spillway shall be stabilized as shown on the Contract Drawings.

H. Temporary sediment traps shall be designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.60 of the NC ESCPDM, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, until the sediment producing areas have been permanently stabilized. The cost of the temporary sediment traps shall include the excavation, grading, fill, baffles,

stone for erosion control, washed stone, geotextile, etc. and all maintenance activities required.

I. Sediment basins shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.61 and 8.07 of the NC ESCPDM. Skimmer sediment basins shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.64 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required.

J. Porous baffles shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.65 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of porous baffles shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required.

2.15 OUTLET STABILIZATION STRUCTURE

A. Outlet stabilization structures shall be constructed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Sections 6.41 and 8.06 of the NC ESCPDM. These structures shall be used where the discharge velocity of the upstream water conveyance structure exceeds the permissible velocity of the receiving channel or disposal area.

B. Structures shall be sized for a capacity equivalent to a 10-year, peak runoff or design discharge of the water conveyance structure, whichever is greater. Riprap materials shall be as specified on the Contract Drawings. Filter fabric shall be Type II Separator Geotextile, as specified in Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles.

C. Outlet stabilization structures shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Sections 6.41 and 8.06 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of outlet stabilization structures shall include all excavation, grading, materials, and all maintenance activities required.

2.16 FLEXIBLE GROWTH MEDIUM (FGM)

A. FGM shall be applied at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, and as specified herein.

B. FGM is a spray-on flexible blanket that controls soil erosion and accelerates seed germination for establishment of vegetation. It is made of wood fibers, man-made fibers, and additives that are applied wet to the prepared surface. The FGM may be mixed with seed and fertilizer prior to application. Seed and fertilizer rates shall comply with applicable stabilization of disturbed area requirements of this Section.

C. FGM shall not be used in areas of concentrated flow unless installed in conjunction with a RECM or HPTRM.

D. FGM shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede. The cost of FGM shall include all materials, installation, and all maintenance activities required.

2.17 TREE PROTECTION FENCE

A. Tree protection fence shall be installed at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings, at other locations indicated by the Engineer, as specified herein, and as detailed in Section 6.05 of the NC ESCPDM.

B. Tree protection fence shall be used to protect trees and their root zones during construction. Tree protection fence shall be brightly-colored, UV-resistant poly barricade fabric. Signs designating the area as protected shall be installed on all sides of the fence. Wording and spacing of the signage shall be as indicated on the Contract Drawings.

C. Tree protection fence shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Part 3.0 of this Section and Section 6.05 of the NC ESCPDM. The cost of tree protection fence shall include all materials as well as all maintenance activities required.

2.18 TREE PROTECTION PLANKING (NOT USED)

2.19 TURBIDITY CURTAIN (NOT USED)

2.20 FILTER BAGS (NOT USED)

2.21 DEWATERING SUMPS (NOT USED)

2.22 FLOCCULANT LOGS / BLOCKS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION AND MAINTENANCE

A. All installation and maintenance shall be conducted in accordance with this specification and the NC ESCPDM. In the event of a discrepancy between this specification, Manufacturer's recommendations and the NC ESCPDM, the more stringent requirements shall take precedence.

B. If applicable, all requirements of the NPDES Permit shall be followed. In the event of a discrepancy between this specification and the NPDES Permit requirements, the more stringent requirements shall take precedence.

C. If possible, erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be established prior to clearing operations in a given area. Where such practice is not feasible, the erosion and sedimentation control device(s) shall be established concurrent with the clearing operations or immediately following completion of the clearing operations.

D. The Contractor shall furnish the labor, materials and equipment required for routine maintenance of all erosion and sedimentation control devices. At a minimum, maintenance shall be scheduled as required for a particular device to maintain the removal efficiency and intent of the device. Note that specific maintenance intervals for various measures and practices are specified within the NC ESCPDM. Of the maintenance requirements specified herein and in the NC ESCPDM, the more stringent shall take precedence for each and every sediment and erosion control measure utilized on the site. Maintenance shall include but not be limited to 1) the removal and satisfactory, legal disposal of accumulated sediment from traps or silt barriers and 2) replacement of filter fabrics used for silt fences and stone impaired by sediment in stone filters, gravel construction entrances, etc. Maintenance as noted in items 1) and 2) above shall be performed as required, and at least once every 3 months for the duration of construction activities. Sediment removed from erosion and sedimentation control devices shall be disposed of in locations that will not result in off-site sedimentation as acceptable to the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner. If no suitable on-site locations are available, all such sediment will be legally disposed of off site, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.02 SILT FENCE

A. Silt Fence shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.62 of the NC ESCPDM. Silt fence shall be erected at the locations shown on the Contract Drawings and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer. Silt fence shall be erected and maintained to the satisfaction of the Engineer until a vegetative ground cover has been established. Replacement of the filter fabric and its associated appurtenances, if required by the Engineer, will be at the Contractor's expense.

B. Silt fence shall not be installed across streams, ditches, waterways or other areas of concentrated flow. Silt fence shall be placed at least 6 feet beyond the toe of slope of any embankment or stockpile area to allow space for ponding and maintenance access.

C. Dig a trench approximately 8 inches deep and 4 inches wide and place the fabric in the bottom of the excavated ditch or use the slicing method to insert the fabric into a cut sliced in the ground with a disc. Ensure that the height of the sediment fence does not exceed 24 inches above the ground surface.

D. Install posts 4 feet apart in critical areas and 6 feet apart on standard applications when extra strength filter fabric is used. When wire mesh support is used, posts shall be installed a maximum of 8 feet apart. Install posts 2 feet deep on the downstream side of the silt fence, as close as possible to the fabric.

E. Joints should be avoided along the fencing. When joints are necessary, securely fasten the filter cloth only at a support post with 4 feet minimum overlap to the next post.

F. Compaction is vitally important for effective results. Compact the soil immediately next to the silt fence fabric with the front wheel of the tractor, skid steer or roller exerting at least

60 pounds per square inch. Compact the upstream side first and then each side twice for a total of 4 trips.

G. Stabilized outlets for silt fence shall be provided at locations shown on the Contract Drawings. The outlet section shall have a maximum width of 4 feet. The height of silt fence at the outlet shall be a maximum of 1 foot. A 5 foot x 5 foot (minimum) apron of #57 washed stone shall be provided on the downstream side of the silt fence outlet.

H. Silt fence shall be erected around all catch basins which are located downstream from any construction work unless other inlet protection is specified. Should any catch basins be indicated to be relocated or modified, silt fence shall be utilized until work is completed on the catch basins. Upon completion of the modification, the area shall be rough graded, as shown on the Contract Drawings, until the end of the project, at which time final grading shall occur.

I. Inspect silt fence at least once a week and after each rainfall event. Make any required repairs immediately.

J. Should the fabric of any silt fence collapse, tear, decompose or become ineffective, replace it promptly. All fabric shall be replaced after the first 6 months of construction activity and every 6 months thereafter until construction activities are complete, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

K. Remove sediment deposits as necessary to provide adequate storage volume for the next rain and to reduce pressure on the fence. Take care to avoid undermining the fence during cleanout.

L. Remove all fencing materials and unstable sediment deposits and bring the area to grade and stabilize it after the contributing drainage area has been properly stabilized. Removal of any silt fence shall be permitted only with the prior approval of the Engineer or the local governing agency.

3.03 STONE FOR EROSION CONTROL

A. Stone for erosion control shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.15 of the ESCPDM. Stone for erosion control shall be dumped and placed in such manner that the larger rock fragments are uniformly distributed throughout the rock mass and the smaller fragments fill the voids between the larger fragments. Rearranging of individual stones by equipment or by hand shall only be required to the extent necessary to secure the results specified above, to protect structures from damage when rock material is placed against the structures, or to protect the underlying Separator Geotextile from damage during installation.

B. Inspect at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Remove accumulated sediment and replace stone impaired by sediment as necessary.

3.04 RIPRAP

A. Riprap shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.15 of the NC ESCPDM. Riprap shall be graded so that the smaller stones are uniformly distributed through the mass. The Contractor may place the stone by mechanical methods, augmented by hand placing where necessary or ordered by the Engineer. The placed riprap shall form a properly graded, dense, neat layer of stone. The placed riprap shall have a minimum depth of 24 inches unless otherwise specified by the Engineer. Type II Separator Geotextile, as specified in Section 31 05 19 – Geotextiles, shall be used under all riprap unless otherwise noted.

B. Inspect periodically for scour or dislodged stones. Control of weed and brush growth may be needed.

3.05 ROLLED EROSION CONTROL MATTING (RECM)

A. RECMs shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.17 of the NC ESCPDM. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to place RECMs in permanent channels or on slopes at other locations in addition to those shown on the Contract Drawings. If Manufacturer's instructions are more stringent, they shall supersede.

B. The Contractor shall place the RECMs where directed immediately after the channel or slope has been properly graded and, if applicable, prepared, fertilized, and seeded.

C. Grade the surface of the installation area so that the ground is smooth and loose. When seeding prior to installation, follow the steps in Section 6.10 (Temporary Seeding) and 6.11 (Permanent Seeding) of the NC ESCPDM as applicable. Remove all large rocks, debris, etc. so as to ensure that good contact between the RECM and the ground is maintained so that no erosion occurs beneath the RECM. Terminal anchor trenches are required at RECM ends and intermittent trenches must be constructed across channels at 25-foot intervals. Terminal anchor trenches should be a minimum of 12 inches in depth and 6 inches in width, while intermittent trenches should be a minimum of 6 inches deep and 6 inches wide. Take care to maintain direct contact between the soil and the RECM.

D. For slope installation, place RECM 2-3 feet over top of slope and into an approximately 12 inch deep by 6 inch wide excavated end trench. Using staples, stakes, or pins, anchor the RECM at 1 foot intervals along the bottom of the trench, backfill, and compact. Along the slope, pin the RECM in a 3 foot center-to-center pattern; provide a minimum 3 inch overlap for adjacent rolls.

E. For channel installations, excavate 12 inch deep by 6 inch wide terminal trenches across the upper and lower end of the lined channel. Anchor the RECM at a minimum of 25 foot intervals utilizing either two rows of anchors or 6 inch by 6 inch cross trenches. Bury outside RECM edges in longitudinal trenches 6 inches deep and wide along the channel edges. Pin the RECM in at 1 foot intervals along the bottom of terminal trenches, backfill, and compact. Overlap adjacent rolls a minimum of 3 inches and pin at 1 foot intervals.

Place the first RECM at the downstream end of the channel and unroll upstream. When starting installation of a new roll, begin in a trench or shingle-lap ends of rolls a minimum of 1 foot with upstream RECM on top to prevent uplifting.

F. Staples, stakes, and pins shall be driven so that the top is flush with the ground.

G. During the establishment period, check RECMs at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Immediately make repairs. Good contact with the ground must be maintained. Monitor and repair the RECM as necessary until ground cover is established.

3.06 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT DIVERSIONS

A. Temporary diversions shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.20 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. Permanent diversions shall be designed, installed, and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.21 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide temporary and permanent diversions at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Remove and properly dispose of all trees, debris, etc. Fill and compact all ditches, swales, etc. that will be crossed to natural ground level or above.

C. Excavate, shape and stabilize diversions as shown on the Contract Drawings and described herein. Unless otherwise noted, provide vegetative stabilization immediately after installation of permanent diversions. Temporary diversions that are to serve longer than 7 working days shall be seeded and mulched as soon as they are constructed to preserve dike height and reduce maintenance. Seed and mulch disturbed areas draining into the diversions within 14 calendar days of completing any phase of grading.

D. For temporary diversions, ensure that the top of the dike is not lower at any point than the design elevation plus the specified settlement. Provide sufficient room around temporary diversions to permit machine re-grading and cleanout. Vegetate the ridge of temporary diversions immediately after construction unless they will remain in place less than 7 working days.

E. Provide outlet protection adequate to accept flow from diversion plus any other contributing runoff. Sediment-laden runoff shall be routed through a sediment-trapping device.

F. Inspect temporary diversions once a week and after every rainfall event. Immediately remove sediment from the flow area and repair the diversion ridge. Carefully check outlets and make timely repairs as needed. When the area protected is permanently stabilized, remove the ridge and the channel to blend with the natural ground level and appropriately stabilize it. Inspect permanent diversions weekly and after every rainfall event during construction operations until permanent vegetation is established. After vegetation is established, inspect after major storms. Immediately remove any debris and make repairs as needed in a timely manner. Maintain healthy vegetation at all times.

3.07 TEMPORARY SLOPE DRAINS

A. Temporary slope drains shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.32 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide temporary slope drains with inlet and outlet protection and associated diversion channels at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings, and at other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Place slope drains on undisturbed soil or well compacted fill. Slightly slope the section of pipe under the dike toward its outlet. Hand-tamp the soil under and around the entrance section in lifts not to exceed 6 inches.

C. Ensure that all slope drain connections are watertight. Ensure that all fill material is well-compacted. Securely fasten the exposed section of the drain with grommets or stakes spaced no more than 10 feet apart. Extend the drain beyond the toe of the slope and provide outlet protection.

D. Immediately stabilize all disturbed areas following construction.

E. Inspect the temporary slope drain, inlet and outlet protection, and supporting diversions weekly and after every rainfall event and promptly make any necessary repairs. When the protected area has been permanently stabilized, temporary measures may be removed, materials disposed of properly, and all disturbed areas stabilized appropriately.

3.08 TEMPORARY GRAVEL CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCES/EXITS

A. Temporary gravel construction entrances/exits shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.06 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide temporary gravel construction entrances/exits at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Maintain the gravel pad as specified in Section 6.06 of the NC ESCPDM and in a condition to prevent mud or sediment from leaving the construction site. This may require periodic topdressing with 2 – 3 inch stone. Inspect each construction entrance at least weekly and after each rainfall event and replace stone impaired by sediment as necessary. Immediately remove all objectionable materials spilled, washed, or tracked onto public roadways.

C. If, despite the use of a gravel construction entrance/exit, most of the mud and sediment are not removed from vehicle tires, tire washing may be necessary as detailed in Section 6.06 of the NC ESCPDM. If necessary, this shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.09 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT STABILIZATION OF DISTURBED AREAS

A. The Contractor shall temporarily stabilize disturbed areas that will not be brought to final grade within 14 calendar days unless as noted in Paragraph 1.01 F. of this Section.

Temporary seeding shall be applied on areas that include diversions, dams, temporary sediment basins, temporary road banks and topsoil stockpiles. Areas to be stabilized with permanent vegetation must be seeded or planted within 14 working days after final grade is reached, unless temporary stabilization is applied. Temporary seeding provides protection for no more than 1 year, after which permanent stabilization should be initiated.

B. Complete grading before preparing seedbeds and install all necessary erosion control measures. Minimize steep slopes. If soils become compacted during grading, loosen to a depth of 6-8 inches.

C. Reseed and mulch temporary seeding areas where seedling emergence is poor, or where erosion occurs, as soon as possible. Do not mow. Protect from traffic as much as possible.

D. Refer to Section 6.10 of the NC ESCPDM for additional information and specifications regarding seedbed requirements, plant selection, seeding and mulching for temporary seeding applications.

E. The operation of equipment is restricted on slopes steeper than 3:1. Provisions for vegetation establishment can be made during final grading. Vegetation chosen for these sites must not require mowing or other intensive maintenance. Good mulching practices are critical for protecting against erosion on steep slopes.

F. Generally, a stand of vegetation cannot be determined to be fully established until soil cover has been maintained for one full year from planting. Inspect seeded areas for failure and make necessary repairs and reseedings within the same season, if possible.

G. Reseeding – If a stand has inadequate cover, re-evaluate choice of plant materials and quantities of lime and fertilizer. Re-establish the stand after seedbed preparation or over-seed the stand. Consider seeding temporary, annual species if the time of year is not appropriate for permanent seeding.

H. If vegetation fails to grow, soil must be tested to determine if acidity or nutrient imbalance is responsible.

I. Fertilization - On the typical disturbed site, full establishment usually requires re-fertilization in the second growing season. Fine turf requires annual maintenance fertilization. Use soil tests if possible or follow the guidelines given for the specific seeding mixture.

J. Refer to Section 6.11 of the NC ESCPDM for additional information and specifications regarding seedbed requirements, plant selection, seeding and mulching for permanent seeding applications.

K. Refer to Section 6.12 of the NC ESCPDM for additional information and specifications regarding soil preparation, sod selection, installation, and maintenance for sodding.

L. Inspect all seeded areas weekly and after heavy rains until permanent cover is established. Inspect within 6 weeks of planting to see if stands are adequate. Fertilize, reseed and mulch damaged and sparse areas immediately.

3.10 CHECK DAMS AND CHECK DAMS WITH WEIRS

A. Check dams shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.83 of the NC ESCPDM. Check dams with weirs shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.87 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide check dams or check dams with weirs at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Stone shall be placed on a filter fabric foundation. Center stone shall be at least 9 inches below natural ground level and stone shall extend 1.5 feet beyond ditch bank.

C. For check dams with weirs, provide an apron with a length 3 times the height of the dam and a width a minimum of 4 feet. A 12-inch layer (minimum) of sediment control stone shall be placed on the upstream side of the dam. Excavate sediment storage area to the dimensions shown on the Contract Drawings.

D. Fiber filtration tubes and sediment logs may be specified for use as check dams. These measures shall be installed according to instructions included herein. If Manufacturer’s recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede.

E. Spacing shall be such that the elevation of the top of the lower dam is the same as the toe elevation of the upper dam.

F. Check dams and check dams with weirs shall be inspected at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Sediment, limbs and other debris shall be cleared from the channel. Repairs shall be made immediately.

3.11 INLET EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

A. Inlet erosion control measures shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the applicable requirements of Sections 6.50 through 6.55 of the NC ESCPDM. If inlet erosion control measures shown on the Contract Drawings are not included in the NC ESCPDM, Engineer’s and Manufacturer’s instructions for design, installation, and maintenance shall be followed, with more stringent instructions superseding. The Contractor shall provide inlet erosion control measures at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings, and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Excavated drop inlet protection shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Section 6.50 of the NC ESCPDM. Drainage area is limited to 1 acre. The minimum volume of excavated area around the drop inlet is 1800 ft3/acre disturbed. Minimum depth of the excavated area shall be 1 foot and maximum depth shall be 2 feet as

measured from the crest of the inlet structure. Weep holes shall be protected by gravel. Inspect the excavated basin at least weekly and after every storm event until the contributing drainage area has been permanently stabilized. Remove sediment when the storage volume has been reduced by one-half.

C. Block and gravel inlet protection shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Section 6.52 of the NC ESCPDM. Drainage area shall be limited to 1 acre unless site conditions allow for frequent removal of accumulated sediment. The height of the block barrier shall be no more than 12 inches and no less than 24 inches. On the bottom row, place some of the blocks on their side to allow for dewatering. Place wire mesh over all block openings to hold gravel in place. Lateral support may be provided by placement of 2 x 4 wood studs through block openings. Place gravel 2 inches below the top of the block barrier. The top elevation of the structure must be at least 6 inches below the ground elevation downslope from the inlet to ensure that all stormwater flows over the structure and enters the storm drain instead of bypassing the structure. Block and gravel inlet protection shall not be used near the edge of fill material and shall not divert water away from the storm drain. Inspect at least weekly and after every storm event until the contributing drainage area has been permanently stabilized. Remove sediment as necessary to provide adequate storage volume for subsequent rains. Replace stone as needed.

D. Rock pipe inlet protection shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Section 6.55 of the NC ESCPDM. Rock pipe inlet protection may be used at pipes with a maximum diameter of 36 inches. It shall not be installed in intermittent or perennial streams. The minimum crest width of the riprap berm shall be 3 feet, with a minimum bottom width of 11 feet and minimum height of 2 feet. The top of the riprap shall be 1 foot lower than the shoulder of the embankment or diversions. The outside face of the riprap should be covered with a 12-inch thick layer of #5 or #57 washed stone. The sediment storage area should be excavated upstream of the rock pipe inlet protection, with a minimum depth of 18 inches below grade. The rock pipe inlet protection shall be inspected at least weekly and after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Repairs shall be made immediately. Remove sediment when the volume of the sediment storage area has been decreased by one-half and replace the contaminated part of the gravel facing.

3.12 FIBER FILTRATION TUBES (FFTS) AND SEDIMENT LOGS

A. FFTs and sediment logs shall be placed along slopes to function as slope breaks and to minimize sediment transport and in diversions/channels to serve as check dams. The Contractor shall provide FFTs and sediment logs at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings, and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. FFTs and sediment logs shall be installed to maintain contact with the soil surface. Install prior to seeding. May be installed before or after installation of RECMs.

C. Anchor the upstream/upslope side of the FFTs using wire staples or approved devices at 1-foot intervals. Drive wooden stakes through downstream/downslope side of the FFTs

at 2-foot intervals. Take care not to compress the FFTs. Backfill and compact loose soil against the upstream/upslope side. Overlap adjacent FFT ends by a minimum of 1 foot.

D. For channel installation, construct anchor trench 3 inches deep by FFT diameter and place loose soil against upstream side of FFT. For channel gradients of 2%, install trenches on 25-foot intervals. Decrease interval distance with steeper channel gradients or more highly erosive soils.

E. Any sediment accumulation at the base of the FFT must be removed when it reaches one-third of the height of the tube. FFT may need to be removed if fully loaded with captured sediment for maximum product performance. FFTs are to be left in place or removed from the site as directed by the Engineer.

F. Sediment logs do not require installation trenches. Wood stakes shall be placed at least every 2 feet along the length of the sediment log. Stakes shall only penetrate the netting around the log. They shall not be driven through the center of the log. Sediment logs are to be left in place or removed from the site as directed by the Engineer.

G. The FFTs and sediment logs shall be inspected at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Look for signs of flow undercutting the logs. Re-anchor and replace as necessary.

3.13 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT CHANNELS

A. Temporary and permanent channels shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.30, 6.31 and 8.05 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide temporary and/or permanent channels at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings, and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Remove all trees, brush, stumps, etc. from the channel area and dispose of properly.

C. Excavate the channel to the dimensions shown on the plans, over-excavating to allow for liner thickness. Remove and properly dispose of all excess soil so that surface water may enter the channel freely.

D. Armor the channel as specified on the Contract Drawings. If the specified channel lining requires an establishment period, protect the channel with mulch or a temporary liner sufficient to withstand anticipated velocities during this period.

E. During the establishment period, inspect channels weekly and after every rainfall. After lining has been fully established, inspect channels after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Immediately make repairs.

F. Perform all channel construction to keep erosion and water pollution to a minimum. Immediately upon completion of the channel, vegetate all disturbed areas or otherwise protect them against soil erosion. Where channel construction will take longer than 7 days, stabilize channels by reaches.

G. Inspect the channel outlet and all road crossings for bank stability and evidence of piping or scour holes. Give special attention to outlets and points where concentrated flow enters the channel.

H. Maintain all vegetation adjacent to and in the channel in a healthy, vigorous condition to protect the area from erosion.

I. Remove all significant sediment accumulations to maintain the designed carrying capacity.

3.14 TEMPORARY SEDIMENT TRAPS, SEDIMENT BASINS, AND SKIMMER SEDIMENT BASINS

A. Temporary sediment traps shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.60 of the NC ESCPDM. Sediment basins shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.61 of the NC ESCPDM. Skimmer sediment basins shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.64 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide these structures at all locations shown on the Contract Drawings and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

B. Care shall be taken to ensure that proper site preparation operations are conducted prior to trap or basin construction. Clear, grub and strip embankment location.

C. A cut-off trench shall be excavated along the center line of the earth fill embankment for sediment basins and skimmer sediment basins. Keep the trench dry during backfilling and compaction operations.

D. Fill material shall be free of roots, woody vegetation, rocks, and other objectionable materials. Fill shall be placed in 6 to 8-inch layers and compacted. Construct the embankment to an elevation 10 percent (minimum of 6 inches) higher than the design height to allow for settling.

E. Inlets to the sediment traps and basins shall be constructed so as to prevent erosion. Use diversions to divert sediment-laden water to the upper end of the basin.

F. Shape the sediment trap or basin to the specified dimensions.

G. Following construction of the embankment, clear the sediment trap or basin area below the crest elevation of the spillway to facilitate sediment cleanout. Provide access for cleanout of accumulated sediment.

H. Spillway/outlet configuration shall be constructed as specified below.

I. Temporary sediment trap

1. Construct riprap outlet in embankment. Use filter fabric or a keyway cutoff trench between the riprap and the soil to protect it from piping. The outlet weir must be

level and constructed to grade to assure design capacity. Ensure that the stone spillway outlet extends downstream past the toe of the embankment until the outlet velocity is acceptable for the receiving stream.

2. Provide emergency bypass in natural, stable areas, located so that flow will not damage the embankment.

J. Sediment basin

1. Securely attach the riser to the barrel or barrel stub to make a watertight structural connection. Secure all barrel connections with approved watertight assemblies. Install anti-seep collar(s) as noted on the Contract Drawings. Ensure that the pipe stays in firm contact with its foundation when compacting fill around the pipe. Do not use pervious material as backfill around the pipe. Anchor the riser to prevent floatation. Install trash guard to prevent the riser and barrel from becoming clogged.

2. Install basin dewatering mechanism as noted on the Contract Drawings.

3. Install outlet protection as specified at principal spillway outlet. Install the emergency spillway in undisturbed soil and provide stabilization as specified.

K. Skimmer sediment basin

1. Excavate a shallow pit under the skimmer or provide a low support of stone or timber under the skimmer to prevent the skimming device from settling into the mud.

2. Place the barrel on a firm, smooth foundation of impervious soil. Do not use pervious material to backfill around the pipe. Ensure that the barrel stays in firm contact with its foundation when compacting fill around the pipe.

3. Assemble the skimmer following the Manufacturer’s instructions, or as designed.

4. Lay the assembled skimmer on the bottom of the basin with the flexible joint at the inlet of the barrel pipe. Attach the flexible joint to the barrel pipe and position the skimmer over the excavated pit or support. Attach a rope to the skimmer and anchor it to the side of the basin so that the skimmer may be pulled to the side for maintenance.

5. Install the spillway in undisturbed soil to the greatest extent possible and line with laminated plastic or impermeable geotextile fabric. Anchor the edges of the fabric in a trench with staples or pins. Install outlet protection as specified at the principal spillway outlet.

L. Install porous baffles in temporary sediment traps, sediment basins, and skimmer sediment basins as shown on the Contract Drawings and as specified herein. Porous baffles shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements

of Section 6.65 of the NC ESCPDM. The Contractor shall provide porous baffles at all locations noted on the Contract Drawings, and at all other locations as may be directed by the Engineer.

1. Care shall be taken when installing porous baffles so they perform as designed. Baffle material shall be secured at the bottom and sides of sediment trap or basin. Fabric shall not be spliced but a continuous piece shall be used across the trap or basin.

2. Install at least three rows of baffles between the inlet and outlet discharge point. Sediment traps and basins less than 20 feet in length may use 2 baffles.

3. Posts or sawhorses shall be installed across the width of the sediment trap or basin unless an alternate baffle configuration is shown on the Contract Drawings. Steel posts shall be driven to a depth of 24 inches, spaced a maximum of 4 feet apart. Baffle weirs shall be installed at locations and according to details on the Contract Drawings. Except in locations of baffle weirs, the top of the fabric shall be 6 inches higher than the invert of the spillway and 2 inches lower than the top of the berms.

M. Sediment traps and basins shall be constructed so that the area disturbed and resulting erosion is minimized. The emergency spillway, embankment, and all other disturbed areas above the crest of the principal spillway are to be stabilized immediately after construction.

N. Sediment traps and basins may attract children and should be considered dangerous. Steep side slopes should be avoided and fences with warning signs may be necessary if trespassing is likely.

O. Inspect temporary sediment traps, sediment basins, and skimmer sediment basins once a week and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than ½ inch of rain per 24-hour period. Repairs shall be made immediately.

1. Sediment, limbs and other debris shall be cleared and the trap or basin shall be restored to its original dimensions when it accumulates to one-half the design depth or more frequently as directed by the Engineer. Sediment material removed from traps and basins shall be disposed of by the Contractor in locations that will not result in off-site sedimentation as acceptable to the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Owner. If no suitable on-site locations are available, all such sediment will be legally disposed of off site, at no additional cost to the Owner.

2. The embankment, spillways and outlet shall be checked for erosion damage and the embankment shall be checked for piping and settlement. Immediately fill any settlement of the embankment to slightly above design grade. Any riprap displaced from the spillway must be replaced immediately. Replace contaminated gravel facing of riprap outlets as necessary. Inspect vegetation. Reseed and re-mulch as necessary.

3. Baffles, fabric and skimmer shall be inspected for damage. Repairs shall be made immediately. Re-anchor baffles if water is flowing under or around them.

4. Debris shall be removed from the skimmer to prevent clogging. Special precautions shall be taken in winter to prevent the skimmer from plugging with ice.

3.15 OUTLET STABILIZATION STRUCTURE

A. Outlet stabilization structures shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Sections 6.41 and 8.06 of the NC ESCPDM.

B. The Contractor shall ensure the subgrade, riprap and gravel filter conforms to the grading limits shown on the plans.

C. Riprap shall be installed in accordance with the specifications contained herein, with filter fabric placed under the riprap.

D. The apron shall be constructed on zero grade with no overfill. Ensure the apron is properly aligned with the receiving stream.

E. All disturbed areas shall be stabilized with vegetation immediately after construction.

F. Outlet stabilization structures shall be inspected at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than ½ inch of rain per 24-hour period to see if any erosion around or below the riprap has taken place or if stones have been dislodged. Repairs shall be made immediately.

3.16 FLEXIBLE GROWTH MEDIUM

A. Flexible growth medium shall be applied and maintained in accordance with the requirements detailed herein. If Manufacturer’s recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede.

B. Grade area according to the Contract Drawings and prepare seedbed in accordance with this Section and Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping.

C. Apply flexible growth medium at rate noted on the Contract Drawings. Application may be made either in conjunction with application of seed and fertilizer or following application of seed and fertilizer. Slope interruption devices are recommended when slope lengths exceed 100 feet. Traffic shall be kept off treated areas.

D. Areas treated with flexible growth medium shall be inspected at least weekly and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than ½ inch of rain per 24-hour period until vegetation is established. Reapply in areas where seedling emergence is poor.

3.17 TREE PROTECTION FENCE

A. Tree protection fence shall be installed and maintained in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.05 of the NC ESCPDM. If Manufacturer's recommendations are more stringent, they shall supersede.

B. Install tree protection fence around all designated tree protection areas prior to clearing, deliveries, and other construction activities onsite. Post signs designating area as protected on all sides of the fencing.

C. Inspect tree protection fence weekly. Repair and replace as needed.

3.18 TREE PROTECTION PLANKING (NOT USED)

3.19 TTURBIDITY CURTAINS (NOT USED)

3.20 FILTER BAG (NOT USED)

3.21 DEWATERING SUMP (NOT USED)

3.22 FLOCCULANT LOGS / BLOCKS (NOT USED)

3.23 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All storm sewer piping shall be blocked at the end of every working day until the inlet is constructed above grade.

B. All streets around the construction area shall be scraped as necessary to prevent accumulation of dirt and debris.

C. The Contractor shall provide adequate means to prevent any sediment from entering any storm drains, curb inlets (curb inlet filter box), ditches, streams, or bodies of water downstream of any area disturbed by construction. Excavation materials shall be placed upstream of any trench or other excavation to prevent sedimentation of offsite areas. Silt fence will be provided, at no additional cost to the Owner, around excavation materials if deemed necessary by the Engineer. In areas where a natural buffer area exists between the work area and the closest stream or water course, this area shall not be disturbed.

D. The Engineer may direct the Contractor to place any additional sediment and erosion control devices at other locations not shown on the Drawings.

3.24 INSPECTIONS AND MAINTENANCE

A. The Contractor shall designate an Authorized Representative to perform inspections and maintenance as described herein. Contractor shall perform regular inspections and maintain records as follows:

1. Inspections shall be performed, at a minimum, once every seven calendar days and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period.

2. A rain gauge shall be maintained in good working order on the site and all rainfall amounts recorded throughout the duration of construction activities.

3. Inspection reports must be available on-site during business hours unless a site-specific exemption is approved.

4. Inspection records must be kept for 3 years following completion of construction and be available upon request.

5. Electronically-available records may be substituted under certain conditions as approved by Land Quality and DWQ.

B. During inspections, the following will be observed and appropriate maintenance activities shall be performed:

1. The conformance to specifications and current condition of all erosion and sediment control structures.

2. The effectiveness and operational success of all erosion and sediment control measures.

3. The presence of sediments or other pollutants in storm water runoff at all runoff discharge points.

4. The presence of sediments or other pollutants in receiving waters.

5. Evidence of off-site tracking at all locations where vehicles enter or exit the site.

6. Evidence of impacts to water quality due to site activities pertaining to equipment operation and maintenance, material handling, and material storage and construction laydown areas exposed to precipitation.

C. Immediate action shall be taken to repair/maintain erosion and sediment control measures that are not performing as designed. The State/Commonwealth reserves the right to stop all construction activities not related to these measures until such deficiencies are repaired.

D. In areas that have undergone final stabilization, inspections and, if necessary, maintenance by Contractor will occur at least once per month for the duration of the contract or project, whichever is longer.

3.25 MONITORING AND REPORTING

A. Monitoring: The Contractor shall be responsible for the implementation of the Inspections and Maintenance Procedures as included in the approved erosion and

sediment control plan. The implementation must comply with guidelines as set forth in the NPDES General Permit NCG010000 (Part I Section B: Minimum Monitoring and Reporting Requirements), as well as those of any local regulatory authorities. Minimum monitoring requirements are as follows:

1. A rain gauge shall be maintained in good working order on the site.

2. A written record of the daily rainfall amounts shall be retained. (Note: if no rainfall occurred the Contractor must record “zero”).

3. The control measures shall be inspected to ensure that they are operating correctly. Inspection records must be maintained for each inspection event and for each measure. All erosion and sedimentation control measures must be inspected by the Contractor at least once every seven calendar days and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period unless otherwise noted herein. Some measures require inspection following each rainfall event.

4. Once land disturbance has begun on the site, stormwater runoff discharge outfalls shall be inspected by observation for erosion, sedimentation and other stormwater discharge characteristics such as clarity, floating solids, and oil sheens. Inspections of the outfalls shall be made at least once every seven calendar days and within 24 hours after any storm event of greater than 1 inch of rain per 24-hour period. Inspection records must be maintained for each inspection event and for each discharge location.

5. If any visible sedimentation is leaving the site or entering waters of the State/Commonwealth, corrective action shall be taken immediately to control the discharge of sediments. Where visible deposition of sediment has occurred in surface waters or wetlands, the Contractor must verbally contact the Engineer and the Division of Water Quality within 24 hours of becoming aware of the deposition. Written notification shall be made to the Engineer and the Division of Water Quality within 5 days of becoming aware of the deposition.

B. Reporting: The Contractor must keep a record of inspections onsite with a copy of the approved erosion and sediment control plan. Inspection records shall be made available to DWQ or its authorized agent upon request. Copies of inspection records shall be sent to the Engineer on a monthly basis. The records must provide the details of each inspection including observations and corrective actions taken as described below. The required rainfall and monitoring observations shall be recorded on an “Inspection Record for Activities Under Stormwater General Permit NCG010000” form provided by DEQ or a similar inspection form that is inclusive of all of the elements contained in the Division’s form. A sample inspection form can be found at the end of this Section.

1. Control Measure Inspections: Inspection records must include at a minimum: 1) identification of the measures inspected, 2) date and time of the inspection, 3) name of the person performing the inspection, 4) indication of whether the

measures were operating properly, 5) description of maintenance needs for the measure, 6) corrective actions taken and 7) date of actions taken.

2. Stormwater Discharge Inspections: Inspection records must include at a minimum: 1) identification of the discharge outfall inspected, 2) date and time of the inspection, 3) name of the person performing the inspection, 4) evidence of indicators of stormwater pollution such as oil sheen, floating or suspended solids or discoloration, 5) indication of visible sediment leaving the site, 6) actions taken to correct/prevent sedimentation and 7) date of actions taken.

3. Visible Sedimentation Found Outside the Site Limits: Inspection records must include 1) an explanation as to the actions taken to control future releases, 2) actions taken to clean up or stabilize the sediment that has left the site limits and 3) the date of actions taken.

4. Visible Sedimentation Found in Streams or Wetlands: All inspections should include evaluation of streams or wetlands onsite or offsite (where accessible) to determine if visible sedimentation has occurred.

5. Visible Stream Turbidity: If the discharge from a site results in visible stream turbidity, inspection records must record that evidence and actions taken to reduce sediment contributions.

C. The State/Commonwealth reserves the right to use its own resources to duplicate monitoring and verify the work required by the Contractor in this Section.

1. The Sedimentation Pollution Control Act requires persons responsible for land-disturbing activities to inspect a project after each phase of the project to make sure that the approved erosion and sedimentation control plan is being followed.

2. The self-inspection program is separate from the weekly self-monitoring program of the NPDES Stormwater Permit for Construction Activities. The focus of the self-inspection report is the installation and maintenance of erosion and sedimentation control measures according to the approved plan. The inspections should be conducted after each phase of the project and continued until permanent ground cover is established.

3. The Self-Inspection Report form may be found at the end of this Section and is also available as an Excel spreadsheet from the NC DEMLR Land Quality Section web site, http://www.dlr.enr.state.nc.us/pages/sedimentation_new.html

D. Sites discharging to streams named on the state's 303(d) list as impaired for sediment-related causes may be required to perform additional monitoring, inspections or application of more stringent management practices if it is determined that the additional requirements are needed to assure compliance with the federal or state/commonwealth impaired-waters conditions. Inspection records must be maintained for each inspection event and for each discharge location. If a discharge covered by this permit enters a stream segment that is listed on the Impaired Stream List for sediment-related causes,

and a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) has been prepared for those pollutants, the Permittee must implement measures to ensure that the discharge of pollutants from the site is consistent with the assumptions and meets the requirements of the approved TMDL. The DWQ 303(d) list can be found at: http://h2o.enr.state.nc.us/tmdl/General_303d.htm/.

3.26 REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY SEDIMENT CONTROL STRUCTURES

A. At such time that temporary erosion and sediment control structures are no longer required under this item, the Contractor shall notify the Engineer of its intent and schedule for the removal of the temporary structures. The Contractor shall obtain the Engineer's approval in writing prior to removal. Once the Contractor has received such written approval from the Engineer, the Contractor shall remove, as approved, the temporary structures and all sediments accumulated at the removed structure shall be returned upgrade and stabilized so they do not re-erode. In areas where temporary control structures are removed, the site shall be left in a condition that will restore original drainage. Such areas shall be evenly graded and seeded as specified in Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping.

END OF SECTION

(The Inspection Record for Activities under North Carolina Stormwater General Permit NCG01000 and the Land Quality Self-Inspection Report Form follows this Section.)

INSPECTION AND MONITORING RECORDS FOR ACTIVITIES UNDER STORMWATER GENERAL PERMIT NCG010000 AND SELF-INSPECTION RECORDS FOR LAND DISTURBING ACTIVITIES PER G.S. 113A-54.1

Project Name				**Land Quality or Local Program Project/Permit #**	
Approving Authority		**Date of Plan Approval**		**Expiration Date, if applicable**	
NCG010000 Certificate of Coverage Number				**Date of COC Issuance**	
Coverage under the NCG010000 permit must be renewed annually, if issued after April 1, 2019 until Notice of Termination is filed and approved.					

PART 1A: Rainfall Data

	Rain Amount (inches) Daily Rainfall Required. If no rain, indicate with a "zero"
M	
T	
W	
Th	
F	
Sat (Inspection Optional)	
Sun (Inspection Optional)	

PART 1B: Phase(s) of the Plan

Check ALL applicable box(es) that apply to completed & current phases	**X**
Initial installation of erosion and sediment control measures	
Clearing and grubbing of existing ground cover	
Completion of any grading that requires ground cover	
Completion of all land-disturbing activity, construction or	
Permanent ground cover sufficient to restrain erosion has been	

Are there any site or project conditions that limit completion of inspection? If yes, explain conditions and areas of site that were inaccessible.	

PART 2: STORMWATER PLANS AND CONTROLS: For each question below, mark the corresponding box as Yes, No or N/A. For all items marked "No", note in Part 3A the Reference letter and provide the Corrective Action and location of the deficiency, the original date noted, and the date it was noted as being corrected. NOTE: Reference letters may be used multiple times.

Reference	Part 2A: Storm Water Plans and Related Documents	Yes	No	N/A
A	Is the approval letter or certificate, COC and a copy of the NPDES Construction General Permit (CGP) on site? (Readily available electronic copy of CGP is acceptable)			
B	Is the approved plan on site and current?			
Reference	**Part 2B: Stormwater Pollutant Controls**	**Yes**	**No**	**N/A**
C	Are erosion and sediment controls that are shown on the approved plan installed and operating properly with no repairs needed?			
D	Are stormwater controls that are shown on the approved plan installed and operating properly with no repairs needed?			
E	Vehicle Tracking: Are construction entrances operating properly with no repairs needed?			
F	Soil Stabilization: Are areas of the site where construction activities have ceased been properly stabilized within the required timeframes?			
G	Are earthen stockpiles stabilized or otherwise protected from sediment loss, and located at least 50 feet away or downhill from drain inlets and surface waters?			
Reference	**Part 2C: Non-Storm Water Pollutant Controls**	**Yes**	**No**	**N/A**
H	Concrete, stucco, paint, etc. washouts: Are washouts installed, properly located, posted and operating with no repairs needed?			
I	Solid & hazardous wastes: Are trash, debris, and hazardous materials properly managed?			
J	Sanitary waste: Are portable toilets properly located and operating with no visible repairs needed?			
K	Equipment and stored fluids: Are fuels, lubricants, hydraulic fluids, etc. contained so as not to enter surface and ground waters?			
Report oil spills and the release of hazardous substances to the appropriate DEQ Regional Office via phone call or email within 24 hours of discovery. https://deq.nc.gov/contact/regional-offices				

For any items listed in the section below, a full description of sedimentation is required in Part 3A. This includes, but may not be limited to: location, estimated amount of sediment that has left the site and/or entered waters, apparent causes of the sediment loss, and what corrective actions need to be taken to prevent this from recurring.

Reference	Part 2D: Sedimentation	Yes	No	N/A
L	Are sediment or other pollutants noted beyond the approved or permitted limits of disturbance?			
M	Are BMPs detected as releasing sediment or other pollutants into receiving waters?			
Report visible sedimentation into streams or wetlands to the appropriate DEQ Regional Office via phone call or email within 24 hours of discovery. https://deq.nc.gov/contact/regional-offices				

PART 3A: EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL MEASURES: Measures must be inspected at least ONCE PER 7 CALENDAR DAYS AND WITHIN 24 HOURS OF A RAINFALL EVENT EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 1.0 INCH PER 24 HOUR PERIOD. *Add rows as needed.*

Erosion and Sedimentation Control Measures Inspected			**Inspection Date**	**Describe Actions Needed** **Corrective actions should be performed as soon as possible and before the next storm event**	**Date Previous Action(s) Observed as Corrected**
Measure ID **or** Location and Description	Reference(s)	Operating Properly? (Y/N)			
Report unanticipated bypasses, or non-compliance conditions that may endanger health or the environment, to the appropriate DEQ Regional Office via phone call or email within 24 hours of discovery. https://deq.nc.gov/contact/regional-offices					

PART 3B: STORMWATER DISCHARGE OUTFALLS (SDOs): SDOs must be inspected at least ONCE PER 7 CALENDAR DAYS AND WITHIN 24 HOURS OF A RAINFALL EVENT EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 1.0 INCH PER 24 HOUR PERIOD. *Add rows as needed.*

Stormwater Discharge Outfalls Inspected					**Inspection Date**	**Describe Actions Needed** **Corrective actions should be performed as soon as possible and before the next storm event**	**Date Previous Action(s) Observed as Corrected**
Stormwater Discharge Outfall ID or Location	Any Visible Sedimentation in Streams, Wetlands or Outside Site Limits? (Y/N)	Any Increase in Stream Turbidity from Discharge? (Y/N)	Any Visible Erosion below SDO? (Y/N)	Any visible oil sheen, floating or suspended solids or discoloration? (Y/N)			

PART 3C: GROUND STABILIZATION: Must be recorded, at a minimum, after each phase. *Add rows as needed.*

Site area description and location where construction activities have temporarily or permanently ceased	Time Limit for Ground Cover (see table below)	Have stabilization measures been installed? (Y/N)	Temporary or Permanent Stabilization (T/P)	Is Ground Cover Sufficient to Restrain Erosion? (Y/N)	**Original Inspection Date**	**Describe Actions Needed** **Corrective actions should be performed as soon as possible and before the next storm event**	**Date Previous Action(s) Observed as Corrected**

GROUND STABILIZATION TIMEFRAMES		
Site Area Description	**Stabilization**	**Timeframe Variations**
Perimeter dikes, swales and slopes	7 Days	None
High Quality Water (HQW) Zones	7 Days	None
Slopes Steeper than 3:1	7 Days	7 days for perimeter dikes, swales, slopes and HWQ zones 14 days for slopes 10 ft or less in length and not steeper than 2:1 10 days for Falls Lake Watershed
Slopes 3:1 to 4:1	14 Days	7 days for perimeter dikes, swales, slopes and HWQ zones 7 days for slopes greater than 50 ft in length 10 days for Falls Lake Watershed
All other areas with slopes flatter than 4:1	14 Days	7 days for perimeter dikes, swales, slopes and HWQ zones 10 days for Falls Lake Watershed

PART 3D: NEW OR REVISED MEASURES: Erosion and sedimentation control measures omitted or installed, at a minimum since the last inspection, shall be documented here or by initialing and dating each measure or practice shown on a copy of the approved erosion and sedimentation control plan. Alterations and relocations of measures shall also be documented if they significantly deviate from the approved plan. The removal of measures should also be documented.
List dimensions of measures such as Sediment Basins and Dissipator Pads. Add rows as needed. Corrective actions should be included in Part 3A.

Measure ID **or** Location and Description	Proposed Dimensions (ft.)	Actual Dimensions (ft.)	Significant Deviation* from Plan? (Y/N)	Date measure observed as installed, altered, relocated or removed	Installed (I) Altered (A) Relocated (R) Removed (X)

*Significant deviation means any omission, alteration or relocation of an erosion or sedimentation control measure that prevents it from performing as intended.

PART 4: Signature of Inspector

Financially Responsible Party (FRP) / Permittee			**County**	
INSPECTOR		Name	Employer	
Inspector Type (Mark)	**X**	Address		
FRP/Permittee				
Agent/Designee		Phone Number	Email Address	

By this signature, I certify in accordance with the NCG010000 permit & G.S. 113A-54.1 that this report is accurate and complete to the best of my knowledge.	
Financially Responsible Party / Permittee or Agent / Designee	Date & Time of Inspection

SECTION 32 10 00
PAVING AND SURFACING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment and materials and perform all operations in connection with the construction of asphalt concrete pavement, asphalt concrete overlay, reinforced concrete pavement, gravel roads, concrete curb and gutter, repair and reconstruction of existing asphalt concrete pavement, repair of existing gravel roads, and pavement markings complete as specified herein and as detailed on the Drawings.

B. All new roads including the replacement of portions of the existing roads shall be to the limits, grades, thicknesses and types as shown on the Drawings. Patches for pipe crossings and areas damaged during the construction work shall be asphalt and/or gravel, depending upon the material encountered, unless otherwise indicated.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Requirements of related work are included in Division 01, Division 02 and Division 03 of these Specifications.

1.03 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork

B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

1.04 REFERENCES

A. 2018 North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) Standard Specification for Road and Structures, or latest edition.

1.05 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Except as otherwise provided in the Specifications or on the plans, all work shall be in accordance with the North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures except that any reference to "NCDOT", "Department" or "Unit" shall mean the "Owner".
B. Except with the approval of the Engineer, the placing of concrete or asphalt concrete surface paving shall be subject to the Seasonal and Weather Restrictions set forth in NCDOT Specifications.

082905

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 SELECT FILL

A. The Contractor shall place select fill as necessary to complete the embankments, shoulders, subgrade foundation and replacement for removed unsuitable material in accordance with NCDOT Section 235, and Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

2.02 GRAVEL

A. All work, including materials, associated with gravel shall be in accordance with NCDOT Section 545, Incidental Stone Base, except that Articles 545-6 and 545-7, shall be deleted.

2.03 AGGREGATE STABILIZATION

A. All work, including materials, associated with Aggregate Stabilization shall be in accordance with NCDOT Section 510, Aggregate Stabilization, except that Articles 510-6 and 510-7, shall be deleted.

2.04 AGGREGATE BASE COURSE (ABC)

A. All work, including materials, associated with Aggregate Base Course shall be in accordance with NCDOT Section 520, Aggregate Base Course, except that Articles 520-11 and 520-12 shall be deleted. Type "A" or "B" aggregate will be acceptable for this project.

2.05 ASPHALT BINDER FOR PLANT MIX

A. All work, including materials, associated with asphalt binder shall be in accordance with Section 620, Asphalt Binder for Plant Mix, Grade PG 64-22, of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, except Articles 620-4 and 620-5 shall be deleted.

2.06 ASPHALT PAVEMENTS

A. All work, including materials, associated with asphalt pavement shall be in accordance with Section 610, Asphalt Concrete Plant Mix Pavements, of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, except Articles 610-15 and 610-16 shall deleted. Surface Course shall be Superpave S-9.5B, Intermediate Course shall be Superpave I-19.0C, and Base Course shall be Superpave B-25.0C. Asphalt pavement mix designs shall be in accordance with TABLE 610-2 of the NCDOT.

B. The job mix formulas shall be delivered to the Engineer at least two (2) weeks prior to beginning paving operations.

2.07 RIGID PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

A. All work, including materials associated with rigid concrete pavement shall be in accordance with Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete. Class A concrete shall be used. Placement shall be in accordance with Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete and NCDOT Section 700, General Requirements for Portland Cement Concrete Pavement and Section 710, Concrete Pavement, except that Articles 700-2, 700-15, 710-3, 710-4, 710-8, 710-9, 710-10, and 710-11 shall be deleted.

2.08 RIGID CONCRETE PAVEMENT REINFORCING

A. Reinforcing, if specified, shall be as shown on the Structural Drawings and as specified under Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel.

2.09 CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTERS

A. Concrete shall be Class B in accordance with the requirements of Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete, except that concrete shall be air-entrained to provide an air content of 6% ± 1.5%.

B. Premolded expansion joint filler for expansion joints shall conform to ASTM D 1751 and shall be 1/2-inch thick, minimum.

2.10 ASPHALT TACK COAT

A. All work, including materials, associated with asphalt tack coat shall be in accordance with Section 605, Asphalt Tack Coat, of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, except that Article 605-10 shall be deleted.

2.11 POLYCYCLIC AROMATIC HYDROCARBON (PAH)

A. The EPA has classified seven PAHs as probable human carcinogens, and 16 PAHs as Priority Pollutants. Materials containing concentrations of Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon (PAH), such as Coal Tar Based Sealcoat, higher than allowed by OSHA limits shall not be allowed for use on the project.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 EMBANKMENT

A. The embankment shall be constructed in accordance with Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

3.02 SUBGRADE

A. The subgrade, where shown on the Drawings, shall be aggregate stabilized by the addition and mixing of coarse aggregate with the top 3-inches of subgrade in accordance with NCDOT Section 510-4. Aggregate stabilization shall be applied to the subgrade at a rate of 300-pounds per square yard. Following the application of stabilizer

aggregate, the subgrade shall be formed true to crown and grade and shall be compacted with a minimum of four (4) passes of a 15-ton vibratory roller to conform to the maximum densities determined by AASHTO T99 Standard Specifications.

3.03 BASE COURSE

A. The finished base course of all paving shall be ABC and shall be of the thickness shown on the Drawings, formed true to crown and grade. Gravel roads, including repair to existing gravel roads shall be ABC and shall be of the thicknesses shown on the Drawings, formed true to crown and grade. No fill material except new ABC shall be placed on top of existing gravel.

3.04 ASPHALT BASE COURSE (OR INTERMEDIATE COURSE)

A. Asphalt Concrete Base (or Intermediate) Course shall meet the requirements of Superpave BM-25.0C (IM-19C for Intermediate) and be placed in lifts with a minimum thickness of 3-inches (2.5-inches for Intermediate) and a maximum thickness of 4-inches for IM-19C in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures 610-8, Spreading and Finishing. Asphalt Concrete Base (or Intermediate) Course shall be compacted in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures 610-9, Compaction. Thicknesses shall be as shown on the Drawings.

3.05 ASPHALT CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE

A. Prior to placement of the asphalt concrete surface course, the base/intermediate course shall be inspected for damage or defects and repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The surface of the base/intermediate course shall be approved by the Engineer.

B. The asphalt tack coat shall be applied to the surface of the approved base/binder course as described in NCDOT Section 605. Equipment for applying the tack coat shall be power-oriented pressure spraying or distributing equipment suitable for the materials to be applied and approved by the Engineer.

C. The Asphalt Concrete Surface Course shall meet the requirements of Superpave SM-9.5B and be placed and compacted on the base/intermediate course in layers with a minimum thickens of 1-1/2-inches and a maximum thickness of 3-inches and at the rate of 110-pounds per square yard per inch. Surface Course shall be compacted in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specification for Roads and Structures, Article 610-9. Thicknesses shall be as shown on the Drawings.

3.06 ASPHALT CONCRETE PAVEMENT COMPACTION

A. Asphalt concrete pavement compaction shall be performed as per NCDOT Standard Specification for Roads and Structures, Article 610-9.

B. Contractor shall provide Quality Control (QC) for proper asphalt concrete pavement placement and compaction using equipment in good working order which has been properly calibrated at the start of each round of testing. Quality Assurance (QA) of paving operations will be performed by an independent third-party representative hired by Owner.

C. Immediately after the asphalt mixture has been spread, struck off and surface and edge irregularities adjusted, thoroughly and uniformly compact the pavement. Compact the mix to the required degree of compaction for the type of mixture being placed, as noted in Table 610-7 of the 2018 NCDOT Standard Specification for Road and Structures, or latest edition, and reproduced below in Table 3-1.

TABLE 3-1
SUPERPAVE DENSITY REQUIREMENTS

Superpave Mix Type	Minimum % Gmm (Maximum Specific Gravity
SF9.5B	90.0
S9.5C, S9.5D, I19.0C, B25.0C	92.0

Note: Marshall mix types and densities are no longer valid.

3.07 ASPHALT CONCRETE DENSITY ACCEPTANCE

A. The Engineer will evaluate the asphalt pavement for density acceptance after the asphalt mix has been placed and compacted using the Contractor's QC test results, the Owner's QA test results (including verification samples) and by observation of the Contractor's density QC process conducted in accordance with NCDOT Standard Specification for Roads and Structures, Section 609.

B. Minimum density requirements for all mixes will be as specified in Table 3-1. Density acceptance will be as provided herein. Core sample shall be obtained and tested by the Owner's representative at the same frequency and location as the Contractor's QC testing, if possible, and densities will be determined by use of the requirements as outlined in NCDOT Standard Specification for Roads and Structures, Section 610-14.

C. A failing lot for density acceptance purposes is defined as a lot for which the average of all test sections, and portions thereof, fails to meet the minimum specification requirement. A lot will consist of one day's production of a given JMF, for each layer of asphalt concrete placed. If additional density sampling and testing, beyond the minimum requirement, is performed and additional test sections are thereby created, then all test results shall be included in the lot average.

D. Any lot or portion of a lot deemed obviously unacceptable by the Owner or Engineer will be rejected for use in the work. If the Engineer determines that a given lot of mix does not meet the minimum specification requirements, but the work is reasonably acceptable, the lot will be accepted at a reduced pay factor in accordance with the following formula. The reduced pay factor will apply only to the contractor's schedule of values.
Reduced Pay Factor = 100+ [(Actual Density – Specified Density) x 30]

Where: Actual Density = the lot average density, not to exceed 2.0% of the specified density

Specified Density = the density in Table 3-1 or as specified in the contract

3.08 ASPHALT CONRETE PAVEMENT PHASING

A. Contractor shall be responsible for phasing the placement of asphalt concrete pavement sections and courses to account for individual construction activities, the construction traffic volume, and vehicle loading expected throughout construction activities. The placement of asphalt concrete pavement shall also be phased so the aggregate base course, once installed, is not exposed to freeze/thaw cycles.

3.09 RIGID PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE

A. The subgrade and base course beneath portland cement concrete pavement shall be prepared in accordance with the applicable Sections of these Specifications and referenced Standard Specifications, except that the Contractor shall use an approved automatically controlled fine grading machine to produce final subgrade and base surfaces meeting the lines, grades, and cross sections (thicknesses) shown on the Drawings or established by the Engineer.

B. The surface of the base shall be damp at the time the concrete is placed. The Contractor shall sprinkle the base when necessary to provide a damp surface. The Contractor shall satisfactorily correct all soft areas in the subgrade or base prior to placing concrete.

C. Hauling over the base course shall not be allowed except where specifically permitted by and in writing by the Engineer. The Engineer may allow equipment dumping concrete to operate on the base to the extent and under the conditions the Engineer deems necessary to facilitate placing and spreading the concrete.

D. Installation of the rigid concrete pavement shall be in accordance with the details shown on the Drawings and Division 03 - Concrete. The rigid concrete pavement shall cure a minimum of ten (10) calendar days and until the concrete has attained a minimum flexural strength of 550 psi as indicated by flexural strength testing. The Contractor shall coordinate and pay for all flexural strength testing with a minimum of four (4) 6-inch by 6-inch by 20-inch beams for every fifty (50) cubic yards of pavement concrete installed.

E. Transverse and longitudinal joints shall be spaced at intervals as shown on the Drawings and installed as per the requirements of NCDOT Standard Specification for Road and Structures Section 610-11. Transverse contraction joints shall be formed by an approved joint insert. Longitudinal joints shall be formed by allowing the paver to deposit the mixture adjacent to the joint to such depth that maximum compaction can be obtained along the joint. Pinch the joint by rolling immediately behind the paver. Expansion joints

shall be placed when the pavement abuts a structure using 1 inch expansion joint material (filler) and sealant as specified herein.

3.10 CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER AND SIDEWALK

A. The expansion joint filler for concrete curb and gutters shall be cut to conform with the cross section of the curb. Expansion joints shall be spaced at intervals of not more than 50 feet. Formed control joints shall be installed at intervals not exceeding 10 feet. (Expansion joints can placed at intervals of 45 feet and control joints at 15 feet if curb and gutter is machine placed.) Depth of joint shall be 1/3 the thickness. Curved forms shall be used where radii are indicated; straight segments shall not be permitted. Upon removal of the forms, exposed curb faces shall be immediately rubbed down to a smooth and uniform surface. No plastering shall be permitted.

B. Concrete sidewalks shall include contraction joints between each panel of sidewalk and when sidewalk width exceeds 6-feet, longitudinal contractions joints shall be placed as required. Additionally, ½" expansion joints and sealer shall be placed at a maximum spacing of 50-feet of sidewalk. ½" expansion joint material and sealer shall also be where sidewalks abut and rigid structure or curb and gutter.

3.11 UNDERGROUND UTILITY LINES

A. Where an underground utility line is beneath the new roadway, the backfilling shall be carried out with special care, and the final consolidation shall be accomplished by a vibratory roller. Construction of the roadway over the trench shall be deferred as long as practicable.

3.12 JUNCTION WITH OTHER PAVING

A. Where new asphalt concrete pavement abuts existing asphalt concrete pavement, the existing pavement shall be cut back to insure obtaining the specified compaction of the new pavement courses and interlocking adjoining courses. Existing subbase courses shall be cut back from the subgrade level of the new pavement on a one-on-one slope into the existing pavement, and the asphalt courses of the existing pavement shall be removed for an additional 6-inches back from the slope. The edge of the existing asphalt courses shall be saw cut straight and true. The faces between new and existing asphalt courses shall receive an application of tack coat.

B. Where new rigid concrete pavement abuts existing rigid concrete or asphalt concrete paving, the existing paving shall be saw cut straight and true. An expansion joint of a 1/2-inch minimum thickness with filler material and sealant shall be placed between the new concrete pavement and the existing rigid concrete or asphalt concrete paving.

3.13 ASPHALT CONCRETE OVERLAY

A. Where asphalt concrete is proposed to be placed over an existing asphalt or rigid concrete surface, the surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned by power brooming and a tack coat shall be applied in accordance with NCDOT Section 605, Asphalt Tack Coat,

of the NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, prior to installing the overlay. The overlay shall be applied in accordance with Subsections 2.06 and 3.05 and Standard Details shown on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 11 00
SURFACE RESTORATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Provide all labor, equipment, and materials necessary for final grading, topsoil placement, and miscellaneous site work not included under other Sections but required to complete the work as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork

B. Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control

C. Section 32 90 00 – Final Grading and Landscaping

PART 2 – MATERIALS

2.01 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil shall meet the requirements of Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FINAL GRADING

A. Following approval of rough grading the subgrade shall be prepared as follows:

1. For riprap, bare soil 24 inches below finish grade or as directed by Engineer.

2. For topsoil, scarify 2-inches deep at 4 inches below finish grade.

3.02 TOPSOIL PLACEMENT

A. Topsoil shall be placed over all areas disturbed during construction under any contract except those areas which will be paved, graveled or rip rapped.

B. Topsoil shall be spread in place for lawn and road shoulder seed areas at a 4-inch consolidated depth and at a sufficient quantity for plant beds and backfill for shrubs and trees.

C. Topsoil shall not be placed in a frozen or muddy condition.

082905

D. Final surface shall be hand or mechanically raked to an even finished surface to finish grade as shown on Drawings.

E. All stones, roots over 4-inches,rubbish, and other deleterious materials shall be removed and disposed of.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 90 00
FINAL GRADING AND LANDSCAPING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all labor, equipment, and materials necessary for final grading, topsoiling, seeding, and miscellaneous site work not included under other Sections, but required to complete the work as shown on the Drawings and specified herein. Under this Section, all areas of the project site disturbed by excavation, materials storage, temporary roads, etc., shall be reseeded as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 31 00 01 - Earthwork

B. Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control

C. Section 32 11 00 – Surface Restoration

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures:

1. Product Data

2. Certification of all materials

3. There (3) copies of soils test report with fertilizer recommendation (or biotic soil amendment recommendation, if applicable) from the N.C. Department of Agriculture.

4. Three (3) copies of composition and germination certification and of test results for grass seed.

5. Biotic soil amendment manufacturer’s product data and installation instructions. Include required substrate preparation, list of materials and application rate, if applicable.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

061510

2.01 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Furnish and submit certification for the materials used as specified in the General Conditions, Division 01 and Division 02.

2.02 TOPSOIL

A. Upon completion and approval of the rough grading, the Contractor shall place the topsoil over all areas disturbed during construction under any contract except those areas which will be paved, graveled, rip rapped, or otherwise covered with an impervious surface. Topsoil shall be tested and amended as necessary according to the requirements of Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork prior to being placed over the site. Topsoil shall not be placed in a frozen or muddy condition and shall contain no toxic materials harmful to grass growth.

2.03 WATER

A. Water shall be furnished to the Contractor by the Owner from existing facilities as directed by the Engineer.

B. The Contractor shall furnish all hoses and connections necessary to complete the landscaping work.

2.04 FERTILIZER

A. Fertilizer shall be a complete commercial fertilizer with components derived from commercial sources. Fertilizer analysis shall be determined from field soil sampling in appropriate number taken by the Contractor and analyzed by the N.C. Department of Agriculture or other independent laboratory. Contractor shall furnish fertilizer in accordance with the recommendations of the N.C. Department of Agriculture.

B. One-quarter of the Nitrogen shall be in the form of nitrates, one-quarter in the form of ammonia salts, and one-half in the form of natural organic Nitrogen. Available Phosphoric Acid shall be free from superphosphate, bone, or tankage. Potash shall be Sulphate of Potash. Elements shall conform to the standards of Association of Official Agricultural Chemists.

C. Fertilizer shall be delivered in standard size bags marked with the weight, analysis of contents, and the name of the manufacturer. Fertilizer shall be stored in weatherproof storage areas and in such a manner that its effectiveness will not be impaired.

2.05 LIME

A. At least 50% shall pass a No. 200 U.S.S. mesh sieve. At least 90% shall pass a No. 100 U.S.S. mesh sieve and 100% shall pass a No. 10 U.S.S. mesh sieve. Total carbonates shall not be less than 80% or 44.8% Calcium Oxide equivalent. For the purpose of calculation, total carbonates shall be considered as Calcium Carbonate.

2.06 GRASS SEED

A. The Contractor shall furnish the kinds and amounts of temporary and permanent seed to be planted in all areas disturbed by the construction work. All seed shall be labeled to show that it meets the requirements of the North Carolina Seed Law. All seed must have

been tested within six (6) months immediately preceding the planting of such material on the job.

B. Contractor may submit alternate grass seed types, rates, and planting dates specific to the project site based on consultation with, and the recommendations of, the N.C. Department of Agriculture, a local Soil Conservation District, local Agricultural Extension Program, or other qualified organization for approval by the Engineer before planting.

C. The inoculant for treating legume seed shall be a pure culture of nitrogen-fixing bacteria prepared specifically for the species. Inoculants shall not be used later than the date indicated on the container. The quality of the seed shall conform to the following:

Type	Minimum Seed Purity (%)	Minimum Germination (%)	Maximum Weed Seed (%)
Fescue (fungus free)	98	90	1.00
Hybrid Rye	98	85	0.10
German Millet	98	85	0.50
Browntop Millet	98	85	0.50

D. All seed shall be in conformance with N.C. Seed Law restrictions for restricted noxious weeds.

E. Seed mixtures to be used on the project shall be as follows:

Permanent Seeding	150#/acre Kentucky 31 Tall Fescue (Add 25#/acre German Millet (Setaria Italica) in May. Add 25#/acre Hybrid Rye (Secale cereale) during Nov.)
Temporary Winter Seeding	120#/acre Hybrid Rye (Lolium multifloruml) and 50#/acre German Millet (Secale cereale)
Temporary Summer Seeding	40#/acre Browntop Millet (Urochloa ramose) or 50#/acre German Millet (Setaria Italica)

Native Species	Full Sun	Part Shade	Full Shade
Andropogon glomeratus (Bushy bluestem)	●		
Chasmanthium latifolium (Indian woodoats)		●	●
Schizachyrium scoparium (Little bluestem)	●	●	●
Sorghastrum nutans (Indiangrass)	●	●	●

Panicum virgatum (Switchgrass)	•	•	
Andropogon gerardii (Big bluestem)	•	•	
Carex blanda (Eastern woodland sedge)	•	•	•

P Seed: (Mix of 4-6 species per NC ESC PDM requirements)

F. On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper add 30#/acre of German Millet or Browntop Millet to the P seed mixture.

2.07 WOOD CELLULOSE FIBER MULCH

A. For use in hydroseeding grass seed in combination with fertilizers and other approved additions, shall consist of especially prepared wood cellulose fibers such as "Wood-Lok 300" manufactured by Applegate Mulch, "Enviro-Mix" manufactured by Profile, or equal, and have no growth or germination inhibiting factors, and be dyed green.

B. The wood cellulose fiber shall have the additional characteristic of dispersing rapidly in water to form a homogeneous slurry and remain in such state when agitated in the hydraulic mulching unit, or adequate equal, with the specified materials.

C. When applied, the wood cellulose fiber with additives will form an absorptive mat but not a plant inhibiting membrane, which will allow moisture, natural or mechanical, to percolate into underlying soil.

D. The mulch shall be supplied, compressed in packages containing 50 pounds of material having an equilibrium air dry moisture content at time of manufacture of 12% plus or minus 3%. Wood cellulose fiber mulch shall be stored in a weatherproof storage area and in such a manner that effectiveness will not be impaired.

2.08 STRAW MULCH

A. Straw mulch shall be spread manually or by use of a straw blower. Straw used for mulch shall be small grain hay. Hay shall be undamaged, air dry, threshed straw, free of undesirable weed seed. Straw mulch is not required for seeded areas treated by hydroseeding or with a temporary soil stabilizer.

B. Tackifier for securing straw mulch shall be Contact AT manufactured by Profile Products, M-Binder manufactured by Granite Seed, or Lawn Tack as manufactured by Rhino, or approved equal.

2.09 BIOTIC SOIL AMMENDMENT

A. Contractor may submit to the Engineer for approval a biotic soil amendment as a biodegradable supplement or alternative to topsoil.

B. Contactor shall take the recommended number of soil samples and send to a third-party, independent lab (such as the N.C. Department of Agriculture) for analysis. The tests shall include analysis and interpretation of results.

C. Soil Analysis shall include results for:

1. Soil pH
2. Soluble Salts
3. Excess Carbonate
4. Organic Matter
5. Nutrient readings for:
   i. Nitrogen, Phosphorus, Potassium
   ii. Magnesium, Calcium, Sodium, Manganese, Sulfur, Zinc, Copper, Iron, Boron
6. Cation Exchange Capacity
7. Percent Base Saturation Sodium

D. Based on soil test results, and as recommended by biotic soil amendment Manufacturer, Contractor shall submit recommended biotic soil amendment or other amendments to be applied with the hydroseeding slurry at Manufacturer recommended rates.

E. Contractor shall submit to the Engineer for approval a selection of suitable plant species for achieving sustainable growth and effective erosion control once soils have been analyzed for agronomic potential and amendment recommendations, Seed selection shall be performed by a qualified seed supplier, consulting professional and/or regulatory agency, such as the N. C. Department of Agriculture.

F. Contractor shall retain a manufacturer's representative to be on-site to oversee and approve the initial biotic soil amendment installation. Contractor shall submit a letter from the manufacturer approving the installation and application to the Engineer.

G. Biotic soil amendments shall be ProGanics BSM as manufactured by Profile, Soil Boost as manufactured by SoilBiotics. Organix as manufactured by LSC Environmental Products, LLC, or approved equal.

2.10 TEMPORARY SOIL STABILIZER

A. Temporary soil stabilizers may be used in place of temporary seeding, as approved by the Owner or Engineer. The temporary agent for soil erosion control shall consist of an especially prepared plant-based or cementitious highly concentrated powder which, when mixed with water, forms a thick liquid such as "DustOut" manufactured by DustOut™, "Stabilizer" manufactured by Stabilizer Solutions, or "SoiLok™" as manufactured by Prime Resins, or equal, and having no growth or germination inhibiting factors. The agent shall be used for bare soil stabilization or hydroseeding grass seed in combination with other approved amendments resulting in a highly viscous slurry which, when sprayed directly on the soil, forms a wind and rain resistant crust.

2.11 ROLLED EROSION CONTROL MATTINGS

A. The rolled erosion control products (RECMs) shall be as specified in Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control.

2.12 RIPRAP AND HERBICIDES

A. Furnish and install sufficient quantity of landscape gravel or riprap to cover over the ground to a minimum 4-inch depth for gravel and 24-inch depth for riprap, unless otherwise noted, or indicated on the Drawings. Also furnish and apply an approved herbicide to the subgrade surface just prior to installing the landscape gravel or riprap.

B. During placing, the stone shall be graded so that the smaller stones are uniformly distributed through the mass. The Contractor may place the stone by mechanical methods, augmented by hand placing where necessary or ordered by the Engineer. The placed riprap shall form a properly graded, dense, neat layer of stone.

C. All topsoil and vegetative matter shall be removed from the subgrade surfaces prior to the application of the weed killer (herbicide) and to the placement of landscape gravel or riprap. Apply commercial-type herbicide as preemergence control of miscellaneous grasses and broadleaf weeds in granular or liquid form such as "Treflan", "Dymid", or equal. Methods and rates of application shall be in strict compliance to manufacturer's directions and acceptable to the Engineer.

D. The herbicide selected shall be safe for use around ornamental plantings, have long-lasting weed control, and shall be resistant to leaching away under excessive rainfall.

E. A second application of the herbicide shall be made on the surface of the landscape gravel or riprap sometime after the first six (6) months, but not later than 12-months. Same methods and rates apply as specified previously.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GRADING

A. After approval of the rough grading, the Contractor shall commence preparations of the subgrade for the various major conditions of the work as follows:

1. Bare soil for riprap area at subgrade (24-inches below final grade, or as directed by the Engineer).

2. Topsoil for lawn and road shoulder seed area - scarify 2-inch depth of subgrade (4-inches below final grade) prior to placing topsoil.

B. Final surface grading of the top-soiled, landscape graveled, and riprapped areas shall be mechanically raked or hand raked to an even finished surface alignment.

3.02 TOPSOIL

A. Topsoil shall be spread in place for quantity required for lawn and road shoulder seed areas at 4-inch consolidated depth, and sufficient quantity for certain plant beds and backfill for shrubs and trees as specified.

3.03 SEEDBED PREPARATION

A. Contractor shall prepare all areas to receive temporary or permanent seeding measures prior to planting.

B. Topsoil shall be placed in areas to be seeded and roughened with tracked equipment or other suitable measures. Slopes steeper than 3:1 may be roughened by grooving, furrowing, tracking, or stairstep grading. Slopes flatter than 3:1 should be grooved by disking, harrowing, raking, operating planting equipment on the contour.

C. Soil amendments including, but not limited to, lime and fertilizer shall be spread as necessary, and at the rates specified in this Section. Seeding shall be as per the type and rates specified in this Section. Seed shall be broadcast as soon as possible following roughening and before surface has been sealed by rainfall.

3.04 GRASS ESTABLISHMENT AND HYDROSEEDING

A. Prepare of the topsoil and bare soil seed bed, application of biotic soil amendment (if submitted), applicate fertilizer, limestone, mulching, inoculant, temporary soil stabilizer, water, and all other operations necessary to provide a satisfactory growth of sod at the end of the one-year maintenance period. Areas without satisfactory sod at the end of one (1) year shall be replanted until satisfactory growth is obtained and acceptable to the Engineer.

B. For areas to be seeded by the hydraulic seeding method, include all additives and amendments required. a "Reinco", "Finn", or "Bowie" type hydromulcher with adjustable nozzles and extension hoses, or equal, shall be utilized. general capacity of tank should range from 500 to 2,500 gallons, or as approved by the engineer.

C. Hydraulic seeding shall be carried out in three steps. Step one shall consist of the application of lime. In step two the seed mixture shall be mixed with the biotic soil amendment (if used), fertilizer, wood cellulose fiber mulch, and any required inoculants and applied to the seed bed. Step three shall consist of an application of top dressing during the first spring or fall, whichever comes first, after step two.

D. Top dressing shall consist of a commercial grade fertilizer plus Nitrogen or other analysis as may be recommended by soil testing. Contractor shall submit results of soils testing and recommendations to Engineer for review before applying top dressing. Types and application rates of seed mixtures, lime, fertilizer, and wood cellulose fiber mulch shall be as shown in the Seeding Schedule.

E. Ingredients for the mixture and steps should be dumped into a tank of water and thoroughly mixed to a homogeneous slurry and sprayed out under a minimum pressure as recommended by the Manufacturer, in suitable proportions to accommodate the type and capacity of the hydraulic machine to be used. Applications shall be evenly sprayed over the ground surface. The Contractor shall free the topsoil of stones, roots, rubbish, and other deleterious materials and dispose of same off the site. The bare soil, except existing steep embankment area, shall be rough raked to remove stones, roots, and rubbish over 4-inches in size, and other deleterious materials and dispose of same off the site.

F. No seeding should be undertaken in windy or unfavorable weather, when the ground is too wet to rake easily, when it is in a frozen condition, or too dry. Any bare spots shown in two to three weeks shall be recultivated, fertilized at half the rate, raked, seeded, and mulched again by mechanical or hand broadcast method acceptable to the Engineer.

G. Areas that have been manually seeded or hydroseeded with a temporary seed mixture shall be mowed to a height of less than 2inches and scarified prior to hydroseeding with the permanent seed mixture.

H. The Contractor shall provide, at the Contractor’s own expense, protection for all seeded areas against trespassing and damage at all times until acceptance of the work. Slopes shall be protected from damage due to erosion, settlement, and other causes and shall be repaired promptly at the Contractor's expense.

I. The Contractor shall water newly seeded areas of the lawn and road shoulder mix once a week until the grasses have germinated sufficiently to produce a healthy turf (a minimum of 80% ground coverage), or unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Each watering shall provide three (3) gallons per square yard. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary hoses, sprinklers, and connections.

J. The first and second cutting of the lawn grasses only shall be done by the Contractor. All subsequent cuttings will be done by the Owner's forces in a manner specified by the Contractor.

3.05 DITCH AND SWALE EROSION PROTECTION

A. All ditches and swales indicated on the Drawings shall be lined with a rolled erosion control matting (RECM). The area to be covered shall be properly graded and hydroseeded before the RECM is installed. Installation shall be in accordance with Section 31 25 00 – Erosion and Sedimentation Control.

3.06 MAINTENANCE

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining all seeded areas through the end of a one-year warranty period, beginning from the date of acceptance of final seeding and landscaping as determined by the Engineer. Maintenance shall include but not be limited to, annual fertilization, mowing, repair of seeded areas, irrigation, and weed control. The Contractor shall provide, at the Contractor’s own expense, protection for all seeded

areas against trespassing and damage at all times until acceptance of the work. Slopes shall be protected from damage due to erosion, settlement, and other causes and shall be repaired promptly at the Contractor's expense.

B. Annual fertilization shall consist of an application of 500#/acre of 10-10-10 commercial grade fertilizer, or its equivalent and 60#/acre of nitrogen in early fall, or other analysis as may be determined by soil test. Annual fertilization shall be in addition to top dressing and shall be performed by the Contractor each fall season after planting until the work is substantially complete.

C. Mowing shall be scheduled to maintain a minimum stand height of 4-inches or as directed by the Engineer. Stand height shall be allowed to reach 8 to 10-inches prior to mowing.

D. All seeded areas shall be inspected on a regular basis and any necessary repairs or reseedings made within the planting season, if possible. If the stand should be over 20% damaged, it shall be re-established following the original seeding recommendations.

E. Weed growth shall be maintained mechanically and/or with herbicides. When chemicals are used, the Contractor shall follow the current North Carolina Agricultural Experiment Stations' weed control recommendations and adhere strictly to the instructions on the label of the herbicide. No herbicide shall be used without prior approval of the Engineer.

3.07 CLEANUP

A. The Contractor shall remove from the site all subsoil excavated from their work and all other debris including, but not limited to, branches, paper, and rubbish in all landscape areas, and remove temporary barricades as the work proceeds.

B. All areas shall be kept in a neat, orderly condition at all times. Prior to final acceptance, the Contractor shall clean up the entire landscaped area to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

3.08 SEEDING SCHEDULE

A. All seeding and mulching to be completed by the Contractor shall conform to the following schedule. No permanent seeding shall be performed from May 1 – August 31 and November 1 – February 14. Temporary seed mixtures will be used during these times if seeding is necessary. Areas seeded with temporary seed mixtures shall be reseeded by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner with permanent seed as directed by the Engineer.

B. Application rates of seed mixtures, lime, fertilizer, mulch and top dressing are shown in the schedule.

SEEDING SCHEDULE

Application Rates (Pounds/Acre)								
Seed Mixture	**Planting Season**	**Lime[a]**	**Seed[b]**	**Fertilizer**	**Straw[c] Mulch**	**Topdressing (LB/AC)[a]**	**Annual Fertilizer**	**Comments**
P	Feb. 15-April 30 Sept. 1-Oct. 31	4000	150	1000	4000	700 – 1000 of 10-10-10 60 of Nitrogen	Same as Topdressing	Preferred planting seasons are Sept. 1 – Sept. 30 and Feb. 15 – March 30.
TW	Jan. 1-May 1	2000	170	750	4000	-	-	Over seed with Type P seed mixture during next planting season.
TS	May 1-Aug. 15	2000	40	750	4000	-	-	Over seed with Type P seed mixture during next planting season.
TF	Aug. 15-Dec. 30	2000	120	1000	4000	50 of Nitrogen in March	-	Over seed with Type P seed mixture during next planting season.

Notes:
a. Lime shall be applied at a minimum of 2 tons per acre with 3 tons per acre in clay soils. Application rates and/or chemical analysis shall be confirmed or established by soil test.
b. On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper, add 30#/acre German Millet or Browntop Millet to Type P seed mixture.
c. Apply tackifier at rate of 0.10 gallon per square yard (10 gal/1000 ft2), or as recommended by manufacturer, to tack straw mulch.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 05 61
UTILITY STRUCTURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all materials, labor, equipment, and tools required for the design, fabrication, delivery and installment of utility structures and appurtenances in accordance with the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel

B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete

C. Section 03 60 00 – Grout

D. Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout

E. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

F. Section 05 56 00 – Castings

G. Section 31 00 01 - Earthwork

H. Section 40 05 00 - Basic Mechanical Requirements

1.03 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of the other requirements of the specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced specifications, codes, and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of Bid.

1. ASTM C32 - Standard Specification for Sewer and Manhole Brick (Made from Clay or Shale)

2. ASTM C139 - Standard Specification for Concrete Masonry Units for Construction of Catch Basins and Manholes

042123

3. ASTM C443 – Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets

4. ASTM C478 – Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections

5. ASTM C857 – Minimum Structural Design Loading for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures

6. ASTM C858 – Standard Specification for Underground Precast Utility Structures

7. ASTM C890 – Minimum Structural Design Loading for Monolithic or Sectional Precast Concrete Water and Wastewater Structures

8. ASTM C913 – Standard Specification for Precast Water and Wastewater Structures

9. ASTM C923 – Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes, and Laterals

10. ASTM C990 – Standard Specifications for Joints in Concrete Pipe, Manholes, and Precast Box Sections Using Preformed Flexible Joint Sealants

11. ASTM C1244 - Standard Test Method for Concrete Sewer Manholes by the Negative Air Pressure (Vacuum) Test Prior to Backfill

12. ASTM C1478 - Standard Specification for Storm Drain Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Storm Sewer Structures, Pipes, and Laterals

13. ASTM C1802 - Standard Specification for Design, Testing, Manufacture, Selection, and Installation of Horizontal Fabricated Metal Access Hatches for Utility, Water, and Wastewater Structures

14. ASTM F2510 – Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures and Corrugated Dual- and Triple-Wall Polyethylene and Polypropylene Pipes

15. ASCE/SEI 7-10 – Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and other Structures

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit samples and/or Shop Drawings in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Shop Drawings shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Shop drawings for all precast concrete items showing all dimensions, locations, and type of lifting inserts, and details of reinforcement and joints.

2. Complete layout and installation Drawings and schedules with clearly marked dimensions.

3. Material certificates on all piping materials.

4. A list of the design criteria used by the manufacturer for all manufactured, precast items.

5. Structural design calculations sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in North Carolina. Design calculations for precast manholes and vaults shall include confirmation structures adequately resist flotation when they are totally empty and subjected to groundwater full height of structure. The factor of safety for buoyancy due to groundwater conditions as noted above shall be 1.25. Factors of safety for other design conditions shall be as per ASCE 7-10 - Safety Factors.

6. Certified reports for all lifting inserts, indicating allowable design loads.

7. Information on lifting and erection procedures.

8. Results of leakage test

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PRECAST MANHOLES AND UTILITY STRUCTURES

A. Design requirements vary for manholes, for utility structures exposed to internal liquid, and for utility structures not exposed to internal liquid, as follows:

1. All precast manholes shall conform to the following requirements (regardless of exposure to internal liquid):

a. Precast manholes shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C478 and shall be designed for loads in accordance with ASTM C890.

b. Precast manholes shall be watertight for infiltration and exfiltration. Joints between manhole riser sections and at base slabs shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443.

c. Manhole section shall have an internal diameter of 4'-0", unless noted otherwise. Clear lid openings shall be minimum of 24-inch diameter.

2. Precast utility structures exposed to internal liquid (other than manholes) shall include but not be limited to water and wastewater distribution boxes, yard inlets, and catch basins. These structures shall conform to the following requirements:

    a. Precast utility structures exposed to internal liquid (other than manholes) shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C913 and shall be designed for loads in accordance with ASTM C890.

    b. Precast utility structures exposed to internal liquid shall be watertight for infiltration and exfiltration. Joints between riser sections and at base slabs shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443.

3. Precast utility structures not exposed to internal liquid (other than manholes) shall include but not be limited to vaults and meter boxes for piping, and utility structures for electric, gas, or communication lines. These structures shall conform to the following requirements:

    a. Precast utility structures not exposed to internal liquid (other than manholes) shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C858 and shall be designed for loads in accordance with ASTM C857.

    b. Precast utility structures not exposed to internal liquid shall be soil-tight and shall be watertight for infiltration when below groundwater. Joints between riser sections and at base slabs shall conform to the requirements of either ASTM C443 or ASTM C990.

B. In addition to the requirements above, the following requirements are typical for all precast manholes and utility structures:

1. Precast manholes and utility structures shall be furnished with sleeves and openings as noted on the Drawings, conforming accurately to the sizes and elevations of the adjoining pipes or conduits.

2. Precast manholes and utility structures shall include ballast concrete and/or other means necessary to ensure they resist flotation when empty and subjected to groundwater full height of structure.

3. Precast manholes and utility structures shall be as manufactured by Oldcastle, Tindall Corporation, or equal.

4. The date and name of manufacturer shall be marked inside each precast section.

5. No more than two lift holes may be cast or drilled in each section.

6. Dimensions shall be as shown on the Drawings.

7. Covers and frames shall be as specified in Paragraph 2.11.

8. Mechanical Details such as piping, electrical, and other details shall be as shown on the Drawings.

2.02 BRICK

A. Brick shall be sound, hard-burned common brick conforming to ASTM C32, Grade MS.

2.03 MORTAR

A. Mortar shall conform to Section 04 05 13 – Mortar and Masonry Grout.

2.04 CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall conform to Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete.

2.05 REINFORCING

A. Reinforcing shall conform to Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel.

2.06 CONCRETE BLOCK

A. Concrete block shall be solid, rectangular concrete masonry units conforming to ASTM C139.

2.07 CASTINGS

A. Castings shall conform to Section 05 56 00 – Castings. Casting shall be of the type and size indicated on the Drawings.

2.08 STEPS

A. Steps shall be constructed of Grade 60 steel reinforcing rod (min. 1/2-inch) and completely encapsulated with a wear resistant and chemical resistant rubber.

B. Each step shall have a minimum vertical load resistance of 800 pounds and a minimum pull-out resistance of 400 pounds.

C. The steps shall have 11-inch minimum tread width and shall be placed at 16-inches on center, as shown on the Drawings.

D. Steps shall be cast in place with the concrete.

E. Steps shall only be installed as shown on the Drawings or required in the Specifications.

2.09 JOINT SEALANTS AND GASKETS

A. For precast utility structure joints required to conform to ASTM C990, joint sealant shall be a preformed flexible sealant conforming to the requirements of ASTM C990, paragraph 6.2, Butyl Rubber Sealant. Joint sealant shall be Pro-Stik Butyl Sealant by Press-Seal Corporation, Butyl-Nek Join Sealant by Henry Company, CS-102 Butyl Rubber Sealant for all Precast Structures by ConSeal Concrete Sealants, Inc., or equal.

B. For precast utility structure joints required to conform to ASTM C443, gaskets shall be rubber gaskets conforming to the requirements of ASTM C443.

2.10 PIPE TO MANHOLE CONNECTIONS

A. The spring set type shall have a stainless-steel interior power sleeve or expander and shall be the PSX assembly by Press-Seal Gasket Corporation, the Kor-N-Seal® | 106-406 Series assembly by National Pollution Control Systems, or QUIK-LOK Boot Connector by A-LOK Products, Inc, or equal.

B. The cast-in-place type shall conform to ASTM C923-18 for sanitary sewer connections between reinforced concrete manhole structures, pipes, and laterals, ASTM C1478-19 for storm drain connections between pipes, and laterals, and ASTM F2510 for storm drain connections between reinforced concrete manhole structures, and dual and triple-wall polyethylene and polypropylene pipes. Sleeves shall include stainless steel take up clamps.

C. Flexible seal assemblies shall permit at least an eight (8) degree deflection from the center line of the opening in any direction while maintaining a watertight connection.

2.11 COVERS AND FRAMES

A. Covers and frames shall comply with Section 05 56 00 – Castings and shall be provided by the utility structure manufacturer.

B. Manhole covers and frames shall meet the following requirements:

1. Locate so that there is ready access to the manhole steps

2. Clear opening shall be a minimum of 22 inches, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

3. Watertight manhole frames and covers shall be suitable for 20 psi internal pressure and shall be Neenah Model R-1915, Type E or equal, cast in place.

4. Non-watertight manhole covers shall be perforated and shall be Neenah Model R-1668, or equal.

5. Storm drain grated inlet frames and grates shall be Neenah R-1878-B7L, East Jordan Iron Works V-4873, or equal.

6. Curb inlet frames and grates shall be Neenah R-3067, East Jordan Iron Works EJ 7030, or equal, and shall include frame, grate, and hood.

C. Vault covers shall have lifting handles and shall be bolted with stainless steel bolts complying with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

D. The Load Level capacity of fabricated metal access hatches as noted on the Contract Drawings shall be in conformance with the requirements of ASTM C1802.

E. Frames and covers shall be identical throughout the Contract.

2.12 GRATES

A. Grates shall comply with Section 05 56 00 – Castings.

2.13 CONCRETE BALLAST

A. Concrete ballast shall be Class B concrete in conformance with Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete. Ballast shall be provided as necessary to ensure manhole resists flotation when empty and subjected to full height groundwater conditions.

2.14 EPOXY BONDING AGENT

A. Epoxy bonding agent shall conform to ASTM C881 and shall be Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod, Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, N.J.; Euco #452 Epoxy System, Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH, MasterEmaco ADH Series by Master Builders Solutions.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Minimum structural design loading for underground precast concrete manholes and utility structures shall be in accordance with the applicable document of ASTM C890 or ASTM C857 specified in Article 2.01, unless otherwise noted herein. Precast items subjected to vehicular traffic shall be designed for HS-20 traffic loading. Other precast items shall be designed for a vertical live load of 300 psf.

B. Walls of precast items shall be designed for a vertical surcharge resulting in a 100 psf horizontal load.

C. Precast manholes and vaults shall be designed to resist flotation when totally empty and subjected to groundwater full height of the manhole/vault.

3.02 FABRICATION AND CASTING

A. Fabrication and casting of precast manholes and utility structures shall conform to the applicable ASTM documents specified in Article 2.01.

B. All base sections designated to receive concrete ballast and all electrical manholes shall extend monolithically a minimum of 6 inches beyond the outside face of the wall for the entire periphery. All other utility structures shall have a standard base.

C. Utility structures built around existing pipe shall have a cast-in-place base slab.

3.03 HANDLING, TRANSPORTING, AND STORING

A. Precast members shall not be transported away from the casting yard until the concrete has reached the minimum required 28-day compressive strength and a period of at least 5 days has elapsed since casting, unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer.

B. No precast member shall be transported from the plant to the job site prior to approval of that member by the plant inspector. This approval will be stamped on the member by the plant inspector.

C. During handling, transporting, and storing, precast concrete members shall be lifted and supported only at the lifting or supporting points as indicated on the shop drawings.

D. All precast members shall be stored on solid, unyielding, storage blocks in a manner to prevent torsion, objectionable bending, and contact with the ground.

E. Precast concrete members shall not be used as storage areas for other materials or equipment.

F. Precast members damaged while being handled or transported will be rejected or shall be repaired in a manner approved by the Engineer.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Installation of precast manholes and utility structures shall conform with the manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Frames and covers or grates shall be set so that tops are at elevations indicated on the Drawings or flush with finished grade where no elevation is indicated.

C. Joints between riser sections shall be sealed with joint sealant or gaskets as specified herein.

D. All openings in utility structures shall have flexible rubber sleeves sized to fit the connecting pipe and installed to provide watertight joints in accordance with the

manufacturer's recommendations. The interior of the sleeve shall be filled with Class B concrete.

E. Openings that are too large for flexible rubber sleeves shall utilize rubber bladder seals which are expanded by water injected using a pressure pump.

F. All units shall be installed plumb and level.

G. All lift holes and joints shall be filled with non-shrink grout conforming to Section 03 60 00 – Grout, grout inside and out.

H. The manhole frames shall be set to their required elevations either with grade rings or with two or three courses of brick masonry laid around the top of the upper wall section. Such brick work shall be given a 1-inch mortar coat on the inside and out.

I. Concrete ballast shall be placed so that it bears directly on the utility structure base against the outer wall monolithically encircling the structure for the full height indicated on the Drawings. Additional ballast may be required where the depth or elevation of the structure varies from the Drawings.

J. Brick or Concrete Block

1. Brick or concrete blocks shall be laid with broken joints and all horizontal and vertical joints filled with cement-sand mortar. The outside of walls shall be plastered with a minimum 1-inch-thick coat of cement-sand mortar troweled smooth.

K. Connection to Existing Pipe

1. Verify the diameter and invert elevation of existing pipe to be connected to new utility structures prior to beginning work on the structures.

2. Provide adequate protection to prevent damage to the existing pipe.

3. Provide adequate means for plugging and/or transferring the existing flow in the pipe to allow for the construction of inverts and grouting.

4. Cut off the existing pipe sufficiently for connection to the new structure and remove.

5. Thoroughly clean all foreign matter and coat the pipe surface with epoxy adhesive where the pipe joins the new structure.

6. Install a flexible joint sealer around the pipe.

7. Grout inside and outside of wall penetration with non-shrink grout.

L. Backfill structures in accordance with Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

M. Clean all structures of any accumulation of silt, debris, or foreign matter and keep clean until final acceptance of the work.

N. Excavation shall conform to Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork.

O. Structure bases shall bear on a minimum of 8-inches of compacted stone unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

P. Channel Inverts

1. Inverts shall be placed using Class B concrete with forms sufficient to provide a smooth half-round shape as shown on the Drawings. Manhole bases employing full depth precast inverts are acceptable.

2. Where the slope of the line does not change through a manhole, a constant slope shall be maintained in the invert. Where slope changes occur within a given manhole, the transition shall be smooth and shall occur at the approximate center of the manhole.

3. Inverts shown on the Drawings are taken at the center of the manhole unless otherwise noted.

3.05 ADJUSTMENTS TO EXISTING UTILITY STRUCTURES

A. Adjust structures as indicated on the Drawings using concrete or cast-iron adjustment rings by approved methods.

B. Clean covers and inlet castings of all foreign material.

3.06 ADJUSTING COLLARS AND FINAL ADJUSTMENTS

A. Adjusting collars shall be as shown on the Drawings, or as necessary meet final grade. Final adjustments shall be made so that the manhole ring and cover will be smooth and flush with the finished grade of the adjacent surface, or as otherwise indicated on the Drawings for manholes shown above grade.

3.07 LEAKAGE TESTING FOR MANHOLES

A. All manholes shall be vacuum tested as specified below.

B. <u>Manhole vacuum testing shall include the following minimum requirements:</u>

1. Testing shall be done in accordance with ASTM C1244 (latest revision).

2. Prior to testing all pipes, holes, and vents entering manhole shall be plugged and braced.

3. Contractor shall have an approved test head and copy of instructions for use by the manufacturer.

4. Contractor shall furnish two (2) certified and calibrated vacuum test gauges for the test.

    a. A vacuum of 10-inch hg shall be drawn on the manhole, the valve on the vacuum line of the test head closed, and the vacuum pump shut off. The time for the vacuum pressure to drop to 9-inch hg shall be measured. If the test time meets or exceeds the test time as specified in Table 1, the manhole is acceptable; otherwise, the test has failed and the manhole should be checked for leaks, repaired, and re-tested.

Table 1
Minimum Vacuum Test Times (Seconds) for Various Manhole Diameters and Depths

Manholes Ø (inches)

Depth (ft)	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
6’	15	20	25	29	34	38	43
8	20	26	33	38	45	51	57
10	25	33	41	48	56	63	71
12	30	39	49	57	67	76	85
14	35	46	57	67	78	89	100
16	40	52	67	76	89	101	114
18	45	59	73	86	100	114	128
20	50	65	81	95	111	126	142
22	55	72	89	105	122	139	156
24	59	78	97	114	133	152	170
26	64	85	105	124	144	164	185
28	69	91	113	133	155	177	199
30	74	98	121	143	166	189	213
Add. VF	+2.5	+3.25	+4.0	+4.75	+5.5	+6.5	+7.0

3.08 FLUSHING AND TESTING OF SEWERS (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 71 19
UNDERGROUND ELECTRICAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install underground duct systems, electric manholes, and electric handholes as specified herein and as indicated on the Drawings. The work shall be complete and shall include excavation, concrete construction, backfilling, and all materials, items, and components required for a complete system.

B. The provisions of this Section are applicable to all underground conduit work. All work shall be coordinated with that of the various utility companies and other Contractors. The Contractor shall adhere to all utility company requirements including the serving electric utility.

C. Reference the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements
2. Section 26 05 33.13 – Conduit for Electrical Systems
3. Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
4. Applicable sections of Division 31, Earthwork
5. Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel
6. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete
7. Section 33 05 61 – Utility Structures

1.02 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Products specified herein shall be designed, manufactured, and/or listed to the following standards as applicable:

1. AASHTO H20
2. ANSI/SCTE 77-2010 – Specification for Underground Enclosure Integrity

072623

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with the procedures and requirements set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall obtain from the equipment manufacturer and submit Shop Drawings. Each submittal shall be identified by the applicable Specification Section.

1.04 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Each submittal shall be complete in all respects, incorporating all information and data listed herein and all additional information required for evaluation of the proposed equipment's compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Partial, incomplete, or illegible submittals will be returned to the Contractor without review for resubmittal.

C. Shop drawings shall include but not be limited to, the following:

1. Product data sheets.

2. Outline and dimensional drawings including detailed sections of the manholes and/or handholes.

3. Materials specifications and structural calculations for the manholes sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

1.05 IDENTIFICATION

A. Each electric manhole and handhole cover shall be lettered with the word “Electric”, the manhole or handhole identification number (e.g., UMH-1, EMH-1, EHH-1, etc.), manufacturer's name or trademark, and such other information as the manufacturer may consider necessary, or as specified, for complete identification.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The material covered by this Specification is intended to be standard material of proven performance as manufactured by reputable concerns. Material shall be fabricated, constructed, and installed in accordance with the best practices of the trade, and shall operate satisfactorily when installed as specified herein and indicated on the Drawings.

2.02 DUCT SYSTEM

A. The underground duct system shall be comprised of conduits, conduit bends, and conduit fittings as specified in Section 26 05 33.13 – Conduit for Electrical Systems. Conduits shall be encased in reinforced concrete envelopes, unless otherwise specified herein or indicated on the Drawings.

B. Base and intermediate conduit spacers shall be furnished to provide a minimum of two-inch (2") separation between conduits. Conduit spacers shall be provided in the proper size as required for the conduit that they secure. For example, a 4" conduit spacer shall not be used to secure a 2" conduit. Conduit spacers shall be as manufactured by Carlon Electrical Products Company, Aeroquip Corporation, Underground Devices, Incorporated, or Engineer approved equal.

2.03 ELECTRIC MANHOLES

A. The concrete manholes shall be complete with metal frames and covers of size and location as specified herein and shown on the Drawings.

B. Manhole frames and covers shall be double leaf aluminum construction. Leaf covers shall be constructed of ¼" diamond pattern plate. Manhole frames and covers shall be reinforced for 300 lbs/sq.ft. for applications not subject to deliberate vehicular traffic; Type JD-AL as manufactured by The Bilco Company, or equal. Manhole, frames, and covers shall be AASHTO H20 heavy duty for applications subject to deliberate vehicular traffic; Type JD-AL H-20 as manufactured by The Bilco Company or approved equal.

C. All electric manholes shall be provided with non-metallic cable racks. Cable racks shall be rated for the application, with a minimum loading capacity of 450 lbs. per rack arm. Cable rack system shall be Heavy Duty type as manufactured by Underground Devices, Incorporated or Engineer approved equal.

2.04 ELECTRIC HANDHOLES

A. The electric handholes shall be a precast polymer concrete enclosure suitable for use as part of an underground electric raceway system. The enclosure shall meet or exceed the requirements of ANSI/SCTE 77-2010.

B. The enclosure and cover design and test load rating shall be Tier 15. Covers shall be provided with cover hooks.

C. The enclosure shall be the straight side design to allow easy adjustment of box to grade. The box shall be stackable for increased depth.

D. Handhole opening size shall be as required to suit the application, 6” x 8”, minimum.

E. The electric handholes shall be manufactured by Hubbell, Pencell Plastics equivalent, Highline Products equivalent, or Engineer approved equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The underground duct system, manholes, and handholes shall be installed as specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, and in accordance with manufacturers’ instructions.

3.02 DUCT SYSTEM

A. All underground conduits shall be encased in concrete and shall be reinforced. Encasement and reinforcement shall be as indicated in the Standard Details. Concrete shall be furnished and installed in accordance with Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete. Reinforcing steel shall be furnished and installed in accordance with Section 03 21 00 – Reinforcing Steel.

B. Concrete pours shall be complete from handhole to handhole and from manhole to manhole where practicable. Partial pours in general shall not be permitted. Where a complete pour is impractical, written authorization shall be obtained from the Engineer for the partial pour.

C. Conduit ductbank elevations at the manholes and handholes shall be based on minimum ductbank cover as indicated in the Standard Details, or deeper to avoid conflicts with other obstacles. Where deviation is necessary to clear unforeseen obstacles, the elevations may be changed after authorization by the Engineer.

D. Slope all conduits continuously away from structures and buildings with a minimum slope of 3” per 100’ unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

E. The minimum clearance from the top of the concrete encasement and finished grade shall be as indicated in the Standard Details, except where otherwise accepted in writing by the Engineer or shown on the Drawings.

F. Care shall be exercised during excavation for the duct banks to prevent digging too deep. Backfilling of low spots with earth fill will not be permitted unless thoroughly compacted and acceptable to the Engineer.

G. If a specific ductbank arrangement is shown on the Drawings, the conduits in that ductbank shall be arranged as shown. Where no specific ductbank arrangement is shown on the Drawings, the Contractor shall arrange conduits within each ductbank based on field conditions. Spare conduits shown going from ductbanks into buildings or structures shall be stubbed up in the location(s) as indicated on the Drawings.

H. The ends of the bare copper cables embedded in the concrete ductbank shall be connected to structure and/or building ground rings where the ductbanks terminate, and to each other in manholes and handholes as specified herein.

I. Care shall be exercised and temporary plugs shall be installed during installation to prevent the entrance of concrete, mortar, or other foreign matter into the conduit system. Conduit spacers shall be utilized to support conduit during the pouring of concrete to prevent movement and misalignment of the conduits. Conduit spacers shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise noted. Horizontal spacing of conduit spacers along ductbank shall be as indicated on the Standard Details.

J. Where connections to existing underground conduits are indicated, excavate to the maximum depth necessary. After addressing the existing conductors, cut the conduits and remove loose concrete from the conduits before installing new concrete encased ducts. Provide a reinforced concrete collar, poured monolithically with the new duct line, to take the shear at the joint of the duct lines.

K. Construct concrete-encased conduits connecting to underground structures to have a flared section adjacent to the manhole to provide shear strength. Construct underground structures to provide shear strength. Construct underground structures to provide for keying the concrete encasement of the duct line into the wall of the structure. Use vibrators when this portion of the encasement is poured to ensure a seal between the encasement and the wall of the structure.

L. Six (6) inches above all duct banks, the Contractor shall furnish and install a two (2) inch wide red plastic electrical hazard tape. Tapes shall be metallic detectable type and shall have a continuous message in bold black letters: "ELECTRIC LINE BURIED BELOW." Tape shall be Detectable Identoline by Brady or Engineer approved equal.

M. The Contractor shall perform all earthwork including excavation, backfill, bedding, compaction, shoring and bracing, grading, and restoration of surfaces and seeded areas disturbed during the execution of the Work.

N. All conduit joints in the duct system shall be staggered such that adjacent conduits do not have joints in the same location.

3.03 ELECTRIC MANHOLES

A. Electric manholes shall be installed to a sufficient depth to accommodate the required grading of ducts as well as maintaining a minimum distance of 14” from the bottom of the lowest duct centerline entrances to finished floor line and/or highest duct centerline entrance to the roof. All manholes shall be built on or placed over a 6” layer of well-tamped gravel.

B. Duct envelopes and conduit with bell ends shall enter at approximately right angles to the walls, except as may otherwise be shown on the Drawings.

C. All concrete work and fully assembled manholes shall be completely watertight and shall be furnished with sloped floors that pitch towards a sump pit. The outside surfaces shall be coated with an approved asphaltic waterproofing compound (all sides, bottom, and roof). Precast concrete manholes may be installed; however, all requirements of this Section and other Divisions of the Specifications and the details shown on the Drawings shall apply.

D. Install pulling eye irons imbedded in walls opposite each duct entrance securely fastened to manhole reinforcing rods. All hardware shall be hot-dipped galvanized steel.

E. A ground rod and a ground bar, furnished in accordance with Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems, shall installed at each manhole. Ground rod shall be driven within each manhole. The ground bar shall be installed inside each manhole. A No. 4/0 AWG bare copper ground cable shall be connected between the ground rod and the ground bar. The bare copper ground cable located within each duct bank shall also be connected to the ground bar. No. 6 AWG bare copper cables shall be connected from all non-current carrying metal parts in the manhole to the ground bar. All cable connections at the ground bar shall be NEMA 2-hole style lugs with irreversible compression style barrel made of copper or aluminum. Aluminum lugs shall be marked with an AL/CU rating for use on copper conductors.

F. All cables shall be well supported by non-metallic cable racks. The cable racks shall be heavy-duty type for medium and low voltage power cables and light -duty type for control, signal, communications, and similar small conductors. All racks shall be rigidly attached to the wall and equipped with adjustable rack arms.

3.04 ELECTRIC HANDHOLES

A. Electric handholes shall be installed to a sufficient depth to accommodate the required grading of ducts as well as maintaining a minimum distance of 9” from the bottom of the lowest duct centerline entrances to finished floor line and/or highest duct centerline

entrance to roof. All handholes shall be installed in accordance with Standard Detail E-33-0103.

B. Duct envelopes and conduit with bell ends shall enter at approximately right angles to the walls, except as may otherwise be shown on the Drawings.

C. All individual cables and/or bundles of conductors shall be identified and “dressed” along the wall of the enclosure. Cable racks as specified herein shall be provided if any handhole dimension exceeds 24 inches.

3.05 TESTING

A. All tests shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the General Conditions and Division 01. The following tests are required:

1. Field tests

a. Field tests for all completed duct systems shall consist of pulling a swab through each conduit followed by a mandrel equal in size to 85% of the conduit inside diameter.

b. After testing, all conduits shall be capped after installation of a suitable pull rope. All field tests shall be witnessed by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 00
BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install to the required line and grade, all piping together with all fittings and appurtenances, required for a complete installation. Piping to be backfilled and/or encased in concrete is considered to be buried piping. Piping that is not buried is considered to be exposed.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and install fittings, couplings, connections, sleeves, adapters, harness rods and closure pieces as required to connect pipelines of dissimilar materials and/or sizes herein included under this Section and other concurrent Contracts for a complete installation.

C. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, tools, and services required for the furnishing, installation and testing of all piping as shown on the Drawings, specified in this Section and required for the Work. Piping shall be furnished and installed of the material, sizes, classes, and at the locations shown on the Drawings and/or designated in this Section. Piping shall include all fittings, adapter pieces, couplings, closure pieces, harnessing rods, hardware, bolts, gaskets, wall sleeves, wall pipes, hangers, supports, and other associated appurtenances for required connections to equipment, valves, or structures for a complete installation.

D. Piping assemblies under 4-inch size shall be generally supported on walls and ceilings, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings or ordered by the Engineer, being kept clear of openings and positioned above "headroom" space. Where practical, such piping shall be run in neat clusters, plumb and level along walls, and parallel to overhead beams.

E. The Contractor shall provide taps on piping where required or shown on the Drawings. Where pipe or fitting wall thicknesses are insufficient to provide the required number of threads, a boss or pipe saddle shall be installed.

F. The work shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Connections to existing pipelines.

2. Test excavations necessary to locate or verify existing pipe and appurtenances.

3. Installation of all new pipe and materials required for a complete installation.

4. Cleaning, testing and disinfecting as required.

02-21-2024

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Division 01 – General Requirements

B. Division 02 – Existing Conditions

C. Division 05 – Metals

D. Division 09 – Finishes

E. Division 26 – Electrical

F. Division 46 – Water and Wastewater Equipment

1.03 MATERIAL CERTIFICATION AND SHOP DRAWINGS

A. The Contractor shall furnish to the Owner (through the Engineer) a Material Certification stating that the pipe materials and specials furnished under this Section conform to all applicable provisions of the corresponding Specifications. Specifically, the Certification shall state compliance with the applicable standards (ASTM, AWWA, etc.) for fabrication and testing.

B. Shop Drawings for major piping (2-inches in diameter and greater) shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures. In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, the Contractor shall submit laying schedules and detailed Drawings in plan and profile for all piping as specified and shown on the Drawings.

C. Shop Drawings shall include, but not be limited to, complete piping layout, pipe material, sizes, class, locations, necessary dimensions, elevations, supports, hanger details, pipe joints, and the details of fittings including methods of joint restraint. No fabrication or installation shall begin until Shop Drawings are approved by the Engineer.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. All specials and every length of pipe shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark, size, class, and the date of manufacture. Special care in handling shall be exercised during delivery, distribution, and storage of pipe to avoid damage and unnecessary stresses. Damaged pipe will be rejected and shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Pipe and specials stored prior to use shall be stored in such a manner as to keep the interior free from dirt and foreign matter.

B. Testing of pipe before installation shall be as described in the corresponding ASTM or AWWA Specifications and in the applicable standard specifications listed in the following sections. Testing after the pipe is installed shall be as specified in Part 3.

C. Joints in piping shall be of the type as specified in the appropriate Piping System Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

D. All buried piping shall have restrained joints for thrust protection unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings. All exposed piping shall have flanged joints, unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings.

E. The Drawings indicate work affecting existing piping and appurtenances. The Contractor shall excavate test pits as required of all connections and crossings which may affect the Contractor's work prior to ordering pipe and fittings to determine sufficient information for ordering materials. The Contractor shall take whatever measurements that are required to complete the work as shown or specified.

2.02 WALL PIPES

A. Where wall sleeves or wall pipes occur in walls that are continuously wet on one or both sides, they shall have water stop flanges at the center of the casting or as shown on the Drawings. Ends of wall pipes shall be flange, mechanical joint, plain end, or bell as shown on the Drawings, or as required for connection to the piping. Wall pipes shall be of the same material as the piping that they are connected to. If welded waterstop flanges are employed, welds shall be 360 degree continuous on both sides of flange. Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, waterstop flanges shall conform to the minimum dimensions shown below:

Pipe Size	Waterstop Flange Diameter	Waterstop Flange Thickness
4" - 12"	OD + 3.10"	0.50"
14" - 24"	OD + 4.15"	0.75"
30" - 36"	OD + 4.50"	1.00"
42" - 48"	OD + 5.00"	1.25"
54"	OD + 5.90"	1.50"

2.03 SLEEVES

A. Unless shown otherwise, all piping passing through walls and floors shall be installed in sleeves or wall castings accurately located before concrete is poured or placed in position during construction of masonry walls. Sleeves passing through floors shall extend from the bottom of the floor to a point 3 inches above the finished floor, unless shown otherwise. Water stop flanges are required on all sleeves located in floors or walls which are continually wet or under hydrostatic pressure on one or both sides of the floor or wall.

B. Sleeves shall be cast iron, black steel pipe, or fabricated steel in accordance with details shown on the Drawings. If not shown on the Drawings, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer the details of sleeves he proposes to install; and no fabrication or installation

thereof shall take place until the Engineer's approval is obtained. Steel sleeves shall be fabricated of structural steel plate in accordance with the standards and procedures of AISC and AWS. Steel sleeve surfaces shall receive a commercial sandblast cleaning and then be shop painted in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

C. When shown on the Drawings or otherwise required, the annular space between the installed piping and sleeve shall be completely sealed against a maximum hydrostatic pressure of 20 psig. Seals shall be mechanically interlocked, solid rubber links, trade name "Link-Seal", as manufactured by Garlock Pipeline Technologies (GPT) or equal. Rubber link, seal-type, size, and installation thereof, shall be in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. For non-fire rated walls and floors, pressure plate shall be glass reinforced nylon plastic with EPDM rubber seal and 316 stainless steel bolts and nuts. For fire rated walls and floors, two independent seals shall be provided consisting of low carbon steel, zinc galvanized pressure plates, silicon rubber seals and 316 stainless steel bolts and nuts.

D. Cast iron mechanical joint adapter sleeves shall be Clow # 1429, as manufactured by the Clow Corp., or equal. Mechanical joint adapter sleeves shall be provided with suitable gasket, follower ring, and bolts to affect a proper seal. In general, sleeves installed in walls, floors, or roofs against one side of which will develop a hydrostatic pressure, or through which leakage of liquid will occur, shall be so sealed. If welded waterstop flanges are employed, welds shall be 360 degree continuous on both sides of flange.

2.04 SOLID SLEEVE COUPLINGS (FOR BURIED SERVICE THROUGH 54-INCH)

A. Solid sleeve couplings shall be used to connect buried service piping where shown on the Drawings. Solid sleeves shall be ductile iron, long body and shall conform to the requirements of ANSI A21.10 (AWWA C110). Unless otherwise shown or specified, solid sleeve couplings shall be Style A11760 as manufactured by American Cast Iron Pipe Co., or equal. Solid sleeve couplings shall be restrained with wedge-type restraining glands to meet the pressures specified in 40 06 20 – Schedules.

B. Alternatively, EBAA Iron 3800 Mega-Coupling is acceptable.

2.05 SLEEVE TYPE COUPLINGS (FOR EXPOSED SERVICE AND BURIED SERVICE ABOVE 54-INCH)

A. Sleeve type, flexible couplings shall be furnished and installed where shown on the Drawings or otherwise required to resist internal operating pressures. In addition to that specified herein, harnessed, sleeve type flexible couplings shall be provided on all exposed pipe 3 inches and larger in diameter that spans any expansion joint in a building or structure.

B. Materials shall be of high strength steel and couplings shall be rated for the same pressures as the connecting piping.

C. Gaskets shall be rubber. Bolts and nuts shall be alloy steel, corrosion-resistant and prime coated.

D. Harnessing for exposed applications shall be by rodding across the sleeve type coupling to the nearest pipe joint on either side of the coupling using threaded rods and rod tabs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

E. Couplings shall be as manufactured by Smith-Blair Model 411, Romac Industries Model 400, Dresser Industries Style 38, or equal as required and shown on the Drawings. All couplings shall be provided without interior pipe stop.

F. Couplings shall be provided with manufacturer's fusion bonded epoxy painting system.

2.06 FLANGED COUPLING ADAPTERS

A. Flanged coupling adapters shall be furnished as required and as shown on the Drawings.

B. Flanged coupling adapters shall be of ductile iron or carbon steel construction and shall be rated for the same pressure as the connected piping.

C. All flanged coupling adapters shall be harnessed by tying the adapter to the nearest pipe joint flange using threaded rods and rod tabs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

D. Flanged coupling adapters shall be manufactured by Smith-Blair Model 912 or 913, Romac Industries Model FCG or FC 400, Dresser Industries Model 128-W, or equal.

E. Flanged coupling adapters shall be provided with manufacturer's fusion bonded epoxy painting system.

2.07 DISMANTLING JOINTS

A. Dismantling joints shall be furnished at locations shown on the Drawings.

B. Dismantling joints for sizes less than 12-inch shall be of ductile iron or carbon steel construction and shall be rated for the same pressure as the connected piping. Dismantling joints for sizes greater than 12-inches shall be of carbon steel construction and shall be rated for the same pressure as the connected piping.

C. Flanges for dismantling joints shall match the bolt pattern and pressure rating of the flanges for the connected piping.

D. All dismantling joints shall be restrained utilizing restraining rods provided by the manufacturer. Restraining rods shall be constructed from ASTM A193 Grade B7 steel. Restraining rods and restraint system shall be installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

E. Dismantling joints shall be provided with manufacturer's fusion bonded epoxy painting system.

F. Dismantling joints shall be manufactured by Smith Blair Model 975, Romac Industries Model DJ400, or equal.

2.08 GROOVED COUPLINGS

A. Grooved end pipe couplings shall be furnished as specified or shown on the Drawings.

B. Materials shall be of malleable iron and couplings shall be rated for the same pressures as the connecting piping.

C. Gaskets shall be rubber. Bolts and nuts shall be heat treated carbon steel track bolts and shall be plated.

D. After installation, buried couplings shall receive two heavy coats of an approved coal tar which is compatible with the finish of the coupling. Exposed couplings shall be painted in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

E. Couplings shall be manufactured by Victaulic Company of America Style 31 or equal.

2.09 TAPPING SLEEVES AND TAPPING SADDLES

A. Tapping sleeves shall be similar to Mueller Outlet Seal, American Uniseal or Kennedy Square Seal. All sleeves shall have a minimum working pressure of 150 psi. All sleeves larger than twelve (12) inches shall be ductile iron. All taps shall be machine drilled; no burned taps will be allowed.

B. Tapping saddles may be used on mains sixteen (16) inches and larger where the required tap size does not exceed one-half the size of the main (i.e. 8-inch tapping saddle for use on a 16-inch main). Tapping saddles shall be manufactured of ductile iron providing a factor of safety of at least 2.5 at a working pressure of 250 psi. Saddles shall be equipped with a standard AWWA C-110-77 flange connection on the branch. Sealing gaskets shall be "O" ring type, high quality molded rubber having an approximate seventy durometer hardness, placed into a groove on the curved surface of the tapping saddles. Straps shall be of alloy steel. The tapping saddle shall be the American tapping saddle, U.S. Pipe tapping saddle, or equal. All taps shall be machine cut, no burned taps will be allowed.

2.10 UNIONS

A. For ductile iron, carbon steel, and grey cast iron pipes assembled with threaded joints and malleable iron fittings, unions shall conform to ANSI B16.39.

B. For copper piping, unions shall have ground joints and conform to ANSI B16.18.

C. For PVC and CPVC piping, unions shall be socket weld type with Viton O-ring.

2.11 THERMOPLASTIC TUBING AND FITTINGS

A. Thermoplastic tubing shall be manufactured from polyallomor tubing. Tubing shall be protected from ultraviolet radiation degradation with a black coating or integral color conforming to ASTM D-1248, Type 1, Class C, Category 3. Fittings and connectors used with thermoplastic tubing shall be the flareless tube type constructed of brass conforming to SAE CA377, SAE CA360 or equal. Brass sleeves shall be used.

B. Assembly of the thermoplastic tubing shall consist of pushing the tubing into the fitting and hand tightening the nut with final tightening with a wrench. Care shall be taken not to overtighten the nut. Plastic tube racks and bend holders shall be provided for holding the tubing in position. Needle valves used with thermoplastic tubing shall be the globe type constructed with a brass body, stem and seat and Buna-N "O"-ring seals. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Thermoplastic tubing shall be the Impolene (polyallomor) system and needle valves, fittings and connectors shall be the Poly-Flo with 261 UB Universal Nut and Sleeve system as manufactured by Imperial Eastman, or equal.

2.12 HEAT TRACED PIPING (NOT USED)

2.13 FLEXIBLE RESTRAINED EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Restrained expansion joints shall be manufactured of 60-42-10 ductile iron conforming to material and other applicable requirements of ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53.

B. Each pressure containing component shall be lined with a minimum of 15 mils of fusion bonded epoxy conforming to the materials requirements of, and tested in accordance with, ANSI/AWWA C213 and shall meet or exceed the requirements of ANSI/AWWA C550.

C. Seals shall conform to the applicable requirements of ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.

D. All bolts used in the assemblies shall be stainless steel and shall be coated with a premium quality epoxy.

E. Flanged ends shall comply with ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10, with the addition of O-ring groove and O-ring.

F. Mechanical joint ends shall comply with ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53.

G. Restrained expansion joints shall have a minimum pressure rating of 350 psi with a minimum safety factor of 3:1. Each assembly shall be tested at 350 psi before shipment.

H. Restrained expansion joints shall provide for self-restraint without tie rods and shall provide for expansion and contraction capabilities cast as an integral part of the end connection.

I. Flexible restrained expansion joints shall allow for 8-inches (+6"-2") minimum expansion.

J. Flexible restrained expansion joints shall consist of an expansion joint designed and cast as an integral part of a ball and socket type flexible joint having a minimum of 15□ deflection per ball.

K. Restrained expansion joints shall be the Single Ball or Double Ball FLEX-TEND Expansion Joint as manufactured by EBAA Iron Inc., or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. All piping shall be installed by skilled workmen and in accordance with the best standard practice for piping installation as shown on the Drawings, specified or recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Proper tools and appliances for the safe and convenient handling and installing of the pipe and fittings shall be used. Great care shall be taken to prevent any pipe coating from being damaged on the inside or outside of the pipe and fittings. All pieces shall be carefully examined for defects, and no piece shall be installed which is known to be cracked, damaged, or otherwise defective. If any defective pieces should be discovered after having been installed, it shall be removed and replaced with a sound one in a satisfactory manner by the Contractor and at his own expense. Pipe and fittings shall be thoroughly cleaned before they are installed and shall be kept clean until they are accepted in the complete work. All piping connections to equipment shall be provided with unions or coupling flanges located so that piping may be readily dismantled from the equipment. At certain applications, Dresser, Victaulic, or equal, couplings may also be used. All piping shall be installed in such a manner that it will be free to expand and contract without injury to itself or to structures and equipment to which it is connected. All piping shall be erected to accurate lines and grades with no abrupt changes in line or grade and shall be supported and braced against movement, temporary, or permanent. All exposed piping shall be installed with vertical and horizontal angles properly related to adjoining surfaces or pipes to give the appearance of good workmanship. Unless otherwise shown or approved, provided a minimum headroom clearance under all piping of 7 feet 6 inches.

B. Unless otherwise shown or specified, all waste and vent piping shall pitch uniformly at a 1/4-inch per foot grade and accessible cleanouts shall be furnished and installed as shown and as required by local building codes. Installed length of waste and vent piping shall be determined from field measurements in lieu of the Drawings.

C. All excavation shall be made in such a manner and to such widths as will provide ample room for properly installing the pipe and permit thorough compaction of backfill around the pipe. The minimum trench widths shall be in strict accordance with the "Trench Width Excavation Limits" as shown on the Drawings. All excavation and trenching shall be done in strict accordance with these specifications and all applicable parts of the OSHA Regulations, 29CFR 1926, Subpart P.

D. ALL EXCAVATION REQUIRED BY THIS CONTRACT SHALL BE UNCLASSIFIED. NO ADDITIONAL PAYMENT WILL BE MADE FOR ROCK EXCAVATION REQUIRED FOR THE INSTALLATION OF PIPE OR STRUCTURES SHOWN ON THE DRAWINGS.

E. Enlargements of the trench shall be made as needed to give ample space for operations at pipe joints. The width of the trench shall be limited to the maximum dimensions shown on the Drawings, except where a wider trench is needed for the installation of and work within sheeting and bracing. Except where otherwise specified, excavation slopes shall be flat enough to avoid slides which will cause disturbance of the subgrade, damage to adjacent areas, or endanger the lives or safety of persons in the vicinity.

F. Hand excavation shall be employed wherever, in the opinion of the Engineer, it is necessary for the protection of existing utilities, poles, trees, pavements, or obstructions.

G. No greater length of trench in any location shall be left open, in advance of pipe laying, than shall be authorized or directed by the Engineer and, in general, such length shall be limited to approximately one hundred (100) feet. The Contractor shall excavate the trenches to the full depth, width and grade indicated on the Drawings including the relevant requirements for bedding. The trench bottoms shall then be examined by the Engineer as to the condition and bearing value before any pipe is laid or bedding is placed.

H. No pressure testing shall be performed until the pipe has been properly backfilled in place. All pipe passing through walls and/or floors shall be provided with wall pipes or sleeves in accordance with the specifications and the details shown on the Drawings. All wall pipes shall be of ductile iron and shall have a water stop located in the center of the wall. Each wall pipe shall be of the same class, thickness, and interior coating as the piping to which it is joined. All buried wall pipes shall have a coal tar outside coating on exposed surfaces.

I. JOINT DEFLECTION SHALL NOT EXCEED 75 PERCENT OF THE MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDED DEFLECTION. Excavation and backfilling shall conform to the requirements of Section 31 00 01 – Earthwork, and as specified herein. Maximum trench widths shall conform to the Trench Width Excavation Limits shown on the Drawings. All exposed, submerged, and buried piping shall be adequately supported and braced by means of hangers, concrete piers, pipe supports, or otherwise as may be required by the location.

J. Following proper preparation of the trench subgrade, pipe and fittings shall be carefully lowered into the trench so as to prevent dirt and other foreign substances from gaining entrance into the pipe and fittings. Proper facilities shall be provided for lowering sections of pipe into trenches. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL ANY OF THE MATERIALS BE DROPPED OR DUMPED INTO THE TRENCH.

K. Water shall be kept out of the trench until jointing and backfilling are completed. When work is not in progress, open ends of pipe, fittings, and valves shall be securely closed so that no water, earth, or other substance will enter the pipes, fitting, or valves. Pipe

ends left for future connections shall be valved, plugged, or capped, and anchored as required.

L. All piping shall be installed in such a manner that it will be free to expand and/or contract without injury to itself or to structures and equipment to which it is connected. All piping shall be erected to accurate lines and grades with no abrupt changes in line or grade and shall be supported and braced against movement, temporary, or permanent. All exposed piping shall be installed with vertical and horizontal angles properly related to adjoining surfaces or pipes to give the appearance of good workmanship. Pipes crossing within a vertical distance of less than or equal to one (1) foot shall be encased and supported with concrete at the point of crossing to prevent damage to the adjacent pipes as shown on the Drawings.

M. The full length of each section of pipe shall rest solidly upon the bed of the trench, with recesses excavated to accommodate bells, couplings, joints, and fittings. Before joints are made, each pipe shall be well bedded on a solid foundation; and no pipe shall be brought into position until the preceding length has been thoroughly bedded and secured in place. Pipe that has the grade or joint disturbed after laying shall be taken up and relaid by the Contractor at his own expense. Pipe shall not be laid in water or when trench conditions are unsuitable for work.

N. Proper and suitable tools and appliances for the safe convenient handling and laying of pipe shall be used and shall in general agree with manufacturer's recommendations.

O. AT THE CLOSE OF EACH WORK DAY, THE END OF THE PIPELINE SHALL BE TIGHTLY SEALED WITH A CAP OR PLUG SO THAT NO WATER, DIRT, OR OTHER FOREIGN SUBSTANCE MAY ENTER THE PIPELINE, AND THIS PLUG SHALL BE KEPT IN PLACE UNTIL PIPE LAYING IS RESUMED.

P. During the laying of pipe, each pipe manufacturer shall provide his own supervisor to instruct the Contractor's pipe laying personnel in the correct procedure to be followed.

Q. Ordinarily only full lengths of pipe (as furnished by the pipe manufacturer) shall be used exceptions: closure pieces at manholes and areas where joint deflection is required.

R. For gravity sewer installations, the Contractor shall use a laser device to maintain the trench and pipe alignment. The laser device shall be re-checked for correct elevation and pipe alignment prior to pipe installation if the device is left in the pipe overnight. Corrected invert elevations at each manhole and any adjustments will be coordinated and approved by the Engineer.

S. PIPING SHALL HAVE TYPE "B" BEDDING WHERE INDICATED ON THE DRAWINGS. ALL OTHER PIPING SHALL HAVE TYPE “A” BEDDING.

T. Detector tape shall be installed 12 inches below final grade and directly above all buried potable water piping. The tape shall be blue and silver and shall be clearly and permanently labeled "Water". Detector tape shall be Lineguard III as manufactured by Lineguard, Inc., or equal.

U. AT THE CLOSE OF WORK EACH DAY, PIPELINE TRENCHES SHALL BE COMPLETELY BACKFILLED. IN PAVED AREAS THE SURFACE SHALL BE RESTORED AS SPECIFIED IN SECTION 32 10 00 – PAVING AND SURFACING, TO ALLOW FOR TRAFFIC OVER THE TRENCH DURING NON-WORKING HOURS. UNDER NO CONDITIONS SHALL ANY PIPELINE TRENCH BE LEFT OPEN DURING NON-WORKING HOURS.

3.02 CARBON AND STAINLESS STEEL PIPE

A. Installation of steel pipe shall be by skilled workmen and shall conform to the applicable sections of AWWA Manual M-11. Joints for steel piping shall be either screwed, welded, or flanged as shown on the Drawings or as specified.

B. Welding in the field shall be performed only when requested on the shop drawings and permitted by the Engineer for carbon steel pipe. No welding of stainless steel pipe shall be allowed in the field. All field welds shall be radiographically inspected.

C. Installation of the steel casing pipe shall be by skilled workmen and in accordance with the best standard practice for steel pipe installation. Joints for steel casing pipe shall be butt welded.

1. The boring equipment to be used for installing the jacked casing shall be of such size and capacity to allow the boring to proceed in a safe and expeditious manner. The installation of the casing and boring of the hole shall be done simultaneously to avoid cave-ins or settlement and for safety of traffic above.

2. The Contractor shall check the vertical and horizontal alignment of the casing by survey instrument at least once during each four feet of advance, or as directed by the Engineer. Pits shall be well sheeted and braced as necessary for safe and adequate access for workmen, inspectors and materials and shall be of a size suitable to equipment and material handling requirements.

3. Under no conditions shall jetting or wet boring of encasement under pavement be allowed.

4. After installation of the carrier pipe, each end of the casing pipe shall be made watertight with a brick masonry bulkhead. In addition, a Class B concrete cradle shall be provided from each end of the bulkhead to the first pipe joint outside of the bulkhead.

3.03 JOINTS IN PIPING

A. Restrained joints shall be provided on all pipe joints as specified herein and shown on the Drawings. Restrained joints shall be made up similar to that for push-on joints.

B. Push-on joints include a single rubber gasket which fits into the bell end of the pipe. The gasket shall be wiped clean, flexed and then placed in the socket. Any bulges in the gasket which might interfere with the entry of the plain end of the pipe shall be removed.

A thin film of lubricant shall be applied to the gasket surface which will come into contact with the spigot end of the pipe. The lubricant shall be furnished by the pipe manufacturer. The plain end of the pipe, which is tapered for ease of assembly, shall be wiped clean and a thick film of lubricant applied to the outside. The pipe shall be aligned and carefully entered into the socket until it just makes contact with the gasket. The joint assembly shall be completed by entering the pipe past the gasket until it makes contact with the bottom of the socket. The pipe shall be pulled "home" with an approved jack assembly as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. If assembly is not accomplished by reasonable force, the plain end shall be removed, and the condition corrected.

C. Flanged joints shall be brought to exact alignment and all gaskets and bolts or studs inserted in their proper places. Bolts or studs shall be uniformly tightened around the joints. Where stud bolts are used, the bolts shall be uniformly centered in the connections and equal pressure applied to each nut on the stud. Pipes in all lines subject to temperature changes shall be cut short and cold sprung into place to compensate for expansion when hot.

D. Mechanical joints shall be made up with gaskets, glands and bolts. When a joint is to be made up, the bell or socket and plain end shall be cleaned and washed with a solution of mild soap in water; the gland and gasket shall be slid onto the plain end and the end then entered into the socket until it is fully "home" on the centering ring. The gasket shall then be painted with soapy water and slid into position, followed by the gland. All bolts shall be inserted and made up hand tight and then tightened alternately to bring the gland into position evenly. Excessive tightening of the bolts shall be avoided. All nuts shall be pulled up using a torque wrench which will not permit unequal stresses in the bolts. Torque shall not exceed the recommendations of the manufacturer of the pipe and bolts for the various sizes. Care shall be taken to assure that the pipe remains fully "home" while the joint is being made. Joints shall conform to the applicable AWWA Specifications.

E. Threaded and/or screwed joints shall have long tapered full depth threads to be made with the appropriate paste or jointing compound, depending on the type of fluid to be processed through the pipe. All pipe up to, and including 1-1/2-inches, shall be reamed to remove burr and stood on end and well pounded to remove scale and dirt. Wrenches on valves and fittings shall be applied directly over the joint being tightened. Not more than three pipe threads shall be exposed at each connection. Pipe, in all lines subject to temperature changes shall be cut short and cold sprung into place to compensate for expansion when hot. Joints in all piping used for chlorine gas lines shall be made up with a glycerine and litharge cement. Joints in plastic piping (PVC/CPVC) shall be laid and joints made with compounds recommended by the manufacturer. Installation shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D2774 and ASTM D2855. Unions required adjacent to valves and equipment.

F. Soldered joints shall have the burrs removed and both the outside of pipe and the inside of fittings shall be thoroughly cleaned by proper tools recommended for that purpose. Flux shall be applied to both pipe and inside of fittings and the pipe placed into fittings and rotated to insure equal distribution of flux. Joints shall be heated and solder applied

until it shows uniformly around the end of joints between fitting and pipe. All joints shall be allowed to self-cool to prevent the chilling of solder. Combination flux and solder paste manufactured by a reputable manufacturer is acceptable. Unions required adjacent to valves and equipment.

G. Welded joints shall be made by competent operators in a first class workmanlike manner, in complete accordance with ANSI B31.1 and AWWA C206. Welding electrodes shall conform to ASTM A233, and welding rod shall conform to ASTM A251. Only skilled welders capable of meeting the qualification tests for the type of welding which they are performing shall be employed. Tests, if so required, shall be made at the expense of the Contractor, if so ordered by the Engineer. Unions shall be required adjacent to valves and equipment.

H. Copper joints shall be thoroughly cleaned and the end of pipes uniformly flared by a suitable tool to the bevels of the fittings used. Wrenches shall be applied to the bodies of fittings where the joint is being made and in no case to a joint previously made. Dimensions of tubing and copper piping shall be in complete accordance with the fittings used. No flare joints shall be made on piping not suited for flare joints. Installations for propane gas shall be in accordance with NFPA 54 and/or 58.

I. Solvent or adhesive welded joints in plastic piping shall be accomplished in strict accordance with the pipe manufacturer's recommendations, including necessary field cuttings, sanding of pipe ends, joint support during setting period, etc. Care shall be taken that no droppings or deposits of adhesive or material remain inside the assembled piping. Solvent or adhesive material shall be compatible with the pipe itself, being a product approved by the pipe manufacturer. Unions are required adjacent to valves and equipment. Sleeve-type expansion joints shall be supplied in exposed piping to permit 1-inch minimum of expansion per 100 feet of pipe length.

J. Dielectric isolation such as flange isolation kits, dielectric unions, or similar, shall be installed wherever dissimilar metals are connected according to the following table.

	Zinc	Galvanized Steel	Aluminum	Cast Iron	Ductile Iron	Mild Steel/ Carbon Steel	Copper	Brass	Stainless Steel
Zinc			•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Galvanized Steel			•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Aluminum	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•
Cast Iron	•	•	•				•	•	•
Ductile Iron	•	•	•				•	•	•

	Zinc	Galvanized Steel	Aluminum	Cast Iron	Ductile Iron	Mild Steel/ Carbon Steel	Copper	Brass	Stainless Steel
Mild Steel/ Carbon Steel	●	●	●				●	●	●
Copper	●	●	●	●	●	●			●
Brass	●	●	●	●	●	●			●
Stainless Steel	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	

Notes:
● signifies dielectric isolation is required between the two materials noted.
Consult Engineer for items not listed in table.
Provide flange isolation kits for all flanged connections of dissimilar metals and hardware including connections to equipment.
Contractor shall include all isolation descriptions with piping submittals.

K. Eccentric reducers shall be installed where air or water pockets would otherwise occur in mains because of a reduction in pipe size.

L. Joints in polypropylene and polyvinylidelene fluoride pipe shall be butt fusion weld. All butt welding shall follow the requirements of ASTM D-2657 and the manufacturer's recommendations.

3.04 FLUSHING AND TESTING

A. All piping shall be properly flushed and tested unless specifically exempted elsewhere in the Specifications or otherwise approved by the Engineer. Air and gas pipelines shall be flushed and tested with compressed air. Gravity sewer piping shall be flushed and tested as specified in Section 33 05 61 – Utility Structures. Polymer piping shall be tested with mineral oil or as recommended by the polymer chemical supplier. All other liquid conveying pipelines shall be flushed and tested with water. The Contractor shall furnish and install all means and apparatus necessary for getting the air or water into the pipeline for flushing and testing including pumps, compressors, gauges, and meters, any necessary plugs and caps, and any required blow-off piping and fittings, etc., complete with any necessary reaction blocking to prevent pipe movement during the flushing and testing. All pipelines shall be flushed and tested in such lengths or sections as agreed upon among the Owner, Engineer, and Contractor. Test pressures shall be as specified in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules and shall be measured at the lowest point of the pipe segment being tested. The Contractor shall give the Owner and Engineer reasonable notice of the time when he intends to test portions of the pipelines. Do not test exterior, exposed pipelines if air temperature is expected to fall below 32 degrees F. The Engineer reserves the right, within reason, to request flushing and testing of any section or portion of a pipeline.

B. The Contractor shall provide water for all flushing and testing of liquid conveying pipelines. Raw water or non-potable water may be used for flushing and testing liquid pipelines not connected to the potable water system. Only potable water shall be used for flushing and testing the potable water system.

C. Air and gas piping shall be completely and thoroughly cleaned of all foreign matter, scale, and dirt prior to start-up of the air or gas system.

D. At the conclusion of the installation work, the Contractor shall thoroughly clean all new liquid conveying pipe by flushing with water or other means to remove all dirt, stones, pieces of wood, etc., which may have entered the pipe during the construction period. If after this cleaning any obstructions remain, they shall be corrected by the Contractor, at his own expense, to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Liquid conveying pipelines shall be flushed at the rate of at least 5.0 feet per second for a duration suitable to the Engineer or shall be flushed by other methods approved by the Engineer.

E. Compressed/service air and gas piping shall be flushed by removing end caps from the distribution lines and operating one (1) compressor, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

F. After flushing, all air piping shall be pressure and leak tested prior to coating and wrapping of welded joints. Immediately upon successful completion of the pressure and leak test, welded joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of all foreign matter, scale, rust, and discoloration and coated in accordance with the Specifications.

G. All process air piping shall be leak tested by applying a soap solution to each joint. Leak tests shall be conducted with one (1) blower in service at normal operating pressure.

H. During testing the piping shall show no leakage. Any leaks or defective piping disclosed by the leakage test shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor, at his own expense, and the test repeated until all such piping shows tight.

I. All buried process air piping shall be pressurized to 25 psig and tested for leaks by applying a soap solution to each joint. The air supply shall be stopped and the pipe pressure monitored. System pressure shall not fall by more than 0.5% of the 25 psig test pressure over a one hour test period. Should the system fail to hold the required pressure for one hour, the cause shall be determined and corrected and the test repeated until a successful test of the entire system is obtained.

J. Field leakage tests shall be performed for all submerged process air piping. The procedure shall consist of operating the system under clear nonpotable water for visual identification of all leaks. All field leakage tests shall be witnessed by the Engineer. All submerged piping shall be installed free of any leaks.

K. After flushing, all liquid conveying pipelines shall be hydrostatically tested at the test pressure specified in the appropriate Piping System Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules. The procedure used for the hydrostatic test shall be in accordance with the requirements of AWWA C600. Each pipeline shall be filled with water for a period of no

less than 24 hours and then subjected to the specified test pressure for 2 hours. During this test, exposed piping shall show no leakage. Allowable leakage in buried piping shall be in accordance with AWWA C600.

L. Any leaks or defective pipe disclosed by the hydrostatic test shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor, at his own expense, and the test repeated until all such piping shows tight.

M. After flushing, all gas piping shall be leak tested in accordance with all local codes and regulations and in conformance with the recommendations or requirements of any National Institute or Association for the specific service application.

3.05 DISINFECTION OF PIPELINES

A. Following acceptable pressure testing, flush and disinfect all sections of the water distribution system and receive approval thereof from the appropriate agencies, prior to placing in service. Do not disinfect exterior, exposed pipelines if air temperature is expected to fall below 32 degrees F. Advance notice of 24 hours shall be provided to the Owner and Engineer before disinfecting procedures start. The flushing and disinfection shall be accomplished in accordance with the applicable provisions of AWWA Standard C651, "Disinfecting Water Mains" and all appropriate approval agencies.

B. Administration shall be by any of the several methods described in AWWA Standard C651 and as proposed by the Contractor and approved by the Owner and Engineer. Contractor shall submit a proposal describing the desired disinfection method, which shall be approved by the Owner and Engineer prior to commencement of the disinfection process.

C. The initial chlorine dose shall be as described in AWWA C651 for the selected disinfection method. Chlorinated water must be retained in the pipeline long enough to destroy all non-spore forming bacteria, and not less than the retention time recommended for the selected disinfection method per AWWA C651. After the chlorine treated water has been retained for the required time, the chlorine residual at the pipe extremities and at other representative locations shall be as described in AWWA C651 for the selected disinfection method.

D. During the period that the chlorine solution or slug is in the section of pipeline, valves shall be opened and closed to obtain a chlorine residual at hydrants and other pipeline appurtenances. Care shall be taken to ensure that no chlorinated water enters any active pipeline.

E. Following contact with chlorine solution, the system shall be thoroughly flushed out per Section 4.9 of AWWA C651. All highly chlorinated water shall be flushed out within 72 hours of filling the main with highly chlorinated water. Samples shall then be taken using sterile containers obtained from the local regulatory agency. Samples shall be taken by the Contractor and delivered to the local regulatory agency or approved laboratory for analysis at the Contractor’s expense.

F. If samples test positive for coliform organisms, the disinfection procedure shall be repeated until two series of satisfactory samples are obtained, the period between such series of samples to be a minimum of 24 hours. Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with repeat tests. The Contractor shall obtain certificates of satisfactory bacteriological tests and furnish them to the Owner before the request is made for acceptance of the work. Bacteriological testing shall conform to Section 5 of AWWA C651.

G. Chlorine residual tests will be performed after flushing to assure that residual is no higher than what is acceptable to the Owner based on the normal prevailing residual in the drinking water distribution system. Testing shall be performed at multiple locations throughout the piping system to verify residual values.

H. Following disinfection, pipelines and appurtenances shall remain isolated from any operational water system facilities until evidence has been submitted to Owner demonstrating that the pipelines and appurtenances have been adequately and properly disinfected. Normally, pipelines and appurtenances shall be isolated for at least 48 hours, unless a longer period is dictated by the Owner.

I. Sanitary construction methods must be followed during installation of the final connections so no contamination of the new or existing water main with foreign material or groundwater occurs. Materials used for final connections shall be disinfected in accordance with Section 4.10 of AWWA C651.

J. All water used in testing and disinfecting the portions of pipeline, including that used for retesting, shall be disposed of following such testing, retesting, and disinfecting, by the Contractor at its own expense. The Contractor shall apply a reducing agent to the solution to neutralize residual chlorine remaining in the water. The disposal of water shall, in all cases, be carried out in strict observance of the water pollution control requirements of the local and state regulatory agencies. The flow of water from the portions of the pipeline shall be controlled to prevent erosion of surrounding soil, damage to vegetation, and altering of ecological conditions in the area.

3.06 PAINTING AND COLOR-CODING SYSTEM

A. All exposed piping specified shall be color coded in accordance with the Owner's standard color designation system for pipe recognition and in accordance with Section 40 05 97 – Piping and Equipment Identification Systems. In the absence of a standard color designation system, the Engineer will establish a standard color designation for each piping service category from color charts submitted by the Contractor in compliance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

B. All piping specified in this Section shall be painted in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting, except as follows:

1. Copper pipe

2. Stainless steel pipe. Flanges and supports or hangers shall be painted.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 07
PIPE SUPPORTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Furnish all equipment, labor, materials, and design calculations required to provide pipe supports in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components

B. Division 03 – Concrete

C. Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing

D. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening

E. Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials

F. Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel

G. Section 05 13 00 – Stainless Steel

H. Section 05 50 00 – Metal Fabrications

I. Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Pipe support submittals will not be reviewed prior to review and acceptance of pipe layout submittal. Pipe support submittal shall be fully coordinated with approved pipe layout submittal. Contractor shall use approved piping layout submittal drawings to show proposed pipe support type and location with accurate dimensions to demonstrate that supports meet all specified requirements.

B. Applicable and associated cut sheets and drawings for materials and support components shall be submitted with the Shop Drawings in accordance with or in addition to the submittal requirements specified in Section 01 33 00 – Submittals, Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements and other referenced Sections above.

03-28-22

1. Catalog cut information on all system components such as pipe supports, hangers, guides, anchors, and channel-type supports.

2. Drawings of the piping support systems, locating each support, brace, hanger, guide, component and anchor. Identify support, hanger, guide and anchor type by catalog number and Shop Drawing detail number.

3. With each piping support system Shop Drawing, the Contractor shall attach calculations prepared and sealed by a Professional Engineer, licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located, showing that the piping support system complies with the specified requirements, including all building code and seismic code requirements pertaining to support of piping and other non-structural components. See Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components.

4. manufacturer's recommended hanger support spacing for PVC, CPVC and FRP pipe for the services listed in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the design of all piping support systems unless noted otherwise herein. The absence of pipe supports and details on the Contract Drawings shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility of providing a pipe support design sealed by a Professional Engineer, licensed in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located. Standard details for pipe supports have been included on the Drawings to define minimum requirements as to the types of Contractor designed pipe supports that will be acceptable.

B. Where a specific location or type of support is shown on the Drawings, the location and type shall be incorporated in the Contractor's pipe support design.

C. Where special pipe support fabrications are required, products and execution shall be as specified in Section 05 50 00 – Metal Fabrications and other related and referenced Sections of the Specifications.

D. Existing piping support systems to support new piping shall only be used if the Contractor can show and demonstrate by submitting supporting calculations that they are adequate for the additional load imposed by the new piping, or if they are strengthened to support the additional load.

E. Contractor's pipe support design should include, but not be limited to, the following criteria and loads imposed on the piping system:

1. Thrust Loads based on the design pressures as specified in Piping Schedules in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules. Pipe support design shall not utilize process equipment for thrust restraint or support of piping loads.

2. Dead loads and live loads per the latest version of ASCE/SEI 7 or the local building code if more stringent. Loads shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

    a. Weight of pipe

    b. Weight of pipe contents

    c. Weight of insulation

    d. Ice loads (If applicable by location, ice loads per code shall be applied as indicated in the governing building code)

    e. Seismic loading requirements and conditions as specified in the governing building code and referenced seismic design codes. Refer to Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components and the structural code drawing for project specific seismic design criteria. Seismic and sway bracing shall be provided at maximum 10-foot centers.

    f. Wind loads

3. Loads associated with thermal expansion and contraction of the piping system over the full range of potential temperatures the piping system could experience that should include, but not be limited to, the following:

    a. Ambient temperature range per local historical weather data (historic high and low obtained from NOAA)

    b. Process operating temperature range

    c. Exposure to sunlight where applicable

4. Additional pipe support design considerations shall include the following:

    a. A minimum safety factor of 2 or as approved by the Engineer, based upon the yield strength of the support material, shall be used for pipe supports, braces, hangers, and guides as well as for beam and column members used in channel-type support systems.

    b. The horizontal pipe hanger and/or floor support spacing shall be as recommended by the pipe and/or hanger manufacturer but shall not exceed 10 feet on center unless indicated otherwise herein or on the Drawings.

    c. The design, sizing and spacing of anchor bolts, including concrete anchors, shall be based on withstanding shear and pullout loads imposed by loading

at each particular support. The minimum anchor bolt size shall be ½ inches in diameter. Refer to Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

2.02 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. All piping shall be adequately supported and braced by means of steel hangers and/or supports, concrete piers, supplemental lateral bracing components, pre-fabricated brackets, or otherwise as may be required by the location and forces applied per governing code, including gravity and lateral forces from earthquake and/or wind (if outdoors). Generally, concrete supports shall be used where pipe centerline is less than 3 feet above floor, and hangers above 6 feet unless specified or shown otherwise. Supports shall be not more than 10 feet on center for steel and cast iron, 5 feet on center for plastic unless otherwise shown on the Drawings or required by the specific manufacturer. All necessary inserts or appurtenances shall be furnished and installed in the concrete or structures for adequately securing hangers and supports to the structure. Refer to Standard Detail Drawings.

1. Metal pipe support materials, where stainless steel pipe is supported, shall be Type 304L stainless steel meeting the requirements of Section 05 13 00 – Stainless Steel.

2. Metal pipe support materials, where carbon steel, ductile or other ferrous pipe is supported, shall be galvanized carbon steel meeting Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel and Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings or in the Specifications or by the Engineer.

3. Metal pipe supports indicated as standard type pipe hangers are designed and detailed for gravity loading only. Resulting lateral loads from wind, earthquake, or other lateral loads per code, or special loading conditions during construction, shall be applied to the pipe in accordance with the governing building code. Supplemental lateral stiffening members (when necessary) shall be provided along pipe or at gravity supports using appropriate supplemental members and connections when required by calculations. The Contractor shall include design calculations and details with all pipe hangar and support submissions for review by the Engineer. The main structure and structural components that will support the pipe hangers and other appurtenant components of the facility have been designed to resist all resulting secondary lateral loading from pipe hangers and other non-structural members for gravity and resulting lateral loads.

B. Hangers and supports shall conform to the following requirements:

1. All fabricated metal hangers and supports shall be capable of adjustment after installation. Different types of hangers and supports along a pipe length, including bends, shall be kept to a minimum.

2. Hanger rods shall be straight and vertical. Chain, wire, strap, or perforated bar hangers shall not be used. Hangers shall not be suspended from other piping.

3. Vertical piping shall be properly supported at each floor and between floors by stays or braces to prevent rattling and vibration.

4. Supports and hangers for plastic and FRP piping shall include wide saddles or bands as recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer to distribute load and thus avoid localized deformation of the pipe.

5. Hanger and supports shall prevent contact between dissimilar metals by use of copper plated, rubber, vinyl coated or stainless-steel hangers.

6. Ferrous pipes to be painted shall be painted in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting. Ferrous pipes that require painting or galvanizing shall be supported by galvanized hangers and supports. Stainless steel piping shall be supported by stainless steel saddles and straps (if required).

7. Copper piping shall be supported by plastic coated or copper plated steel hangers and supports.

8. Plastic piping shall be supported by plastic coated steel hangers and supports.

9. Hangers and supports shall provide for thermal expansion throughout the full operating temperature range.

10. Expansion and adhesive type anchors used for pipe hangers and supports shall be Type 316 stainless steel.

C. Metallic hangers and supports may be standard make by Anvil International, Inc., "Witch" by Carpenter & Paterson, Ltd., B-Line Systems, Inc., or equal; and data on the types and sizes to be used shall be furnished to the Engineer for approval. Metallic support system brackets, rods, support clips, clevis hangers, hardware, etc. shall be cast iron or welded steel construction. All gravity type hangers and supports shall be restrained laterally to resist seismic loading and other loading as required by the governing code.

D. Non-metallic support system shall be a heavy-duty channel framing system. Channel frames shall be manufactured by the pultrusion process using corrosion grade polyester or vinylester resins. All fiberglass construction shall include suitable ultraviolet inhibitors for UV exposure and shall have a flame spread rating of 25 or less per ASTM E84. Piping accessories, pipe clamps, clevis hangers, support posts, support racks, fasteners, etc., shall be constructed of vinylester or polyurethane resin. Non-metallic support systems shall be standard make Aickinstrut by Aickinstrut, Inc., Unistrut Fiberglass by Unistrut, Inc., Enduro Fiberglass Systems, or equal. The Contractor shall submit data on the types and sizes of approval. Unless otherwise shown or specified the Contractor shall provide support spacings in the conformance with the pipe and support system manufacturer's requirements.

2.03 PROCESS AIR PIPE SUPPORTS – NOT USED

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Support piping connections to equipment by pipe support and not by the equipment.

B. Support large or heavy valves, fittings, flow meters and appurtenances independently of the connected piping.

C. Support no pipe from the pipe above it.

D. Support piping at changes in direction or in elevation, adjacent to flexible joints, expansion joints, and couplings, and where shown.

E. The Contractor shall not install piping supports and hangers in equipment access areas or bridge crane runs.

F. Brace hanging pipes against horizontal movement by both longitudinal and lateral sway bracing.

G. Install pipe anchors (fixed supports and/or guides) where shown and/or as may otherwise be required to withstand expansion thrust loads and to direct and control thermal expansion. The Contractor may install additional pipe anchors and flexible couplings to facilitate piping installation, provided that complete details describing location, pipe supports and hydraulic thrust protection are submitted.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 19
DUCTILE IRON PIPE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

B. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

C. Reference Section 40 06 20 – Schedules, for pressure rating requirements for specific applications.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be provided in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

PART 2 – PRODUCT

2.01 DUCTILE IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. All ductile iron pipe and specials shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or trademark, size, weight, thickness class, the date of manufacture, and the word "Ductile".

B. Ductile iron pipe of the sizes shown or specified shall conform to AWWA C151/A21.51, Grade 60-42-10 for ductile iron pipe centrifugally cast in metal molds or sand-lined molds.

C. Ductile iron pipe shall conform to AWWA C150/A21.50 for thickness design and shall be supplied in 18-foot or 20-foot nominal lengths or as required to meet the requirements of the Drawings.

D. Fittings and specials shall be cast iron or ductile iron and conform to the requirements of AWWA C110/A21.10 and AWWA C153/A21.53.

E. Minimum Class 53 pipe shall be used for flanged spools.

2.02 PIPE COATINGS

A. All buried ductile iron pipe and fittings shall have a bituminous coating of standard thickness on the exterior surfaces in accordance with AWWA C151/A21.51.

B. All exposed ductile iron pipe and fittings shall have a shop-applied prime coat in accordance with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

2.03 PIPE LININGS

A. All pipe and fittings, with the exception of epoxy and glass lined pipe and sleeves, shall be cement mortar lined. Cement mortar linings shall conform to American Standard Specifications for Cement Mortar Lining for Cast Iron Pipe and Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings, AWWA C104/A21.4 and shall be standard thickness. The mortar lining shall be protected with a bituminous seal coat.

B. Epoxy-Lined Pipe

1. Epoxy-lined ductile iron pipe shall be furnished and installed where specified in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

2. Epoxy-linings shall be Induron Protecto 401 ceramic epoxy lining, Tnemec Perma-Shield PL Series 431, or equal.

3. The finished lining shall have a minimum dry film thickness of 40 mils, except at the gasket groove and spigot end up to six inches back from the end of the spigot which shall be 6 mils dry film thickness, minimum.

4. Lining application shall be performed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions by an applicator approved by the coating manufacturer and under controlled conditions at the applicator's shop or the pipe manufacturer's plant.

C. Glass-Lined Pipe

1. Glass-lined ductile iron pipe shall be furnished and installed where specified in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

2. Glass-lined ductile iron pipe shall be provided in accordance with ASTM B1000.

3. Glass linings shall be Ervite Type SG-14, as manufactured by the Ervite Corporation; Ferrock MEH 32, as manufactured by Water Works Supply and Manufacturing, Co; or equal.

4. The finished lining shall have a dry film thickness between 8 and 12 mils; a hardness between 5 and 6 on the Mohs Scale; a density between 40 and 50 grams per cubic inch (2.5 to 3.0 grams per cubic centimeter) as measured in accordance with the requirements of ASTM D792; and be capable of withstanding a thermal shock of 350°F without crazing, blistering, or spalling.

5. Glass-lined pipe and fittings that have been lined must be handled from the outside. No forks, chains, hooks, etc. shall be placed inside the pipe and fittings for lifting, positioning, or laying.

6. Cutting of glass lined pipe in the field shall be limited to only one piece per run of pipe, and this shall be for closure purposes only. Spalling of the glass liner shall be no more than 1/8inch back from the cut. Flanges and bolt holes on spool pieces shall be aligned following the glass lining process and shall be sealed and tested prior to shipment in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Warping of flanges and/or pipe may be cause for rejection as determined by the Engineer.

2.04 PIPE JOINTS

A. Requirements for various types of joints are described in the following paragraphs. UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED HEREIN OR ON THE DRAWINGS, ALL EXPOSED DUCTILE IRON PIPING SHALL HAVE FLANGED JOINTS.

B. Flanged Joints

1. Flanged joints and fittings shall have a minimum pressure rating of 250 psi with 125 lb. American Standard flanges.

2. All flanges and fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASME B16.1.

3. Flanges shall be ductile iron and shall be of the threaded or screw on type.

4. The face of the flanges shall be machined after installation of the flange to the pipe. No raised surface shall be allowed on flanges.

5. Flanged pipe shall conform to the requirements of AWWA C115/A21.15.

6. Pipe lengths shall be fabricated to meet the requirements of the Drawings.

7. Gaskets shall be Toroseal by American Cast Iron Pipe Company, Flange-Tyte by US Pipe, or equal. Gaskets shall be full-face, 1/8inch minimum thickness cloth inserted rubber, red rubber, neoprene, or superior elastomer and shall be compatible with the fluid being conveyed. Gaskets shall have an allowable maximum working pressure and temperature equal to or greater than the service in which it is installed.

8. Bolts shall be of the size and length called for and in accordance with the "American Standard" and comply with the requirements of the ANSI/AWWA Standards. Bolts used for exposed flanged joints shall be a minimum ASTM A307, Grade B carbon steel, and be in accordance with AWWA C110/A21.10. All bolts shall have hexagonal heads and nuts of the same material as the bolt. No washers shall be used.

C. Bell and Spigot Joints

1. Bell and spigot pipe shall be provided with push on, Oring rubber gasket, compression type joints and shall conform to the requirements of AWWA C111/A21.11. Fittings and specials shall be supplied with mechanical joints as

specified for mechanical joint pipe. If required by installation conditions, pipe shall have cast-on lugs for adequately tying it together.

D. Mechanical Joints

1. Mechanical joints and fittings shall conform to the requirements of AWWA C111/A21.11. Joints shall be made employing a tapered rubber gasket forced into a tapered groove with a ductile iron follower ring. If required by installation conditions, pipe and fittings shall have caston lugs for adequately tying the pipe and fittings together. These shall be in conformance with standard practice and as outlined under the appropriate AWWA Specifications.

2. Bolts for mechanical joints shall be high-strength low-alloy steel tee-head bolts with hexagonal nuts per AWWA C111/A21.11.

3. Mechanical coupling joint pipe and fittings shall be split type, shouldered end. Coupling materials shall be malleable iron. Couplings shall have a minimum pressure rating and service equal to that of the connected piping.

4. Gaskets shall be of rubber.

5. After installation, buried couplings shall receive two heavy coats of coal tar epoxy (min. 24 mil thickness) which is compatible with the finish of the couplings.

6. Couplings shall be as manufactured by Victaulic Company of America Style 31, or equal.

E. Restrained Joints

1. Restrained joint pipe shall consist of factory manufactured bolted retainer rings, ductile iron locking segments held in place by rubber retainers, or ductile iron retaining rings that lock over the bell of the joint and are secured to prevent rotation, and factory welded retainer beads or rings on the spigot of the pipe. All components of the bolted or snap ring assemblies shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant, high strength, low-alloy steel.

2. Restrained joint pipe shall be Flex-Ring or Lock-Ring type joints as manufactured by American Cast Iron Pipe Company, HP LOK or TR Flex as manufactured by US Pipe, Bolt-Lok or Snap-Lok as manufactured by Griffin Pipe Products, TR Flex or Super Lock as manufactured by Clow Water Systems Co., or approved equal.

3. Restrained fittings shall be Mechanical Joint fittings with restraint assemblies such as Stargrip by Star Pipe Systems, Mega Lug by EBAA Iron, ONE LOK by Sigma, Grip Ring by Romac, or approved equal. Restraint assemblies including all hardware shall be painted with two heavy coats of coal tar epoxy after installation. Where threaded-rods are allowed, the rods and tabs shall be designed for the specified restraint system design pressure, shall have lengths less than 10 feet

between fittings, and shall be painted with two heavy coats of coal tar epoxy after installation.

4. The manufactured systems for thrust restraint indicated above shall be used where restrained joint ductile iron pipe and fittings are specified or indicated on the drawings. Gripping gaskets are not an acceptable form of restraint. Thrust restraint and harnessing systems such as threaded-rods, friction clamps, retainer glands shall be used only where specifically specified herein, indicated on the drawings or if allowed by the Engineer in isolated applications where conditions warrant and necessitate their use. Concrete thrust blocks may be used in accordance with the schedule indicated on the drawings, if applicable.

2.05 OUTLETS

A. The Contractor shall provide taps on piping where required or shown on the Drawings. Where pipe or fitting wall thicknesses are insufficient to provide the required number of threads, the Contractor shall not use taps and shall refer to Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements for requirements.

2.06 POLYETHYLENE ENCASEMENT

A. Wrap all buried ductile iron pipes, valves and fittings with 8 mil polyethylene film per ANSI A21.5/AWWA C-105. Use only tube type for pipe. Complete the wrap prior to placing concrete anchors, collars, supports or thrust blocks. Repair polyethylene if damaged during installation.

2.07 CAST IRON SOIL PIPE

A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe shall conform to the standards of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute (CISPI) Specification HS-67, and also ANSI Specification A-112.5.2 for Hub & Spigot pipe or A.112.5.1 for Hub & Spigot pipe or A.112.5.1 for No-Hub Pipe. Pipe class shall be "Extra Heavy:(XH).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 31

PVC/CPVC PIPE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC pipe and fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D1785, D1784 and F441, "normal impact" pipe, Schedule 40 or 80 as specified.

B. Fittings used with this pipe shall be socket type or flanged type as specified herein, in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules, or indicated on the Drawings. Plastic piping shall be installed in full accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the specific installation. No field bending or distortion of the pipe will be permitted.

C. PVC pipe shall be Type 1 Grade 1 conforming to ASTM D1784 and D1785. Fittings shall conform to the following standard specifications:

1. Socket Type: (Schedule 40); ASTM D2466

2. Socket Type: (Schedule 80); ASTM D2467

D. Provide flanged fittings of the same material as the specified pipe and material conforming to ANSI B16.5 at all valves and equipment except at true (double) union valves. Flange gaskets shall be EPDM. Solvent cement for socket type joints shall conform to ASTM D2564 for PVC pipe and fittings.

E. C900-Class 200 shall be in sizes between 4 inches and 12 inches and shall meet the requirements of AWWA C900 "Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe" and shall conform to all the requirements of ASTM D1784 and ASTM D2241. The pipe shall be a minimum of DR 14 and shall be capable of withstanding the overburden pressures determined by the depth of burial in the field.

1. Pipe material shall be made from clean, virgin, NSF approved Class 12454-A PVC compound conforming to resin specification ASTM D1784. Standard laying lengths shall be 20-feet (±1 inch). Random lengths of not more than 15% of the total footage of each size may be shipped in lieu of the standard lengths. Reruns of reclaimed material shall not be accepted.

2. The pipe shall have bell and spigot ends with push-on, O-ring rubber gasket, compression type joints conforming to the requirements of ASTM D2672. Elastomeric gaskets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477.

3. Minimum pipe stiffness (F/dY) at 5% deflection shall be 914 psi for all sizes when tested in accordance with D2241.

4. The pipe shall be designed to pass a quick burst test pressure of 985 psi applied in 60 to 70 seconds when tested in accordance with ASTM D1599, as referenced in ASTM D2241.

5. Fittings for C900-Class 200, DR 14 shall be ductile iron, bolted mechanical joint.

F. C900-Class 150 shall be in sizes between 4 inches and 12 inches and shall meet the requirements of AWWA C900 "Poly Vinyl Chlorine (PVC) Pressure Pipe" and shall conform to all the requirements of ASTM D1784 and ASTM D2241. The pipe shall be a minimum of DR 18 and shall be capable of withstanding the overburden pressures determined by the depth of burial in the field.

1. Pipe material shall be made from clean, virgin, NSF approved Class 12454-A PVC compound conforming to resin specification ASTM D1784. Standard laying lengths shall be 20-feet (±1 inch). Random lengths of not more than 15% of the total footage of each size may be shipped in lieu of the standard lengths. Reruns of reclaimed material shall not be accepted.

2. The pipe shall have bell and spigot ends with push-on, O-ring rubber gasket, compression type joints conforming to the requirements of ASTM D2672. Elastomeric gaskets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477.

3. Minimum pipe stiffness (F/dY) at 5% deflection shall be 435 psi for all sizes when tested in accordance with D2241.

4. The pipe shall be designed to pass a quick burst test pressure of 755 psi applied in 60 to 70 seconds when tested in accordance with ASTM D1599, as referenced in ASTM D2241.

5. Fittings for C900-Class 150, DR 18 shall be ductile iron, bolted mechanical joint.

G. PVC pressure rated pipe (PR 160) shall be in sizes between 1 1/2 inches and 12 inches and shall conform to all the requirements of ASTM D1784 and ASTM D2241 and shall be a minimum of SDR 26 and shall be capable of withstanding the overburden pressures determined by the depth of burial in the field.

1. Pipe material shall be made from clean, virgin, NSF approved Class 12454-A PVC compound conforming to resin specification ASTM D1784. Standard laying lengths shall be 20-feet (1± inch). Random lengths of not more than 15% of the total footage of each size may be shipped in lieu of the standard lengths. Reruns of reclaimed materials shall not be accepted.

2. The pipe shall have bell and spigot ends with push-on, O-ring rubber gasket, compression type joints conforming to the requirements of ASTM D2672. Elastomeric gaskets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F477.

3. Minimum pipe stiffness (F/dY) at 5% deflection shall be 135 psi for all sizes when tested in accordance with ASTM D2241.

4. The pipe shall be designed to pass a quick burst test pressure of 500 psi applied in 60 to 70 seconds when tested in accordance with ASTM D1599, as referenced in ASTM D2241.

5. The pipe shall be designed to pass for 1000 hours a sustained test pressure of 340 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM D1598, as referenced in ASTM D2241.

H. Fittings for PR 160, SDR 26 shall be PVC and designed for the pipe being supplied.

I. Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D2661. Pipe and fittings shall have socket type couplings with solvent cement joints. Solvent cement shall conform to ASTM D2235.

J. Type PSM polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D3034 with a maximum SDR of 35. Pipe and fittings shall have bell and spigot ends with O-ring rubber gasketed, compression type joints. Joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM Specification D3212. Reruns of reclaimed materials shall not be accepted. Unless indicated otherwise, PVC wall pipes shall be provided for all piping passing through exterior walls. Wall pipes shall have a water stop solvent-welded to the pipe. Each wall pipe shall be of the same class and type as the piping to which it is joined.

K. Perforated and closed drainage pipe and fittings shall be rigid PVC pipe, Schedule 40 unless otherwise shown or specified with solvent welded type joints, or approved equal. Pipe shall be slotted or have two rows of 1/4-inch diameter holes spaced 4-inches apart along the circumference of the pipe. Longitudinal spacing of holes shall be 5-inches maximum.

2.02 CHLORINATED POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (CPVC) PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. CPVC shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D1785, D1784 and F441, "normal impact" pipe, Schedule 40 or 80 as specified.

B. Fittings used with this pipe shall be socket type or flanged type as specified herein or indicated on the Drawings. Plastic piping shall be installed in full accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the specific installation. No field bending or distortion of the pipe will be permitted.

C. CPVC pipe shall be Type 4, Grade 1, Schedule 80, conforming to ASTM D1784 and ASTM F441. CPVC fittings shall be socket type conforming to ASTM F439.

D. Solvent cement for socket type joints shall conform to ASTM F493 for CPVC pipe and fittings. Solvent cement for chemical service shall be Weld-On 724 as manufactured by IPS Corporation, or equal.

2.03 REINFORCED THERMOPLASTIC HOSE AND FITTINGS – NOT USED

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) pipe shall be laid and joints assembled according to the respective manufacturer's recommendation. PVC pipe installation shall comply with applicable sections of the Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association Recommended Standard Specifications.

B. Plastic piping shall not be installed when the temperature is less than 60 degrees F except as otherwise recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 51
VALVES, GENERAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install, complete with all assemblies and accessories, all valves shown on the Drawings and specified herein including all fittings, appurtenances and transition pieces required for a complete and operable installation.

B. All valves shall be constructed of first quality materials which have strength, wearing, and corrosion resistance characteristics entirely suitable for the types of service for which the individual valves are designated. Except where noted otherwise, valves designated for water service shall conform to pertinent sections of the latest revision of AWWA C500 Specifications. Cast iron valve bodies and parts shall meet the requirements of the latest revision of ASTM Designation A-126, "Standard Specifications for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings, Class B."

C. All valve body castings shall be clean, sound, and without defects of any kind. No plugging, welding, or repairing of defects will be allowed.

D. Valves shall have flanged ends for exposed service and mechanical joint ends for buried service, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings or specified herein. Flanged ends shall be flat-faced, 125 lb. American Standard unless otherwise shown or specified in accordance with ANSI B16.1. All bolt heads and nuts shall be hexagonal of American Standard size. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating connecting piping. Valves with screwed ends shall be made tight with Teflon tape. Unions are required at all screwed joint valves.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. The following items shall be submitted in accordance with, or in addition to the submittal requirements specified in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions:

1. Performance tests shall be conducted in accordance with the latest revision of AWWA C500.

2. Shop Drawings conforming to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures, are required for all valves, and accessories. Submittals shall include all layout dimensions, size and materials of construction for all components, information on support and anchoring where necessary, pneumatic and hydraulic characteristics and complete descriptive information to demonstrate full compliance with the Documents. Shop Drawings for electrically operated/controlled valves shall include all details, notes, and diagrams which

clearly identify required coordination with the electrical power supply and remote status and alarm indicating devices. Electrical control schematic diagrams shall be submitted with the Shop Drawings for all electrical controls. Diagrams shall be drawn using a ladder-type format in accordance with JIC standards. Shop Drawings for pneumatically operated/controlled valves shall include all details, notes, and diagrams which clearly identify required coordination with the compressed air (service air) system and electrical controls.

3. Operation and maintenance manuals and installation instructions shall be submitted for all valves and accessories in accordance with the Specifications. The manufacturer(s) shall delete all information which does not apply to the equipment being furnished.

1.03 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Contractor shall provide the services of a qualified representative of the manufacturer(s) of the equipment named below to check out and certify the installation(s), to supervise the initial operation, and to instruct the Owner's operating personnel in proper operation and maintenance procedures in accordance with the following schedule:

Item	Valve/Operator Type	Minimum On-Site Time Requirements
1	Automatic Control Check Valve	One (1) 8-hour day
2	Surge Anticipators	One (1) 8-hour day
3	Motor Operated Modulating Valves	One (1) 8-hour day
4	Motor Operated Open-Close Valves (required only if manufacturer is other than for Item 3 above)	One (1) 8-hour day
5	Pneumatic Hydraulic Cylinder Operated Valves	One (1) 8-hour day

B. Any additional time required to achieve successful installation and operation shall be at the expense of the Contractor. The manufacturer's representative shall sign in and out at the office of the Engineer's Resident Project Representative on each day they are at the project.

C. A written report covering the representative's findings and installation approval shall be mailed directly to the Engineer covering all inspection and outlining in detail any deficiencies notes.

D. The times specified are exclusive of travel time to and from the facility and shall not be construed as to relieve the manufacturer of any additional visits to provide sufficient service to place the equipment in satisfactory operation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 FLOW INDICATORS

A. Flow indicators shall be the Akron ball-type as manufactured by Brooks Instrument Co., Fischer and Porter, or equal, and shall have bronze bodies, glass dome, and plastic ball.

2.02 CORPORATION STOPS

A. Corporation stops shall be of bronze with tapered male iron pipe threads on inlets and outlets. Terminal outlets shall have screwed bronze hex head dust plugs or caps. Unions shall be used on all corporation stop outlets with connecting piping. Corporation stops shall have a minimum working pressure rating of 250 psi and shall be as manufactured by Mueller Co., Hays Mfg. Div. of Zurn Industries, or equal.

2.03 FLOOR BOXES

A. Floor boxes shall be provided for all nut operated or floor accessed valves. Floor boxes shall be of the adjustable, sliding type, cast iron, suitable to withstand heavy traffic, as manufactured by James B. Clow & Sons, Kennedy Valve Mfg. Co., or equal. The covers shall be marked with appropriate designations of piping contents (i.e.: water, sewer) and bases shall be the round type. All nut operated valves in this Section shall be clearly identified by stainless steel or laminated plastic identification tags. The tags shall be permanently affixed to the inside of the floor boxes, under grating, etc. and shall bear the embossed letters which clearly identify each valve by its appropriate designation.

B. Two (2) valve operating wrenches shall be supplied in 4-foot lengths with tee handles for each size nut supplied. Valve wrenches shall be Model No. F-2520 as manufactured by James B. Clow & Sons, Kennedy Valve Mfg. Co., Figure No. 122, or equal.

2.04 VALVE BOXES

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install valve boxes as shown on the Drawings and specified herein.

B. All valve boxes shall be placed so as not to transmit shock or stress to the valve and shall be centered and plumb over the operating nut of the valve. The ground in the trench upon which the valve boxes rest shall be thoroughly compacted to prevent settlement. The boxes shall be fitted together securely and set so that the cover is flush with the finished grade of the adjacent surface. A concrete pad as detailed on the Drawings shall be provided around the valve box, sloped outwards.

C. All valve boxes shall be 2-piece cast iron, sliding type, 5-1/4" shaft, with heavy duty traffic weight collar and the lid marked with the appropriate carrier product (i.e.: WATER). Boxes shall be as manufactured by James B. Clow & Sons, Kennedy Valve Mfg. Co., Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company, or equal.

2.05 STRAINERS

A. YStrainers shall be Ypattern cast iron body, flanged or screwed ends with stainless steel or Monel, 20 mesh strainers. Strainers shall be 200 psi, coldwater service strainers, as manufactured by WATTS, Crane Co., Zurn, or equal.

B. Caustic service Y-strainers shall be provided as shown on the drawings. Strainers shall be full port-full flow design manufactured of 304 or 316 stainless steel body. Y-strainers shall be furnished with flanged ends. The strainer screen shall be 1/32-inch perforation, easily removable, manufactured of the same material as the valve body.

C. Stainless steel Y-strainers shall be provided as shown on the drawings. Strainers shall be full port-full flow design manufactured of 304 or 316 stainless steel body. Y-strainers shall be furnished with flanged ends. The strainer screen shall be 1/32-inch perforation, easily removable, manufactured of the same material as the valve body.

D. PVC and CPVC y-strainers shall be provided in PVC and CPVC piping and as shown on the Drawings. Strainer shall be provided with PVC or CPVC body and end cap, EPDM or Viton seal as required for the chemical service, and 20 mesh screen. Temperature rating shall be 30ºF to 140ºF, and pressure rating shall be 150 psi @ 70ºF, non-shock. PVC and CPVC y-Strainers shall be as manufactured by Asahi/America, Hayward, or equal.

E. Manually cleaned strainers shall be the duplex basket tapered plug type.

1. Strainers 3-inches in diameter and larger shall have flanged ends conforming to ANSI B16.1-125/150-pound standard.

2. Strainers less than 3-inches in diameter shall have screwed end connectors, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings.

3. Strainers shall be constructed with an ASTM A48, Class 30 cast iron body, ductile iron trim, removable 0.045-inch staggered hole perforation, 304 stainless steel filter baskets and gauges on the inlet and outlet.

4. All strainers shall be suitable for 125 psi service.

5. Switching flow from one basket to the other shall be accomplished by moving the handle through a 180º arc. The switching operation shall not stop flow through the strainer and shall provide for on-line removal of either basket with the other basket functional. The plug shall be automatically positioned with integral stops and shall be easily lifted and reseated under pressure.

6. The strainer shall be designed to minimize the possibility of material bypassing the plug while being rotated and to prevent debris from building up under the plug. The strainer covers shall be designed for quick opening with swing away yoke.

7. Each basket compartment shall have a side drain outlet.

8. All strainers shall be provided with support legs.

9. Duplex basket strainers shall be similar to the Model 53BTX as manufactured by Hayward, or equal.

F. PVC and CPVC simplex basket strainers shall be provided in PVC and CPVC piping as shown on the Drawings. 1/2”-4” strainers shall be one-piece molded body with (3) ports to facilitate straight-thru flow pattern or u-shape flow pattern as required. Connections shall be true union type to ease installation/future maintenance. The cover, vent plug, and drain plug shall all be hand-removable, requiring no tools. EPDM or Viton seals shall be used as required for chemical service, and internal baskets shall be 1/32” perforation (20-mesh) for 1/2”-1” sizes, and 1/8” perforation for 1-1/2”-8” sizes. 6” and 8” strainers shall be fabricated construction and shall contain flanged connections as standard. The pressure rating for 1/2”-8” sizes shall be 150 psi @ 70ºF, non-shock. Strainers shall be manufactured by Hayward Industrial Products, or equal.

2.06 QUICK DISCONNECT COUPLINGS

A. Quick disconnect type coupling for compressed/service air shall be provided where indicated on the Drawings. Coupling shall provide for instantaneous shutoff in socket end when lines are disconnected. Couplings shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel with a BUNA-N O-ring and integral safety lock. Couplings shall comply with Military Specification 4109 (interchangeable with standard plug of the same size).

2.07 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Backflow preventer shall be the size shown on the Drawings and shall be of the double check valve principle. Backflow preventer installation shall include isolation valves and four test cocks, furnished as an assembly. For backflow preventers less than 2-1/2", the installation assembly also shall include a strainer. Isolation valves for backflow preventers shall be ball valves, except for size 2-1/2" and larger which shall be resilient seat gate valves. Test cocks shall be located as recommended by the manufacturer to facilitate functional testing of the assembly. The backflow preventer shall be a WATTS 709, or equal.

B. Reduced Pressure Backflow Preventer shall be of the size shown on the Drawings and shall be of the reduced pressure principle type in accordance with AWWA Standards C510 and C511, with two (2) independent operating spring loaded check valves and one (1) spring loaded, diaphragm actuated, differential pressure relief valve shall be installed between the check valves. Backflow preventer shall be bronze body construction, with EPT rubber discs and Buna-N and nylon diaphragm. Screws and springs shall be of stainless steel. End connections shall be screwed, unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings. Reduced pressure backflow preventer installations shall include isolation valves and four test cocks, furnished as an assembly. For reduced pressure backflow preventers less than 2-1/2" the installation assembly also shall include a strainer. Isolation valves for reduced pressure backflow preventers shall be ball valves, except for sizes 2-1/2" and larger which shall be resilient seat gate valves. Test cocks

shall be located as recommended by the manufacturer to facilitate functional testing of the assembly. The reduced pressure backflow preventer shall be as manufactured by Beeco Division, Hersey Products Inc., Aergap Model 6CM, WATTS 909, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Except where noted otherwise herein, all valves shall be installing and tested in accordance with the latest revision of AWWA C500. Before installation, all valves shall be lubricated, manually opened and closed to check their operation and the interior of the valves shall be thoroughly cleaned. Valves shall be placed in the positions shown on the Drawings. Joints shall be made as directed under the Piping Specifications. The valves shall be so located that they are easily accessible for operating purposes and shall bear no stresses due to loads from the adjacent pipe. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating connecting piping.

B. All valves shall be tested at the operating pressures at which the particular line will be used. Any leakage or "sweating" of joints shall be stopped, and all joints shall be tight. All motor operated and cylinder operated valves shall be tested for control operation as directed by the Engineer.

C. Provide valves in quantity, size, and type with all required accessories as shown on the Drawings.

D. Install all valves and appurtenances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Install suitable corporation stops at all points shown or required where air binding of pipe lines might occur. Install all valves so that operating handwheels or wrenches may be conveniently turned from operating floor but without interfering with access, and as approved by Engineer. Unless otherwise approved, install all valves plumb and level. Valves shall be installed free from distortion and strain caused by misaligned piping, equipment or other causes.

E. Valve boxes shall be set plumb and centered with the bodies directly over the valves so that traffic loads are not transmitted to the valve. Earth fill shall be carefully tamped around each valve box to a distance of 4 feet on all sides of the box, or to the undisturbed trench face, if less than 4 feet.

3.02 SHOP AND FIELD TESTING

A. Shop and field testing of valves shall be as follows:

1. Certified factory testing shall be provided for all components of the valve and operator system. Valves and operators shall be shop tested in accordance with the requirements in the latest revision of AWWA C500, including performance tests, leakage test, hydrostatic tests, and proof-of-design tests. The manufacturer

through the Contractor shall submit certified copies of the reports covering the test for acceptance by the Engineer.

2. Shop testing shall be provided for the operators consisting of a complete functional check of each unit. Any deficiencies found in shop testing shall be corrected prior to shipment. The system supplier through the Contractor shall submit written certification that shop tests for the electrical/pneumatic system and all controls were successfully conducted and that these components provide the functions specified and required for proper operation of the valve operator system.

3. The Contractor shall conduct field tests to check and adjust system components, and to test and adjust operation of the overall system. Preliminary field tests shall be conducted prior to start-up with final field tests conducted during start-up. The factory service representative shall assist the Contractor during all field testing and prepare a written report describing test methods, and changes made during the testing, and summarizing test results. The service representative shall certify proper operation of the valve operator system upon successful completion of the final acceptance field testing.

4. Preliminary and final field tests shall be conducted at a time approved by the Engineer. The Engineer shall witness all field testing.

5. All costs in connection with field testing of equipment such as energy, light, lubricants, water, instruments, labor, equipment, temporary facilities for test purposes, etc. shall be borne by the Contractor. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the proper operation of equipment during tests and instruction periods and shall neither have nor make any claim for damage which may occur to equipment prior to the time when the Owner formally takes over the operation thereof.

6. Preliminary field tests shall be conducted prior to start-up and shall include a functional check of the entire valve operator system and all system components. Preliminary field tests shall demonstrate that the valve operator system performs according to specifications and that all equipment, valves, controls, alarms, interlocks, etc., function properly. The preliminary field test report must be approved by the Engineer prior to conducting final field acceptance tests. Based on results of preliminary field tests, the Contractor shall make any adjustments required to settings, etc., to achieve the required valve closing time and operation specified or otherwise directed by the Engineer.

7. Final field acceptance tests shall be conducted simultaneously with the start-up and field testing of the pumps, air compressors, process air blowers, etc. Field tests shall be conducted for the full range of operating modes and conditions specified and as directed by the Engineer. Each of the valves shall be tested at minimum, maximum, and normal head/flow conditions, and under all specified conditions of opening and closing. Performance of pneumatic valves and

compressed air system under normal operating conditions and during simulated power failures shall be checked.

8. Field testing shall include optimization of opening and closing times of the valves. The Contractor shall provide the means for accurate measurement of pipeline pressures as directed by the Engineer. Valve opening and closing times shall be adjusted based on process requirements to optimize operation of the valves. Final valve opening and closing times as determined by field tests shall be approved by the Engineer prior to final acceptance of the system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 57

VALVE OPERATORS AND ELECTRIC VALVE ACTUATORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Equipment shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

B. Reference Section 40 06 20 – Schedules for additional information on valves and operators/actuators.

C. The electric valve actuators shall meet the signal requirements described in Section 40 61 23 – Signal Coordination Requirements, Section 40 61 93 – Process Control System Input-Output List, and Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions.

D. Valve operators and electric valve actuators shall be designed to unseat, open or close, and seat the valve under the most adverse operating condition to which the valves will be subjected.

E. Operator mounting arrangements shall be as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the manufacturer and/or Engineer. There shall be no mounting restrictions on the electric valve actuator.

F. The valve operators and electric actuators shall be the full and undivided responsibility of the valve manufacturer in order to ensure complete coordination of the components and to provide unit responsibility.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. The following items shall be submitted in accordance with, or in addition to the submittal requirements specified in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions:

1. Shop Drawings

2. O&M Manuals

3. Certification that the force required to operate all valves is as specified herein.

1.03 WARRANTY AND GUARANTEE

030716

A. Warranty and Guarantee shall be as specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions with the exception that the warranty period shall be for two (2) years.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Electric actuators shall be provided where specified in the Valve Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

B. Manual operators shall be provided on all valves which do not receive electric actuators. Manual operator type shall be as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

C. Quarter turn valves 8” and greater in size shall have geared operators. Gate valves 14” and greater in size shall have geared operators.

D. Operators/actuators shall be furnished with conservatively sized extension bonnets, extension stems, or torque tubes, and all required appurtenances required for a complete installation. Operators furnished with extension bonnets shall include stainless steel extension stems, or stainless steel torque tubes.

2.02 MANUAL OPERATORS

A. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, manual operator type shall be as follows:

1. Buried valves shall be equipped with nut operators, extended stems, and valve boxes. Where the depth of the operating nut is more than 4 feet below finish grade, a valve operator extension shall be provided to bring the operating nut to within 18-24 inches of the surface.

2. Exposed valves up to 6-inch shall be lever operated (except gate valves).

3. Exposed valves 8-inches and larger shall be handwheel operated.

4. Exposed gate valves shall be handwheel operated.

5. Valves with centerline of operator located more than five (5) feet above the floor or platform from which it is to be operated shall have a chainwheel operator unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

B. Manual operators shall be rigidly attached to the valve body unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings.

C. All operators shall turn counter-clockwise to open and shall have the open direction clearly and permanently marked.

D. Valve operators shall be designed so that the force required to operate the handwheel, lever, or chain (including breakaway torque requirements) does not exceed 80 pounds applied at the extremity of handwheel or chainwheel operator. Design pressures for sizing of valve operators shall be the piping test pressure for the piping in which the valve is to be installed as shown in the Piping Schedule in Section 40 06 20 –Schedules.

E. Handwheels for valves operators shall not be less than 12 inches in diameter. The maximum diameter of any handwheel shall not exceed 24”.

F. Nut operators shall have standard 2-inch square AWWA operating nuts designed in accordance with AWWA C504-94.

G. Geared manual operators shall be of the worm gear, traveling nut or scotch yolk type except manual operators for butterfly valves 18-inch in diameter or larger which shall be worm gear, unless otherwise indicated in the individual valve specification. Gear operators shall be of the worm gear or bevel gear type. Gear box designs incorporating end of travel stops in the housing shall be equipped with AWWA input stops. Each gearbox shall require a minimum of 10 turns for 90 degree rotation or full valve stem travel and shall be equipped with a mechanical valve position indicator.

H. Manual operators on below grade (and vault installed) valves shall be permanently lubricated and watertight under an external water pressure of 10 psi.

2.03 ELECTRIC VALVE ACTUATORS

A. Electric Actuators shall be open/close service or modulating service as specified in the Valve Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

1. Open/Close (non-modulating) valve actuators shall be IQ series as manufactured by Rotork, SA series as manufactured by AUMA, or Series 2000 as manufactured by EIM Controls.

2. Modulating valve actuators shall be Type IQM as manufactured by Rotork, Type SAR as manufactured by AUMA, or Series 2000 Futronic as manufactured by EIM Controls.

B. Performance Requirements

1. The actuators shall be designed for indoor and outdoor service and shall be capable of mounting in any position.

2. Torque capacity of the actuators shall be sufficient to operate the valves with the maximum pressure differential, as indicated in the Valve Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules, with a safety factor of 1.5. Actuators in modulating service will be selected such that the required dynamic valve torque is no more than 60% of the electric actuator’s maximum rated breakaway of torque.

3. Operating time for full limits of travel shall be not more than 2 seconds per inch diameter of the valve, +/- 50 percent through 20 inches; +/- 30 percent for valves 24 inches and larger. Operating time shall not be less than 60 seconds for all modulating valves.

4. Actuators shall be capable of operating in ambient temperatures ranging from 0 degrees F – 160 degrees F.

5. For open/close (non-modulating) actuators, the gearing, motor and contactor shall be capable of 60 starts per hour without overheating.

6. For modulating actuators, the gearing, motor and contactor shall be capable of 1200 starts per hour without overheating.

C. The actuators shall include, in one integral housing, individual compartments for the motor, gearing, wiring terminals, and control circuits. The terminal compartment shall be separated from the inner electrical components of the actuator by means of a watertight seal. The inner seal shall protect the motor and all other internal electrical elements of the actuator from entrance of moisture and dust when the terminal cover is removed. Double cartridge shaft seals shall be provided on the hand wheel and output shafts for weatherproof protection. All external fasteners shall be stainless steel. Compartments shall be provided with moisture and dust-proof rigid cast covers meeting NEMA 6, certified to submergence in 6 ft of water for 30 minutes. Actuators located in classified areas shall be suitable for use in Class 1, Division 1, Group D environments.

D. The actuators shall be provided with externally operable and lockable 480VAC circuit breakers integral to the control housing

E. All gearing shall be hardened alloy steel or bronze and shall be rated at twice the output torque of the operator and shall be designed to withstand the stall torque of the motor without failure. Output drive gearing shall consist of a worm shaft and worm gear pinion operating in an oil bath. The worm gear pinion shall be alloy bronze. Worm gear drive shall be self-locking to prevent creeping of the valve disc in an intermediate position. Heavy-duty grease shall protect gearing and sealed ball bearings of the main shaft for five years without changing. Motor reduction gearing shall be spur or planetary gearing and shall allow for field repair and change in gear ratio. For quarter turn applications, overtravel of the operator shall be prevented by internal mechanical stops cast into the actuator.

F. A mechanical dial position indicator shall be furnished to continuously indicate the position of the valve at and between the fully open and fully closed positions. The indicator shall be driven by gearing driven off of the main worm gear pinion and shall operate when the actuator is in either the electrical mode or manual mode.

G. A handwheel shall be permanently attached for manual operation. A gear assembly shall be provided between the handwheel and the worm shaft if required to reduce the force necessary to operate the handwheel to less than 40 pounds. A positive declutch mechanism shall engage the handwheel when required. When the actuator is set in the declutched position for handwheel operation, it shall return automatically to electric operation when actuator motor is energized. The handwheel shall not rotate during electric operation nor shall a fused motor prevent handwheel operation.

H. The drive motor shall be specifically designed for actuator service and shall be characterized by high starting torque and low inertia. Motors shall be 460 volts, three phase, 60 Hz AC reversible squirrel cage induction type motors and shall be specifically

designed for modulating service where indicated on the Valve Schedule in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules. Motors shall be totally enclosed, non-ventilated, with NEMA Class F insulation minimum (Class H for modulating actuators) and a maximum continuous temperature rating of 120 degree C (rise plus ambient). A space heater shall be provided in the motor compartment. The electric motor shall have a time rating of at least 15 minutes at 104°F (40°C) or twice the valve stroking time, whichever is longer, at an average load of at least 33% of maximum valve torque. Motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated by premium lubricant. The motor shall have plug and socket electrical connection to facilitate easy removal and replacement. The actuator shall include a device to ensure that the motor runs with the correct rotation for the required direction of valve travel with either phase sequence of the three-phase power supply connected to the actuator. The motor shall include single phase protection. A suitable thermal protection device shall be incorporated in the motor or motor starter circuits, connected to a tripping device. Fast acting fuses shall be provided to protect solid state components. The motor shall be capable of starting against the rated load in either the open or close direction when voltage to the motor terminals is plus or minus ten (10) percent of nameplate rating.

1. Open/Close actuators shall be furnished with electro-mechanical reversing starters.

2. Modulating actuators shall be furnished with solid state reversing starters utilizing thyristors.

I. Leads from the motor shall be brought to the control circuit (limit switch) compartment without external piping or conduit box. An adequately sized space heater shall be installed in the control circuit compartment to aid in the prevention of damage resulting in from condensation. The following items shall be located in the control circuit compartment.

1. Torque limit switches shall be provided to de-energize the motor control circuit in the event of a stall when attempting to unseat a jammed valve and when torque is exceeded during valve travel. Each actuator shall have an open direction torque switch and a close direction torque switch. The torque switches shall be mechanically operated and able to be set in torque units. Torque switches shall be calibrated prior to the actuator’s assembly to the valve.

2. Travel limit switches shall be provided to de-energize the motor control circuit when the actuator reaches the limits of travel in the open and close directions. The limit switch drive shall be of the counter gear type and “in step’” with the actuator output drive at all times in either the electrical or manual mode of operation. A minimum of six (6) contacts, three (3) normally open and three (3) normally closed, shall be supplied at each end of valve travel. Four (4) additional contacts shall be provided to report end of travel or any desired position between ends of travel.

J. Modulating actuators shall have a position feedback potentiometer mounted directly to the valve actuator gearing inside the gearing compartment. The potentiometer shall provide a 4-20 mA signal corresponding to valve position. Modulating valve actuators shall be designed to respond to either a 4-20mADC analog signal or a digital pulse signal as specified herein or as required to coordinate with the requirements of Division 40.

1. Modulating valve actuators designed to respond to a 4-20mADC signal shall be provided with a valve positioner which shall position the valve proportional to an externally generated 4-20mADC signal. The valve positioning control circuitry shall position the valve by comparing the command signal with the present valve position as indicated by the feedback potentiometer. The positioner shall be field adjustable to fail to the “open,” “closed,” or “last” position on loss of 4-20 mADC command signal.

2. Modulating valve actuators designed to respond to “pulse” open/close signals shall operate the valve during the time the open or close pulse signal is high. Modulating actuators designed to respond to “pulse” open/close signals shall have the latching circuitry described above for open/close actuators disabled.

K. The electrical terminals shall be housed in a double sealed terminal compartment isolated from the rest of the actuator components. The actuators shall be designed to operate from a single 480VAC, 3-phase source. The actuators shall be furnished with fuses inside of the terminal compartment. A quantity of two – ¾ inch NPT conduit entries shall be furnished.

L. Actuators shall contain wiring and terminals for the following control functions. All dry contacts shall be rated for 5A at 250VAC.

1. Open, Close, and Stop commands from external dry contacts (utilizing internal 120VAC power supply) and/or from an external signal of 12V to 120V. The inputs for the open, close, stop signals shall be field selectable to be respond to either maintained or momentary remote signals. In momentary mode, the actuator shall have internal latching circuitry that causes the operator to drive the valve to its limit of travel upon receipt of the momentary contact signal unless a stop signal is received.

2. Emergency override input from a normally closed or normally open contact. The actuator shall either open or close (field selectable) upon receiving the emergency override input.

3. Remote Local-Off-Remote selector switch, Open/Close pushbuttons, and Open/Closed pilot lights for a remote manual control station (see below). The remote Local-Off-Remote selector switch and Open/Close pushbuttons shall be a dry contact input to the actuator control circuitry. The Open/Closed pilot lights shall be powered from the valve actuator control power.

4. Four (4) unpowered contacts shall be provided which can be selected to indicate valve “Opened” and “Closed” position, “Remote” status of the actuator, and fail status of the actuator. The fail status contacts shall activate upon motor overtemperature and actuator overtorque as a minimum.

5. Terminals for 4-20mADC position command and 4-20mADC position feedback as described above for modulating actuators.

M. Local Controls

1. Actuators shall be furnished with a Local-Off-Remote selector switch; Open, Close, and Stop pushbuttons for local control; a red lamp indicating closed and a green lamp indicating open. L-O-R switch shall be padlockable in any of the three positions.

   a. When the LOR is in the “Local” position, open/close control shall be by the open and close pushbuttons on the actuator. The stop push button shall stop the actuator travel.

   b. When the LOR is in the “Off” position, the actuator shall not operate.

   c. When the LOR is in the “Remote” position, the actuator shall be controlled by remote inputs from the PLC or from the remote manual controls station.

2. The local controls shall be arranged so that the direction of travel can be reversed without the necessity of stopping the actuator.

2.04 ELECTRIC OPERATORS FOR PVC/CPVC VALVES (NOT USED)

2.05 PNEUMATIC CYLINDER OPERATORS FOR OPEN-CLOSE TYPE VALVES (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER’S FIELD SERVICES

A. The services of a qualified manufacturer's technical representative shall be provided in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and shall include the following site visits for electric actuators:

Service	Number of Trips	Number of Days/Trip
Installation and Testing	1	1
Startup and Training	1	1
Services after Startup	1	1

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. All valve actuators shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published recommendations and the applicable Specification Sections for valves and motor controls.

B. Valve actuators shall be factory coated in accordance with the manufacturer’s standard paint system.

3.03 SHOP TESTING

A. Shop testing shall be in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and with the following additional requirements:

1. Conduct a complete functional check of each unit. Correct any deficiencies found in shop testing prior to shipment.

2. Submit written certification that:

a. Shop tests for the electrical system and all controls were successfully conducted;

b. Electrical system and all controls provide the functions specified and required for proper operation of the valve operator system.

3. Each actuator shall be performance tested and individual test certificates shall be supplied free of charge. The test equipment shall simulate each typical valve load and the following parameters should be recorded:

a. Current at maximum torque setting

b. Torque at maximum torque setting

c. Flash Test Voltage

d. Actuator Output Speed or Operating Time

e. In addition, the test certificate should record details of specification, such as gear ratios for both manual and automatic drive, closing direction, and wiring diagram code number.

f. Verification of actuator torque rating with valve.

3.04 FIELD TESTS

A. Field testing shall be in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and with the following additional requirements:

1. Valve actuators shall be field-tested together with the associated valves.

2. Test all valves at the operating pressures at which the particular line will be used.

3. Test all valves for control operation as directed.

4. Field testing shall include optimization of opening and closing times of the valves. Valve opening and closing times shall be adjusted based on process requirements to optimize operation of the valves. Final valve opening and closing times as determined by field tests shall be approved by the Engineer prior to final acceptance of the system.

B. Preliminary Field Tests

1. General: Preliminary field tests shall be conducted prior to start-up and shall include a functional check of the entire valve operator system and all system components.

2. Scope: Preliminary field tests shall demonstrate that the valve operator system performs according to specifications and that all equipment, valves, controls, alarms, interlocks, etc., function properly.

3. Based on results of preliminary field tests, the Contractor shall make any adjustments required to settings, etc., to achieve the required valve closing time and operation, as specified or otherwise directed.

C. Final Field Tests

1. Final field tests shall be conducted in accordance with the latest revision of AWWA C500.

2. Final field tests shall be conducted simultaneously with the start-up and field testing of the pumps.

3. Final field tests shall be conducted for the full range of operating modes and conditions specified and as directed by the Engineer. Each of the valves shall be tested at minimum, maximum, and normal head/flow conditions, and under all specified conditions of opening and closing.

4. Certification of Equipment Compliance: After the final field tests are completed and passed, submit affidavit according to Section 46 00 00 – Equipment and General Provisions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 61
GATE VALVES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and install, complete with all assemblies and accessories, all gate valves shown on the Drawings, specified herein and as specified in Section 40 06 20 – Schedules.

C. Except where noted otherwise, valves designated for water service shall conform to pertinent sections of the latest revision of AWWA C500 Specifications.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. As required in Section 40 05 51 – Valves General, and Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. The Contractor shall furnish to the Owner, through the Engineer, a Performance Affidavit, utilizing the format specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

C. Performance tests shall be conducted in accordance with the latest revision of AWWA C500 and affidavits shall conform to the requirements of the Specifications.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GATE VALVES

A. RESILIENT WEDGE GATE VALVES (GV-RW)

1. Size: 4-Inch to 12-Inch

a. Gate valves 4 inch through 12 inch, rated for 250 psig working pressure.

b. Non-rising stem (NRS); design, shall fully comply with the requirements of AWWA C509 for resilient-seated gate valves and shall be manufactured by Mueller or American Flow Control.

c. Gate valve body, bonnet, and wedge shall be cast iron conforming to ASTM A126, Class B. All pressure retaining joints shall be sealed with O-ring seals. Flat gaskets shall not be acceptable.

d. Stems and stem nuts shall be bronze. Stems shall contain integral thrust collars. NRS valves shall contain two O-rings above the stem thrust collar and one O-ring below the stem thrust collar. All stem O-rings shall be replaceable with valve in the full open position and subjected to full pressure. NRS stems shall have two low-friction thrust washers located above and below the stem collar to reduce operating friction.

e. Wedge shall be totally encapsulated with a permanently bonded rubber material. Rubber shall be suitable for use in drinking water and shall be EPDM.

f. Waterway shall be smooth, unobstructed, and free of all pockets, cavities, and depressions in the seat area.

g. Body, bonnet, and stuffing plate shall be shop coated inside and out with a fusion bonded epoxy (10 mils minimum dry film thickness) complying with AWWA C550 and shall be NSF-61 certified. Damage surfaces shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

h. Valves shall be flanged or mechanical joint as shown on the drawings. Provide 2-inch square standard AWWA operating nut unless otherwise shown on the Drawings or specified herein.

i. All valve assembly hardware shall be minimum 304 stainless steel.

2. Size: 14-Inch through 54-Inch

a. Gate valves 14 inch through 54 inch, rated for 250 psig working pressure.

b. Non-rising stem (NRS); design, shall fully comply with the requirements of AWWA C515 for resilient-seated gate valves and shall be manufactured by American Flow Control or Mueller.

c. Gate valve body, bonnet, and wedge shall be ductile iron conforming to ASTM A536, Grade 65. All pressure retaining joints shall be sealed with O-ring seals. Flat gaskets shall not be acceptable.

d. Stems and stem nuts shall be bronze. Stems shall contain integral thrust collars. NRS valves shall contain two O-rings above the stem thrust collar and one O-ring below the stem thrust collar. All stem O-rings shall be replaceable with valve in the full open position and subjected to full pressure. NRS stems shall have two low-friction thrust washers located above and below the stem collar to reduce operating friction.

e. Wedge shall be totally encapsulated with a permanently bonded rubber material. Rubber shall be suitable for use in drinking water and shall be EPDM.

f. Provide stainless steel tracks, bronze rollers, and bronze scrapers on valves 24-inch and larger.

g. Waterway shall be smooth, unobstructed, and free of all pockets, cavities, and depressions in the seat area.

h. Body, bonnet, and stuffing plate shall be shop coated inside and out with a fusion bonded epoxy (10 mils minimum dry film thickness) complying with AWWA C550 and shall be NSF-61 certified. Damage surfaces shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

i. Valves 18-inch and larger shall be equipped with a gearbox. Extensions, gearbox housing, and adapter plates shall be ductile iron conforming to ASTM A536, Grade 65.

j. Valves shall be flanged or mechanical joint as shown on the drawings. Provide 2-inch square standard AWWA operating nut unless otherwise shown on the Drawings or specified herein.

k. All valve assembly hardware shall be minimum 304 stainless steel.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 64
BUTTERFLY VALVES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 BUTTERFLY VALVES (WATER SERVICE)

A. Butterfly valves (water service) shall be of the rubber-seated, tight-closing type conforming to the latest revision of AWWA C504. The manufacturer shall have a minimum of 5 years of experience in manufacturing butterfly valves of the sizes required in accordance with AWWA C504. All butterfly valves shall be the product of one manufacturer. Butterfly valves shall be as manufactured by DeZurik, Valmatic, or equal. Each valve shall be performance and leak tested as specified in AWWA C504 revised as follows: In addition to the testing requirements of AWWA C504, each butterfly valve shall be thoroughly cleaned and opened and closed at least three (3) times prior to testing. Certified copies of the test results shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to shipment of the valve.

B. Butterfly valves shall be Class 250B, unless otherwise indicated in the valve schedules, and of the short body design with mechanical joint or flanged ends, as shown on the Drawings.

C. Valve bodies shall be epoxy coated cast iron conforming to ASTM A-126, Grade B, ASTM A-48, Class 40 or Ductile Iron ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12. Where required to meet design operating conditions, valve bodies shall be manufactured of higher strength materials. Valve bodies shall have integral hubs for housing shaft bearings and seals.

D. Butterfly valves shall be of the concentric or eccentric shaft types. Valve discs shall be constructed of epoxy coated ductile iron, ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12. Discs shall provide a full 360 degree seating surface with no external ribs transverse to flow, and shall comply with the latest revision of AWWA C504. The valve manufacturer shall furnish Shop Drawings which include end clearance dimensions when the disc is in the fully open position.

E. The resilient valve seat shall be synthetic rubber designed to seat against a pressure differential of 250 psi on either side of the valve, unless otherwise indicated. The resilient seat shall be mechanically attached to the valve disc or valve body. Any required seat attachment hardware shall be stainless steel. The resilient seat shall be capable of being adjusted or replaced in the field without moving the valve disc along the shaft axis or

removing the valve from the line. The mating seat surface shall be stainless steel or monel.

1. The seats shall be factory tested as per AWWA C504 at a test pressure of 150 psig, unless otherwise indicated, and post adjusted for differential pressures indicated herein.

F. Valve shafts shall be one-piece or two-piece units of stainless steel construction suitably sized to transmit the torques required to operate the valves under the conditions listed in the valve schedule with appropriate safety factor. Shafts shall be securely attached to valve disc by means of conservatively sized corrosion-resistant taper pins, threaded at one end and secured with lockwashers and nuts (i.e.: mechanically attached). Provide O-ring seal on taper pin if required to prevent leakage. Shaft key shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material.

G. Shaft bearings shall be contained in the integral hubs of the valve body and shall be the permanently self-lubricated, corrosion resistant, sleeve type of teflon or heavy-duty bronze. The valve assembly shall be furnished with a factory set two-way thrust bearing designed to center the valve disc in the valve seat at all times. End cover bolts shall be of stainless steel construction.

H. The shaft seal shall be either the bronze cartridge type with at least two O-rings, monolithic V-Type, U-Cup Type, or pull down packing type. If monolithic V-Type, U-Cup Type, or pull down packings are utilized, it shall be self-adjusting, self-compensating type. Packing shall be as manufactured by Chevron, or equal. Butterfly valves with pull down packings shall be designed with an extension bonnet so that repacking can be done without removal of the actuator. For buried valves with pull down packing the packing gland cover assembly shall be heavy duty, soil and water resistant. Stuffing boxes for pull down packing shall have a depth sufficient to accept at least four rings of self-compensating type packing specifically selected for the operating pressures to be encountered. Stuffing box bolts, studs and nuts shall be stainless steel.

I. The "O" ring type shaft seal shall be contained in a removable bronze cartridge. The bronze cartridge shall be manufactured from ASTM B505 copper alloy UNS #C93200 and shall meet the requirements of AWWA C504 for bronze, Grade E. The "O" ring material shall be nitrile, BUNA-N rubber, as intended for use with potable water or wastewater and per ASTM D-2000 with a hardness of 70 Shore A Durometer.

J. Manual operators for butterfly valves 18-inches in diameter or larger shall be the worm gear type conforming to AWWA C504. Manual operators for butterfly valves mounted above five (5) feet above the operating floor shall be equipped with worm gear chainwheel actuators. Operators shall be equipped with adjustable AWWA limit stops, shall be sized according to Table IV for Class 150B, and shall require a minimum of 15 turns for 90 degrees or full stem valve travel. The capacity of the manual operator shall be adequate to drive the valve under the differential pressure of 250 psi and maximum anticipated flow, unless otherwise indicated in the appropriate valve schedule.

K. The manufacturer shall certify that the butterfly valves are capable of operating in continuous duty service under these pressures and flow conditions.

L. Each valve shall by hydrostatically tested and tested for bubble tightness after the operator has been mounted and adjusted. Copies of the hydrostatic and leakage test certification and certification of conformance shall be submitted to the Engineer prior to shipment.

M. All internal and external ferrous components and surfaces of the valves, with the exception of stainless steel and finished or bearing surfaces, shall be shop painted with two coats (10 mils min. dry film thickness) of the manufacturer's premium epoxy for corrosion resistance. Damaged surfaces shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.02 BUTTERFLY VALVES (LOW PRESSURE AIR SERVICE) (NOT USED)

2.03 BUTTERFLY VALVES (RECTANGULAR) (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 65.23
CHECK VALVES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

B. Valves intended for chemical service shall be constructed of materials suitable for the intended service.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 SWING CHECK VALVES (WATER SERVICE)

A. Unless otherwise specified, check valves 3 inches and less shall be bronze, Y-pattern, swing check valves of the regrinding type. Valves shall have a minimum 200 psi non-shock cold water pressure rating and shall be as manufactured by Jenkins Bros. Corp., Crane Company, or equal.

B. Check valves larger than 3-inches shall be cushioned swing check valves rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psi and shall be as manufactured by DeZurik or Valmatic.

C. Valve closure shall be controlled by an external weighted lever arm, the action of which is cushioned by a hydraulic oil cylinder. Counterweights and cushion cylinders shall be designed so that adjustments can be made in the field to minimize surge and to prevent backflow and hammering noises during actual service conditions. The hydraulic oil cushion system shall be completely self-contained.

D. Valve bodies, cover discs, levers, and disc arms shall be constructed of heavy cast iron or cast steel fully conforming to the latest revision of ASTM A-126 Class B or Class WCB, respectively. Valve ends shall be Standard American 125 pound flat-faced flanged, in accordance with ANSI B16.1. Each valve disc shall be suspended from a noncorrosive shaft which shall pass through a stuffing box and be connected on the outside of the valve to the cushion and counterweight mechanism.

E. Valve seating shall be rubber-to-metal designed for drop-tight shutoff. The body seat ring shall be made of bronze or stainless steel and the disc seat ring of 80 Durometer rubber. Body and disc seats shall be renewable.

F. With the exception of the valve body and seat, all parts in contact with water shall be manufactured from noncorrosive materials. Internal corrosive surfaces shall be shop painted with two coats of epoxy for corrosion resistance. Exterior surfaces shall be painted in accordance with the requirements of Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

2.02 CHECK VALVES (PROCESS AIR) (NOT USED)

2.03 BALL CHECK VALVES (CAUSTIC SERVICE) (NOT USED)

2.04 FLANGE INSERT CHECK VALVES (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 68.23
MISCELLANEOUS VALVES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

B. Valves intended for chemical service shall be constructed of materials suitable for the intended service.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GLOBE VALVES

A. Bronze Body (GLV-B)

1. ½-Inch to 3-Inch

a. Globe valves for compressed air or water service shall be bronze body and bonnet with brass stem and stainless steel regrindable disc plug. Rising stem and union bonnet through 2-Inch and bolted bonnet to 3-Inch. Valves shall be Jenkins Valve Fig. 2032J, Crane Co., or equal with minimum 300 psi non-shock cold water pressure rating and screwed ends.

2.02 BALL VALVES

A. Products and Manufacturers: Provide ball valves as made by one of the following:

1. Watts, Series S-FBV-1

2. Nibco, Model T-585-S6-R-66-LL

3. Or approved equal

B. 2-piece full port type 304 stainless steel ball valve.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 05 78

AIR VALVES FOR WATER AND WASTEWATER SERVICE

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Reference Section 40 05 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and install, complete with all assemblies and accessories, all air valves shown on the Drawings and specified herein including all fittings, appurtenances, drain connections, and transition pieces required for a complete and operable installation.

C. All valves shall be constructed of materials which have strength, wearing, and corrosion resistance characteristics entirely suitable for the types of service for which the individual valves are designated. Valves shall conform to pertinent sections of the latest edition of their respective governing AWWA standards, except as may be modified to comply with pressure ratings specified herein.

D. Valves intended for chemical service shall be constructed of materials suitable for the intended use.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Except as otherwise indicated, the current editions of the following standards apply to the work of this section:

1.	ANSI/AWWA C512	Air Release, Air/Vacuum, and Combination Air Valves for Water and Wastewater Service
2.	NSF-61, NSF-372, and NSF-600	All products in contact with potable water shall be certified

B. Reference Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions for additional requirements.

1.03 CONTRACTOR SUBMITTALS

A. The following shall be submitted in compliance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures:

1. Submit an Affidavit of Compliance for each valve type indicating the valve complies with the latest edition of its governing AWWA Standard.

2. Submit all catalog data information, installation drawings, specifications, layout dimensions, size and materials of construction for all components, pressure ratings, support and anchoring, complete descriptive literature to demonstrate full compliance, and manufacturer's certification that products comply with the indicated requirements.

3. Submit operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals and installation instructions for all valves. O&M manuals shall not include information and/or details which do not apply to the equipment being furnished. O&M manuals shall include:

    a. Manufacturer's catalog data.

    b. Manufacturer's installation and operations instructions.

    c. Manufacturer's maintenance procedures.

    d. List of special tools.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. All valve body castings shall be clean, sound, and without defects of any kind. No plugging, welding, or repairing of defects will be allowed.

B. Air valves shall be provided with appropriate materials to provide drip tight closure.

C. Valves 2-inch and smaller shall have NPT threaded inlets and outlets. Valves that are 3-inch shall be either NPT threaded or flanged ANSI B16.5 Class 150. Valves 4-inch and larger shall be flanged ANSI B16.5 Class 150.

D. Valves shall permit dismantling for repairs and cleaning without being removed from the line. All air valves with connections 3-inches and smaller shall include a ball valve of the same diameter as the nominal valve size located on the inlet side for isolation, unless otherwise detailed or noted on the drawings. All air valves with connections 4-inches and larger shall include a gate valve of the same diameter as the nominal valve size located on the inlet side for isolation, unless otherwise detailed or noted on the drawings.

E. Unless otherwise directed by the Owner, isolation valves shall open counterclockwise.

F. The exhaust from the valve shall be piped to a suitable disposal point, with the piping firmly supported and installed in such a way as to avoid splashing and wetting of floors. Exhaust piping shall be no smaller than the diameter of the air valve's largest orifice.

G. For valves where insect screens are required, confirm that the open surface area between the insect screen mesh is no less than the area of the largest air valve orifice so as not to restrict air flow.

H. All internal and external ferrous components and surfaces of the valves, with the exception of stainless steel and finished or bearing surfaces, shall be shop painted with two coats (10 mils min. dry film thickness) of the manufacturer's premium epoxy for corrosion resistance. Damaged surfaces shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

I. One spare valve shall be provided for each size and type of valve specified.

2.02 AIR VALVES FOR WATER SERVICE

A. The valves specified in this section shall be specifically designed for water service.

B. All air valves for water service 1-inch in diameter and larger shall have a ¼-inch minimum diameter drain plug.

C. Air Release Valves (ARV): ARVs for water service shall be designed to operate (open) while pressurized allowing entrained air in a water pipeline to escape through the air release orifice. After entrained air escapes through the air release orifice, the valve orifice shall close tightly. The air release orifice will then remain closed until more air accumulates and the opening cycle repeats automatically.

D. Air/Vacuum Valves (AVV): AVVs for water service shall automatically allow large volumes of air to be released through a large orifice during pipe filling and automatically allow large volumes of air to enter through a large orifice during pipe draining. AVVs shall be designed to react immediately to open when the absolute pressure in the pipeline falls below atmospheric pressure by opening a large orifice.

E. Combination Air Release and Air/Vacuum Valves (CARV): CARVs for water service shall provide the same function as both ARVs and AVVs listed above. CARVs may be a single body housing specifically designed for use with water mains.

F. Vacuum Breaker Valves (VBV): VBVs for water service shall open when the internal pressure falls 0.25 psi below atmospheric pressure and close tightly when the internal pressure rises above the opening pressure. VBVs may include an ARV.

G. Deep Well Valves (DWV): DWVs for water service shall perform the same function as AVVs and are installed at the discharge of vertical turbine pumps to allow pump columns to drain and then exhaust the volume of air displaced as the columns fill again. DWVs shall include an arrestor check / anti-slam device to reduce shock within the valve and pipeline and a throttling device to allow adjustments in the rate of air flow.

H. Sealing pressure is listed in the Valve Parameters Table below.

I. Acceptable manufacturers for non-surge air valve applications: Crispin, Golden Anderson, Cla-Val, Valmatic, or equal.

1. Materials of Construction

Component	Material
Body, Cover	**Cast Iron ASTM A126 Class B or Ductile Iron ASTM A536 Grade 65-45-12**
Float	**316 Stainless Steel**
Seat	**Viton, Buna-N, or PVC ASTM 1784**
Trim	**304 or 316 Stainless Steel**
O-rings	**Viton or EPDM**
Connection – 2" or smaller	**NPT Threaded**
Connection – 3"	**NPT Threaded or Flanged ANSI B16.5 Class 150**
Connection – 4" or larger	**Flanged ANSI B16.5 Class 150**

J. Valve parameters:

Line Designation and Location	Quantity	Model (Indicate if Biased Regulated Anti-Surge Device is required with -B)	Size	Anti-Surge Orifice Size	Normal Operating Pressures (psig)[1]	Air Release Valve Venting Rate (scfm)	Discharge Capacity @ ∆2 psi (scfm)	Intake Capacity @ ∆-5 psi (scfm)	Notes
Discharge Lateral	3	ARV	1”	-	83 - 97	N/A	N/A	N/A	-
ARV Manhole	2	ARV	2”	-	82 - 96	N/A	N/A	N/A	-

2.03 AIR VALVES FOR WASTEWATER OR NON-POTABLE WATER SERVICE (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 TESTING

A. Testing shall be performed in accordance with the latest revision of AWWA C512.

B. Minimum test pressure - air valves for water and wastewater service shall be tested at 20 psig or the minimum operating pressure, whichever is lower.

C. Maximum test pressure - air valves for water and wastewater service shall be tested at 150% of the maximum design pressure.

D. Before installation, all valves shall be lubricated, manually opened and closed to check their operation and the interior of the valves shall be thoroughly cleaned.

3.02 SHIPMENT

A. Valves shall be complete in all details when shipped. Cavities shall be drained of water to protect from freezing. The openings shall be covered to prevent entry of foreign material, and the threads shall be protected. The manufacturer shall carefully prepare the valves for shipment. Valves shall be fully packaged or attached to pallets at the manufacturer’s option.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install all air valves in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 06 20

SCHEDULES

PART 1 -- GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Provide piping and valves according to the schedules contained herein.

B. Reference Section 40 05 00 - Basic Mechanical Requirements.

1.02 PIPING SYSTEM SCHEDULES

A. Piping requirements for this Section are outlined on the Drawings and in the Piping System Schedule. In the absence of a specified test pressure, pipe shall be tested at a pressure 150 psi unless the Schedule indicates that no test is required.

B. If the pipe material is not shown on the Piping System Schedule or indicated on the Drawings, the following materials shall be used:

Pipe Size	Material	Type of Joint	Class/Design	Test Pressure
4-in and larger	DIP	Flanged (Exposed)	Class 51	(1)
		Restrained (Buried)	Pressure Class 350	
Less than 4-in	PVC	Socket	Sch 80	(1)
(1) Test at 150 percent of normal operating pressure or 10 psi, whichever is greater.				

C. Non-critical gravity lines such as drains, floor drains, roof drains, etc., shall be tested if required by local building inspections.

1.03 VALVE SCHEDULES

A. Performance Affidavits shall be required for all valves listed in the valve schedule(s). Performance Affidavits shall be provided in accordance with Section 46 05 00, Equipment General Provisions and Section 01 33 00, Submittals. All valves shall be tagged by the manufacturer according to the control valve designations listed in the Schedule.

B. Electrically operated valves are listed in the valve schedule. Valves not listed in the valve schedule shall be manually operated and provided as indicated on the Drawings and specified in other sections.

PIPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

PIPE DESIGNATION	DIAMETER	LOCATION	MATERIAL	TYPE OF JOINT	CLASS / SCHEDULE	RESTRAINT SYSTEM DESIGN [1] PRESSURE	TEST PRESSURE
D	≥ 4”	ALL	PVC	SW	SCH 80	N/A	N/A
	< 4”	ALL	316 SS	THD	SCH 10		
SPD	ALL	ALL	PVC	SW	SCH 80	150 PSI	N/A
PW	< 4”	ALL	316 SS	SW	SCH 80	250 PSI	150 PSI
	≥ 4”	EXPOSED	DI	FL	AWWA C115	250 PSI	150 PSI
	≥ 4”	BURIED	DI	B&S, RJ[2]	PC 350		

[1] DESIGN PRESSURE SHALL BE USED TO DETERMINE THE SIZE, NUMBER, MATERIAL AND DIMENSIONS OF TABS AND THREADED-RODS FOR PIPING SPECIFIED OR SHOWN TO HAVE THREADED-RODS FOR THRUST RESTRAINT.

[2] SEE PLAN AND PROFILE SHEETS FOR LOCATIONS WHERE B&S OR RJ PIPE JOINTS APPLY

PIPING SYSTEM DESIGNATIONS

D	DRAIN
SPD	SUMP PUMP DISCHARGE
PW	POTABLE WATER

MATERIAL ABBREVIATIONS

PVC	POLYVINYL CHLORIDE
DI	DUCTILE IRON
316 SS	TYPE 316 STAINLESS STEEL

JOINT TYP ABBREVIATIONS

SW	SOCKET WELD
FL	FLANGE
RJ	RESTRAINED JOINT
THD	THREADED
B&S	BELL & SPIGOT

CLASS/SCHEDULE ABBREVIATIONS

SCH	SCHEDULE
PC	PRESSURE CLASS

ELECTRICALLY ACTUATED VALVE SCHEDULE

TAG NO.	VALVE TYPE	OPERATOR TYPE	SIZE (in)	MAXIMUM FLOW (gpm)	MAX DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE (psi)	SERVICE	LOCATION
MOV-1001	BUTTERFLY	OPEN/STOP/CLOSE	12	5,850	120	PW	PUMP BUIDLING – EXPOSED
MOV-1002	BUTTERFLY	OPEN/STOP/CLOSE	12	5,850	120	PW	PUMP BUIDLING – EXPOSED
MOV-1003	BUTTERFLY	OPEN/STOP/CLOSE	10	2,930	120	PW	PUMP BUIDLING – EXPOSED

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 13
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

A. The Contractor shall provide, through the services of an instrumentation and control system subcontractor, components, system installation services, as well as required and specified ancillary services in connection with the Instrumentation, Control and Information System.

B. The System includes materials, labor, tools, fees, charges, and documentation required to furnish, install, test and place in operation a complete and operable instrumentation, control and information system.

C. The system shall include measuring elements, signal converters, transmitters, local control panels, digital hardware and software, operator workstations, remote telemetry units, signal and data transmission systems, interconnecting wiring, and pertinent accessories.

D. The scope of the work to be performed under this Division includes but is not limited to the following:

1. The Contractor shall retain overall responsibility for the instrumentation and control system as specified herein.

2. Furnish and install process instrumentation and associated taps and supports as scheduled or shown on the Drawings, unless otherwise noted or supplied by equipment vendors.

3. Furnish and install local control panels, field panels and associated cabinets and panels as shown on the Drawings and as specified in Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive and where included.

4. Furnish and install digital control system hardware and software as specified in Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive and where included.

5. Final termination and testing of instrumentation and control system signal wiring and power supply wiring at equipment furnished under Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive and where included.

6. Furnish, install and terminate special cables for devices (e.g., instruments, printers, radios). Furnish and terminate control system communication network cables.

020119

7. Furnish and install surge protection devices for digital equipment, local control panels, remote telemetry units, and instrumentation provided under this Division, including connections to grounding system(s) provided under Division 26.

8. Coordinate grounding requirements with the electrical subcontractor for digital equipment, local control panels, remote telemetry units, and instrumentation provided under this Division. Terminate grounding system cables at equipment provided under this Division.

9. Provide system testing, calibration, training and startup services as specified herein and as required to make systems fully operational.

E. It is the intent of the Contract Documents to construct a complete and working installation. Items of equipment or materials that may reasonably be assumed as necessary to accomplish this end shall be supplied whether or not they are specifically stated herein.

1.02 RELATED ITEMS

A. Field mounted switches, torque switches, limit switches, gauges, valve and gate operator position transmitters, sump pump controls, and other instrumentation and controls furnished with mechanical or electrical equipment not listed in the instrument schedule shall be furnished, installed, tested, and calibrated as specified under other Divisions unless otherwise indicated.

B. Additional and related work performed under Division 26 includes the following:

1. Instrument A.C. power source and disconnect switch for process instrumentation, A.C. grounding systems, and A.C. power supplies for equipment, control panels and accessories furnished under Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive and where included.

2. Conduit and raceways for instrumentation and control system signal wiring, grounding systems, special cables and communication network cables.

3. Instrumentation and control system signal wiring.

4. Install control system communication network cables.

5. Furnish and install grounding systems for digital equipment, local control panels, remote telemetry units, and instrumentation provided under Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive and where included. Grounding systems shall be complete to the equipment provided under Sections 40 61 13 through 40 79 00, inclusive, and where included, ready for termination by the instrumentation subcontractor.

6. Termination of instrumentation and control system signal wiring at equipment furnished under other Divisions of the Specifications.

7. Final wiring and termination to A.C. grounding systems and to A.C. power sources (e.g., panelboards, motor control centers, and other sources of electrical power).

1.03 GENERAL INFORMATION AND DESCRIPTION

A. Where manufacturers are named for a particular item of equipment, it is intended as a guide to acceptable quality and performance and does not exempt such equipment from the requirements of these Specifications or Drawings.

B. In order to centralize responsibility, it is required that equipment (including field instrumentation and control system hardware and software) offered under this Division shall be furnished and installed by the instrumentation subcontractor, or under the supervision of the instrumentation subcontractor, who shall assume complete responsibility for proper operation of the instrumentation and control system equipment, including that of coordinating signals, and furnishing appurtenant equipment.

C. The Contractor shall retain total responsibility for the proper detailed design, fabrication, inspection, test, delivery, assembly, installation, activation, checkout, adjustment and operation of the entire instrumentation and control system as well as equipment and controls furnished under other Divisions of the Specifications. The Contractor shall be responsible for the delivery of detailed drawings, manuals and other documentation required for the complete coordination, installation, activation and operation of mechanical equipment, equipment control panels, local control panels, field instrumentation, control systems and related equipment/systems and shall provide for the services of a qualified installation engineer to supervise activities required to place the completed facility in stable operation under full digital control.

D. The instrumentation and control system shall be capable of simultaneously implementing all real time control and information system functions, and servicing all operator service requests as specified, without degrading the data handling and processing capability of other system components.

E. Control system inputs and outputs are listed in Section 40 61 93 – Process Control System Input-Output List. This information, together with the functional control descriptions, process and instrumentation diagrams, and electrical control schematics, describes the real time monitoring and control functions to be performed. In addition, the system shall provide various man/machine interface and data reporting functions as specified in the software sections of this Specification.

F. The mechanical, process, and electrical drawings indicate the approximate locations of field instruments, control panels, systems and equipment as well as field mounted equipment provided by others. The instrumentation subcontractor shall examine the mechanical, process and electrical drawings to determine actual size and locations of process connections and wiring requirements for instrumentation and controls furnished under this Contract. The instrumentation subcontractor shall inspect equipment, panels, instrumentation, controls, and appurtenances, either existing or furnished on the Project to determine requirements for interfacing with the control and information system. The

Contractor shall coordinate the completion of required modifications with the associated supplier of the item furnished.

G. The instrumentation subcontractor shall review and approve the size and routing of instrumentation and control cable and conduit systems furnished by the electrical subcontractor for suitability for use with the associated cable system.

H. The Contractor shall coordinate the efforts of each supplier to aid in interfacing systems. This effort shall include, but shall not be limited to, the distribution of approved shop drawings to the electrical subcontractor and to the instrumentation subcontractor furnishing the equipment under this Division.

I. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing a signal transmission system free from electrical interference that would be detrimental to the proper functioning of the instrumentation and control system equipment.

J. The Owner shall have the right of access to the subcontractor's facility and the facilities of the subcontractor’s equipment suppliers to observe materials and parts; witness inspections, tests and work in progress; and examine applicable design documents, records, and certifications during all stages of design, fabrication, and tests. The instrumentation subcontractor and their equipment suppliers shall furnish office space, supplies, and services required for these observation activities.

K. The terms "Instrumentation," "Instrumentation and Control System," and "Instrumentation, Control and Information System" shall hereinafter be defined as equipment, labor, services, and documents necessary to meet the intent of the Specifications.

1.04 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL SYSTEM SUBCONTRACTORS

A. Instrumentation and control system subcontractors shall be regularly engaged in the detailed design, fabrication, installation, and startup of instrumentation and control systems for water and wastewater treatment facilities, remote telemetry systems for water supply/distribution systems, and remote telemetry systems for wastewater collection systems. Instrumentation and control system subcontractors shall have a minimum of five years of such experience and shall have completed a minimum of three projects of similar type and size as that specified herein. Where specific manufacturers/models of major hardware or software products (PLC, HMI software, network, etc.) are specified to be used on this project, the instrumentation and control system subcontractor shall have completed at least one project using that specified hardware or software. As used herein, the term “completed” shall mean that a project has been brought to final completion and final payment has been made.

B. Acceptable instrumentation and control system subcontractors shall be Fortech.

1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Solid State: Wherever the term solid state is used to describe circuitry or components in the Specifications, it is intended that the circuitry or components shall be of the type that convey electrons by means of solid materials such as crystals or that work on magnetic principles such as ferrite cores. Vacuum tubes, gas tubes, slide wires, mechanical relays, stepping motors or other devices will not be considered as satisfying the requirements for solid state components of circuitry.

B. Bit or Data Bit: Whenever the terms bit or data bit are used in the Specification, it is intended that one bit shall be equivalent to one binary digit of information. In specifying data transmission rate, the bit rate or data bit rate shall be the number of binary digits transmitted per second and shall not necessarily be equal to either the maximum pulse rate or average pulse rate.

C. Integrated Circuit: Integrated circuit shall mean the physical realization of a number of circuit elements inseparably associated on or within a continuous body to perform the function of a circuit.

D. Mean Time Between Failures (MTBF): The MTBF shall be calculated by taking the number of system operating hours logged during an arbitrary period of not less than six months and dividing by the number of failures experienced during this period plus one.

E. Mean Time to Repair (MTTR): The MTTR shall be calculated by taking the total system down time for repair over an arbitrary period of not less than six months coinciding with that used for calculation of MTBF and dividing by the number of failures causing down time during the period.

F. Availability: The availability of a non-redundant device or system shall be related to its MTBF and MTTR by the following formula:

$$A = 100 \times (MTBF / (MTBF + MTTR)) \text{ Percent}$$

The availability of a device or system provided with an automatically switched backup device or system shall be determined by the following formula:

$$A = A2 + 1 - ((1 - A1) * (1 - A1))$$

where:

A1 = availability of non-redundant device or system

A2 = availability of device or system provided with an automatically switched backup device or system

G. Abbreviations: Specification abbreviations include the following:

1. A - Availability

2. ADC - Analog to Digital Converter
3. AI - Analog Input
4. AO - Analog Output
5. AVAIL - Available
6. BCD - Binary Coded Decimal
7. CSMA/CD - Carrier Sense Multiple Access/Collision Detect
8. CPU - Central Processing Unit
9. CRC - Cyclic Redundancy Check
10. CS - Control Strategy
11. DAC - Digital to Analog Converter
12. DBMS - Data Base Management System
13. DI - Discrete Input
14. DMA - Direct Memory Access
15. DO - Discrete Output
16. DPDT - Double Pole, Double Throw
17. DVE - Digital to Video Electronics
18. EPROM - Erasable, Programmable Read Only Memory
19. FDM - Frequency Division Multiplexing
20. FSK - Frequency Shift Keyed
21. HMI - Human Machine Interface (Software)
22. I/O - Input/Output
23. LAN - Network and Communication Equipment
24. LCD - Liquid Crystal Display
25. LDFW - Lead Follow
26. MCC - Motor Control Center

27. MTBF - Mean Time Between Failures
28. MTTR - Mean Time to Repair
29. OS - Operating System
30. PAC - Programmable Automation Controller
31. PCB - Printed Circuit Board
32. PID - Proportional Integral and Derivative Control
33. PLC - Programmable Logic Controller or Programmable Controller
34. PROM - Programmable Read Only Memory
35. RAM - Random Access Memory
36. RDY - Ready
37. RMSS - Root Mean Square Summation
38. RNG - Running
39. ROM - Read Only Memory
40. RTU - Remote Telemetry Unit
41. SPDT - Single Pole, Double Throw
42. ST/SP - Start/Stop
43. TDM - Time Division Multiplexing
44. UPS - Uninterruptible Power Supply
45. VFD - Variable Frequency Drive

H. To minimize the number of characters in words used in textual descriptions on displays, printouts and nameplates, abbreviations may be used subject to the Engineer's approval. If a specified abbreviation does not exist for a particular word, an abbreviation may be generated using the principles of masking and or vowel deletion. Masking involves retaining the first and last letters in a word and deleting one or more characters (usually vowels) from the interior of the word.

1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

A. Instrumentation equipment and enclosures shall be suitable for ambient conditions specified. All system elements shall operate properly in the presence of telephone lines, power lines, and electrical equipment.

B. Inside control rooms and climate-controlled electrical rooms, the temperature will normally be 20 to 25 degrees C; relative humidity 40 to 80 percent without condensation and the air will be essentially free of corrosive contaminants and moisture. Appropriate air filtering shall be provided to meet environmental conditions (e.g., dust).

C. Other indoor areas may not be air conditioned/heated; temperatures may range between 0 and 40 degrees C with relative humidity between 40 and 95 percent.

D. Field equipment including instrumentation and panels may be subjected to wind, rain, lightning, and corrosives in the environment, with ambient temperatures from -20 to 40 degrees C and relative humidity from 10 to 100 percent. All supports, brackets, interconnecting hardware, and fasteners shall be aluminum, type 316 stainless steel, or metal alloy as otherwise suitable for chemical resistance within chemical feed/storage areas shown on the installation detail drawings.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SCHEDULE OF PAYMENT

A. Payment to the Contractor for Control and Information System materials, equipment, and labor shall be in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions. The schedule of values submitted as required by the General and Supplementary Conditions shall reflect a breakdown of the work required for completion of the Control and Information System. The breakdown shall include sufficient detail to permit the Engineer to administer payment for the Control and Information System.

B. The following payment schedule defines project milestones that will be used for establishing maximum partial payment amounts for the Control and Information System. Payment for field instruments, field wiring, fiber optic network cable and similar items will be made in addition to the payment for the scopes of services incorporated into the schedule below.

1. Task Completed - Maximum Cumulative % Request for Payment

    a. Mobilization - 3%

    b. Preliminary Design Review - 5%

    c. Approved Submittals - 20%

d. Hardware Purchase (excludes field instruments) - 40%

e. Factory Witness Test - 60%

f. Loop Checkout - 70%

g. Control System Start-up and Test - 80%

h. Plant Start-up - 90%

i. Final System Acceptance Test - 95%

j. Final Acceptance - 100%

C. Requests for payment for materials and equipment that are not installed on site, but are required for system construction and the factory witness test (e.g., digital hardware), or are properly stored as described in the General and Supplementary Conditions and herein, shall be accompanied by invoices from the original supplier to the instrumentation subcontractor substantiating the cost of the materials or equipment.

D. Any balance remaining within the schedule of values for field instruments and other materials installed on the site, or for other materials for which payment is made by invoice, will be considered due upon completion of the Final Acceptance test.

3.02 CLEANING

A. The Contractor shall thoroughly clean soiled surfaces of installed equipment and materials.

B. Upon completion of the instrumentation and control work, the Contractor shall remove surplus materials, rubbish, and debris that has accumulated during the construction work. The entire area shall be left neat, clean, and acceptable to the Owner.

3.03 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. Final acceptance of the Instrumentation, Control and Information System will be determined complete by the Engineer, and shall be based upon the following:

1. Receipt of acceptable start up completion and availability reports and other documentation as required by the Contract Documents.

2. Completion of the Availability Demonstration.

3. Completion of control system training requirements.

4. Completion of punch-list items that are significant in the opinion of the Engineer.

B. Final acceptance of the System shall mark the beginning of the warranty period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 15
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SUBMITTALS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall submit for review complete Shop Drawings for all equipment in accordance with the General and Supplemental Conditions and Division 1 of the Specifications. All submittal material shall be complete, legible, and reproducible, and shall apply specifically to this project.

B. All submittal materials shall be tailored to this project by highlighting relevant items or crossing out non-applicable items. Generic submittals without identified options will be returned the Contractor without review.

C. Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) Letter:

1. Where a named manufacturer/product or manufacturer is specified and a substitution or an “or equal” product is submitted, the submittal shall be accompanied by a “Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) letter.” If the required submittal is submitted without the letter, the submittal will be rejected.

2. The letter shall include all comments, deviations and exceptions taken to the Drawings and Specifications by the Contractor, subcontractor (if applicable), and the equipment Manufacturer/Supplier. This letter shall include a copy of the Specification Section to which the submittal pertains. In the left margin beside each and every paragraph/item, a letter "C", "D", or "E" shall be typed or written in.

   a. The letter "C" shall be for full compliance with the requirement.

   b. The letter "D" shall be for a deviation from the requirement.

   c. The letter "E" shall be for taking exception to a requirement.

3. Any requirements with the letter "D" or "E" beside them shall be provided with a full typewritten explanation of the deviation/exception. Handwritten explanation of the deviations/exceptions shall not be acceptable.

4. The CD&E letter shall also address deviations, and exceptions taken to each Drawing related to this Specification Section.

D. Although this Section is intended to list the majority of submittals required for a given project, there may be additional submittal requirements in other Sections. Reference the applicable Sections for a given topic and include additional submittal information when required.

08-23-24

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 33 00 – Submittals

B. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

1.03 EXISTING CONDITIONS / AS-BUILT DOCUMENTATION SUBMITTAL

A. Prior to modifying, demolishing, removing, or decommissioning equipment, thoroughly investigate and document the existing conditions. Please note that Owner's record drawings alone are not sufficient for documentation. The record drawings, if present, shall be verified in the field prior to submitting. Submit drawings, markup, sketches, information, or other materials for documenting the following existing conditions:

   1. All I/O on PLC modules that have its wiring modified or new I/O terminated or for any PLC that is being decommissioned/removed/demolished. Document module number, point number, wire numbers, terminal numbers, destination, function, and whether the connected device is functioning.

   2. All wiring entering or leaving an enclosure that is being decommissioned, removed, or demolished that is not otherwise accounted for.

   3. Documentation of configuration settings, logic, or other customizable parameters. For PLCs, OITs, and similar, a download of its logic or application file is acceptable.

B. When all information has been gathered, it shall be submitted to Engineer along with a clear and unequivocal statement that the existing conditions have been documented and understood. Contractor shall be held responsible for all issues that arise due to Contractor's modifications, demolition, removal, or decommissioning of existing equipment, including necessary reversion back to previous conditions.

1.04 DIGITAL HARDWARE SUBMITTALS

A. Submit system block diagram(s) showing:

   1. All equipment to be provided.

   2. All interconnecting cable.

   3. Equipment names, manufacturer, and model numbers.

   4. Equipment locations.

B. Submit information for all digital equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

   1. Bill of materials with equipment names, manufacturers, complete model numbers and locations.

2. Catalog cuts, including complete part number breakdown information.

3. Complete technical, material and environmental specifications.

4. Assembly drawings.

5. Mounting requirements.

6. Color samples.

7. Nameplates.

8. Environmental requirements during storage and operation.

1.05 SOFTWARE SUBMITTALS

A. Software submittals shall include the following as a minimum:

1. Bill of materials with software names, vendors, and complete listings of included software modules.

2. Standard manufacturer's literature describing the products.

3. Description of function of software in Control and Information System.

4. Limitations or constraints of software.

5. Minimum system (processor and memory) requirements.

6. Operation and maintenance requirements.

B. Submit information on the following software:

1. Third-party software, including:

a. Operating system.

b. Operator workstation (SCADA or HMI) software, including all add-in software provided to perform specific functions (alarm dialers, schedulers, backup creation software, etc.).

c. Office-type products, such as spreadsheets, word processors, etc.

d. Database management software.

e. Communication software, including all applicable local and wide area network software.

f. Programmable controller programming software (where applicable).

2. Software configuration, including:

    a. Graphic display organization.

    b. Database configuration for operator workstations and database management system.

    c. Trends.

    d. System security.

    e. Formats for all reports, including all required calculations.

    f. Intercommunications between software products required to implement system functions.

    g. Equipment backup configuration and requirements.

C. Programming methodology submittal

1. Standard PLC programming logic, with comments, for

    a. “Across-the-line” motor

    b. Variable speed motor

    c. Open/close valve

    d. Modulating valve

    e. Operator mode/stage selection with auto alternate

2. Internal PLC task/routine layout, per PLC if not standardized.

3. Standard PLC tag name structure

D. Control Strategies

1. Description of automatic logic and all non-standard manual logic using plain English, for non-technical persons, and written in Contractor’s own words. The write-up shall include references to associated I/O, tag/loop numbers, alarming/interlocks.

2. Submitting language verbatim to Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions shall not be acceptable.

E. Application Software

1. Provide application software documentation that contains program descriptions for the operation, modification, and maintenance of all application programs provided for the digital system.

2. Application software includes all custom routines developed specifically for this project, or pre-written routines used for accomplishing specified functions for this project. This shall include any add-in custom software.

F. Graphic Displays

1. Submit all graphic displays required to perform the control and operator interface functions specified herein. Submitted graphic displays shall be for both new and modified graphics.

2. Submit the complete set of graphic displays for review by the Owner and the Engineer at least 60 days prior to commencement of factory testing.

3. Where a large number of graphic displays are required, submit an initial set of example displays for review before the complete set of displays is submitted. This initial set shall include examples of all basic graphic display design features and parameters and is intended to allow the Contractor to obtain preliminary approval of these features and parameters prior to beginning main graphic display production.

4. The Contractor shall allow for one major cycle of revisions to the displays prior to factory testing and one minor cycle of revisions following factory test. A cycle of revisions shall be defined as all revisions necessary to complete a single set of changes marked by the Engineer and the Owner. Additional corrections shall be performed during start-up as required to accommodate changes required by actual field conditions, at no additional cost to the Owner.

5. The required submittals in each revision cycle shall be full color prints of the entire set of displays.

6. Displays shall be printouts of actual process graphics implemented in the system.

7. See additional requirements in Section 40 68 00 – Process Control Software.

1.06 CONTROL PANEL SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be provided for all control panels, and shall include:

1. Exterior panel drawings with front and side views, to scale.

2. Interior layout drawings showing the locations and sizes of all equipment and wiring mounted within the cabinet, to scale.

3. Panel area reserved for cable access and conduit entry.

4. Location plans showing each panel in its assigned location.

5. Thermal (heating and cooling) calculations

6. Power calculations, including UPS sizing and runtime calculation, if provided.

7. Proof of over current protective device selective coordination, if requested.

B. Submit information for all exterior and interior panel mounted equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Bill of materials with equipment names, manufacturers, complete model numbers and locations.

2. Catalog cuts, including complete part number breakdown information.

3. Complete technical, material and environmental specifications.

4. Assembly drawings.

5. Mounting requirements.

6. Material and color samples, where required.

7. Nameplates.

8. Environmental requirements during storage and operation.

C. Submit panel wiring diagrams showing power, signal, and control wiring, including surge protection, relays, courtesy receptacles, lighting, wire size and color coding, etc. Include remote equipment labels, remote contact/signal names, remote terminal numbers, and field conduit/cable identification.

1.07 INSTRUMENT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit information on all field instruments, including but not limited to the following:

1. Product (item) name and tag number used herein and on the Contract Drawings.

2. Catalog cuts, including complete part number breakdown information.

3. Manufacturer's complete model number.

4. Location of the device.

5. Input output characteristics.

6. Range, size, and graduations.

7. Physical size with dimensions, NEMA enclosure classification, and mounting details.

8. Materials of construction of all enclosures, wetted parts and major components.

9. Instrument or control device sizing calculations where applicable.

10. Certified calibration data on all flow metering devices.

11. Environmental requirements during storage and operation.

12. Associated surge protection devices.

13. Installation drawings/details.

14. Material samples, where required

1.08 TESTING & START-UP (MULTIPLE SUBMITTALS)

A. Test plans per Section 40 61 21 – Process Control System Testing, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Factory witness testing plan

2. Field testing plan

3. Final acceptance testing plan

4. Instrument test plan per Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

5. Blank calibration/verification sheets per Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

B. Test results per Section 40 61 21 – Process Control System Testing, unless otherwise indicated

1. Factory witness testing results

2. Field testing results

3. Final acceptance testing results

4. Completed calibration/verification sheets per Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

C. Proposed maintenance agreement per Section 40 61 24 – Quality Assurance

D. Training per Section 40 61 26 – Process Control System Training

1. Training plan for each type

2. Training documentation for each type

3. Training attendance logs

4. Recorded video documentation, if required.

1.09 WIRING AND LOOP DIAGRAMS

A. Submit interconnection wiring and loop diagrams for all panels and signals in the Control and Information System.

B. Electrical interconnection diagrams shall show all terminations of equipment, including terminations to equipment and controls furnished under other Divisions, complete with equipment and cable designations. Where applicable, interconnection wiring diagrams shall be organized by input/output card. Interconnecting diagrams shall be prepared in a neat and legible manner on 11 X 17-inch reproducible prints.

C. Loop drawings shall conform to the latest version of ISA Standards and Recommended Practices for Instrumentation and Control. Loop Drawings shall conform to ISA S5.4, Figures 1-3, Minimum Required Items.

D. Loop drawings shall not be required as a separate document provided that the interconnecting wiring diagrams required herein contain all information required by ISA 5.4.

1.10 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. The Contractor shall deliver equipment operation and maintenance manuals in compliance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittals. Operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals shall consist of two basic parts:

1. Manufacturer standard O&M manuals for all equipment and software furnished under this Division.

2. Custom O&M information describing the specific configuration of equipment and software, and the operation and maintenance requirements for this particular project.

B. The manuals shall contain all illustrations, detailed drawings, wiring diagrams, and instructions necessary for installing, operating, and maintaining the equipment. The illustrated parts shall be numbered for identification. All modifications to manufacturer standard equipment and/or components shall be clearly identified and shown on the drawings and schematics. All information contained therein shall apply specifically to the equipment furnished and shall only include instructions that are applicable. All such illustrations shall be incorporated within the printing of the page to form a durable and permanent reference book.

C. The manuals shall be prepared specifically for this installation and shall include all required cuts, drawings, equipment lists, descriptions, etc. that are required to instruct operation and maintenance personnel unfamiliar with such equipment. The maintenance instructions shall include troubleshooting data and full preventive maintenance schedules. The instructions shall be bound in locking 3-D-ring binders with bindings no larger than 3.5 inches. The manuals shall include 15% spare space for the addition of future material. The instructions shall include drawings reduced or folded and shall provide the following as a minimum.

1. A comprehensive index.

2. A functional description of the entire system, with references to drawings and instructions.

3. A complete "as built" set of all approved shop drawings, which shall reflect all work required to achieve final system acceptance.

4. A complete list of the equipment supplied, including serial numbers, ranges, and pertinent data.

5. Full specifications on each item.

6. Detailed service, maintenance, and operation instructions for each item supplied.

7. Special maintenance requirements particular to this system shall be clearly defined, along with special calibration and test procedures.

8. Complete parts lists with stock numbers and name, address, and telephone number of the local supplier.

9. References to manufacturers' standard literature where applicable.

10. Warning notes shall be located throughout the manual where such notes are required to prevent accidents or inadvertent misuse of equipment.

D. The operating instructions shall clearly describe the step by step procedures that must be followed to implement all phases of all operating modes. The instructions shall be in terms understandable and usable by operating personnel and maintenance crews and shall be useful in the training of such personnel.

E. The maintenance instructions shall describe the detailed preventive and corrective procedures required, including environmental requirements during equipment storage and system operation, to keep the System in good operating condition. All hardware maintenance documentation shall make reference to appropriate diagnostics, where applicable, and all necessary wiring diagrams, component drawings and PCB schematic drawings shall be included.

F. The hardware maintenance documentation shall include, as a minimum, the following information:

1. Operation Information: This information shall include a detailed description of how the equipment operates and a block diagram illustrating each major assembly in the equipment.

2. Preventive Maintenance Instructions: These instructions shall include all applicable visual examinations, hardware testing and diagnostic routines, and the adjustments necessary for periodic preventive maintenance of the System.

3. Corrective Maintenance Instructions: These instructions shall include guides for locating malfunctions down to the card replacement level. These guides shall include adequate details for quickly and efficiently locating the cause of an equipment malfunction and shall state the probable source(s) of trouble, the symptoms, probable cause, and instructions for remedying the malfunction.

4. Parts Information: This information shall include the identification of each replaceable or field repairable component. All parts shall be identified on a list in a drawing; the identification shall be of a level of detail sufficient for procuring any repairable or replaceable part. Cross references between equipment numbers and manufacturer's part numbers shall be provided.

G. Software documentation shall conform to a standard format and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. A program abstract that includes:

a. Program Name - The symbolic alphanumeric program name.

b. Program Title - English text identification.

c. Program Synopsis - A brief text shall be provided that specifies the need for the program, states when it shall be used and functionally describes all inputs, outputs and functions performed. This descriptive text shall be written in a language that is understandable by non-programming-oriented readers.

2. A program description that shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

a. Applicable Documents - List all documents (standard manufacturer's literature, other program descriptions, etc.) by section, if practical, that apply to the program. One complete copy of all applicable reference material shall be provided.

b. Input Output - Identify each input and output parameter, variable, and software element used by the program. State the purpose of all inputs, outputs, and variables.

c. Processing - This section shall contain a description of the overall structure and function of the program. Describe the program run stream and present a detailed description of how the program operates. Describe the timing and sequencing of operations of the program relative to other programs. Describe all interactions with other programs. Processing logic that is not readily described without considerable background information shall be handled as a special topic with references to an appendix or to control strategy document that details the necessary information. Reference shall also be made to an appendix or control strategy document for equation and program algorithm derivations.

d. System Configuration - Describe in detail the system configuration or status required for program implementation, if appropriate.

e. Limitations and Constraints - Summarize all known or anticipated limitations of the program, if appropriate.

f. Storage - Define program storage requirements in terms of disk or RAM memory allocation.

g. Verification - Describe, as a minimum, a test that can be used by the operator to assure proper program operation. Define the required system configuration, input requirements and criteria for successful test completion.

h. Diagnostics - Describe all program diagnostics, where applicable. Descriptions shall list each error statement, indicate clearly what it means, and specify what appropriate actions should be taken.

i. Malfunction Procedures - Specify procedures to follow for recovering from a malfunction due to either operator error or other sources.

1.11 FINAL SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION

A. All documentation shall be delivered to the Owner prior to final system acceptance in accordance with the Contract Documents. As a minimum, final documentation shall contain all information originally part of the control system submittals.

B. Provide a complete set of detailed electrical interconnection diagrams required to define the complete instrumentation and control system. All diagrams shall be 11 X 17-inch original reproducible prints. All diagrams shall be corrected to describe final "as built" hardware configurations and to reflect the system configuration and control methodology adopted to achieve final system acceptance.

C. Provide system software documentation for the operation and maintenance of all system software programs provided as a part of the digital system. All system software documentation shall be amended as required to delineate all modifications and to accurately reflect the final as built software configurations.

D. Provide application software documentation that contains program descriptions for the operation, modification, and maintenance of all application programs provided for the digital system.

E. Provide control strategy documentation which shall include control strategy (block oriented or ladder logic) diagrams to describe the control of all processes. Control strategy documentation shall reflect the system configuration and control methodology adopted to achieve final system acceptance. Control strategy documentation shall conform to the submittal requirements listed hereinabove.

F. O&M documentation shall be amended with all final, adjusted values for all setpoints and other operating parameters for Owner reference.

G. The Owner recognizes the fact that not all possible problems related to real time events, software interlocks, and hardware maintenance and utilization can be discovered during the Acceptance Tests. Therefore, the instrumentation subcontractor through the Contractor shall investigate, diagnose, repair, update, and distribute all pertaining documentation of the deficiencies that become evident during the warranty period. All such documentation shall be submitted in writing to the Owner within 30 days of identifying and solving the problem.

1.12 PROGRAMS AND SOURCE LISTINGS

A. Provide one copy of all standard, off-the-shelf system and application software (exclusive of firmware resident software) on original media furnished by the software manufacturer.

B. Provide one copy of source listings on digital media, acceptable to Engineer, for all custom software/logic written specifically for this facility, all database files configured for this facility, and all control strategies. All source listings shall include a program abstract, program linkage and input/output data. Comments describing the program flow shall be frequently interspersed throughout each listing.

C. All software/logic shall be in both its native format and in Adobe Portable Document Format.

1.13 SUBMITTAL/DOCUMENTATION FORMAT

A. All drawing-type submittals and documentation shall be rendered and submitted in the latest version of AutoCAD.

B. All textual-type submittals and documentation shall be rendered and submitted in the latest version of Microsoft Word or in searchable Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF). Raster scans will not be accepted.

1.14 ELECTRONIC O&M MANUALS

A. Subject to acceptance by the Engineer, the O&M information may be submitted in part or in whole in an electronic format on digital media.

B. Electronic O&M manuals shall contain information in standard formats (searchable Adobe PDF, Word, AutoCAD, HTML, etc.) and shall be easily accessible using standard, “off-the-shelf” software such as an Internet browser. Raster scans will not be accepted.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 21
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM TESTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall test the Control and Information System as specified herein to demonstrate compliance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 21.71 – Factory Witness Test

C. Section 40 61 21.72 – Field Testing

D. Section 40 61 21.73 – Final Acceptance Test

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. For each of the specified tests, submit a test plan to the Engineer at least one month in advance of commencement of the tests. The test plan shall contain the following at a minimum:

1. A schedule of all testing to be conducted.

2. A brief description of the testing to be performed

3. Test objectives.

4. Testing criteria per the Specifications.

5. Check lists and procedures for performing each of the specified tests.

6. Sample test result documentation.

7. Requirements for other parties.

1.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

11-16-21

A. All system start-up and test activities shall follow detailed test procedures; check lists, etc., previously approved by the Engineer. The Engineer shall be notified at least 21 days in advance of any system tests and reserves the right to have their and/or the Owner's representatives in attendance.

B. The Contractor shall provide the services of experienced factory trained technicians, tools and equipment to field calibrate, test, inspect, and adjust all equipment in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and instructions.

C. The Contractor (or designee) shall maintain master logbooks for each phase of installation, startup and testing activities specified herein. Each logbook shall include signal, loop or control strategy tag number, equipment identification, description and space for sign-off dates, Contractor signature and Engineer signature. Example test documentation specific to each phase of testing shall be approved prior to initiation of that testing, as specified hereinabove.

D. All test data shall be recorded on test forms, previously approved by the Engineer. When each test has been successfully completed, a certified copy of all test results shall be furnished to the Engineer together with a clear and unequivocal statement that all specified test requirements have been met and that the system is operating in accordance with the Contract Documents.

E. The Engineer will review test documentation in accordance with the Contract Documents and will give written notice of the acceptability of the tests within 10 days of receipt of the test results.

F. All testing shall include time for unstructured testing where Owner and Engineer shall have access to the equipment for testing previously undefined normal and abnormal aspects, situations, and functions. Contractor or his/her designee shall provide assistance during this time, including but not limited to documenting the unstructured testing. Owner’s and Engineer’s unstructured testing scenarios may not be available prior to the testing period.

G. If, in the Engineer’s or Owner’s opinion, Contractor is not ready for witness testing and Engineer is present, Contractor shall reimburse Owner for Engineer’s labor to attend the test. Witness testing shall then be rescheduled, with sufficient notice. In the event that Engineer has traveled, even if only to the project-site, for the testing, Engineer’s travel costs shall also be reimbursed. In the event that the Owner has traveled for the testing, Owner’s travel costs shall also be reimbursed.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 21.71
FACTORY WITNESS TEST

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall perform a Factory Witness Test on the Control and Information System as specified herein to demonstrate compliance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 21 – Process Control System Testing

C. Section 40 61 21.72 – Field Testing

D. Section 40 61 21.73 – Final Acceptance Test

1.03 FACTORY WITNESS TEST

A. The Control and Information System equipment shall not be shipped until the Contractor receives notice of acceptability of the factory tests.

B. Each item of equipment shall be fully factory inspected, calibrated and tested for function, operation and continuity of circuits. Exceptions shall be approved in writing by the Engineer.

C. Each subsystem shall be fully factory tested for function and operation.

D. System performance shall be tested using a fully integrated system, including all software and hardware. To achieve this, the entire control system, including all peripheral devices and all interconnecting cables (field instruments are not included in this requirement), shall be assembled on the factory test floor and the complete operational program loaded and simulated inputs applied.

E. All hardware and software required to perform the specified testing shall be furnished by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

F. The instrumentation subcontractor shall perform a 100-hour full system test, during which the entire system shall operate continuously without failure in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. If a system component fails during the test, the 100-hour test period shall be restarted after its operation is restored.

020119

G. The factory testing shall demonstrate all aspects of system sizing and timing including:

1. Monitoring and control scan times at the PLC level.

2. Response times at the operator workstation level.

H. The overall system as well as individual component hardware shall be tested under conditions of power failure to ensure proper response as specified herein.

I. Operator Workstation Operation - This demonstration shall provide proof of system operation on an individual subsystem basis first, and then in the expected operating environment. Both normal and abnormal operating modes shall be demonstrated. Operator workstation testing shall include the following:

1. Demonstrate proper operation, under both normal and abnormal conditions of the operator workstation application software (SCADA, remote alarm dial-up, etc.). This shall include demonstration of system on-line diagnostics, fail-over features, reconfiguration operations, system initialization and restart, software fault tolerance, error detection and recovery, communications, and all additional features necessary to assure the successful operation of the system.

2. Demonstrate the standard features of the system. This shall include proof of operation of the process control database generator, the display generator, data storage and retrieval functions, data acquisition and control, trending functions, and reporting functions.

3. Demonstrate the configuration of the system to verify conformance with the Contract Documents. This shall include graphic displays and vectoring, operator interface functions, trending, reports, alarm management, security system configuration, etc.

4. The system shall be operated with data input/output with the PLCs and associated panels to prove operation of all workstation functions.

5. The testing in Items 2 and 3 above may be performed concurrently (i.e., the standard and configured features of the system may be demonstrated simultaneously).

J. PLC Operation - All functions comparable to those demonstrated for the operator workstations shall be demonstrated on the PLCs. This shall include the following:

1. On-line and off-line diagnostics.

2. For redundant units, fail-over operation and reconfiguration.

3. System initialization and restart.

4. Network communications, including fieldbus communications where required.

5. Non-volatility of memory.

6. Operation of all control logic shall be demonstrated as described herein.

K. Process I/O Simulation - Process input/output simulation for PLCs shall be performed with a manual simulation control panel, a separate programmable logic controller, network-based simulation software, analog signal generators, and/or jumpering of discrete signals between outputs and associated inputs, or some combination of these. Alternate process I/O systems such as plug-in circuit cards or I/O test modules may be utilized subject to approval by the Engineer to provide the specified simulation functions. The simulation system shall provide analog and discrete I/O hardware devices in sufficient quantity to allow complete and thorough testing of the control strategies and functions of the system. The process I/O simulation system shall be used in several ways as follows:

1. To provide a means of communications checkout from the operator workstations through the various levels of software in the PLCs and to the process, i.e., the simulation panel. Likewise, a discrete or analog input shall be initiated from the simulation panel and the result monitored at the workstations.

2. Alarm response to discrete status changes or analog value limits shall be verified. Database entries or attributes such as engineering units and conversion equations shall be verified by varying analog inputs.

3. To provide data for use at all levels of the control system at the time of system integration.

L. Control Strategy Testing - Provision shall be made to test all control strategies to prove the integrity of each strategy and the process control language in which it is implemented. For each control strategy, all functions shall be tested individually (where possible) and collectively to verify that the control strategy performs as described herein and as required for overall functionality within the control system.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 21.72
FIELD TESTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall perform field testing on the Control and Information System as specified herein to demonstrate compliance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 21 – Process Control System Testing

C. Section 40 61 21.71 – Factory Witness Test

D. Section 40 61 21.73 – Final Acceptance Test

E. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

1.03 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Control system start-up and testing shall be performed to ensure that all plant processes shall be systematically and safely placed under digital control in the following order:

1. Primary elements such as transmitters and switch devices shall be calibrated and tested as specified in Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

2. Each final control element shall be individually tested as specified hereinafter.

3. Each control loop shall be tested as specified hereinafter.

4. Each control strategy shall be tested under automatic digital control as specified hereinafter.

5. The entire control system shall be tested for overall monitoring, control, communication, and information management functions, and demonstrated for system availability as specified hereinafter.

B. System start-up and test activities shall include the use of water, if necessary, to establish service conditions that simulate, to the greatest extent possible, normal operating conditions in terms of applied process loads, operating ranges and environmental conditions.

020119

C. Each phase of testing shall be fully and successfully completed and all associated documentation submitted and approved prior to the next phase being started. Specific exceptions are allowed if written approval has been obtained in advance from the Engineer.

1.04 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Contractor shall ensure that all mechanical equipment, equipment control panels, local control panels, field instrumentation, control system equipment and related equipment and/or systems are tested for proper installation, adjusted and calibrated on a loop-by-loop basis prior to control system startup to verify that each is ready to function as specified. Each test shall be witnessed, dated and signed off by both the Contractor (or designee) and the Engineer upon satisfactory completion.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination of meetings with all affected trades. A meeting shall be held each morning to review the day's test schedule with all affected trades. Similarly, a meeting shall be held each evening to review the day's test results and to review or revise the next day's test schedule as appropriate.

C. The Contractor shall ensure that the electrical subcontractor conforms to the start-up, test and sign-off procedures specified herein to assure proper function and coordination of all motor control center control and interlock circuitry and the transmission of all discrete and/or analog signals between equipment furnished by the electrical subcontractor and the control system specified herein.

D. The Contractor shall ensure that the HVAC subcontractor conforms to the start-up, test and sign-off procedures specified herein to assure proper function of all HVAC system control and interlock circuitry and the transmission of all discrete and/or analog signals between HVAC equipment and controls and the control system specified herein.

1.05 FINAL CONTROL ELEMENT TESTING

A. The proper control of all final control elements shall be verified by tests conducted in accordance with the requirements specified herein.

B. All modulating final control elements shall be tested for appropriate speed or position response by applying power and input demand signals, and observing the equipment for proper direction and level of reaction. Each final control element shall be tested at 0, 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of signal input level and the results checked against specified accuracy tolerances. Final control elements, such as VFDs, that require turndown limits shall be initially set during this test.

C. All non-modulating final control elements shall be tested for appropriate position response by applying and simulating control signals, and observing the equipment for proper reaction.

1.06 LOOP CHECKOUT

A. Prior to control system startup and testing, each monitoring and control loop shall be tested on an individual basis from the primary element to the final element, including the operator workstation or loop controller level, for continuity and for proper operation and calibration.

B. Signals from transducers, sensors, and transmitters shall be utilized to verify control responses. Simulated input data signals may be used subject to prior written approval by the Engineer. All modes of control shall be exercised and checked for proper operation.

C. The accuracy of all DACs shall be verified by manually entering engineering unit data values at the operator workstation and then reading and recording the resulting analog output data.

D. The accuracy of all ADCs shall be verified using field inputs or by manually applying input signals at the final controller, and then reading and recording the resulting analog input data at the operator workstation.

E. Each loop tested shall be witnessed, dated and signed off by both the Contractor (or designee) and the Engineer upon satisfactory completion.

1.07 CONTROL SYSTEM STARTUP AND TESTING

A. Control system startup and testing shall be performed to demonstrate complete compliance with all specified functional and operational requirements. Testing activities shall include the simulation of both normal and abnormal operating conditions.

B. All digital hardware shall be fully inspected and tested for function, operation and continuity of circuits. All diagnostic programs shall be run to verify the proper operation of all digital equipment.

C. Final control elements and ancillary equipment shall be tested under start-up and steady-state operating conditions to verify that proper and stable control is achieved using local area control panels, motor control center circuits, and local field mounted control circuits. All hardwired control circuit interlocks and alarms shall be operational. The control to final control elements and ancillary equipment shall be tested using both manual and automatic (where provided) control circuits.

D. Signals from transducers, sensors, and transmitters shall be utilized to verify control responses for final control elements. Simulated input data signals may be used subject to prior written approval by the Engineer.

E. Each control strategy shall be tested to verify the proper operation of all required functions. The control system start-up and test activities shall include procedures for

tuning all control loops incorporating PID control modules, and for adjusting and testing all control loops as required to verify specified performance.

F. The control system start-up and test activities shall include running tests to prove that the Instrumentation, Control and Information System is capable of continuously, safely and reliably regulating processes, as required by the Contract, under service conditions that simulate, to the greatest extent possible, normal plant operating ranges and environmental conditions.

G. A witnessed functional acceptance test shall be performed to demonstrate satisfactory performance of individual monitoring and control loops and control strategies. At least one test shall be performed to verify that the control and instrumentation system is capable of simultaneously implementing all specified operations.

H. Each loop and control strategy test shall be witnessed and signed off by both the Contractor (or designee) and the Engineer upon satisfactory completion.

1.08 FACILITY STARTUP COORDINATION

A. Facility start-up shall comply with requirements specified in the Contract Documents and those requirements specified herein. Facility start-up shall commence after all previously described start-up and test activities have been successfully completed and shall demonstrate that the Instrumentation, Control and Information System can meet all Contract requirements with equipment operating over full operating ranges under actual operating conditions.

B. The control system start-up period shall be coordinated with process startup activities and shall be extended as required until all plant processes are fully operational and to satisfy the Engineer that all control system Contract requirements have been fulfilled in accordance with the Contract Documents.

C. The instrumentation subcontractor's personnel shall be resident at the facility to provide both full time (eight hours/day, five days/week) and 24 hours on call (seven days/week) support of operating and maintenance activities for the duration of the start-up period.

D. At least one qualified control systems technician shall be provided for control system startup and test activities and at least two when loop checkout is being performed.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 21.73
FINAL ACCEPTANCE TEST

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall perform the Final Acceptance Test on the Control and Information System as specified herein to demonstrate compliance with the Contract Documents.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 21 – Process Control System Testing

C. Section 40 61 21.71 – Factory Witness Test

D. Section 40 61 21.72 – Field Testing

1.03 AVAILABILITY DEMONSTRATION AND FINAL SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE

A. Upon completion of all control system startup activities and prior to final system acceptance, the Contractor shall demonstrate that the availability of the entire control system, including operation under conditions of digital equipment fail-over, initiated either automatically or manually, shall be not less than 99.8 percent during a 30-day availability test period. The Owner shall be given two (2) weeks' notice of the starting date of the 30-day availability test.

B. For purposes of determining availability figures, downtime of each system or portions of each system resulting from the causes specified hereunder will not be considered system failures.

1. Downtime of any network-connected device that is automatically backed-up upon failure shall not be considered a system failure provided that the downtime of the failed component does not exceed 24 hours.

2. Downtime of a PLC that is not automatically backed-up shall be considered a system failure if the downtime of the failed controller exceeds one (1) hour.

3. Downtime of a portion of the system resulting from failure of any field sensor shall not be considered a system failure provided that the system operates as specified under this condition.

020119

4. Downtime of the following devices shall not be considered a system failure provided the failed device is repaired within the specified time:

    a. Hard disc (one day)

    b. Workstations (one day)

    c. Communication interfaces (eight hours)

    d. Printer (three days)

    e. Process control system networks (eight hours)

    f. Off-line (optical, etc.) storage units (one day)

    g. UPS unit (one day)

5. Total shutdown of a single PLC resulting from a software fault shall be considered a system failure.

6. An erroneous command to the process that can be specifically related to a software fault shall be considered as one (1) hour of downtime.

7. The inoperability of any subsystem resulting from a software fault shall be considered a system failure.

8. The failure of the same component more than one time during the 30-day test shall be considered a system failure.

C. If the system fails the 30-day availability test, the 30-day test period shall be restarted after the failed component or software is repaired/replaced and full operation is restored. The system shall be demonstrated for the full 30-day period following the restart.

D. The Contractor shall submit an availability demonstration report that shall state that all system availability requirements have been met.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 22

TOOLS, SUPPLIES, AND SPARE PARTS, GENERAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall provide tools, supplies, and spare parts as specified herein for the operation and maintenance of the Control and Information System.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 TOOLS

A. Furnish special tools, other than those normally found in an electronic technician's tool box, required to test, diagnose, calibrate, install, wire, connect, disconnect, assemble and disassemble any digital equipment, instrument, panel, rack, cabinet or console mounted equipment for service and maintenance. This shall include, but not be limited to, the following: connector pin insertion and removal tools, wire crimping tools, special wrenches, special instrument calibrators, indicator lamp insertion and removal tools, etc.

B. Furnish tools and test equipment together with items such as instruction manuals, carrying/storage cases, unit battery charger where applicable, special tools, calibration fixtures, cord extenders, patch cords and test leads, which are not specified but are necessary for checking field operation of equipment supplied under this Division.

C. Furnish one portable graphical multimeter with rechargeable battery, test leads, industrial lead set, and carrying case, Fluke Model 289, Simpson, or equal.

D. Furnish one portable 4-20 mA, 24 VDC analog loop signal generator for calibration and testing of analog signal loops. Generator shall be furnished with rechargeable battery pack, test leads, spare battery pack, charger, carrying case and accessories. Signal generator shall be Fluke 787 ProcessMeter, or equal.

E. Furnish one portable calibrator capable of measuring DC volts, mV, mA, ohms, frequency, T/C, peak detect and trip detect on its input and simultaneously generate on its output all of the preceding signals plus twowire simulation, ramp functions, up/down stepping and 10 point programmability. The calibrator shall be furnished complete with 24 VDC integral battery pack, spare battery pack, test leads, external charger, fuse pack, carrying case and appurtenances. It shall be possible to store and use automatic instrument calibration procedures that are downloaded from Windows-based instrument

04/29/202

management software. Calibrator shall be Fluke 789 ProcessMeter, Ametek CL-9000, or equal.

F. Furnish one complete computer technician kit in an organized soft-sided case. The kit shall be Model JTK-49CBR Workstation Kit by Jensen Tools & Supply or a computer technician kit of equivalent equipment and value.

2.02 SUPPLIES

A. The Contractor shall provide supplies as specifically required in other Sections of Division 40.

2.03 SPARE PARTS

A. Furnish spare parts for items of control and instrumentation equipment as recommended by the manufacturer and in accordance with the Contract Documents.

B. Furnish all spares in moisture-proof boxes designed to provide ample protection for their contents. Label all boxes to clearly identify contents and purpose.

C. The Contractor shall replace all spare parts consumed during installation, testing, start-up, the system availability demonstration, and the guarantee period.

D. Refer to individual digital hardware and instrument sections for additional requirements specific to those devices.

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 23
SIGNAL COORDINATION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall conform to the signal coordination requirements specified herein.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating signal types and transmission requirements between the various parties providing equipment under this Contract. This shall include, but not be limited to, distribution of appropriate shop drawings among the equipment suppliers, the electrical subcontractor, the HVAC subcontractor, and the instrumentation subcontractor.

C. Analog signals shall be signals for transmitting process variables, etc. from instruments and to and from panels, equipment PLCs and Control System PLCs.

D. Discrete signals shall consist of contact closures or powered signals for transmitting status/alarm information and control commands between starters, panels, equipment PLCs, the Control System, etc.

1.02 ANALOG SIGNAL TRANSMISSION

A. Signal transmission between electric or electronic instruments, controllers, and all equipment and control devices shall be individually isolated, linear 4-20 milliamperes and shall operate at 24 VDC.

B. Signal output from all transmitters and controllers shall be current regulated and shall not be affected by changes in load resistance within the unit's rating.

C. All cable shields shall be grounded at one end only, at the control panel, with terminals bonded to the panel ground bus.

D. Analog signal isolation and/or conversion shall be provided where necessary to interface with instrumentation, equipment controls, panels, and appurtenances.

E. Non-standard transmission systems such as pulse duration, pulse rate, and voltage regulated shall not be permitted except where specifically noted in the Contract Documents. Where transmitters with nonstandard outputs do occur, their outputs hall be converted to an isolated, linear, 4-20 milliampere signal.

F. The Contractor shall provide 24 V power supplies for analog signals and instruments where applicable and as required inside panels, controls, etc.

031819

G. Where two-wire instruments transmit directly to the Control and Information System, the instrumentation subcontractor shall provide power supplies at the PLC-equipped control panels for those instruments.

H. Where four-wire instruments with on-board loop power supplies transmit directly to the Control and Information System, the instrumentation subcontractor shall provide necessary signal isolators or shall otherwise isolate the input from the Control and Information System loop power supply. Similar provisions shall be made when a third element such as a recorder, indicator, or single loop controller with integral loop power supply is included in the loop.

1.03 DISCRETE INPUTS

A. All discrete inputs to equipment and Control and Information System PLCs, from field devices, starters, panels, etc., shall be unpowered (dry) contacts in the field device or equipment, powered from the PLCs, unless specified otherwise.

B. Sensing power (wetting voltage) supplied by the PLC shall be 120 VAC.

1.04 DISCRETE OUTPUTS

A. All discrete outputs from local control panels and Control and Information System PLCs to field devices, starters, panels, etc., shall be 120 VAC powered (sourced) from PLC's dry contact relay outputs.

B. PLC powered discrete outputs shall energize 120VAC pilot relay coils in the field devices, starters, panels, etc. which in turn open or close contacts in the associated control circuit. The 120 VAC relay coil, contacts, and associated control circuitry shall be furnished integral with the field device, starter, panel, etc. by the supplier and contractor furnishing the field device, starter, or panel.

C. Where required or specified herein, discrete outputs from equipment and Control and Information System PLC's to field devices, starters, panels, motor operated valves, etc., shall be dry contact or relay outputs.

D. Outputs to solenoid valves shall be 120 VAC, powered from the PLC or control panel unless specified or shown otherwise.

1.05 OTHER DISCRETE SIGNALS

A. Where applicable, warning signs shall be affixed inside the starter, panel, etc. stating that the panel is energized from multiple sources.

B. Output contacts in the starter, panel, etc., that are powered from other locations shall be provided with special tags and/or color-coding. Disconnecting terminal strips shall be provided for such contacts.

C. The above requirements shall apply to all starters and panels, regardless of supplier.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 26
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM TRAINING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. To familiarize the Owner's personnel with the process control system and field instrumentation, training shall be provided as detailed hereunder.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. A minimum of 60 days prior to beginning training, submit a detailed training plan describing the following:

1. A listing of all courses to be conducted.

2. Course content.

3. Applicability of each course to management, operations, maintenance, laboratory, etc., personnel.

4. Course schedules.

5. Qualifications and experience of individual(s) providing training.

B. A minimum of 14 days prior to beginning each training course, submit documentation for use by the Owner's personnel during training. The training documentation shall be specific to the particular course, and shall include the following:

1. A listing of all subjects to be covered.

2. Course schedule.

3. Documentation/lesson plans covering all subjects to be covered during the course instruction. Information shall be in a "how to" format, with sufficient background documentation and references to manufacturer literature to provide a thorough and clear understanding of the materials to be covered.

1.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All costs of providing the training courses shall be borne by the Contractor.

B. As used herein, the term "day" shall mean an eight-hour day, and the term "week" shall mean a five-day, 40-hour week.

C. Training courses, especially those for operator training, may be required to be scheduled during non-standard business hours (i.e., not between the hours of 8:00 am and 5:00 pm) to accommodate the working schedule of the Owner’s personnel. No additional compensation will be awarded to the Contractor for training at non-standard hours.

D. All training courses shall complement the experience and skill levels of the Owner's personnel.

E. Training courses shall be structured in order of increasing capability or security levels. The purpose of this requirement is to allow personnel with lesser training requirements or security password levels to drop out of the training at certain times while the training continues for personnel with greater requirements or higher security levels.

F. All training courses shall include lecture as well as "hands on" experience for each of the attending personnel. The Contractor shall provide sufficient equipment for this to be accomplished. For example, training in which the instructor uses the computer and the Owner's personnel passively observe as the instructor demonstrates system functions shall not be acceptable.

G. Unless otherwise specified, all training courses shall be conducted in the Owner's facilities.

H. All training shall be completed prior to system acceptance.

I. Standard manufacturer training courses are acceptable pending approval by the Engineer and Owner.

1.05 OPERATOR TRAINING

A. A half-day course comprised sessions for up to ten people each shall be conducted to provide instruction in the use of the Control and Information System to monitor and control the facility.

B. Operator training shall include familiarization training covering the Control and Information System. Operators shall be instructed in the names, locations, functions, and basic operation of all items of digital equipment and associated software.

C. Operator training shall cover process and equipment operation both individually and collectively as an operating system. Normal as well as abnormal operating conditions shall be covered, including the response to failure occurrences and system alarms. All operator/system interactions shall be described.

D. Operators shall be trained to instruct other operators and shall be provided with all course materials.

1.06 MAINTENANCE TRAINING

A. A half-day course shall be conducted for at least six persons prior to the startup of digital equipment at the Owner's plant. Instruction shall be provided in the following:

1. Operating all digital equipment, including system start-up and shutdown procedures.

2. The use of hardware diagnostic routines, test equipment and test procedures as required to enable the Owner's personnel to detect and isolate system faults to the circuit board or module level and to implement repairs by replacing failed circuit boards or modules.

3. Calibration and routine maintenance procedures for all analog and digital equipment.

B. Step by step written procedures shall be provided for all preventive maintenance tasks and for identifying hardware faults to the circuit board or module level for all items of digital equipment.

C. All digital equipment preventive and corrective maintenance training activities shall be limited to the use of commercially available off-the-shelf test equipment and to the use of diagnostic routines and hardware items which are the same as those to be provided as part of the system.

1.07 INSTRUMENT TRAINING

A. A half-day course shall be provided at the Owner's facilities no more than three months prior to system start-up to instruct a minimum of five persons each in the calibration and preventive maintenance of the field instruments provided under this Contract.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 90
SCHEDULES AND CONTROL DESCRIPTIONS, GENERAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all hardware and software required to provide the Control and Information System as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 91 – Process Control System Instrument List

B. Section 40 61 93 – Process Control System Input/Output List

C. Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions

PART 2 – CONVENTIONS

2.01 PLANT NUMBERING SYSTEM

A. The plant equipment numbering system is based on a 5-digit code preceded by an equipment identification prefix and followed by a parallel designation suffix. The numbering system is broken down as follows:

$XXXX^1$ – X^2 X^3 XXX^4 $XXXX^5$

Where $XXXX^1$ =	Where X^2 =	Where X^3 =	Where XXX^4 =	Where $XXXX^5$ =
Equipment Prefix (1)	Major Process of Area (2)	Sub-Process (3)	Individual Equipment Item Number (4)	Parallel Designation Suffix (5)

1. Prefix letters are added as required to label a piece of equipment or describe instrumentation/control signal types. Instrumentation prefixes shall use the convention shown in the following table.

021619

Instrument Prefix Letters

First Letter			Succeeding Letters		
Letter	**Measured or Initiating Variable**	**Modifier**	**Readout or Passive Function**	**Output Function**	**Modifier**
A	Analysis		Alarm or plc/dcs discrete alarm input		
B	Burner, combustion		User's choice	User's choice	User's choice
C	Conductivity (electrical)			Control or plc/dcs analog output	
D	Density (mass) or specific gravity	Differential			
E	Voltage (emf)		Primary element		
F	Flow	Ratio (fraction)			
G	User's choice		Glass or viewing device		
H	Hand (manually initiated)				High
I	Current (electrical)		Indicate or plc/dcs analog input		
J	Power	Scan			
K	Time or time schedule	Time rate of change		Control station	
L	Level		Light (pilot)		Low
M	Moisture or humidity	Momentary			Middle or intermediate
N	User's choice		Notify or plc/dcs discrete status input	User's choice	User's choice
O	User's choice		Orifice (restriction)		
P	Pressure or vacuum		Point (test connection)		
Q	Quantity	Integrate or totalize	Integrate or totalize		
R	Radiation		Record or print		
S	Speed or frequency	Safety		Switch	
T	Temperature			Transmit	
U	Multivariable		Multifunction	Multifunction	Multifunction
V	Vibration or mechanical analysis			Valve, damper or louver	
W	Weight or force		Well		
X	Unclassified	X axis	Unclassified	Unclassified or plc/dcs discrete output	Unclassified
Y	Event, state or presence	Y axis		Relay, compute, or convert	
Z	Position, dimension	Z axis		Drive, actuator or unclassified final control element	

2. The parallel designation suffix shall be used to differentiate items of similar function and service that would otherwise have the same number. The suffix shall use the following conventions depending on application:

   a. {none}

   b. A, B, C,...

   c. A1, A2, A3,...B1, B2, B3,...C1, C2, C3,...

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 61 91
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM INSTRUMENT LIST

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all instrumentation as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 90 – Schedules and Control Descriptions, General

B. Section 40 61 93 – Process Control System Input/Output List

C. Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 NAMEPLATES

A. Items of equipment listed in the instrument schedule, control panels, and digital hardware items shall be identified with nameplates. Each nameplate shall be located so that it is readable from the normal observation position and is clearly associated with the device or devices it identifies. Nameplates shall be positioned so that removal of the device for maintenance and repair shall not disturb the nameplate. Nameplates shall include, as necessary, the equipment identification number, description, calibrated range, and set point(s). Abbreviations of the description shall be subject to the Engineer's approval.

B. Nameplates shall be made of 1/16-inch thick machine engraved laminated phenolic plastic having white numbers and letters not less than 3/16-inch high on a black background. Nameplates attached to instruments may be black laser etched 1/8-inch high text on stainless steel with sharp edges made smooth. Stamped text shall not be acceptable.

C. Nameplates shall be attached to metal equipment by NEMA rated stainless steel screws and to other surfaces by an epoxy-based adhesive that is resistant to oil and moisture. In cases where the label cannot be attached by the above methods, it shall be drilled and attached to the associated device by means of a braided stainless steel wire affixed with a permanent crimp.

121218

D. Submit sample nameplate of each type.

PART 3 – INSTRUMENT SCHEDULE

See 40 61 91A for Instrument Schedule

END OF SECTION

Inline Magnetic Flow Meters-Specification 40 71 13.13

Tag Number	Service Description	Range	Setpoint	Drawing	Remarks
FE-1000	PUMP STATION MAGNETIC FLOW METER			I100	
FIT-1000	PUMP STATION MAGNETIC FLOW METER			I100	

Level Switches (Floats)-Specification 40 72 76.26

Tag Number	Service Description	Range	Setpoint	Drawing	Remarks
LSH-1000	FLOW METER VAULT FLOOD LEVEL SWITCH			I100	

Pressure Transmitters-Specification 40 73 20

Tag Number	Service Description	Range	Setpoint	Drawing	Remarks
PIT-1001A	BOOSTER PUMP 1 SUCTION PRESSURE TRANSMITTER			I100	
PIT-1001B	BOOSTER PUMP 1 DISCHARGE PRESSURE TRANSMITTER			I100	
PIT-1002A	BOOSTER PUMP 2 SUCTION PRESSURE TRASNMITTER			I100	
PIT-1002B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE PRESSURE TRANSMITTER			I100	
PIT-1003A	BOOSTER PUMP 3 SUCTION PRESSURE TRANSMITTER			I100	
PIT-1003B	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE PRESSURE TRANSMITTER			I100	

Pressure and Differential Pressure Switches-Specification 40 73 36

Tag Number	Service Description	Range	Setpoint	Drawing	Remarks
PSH-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1 HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	
PSL-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1 LOW SUCTION PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	
PSH-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2 HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	
PSL-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2 LOW SUCTION PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	
PSH-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3 HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	
PSL-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3 LOW SUCTION PRESSURE SWITCH			I100	

SECTION 40 61 93
PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM INPUT / OUTPUT LIST

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all control system inputs and outputs as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 90 – Schedules and Control Descriptions, General

B. Section 40 61 91 – Process Control System Instrument List

C. Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions

PART 2 – CONTROL SYSTEM INPUT / OUTPUT SCHEDULE

See 40 61 93A for Input/Output Schedule

1. NOTES: Input/Output types are as follows:
    a. DI – Discrete Input
    b. DO – Discrete Output
    c. AI – Analog Input
    d. AO – Analog Output
    e. RS485 – Serial Communications Link

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

020119

PLC-1000 INPUT/OUTPUT LIST						
Tag Number	**Service Description**	**Function**	**TYPE**	**Drawing**	**PLC**	**Remarks**
LAH-1000	FLOW METER VAULT FLOOD FLOAT LEVEL	FLOW METER VAULT HIGH LEVEL	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1000A	GENERATOR	FAIL	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YN-1000	GENERATOR	RUNNING	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1000B	HVAC-1000	ALARM	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1000B	MAN DOOR CONTACT	MAN DOOR INTRUSION ALARM	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1000C	MAN DOOR CONTACT	MAN DOOR INTRUSION ALARM	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
LI-1000	ROCK HILL CHURCH TANK LEVEL	ROCK HILL CHURCH TANK LEVEL	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1000A	ROLL UP DOOR CONTACT	ROLL UP DOOR INTRUSION ALARM	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
ZS-1000	TRANSFER SWITCH	TRANSFER SWITCH POSITION	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
SIK-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1	SPEED CONTROL	AO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1001B	BOOSTER PUMP 1	E-STOP	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1001E	BOOSTER PUMP 1	HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1001A	BOOSTER PUMP 1	HIGH MOTOR TEMP.	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1001C	BOOSTER PUMP 1	HIGH MOTOR VIBRATION	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1001A	BOOSTER PUMP 1	IN REMOTE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YN-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1	RUNNING	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
SI-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1	SPEED	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 1	START/STOP	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1001D	BOOSTER PUMP 1	VFD FAULT	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1001B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSC-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1001B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	IN REMOTE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1001A	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPEN	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSO-1001	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPENED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1001B	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DISCHARGE PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1001A	BOOSTER PUMP 3 SUCTION PRESSURE	SUCTION PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
FI-1001	PUMP STATION MAGNETIC FLOW METER	FLOW	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
SIK-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2	SPEED CONTROL	AO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1002B	BOOSTER PUMP 2	E-STOP	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1002E	BOOSTER PUMP 2	HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1002A	BOOSTER PUMP 2	HIGH MOTOR TEMP.	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1002C	BOOSTER PUMP 2	HIGH MOTOR VIBRATION	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1002A	BOOSTER PUMP 2	IN REMOTE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YN-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2	RUNNING	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
SI-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2	SPEED	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2	START/STOP	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1002D	BOOSTER PUMP 2	VFD FAULT	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1002B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DISCHARGE PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1002B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSC-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1002B	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	IN REMOTE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1002A	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPEN	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSO-1002	BOOSTER PUMP 2 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPENED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1002A	BOOSTER PUMP 2 SUCTION PRESSURE	SUCTION PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1003B	BOOSTER PUMP 1 DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DISCHARGE PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
PI-1003A	BOOSTER PUMP 1 SUCTION PRESSURE	SUCTION PRESSURE	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
SIK-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3	SPEED CONTROL	AO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1003B	BOOSTER PUMP 3	E-STOP	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1003E	BOOSTER PUMP 3	HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1003A	BOOSTER PUMP 3	HIGH MOTOR TEMP.	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1003C	BOOSTER PUMP 3	HIGH MOTOR VIBRATION	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1003A	BOOSTER PUMP 3	IN REMOTE	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
YN-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3	RUNNING	DI	I100	PLC-1000	

PLC-1000 INPUT/OUTPUT LIST						
Tag Number	**Service Description**	**Function**	**TYPE**	**Drawing**	**PLC**	**Remarks**
SI-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3	SPEED	AI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3	START/STOP	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
YA-1003D	BOOSTER PUMP 3	VFD FAULT	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1003C	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSC-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE VALVE	CLOSED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	
HSI-1003B	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE VALVE	IN REMOTE	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
HS-1003A	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPEN	DO	I100	PLC-1000	
ZSO-1003	BOOSTER PUMP 3 DISCHARGE VALVE	OPENED	DI	I100	PLC-1000	

SECTION 40 61 96
PROCESS CONTROL DESCRIPTIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all equipment as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR FURNISHING COMPLETE FUNCTIONING SYSTEMS AS DESCRIBED HEREIN.

B. Together with the control system input/output schedule, the equipment specifications (including functional descriptions for local equipment control panels), and the Drawings, the functional control descriptions describe the required operation, monitoring, and control of the facilities included in this Contract.

C. THE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTIONS CONTAIN REQUIREMENTS FOR FURNISHING AND INSTALLING LABOR AND MATERIALS THAT MAY NOT APPEAR ELSEWHERE IN THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

D. All equipment and services required in equipment local control panels provided to implement the monitoring and control functions described herein or in the process input/output schedules shall be provided by the Contractor through individual equipment suppliers.

E. Unless specifically stated otherwise, all interconnected wiring between all instruments, panels, controls, and other devices listed in the functional descriptions as required to provide all functions specified herein shall be furnished by the electrical subcontractor under Division 26. The electrical subcontractor shall provide all cable and conduit required to carry all signals listed in the process input/output schedules. Special cables that are required for interconnection between sensors or probes and transmitters or signal conditioners shall be furnished with the instrumentation devices by the equipment supplier.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 01 14 00 – Coordination with Owner’s Operations

B. Section 40 61 90 – Schedules and Control Descriptions, General

C. Section 40 61 91 – Process Control System Instrument List

D. Section 40 61 93 – Process Control System Input/Output List

PART 2 – FUNCTIONAL CONTROL DESCRIPTIONS, GENERAL

2.01 DEFINITIONS

A. RUNNING status signals shall be from auxiliary contacts provided with the motor control equipment (i.e., starter, VFD, SCR, etc.).

B. AUTO status signals shall be defined as HAND-OFF-AUTO switch in the AUTO position or process control system in AUTO (versus MANUAL).

C. FAIL status signals shall be defined as motor overload and/or any other shut down mode such as overtorque, overtemperature, low oil pressure, high vibration, etc.

D. READY status signal shall be defined as all conditions, including equipment control power, satisfied to permit remote control of the equipment.

E. Operator workstation graphic display symbols and indicator lights on all MCC's, control panels, starter enclosures, etc. shall conform to the following color convention:

1. Running/On/Open: Red

2. Auto/Ready: White

3. Stopped/Off/Closed: Green

4. Fail/Alarm: Amber

5. Generic Status: White

2.02 PROCESS CONTROL

A. Where setpoints, operating limits, and other control settings are provided by the functional descriptions, these settings shall be initial settings only and shall be used for assistance in the initial startup of the plant. All such settings shall be fully adjustable and, based on actual operating conditions, the instrumentation subcontractor shall make all necessary adjustments to provide smooth, stable operation at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Provision shall be made in PLC logic to suppress nuisance alarms and control actions by the following means:

1. For alarms and control actions derived from analog input signals, use adjustable time delays and deadbands.

2. For alarms and control actions derived from discrete input signals, use adjustable time delays.

3. Initial settings for time delays shall be 10 seconds (range 0-120 seconds). Initial settings for deadbands shall be 5% of span (range 0-100%).

4. Equipment that is started or stopped manually by the operator shall start or stop immediately, with no time delay.

C. All setpoint control shall be by PID control algorithms. Where only proportional control is specified, tuning constants shall be used to reduce the Integral and Derivative functions to zero. All setpoints, sequence times, sequence orders, dead bands, PID tuning parameters, PLC delay timers, variable speed operating range limits, and similar control constants shall be accessible and alterable from the operator workstations.

D. Unless otherwise specified, all equipment shall automatically restart after a power failure utilizing adjustable start delay timers in PLC control logic. Unless otherwise specified, all PLC control strategies shall be based upon automatic restart after a power failure and shall return to a normal control mode upon restoration of power.

E. The PLC shall be capable of receiving initial run-time values for existing and proposed equipment. Initial run-time shall not automatically be assumed to be zero.

F. A control discrepancy alarm shall be generated through the PLC for any drive, motor, etc. for which a command has been issued, but for which the PLC is not receiving a confirming status signal (e.g., start command with no run feedback). The failure shall be logged.

G. An instrument failure alarm shall be generated for any instrument which is generating a signal that is less than 4 mA or greater than 20 mA.

H. Unless otherwise specified in an individual control description, an instrument failure or control discrepancy alarm shall cause the control strategy to maintain last values and to generate an alarm. Manual initiation of the automatic control strategy shall be required.

I. A control program that controls multiple pieces of equipment shall not be prevented from running because not all of the equipment is in AUTO. If equipment within an equipment chain is required to be running for program operation and it is running in HAND or MANUAL, then the program shall run and control the other equipment that is in AUTO.

J. All PLC wait states (internal time delays, etc.) after an operator action shall be displayed on the operator workstation.

PART 3 – FUNCTIONAL CONTROL DESCRIPTIONS

3.01 PUMP STATION

A. Reference Documents

1. Process & Instrumentation Diagrams (P&IDs)

a. I100

B. Process Overview

1. The Poplar Tent Water Pump Station houses three (3) Booster Pumps to boost water from the 850 pressure zone to the 890 pressure zone.

2. Primary control of Booster Pump activity will be based on the water level in the US 29 Tank in the 890 pressure zone. However, Booster Pump operations will be limited if the Rock Hill Church Tank, in the 850 pressure zone, is low.

3. The Booster Pumps will be equipped with variable frequency drives for speed control in order to control flow rate.

4. Each of the two large Booster Pumps will be able to provide full pump station design capacity, with one acting as standby for the other. The small Booster Pump will provide low flow capability when the Owner desires to minimize flow from the pump station. No more than one pump will be operated at a time in the pump station.

5. Three (3) motorized actuated butterfly valves will be provided for pump isolation.

C. Equipment and Field Instruments

1. Equipment

Quantity	Equipment	Tag(s)
Three (3)	Booster Pumps 1, 2, and 3 with Variable Frequency Drives	PMP-1001, PMP-1002, and PMP-1003
Three (3)	Motorized Actuated Butterfly Valves	MOV-1001, MOV-1002, MOV-1003

2. Field Instruments

Quantity	Instrument	Tag(s)
Three (3)	Pump Suction Pressure Indicating Transmitter	PIT-1001A, PIT-1002A, and PIT-1003A
Three (3)	Pump Discharge Pressure Indicating Transmitter	PIT-1001B, PIT-1002B, PIT-1003B
Three (3)	Pump Suction Pressure Switch Low	PSL-1001, PSL-1002, PSL-1003
Three (3)	Pump Discharge Pressure Switch High	PSH-1001, PSH-1002, PSH-1003

One (1)	Station Flow Electromagnetic Flow Meter	FE/FIT-1000
Three (3)	High Booster Pump Motor Temperature Switches	TSH-1001, TSH-1002, and TSH-1003
Three (3)	High Booster Pump Vibration Switches	VSH-1001, VSH-1002, and VSH-1003
Three (3)	Balanced Magnetic Switch on Doors	HS-1000A, HS-1000B, HS-1000C

D. Control Modes

1. Local Manuel
2. SCADA Manuel
3. SCADA Auto

E. Control Strategy

1. Booster Pumps

a. Local Manual

1) Local control is from the HAND-OFF-AUTO (HOA) selector switch on the VFD.

2) When the H-O-A switch is in the “OFF” position, the pump shall not be allowed to run from any location.

3) When the H-O-A switch is in the “HAND” position, the pump shall operate by the “START” and “STOP” push buttons located on VFD. The pump speed shall be controlled locally by the VFD keypad controller.

4) When the H-O-A switch is in the “AUTO” position, the pump shall receive start, stop, and speed signals from SCADA.

b. SCADA Manual

1) In SCADA Manuel, the Operator shall start, stop, and control pump speed from the SCADA HMI or local OIT.

2) Pump Startup Sequence will proceed according to the following sequence:

a) Pump and associated discharge valves are in Automatic.

b) Pump off, valve closed.

c) Operator calls for pump start.

d) Pump starts and ramps up to an adjustable minimum speed using the pump's VFD.

e) After an adjustable time delay, the discharge valve begins to open.

f) Should the valve fail to fully open, a Pump Discharge Failure alarm will be generated, the pump run command will be terminated and the pump stop command will be issued.

g) After the discharge valve is fully open, the pump speed will increase to the established set point.

3) Pump Shutdown Sequence will proceed according to the following sequence:

a) Pump and associated discharge valve are Automatic

b) Pump running, valve open.

c) Operator calls for pump stop.

d) Pump speed will decrease to an adjustable minimum speed using the pump's VFD.

e) Discharge valve begins to close.

f) When discharge valve reaches the closed position, the pump stop command will be issued.

c. SCADA Auto

1) In SCADA auto, the Booster Pumps shall start, stop, and have speed controlled based of the Highway 29 tank level. The Rock Hill Church Tank level will shut off pumps if the level becomes too low. Start and stop sequences will be the same as section 3.01-E-1-b-2/3 but will remove the operator need to call for a pump start/stop. Instead, SCADA shall dictate the pump start/stop.

Highway 29 Tank Level	**Action**	**Tags**

40 feet (100% full)	Stop pump	PMP-1001, PMP-1002, PMP-1003
35 feet (87.5% full)	Pump at minimum speed	PMP-1001, PMP-1002, PMP-1003
30 feet (75% full)	Pump at full speed	PMP-1001, PMP-1002, PMP-1003
Rock Hill Church Tank Level	**Action**	**Tags**
15 feet (37.5% full)	Stop All Booster Pumps	PMP-1001, PMP-1002, PMP-1003

2) Tank level set points in the table above shall be operator adjustable.

3) The pump speed shall vary linearly between the minimum and full speed set points.

2. Motorized Actuated Valves

a. Local Manual

1) Local control is from the HAND-OFF-AUTO (HOA) selector switch on the valve actuator.

2) When the H-O-A switch is in the “OFF” position, the valve shall not be allowed to OPEN/CLOSE from any location.

3) When the H-O-A switch is in the “HAND” position, the valve shall operate by the “OPEN” and “CLOSE” push buttons located on valve actuator.

4) When the H-O-A switch is in the “AUTO” position, the valve shall receive OPEN and CLOSE signals from SCADA.

b. SCADA Manual

1) See section 3.01-E-1-b-2/3 for pump start/stop sequence for semi-automated valve control.

2) The operator may override valve position from the section 3.01-E-1-b-2/3 start/stop sequence to “OPEN” and “CLOSE” valve position via SCADA.

c. SCADA Auto

1) OPEN and CLOSE commands based of the start/stop sequences will be the same as section 3.01-E-1-b-2/3 but will remove the operator need to call for a pump start/stop. Instead, SCADA shall dictate the pump start/stop.

F. Interlocks

1. Hardwired

a. High Motor Temperature: A HIGH MOTOR TEMEPRATURE indication will automatically shut down the associated pump and then close the associated motorized actuated valve and provide an alarm to SCADA.

b. High Pump Vibration: A HIGH PUMP VIBRATION indication will automatically shut down the associated pump and then close the associated motorized actuated valve and provide an alarm to SCADA.

c. A LOW SUCTION PRESSURE indication will automatically shut down the associated pump and then close the associated motorized actuated valve and provide an alarm to SCADA.

d. A HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE indication will automatically shut down the associated pump and then close the associated motorized actuated valve and provide an alarm to SCADA.

e. E-Stop: An E-STOP (maintained pushbutton) indication shall shut down the associated pump, then close the associated motorized actuated valve, and provide an alarm to SCADA.

f. Reset pushbutton shall clear all locked in failure modes described below:

1) High Motor Temperature

2) High Discharge Pressure

3) High Suction Pressure

4) High Pump Vibration

5) VFD Fault

2. Software

a. VALVE FAILS TO FULLY OPEN: Alarm will be generated; the pump start sequence will be terminated and the pump stop sequence will be issued.

b. LOW ROCKHILL CHURCH TANK LEVEL: Alarm will be generated; pump stop sequence will be issued if in AUTO.

c. If the motorized actuated valve associated with a booster pump is in “HAND” and in the “CLOSED” position while a booster pump is in SCADA Auto prevent start command to the booster pump.

G. Alarms

1. Booster Pump High Motor Temperature (3)
2. Booster Pump High Discharge Pressure (3)
3. Booster Pump Low Suction Pressure (3)
4. Booster Pump High Vibration (3)
5. Booster Pump VFD Fault (3)
6. Booster Pump E-STOP (3)
7. Motorized Actuated Valve Fail (3)
8. Roll Up Door Intrusion Alarm
9. Man Door Intrusion Alarm (2)
10. HVAC System Alarm
11. Generator Fail
12. Metering Vault High Level

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 62 00

COMPUTER SYSTEM HARDWARE AND ANCILLARIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The process control system is physically and functionally distributed between PLC equipped control panels, motor control panels, field panels, operator workstations and appurtenances.

B. Although manual control facilities shall be provided adjacent to each final control element or in local control panels, such facilities are for testing, maintenance and local monitoring purposes only and shall not be regarded as backup to the PLC-based control system.

C. PLCs may be categorized as either “process PLCs” or “integration PLCs” that are provided by the instrumentation subcontractor or “equipment control PLCs” or “vendor PLCs” or “packaged PLCs” provided by equipment manufacturers for the operation of their equipment (blowers, centrifuges, chemical systems, filters, etc.). Unless otherwise specified, all PLCs provided under this Contract shall conform to the requirements specified in this Division.

D. Major plant control system digital equipment items are described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 63 43 – Programmable Logic Controllers

B. Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment

1.03 DIGITAL HARDWARE CONFIGURATIONS

A. The digital hardware configuration shown on the Control System Architecture Drawing depicts overall system configuration requirements. System design shall be based upon this concept and shall provide an overall digital system availability of 99.8 percent under the conditions specified in Section 40 61 21.73 – Final Acceptance Test. Unless otherwise specified, designs that vary from this concept will be rejected.

B. All discrete and analog data acquisition, preprocessing, storage and process control functions shall be performed at the PLC level. Run time and flow accumulations shall be performed at the PLC level. Except for minimal calculations related to report-specific functions such as minimum, maximum, average, etc., operator workstations shall not be

020119

used to perform calculation for the process control system. Operator workstations shall be fully independent devices, individually connected to the plant control system networks.

C. No other exceptions will be considered.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL SYSTEM HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

A. Unless otherwise specified, all hardware shall be rated for industrial use, resistant to shock, vibration, electromagnetic interference, static discharge, and suitable for the environmental conditions described elsewhere in this Division. Commercial or office grade equipment shall not be accepted.

B. Unless otherwise specified, modular construction shall be employed to simplify maintenance and to provide for future hardware expansion. Plug-in, modular PCB's or modules shall be employed for easy removal to permit exposure of circuit wiring, components and test points. Extender boards shall be provided, if necessary, to permit PCB's to be completely exposed for testing purposes.

C. Keying schemes shall be used to prevent PCB misplacement.

D. The temperature inside each enclosure containing digital hardware (i.e., cabinet, panel or console) shall be continuously monitored and shall generate an alarm to the nearest PLC if the temperature rises to an adjustable, preset high temperature.

2.02 DIGITAL SYSTEM FAILURE DETECTION AND FAIL-OVER REQUIREMENTS

A. No degradation in control system performance shall occur when the system is operating in a partial failure or an equipment fail-over mode. Likewise, no degradation of system performance shall occur while a backed up system component is undergoing preventive or corrective maintenance.

B. All devices connected to the plant control system network shall be self-checking and shall report their operational status to the operator workstations as either "normal" or "failed". A graphic display based on the system architecture drawing shall be furnished with the control and information system showing this information along with current communication status of each device.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions, Part 3.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 62 63
OPERATOR INTERFACE TERMINALS (OIT)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all operator interface terminals, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 62 00 – Computer System Hardware and Ancillaries

C. Section 40 63 43 – Programmable Logic Controllers

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 OPERATOR INTERFACE TERMINAL – LARGE

A. An Operator Interface Terminal (OIT) shall be provided to view and change PLC monitoring and control parameters and to display alarm messages using a graphical user interface. The OIT shall provide the following features as a minimum:

1. Minimum of 10.4 inch diagonal display
2. 18-bit color TFT LCD 800 x 600 SVGA display
3. Backlit analog resistive touch screen interface w/ 1 million press actuation rating
4. Backlight w/ min. 50,000 hour life to half brightness
5. Minimum of 512 MB internal storage
6. Minimum of 512 MB RAM application memory
7. Minimum of 80 MB nonvolatile user memory
8. Windows CE Operating System
9. Battery-backed real-time clock

11-16-21

10. Secure Digital (SD) card slot w/ min. 2 GB card

11. One USB 2.0 high-speed Type A host port; one USB 1.0 high-speed Type B device port

12. One 10/100Base-T Auto MDI/MDI-X Ethernet port

13. Windows-based configuration software complete with download cable

14. Operating Voltage: 120 VAC or 24 VDC (internal or via independent power supply)

15. Enclosure Rating: NEMA 12/4X to match the associated PLC cabinet rating

16. Environment: 0-55°C, 5-95% relative humidity, non-condensing

B. The operator interface terminal shall be Allen-Bradley PanelView Plus 7 Standard 1000, or equal.

2.02 OPERATOR INTERFACE TERMINAL – SMALL

A. An Operator Interface Terminal (OIT) shall be provided to view and change PLC monitoring and control parameters and to display alarm messages using a graphical user interface. The OIT shall provide the following features as a minimum.

1. Minimum of 7 inch diagonal display

2. 18-bit color TFT LCD 640 x 480 VGA display

3. Backlit analog resistive touch screen interface w/ 1 million press actuation rating

4. Backlight w/ min. 40,000 hr life to half brightness

5. Minimum of 512 MB internal storage

6. Minimum of 512 MB RAM application memory

7. Minimum of 80 MB nonvolatile user memory

8. Windows CE Operating System

9. Battery-backed real-time clock

10. Secure Digital (SD) card slot w/ min. 2 GB card

11. One USB 2.0 high-speed Type A host port; one USB 1.0 high-speed Type B device port

12. One 10/100Base-T Auto MDI/MDI-X Ethernet port

13. Windows-based configuration software complete with download cable

14. Operating Voltage: 120 VAC or 24 VDC (internal or via independent power supply)

15. Enclosure Rating: NEMA 12/4X to match the associated PLC cabinet rating

16. Environment: 0-55°C, 5-95% relative humidity, non-condensing

B. The operator interface terminal shall be Allen-Bradley PanelView Plus 7 Standard 700, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. The OIT shall be configured to display all PLC I/O, setpoints, and parameters. All equipment failures shall be alarmed. PLC I/O values and operator-entered setpoints shall be displayed with associated engineering units and service descriptions. Menus shall be provided to navigate between screens of different equipment items. Displays shall be arranged in a hierarchical structure with displays for specific equipment items grouped together. Additional functionality shall be as specified elsewhere in this Division.

B. All necessary configuration and programming software shall be provided on optical media and turned over to the Owner.

C. Unless otherwise indicated, each OIT shall be mounted between 48 and 60 inches above the floor or work platform.

D. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions, for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 63 43
PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLERS (PLC)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all programmable logic controllers (PLC), with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 23 – Signal Coordination Requirements

C. Section 40 62 00 – Control and Information System Hardware and Ancillaries

D. Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment

E. Section 40 67 63 – Uninterruptible Power Systems

F. Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks

1.03 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Tools, supplies and spare parts shall be provided as specified in Section 40 61 22 – Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts. In addition, the following specific spare parts items shall be provided:

1. One of each type and size of module for PLC equipment furnished under this Contract.

2. One of each type and size of PLC and equipment power supply furnished under this Contract.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLERS - GENERAL

020119

A. The instrumentation subcontractor shall furnish programmable controllers (PLCs) as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings. PLCs shall be provided complete with backplane, power supply, I/O cards, special function cards, instructions, memory,

input/output capacity, and appurtenances to provide all features and functions as described herein. No substitutions will be permitted.

B. All components of the PLC system shall be of the same manufacturer; who shall have fully tested units similar to those being furnished in an industrial environment with associated electrical noise. The PLC system shall have been tested to meet the requirements of NEMA Standard ICS 2-230 (Arc Test) and IEEE C37.90.1 (SWC). The processing unit shall perform the operations functionally described herein based on the program stored in memory and the status of the inputs and outputs.

C. Programmable controllers shall be designed to operate in an industrial environment. The PLC shall operate in an ambient temperature range of 0□-60□C and a relative humidity of 5-95 percent, non-condensing. The PLC shall operate on supply voltages of 90-132 VAC at 47-63 Hz or 24 VDC if provided with a battery backup system. An integral fuse shall be provided on the power supply for short circuit protection and shall be front panel accessible. Integral overcurrent and undervoltage protection shall be provided on the power supply.

D. Where applicable, the minimum PLC backplane size shall be 7 slots, not including power supply slots.

E. System configuration shall be as shown on the Control System Architecture Drawing. PLC types shall be designated on the Control System Architecture Drawing and correspond to the specifications herein. Only a single type of processor shall be supplied for all PLCs of a designated type. Memory and processor shall be adequate for all control functions specified. PLCs shall be as manufactured or equal to the following:

1. Allen-Bradley CompactLogix

2.02 PROCESSORS

A. The processor and its associated memory shall be enclosed in a modular enclosure. A multiple-position selector switch or equivalent shall be used to select processor operating mode. LED-type indicating lights shall be provided to indicate processor, memory, and battery status. Errors in memory shall be recognized and shall activate the memory error indicating lights. The PLC processor shall monitor the internal operation of the PLC for failure and provide an alarm output. Nonvolatile memory in the form of a manufacturer supplied industrial CompactFlash card or equivalent technology shall be required to maintain the entire current program and firmware of the controller in the event of power loss. The program shall be updated onto the flash memory each time a program change such as an online edit or tag value is changed. When nonvolatile memory (flash memory) is not available for certain controller models as offered by the PLC manufacturer, lithium batteries shall be used to maintain process RAM memory for at least one year in the event of power loss. The lithium battery unit shall be an

externally mounted battery assembly with the highest available capacity. The PLC shall send an alarm to the plant control system if battery level is low.

B. The instruction set for the PLC shall conform to the requirements of IEC 61131-3. Each PLC shall have the capability to run all five of the standard IEC 61131-3 languages simultaneously. These five languages shall be:

1. Ladder Diagram

2. Structured Text

3. Instruction List

4. Function Block Diagram

5. Sequential Function Chart

C. Additional co-processors or modules may be necessary and shall be furnished as required to meet the functions specified herein and in Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions.

D. PLC processors shall be provided with substantial user program, data and logic memory to allow for future expansion of the overall system. The total memory used on each processor shall be less than 60% of available memory at project completion.

2.03 COMMUNICATIONS

A. PLC communications shall be provided as specified in Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment and as shown on the Control System Architecture Drawing.

B. In addition to a communications port for the control system network, communication ports shall be provided for any other devices required (i.e., operator interface unit) plus an additional communication port for connection to a notebook computer.

C. The PLC shall be able to support various types of fieldbus communication systems for data links to field instruments (where specified) in addition to connected equipment such as power monitors, VFDs, motor protection monitors, etc. As a minimum, Profibus DP, Foundation Fieldbus, Modbus RTU Master and Slave, TCP/IP Ethernet shall be supported. The Contractor shall coordinate the efforts of the necessary parties (instrumentation subcontractor and equipment suppliers) to accomplish the required device and data table addressing between each PLC and the associated connected equipment.

D. Additional communication modules or protocol gateways may be required to support specific communication protocols required under this Contract and shall be supplied at no extra cost to the Owner.

2.04 INPUT/OUTPUT SUBSYSTEMS

A. Input/output hardware shall be plug-in modules in associated I/O backplane/chassis or DIN-rail mounting assemblies. Each unit shall handle the required number of process inputs and outputs plus a minimum of 10 percent active pre-wired spares for each I/O type furnished, plus a minimum of 20 percent spare I/O module space for the addition of future circuit cards or modules.

B. Discrete inputs shall be 24 VDC or 120 VAC signals (integral to the PLC) from dry field contacts. Discrete outputs shall be 24 VDC or 120 VAC outputs sourced from the PLC, or dry relay contacts (2A minimum) as required. Refer to Section 40 61 23 – Signal Coordination Requirements for further details of discrete signal type and voltage requirements. The PLC shall provide momentary and latched outputs as required to interface with motor controls and external devices. Interposing relays shall be provided where required to interface with field equipment. Interposing relays shall be as specified in Section 40 78 00 – Panel Mounted Instruments. Electrical isolation shall be provided where required. Maximum density for discrete I/O modules shall be 32 per input module and 16 per output module.

C. Analog input circuits shall be isolated, minimum 16-bit resolution type. Analog input hardware shall be provided as required for all types of analog inputs being transmitted to the PLC. In general, analog input modules shall be capable of receiving 4-20 mA signals. Where required, RTD input modules shall have a minimum resolution of 0.15□C and be capable of accepting signals from 100-ohm Platinum RTDs. Analog outputs shall be coordinated with the receivers but shall generally be isolated 24 VDC 420 mA outputs powered from the PLC. Each input/output circuit shall have optical isolation to protect the equipment against high voltage transients. Optical isolation shall be rated at not less than 1500 V RMS. Lightning/surge protection shall be provided as specified in Section 40 78 56 – Isolators, Intrinsically-Safe Barriers, and Surge Suppressors. Maximum density for analog I/O modules shall be 8 per module.

D. Input/output modules shall be configured for ease of wiring and maintenance. The modules shall be connected to wiring arms that can be disconnected to permit removal of a module without disturbing field wiring. Covers shall be provided to prevent operator personnel from inadvertently touching the terminals. The process interface modules shall be provided with screw-type terminal blocks with barriers between adjacent terminals for connection of field inputs. Terminals shall be suitable for accepting up to and including No. 14 AWG wire. All DC output circuits to the field shall include fuses, either integral or at the terminal strip. Output failure mode shall be selectable so that upon station or communication system failure all outputs shall be placed either in the non-conducting mode or remain as were prior to failure. Light-emitting diodes shall be provided for status indication for each input and output point.

E. External power supplies shall be provided with the PLC as required to meet specified installed I/O power requirements plus spares. Power supplies shall be modular units,

shall be fully redundant and shall alarm the PLC upon failure. Power supplies shall have a line regulation of 0.05% and meet the environmental and power requirements specified herein for the PLC.

2.05 INPUT/OUTPUT CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENT

A. Signal and control circuitry to individual input/output boards shall be arranged such that board failure shall not disable more than one half of the control loops within any group of controlled equipment (e.g., one pump out of a group of three pumps, two pumps out of four, etc.). Where possible, individual control loops and equipment shall be assigned to individual boards such that failure of the board will disable only one loop or piece of equipment.

2.06 PROGRAMMING SOFTWARE

A. The PLC programming and configuration software shall be the manufacturer's latest, full-featured version, Windows-based, and shall be fully compliant with IEC 61131-3 standards. The software package shall consist of all programming, configuration, and documentation software needed to place the control and information system in satisfactory operation. The software shall allow on-line and off-line program development and documentation. PLC programming software shall include documentation on optical media.

B. A minimum of one copy of the PLC programming software shall be purchased by the instrumentation subcontractor and registered to the Owner.

C. If available, the configuration and programming software shall support communication over the network specified in Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment to implement its functions remotely from an operator workstation. All configuration and programming software necessary to implement this functionality shall be provided on the HMI Server operator workstations. All necessary hardware required to have the operator workstation perform PLC configuration and programming shall be provided.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. PLC programming shall be furnished to perform all functions described in Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions, including global functions. In addition, PLCs shall be programmed to provide additional functions described in other Sections of this Division.

B. PLC programming shall make use of the various IEC languages as appropriate to the specific task and shall be performed in a modular style making extensive use of program blocks (subroutines) and program variables to be passed to the program blocks for

specific equipment. It is the intent of this requirement to allow for enhanced readability and ease of modification of the program code through the elimination of multiple instances of repeated code for the same function in a “hard-coded” style.

C. Extensive comments shall be placed in the program code to describe the functions of all elements of the program code. PLC code that does not contain comments shall be rejected.

D. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions, Part 3 for additional requirements.

3.02 REQUIREMENTS FOR MANUFACTURER-SUPPLIED PLCS

A. PLCs that are supplied for equipment local control panels by individual equipment manufacturers or suppliers shall, where so indicated on the Control System Architecture Drawing, be integrated into the plant control system. The manufacturer-supplied PLC shall be furnished, installed and programmed by the manufacturer. The PLC shall continuously monitor and control the associated system and at the same time shall provide all the required alarms, indications of system parameters, equipment status, etc. to the main control system at the plant.

B. Where required as described above, each manufacturer-supplied PLC shall be connected to the Ethernet process control network for access from the plant control system HMI servers, as specified in Section 40 66 00 – Network and Communication Equipment, and shall contain a fiber optic Ethernet switch identical to those provided for the rest of the network-connected PLCs.

C. Each equipment manufacturer shall provide all monitoring and control data to be transferred between the PLC and the plant control system in contiguous blocks of PLC registers to facilitate block read and write commands for efficient scanning by the control system SCADA servers. These contiguous registers shall be arranged in a single data transfer area, which shall be divided into eight distinct areas with an emphasis on flexibility and future expansion. The distinct areas shall be arranged by data type (analog or discrete), transfer direction (server to PLC or PLC to server), and, where applicable, implementation schedule (current or future). Where required, peer-to-peer communication between PLCs shall likewise be accomplished using separate blocks of contiguous registers. Where individual equipment PLCs are not required to be connected to the plant control system via the data highway network, they shall provide the individual hardwired signals as specified in the Contract Documents. Data and commands for connection to the control system are described in the Drawings, the Input/Output Schedule, the individual equipment Specification Sections, and in Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions.

D. The operator interface for control of each individual system shall be performed by local operator interface units as specified in Section 40 62 63 – Operator Interface Terminals

or individual pilot devices on the equipment local control panel, as specified in the associated equipment Specification Section. Additional operator interface functions shall be provided through the plant control system as specified in the respective equipment specifications and in Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions.

E. Where operator interface and control functions are required to be provided through the plant control system, the individual system supplier shall be responsible for coordination with the instrumentation subcontractor to provide a complete and working equipment control system. The individual equipment supplier shall also be responsible for limiting the access of the plant control system to the equipment PLC code so as to prevent malfunctions of the equipment and any failure to continuously perform its intended functions. The equipment supplier shall be responsible for ensuring that no actions by the plant control system can damage or otherwise adversely affect the operation of the associated equipment or the safety of personnel working on or near that equipment. The equipment supplier shall also provide direction in the configuration of the SCADA software's security system by the instrumentation subcontractor to limit access to the control functions of the equipment control system to authorized personnel only. The equipment supplier shall coordinate testing of the completed system with the instrumentation subcontractor, which shall conform to the requirements of Section 40 61 21.72 – Field Testing.

F. The Contractor, equipment supplier and instrumentation subcontractor shall coordinate testing and startup of the equipment provided by the equipment supplier with the plant control system, including but not limited to the following tasks:

1. Provide assistance with control system testing of inputs, outputs, and control strategies as needed.

2. Provide support or interface work necessary to perform physical checkout and field testing to the final field devices. The schedule may require the instrumentation subcontractor and equipment manufacturer personnel to perform loop checks simultaneously, as directed by the Engineer.

3. Coordinate and assist as needed to maintain I/O connectivity throughout the system.

4. Ensure personnel safety while equipment is exercised via the plant control system.

5. Ensure that process, instrumentation, and control equipment are not damaged while equipment is exercised via the plant control system.

6. Provide temporary modifications to field devices and their terminations, if needed.

7. Providing labor and supervision, which may include, but is not limited to, the following: electricians, instrument technicians, manufacturer's representatives, and individual(s) knowledgeable about process startup and operation.

8. Operation of process equipment for verification of each plant control system input and output.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 66 00
NETWORK AND COMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation IEEE 802.3 ethernet local area network(s) for communications among plant devices.

B. Local area network shall be provided with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

C. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

D. Section 40 63 43 – Programmable Logic Controllers

1.03 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

E. The following specific spare parts items shall be provided:

1. A termination tool kit shall be provided containing all required tools and consumables for up to 25 connections of each connection type furnished. Termination kit shall be as manufactured by Black Box, Corning Cable Systems, Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

2. One (1) spare switch of each type furnished under this Contract.

3. Two (2) spare patch cables of each type and of the maximum length used.

4. Two (2) spare GBIC or SFP modules for each type used.

5. One (1) spare media converter for each type used.

SUBMITTALS

6. Fiber optic testing results, including signal attenuation for each fiber

04/29/202

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

LOCAL AREA NETWORK (LAN)

A. An IEEE 802.3 ethernet local area network shall be used for communications between plant devices.

B. Network wiring shall be unshielded, twisted-pair copper cables for connections within buildings. Fiber optic media shall be used for all inter-device communication links extended outside of a building, unless specifically noted. Cables shall be as specified herein.

C. The Contractor shall provide appurtenances, including but not limited to, all hardware, cables, connectors, adapters, modules, and software, to implement a network as required for a fully functional system even if not explicitly specified or shown.

INDUSTRIAL ETHERNET NETWORK SWITCHES

D. Except where specifically allowed on the Control System Architecture Drawing, industrial ethernet network switches shall be provided for each device connected to the process control system network. The switches shall create switched ethernet networks that conform to the IEEE 802.3 and 802.3u standards using copper wires or optical fibers in a bus, tree or ring network topology as shown on the Drawings. Ethernet network switches shall be modular, rack mounted, or standard DIN-rail mounted within the PLC cabinet or in an adjacent communication cabinet, as shown on the Drawings.

E. Ethernet network switches shall support ring, bus, star, or point-to-point network topologies. On-line signal monitoring shall be provided to detect and locate impending faults. Ethernet network switches shall be replaceable on-line without disrupting the network. The ethernet network switches shall be integrated into the in-plant Ethernet network to form a redundant ring network with self-healing communication recovery. Switches shall support the non-proprietary Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP) and Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) in addition to the switch manufacturer’s standard redundant ring network protocol, all of which shall provide self-healing communication recovery.

F. Ethernet network switches shall meet the following minimum performance requirements:

1. Functions: Modular managed switch with store and forward switching mode, 10 Mbps ethernet, or 100 Mbps Fast-Ethernet, or gigabit Ethernet support, multi-address capability, auto-crossing, auto-negotiation, auto-polarity. Port speed and duplex auto-negotiation shall be configurable.

2. Management: Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (v1/v2/v3) and Common Industrial Protocol (CIP) support; IGMP filtering and snooping.

3. Power Requirements: Redundant 24 VDC power supply

4. Operating Temperature: 0 to 60 degrees C

5. Relative Humidity: 10 to 95%

6. Network Size: Up to 50 nodes in ring structure; otherwise unlimited

7. Port Type & Quantity (at each PLC location): minimum of four (4) 10/100Base-TX, twisted pair cable, RJ-45 sockets, 0-100 meters LAN segment and two (2) 100/1000Base-FX, multimode fiber optic cables (62.5/125 µm), LC, ST or SC sockets, 0-5000 meters LAN segment

8. Link Budget: 8 dB @ 1300 nm; 10 dB @ 850 nm

9. Wavelength: 850 or 1300 nm

G. Acceptable industrial ethernet network switches shall be as manufactured by Cisco Systems, Hirschmann, Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, or equal.

UNSHIELDED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

H. Unshielded twisted pair cable for drops within buildings shall consist of 4 pair of 24 AWG copper conductors in a flame-retardant jacket. Cable shall be plenum rated (UL 910) and meet EIA/TIA-568 Category 6 (i.e., Cat6) specifications. Unshielded twisted pair cable shall be Hyper Grade Extended Distance cable as manufactured by Berk-Tek, Belden equivalent, or equal. Connectors shall be modular RJ-45 plug.

I. Solid conductors shall be used for all field wiring and punch-down applications. For patch cable applications and where installed-flexibility is necessary, such as for movable equipment or across enclosure door hinges, conductors shall be stranded.

J. For use as ethernet, Contractor’s conduit/cable routing shall be limited to the maximum ethernet length of 100m. If this cannot be accomplished, Contractor shall design and provide a system utilizing long-range copper extenders or fiber with media conversion or similar to overcome distance limitations, subject to Engineer’s approval.

K. Provide copper patch panels where more than one copper communication cable leaves the enclosure.

MULTIMODE FIBER OPTIC CABLE (OM1)

L. Fiber optic cable shall conform to TIA 492-AAAA and the following specifications:

1. Fiber Type: Graded Index (GI) Multimode

2. Fiber/Cladding Diameter: 62.5/125 microns

3. No. Fibers: 12 (color-coded), unless otherwise indicated

4. Cable Construction: Loose Tube w/ Ripcords

5. Filling: Water Swellable Dry Block

6. Armored: No

7. Central Member: Dielectric (Kevlar)

8. Rating: Gigabit ethernet, unless otherwise indicated

9. Modal bandwidth (OM1):

    a. 200 MHz*km OFL at 850 nm

    b. 500 Mhz*km OFL at 500 nm

10. Maximum Attenuation:

    a. 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm

    b. 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm

11. Application Type: Direct-burial/Conduit/Aerial

12. Plenum Rated: Where required (e.g., in drop ceilings)

13. Sheath: UV Resistant

14. Max. Tensile Load: 600 lb (2700 N) installation; 200 lb (890 N) long term

15. Minimum Bend Radius: 7 in under maximum tensile load; 4.6 in unloaded (installed)

16. Operating Temperature: -40 to 70 degrees C

17. Operating Relative Humidity: 0 to 100%

M. Fiber optic cable shall utilize mechanically spliced, field installable, SC, LC, or ST compatible connectors. Connections shall have a typical loss of 0.35 dB or better and shall provide stable optical performance after numerous rematings. Heat or UV cured connections shall not be acceptable. Where applicable, field terminations shall use a simple procedure requiring minimal training.

N. Fiber optic cable shall be ALTOS All Dielectric Loose Tube Optical Cable as manufactured by Corning Cable Systems, the Extended Performance Fiber Optic Cable Series as manufactured by Phoenix Digital, Inc., Belden equivalent, equivalent system by Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

MULTIMODE FIBER OPTIC CABLE (OM3)

O. Fiber optic cable shall conform to TIA 492-AAAC and the following specifications:

1. Fiber Type: Graded Index (GI) Multimode
2. Fiber/Cladding Diameter: 50/125 microns
3. No. Fibers: 12 (color-coded), unless otherwise indicated
4. Cable Construction: Loose Tube w/ Ripcords
5. Filling: Water Swellable Dry Block
6. Armored: No
7. Central Member: Dielectric (Kevlar)
8. Rating: Gigabit ethernet, unless otherwise indicated
9. Modal bandwidth (OM3):
    a. 1,500 MHz*km OFL at 850 nm
    b. 500 Mhz*km OFL at 500 nm
    c. 2,000 Mhz*km laser at 850 nm
10. Maximum Attenuation:
    a. 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm
    b. 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm
11. Application Type: Direct-burial/Conduit/Aerial
12. Plenum Rated: Where required (e.g., in drop ceilings)
13. Sheath: UV Resistant
14. Max. Tensile Load: 600 lb (2700 N) installation; 200 lb (890 N) long term
15. Minimum Bend Radius: 7 in under maximum tensile load; 4.6 in unloaded (installed)
16. Operating Temperature: -40 to 70 degrees C
17. Operating Relative Humidity: 0 to 100%

P. Fiber optic cable shall utilize mechanically spliced, field installable, SC, LC, or ST compatible connectors. Connections shall have a typical loss of 0.35 dB or better and shall provide stable optical performance after numerous rematings. Heat or UV cured connections shall not be acceptable. Where applicable, field terminations shall use a simple procedure requiring minimal training.

Q. Fiber optic cable shall be ALTOS All Dielectric Loose Tube Optical Cable as manufactured by Corning Cable Systems, the Extended Performance Fiber Optic Cable Series as manufactured by Phoenix Digital, Inc., Belden equivalent, equivalent system by Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

SINGLE-MODE FIBER OPTIC CABLE (OS2)

R. Fiber optic cable shall conform to ITU-T G.652 and the following specifications:

1. Fiber Type: Graded Index (GI) Single Mode
2. Fiber/Cladding Diameter: 9/125 microns
3. No. Fibers: 12 (color-coded), unless otherwise indicated
4. Cable Construction: Loose Tube w/ Ripcords
5. Filling: Water Swellable Dry Block
6. Armored: No
7. Central Member: Dielectric (Kevlar)
8. Rating: Gigabit ethernet, unless otherwise indicated
9. Maximum Attenuation: 0.5 dB/km
10. Application Type: Direct-burial/Conduit/Aerial
11. Plenum Rated: Where required (e.g., in drop ceilings)
12. Sheath: UV Resistant
13. Max. Tensile Load: 600 lb (2700 N) installation; 200 lb (890 N) long term
14. Minimum Bend Radius: 7 in under maximum tensile load; 4.6 in unloaded (installed)
15. Operating Temperature: -40 to 70 degrees C
16. Operating Relative Humidity: 0 to 100%

S. Fiber optic cable shall utilize mechanically spliced, field installable, SC, LC, or ST compatible connectors. Connections shall have a typical loss of 0.35 dB or better and shall provide stable optical performance after numerous rematings. Heat or UV cured connections shall not be acceptable. Where applicable, field terminations shall use a simple procedure requiring minimal training.

T. Fiber optic cable shall be ALTOS All Dielectric Loose Tube Optical Cable as manufactured by Corning Cable Systems, the Extended Performance Fiber Optic Cable Series as manufactured by Phoenix Digital, Inc., Belden equivalent, equivalent system by Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

FIBER OPTIC PATCH PANELS

U. Upon entering a cabinet, panel or console, fiber optic cable shall be broken out using fan-out kits and terminated in a fiber optic patch panel. Fan-out kit shall provide mechanical connection to fiber optic cable jacket for strain relief and clean appearance. Where mechanical connection is not made or fan-out kit does not completely cover jacket, rip cords, dry block, material etc., fan-out kit shall be reinforced with short length of properly sized heat shrink tubing. Use of adhesive tape in this application shall not be permitted.

V. All fiber optic patch panels shall be mounted within a rack or a NEMA rated enclosure. Wall-mounting stand-alone patch panels shall not be permitted unless otherwise indicated.

W. Rack-mounted patch panels shall be Cabinet-Mounted Interconnect Center (C-MIC) as manufactured by Corning Cable Systems, equivalent by Black Box, Inc., Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

X. Stand-alone patch panels shall be Wall-Mountable Interconnect Center (WIC) or Premises Interconnect Center (PIC) as manufactured by Corning Cable Systems, equivalent by Black Box, Inc., Optical Cable Corporation, or equal.

Y. Fiber optic patch cable shall be provided at necessary lengths with a modal bandwidth (OM or OS) rating at least as high as the connected components.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. The destination of all network data cables (both copper and fiber) leaving an enclosure, patch panel, or building shall be labeled at each end using industry-standard wire markers.

B. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions for additional requirements.

FIBER OPTIC CABLE

C. Fiber optic cable for installation within buildings shall comply with all applicable fire and building safety codes for such applications.

D. Fiber optic cable shall be installed in accordance with cable manufacturer's instructions.

E. Testing

1. Bulk fiber shall be tested on-site to prior to installation to provide a reference for the installed test data.

2. All individual fibers, including spares, shall be terminated and all connections shall be tested after installation.

3. Complete installed fiber optic cable shall be tested for continuity with a visual fault locator or fiber tracer and the connections verified and documented. Cabling shall also be tested for optical/insertion loss in compliance with Tier 1 testing per TIA-568.

4. Submit all test results.

FIBER OPTIC PATCH PANELS

F. All patch panels shall be labeled with destination/function of each port, matching terminology from the Contract Documents where possible. Provide printed directory mounted to or adjacent to patch panel with this information where sufficient space is not available.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 67 00
CONTROL SYSTEM EQUIPMENT PANELS AND RACKS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place, in satisfactory operation the control enclosures, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

B. Control enclosures shall be assembled, wired, and tested in the instrumentation subcontractor's own facilities, unless specified otherwise. All components and all necessary accessories such as power supplies, conditioning equipment, mounting hardware, signal input and output terminal blocks, and plug strips that may be required to complete the system shall be provided.

C. Either manufacturer’s standard or custom enclosures may be furnished subject to the requirements of the Contract Documents and favorable review by the Owner.

D. Due consideration shall be given to installation requirements for enclosures in new and existing structures. The Contractor shall examine plans and field inspect new and existing structures as required to determine installation requirements and shall coordinate the installation of all enclosures with the Owner and all affected contractors. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with installation of enclosures, including repair of damage to structures (incidental, accidental or unavoidable).

E. The terms enclosure, cabinet, and panel shall be considered the same product and are used interchangeably.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall be per Section 40 61 15 – Process Control System Submittals.

B. Thermal calculations.

C. Proof of circuit breaker selective coordination.

1.03 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 62 00 – Computer System Hardware and Ancillaries

C. Section 40 78 00 – Panel Mounted Instruments

D. Section 40 78 56 – Isolators, Intrinsically-Safe Barriers, and Surge Suppressors

E. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

F. Section 40 61 90 – Schedules and Control Descriptions, General

G. Refer to Division 26 for additional requirements for conductors, circuit breakers, disconnect switches, etc.

1.04 PANEL LOCATION AND TYPE

A. For locations inside buildings in areas other than climate controlled (i.e., heated and air conditioned) electrical or control rooms, panel shall be Type 316 stainless steel NEMA 4X construction, or as indicated for hazardous area classification (Class, Division, at a minimum), or submersible, NEMA 6, applications. Epoxy coated cast copper-free aluminum construction shall also be acceptable for NEMA 4, 6 and 7 applications.

B. For locations in storage/feed areas for chlorine or other applicable corrosive chemicals, panel shall be of non-metallic construction, rated NEMA 4X, and be fully compatible with the associated chemical.

C. For locations within climate controlled (i.e., heated and air-conditioned) electrical or control rooms, panel shall be a painted steel fully enclosed NEMA 12 units with gasketed doors.

D. For outdoor locations, panel shall be Type 316L stainless steel NEMA 4X construction unless located in chlorine environments. Chlorine environment shall be nonmetallic NEMA 4X construction.

1.05 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Tools, supplies and spare parts shall be provided as specified in Section 40 61 22 – Tools, Supplies and Spare Parts, General.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 CABINETS AND PANELS

A. Cabinets and panels shall be formed or welded construction, reinforced with Unistrut, Powerstrut, or equal to facilitate mounting of internal components or equipment. Sufficient access plates and doors shall be provided to facilitate maintenance and testing of the cabinet's equipment. Doors shall be removable. Cabinets and panels with any dimension 36 inches or greater shall be provided with removable lifting lugs designed to

031519

facilitate safe moving and lifting of the panel during installation. All doors shall be fitted with common-keyed locks.

B. Cabinets and panels shall be minimum 14 USS gauge. Cabinets and panels with any dimension greater than 36 inches shall be 12 USS gauge.

C. Cabinets and panels shall have doors on the front and shall be designed for front access. NEMA 12 cabinets shall be fitted with three-point door latches. Doors for NEMA 4X cabinets shall be all stainless steel with three-point latches. Door hardware on NEMA 4X cabinets located in chemical storage/feed areas shall be non-corrosive in that environment.

D. Panels and cabinets located outside fence-secured areas shall be fitted with padlockable latch kits. Coordinate keying with Owner.

E. All cabinets and panels shall be provided with drawing pockets for as-built panel drawings. One copy of the appropriate panel as-built drawings shall be furnished and left in the pocket of each panel.

F. Panels with any dimension greater than 36 inches that contain a programmable controller (PLC) shall be provided with a folding laptop programmer shelf on the inside of the door. When deployed, the laptop shelf shall not be greater than 48 inches above finished floor. Laptop shelf shall be fitted to door with factory applied weld-studs. Weld discoloration and enclosure penetrations will not be accepted.

G. Unless otherwise noted, panel-mounted control devices (OIUs, hand switches, etc.) requiring operator access shall be mounted between 48 and 60 inches above the floor or work platform.

H. Cabinets and panels shall be prefabricated cabinets and panels by Hoffman or Saginaw Control and Engineering (SCE). The Contractor may optionally provide cabinets that are custom-fabricated by the instrumentation subcontractor or by a reputable panel fabrication shop acceptable to the Engineer.

2.02 CABINET AIR CONDITIONING UNITS

A. Where indicated or required due to ambient conditions and panel component ratings, panel-mounted closed loop air conditioning units and thermostatically controlled space heaters shall be provided.

B. Air conditioning units shall both cool and dehumidify the cabinet's internal air. Each air conditioner shall be sized to handle current and future (with specified spare capacity filled) heat loadings from all equipment mounted inside the cabinet.

C. Air conditioners shall be provided with thermostats which operate the centrifugal evaporator blowers continuously to prevent stratification of air within the cabinet.

Compressors shall operate as needed to maintain the temperature set at the thermostat. Compressors shall be provided with space heaters to maintain the compressor at a minimum temperature during cold ambient temperatures.

D. Ambient air shall be completely separated from the air inside the cabinet. All air conditioner components exposed to the atmosphere outside the cabinets shall be coated to prevent corrosion.

E. Power supply shall be 115VAC, 60 Hz. Units shall be provided with EMI/RFI noise suppressors.

F. Air conditioner enclosures shall be constructed of stainless steel or cold rolled steel which is phosphatized and finished in baked enamel.

G. Cabinet air conditioners shall be ProAir CR Series as manufactured by McLean Midwest of Brooklyn Park, MN, or equal.

2.03 TERMINAL BLOCKS

A. Terminal blocks shall be assembled on non-current carrying galvanized steel DIN mounting rails securely bolted to the cabinet subpanel. Terminals shall be of the screw down pressure plate type as manufactured by Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Wieland, Square D, or equal.

B. Power terminal blocks for both 120 VAC and 24 VDC power shall be single tier with a minimum rating of 600 volts, 30 amps.

C. Signal terminal blocks shall be single tier with a minimum rating of 600 volts, 20 amps.

2.04 NAMEPLATES

A. Items of equipment installed in control panels shall be identified with nameplates. Each nameplate shall be located so that it is readable from the normal observation position and is clearly associated with the device or devices it identifies. Nameplates shall be positioned so that removal of the device for maintenance and repair shall not disturb the nameplate. Nameplates shall include, as necessary, the equipment identification number, description, calibrated range, and set point(s). Abbreviations of the description shall be subject to the Engineer's approval.

B. Nameplates shall be made of 1/16-inch thick machine engraved laminated phenolic plastic having white numbers and letters not less than 3/16-inch high on a black background. Nameplates attached to instruments may be black laser etched 1/8-inch high text on stainless steel with sharp edges made smooth. Stamped text shall not be acceptable.

C. Nameplates shall be attached to metal equipment by NEMA rated stainless steel screws and to other surfaces by an epoxy-based adhesive that is resistant to oil and moisture. In cases where the label cannot be attached by the above methods, it shall be drilled and attached to the associated device by means of a braided stainless steel wire affixed with a permanent crimp.

D. Submit sample nameplate of each type.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 FABRICATION

A. The cabinet itself and all interior and exterior equipment shall be identified with nameplates. The equipment shall be mounted such that service can occur without removal of other equipment. Face mounted equipment shall be flush or semi-flush mounted with flat black escutcheons. All equipment shall be accessible such that adjustments can be made while the equipment is in service and operating. All enclosures shall fit within the allocated space as shown on the Drawings.

B. Enclosures shall provide mounting for power supplies, control equipment, input/output subsystems, panel-mounted equipment and appurtenances. Ample space shall be provided between equipment to facilitate servicing and cooling.

C. Enclosures shall be sized to adequately dissipate heat generated by equipment mounted inside the panel. If required, one or more of the following shall be provided to facilitate cooling:

1. For NEMA 12 cabinets only, louvered openings near the bottom and top or thermostatically controlled, low-noise cooling fans to circulate outside air into the enclosure, exhausting through louvers near the top of the cabinet. Air velocities through the enclosure shall be minimized to assure quiet operation.

2. Thermostatically controlled, low noise internal air blowers to circulate air within the enclosure, maintaining a uniform internal temperature. Initial setpoint shall be 75 degrees F.

3. All intake openings in cabinets and panels shall be fitted with dust filters.

D. Enclosures shall be constructed so that no screws or bolt heads are visible when viewed from the front. Punch cutouts for instruments and other devices shall be cut, punched, or drilled and smoothly finished with rounded edges.

E. The temperature inside each enclosure containing digital hardware (e.g., PLC, computer, Ethernet switch) shall be continuously monitored and shall generate an alarm to the nearest PLC if the temperature rises to an adjustable, preset high temperature.

This thermostat shall be independent and separate from the thermostat used to control the temperature in the enclosure described above. Enclosure “high interior temperature” alarm shall be displayed on the HMI or OIT.

F. Intrusion alarm switches shall be provided on all enclosures containing digital hardware and shall generate an alarm to the nearest PLC when any enclosure door is opened. If panel contains a service light, alarm switch shall also be wired to turn light on when door is opened.

G. Terminals shall be marked with a permanent, continuous marking strip. One side of each terminal shall be reserved exclusively for field incoming conductors. Common connections and jumpers required for internal wiring shall not be made on the field side of the terminal. Subject to the approval of the Engineer, a vendor's pre-engineered and prefabricated wiring termination system will be acceptable.

H. Wiring within cabinets, panels, and consoles shall be installed neatly and shall comply with accepted standard instrumentation and electrical practices. Power, control and signal wiring shall comply with Division 26 of the Specifications, except that the minimum wire size for discrete signal wiring may be 16 AWG, and for analog wiring may be 18 AWG. For each pair of parallel terminal blocks, the field wiring shall be between the blocks.

I. Separate terminal strips shall be provided for each type of power and signal used within each cabinet. Where applicable, terminal strips for different voltages of discrete signal wiring shall also be separated. Terminal strips shall be labeled as to voltage and function.

J. All wiring shall be bundled and run open or enclosed in vented plastic wireway as required. Wireways shall be oversized by a minimum of 10%; overfilled wireways shall not be acceptable. All conductors run open shall be bundled and bound at regular intervals, not exceeding 12 inches, with nylon cable ties. Care shall be taken to separate electronic signal, discrete signal, and power wiring when operating at differing voltages.

K. Spare field wiring shall be bundled, tied, and labeled as specified above, and shall be neatly coiled in the bottom of the cabinet.

L. All installed spare I/O hardware shall be wired along with live I/O wiring to the field wiring terminal blocks within the cabinet. Where space for spare I/O modules has been provided with the PLC backplane or DIN-rail mounting system, corresponding space for wiring, surge protection, and terminations shall be furnished within the cabinet.

M. A copper ground bus shall be installed in each cabinet and shall be connected to the building power ground.

N. Interior panel wiring shall be tagged at all terminations with machine-printed self-laminating labels. Labeling system shall be Brady TLS 2200 Printer with TLS 2200®/TLS

PC Link™ labels, or equivalent system by Seton or Panduit. The wire numbering system and identification tags shall be as specified in Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables. Field wiring terminating in panels shall be labeled in accordance with the requirements of Section 26 05 19 – Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables. Where applicable, the wire number shall be the ID number listed in the input/output schedules.

O. Wires shall be color coded as follows:

1. Equipment Ground – GREEN
2. 120 VAC Power – BLACK
3. 120 VAC Power Neutral – WHITE
4. 120 VAC Control (Internally Powered) – RED
5. 120 VAC Control (Externally Powered) – YELLOW
6. 24 VAC Control – ORANGE
7. DC Power (+) – RED
8. DC Power (-) – BLACK
9. DC Control – BLUE
10. Analog Signal – BLACK/WHITE or BLACK/RED

P. Enclosures shall be provided with a main circuit breaker and a circuit breaker on each individual branch circuit distributed from the panel. Main breaker and branch breaker sizes shall be coordinated such that an overload in a circuit will trip only its immediate breaker and not the upstream breaker.

Q. Enclosures with any dimension larger than 36 inches shall be provided with 120-volt duplex receptacles for service equipment and LED service lights. Power to these devices shall be independent from the PLC power supply and its associated uninterruptible power system.

R. Where applicable, enclosures shall be furnished with red laminated plastic warning signs in each section. The sign shall be inscribed "WARNING - This Device Is Connected to Multiple Sources of Power." Letters in the word "WARNING" shall be 0.75 inch high, white.

S. The interconnection between equipment and panel shall be by means of flexible cables provided to permit withdrawal of the equipment from the cabinet without disconnecting the plugs.

3.02 PAINTING/FINISHING

A. All steel enclosures shall be free from dirt, grease, and burrs and shall be treated with a phosphatizing metal conditioner before painting. All surfaces shall be filled, sanded, and finish coated by spraying a 1-2 mil epoxy prime coat and smooth, level, high grade textured finish between flat and semi-gloss shine. The colors shall be selected by the Owner from a minimum of six color samples provided. Refer to Division 09 for additional requirements.

B. Materials and techniques shall be of types specifically designed to produce a finish of superior quality with respect to adherence, as well as impact and corrosion resistance.

C. Panels fabricated from stainless steel shall not be painted.

D. Panels fabricated from non-metallic materials (e.g., FRP) shall be gel-coated and shall not be otherwise painted.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 67 63
UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation all uninterruptible power systems, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

B. One UPS shall be provided for each operator workstation and its peripherals (i.e. printer, network equipment, radio, etc.) provided under this Contract.

C. One UPS shall be provided for each programmable logic controller (PLC) panel or remote telemetry unit (RTU) and its appurtenant equipment provided under this Contract. However, courtesy receptacles in PLC and RTU cabinets shall not be powered by the UPS.

D. UPS units shall be mounted in or near enclosures containing digital hardware, unless otherwise specified or shown on the Drawings, as follows:

1. UPS units for operator's consoles shall be mounted within the consoles.

2. UPS units for control panels containing PLCs shall be mounted either within the cabinet or in an adjacent cabinet of suitable environmental rating.

3. UPS units for RTUs shall be mounted within the RTU cabinet.

E. Where the UPS is mounted within a dedicated enclosure, that enclosure shall be properly sized for heat dissipation and all other applicable requirements as specified in Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks and its subordinate Sections.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 62 00 – Computer System Hardware and Ancillaries

C. Section 40 63 43 – Programmable Logic Controllers

090320

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Sizing calculations, in Watts (W) or Volt-Amps (VA), for all UPS units.

B. Heat dissipation calculations for all enclosures that contain a UPS unit.

C. Run time calculation.

PART 2 – EQUIPMENT

2.01 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SYSTEMS

A. Each UPS shall consist of a freestanding UPS module and battery modules as required to meet backup run time requirements.

B. UPS units shall be true on-line type. Each UPS shall be sized to match the maximum power requirements of the associated digital equipment, control panel power supplies and accessories. Under normal operation, the AC power shall be converted to DC. The DC power from the battery charger shall supply an inverter and maintain the battery module at full charge. The AC output from the inverter shall be fed to the associated digital equipment power supply unit and/or other equipment power supplies as appropriate. Upon loss of the AC supply, the inverter shall continue to supply normal power to the device, drawing DC from the batteries.

C. An automatic bypass switch shall be provided with UPS units of greater than 2 kVA capacity. The transfer switch shall be of the solid state, make-before-break type and shall automatically transfer load from the inverter to the AC line in the event of an inverter malfunction. The total transfer time shall be 5 milliseconds or less. The transfer switch shall be provided with a manual override.

D. A manually operated maintenance bypass switch shall be provided for each UPS installation, other than for computers, to allow the hardware to be powered while the UPS is removed for maintenance. The bypass switch shall be the make-before-break type to ensure continuous power to the load.

E. Loss of AC power shall be monitored on the line side of the UPS and reported via normally closed (fail safe) unpowered contacts to the associated PLC/RTU.

F. Each UPS shall meet the following requirements:

1. Input voltage shall be 117 VAC, single phase, 60 Hz.

2. Voltage regulation shall be +/-5 percent for line and load changes.

3. The output frequency shall be phase-locked to the input AC line on AC operation and shall be 60 hertz +/-0.5 percent when on battery operation.

4. The batteries shall be of the sealed, lead acid or lead calcium gelled electrolyte type, or VRLA absorbed glass mat (AGM) type. The battery modules shall have a

minimum full load backup time of 30 minutes for PLC-based control panels, and 45 minutes for remote telemetry units.

5. The UPS capacity shall be sized for 150% of the connected load.

6. A status monitoring and control panel shall be provided and shall include the following:

    a. Status indicating lights for both normal and abnormal conditions.

    b. Individual alarm contacts that shall close upon:

        1) Loss of the AC line

        2) Low battery level

        3) Fault condition.

    c. Contacts shall be wired to the closest discrete input subsystem. Alternatively, an RS-232 or USB port shall provide UPS status to an operator workstation. All required interface software and hardware shall be provided.

    d. Circuit breaker for the AC input.

7. Sound absorbing enclosure.

8. EMI/RF noise filtering.

9. Surge protection shall be provided on the AC input circuit, which shall have a UL TVSS clamping voltage rating of 400 V with a <5 ns response time.

G. UPS systems shall be the 9PX series by Eaton, Smart-UPS On-line series by APC/Schneider-Electric, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Where the UPS is mounted within the PLC or RTU cabinet, it shall not interfere with access to other equipment or wiring within the panel (i.e., it shall not be necessary to move or remove the UPS to remove or service other panel-mounted equipment). For floor-mounted PLC cabinets with bottom wiring access (including those cabinets with legs), the UPS shall be placed on a dedicated shelf within the cabinet.

B. Refer to Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 68 00.13
PROCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE (MODIFY EXISTING)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install, and place in satisfactory operation all control and information system software with all required programming and software appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 93 – Control System Input/Output List

C. Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions

PART 2 – PRODUCTS - (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 OVERALL SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

A. The Owner's existing Human-Machine Interface (HMI) software, including but not limited to all relevant displays, alarm summary pages, data collection, and historical trending/reporting, shall be modified to include all work performed under this Contract. The existing software is Factory Talk by Rockwell Automation.

B. The Owner's existing control system shall be modified to include the inputs and outputs specified in the Input/Output Schedule and in other Sections of this Division.

3.02 SOFTWARE MODIFICATIONS

A. All HMI software configuration performed under this Contract shall be coordinated with the Owner and shall match in all possible respects the "look and feel," in the opinion of the Engineer, of the existing SCADA System. Specified features and functions of this Contract that do not already exist, even if only for "look and feel," shall be provided. Details on how to best implement these features and functions shall be discussed with Owner and Engineer.

B. Major HMI software scope of work shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

031519

1. Create new graphic displays showing the new facilities and functions described herein complete with all associated equipment and instrumentation.

2. Modify the existing plant overview display(s) for the SCADA system to include the new facilities and equipment, and create links to the new screens.

3. Modify existing alarm summary pages to incorporate new monitoring data into the alarm displays.

4. Modify existing reports to include the additional monitoring points specified under this Contract.

5. Create new real-time and historical trends, and coordinate with the Owner appropriate grouping of the trend charts.

6. Update the system status display to include new hardware provided under this Contract.

C. Ladder logic resident in existing PLCs shall be modified to perform the functions described as specified herein and in Section 40 61 96 – Process Control Descriptions. Specifically, the existing PLCs shall be programmed to accept the I/O specified in Section 40 61 93 – Control System Input/Output List and to make this data readily available on the plant network and shall be programmed to execute the logic necessary to implement all control functions associated with the scope of work specified under this Contract.

D. All discrete and analog data acquisition, pre-processing, storage and process control functions shall be performed at the PLC level. The HMI software shall not be used for this purpose.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 70 00
INSTRUMENTATION FOR PROCESS SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The instrumentation subcontractor shall furnish, install, test and place in operation instruments as scheduled together with all signal converters, transmitters, isolators, amplifiers, etc. to interface with the process control system as shown on the Drawings and as specified. The Contractor may elect to install sensors on process lines provided that the instrumentation subcontractor provides full on-site supervision during installation. Mounting of associated indicators, sensors, sampling pumps, power supplies, brackets and appurtenances shall be provided as indicated.

B. It is the intent of the Contract Documents that all process taps, isolation valves, nipples, penetrations, embedded instrumentation supports, conduit, wiring, terminations, and the installation of process instrumentation on process lines shall be provided under this Contract. The Instrumentation Subcontractor shall supervise installation of equipment provided where installation is by other Subcontractors or Contractors.

C. Tapping and connections for primary process sensors shall be sized to suit each individual installation and the requirements of the instrument served. The Contractor shall ensure that the location, supports, orientation and dimensions of the connections and tapping for instruments are such as to provide the proper bracing, the required accuracy of measurement, protection of the sensor from accidental damage and accessibility for maintenance while the plant is in operation. Isolation valves shall be provided at all process taps.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 61 91 – Process Control System Instrument List

C. Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks

D. Section 40 79 00 – Miscellaneous Instruments, Valves, and Fittings

E. Section 40 61 22 – Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts, General

F. Instruments furnished with mechanical equipment shall be furnished, installed, tested and calibrated as specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

09032020

1.03 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Tools, supplies and spare parts shall be provided as specified in Section 40 61 22 -- Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts, General.

B. Additional items as recommended by the analytical instrument manufacturers or as described for the specified analytical instrument sections shall be provided.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. All instrumentation supplied shall be the manufacturer's latest design. Unless otherwise specified, instruments shall be solid state, electronic, using enclosures to suit specified environmental conditions. Microprocessor-based equipment shall be supplied unless otherwise specified. All instruments shall be provided with mounting hardware and floor stands, wall brackets, or instrument racks as shown on the Drawings, or as required.

B. Equipment installed in a hazardous area shall meet or exceed Class, Group, and Division requirements as shown on the Drawings, to comply with the National Electrical Code.

C. All field instrumentation for outdoor service shall be provided with enclosures that are suitable for outdoor service, as follows:

1. Where the manufacturer's enclosures are suitable for outdoor service, they shall be provided with instrument sunshades. Sunshades shall be Style E as manufactured by O'Brien Corporation, or equal. Where possible, these instruments shall be mounted in a north facing direction.

2. Where the manufacturer's standard enclosures are not suitable for outdoor service, instruments shall be mounted in Field Panels in accordance with Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks, or may be furnished with Vipak instrument field enclosures as manufactured by O'Brien Corporation, equivalent by Intertec, or equal. It shall not be necessary to provide the manufacturer's NEMA 4 or 4X enclosures for instruments that will be subsequently mounted in separate field panels.

D. All instruments shall return to accurate measurement without manual resetting upon restoration of power after a power failure.

E. Unless otherwise shown or specified, local indicators shall be provided for all instruments. Where instruments are located in inaccessible locations, local indicators shall be provided and shall be mounted as specified in Paragraph 3.01 B herein. All indicator readouts shall be linear in process units. Readouts of 0 to 100% shall not be acceptable (except for speed and valve position). Isolated outputs shall be provided for all transmitters.

F. Unless otherwise specified, field instrument and power supply enclosures shall be Type 316 stainless steel, fiberglass (or similar, per Engineer's judgement) or PVC coated copper-free cast aluminum NEMA 4X construction.

G. Where separate elements and transmitters are required, they shall be fully matched, and unless otherwise noted, installed adjacent to the sensor. Special cables or equipment shall be supplied by the associated equipment manufacturer.

H. Electronic equipment shall utilize printed circuitry and shall be coated (tropicalized) to prevent contamination by dust, moisture and fungus. Solid state components shall be conservatively rated for long term performance and dependability over ambient atmosphere fluctuations. Ambient conditions shall be -20 to 50 degrees C and 20 to 100 percent relative humidity, unless otherwise specified. Field mounted equipment and system components shall be designed for installation in dusty, humid, and corrosive service conditions.

I. All devices furnished hereunder shall be heavy duty type, designed for continuous industrial service. The system shall contain products of a single manufacturer, insofar as possible, and shall consist of equipment models that are currently in production. All equipment provided, where applicable, shall be of modular construction and shall be capable of field expansion.

J. All non-loop-powered instruments and equipment shall be designed to operate on a 60 Hz AC power source at a nominal 117 V, plus or minus 10 percent, except where specifically noted. All regulators and power supplies required for compliance with the above shall be provided. Where equipment requires voltage regulation, constant voltage transformers shall be supplied.

K. All analog transmitter and controller outputs shall be isolated, 4 to 20 milliamps into a load of 0 to 750 ohms, unless specifically noted otherwise. All switches shall have double pole, double throw contacts rated at a minimum of 600 VA, unless specified otherwise.

L. Materials and equipment used shall be UL approved wherever such approved equipment and materials are available.

2.02 ANALYTICAL INSTRUMENTATION

A. Liquid samples shall not pass through housings containing analyzer electronics. Process fluid temperature will be within a range of 40 to 90 degrees F.

B. Where ambient temperatures will affect accuracy by more than 1 percent of span, a suitable isothermal enclosure with thermostatically controlled space heater shall be provided.

C. Sample assemblies shall be suitable for submersion or flow-through service as noted and shall be chemically inert to constituents of raw wastewater solids or other chemical

environment, as scheduled. Where the sample is drawn prior to filtration, the sample assemblies shall be capable of handling solids and grease.

D. Each analyzer requiring reagents or other replaceable parts shall be furnished with sufficient chemicals and replaceable parts for startup and acceptance tests and the specified warranty period.

E. Contractor's submittals on these analyzers shall include information on monthly reagent consumption and a list of replaceable parts required for periodic maintenance and the recommended operating periods between replacements. Installation of analyzers and sample preparation shall be in accordance with the analyzer manufacturer's instructions.

F. Analysis instrumentation performance, accuracy and reproducibility shall be as prescribed in APHA/AWWA/WEF "Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater", latest edition. For those measurements specified herein, for which performance characteristics are not listed in the above, the supplier shall state instrument performance characteristics. The "referee" method shall be as prescribed in EPA Methods for Chemical Analysis of Water and Wastes (1971).

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. General

1. Equipment shall be located so that it is accessible for operation and maintenance. The instrumentation subcontractor shall examine the Drawings and shop drawings for various items of equipment in order to determine the best arrangement for the work as a whole and shall supervise the installation of process instrumentation supplied under this Division.

2. Work shall be performed in compliance with all applicable local codes and practices. Where the Contract Documents do not delineate precise installation procedures, the latest version of the American Petroleum Institute (API) Recommended Practice 551 manual (API RP 551) shall be used as a guide to installation procedures.

B. Equipment Mounting and Support

1. Field equipment shall be wall mounted or mounted on two inch diameter pipe stands welded to a 10 inch square by 1/2 inch thick base plate unless shown adjacent to a wall or otherwise noted. Materials of construction shall be aluminum or 316 stainless steel. Instruments attached directly to concrete shall be spaced out from the mounting surface not less than 1/2 inch by use of phenolic spacers. Expansion anchors in walls shall be used for securing equipment or wall supports to concrete surfaces. Unless otherwise noted, field instruments shall be mounted between 48 and 60 inches above the floor or work platform.

2. Embedded pipe supports and sleeves shall be Schedule 40, Type 316 stainless steel pipe, ASA B 36.19, with stainless steel blind flange for equipment mounting, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Materials for miscellaneous mounting brackets and supports shall be Type 316 stainless steel construction.

4. Pipe stands, miscellaneous mounting brackets and supports shall comply with the requirements of Division 05 of the specifications.

5. Transmitters shall be oriented such that output indicators are readily visible.

C. Control and Signal Wiring

1. Electrical, control and signal wiring connections to transmitters and elements mounted on process piping or equipment shall be made through liquid tight flexible conduit. Conduit seals shall be provided where conduits enter all field instrument enclosures and all cabinetry housing electrical or electronic equipment.

3.02 ADJUSTMENT AND CLEANING

A. The instrumentation subcontractor shall comply with the requirements of Division 01 of these Specifications and all instrumentation and control system tests, inspection, and calibration requirements for all instrumentation and controls provided under this Contract and specified herein. The Engineer, or his/her designated representative(s), reserves the right to witness any test, inspection, calibration or start up activity. Acceptance by the Engineer of plans, reports, or documentation relating to testing or commissioning activity shall not relieve the Contractor of his/her responsibility for meeting all specified requirements.

B. The instrumentation subcontractor shall provide the services of factory trained technicians, tools and equipment to field calibrate, test, inspect and adjust each instrument to its specified performance requirement in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and instructions. Instruments which fails to meet Contract requirements, or published manufacturer performance specification for functional and operational parameters, shall be repaired or replaced, at the discretion of the Engineer, at no cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall bear all costs and provide all personnel, equipment and materials necessary to implement all installation tests and inspection activities for equipment specified herein.

C. At least 60 days before the anticipated initiation of installation testing, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer a detailed description of the installation test(s) to be conducted to demonstrate the correct operation of the instrumentation supplied hereunder.

D. Field instrument calibration shall conform to the following requirements:

1. The instrumentation subcontractor shall provide the services of factory trained instrumentation technicians, tools and equipment to field calibrate or verify factory calibration of each instrument supplied under this Contract and existing instruments shown to its specified accuracy in accordance with the manufacturer's specification and instructions for calibration. Calibration and verification shall take place under actual process conditions. Forcing outputs shall not be acceptable.

2. Each instrument shall be calibrated/verified at 0, 25, 50, 75 and 100 percent of span using test instruments to simulate inputs and read outputs. Test instruments shall be rated to an accuracy of at least five (5) times greater than the specified accuracy of the instrument being calibrated. Where applicable, such test instruments shall have accuracy’s as set forth by the National Institute for Standards and Technology (NIST).

3. The instrumentation subcontractor shall provide a written calibration/verification sheet to the Engineer for each instrument, certifying that it has been calibrated to its published specified accuracy. The Contractor shall submit proposed calibration sheets for various types of instruments for Engineer approval prior to the start of calibration. This sheet shall include but not be limited to date, instrument tag numbers, brief description of how the calibration process was performed, calibration data for the various procedures described herein, name of person performing the calibration, a listing of the published specified accuracy, permissible tolerance at each point of calibration, calibration reading as finally adjusted within tolerance, defect noted, corrective action required and corrections made. For electronic or powered instruments, the calibration/verification sheet shall also list all configurable parameters that have been modified from their default factory setting.

4. If doubt exists as to the correct method for calibrating or checking the calibration/verification of an instrument, the manufacturer's printed recommendations shall be used as an acceptable standard, subject to the approval of the Engineer.

5. Upon completion of calibration, devices calibrated hereunder shall not be subjected to adjustments, sudden movements, accelerations, or shocks, and shall be installed in permanent protected positions not subject to moisture, dirt, and excessive temperature variations. Caution shall be exercised to prevent such devices from being subjected to over-voltages, incorrect voltages, overpressure or incorrect air. Damaged equipment shall be replaced and re-calibrated/verified at no cost to the Owner. Equipment that has been adjusted, modified, or moved or there is evidence of such activity shall be re-calibrated/verified at no cost to the Owner.

6. After completion of instrumentation installation, the instrumentation subcontractor shall perform a loop check. The Contractor shall submit final loop test results with all instruments listed in the loop. Loop test results shall be signed by all representatives involved for each loop test.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 71 13.13
INLINE MAGNETIC FLOW METERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation the magnetic flow meters, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

1.03 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Furnish one spare signal converter.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MAGNETIC FLOW METER SYSTEMS

A. Magnetic flow meter systems shall include a magnetic flow tube and a microprocessor-based "smart" transmitter that is capable of converting and transmitting a signal from the flow tube. Magnetic flow meters shall utilize the characterized field principle of electromagnetic induction and shall produce DC signals directly proportional to the liquid flow rate.

B. Each meter shall be furnished with a 316 stainless steel or carbon steel metering tube and carbon steel flanges with a polyurethane, ceramic, neoprene, hard rubber, or Teflon liner as required by the application and/or as specified herein. Liner shall have a minimum thickness of 0.125 inches. The inside diameter of the liner shall be within 0.125 inches of the inside diameter of the adjoining pipe. Liner protectors shall be provided on all flow tubes.

C. The flow tube shall be provided with flush mounted electrodes.

D. Grounding rings shall be provided for both ends of all meters.

E. All materials of construction for metallic wetted parts (electrodes, grounding rings, etc.) shall be minimum 316 stainless steel, but shall be compatible with the process fluid for each meter in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.

020119

F. Flow tube shall be rated for pressures up to 1.1 times the flange rating of adjacent piping. System shall be rated for ambient temperatures of -30 to +65°C. Meter and transmitter housings shall meet NEMA 4X/IP66 requirements as a minimum. When meter and transmitter are located in classified explosion hazard areas, the meter and transmitter housings shall be selected with rating to meet the requirements for use in those areas. Where the flow tube is subject to submergence through installation in a meter vault or similar location, the flow tube assembly shall be rated NEMA 6P/IP68 and electronics shall be factory sealed against moisture intrusion. The use of field kits for modifying NEMA 4/4X/IP66 flow tubes to submergence duty shall not be acceptable. The associated transmitter shall be located in an area not subject to submergence.

G. The transmitter shall provide pulsed DC coil drive current to the flow tube and shall convert the returning signal to a linear, isolated 4-20 mA DC signal. The transmitter shall utilize "smart" electronics and shall contain automatic, continuous zero correction, signal processing routines for noise rejection, and an integral LCD readout capable of displaying flow rate and totalized flow. The transmitter shall continuously run self-diagnostic routines and report errors via English language messages.

H. The transmitter's preamplifier input impedance shall be a minimum of 109-1011 ohms which shall make the system suited for the amplification of low-level input signals and capable of operation with a material build up on the electrodes.

I. The transmitter shall provide an automatic low flow cutoff below a user configurable low flow condition (0-10%). The transmitter's outputs shall also be capable of being forced to zero by an external contact operation.

J. Each flow tube shall be factory calibrated and assigned a calibration constant or factor to be entered into the associated transmitter as part of the meter configuration parameters. Manual calibration of the flow meter shall not be required. Meter configuration parameters shall be stored in non-volatile memory in the transmitter. An output hold feature shall be provided to maintain a constant output during configuration changes.

K. The transmitter shall be capable of communicating digitally with a remote configuration device via a frequencyshiftkeyed, high frequency signal superimposed on the 420 mA output signal. The remote configuration device shall be capable of being placed anywhere in the 420 mA output loop. The remote configuration device shall be as specified under Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems. A password-based security lockout feature shall be provided to prevent unauthorized modification of configuration parameters.

L. Accuracy shall be 0.30% of rate over the flow velocity range of 1.0 to 10.0 m/s (3.0 to 33 ft/sec) and 0.5% between 0.1 m/s and 1.0 m/s (1-3 ft/s). Repeatability shall be + 0.1% of rate; minimum turndown shall be 100:1. Minimum required liquid conductivity shall not be greater than 5 uS/cm. Maximum response time shall be adjustable between 1 and 100 seconds as a minimum. Transmitter ambient temperature operating limits shall be -10 to +50°C. Power supply shall be 115 VAC, 60 Hz.

M. Flow tubes shall be 150-lb flange mounted unless otherwise noted. The cables for interconnecting the meter and transmitter shall be furnished by the manufacturer. Transmitter shall be mounted integrally on flow tube, wall, or 2-inch pipe mounted as shown in the Drawings and/or as specified.

N. Magnetic flow meter systems shall be Model 8750W with optional high accuracy as manufactured by Rosemount, or equivalent by ABB, Endress + Hauser, Foxboro, Krohne, Siemens, Toshiba or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Ground magnetic flow meter flow tubes and grounding rings in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Refer to Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 72 76.26
LEVEL SWITCHES (FLOATS)

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation the float level switches, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 LEVEL SWITCHES (FLOATS)

A. Level switches of the direct acting float operated design shall be comprised of a hermetically sealed, approximately 5-inch diameter plastic casing float, containing microswitches and flexibly supported by means of a heavy neoprene or PVC jacket, with three-conductor cable a minimum of 20 feet in length. Unless otherwise specified, media specific gravity is 0.95 to 1.05. Microswitches shall be one normally open and one normally closed, 5A115V AC capacity. Float hangers and supports shall be provided as shown on the installation detail drawings.

B. Float switches shall be Model ENM as manufactured by Flygt, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

END OF SECTION

020119

SECTION 40 73 20
PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation the pressure transmitters, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

C. Section 40 79 00 – Miscellaneous Instruments, Valves, and Fittings

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GAUGE PRESSURE INDICATING TRANSMITTERS

A. Gauge pressure transmitters shall have piezoresistive measuring cells with a metallic or ceramic process isolating diaphragm directly in contact with the process liquid. Silicone oil fill fluid shall be used to transfer the pressure from the process isolating diaphragm to the measuring cell. Calibrated span and zero shall be continuously adjustable externally over the entire range. Span and zero adjustments shall be capable of being disabled internally. The maximum zero elevation and maximum zero suppression shall be adjustable to anywhere within sensor limits. Factory set correction coefficients shall be stored in the sensor's non-volatile memory for correction and linearization of the sensor output in the electronics section.

B. Transmitters shall meet the following requirements:

1. Housing: NEMA 4X with low copper, die-cast aluminum body, epoxy coated

2. Wetted Materials: Type 316 stainless steel unless otherwise indicated or required for process fluid compatibility

3. Accuracy: +/- 0.04% of calibrated span

4. Rangeability: 100:1

08-26-24

5. Damping: 0 to 100 seconds, adjustable

6. Output: Linear and isolated 4-20 mA with HART communication protocol

7. Power Supply: 24 VDC, 2-wire loop powered

8. Display: 4-digit (minimum) LCD

9. Overpressure Protection: Yes

10. Ambient Conditions: -40 to 85 degrees C; 0 – 100% relative humidity

11. Operating Temperature: -40 to 100 degrees C

12. Process Connection: 1/2" FNPT

C. All mounting flanges, diaphragms, O-rings and materials used in construction shall be non-corroding and compatible with each other and compatible with the liquid being measured.

D. The piezoresistive silicon pressure sensor shall be mechanically, electrically, and thermally isolated from the process and the environment. Factory set correction coefficients shall be stored in the sensor's non-volatile memory for correction and linearization of the sensor output in the electronics section. The electronics section shall correct the digital signal from the sensor and convert it into a 4-20 mA analog signal for transmission to receiving devices. The electronics section shall contain configuration parameters and diagnostic data in non-volatile EEPROM memory and shall be capable of communicating, via a digital signal superimposed on the 4-20 mA output signal, with a remote interface device.

E. Gauge pressure indicating transmitters shall be furnished with 316 stainless steel two-valve manifold assembly where a block valve provides instrument isolation and a drain/vent valve allows venting, draining, or calibration. Two-valve manifold assembly shall be Model 306 Series as manufactured by Rosemount, or equivalent by instrument manufacturer.

F. Gauge pressure indicating transmitters shall be Model 3051S as manufactured by Emerson Process Management (Rosemount), Siemens Sitrans P420, Endress + Hauser Model Cerabar S PMP71 Platinum, or equal.

2.02 FLANGE MOUNTED LEVEL INDICATING TRANSMITTERS

A. Flange-mounted liquid level indicating transmitters shall be the same as gauge pressure transmitters except for body type and shall utilize an integral factory-assembled direct-mount flush flanged diaphragm seal.

B. The flange-mounted sensor shall consist of a special non-corrosive isolating diaphragm with fill fluid in a sealed system to transmit liquid pressure to the sensing element. A second isolating diaphragm shall transmit pressure through the fill fluid to the sensing diaphragm in the center of the capacitance cell. An isolating diaphragm and fluid fill shall also be provided on the opposite side of the sensing diaphragm to convey atmospheric or reference pressure.

C. All mounting flanges, diaphragms, O-rings and materials used in construction shall be non-corroding, compatible with each other, and compatible with the liquid being measured.

D. Flange-mounted liquid level transmitters shall be Model 3051S Level Transmitter as manufactured by Emerson Process Management (Rosemount), Endress + Hauser Model Deltabar S FMD77, Siemens Model Sitrans P500, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 73 36
PRESSURE AND DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SWITCHES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation the pressure switches, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PRESSURE SWITCHES

A. Pressure, vacuum, and differential pressure switches shall be single or dual action with an adjustable setpoint for the process requirement and/or as specified herein. Switches shall be diaphragm or piston operated and activate S.P.D.T. snap action switches on increasing or decreasing pressure. Minimum differential shall be less than 10 percent of the range. Deadband shall be adjustable. Allowable surge pressure shall be a minimum 1.5 times the range. Each pressure switch shall have visible scale.

B. Pressure switches shall have a contact rating of 10 amperes at 120 volts AC. Pressure switches shall be in NEMA 4X enclosures. Switches shall have a repeatable accuracy of 1 percent of range. Pressure switches shall be isolated from the process fluid by a diaphragm seal or an isolation ring in locations as shown on the Contract Drawings and/or as specified. Wetted parts materials shall be compatible with the process fluid for corrosion resistance. Pressure switches shall be manufactured by ASCO, SOR, Inc., Ashcroft, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

020119

A. Refer to Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 78 00
PANEL MOUNTED INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation the panel mounted instruments, with all spare parts, accessories, and appurtenances as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Control and Information System Scope and General Requirements

B. Section 40 62 00 – Control and Information System Hardware, General

C. Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks

1.03 GENERAL INFORMATION AND DESCRIPTION

A. All equipment mounted on the face of a panel shall conform to the same NEMA rating specified for the panel construction.

1.04 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Tools, supplies and spare parts shall be provided as specified in Section 40 61 22 – Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts, General. In addition, the following specific spare parts items shall be provided:

1. One of each type of panel mounted equipment (i.e., indicators, signal converters, etc.) provided under this Contract.

2. Five of each type of interposing control relay provided under this Contract.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 OPERATORS

A. Control operators shall be 30.5 mm, round, heavy-duty, oil tight NEMA 4X corrosion resistant. For Hazardous areas, control operators shall be rated NEMA 7.

031519

B. Pushbuttons shall be non-illuminated, spring release type. Pushbuttons shall include a full guard. Panic stop/alarm pushbuttons shall be red mushroom type with manual-pull

release. Selector switches shall be non-illuminated, maintained contact type, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Pilot lights shall be of the proper control voltage, push-to-test LED type with lens and LED lamp colors as specified below.

1. Red: stopped, off, or closed

2. Green: running, on, or opened

3. Amber: fault, alarm, or warning

4. White: generic non-alarm status

5. Blue: control power on

D. Control operators shall have legend plates as specified herein, indicated on the Drawings, or otherwise directed by the Engineer. Legend plates shall be plastic, black field (background) with white lettering. Engraved nameplates shall be securely fastened above each control operator. If adequate space is not available, the nameplate shall be mounted below the operator.

E. Control operators for all equipment under this Contract shall be of the same type and manufacturer unless otherwise indicated. Control operators such as pushbuttons (PB), selector switches (SS), and pilot lights (PL) shall be Cutler-Hammer/Westinghouse Type E34, Square D Company Type SK, or equal

2.02 ELECTRONIC INDICATORS

A. Electronic indicators shall be 3.5 or 6 digit, as appropriate, with 0.56" high red LED display. Indicators shall be provided with nameplate and scale calibrated to match the calibration of the primary element. The unit shall be designed primarily for use with 4-20 mA current loop signal circuits. Indicator operating voltage shall be 115 VAC 10%, 60 Hz. Indicator controls shall include three (3) front-panel pushbuttons for modifying alarm values and other indicator setup. Two (2) form-C relays shall be provided for each indicator. Relay contact outputs shall be rated 5A, 120/240 VAC, resistive load. Where required, a regulated and isolated 24 V excitation power supply shall be provided. Indicators shall be suitable for indoor or outdoor service as required and shall have the same NEMA enclosure rating as the associated enclosure.

B. Indicators shall be Red Lion Model IMP or APLCL, Precision Digital, or equal.

2.03 RELAYS

A. Interposing control relays (CR)

1. Where required to interface between motor control centers, equipment controls, and control panels, interposing relays and associated control wiring circuitry shall be furnished and installed to provide the monitoring and/or control functions specified herein.

2. Interposing relays shall be small format type, DPDT, minimum 10 amp, 120 VAC contact rating.

3. Relay coils shall be 120 VAC or 24 VDC as required to interface with equipment.

4. Relays shall have a flag indicator to show relay status, a pushbutton to allow manual operation of the relay, and an internal pilot light to indicate power to the coil.

5. Relays shall be as manufactured by Square D, Potter & Brumfield, Allen-Bradley, or equal.

B. Timing Relays (TR)

1. Timing relays shall be electronic type with 120 VAC coils unless otherwise specified or indicated on the Drawings. Timers shall be provided with a minimum of two SPDT timed output contacts and instantaneous contacts where required. Contact ratings shall be the same as for interposing relays.

2. Timing relays shall be the general purpose plug-in type, Type JCK as manufactured by Square D Company, equivalent by Eaton/Cutler-Hammer, equivalent by Allen-Bradley, or equal.

2.04 TOTALIZERS

A. Totalizing counters shall be provided for flush panel, spring-clip mounting. Face dimensions of the totalizing counters shall be no larger than 1-1/8-inches high by 2-inches wide. Totalizing counters shall contain eight digits. Height of the digits shall not be less than 5/32-inch. Numerals shall be white on a black background. The counter shall be non-resettable and shall be totally compatible for operation on the pulses supplied by the associated instrument or integrator. The totalizing counter shall be capable of a maximum count rate of 25 counts/second.

B. Legend plates shall be provided for each of the totalizing counters with white letters on a black background with legends as specified below.

C. Totalizing counters shall be manufactured by Kessler-Ellis, or equal.

2.05 ALARM HORNS

A. Alarm horns shall be general-purpose type, panel-mounted, and shall be suitable for indoor or weatherproof service, as required. Power supply shall be either 115 VAC or 24 VDC. Horns shall be capable of producing 100 dB at 10 feet and shall have adjustable volume.

B. Horns shall be Vibratone series as manufactured by Federal Signal Corporation, McMaster-Carr equivalent, Edwards Signaling Company equivalent, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks, for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 78 56

ISOLATORS, INTRINSICALLY-SAFE BARRIERS, AND SURGE SUPPRESSORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and place in satisfactory operation the isolators, intrinsically-safe barriers, and surge protection devices (SPDs) as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Control and Information System Scope and General Requirements

B. Section 40 62 00 – Control and Information System Hardware, General

C. Section 40 67 00 – Control System Equipment Panels and Racks

D. Section 40 78 00 – Panel Mounted Instruments

1.03 TOOLS, SUPPLIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Tools, supplies and spare parts shall be provided as specified in Section 40 61 22 – Tools, Supplies, and Spare Parts, General.

B. In addition, the following specific spare parts items shall be provided:

1. Five of each type of surge protection device provided under this Contract.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 SURGE PROTECTION

A. General

1. All electrical and electronic elements shall be protected against damage due to electrical transients induced in interconnecting lines from lightning discharges and nearby electrical systems.

2. Manufacturer's Requirements: All surge protection devices shall be manufactured by a company that has been engaged in the design, development, and manufacture of such devices for at least 5 years. Acceptable manufacturers shall be Phoenix Contact, Edco, Transtector, Weidmuller, or equal.

031519

3. Surge protection device installations shall comply with UL 94, the National Electric Code (NEC), and all applicable local codes.

4. Surge protection devices shall be installed as close to the equipment to be protected as practically possible.

5. Device Locations: As a minimum, provide surge protection devices at the following locations:

    a. At connections between AC power and electrical/electronic equipment, including, but not limited to, panels, assemblies, and field mounted analog transmitters.

    b. At both ends of signal circuits that have any portion of the circuit extending outside of a building.

    c. At both ends of copper-based communication cables which extend outside of a building, including at field instruments and the field side of analog valve position signals.

    d. On all external telephone communication lines.

B. AC power protection

1. Surge protection device assemblies for connections to AC power supply circuits shall:

    a. Be provided with two 3-terminal barrier terminal strips capable of accepting No. 12 AWG solids or stranded copper wire. One terminal strip shall be located on each end of the unit.

    b. Have a nonflammable enclosure that meets or exceeds UL 94 V0 flammability requirements. The surge protection device shall be provided with provisions for mounting to interior of equipment racks, cabinets, or to the exterior of freestanding equipment.

    c. Be constructed as multistage devices consisting of gas tube arrestors, high energy metal oxide varistors, or silicon avalanche suppression diodes. Assemblies shall automatically recover from surge events and shall have status indication lights.

    d. Comply with all requirements of UL 1449, latest edition.

    e. Be able to withstand a peak surge current of 10,000 amps based on a test surge waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time and a 20-microsecond exponential decay time, as defined in UL 1449.

f. Have the following characteristics:

1) Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: 150VAC

2) Maximum Operating Current: 20 amps

3) Ambient Temperature Range: -20 degrees C to +65 degrees C

4) Response Time: 5 nanoseconds

C. Analog signal circuit protection

1. Surge protection device assemblies for analog signal circuits shall:

a. Have four lead devices with DIN Rail mounting.

b. Have a nonflammable enclosure that meets or exceeds UL 94 V0 flammability requirements.

c. Be constructed as multistage devices consisting of gas tube arrestors and silicon avalanche suppression diodes. Gas tube arrestors and diodes shall be separated by a series impedance of no more than 20 ohms. Assemblies shall automatically recover from surge events.

d. Comply with all requirements of UL 497B.

e. Be able to withstand a peak surge current of 10,000 amps based on a test surge waveform with an 8-microsecond rise time and a 20-microsecond exponential decay time, as defined in UL 1449.

f. Limit line-to-line voltage to 40 volts on 24VDC circuits.

g. Have the following characteristics:

1) Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: 28VDC

2) Ambient Temperature Range: -20 degrees C to +65 degrees C

3) Response Time (Line-to-Line): 5 ns

D. Communication circuit protection

1. Surge protection devices for copper-based data communication circuits shall:

a. Be designed for the specific data communication media and protocol to be protected (e.g., telephone, serial, parallel, network, data highway, coax, twinaxial, twisted pair, RF).

b. Provide protection of equipment to within the equipment's surge withstand levels for applicable standard test wave forms of the following standards:

1) IEC 60-1 / DIN VDE 0432 part 2

2) CCITT K17 / DIN VDE 0845 part 2

3) IEEE C62.31

c. Have a nonflammable enclosure that meets or exceeds UL 94 V0 flammability requirements.

d. Provide automatic recovery.

2.02 INTRINSICALLY SAFE BARRIERS AND RELAYS

A. Intrinsically safe relays and barriers shall be provided where required to interface with equipment located in Classified (i.e., hazardous) areas.

B. Intrinsically safe relays and barriers shall be FM approved.

C. Manufacturer shall be

1. Pepperl+Fuchs

2. Crouse Hinds

3. Square D

4. Or equal.

2.03 ISOLATORS AND CONVERTERS

A. Signal converters shall be provided as required to provide control functions and to interface instrumentation and controls, equipment panels, motor control centers and other instrumentation and controls supplied under other Divisions to the controls provided herein.

B. General Requirements

1. Converters shall be of the miniature type, utilizing all solid-state circuitry suitable for mounting within new or existing cabinetry. Where sufficient cabinet space is not available, sub panels or supplemental enclosures shall be provided.

2. Power supply shall be 120V, 60 hertz where required by the converter, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Repeatability shall be 0.1% of span, deadband shall be 0.1% span, maximum.

4. Where specific converters are not listed, but are required to interface with the process control system, they shall comply with the general requirements stated herein.

C. Current to Current (I/I) Isolators

1. Current to current isolators shall be furnished where necessary to provide an isolated current loop, calculations or signal amplification between the plant process control system and instrumentation and control loops. Isolators shall be sized such that resistance of existing loops shall not exceed maximum rated resistance.

2. Isolators shall be as manufactured by AGM, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

D. Voltage to Current (E/I) Transducers

1. Voltage to current (or current to voltage) transducers shall convert a voltage signal of one magnitude to a 4 20 milliamp DC current signal. The output current shall be directly proportional to the input signal voltage. Transducers shall be sized such that loop resistance does not exceed maximum rated resistance.

2. Transducers shall be as manufactured by AGM, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

E. Frequency to Current (F/I) Transducers

1. Frequency to current transducers shall convert pulse rate and pulse duration signals to 4 20 mA, 24 VDC analog signals. Converters shall include field adjustable input frequency range. Converter power shall be 120 VAC, 60 hertz. Transducers shall be sized such that loop resistance does not exceed maximum rated resistance. Transducers shall be suitable for signal transmission via leased telephone lines.

2. Transducers shall be Series 5100 as manufactured by AGM, or equivalent by Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

F. Current to Frequency (I/F) Transducers

1. Current to frequency transducers shall convert 4 20 mA, 24 VDC analog signals to pulse rate and pulse duration signals. Converters shall include field adjustable output frequency range. Converter power shall be 120 VAC, 60 hertz. Transducers shall be sized such that loop resistance does not exceed maximum rated

resistance. Transducers shall be suitable for signal transmission via leased telephone lines.

2. Transducers shall be Series 5016 as manufactured by AGM, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

G. Integrators

1. Integrators shall be provided as interchangeable plug in modules with zero and span adjustment available on the front plate of the units. Output shall range from 0 to 0.1 through 0 to 10 pulses per second. Accuracy shall be + 0.1% of input span. Integrators shall convert linear analog signals to pulse rate and provide a solid state output.

2. Integrators shall be as manufactured by AGM Electronics, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

H. Electronic Switches (Alarm Relays)

1. Electronic switches shall be furnished with a calibrated dial for adjusting set points. The input to the switch shall be 4 - 20 mA DC, and the set point shall be adjustable over the full range. Unless otherwise noted, the dead band shall be fixed at less than 2% of span. The set point stability shall be +0.1% per degree F. The repeatability shall be +0.1% of span. The units shall be furnished with SPDT relays rated at 10 amperes at 115 VAC.

2. Electronic switches shall be as manufactured by AGM, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

I. RTD to Current Signal Converters

1. RTD to current signal converters shall convert a 3-wire RTD input signal to an isolated 4 20 mADC output signal. Accuracy shall be 0.10% of span or better. Calibrated span of each converter shall be as indicated on the instrument list. The Contractor shall coordinate calibration of the signal converters with existing RTD elements.

2. Signal converters shall be as manufactured by AGM, Moore Industries, Rochester Instrument Systems (RIS), Phoenix Contact, Weidmuller, Acromag, or equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. See Section 40 78 00 – Panel Instruments and Accessories, for additional requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 40 79 00

MISCELLANEOUS INSTRUMENTS, VALVES, AND FITTINGS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, test, install and place in satisfactory operation, the instrumentation and control system accessories with all spare parts, and appurtenances as herein specified and as shown on the Drawings.

B. Accessories include various items of equipment that may be required in the system but are not scheduled. Accessories are shown on details, flow sheets or plans. Accessories are also called out in specifications for scheduled instruments and in the installation specifications. It is not intended, however, that each piece of hardware required will be specifically described herein. This Specification shall be used as a guide to qualify requirements for miscellaneous hardware whether the specific item is described or not.

1.02 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Section 40 61 13 – Process Control System General Provisions

B. Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Per Section 40 61 15 – Process Control System Submittals

B. Impulse piping layout and routing drawings

C. Complete instrument assembly drawings showing orientation to installed process piping.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 PROCESS TUBING

A. Process, impulse, or capillary tubing shall be 1/2 x 0.065-inch seamless, annealed, ASTM A-269 Type 316L stainless steel with 37 degrees Type 316 stainless steel flared fittings or Swagelock or Parker-CPI flareless fittings.

B. Piping for closely coupling instruments to process seals shall be standard stainless steel NPT threaded piping or NPT tapped mounting blocks.

020119

C. A nickel-based lubricant shall be used on threaded stainless steel piping connections to prevent galling.

2.02 POWER, CONTROL, AND SIGNAL CABLES

A. Power, control and signal wiring shall be provided under Division 26 of the Specifications, unless otherwise indicated.

2.03 CHEMICAL DIAPHRAGM SEALS

A. Diaphragm seals shall be provided for isolation of pressure gauges, switches and transmitters attached to systems containing chemical solutions or corrosive fluids. As a minimum, seals shall be of all 316 stainless steel construction. In general, diaphragms shall be 316L stainless steel for operating pressures at or above 15 psi and elastomers for operating pressures below 15 psi. However, all components shall be non-reactive with the process fluid in all cases. Refer to the Process Control System Instrument Lists for specific materials requirements.

B. Seal shall have fill connection, 1/4-inch NPT valved flush port and capable of disassembly without loss of filler fluid. Where specified, diaphragm seals shall comply with the above requirements and shall be provided with 316 SS factory filled capillaries.

C. Seals shall be Helicoid Type 100 HA, Mansfield & Green, Ashcroft, or equal.

2.04 ISOLATING RING SEALS

A. For solids bearing fluids, line pressure shall be sensed by a flexible cylinder lining and transmitted via a captive sensing liquid to the associated pressure sensing instrument(s).

1. Full Line Size Isolating Ring Seals

a. Where indicated, the sensor body shall be full line size wafer design.

b. Full line size isolating ring seals shall have 316 stainless steel housing and assembly flanges and Buna N flexible cylinder lining for in line mounting. The wafer shall have through bolt holes or centerline gauge for positive alignment with the associated flanged piping. Gauge or readout shall be oriented for viewing.

c. The captive liquid chamber and associated instrument(s) shall be furnished with threaded drain tap and plug. Manufacturer shall furnish seals with a quick-disconnect-type fitting for field disassembly and reassembly, however, seal and instruments shall be factory assembled prior to arriving at the job site

d. Isolating ring seals shall be RED Valve Series 40, Ronningen Petter Iso Ring, Moyno RKL Series W, Onyx Isolator Ring, or equal.

2. Tapped Isolating Ring Seals

a. Where indicated, pressure shall be sensed via a minimum 1-1/2" diameter spool type isolating ring seal mounted on a 1-1/2" pipe nipple at 90 degrees from the process piping.

b. An isolation ball valve shall be provided between the process piping and the ring seal, and a cleanout ball valve shall be provided between the ring seal and the atmosphere. The factory assembled and filled pressure instrument shall be back or side mounted to the ring seal such that the gauge or readout may be viewed normally.

c. Tapped isolating ring seals for solids service shall be Red Valve Series 42/742, Ronningen Petter Iso Spool, Onyx Isolator Ring, or equal.

2.05 FILLING MEDIUM:

A. The filling medium between instruments, isolating ring seals and diaphragm seals shall be a liquid suitable for operation in an ambient temperature ranging from -10 degrees F to +150 degrees F.

B. Filling medium shall be silicone unless oxidizing agents, such as sodium hypochlorite, are present, then halocarbon shall be used.

2.06 TAMPER EVIDENT PAINT

A. Piping and screwed/bolted connections of instrumentation containing the filling medium shall be marked with a small continuous tick mark of tamper evident paint over each piping/instrument joint. Tamper evident paint shall be applied prior to instrument assemblies arriving on the job site. Disturbance of the joint shall break the paint.

B. Instrument assemblies with broken paint or missing paint shall not be accepted and shall be repaired or replaced at no additional cost to Owner. Paint shall be Dykem Cross-Check or equal.

2.07 ISOLATION VALVES

A. Isolation valves shall be 1/2 inch diameter ball valves, unless otherwise indicated, with a Type 316 stainless steel body, Type 316 stainless steel ball. Where 316 stainless steel is not compatible with the process fluid, materials of construction shall be suitable for the associated process fluid (e.g., PVC for chemical service).

2.08 ALARM ANNUNCIATION DEVICE

A. Sirens:

1. For Class I, Division 2 areas and non-hazardous areas:

a. Provide NEMA 4X and Class I, Division 2 rated alarm horn capable of 32 selectable warning tones. Coordinate tone selection with Owner. Volume shall be field adjustable between 0 and 114 dBA measured at 10 feet.

b. Alarm horn shall be the SelecTone 302GCX series with UTM tone module as manufactured by Federal Signal Corporation.

2. For Class I, Division 1 areas:

a. Provide NEMA 4X and Class I, Division 1 rated alarm horn capable of 32 selectable warning tones. Coordinate tone selection with Owner. Volume shall be field adjustable between 0 and 114 dBA measured at 10 feet.

b. Alarm horn shall be the SelecTone 302X series with UTM tone module as manufactured by Federal Signal Corporation.

B. Strobe Lights:

1. Strobes located within the same room, or otherwise visible from any shared frame of view, shall be synchronized per the requirements of NFPA 72. Strobes shall by synchronized by the strobe manufacturer's synchronization module. Strobe circuits shall not exceed the continuous duty current rating of the synchronization module. Synchronization module shall be Federal Signal Model SSM, Edwards Signaling Model EG1M-RM, or equal.

2. For Class I, Division 2 areas and non-hazardous areas:

a. Provide red strobe status indicator. Unit shall be rated NEMA 4X and Factory Mutual approved for a Class I, Division 2, Group D area. Unit shall contain a durable polycarbonate housing and be surface mount. Unit shall be UL listed. Strobe shall be powered from 24VDC.

b. Alarm strobe shall be Federal Signal Model 225XST, Edwards Signaling Model 116DEGEX-FJ, or equal.

3. For Class I, Division 1 areas:

a. Provide red explosion proof dome covered strobe unit rated NEMA 4X and Factory Mutual certified for a Class I, Division 1, Group D area. Unit shall be UL listed. Strobe shall be powered from 24VDC.

b. Alarm strobe shall be Federal Signal Model 27XST, Edwards Signaling Model 116DEGEX-FJ, or equal. Compatible mounting hardware by the strobe manufacturer shall be furnished.

4. Lens color shall amber.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 REQUIREMENTS

A. Refer to Section 40 70 00 – Instrumentation for Process Systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 41 22 00
CRANES AND HOISTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install and make fully operational the crane and hoist systems in the locations and conditions of service, as shown on the Drawings and as specified in the Crane and Hoist Schedule.

B. Equipment shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

C. All equipment supplied under this Specification shall comply in all respects with the provisions of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, including all standards promulgated under the authority of such Act, and shall also meet all applicable industrial codes in the State of North Carolina.

D. The manufacturer and ultimately the Contractor shall be totally responsible for structural design of the crane and hoist systems, for the compatibility of all equipment, and for verification of required operating clearances.

E. All parts of the mechanism furnished shall be amply designed and constructed for the maximum stresses occurring during fabrication, erection and continuous operation. All equipment specified herein shall be designed for the Crane Manufacturer's Association of America Duty Classification as specified herein.

F. If the Contractor elects to utilize the crane and hoist equipment in any way during the erection of piping and installation of equipment, they shall notify the Owner in writing and shall provide for an inspection by the equipment manufacturer and take any steps necessary to return the equipment to "as new" condition. They shall also obtain recertification by the manufacturer and reinstate all warranties and guarantees.

1.02 CAPACITY AND DESIGN LOADS

A. All design loads shall meet CMAA requirements. The design load for stress calculations and deflection shall be based upon the requirements of CMAA and include Vertical Inertia Forces (VIF), Deal Load Factor (DLF), Hoist Load Factor (HLF), and Inertia Forces from Drives (IFD). Operating Wind Load shall be in accordance with Governing Building Code on areas exposed to wind.

B. The rated load capacity of each crane shall be clearly labeled on each crane using a label size easily read from the floor level and/or loading position.

1.03 CRANE AND HOIST SCHEDULE

Location	Poplar Tent Pump Station
General	
Indoor / Outdoor	Indoor
Capacity, tons	2
Operating Floor Elevation	774.25
Crane	
Crane Type	Monorail
Configuration	Straight
CMAA Duty Classification	N/A
Span, ft	See Drawings
Crane Wheelbase, ft	N/A
Max Bridge Speed, fpm	N/A
Trolley Hoist	
Trolley Type	Manual
Hoist Type	Manual
ASME Duty Classification	Class H1
Hook Elevation	
High Point	784.83
Low Point	775.50
Hook End Approach, in	24
Operating Speeds	
Trolley Speed, fpm	N/A
Hoist Speed(s), fpm	N/A

1.04 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. Without limiting the generality of other requirements of the Specifications, all work herein shall conform to the applicable requirements of the following documents. All referenced Specifications, codes and standards refer to the most current issue available at the time of the Bid.

1. CMAA – Crane Manufacturers Association of America

2. AISC – “Manual of Steel Construction”

3. ASTM A48 – Standard Specifications for Gray Iron Castings

4. ANSI B30.11 – Safety Code for Underhung Cranes and Monorail Systems

5. ANSI B30.16 – Safety Code for Overhead Hoists

6. MMA MH27.1 – Monorail Manufacturers Association

7. OSHA 1910-179 – Occupation Safety and Health Administration

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. The following items shall be submitted in accordance with, or in addition to the submittal requirements specified in Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions:

1. Shop Drawings

2. O&M Manuals

3. Certification that the systems have been designed to resist all loads implied herein and loadings stipulated in the applicable building codes of the State/Commonwealth in which the project is located. The Certification shall also state that the design has been performed and signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located.

B. Certification that the equipment has been field tested and passed.

C. Details and design calculations shall be submitted, signed, and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State or Commonwealth in which the project is located for any of the following components furnished by the Manufacturer:

1. Runway beams.

2. Monorail patented track.

3. Monorail suspension systems.

4. End stops and connections.

D. Complete layout drawings of entire monorail system verifying entire access envelope of system, both vertically and horizontally at all levels of travel access including floor plans, equipment locations, access doors, etc. Hook extents including maximum and minimum elevations and all clearances shall be defined on drawings for proposed system.

1.06 WARRANTY AND GUARANTEE

A. Warranty and Guarantee shall be as specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions with the exception that the warranty period shall be for two (2) years.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. The equipment covered by these Specifications are intended to be standard equipment of proven reliability and as manufactured by reputable manufacturers having experience in the production of such equipment.

2.02 GENERAL

A. The crane system shall be constructed of structural steel, in accordance with current AISC (American Institute of Steel Construction) and ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials) specifications. Minimum grade of structural steel shall be A-36.

B. All crane components shall be new and come from reputable brands having domestic operations in existence for a minimum of 10 years.

C. All crane components will have properly finished ends and surfaces. Structural sections shall be saw cut producing clean ends dressed to eliminate sharp edges. Torch cuts with uneven edges will not be acceptable. Surfaces must be free of mill scale, rust, and debris properly prepared prior to coating.

D. Welding shall follow the current recommended practices of the AWS (American Welding Society) D14.1 specifications.

E. Moving members of the crane shall be separated by a clearance of at least 3 inches vertically from any overhead obstruction, and 2 inches horizontally from any lateral obstruction.

2.03 BRIDGE CRANES – NOT USED

2.04 JIB CRANES – NOT USED

2.05 MONORAILS

A. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, monorail shall be patented track consisting of a top flange, web and hardened 3.25" or 3.33" bottom operation flange. Structural steel monorail tracks are acceptable for straight runs without switches or curves. All rails shall be furnished with splices and end stops and shall be designed for spans, thermal expansion and contraction and turning radii as shown on the Drawings. Unless

otherwise shown on the Drawings provisions shall be made for connection of monorail suspension system to support locations designated on Drawings. The suspension system shall provide support and bracing of all live, dead, and impact loads. Monorail shall be manufactured by Louden division of ACCO, TC/American Monorail, Cleveland Tramrail division of Gorbel, Tram Beam, or equal. Rated capacity of monorail shall be painted with stencil in black on both the hoist and the monorail beam.

2.06 GANTRY CRANES – NOT USED

2.07 TROLLEY HOISTS

A. Trolley hoists shall be as manufactured by ACCO Industries, Electrolift, or Yale.

B. All load carrying parts shall be of steel. Hoist fames shall be galvanized steel. Wheels shall be stainless steel with hardened treads. Wheels and axles shall be equipped with antifriction bearings which are permanently sealed and lubricated. The gear head of the motor shall have an alloy steel, heat-treated gear train operating in a fully enclosed oil bath. The gear shaft shall have precision, oil lubricated ball bearings. Where monorail track as specified or shown on the Drawings is curved, trolleys shall be the swivel-type to negotiate curved sections.

   1. Manual trolleys shall be of hand-driven geared type.

C. The hoist drive shall be of the close-headroom, cross-mounted, single reeving type and shall include a geared train with inherent braking characteristics or mechanical load brake, hook, stainless steel wire rope, and stainless steel drum. Rated capacity shall be stamped on the hoist frame. The frame shall be oil-tight, of steel construction, with no part of the load carried by assembly bolts. Gearing shall be machine cut and heat-treated, and shall operate in an oil bath. No gears shall be cantilever mounted. Shafting shall be ground and polished and all bearings shall be of the antifriction type. Grease fittings and oil reservoir shall be readily accessible. The drum shall be of the large diameter, guarded, flanged type with machine cut grooves to accommodate the hoist cable without overwrapping. Right- and left-hand drum grooving shall be utilized in close-headroom, double-reeved, cross-mounted hoist applications to provide a true vertical lift. The wire ropes shall be of the preformed extra flexible type, have a safety factor of at least five, and be anchored to the hoist drum. The load block shall be of the safety type with guarded sheaves and forged swiveled hooks. Hooks shall open slowly when subjected to heavy overloads.

   1. Manual hoists shall include a handwheel and chain and a clutch-type overload cut-off device to protect hoist from an overload condition.

D. Rated capacity of trolley hoists shall be painted in black with stencil on the trolley hoist.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. The services of a qualified manufacturer's technical representative shall be provided in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and shall include the following site visits for each crane and hoist system:

Service	Number of Trips	Number of Days/Trip
Installation and Testing	1	1
Startup and Training	1	1
Services after Startup	1	1

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. All crane equipment shall be installed in accordance with the applicable sections of Division 05 – Metals and the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

3.03 FIELD TESTS

A. Field tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Prior to initial use, all cranes shall be proof-tested at 125% of their rated load in accordance with all OSHA requirements.

3.04 PAINTING

A. The crane shall be painted ANSI safety yellow before shipment. Painting shall be in accordance with Specification Section 09 90 00.

B. A wire-brushing and/or solvent wipe shall be performed prior to painting to clean and remove debris, mill scale, dirt, and oils.

C. At least one quart of matching color paint shall be shipped with each crane for field touch-ups.

D. The crane shall be properly banded and skidded prior to shipment. Any paint damage, scratches, blemishes to the finish of the crane, caused by shipping, transportation via common carrier, etc., shall be repaired by the Contractor.

E. Rated capacity of crane system shall be painted with stencil in black on all components of crane system as specified herein.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 43 20 00

PUMPS – GENERAL

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

B. Pumps shall be provided complete with all accessories, special tools, spare parts, mountings, shims, sheaves, couplings, and other appurtenances as specified, and as may be required for a complete and operating installation.

C. The provisions of this section shall apply to all pumps and pumping equipment specified except where specifically noted otherwise in the Contract Documents.

D. All pumps provided under an individual specification section shall be by the same manufacturer unless otherwise indicated in the specification.

E. All equipment for the pumps, including but not limited to motors, cans and bases, shall be provided as a complete unit by the pump Manufacturer.

F. The pump supplier shall have unit responsibility for coordinating the proper pump mounting system with the Contractor to ensure stable pump operation free from abnormal vibration.

G. The pump supplier shall include, in their bid, time, labor, materials and tools required for installation assistance, testing and start-up with the Contractor.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment, materials, and installations shall conform to the requirements of the most recent editions with latest revisions, supplements, and amendments of the specifications, codes, and standards listed in Section 01 42 00 – References.

B. Pumping system equipment, installation and testing shall be in accordance with the following applicable codes, standards and guidelines. All codes, standards and guidelines shall be the latest version as of the date of project bidding.

1. American National Standards Institute / Hydraulic Institute (ANSI/HI)

    a. ANSI/HI 3.1-3.5 Rotary Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation

    b. ANSI/HI 3.6 Rotary Pump Test

    c. ANSI/HI 9.6.1 Rotodynamic Pumps – Guideline for NPSH Margin

d. ANSI/HI 9.6.2 Rotodynamic Pumps for Assessment of Applied Nozzle Loads

e. ANSI/HI 9.6.3 Rotodynamic Pumps – Guideline for Operating Regions

f. ANSI/HI 9.6.4 Rotodynamic Pumps for Vibration Measurements and Allowable Values

g. ANSI/HI 9.6.5 Rotodynamic Pumps Guideline for Condition Monitoring

h. ANSI/HI 9.6.6 Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Piping

i. ANSI/HI 9.6.8 Rotodynamic Pumps - Guideline for Dynamics of Pumping Machinery. Guidelines and recommendations included in ANSI/HI 9.6.8 shall constitute the minimum requirements for acceptance.

j. ANSI/HI 9.8 Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Intake Design

k. ANSI/HI 11.6 Rotodynamic Submersible Pumps for Hydraulic Performance, Hydrostatic Pressure, Mechanical and Electrical Tests

l. ANSI/HI 12.1-12.6 Rotodynamic Slurry Pump for Nomenclature, Definitions, Applications and Operation

m. ANSI/HI 14.1-14.2 Rotodynamic Pumps for Nomenclature and Definitions

n. ANSI/HI 14.3 Rotodynamic Pumps for Design and Application

o. ANSI/HI 14.6 Rotodynamic Pumps for Hydraulic Performance Acceptance Tests

2. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)

a. ANSI/ASME B73.1 Specifications for Horizontal End Suction Centrifugal Pumps for Chemical Process

3. American Petroleum Institute (API)

a. ANSI/API Standard 610 Centrifugal Pumps for Petroleum, Petrochemical and Natural Gas Industries

4. American Water Works Association (AWWA)

a. ANSI/AWWA E103 Standard for Horizontal and Vertical Line-Shaft Pumps

5. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

a. A36 Specification for Structural Steel

b. A48 Specification for Gray Iron Castings

c. A53 Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless

d. A148 Specification for Steel Castings, High Strength, for Structural Purposes

e. A193 Specification for Alloy Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High Temperature Service

f. A276 Specification for Stainless Steel Hot/Cold-Finished Bars

g. A322 Specification for Steel Bars, Alloy, Standard Grades

h. A514 Specification for High Yield Strength, Quenched and Tempered alloy Steel Plate, Suitable for Welding

i. A532 Specification for Abrasion-Resistant Cast Irons

j. A536 Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

k. A565 Specification for Martensitic Stainless Steel Bars

l. A582 Specification for Free-Machining Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Bar, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled

m. A743 Specification for Castings, Iron-Chromium, Iron-Chromium-Nickel and Nickel-Base, Corrosion-Resistant for General Application

n. B148 Specification for Aluminum-Bronze Sand Castings

o. B584 Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Castings for General Application

6. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

   a. B16.1 Standard for Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

   b. B16.5 Standard for Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings

7. American National Standards Institute / National Fire Protection Association (ANSI/NFPA) 70 National Electric Code

8. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE) J404 Chemical Compositions of SAE Alloy Steels

9. International Organization for Standardization (ISO), Standard, ISO 1940 – Mechanical Vibration – Balance quality requirements for rotors balance quality grade for rotors in a constant rigid state.

10. Comply with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

C. Related contract specification sections:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2. Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions

3. Division 26 – Electrical

4. Section 26 05 60 – Low Voltage Electric Motors

5. Division 40 – Process Interconnections

6. Section 43 23 21 – Horizontal Split Case Pumps

1.03 ACTION/INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Comply with Section 01 33 00 – Submittals.

2. Fabrication information.

B. Provide submittals identified in Specification Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions in addition to the submittals identified herein and in addition to the submittals identified in the individual pumping specification sections.

C. Shop Drawings shall include the following information in addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and shall include the following information in addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures:

1. Pump name, identification number and specification number.

2. Performance characteristics and descriptive data, including but not limited to:

a. Pump performance curves at rated speed and reduced speeds (if reduced speeds are specified).

b. Pump performance data shall be provided for the proposed impeller diameter and for the minimum and maximum impeller diameters possible with the proposed pump.

c. Curves shall indicate:

1) Information specified elsewhere

2) Impeller diameter

3) Minimum continuous stable flow (minimum flow to avoid suction recirculation)

4) Best efficiency point (BEP) for the proposed impeller diameter

5) Preferred operating region (POR) per ANSI/HI 9.6.3

6) Allowable operating region (AOR) per the latest version of ANSI/HI 9.6.3.

7) Performance curves submitted shall be for the entire pump assembly, including efficiency corrections and losses.

8) Pump performance curves shall be submitted both in the form of performance data cut sheets and in tabular format. Tabular data shall include the following:

   a) Flow

   b) Pump head (pressure for positive displacement type pumps)

   c) NPSH required (net positive inlet pressure, NPIP, for positive displacement type pumps)

   d) Pump efficiency

   e) Rated driver horsepower

   f) Brake horsepower

   g) A minimum of 10 data points shall define rotodynamic pump performance curves listed above. Performance curve data points shall include the following:

      i. best efficiency point

      ii. all specified operating points

      iii. preferred operating region minimum and maximum

      iv. allowable operating region minimum and maximum

      v. shutoff condition

      vi. runout

      vii. The remainder of the points shall be distributed evenly to clearly define the shape of each of the curves.

      viii. Each data point shall be reported to a minimum of three (3) significant figures.

ix. The curve data shall align with the HI acceptance grade (1B, 2B, 1U, etc.) as specified in the individual pump specification and shall explicitly state the applicable tolerance band, as defined by the Hydraulic Institute Standards, associated with each value.

3. Minimum submergence requirements shall be provided for vertically suspended pumps and submersible pumps.

4. Detailed dimensional drawings, data and setting plans including but not limited to:

   a. General cutaway sections

   b. Materials

   c. Dimension of shaft projections

   d. Shaft and keyway dimensions

   e. Shaft diameter

   f. Shaft-impeller connection details

   g. Dimension between bearings

   h. General dimensions of pump

   i. Suction head bolt orientation

   j. Anchor bolt locations

   k. Forces: Itemized forces shall be determined at specified operating points and at pump shutoff condition.

   l. Assembly views

   m. Exploded parts view

   n. Cutaway images

   o. Provide weight of entire pump assembly, including motor and base weight of individual major subassemblies. Indicate the weight of each component, and total static and dynamic loads imparted by the equipment to the supporting structure. Itemized loads shall be determined at specified operating points and at pump shutoff condition.

   p. Impeller

q. Drawings shall identify each component by tag number to which the catalog data and detail sheets pertain.

r. Mass of rotating assembly

s. Mass of coupling(s)

5. Drive and motor data as required by Division 26 – Electrical. Complete motor data shall include but not be limited to:

a. Size

b. Make

c. Mass of motor

d. Inertia of driver

e. Motor enclosure type

f. Characteristics

g. Wiring diagrams

h. Variable speed drive information and data: Where pump and motor speeds are to be regulated by variable speed drives, the CONTRACTOR shall coordinate, furnish and exchange all necessary requirements with the respective equipment manufacturers to ensure compatibility and shall submit pump, motor and variable speed drive shop drawings together as a complete system.

6. Information on pumps and motor bearings, including but not limited to:

a. Bearing types

b. Rated bearing life

c. Bearing life calculations for the specified operating points.

d. Bearing arrangement

7. Gear box design and performance criteria and AGMA service factor.

8. Equipment protective device details and connection diagrams.

9. Details of shaft sealing system including seal/packing type, seal water control devices, and seal water piping schematic.

10. Information on pump appurtenances including but not limited to:

a. Couplings

b. Shaft guards

c. V-belt drive systems

11. Submersible pump submittals shall also include:

a. Product data sheets for power and control cables, length of cables and cable support system.

b. Details on pump guide rail system and mounting requirements.

c. Details on submersible pump's retrieval system.

12. Any additional information required to demonstrate compliance with the specifications.

D. Results of structural, lateral, and torsional dynamic analyses as required herein and in the individual specification sections.

E. Manufacturers literature and brochures

F. Lubrication Information: Complete lubrication instructions and lubricant schedule, including manufacturer's recommended lubricant. All lubricants shall be food grade, NSF 61 approved. Schedule shall include frequency of lubricant application, type of lubricant, and instructions regarding lubricant application. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General.

G. Materials of construction data and associated specifications (such as AISI, ASTM, SAE, etc.), including but not limited to:

1. Grade

2. Type

3. Elemental makeup, by percent elemental constituent

4. Mechanical properties, including but not limited to:

a. Brinell hardness number

b. Galling resistance

H. Coatings: Coating system data and description of coating system, surface preparation and shop painting, including certification that the shop paint is compatible with the finish paint.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit warranty documentation in compliance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittals

2. Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options

3. Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures

B. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

2. Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

B. Comply with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials.

C. Comply with Section 01 79 00 – Instructions to Owner's Personnel.

D. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Dynamic Analysis Submittals:

1. Dynamic analysis entity qualifications: Qualifications shall be submitted in advance of dynamic analysis calculations, models and analyses. Qualifications shall include but not be limited to:

a. Detailed tabulation of relevant projects with descriptions and data to clearly substantiate that the qualifications specified herein this section are satisfied by the dynamic analysis firm and individuals. For each project, tabulation shall include:

1) Proposed personnel who worked on project experience item.

2) Resumes of proposed personnel including which project experience items they have experience working on.

3) Pump end user point of contact including name and email address.

2. Dynamic analysis input data requirements as defined in ANSI/HI 9.6.8, Appendix B.

3. Dynamic analysis results as required herein and as follows:

    a. For vertical motors, where dynamic analysis is specified, submit the following additional information:

        1) Expected/Proposed reed critical frequency (RCF) data:

            a) Motor reed critical frequency (RCF)

            b) Force due to the weight of the motor

            c) Center of gravity location (the distance to the motor center of gravity from the motor flange face)

            d) The static deflection of the motor center of gravity, y_static

            e) Expected and proposed values shall be provided by the motor manufacturer to the pump manufacturer, to the Engineer, and to the dynamic analysis entity.

        2) Report of post-manufacture/pre-shipment motor reed critical frequency (RCF) factory impact verification test: Post-manufacture/pre-shipment motor impact test results (per HI 9.6.8, Appendix D) (for vertical pumps where a dynamic analysis is specified), including but not limited to the following information:

            a) Mounting plate structure natural frequency (without motor)

            b) RCF in two perpendicular planes:

                i) In-line with the conduit box;

                ii) Perpendicular to the conduit box.

            c) Motor weight

            d) Motor center of gravity location (the distance to the motor center of gravity from the motor flange face).

            e) Photo of the motor test set-up with the motor in place

            f) Vibration instrument used

            g) Impact device used

            h) Weight scale information

i) Description of method used to determine motor center of gravity location

j) Post-manufacture, pre-shipment motor reed critical frequency (RCF)

4. Report shall include model mesh sizes.

B. Factory testing plan. Wherever factory tests are specified, testing plan shall include but not be limited to the following:

1. Testing procedures

2. Testing equipment

3. Test arrangement

4. Test conditions

5. Speed of rotation of test

6. Test facility systems and equipment, including but not limited to:

a. Test facility electrical single line diagram

b. Calibrated factory motor (where applicable) with calibrated efficiency curves

c. Calibrated factory drive (where applicable) with calibrated efficiency curves

C. Factory Test Results shall be submitted and approved prior to shipment of equipment.

D. Shipment, Delivery, Handling and Storage instructions

E. Installation instructions

F. Field testing plan

G. Comply with Section 01 75 00 – Check Out and Start Up Procedures

H. Preliminary field test data

I. System field quality control testing

J. Final field test data

K. Certified test reports

L. Startup report including data substantiation of successful completion of 21-day operational demonstration performance data.

1.07 GENERAL INFORMATION AND DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

1.08 DYNAMIC ANALYSIS

A. Dynamic analyses shall be performed to determine the potential for a critical natural frequency (lateral, torsional, or structural) occurring within the application's operating speed range of the pumps. All dynamic analyses shall be performed in accordance with the latest edition of ANSI/HI 9.6.8 – Rotodynamic Pumps Guideline for Dynamics of Pumping Machinery, as supplemented in these specifications.

1. Types of analyses, level of analysis, and minimum frequency separation margins required for each pump service is indicated in the individual pump specification sections. If no specific dynamic analysis requirements are included in the individual pump specification section, the shop drawing submittal shall include a certification that no critical speeds fall below 125% of the pump operating speed and/or within 25% +/- of the vane pass frequency ranges.

2. The analyses shall identify natural frequencies (critical speeds) of the equipment and demonstrate that these natural frequencies are above of the pump operating speed range and outside of associated excitation frequencies by the specified frequency separation margin. As a minimum, excitation frequencies to be considered in the analyses shall include 1x running speed, 2x running speed, and vane pass frequency. Torsional analyses shall also consider 1x line frequency, 2x line frequency, and VFD/VSD excitations. Critical speed calculations provided shall include, but not be limited to, the first and second critical speed calculations.

3. Pump operating speed range used in the dynamic analyses shall extend from the minimum to the maximum operating speeds required by the manufacturer to satisfy the full range of the specified pump operating conditions.

4. All foundations shall be assumed to be flexible unless proven via calculations and/or models to be rigid per the requirements of HI 9.6.8.

B. Where Level 1 analyses are required in the individual pump specifications:

1. The following dynamic analyses shall be performed by the manufacturer:

a. Level 1: Comply with Schedule 43 20 00 – 01 Dynamic Analysis Requirements. Analyses performed shall include but not be limited to the level of analysis specified in the individual specification section for the type of pump (VS, OH, BB).

C. Where Level 2/3 analyses are required in the individual pump specifications:

1. Dynamic analysis shall be performed by:

a. a pre-qualified third-party entity or

b. a qualified and Engineer approved equal third party entity that satisfies all the requirements specified herein.

2. Pre-qualified third-party entities include the following:

a. Mechanical Solutions, Inc of Whippany, NJ

b. Engineering Dynamics Inc of San Antonio, TX.

c. Kelm Engineering LLC of Friendswood, TX.

3. Third party qualified dynamic analysis professional who is in responsible charge (and signs and seal the analysis) shall meet the following criteria:

1) Project List Experience:

a) Number of years of firm experience performing dynamic analysis: 15 years, minimum.

b) Number of level 2 dynamic analysis projects completed in accordance with ANSI/HI 9.6.8: 20, minimum.

c) Number of level 3 dynamic analysis projects completed in accordance with ANSI/HI 9.6.8: 5, minimum.

d) Pump dynamic analysis experience shall be for complete mechanical and structural systems and shall clearly indicate inclusion of pump, motor, foundation, and suction/discharge piping to the first restraint or expansion joint in accordance with ANSI/HI 9.6.8.

e) Calibration of models using field test data.

f) Names of personnel who performed each project. Resumes of personnel proposed to perform dynamic analysis for this project.

g) Requirements specified elsewhere.

2) Firm’s staff shall include:

a) Years of experience: At least one employee shall have a minimum of 10 years’ experience.

b) Pump field troubleshooting personnel: One (1), minimum.

c) Field data collection personnel: One (1), minimum.

d) Number of licensed professional engineers: One (1) minimum.

3) Dynamic analysis entity shall be capable of proving model assumption capabilities based on models that are calibrated based on field test data.

4) Dynamic analysis analyst shall not be performed by the equipment manufacturer.

4. To comply with the following “pump-system” dynamics requirements, the pump Manufacturer will provide the independent third party entity firm conducting the analysis with all necessary pump components through 2D drawings and/or 3D solid models so that the natural frequencies and critical speeds of the combined pump-system can be accurately predicted. Solid models shall be utilized for this effort.

5. Motor weight, center of gravity, reed frequency information, as well and motor rotating shaft dimensions and polar moment of inertia will be required to be submitted by the selected motor manufacturer. Solid models shall be utilized for this effort.

6. The following analyses shall be performed:

   a. Level 2: Comply with Schedule 43 20 00 – 01 Dynamic Analysis Requirements. Analyses performed shall include but not be limited to the level of analysis specified in the individual specification section for the type of pump (VS, OH, BB).

   b. If natural frequencies fall within the specified ranges and separation margins, and if reasonable modifications cannot adequately shift the natural frequencies outside of the separation margins, then the subject equipment shall be rejected from further consideration.

   c. If compliance with the acceptance criteria cannot be demonstrated, the pump manufacturer shall coordinate the dynamic analysis with the Engineer and make recommendations to the Engineer for reasonable changes (e.g., changes to the design of the concrete pump base/pedestal, discharge head design, connectors, supports, motor to discharge head interface mounting) as needed to achieve the required margins. The dynamic analysis shall be repeated with the modified design, and the process shall be repeated as necessary until a compliant pump and pedestal design is achieved. The pump manufacturer, not the Engineer, is responsible for the coordination and successful vibration performance of the complete system. Any related analysis shall be at no additional cost the Owner.

   d. Post-manufacture, pre-shipment, confirmation: Where the Dynamic Analysis is based on equipment and structure assumptions for weight, strength, rigidity, reed critical frequency, or any variable or input into the calculation

specific to the pump equipment, the assumptions used are to be confirmed following equipment manufacture by a manufacturer's certification of Dynamic Analysis assumptions, signed by both the Manufacturer and the entity which performed the submitted Dynamic Analysis.

1) This certification shall state that the values used in the model are reflective of the actual equipment such that they would not result in the adjusted critical speeds falling within the critical speed limits, plus specified margin of separation, specified for that equipment.

2) Alternately, a revised analysis can be prepared and submitted with the actual post-manufacture/pre-shipment values.

3) Any post-manufacture, pre-shipment analysis shall be at no additional cost the Owner.

D. Reporting of Results

1. Prior to manufacture, a submittal shall be provided to the Engineer demonstrating that the required dynamic analyses have been performed and that the specified requirements will be met. Reports shall be in accordance with ANSI/HI 9.6.8. Reports for Level 1 dynamic analyses shall be signed and sealed by a professional engineer. The report shall include the following:

a. A Level 1 lateral, structural, or torsional dynamic analysis report shall include:

1) A statement that the analyses were performed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/HI 9.6.8.

2) Equations used, with references.

3) Equation input values used.

4) Results obtained.

5) margin of separation from rated speed(s).

b. A level 2 lateral, structural, or torsional dynamic analysis report shall include:

1) All the items that are required for a Level 1 report.

2) A statement that the analyses were performed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/HI 9.6.8.

3) Computer program used.

4) Assumptions made in order to model the system.

5) Schematic diagram of the model depicting nodes and elements.

6) Input data consisting of node coordinates, element types, material properties, element characteristics, element connectivity presented graphically, and specified displacements and/or excitation force spectra.

7) A statement that models have a minimum of a two (2) element node thickness for all bodies.

8) Supporting calculations and data.

9) Unless otherwise approved in writing by the Engineer, the report shall include a written statement that models have been developed using the original equipment manufacturer solid models.

10) Motor or other drive reed frequency data (or dynamic analysis, if recommended) (for structural or lateral analysis).

11) Motor or other drive critical speed data, by the manufacturer (for structural or lateral analysis).

12) Motor ISO 1940 balance level. Pump ISO 1940 balance level.

13) Shafting critical speed data, by the manufacturer (structural or lateral analysis).

14) Pump and drive equipment torsional data by the respective vendors (for torsional analysis).

15) Shafting and coupling torsional data by respective vendors (for torsional analysis).

16) Anticipated excitation frequencies.

17) Analysis results, including all significant natural frequencies and a description of the corresponding mode shapes.

18) A Campbell diagram depicting a plot of excitation frequency versus operating speed, with the following information:

    a) A plot of all excitation sources that are multiples of the operating speed, properly labeled.

    b) A plot of natural frequencies versus operating speed.

    c) Areas of interference of 1) and 2) described above clearly identified, or the lack of likely resonance indicated.

c. Interpretation of the results and recommendations, including recommendations for appropriate corrective action.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Warranty requirements shall be as specified in Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options. Warranty requirements are supplementary to the individual equipment specifications.

B. Comply with the Equipment Warranties requirements specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

1.10 OPERATING CONDITIONS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

A. When operating at the maximum output speed each pump shall have a characteristic performance curve which meets the conditions listed in the pump schedule. The pumps and drive motors shall be capable of operating satisfactorily under the full-range of speed, flow and pressure conditions as defined by the pump schedule. Pump efficiency as defined herein shall include all mechanical losses from bearings and shaft seals.

B. The impeller diameter required for the specified operating conditions shall not exceed 95% of the maximum impeller diameter of the pump provided to allow increased duty for future conditions.

C. Each pumping unit and its driving equipment shall be designed and constructed to withstand the maximum turbine run-away speed of the unit due to backflow, including but not limited to back spinning from a dead stop and/or via a flow reversal condition that occurs immediately subsequent to a forward flow condition, through the pump with the primary TDH specified available at the pump discharge flange. Maximum reverse run-away speed shall not exceed 130 percent of the design operating speed.

D. Pump manufacture shall certify a Minimum Continuous Stable Flow (MCSF) rating at maximum speed that is lower than the specified minimum operating flow. Where a reduced speed operating condition is specified, the manufacturer shall also certify MCSF at the pump speed required to meet this condition.

E. Factory test acceptance grade for rating point shall be as specified herein, except where superseded via specification and/or scheduled values in the individual pump specifications, however power required shall not exceed the rated motor horsepower.

F. Pump Operating Conditions: Refer to respective individual pump specifications for specific performance requirements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Performance Curves: All centrifugal pumps shall have a continuously rising curve. In no case shall the required horsepower at any point on the performance curve exceed the

rated horsepower of the motor or drive. Safety factors will not be considered in determining compliance with this requirement.

B. Suction and discharge flanges shall conform to ASME B16.1 or B16.5 dimensions.

C. For pumps in raw sewage service and as required by individual pump specifications, handholes shall be provided on the pump suction nozzle and the pump volute and shall be shaped to follow the contours of the casing or adjoining piping to avoid any obstructions in the water passage.

D. The minimum ABMA L10 bearing life for all pump, motor and drive bearings shall be 60,000 hours unless otherwise specified in the individual pump specification sections.

2.02 ANCHORS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with the following Specification Sections:

1. Specification Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

2. Specification Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

3. Comply with individual pump specifications.

B. Include reference to Section 01 73 23– Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components if applicable.

C. [Specification Section 01 73 23 – Anchorage and Bracing of Nonstructural Components (applies to all states except Florida)]

2.03 DEFAULT MATERIALS

A. Pumps shall be constructed out of the materials specified in respective individual pumping specification sections. Material not specifically called for shall be high-grade, standard commercial quality, free from all defects and imperfection that might affect the serviceability of the product for the purpose for which it is intended, and shall conform to the following requirements unless otherwise specified in individual pumping equipment Specifications:

Component	Materials of Construction
Casings and Bowls	Close-grained gray cast iron, conforming to ASTM A 48, or equal
Impellers	Water: ASTM B 148, aluminum bronze Wastewater: ASTM A 536, Hard Iron
Shafts, wetted	Type 400 series stainless steel
Shafts, non-wetted	AISI 4140 steel
Miscellaneous stainless steel parts	Type 316 series stainless steel

Component	Materials of Construction
Anchor Bolts and Fasteners	Type 316 stainless steel

2.04 COMPONENTS:

A. Refer to individual specification sections for specific requirements.

B. Pump Shaft:

1. The shaft shall be heat treated, turned, ground, and polished over its entire length and shall be provided with keyways on both ends.

2. The shaft shall be sufficiently large in diameter to safely transmit the maximum torque developed by the drive unit and provide a rigid support for the impeller to prevent excessive vibration.

C. Bearings:

1. Bearings shall be designed for continuous heavy duty loads and for both axial and radial thrust loads.

2. The specified ABMA L-10 life for bearings shall be under worst possible operating conditions.

3. Bearings shall support the shaft and the complete rotating elements.

D. Wear Rings:

1. Wear rings shall meet or exceed the requirements of API 610, including but not limited to the following features:

a. Brinell hardness and Brinell hardness difference between adjacent wear parts.

b. Wear ring clearances

2. Adjacent wear ring material combinations shall be non-galling.

2.05 STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Structural steel used for fabricating equipment supports, etc. shall conform to the requirements of Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel.

B. All materials shall conform to applicable provisions of the AISC Specifications for the design and fabrication of structural steel, and to pertinent ASTM Standard Specifications.

2.06 DISSIMILAR METALS

A. All dissimilar metals shall be isolated in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

2.07 GALVANIZING

A. Where required by the equipment specifications, galvanizing shall be performed in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing.

2.08 STANDARDIZATION OF GREASE FITTINGS

A. Grease Fittings: Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

2.09 APPURTENANCES

A. Seals:

1. Mechanical seals shall be furnished as specified in individual pumping equipment sections.

2. If the pump manufacturer recommends a better seal or alternate flushing arrangement for a specific application, it may be submitted to the Engineer for approval in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 25 00 – Substitution Procedures.

B. Pressure Gauges:

1. Contractor shall supply all pressure gauges for all pumps by one manufacturer.

2. Gauges shall be provided through the instrumentation subcontractor to match other gauges on the project.

3. Gauges shall be as specified in Section 40 73 13 – Pressure Gauges.

4. All gauges shall be provided with diaphragm seals or isolating ring seals as specified in Section 40 79 00 – Miscellaneous Instruments, Valves and Fittings.

5. The Contractor shall furnish and install pressure gauges as shown on the Drawings, but the following gauges shall be provided as a minimum:

   a. On the suction and discharge of each pump, except wet-pit submersible pumps and vertical turbine pumps.

   b. On the discharge piping of each wet-pit submersible pump and vertical turbine pump in the locations shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

6. Gauge ranges shall be coordinated with the pump manufacturer and shall meet the following requirements, except where otherwise specified:

Location	Type	Graduation	Suction Range	Discharge Range
Suction	Single Scale, Compound	FT H20	-34-FT	+34-FT
Discharge	Single Scale	FT H20	0-FT	Greatest of the following: - Shutoff + 5-FT - 130% of Maximum

C. Shaft Couplings:

1. Except as otherwise specified in individual pump specification sections, flexible couplings for direct driven pumps shall provided between the pump shaft and driver and keyed to pump and driver shafts. Flexible couplings shall be internal metal grid type couplings with a metal flange on both shafts with a metal cage in between, as manufactured by Falk, or equal.

2. Spacer couplings shall be provided where necessary to allow removal of the pump rotating element without disturbing the driver.

3. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions protective guard requirements.

D. Equipment Guards: Provide guards in accordance with OSHA requirements for all rotating assemblies that would otherwise be exposed at the operating deck level.

E. Provide access to:

1. Couplings

2. Oil drains

2.10 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All electrical equipment and appurtenances, including but not limited to motors, panels, conduit and wiring, etc., specified in the equipment specifications shall comply with the applicable requirements of the Division 26 - Electrical specifications and the latest National Electric Code.

B. All pumps shall be furnished with motors such that the motor shall not be overloaded throughout the full range of the pump operation. The use of service factor will not be allowed in determining overloaded condition.

C. In the individual pump specifications, specified motor horsepower is intended to be the maximum size motor to be provided. If a larger motor is required to meet the specified operating conditions and performance requirements, the Contractor shall furnish the

larger sized motor and shall upgrade the electrical service (conduit, wires, starters, etc.) at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Where variable frequency drives (VFDs) and/or variable speed drives (VSDs) are specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating between pump supplier and VFD/VSD supplier to ensure a complete and operational system. VFDs/VSDs shall be furnished under Division 26 - Electrical unless otherwise specified in the pump specification.

E. Motor starters and controls shall be furnished and installed under Division 26 - Electrical and Division 40 - Process Interconnections unless otherwise specified in the individual pump specifications.

2.11 SPARE PARTS AND SPECIAL TOOLS

A. Accessories, spare parts, and special tools shall be provided in accordance with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials.

B. Spare parts for equipment shall be furnished where indicated in the equipment Specifications and/or where recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

C. Spare parts shall be identical and interchangeable with original parts.

D. The Contractor shall furnish a one-year supply of all recommended lubricating oils and greases.

E. Comply with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Material.

2.12 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

B. All pumps shall be provided with a stainless steel nameplate, mechanically fastened with stainless steel hardware in a conspicuous place, and clearly inscribed with:

1. the manufacturer's name

2. year of manufacture

3. model number

4. serial number

5. principal rating data including the following at the primary design point:

    a. Capacity in gallons per minute

    b. rated total dynamic head

c. speed in rotations per minute

d. efficiency at the primary design point.

C. Each pump shall also be identified as to name and number by a suitable laminated plastic or stainless steel nameplate mechanically fastened with stainless steel hardware; for example, "Raw Water Pump – 1 (RWP-1)". Coordinate name and number with same on remotely located controls, control panel, and other related equipment.

D. Nameplates shall not be painted over.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SHOP TESTING

A. The terms Shop Testing and Factory Testing shall be considered to be interchangeable.

B. Perform Shop Testing in conformance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

C. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for the coordination of factory testing of each pump, variable speed drive, and motor. Unless required as indicated by the individual pump specification sections, manufacturer provided factory test motors and factory variable speed controllers (as necessary) shall be used for factory performance testing.

D. Except as otherwise specified, factory testing shall be conducted in accordance with the latest version of

1. ANSI/HI 14.6.

2. For submersible pumps, testing shall be conducted in accordance with the latest version of ANSI/HI 14.6 and ANSI/HI 11.6.

3. For rotary pumps, testing shall be conducted in accordance with the latest version of ANSI/HI 3.6.

4. Pumps shall be tested within plus or minus 3 percent of the pump design speed. Affinity laws shall be used to adjust performance within this range to the design condition hydraulics.

E. Hydraulic Performance Acceptance Tests

1. The testing procedure shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval before scheduling the testing. The Owner/Engineer shall be given at least 2 weeks advanced notice of the scheduled testing date.

2. Notification and payment of expenses for witness testing shall be as described in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions wherever individual pump specifications call for witness testing.

3. Specified hydraulic operating condition tolerances for rotodynamic pumps shall be as follows unless otherwise specified in the individual pump specifications:

    a. The design or rated pump operating point shall be within the tolerances specified for Acceptance Grade 1U as defined by ANSI/HI 14.6.

    b. The specified low flow pump operating point shall have a unilateral positive head tolerance; no negative head tolerance is allowed at the defined flow condition.

    c. The specified high flow pump operating condition shall have a unilateral positive flow tolerance; no negative flow tolerance is allowed at the defined head condition.

4. Factory performance test shall include a minimum of seven test points between shutoff and runout.

5. Where required by the individual equipment specification sections, NPSH (NPIP for rotary pumps) tests shall be conducted to demonstrate compliance with the specified NPSH (NPIP for rotary pumps) requirements.

6. Net Positive Suction Head Testing for rotodynamic pumps shall be as follows unless otherwise specified in the individual pump specifications:

    a. An NPSH test for a single operating condition shall be executed. The test flow shall be greater than the specified high flow operating condition and shall be identified by increasing the flow until a 3% drop in head occurs relative to the expected head if sufficient NPSH were available.

    b. If during the NPSH test the pump's maximum flow condition is reached prior to identification of the NPSH3 value (i.e., control valve is fully open or the pump is operating at the edge of the AOR), the NPSHa at that operating condition shall be documented as the maximum NPSH3 value.

7. Certified test curves shall be provided for all centrifugal pumps unless otherwise specified in the individual pump specifications.

    a. Certified tests will not be required for submersible sump pumps (as specified in Section 43 25 17 – Submersible Sump Pump) with motors less than 5 hp.

    b. Certified curves shall identify minimum continuous stable flow and preferred operating region (POR) and allowable operating region (AOR) per the latest version of ANSI/HI 9.6.3.

c. Certified performance curves shall include the NPSH3 value identified during testing. An NPSH3 curve shall be calculated over the pump's AOR based on the documented test value(s). A clear designation shall be provided on the certified performance curve indicating calculated portions of the NPSH curve.

8. For wet pit submersible pumps and vertical turbine pumps, all tests shall be run at minimum pump submergence specified in the individual pump specifications.

9. All instruments shall be calibrated as required by ANSI/HI 14.6, 11.6, or 3.6 as applicable.

F. Where required in the individual pump specifications, a certified hydrostatic test shall be completed on each pumping unit in accordance with ANSI/HI 14.6 or 11.6 as applicable. Hydrostatic test pressure shall be 1.5 times maximum operating head or 1.25 times shutoff head, whichever is greater.

G. Where required in the individual pump specifications, each individual casting shall be Brinell tested in a minimum of two places, in an area of representative casting thickness to ASTM Method E-10. Results shall be certified by a registered professional engineer.

H. Shop testing of electric motors shall conform to:

1. Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions

2. Section 26 05 60 – Low-Voltage Electric Motors

3. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

4. Post-manufacture, pre-shipment motor impact test results (per HI 9.6.8, Appendix D) (for vertical pumps where a dynamic analysis is specified). Motor Reed critical frequency (RCF) mass and center of gravity properties shall be verified at the motor manufacturer's facility via motor impact testing. Before shipment of motor from motor factory, submit report of impact test results.

5. The accuracy of post-manufacture, pre-shipment motor impact test RCF shall be within 10% +/- of the expected/proposed values obtained from the motor manufacturer during the motor proposal phase. If/where values are out of tolerance, dynamic analyses and forced response analyses shall be repeated and adjustments to equipment made until a result that conforms with HI 9.6.8 and this specification is demonstrated via submitted data and accepted via the submittal process.

I. Shop testing of pumping trains - The right is reserved to require factory impact tests pre-shipment.

1. Post-manufacture, pre-shipment impact test results (per HI 9.6.8, Appendix D) (for pumps where a dynamic analysis is specified). Natural frequencies shall be

verified at the manufacturer's facility via impact testing. Before shipment of equipment from the point of manufacturer, submit report of impact test results.

2. The accuracy of post-manufacture, pre-shipment impact test shall be within 10% +/- of the expected/proposed values obtained from the manufacturer during the proposal phase. If/where values are out of tolerance, dynamic analyses and forced response analyses shall be repeated and adjustments to equipment made until a result that conforms with HI 9.6.8 and this specification is demonstrated via submitted data and accepted via the submittal process.

3.02 SHIPMENT, DELIVERY, HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Shipment, delivery and handling of equipment and materials shall be in accordance with Section 01 65 00 – Product Delivery Requirements.

B. Storage of equipment shall be in accordance with Section 01 66 00 – Product Storage and Protection Requirements.

C. Factory assembled parts and components shall not be dismantled for shipment unless permission is received in writing from the Engineer.

D. Machined surfaces of all exposed pump openings or other exposed unpainted surfaces shall be protected by wooden blanks or Cosmoline, as appropriate, strongly built and securely bolted thereto.

E. After hydrostatic or other tests, all entrapped water shall be drained prior to shipment, and proper care shall be taken to protect parts from the entrance of water during shipment, storage and handling.

3.03 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. Manufacturer’s field services shall be in accordance with:

1. Section 01 75 00 - Checkout and Startup Procedures

2. Section 46 00 00 - Equipment General Provisions

3. Section 01 79 00 – Instruction of Owner’s Personnel

B. Unless otherwise referenced in the individual pump specification section, as a minimum the services of the manufacturer's representative shall be provided for as stated in the following schedule:

Service	Number of Trips	Number of Days/Trip
Installation and Testing	1	2
Startup and Training	1	2

Service	Number of Trips	Number of Days/Trip
Services after Startup	1	1

C. Any additional time required to achieve successful installation and operation shall be at the expense of the CONTRACTOR.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Pumping equipment shall be installed in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions, the manufacturer's recommendations, accepted procedures submitted with the shop drawings and as indicated on the Drawings, unless otherwise accepted by the ENGINEER.

B. Level pump and motor and grout feet or baseplate with grout in accordance with Section 03 60 00 – Grout and in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General. Ensure minimum grout depth is obtained as recommended by the pump and grout manufacturers.

C. Drains: All gland seals, air valves, and drains shall be piped to the nearest floor drain or trench drain with stainless steel pipe or copper tube (as appropriate for the environment), properly supported with brackets.

D. Contractor shall have unit responsibility for the proper coordination, sizing, and installation of the pump foundation/mounting requirements based on the manufacturer’s recommendations, subject to Engineer’s review and comment.

3.05 ALIGNMENT

A. Pumping equipment shall be aligned in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions, the manufacturer's recommendations, accepted procedures submitted with the shop drawings and as indicated on the Drawings.

B. Equipment shall be aligned and free from binding, scraping, excessive vibration, shaft runout, or other defects. Pump drive shafts shall be measured just prior to assembly to ensure correct alignment without forcing.

C. As a minimum, comply with International Standard, ISO 1940 – Mechanical Vibration – Balance quality requirements for rotors balance quality grade for rotors in a constant rigid state.

3.06 FIELD TESTING

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions for applicable preliminary and final field testing requirements supplementary to those described in this specification.

B. Comply with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

C. All pumping units shall be field tested after installation, in accordance with the Contract Documents, to demonstrate satisfactory operation over the full operating speed range, without excessive noise, vibration, cavitation, and overheating of the bearings. The field testing shall be performed in the presence of an experienced field representative of the manufacturer of each major item of equipment, who shall supervise the following tasks and shall certify in writing that the equipment and controls have been properly installed, aligned, lubricated, adjusted, and readied for operation:

1. Pumps shall be tested for vibration over the full specified speed range. Unless otherwise required by individual specification sections, vibration shall be within the limits identified in the latest version of ANSI/HI 9.6.4 (or ANSI/HI 11.6 for submersible pumps), or manufacturer's limits if more stringent. If vibration is greater than 80% of the limits identified in ANSI/HI 9.6.4, follow-up vibration testing shall be completed after a 90-day break-in period to ensure that vibration remains within ANSI/HI 9.6.4 allowable limits. If vibration exceeds the allowable limits during the follow up testing, modifications shall be made as a warranty repair.

2. Bearing temperatures shall be determined. A running time of at least 20 minutes shall be maintained for this test, unless liquid volume available is insufficient for a complete test.

3. In addition to dynamic analysis requirements specified and defined in HI 9.6.8, where Level 2 or Level 3 analysis is specified or otherwise specified in the individual pump specifications, the natural frequencies of each installed pump shall be determined using the “bump test” method. Field natural frequency testing shall demonstrate a minimum of 10% field separation from the 1x running speed, 2x running speed and vane pass frequencies. Field test information shall be incorporated into the models developed for this facility for confirmation purposes. In addition, pump train coast down testing shall be performed for comparison purposes to bump testing results.

4. Pump performance shall be documented by obtaining concurrent readings, showing motor voltage, amperage, motor power, flow, pump suction head, and pump discharge head, for at least five (5) pumping conditions at full speed. One of the points shall be within -5% and 0%, and one being within 0% and +5% of the rated condition point flow rate; the remaining three points shall be spaced over the allowable operating region of the pump performance curve with points taken at or near the maximum allowable (shutoff) head region and at or near the maximum allowable flow (runout). Additional reduced speed testing shall be performed to demonstrate that pumps can achieve performance at turndown conditions where specified in individual pump specification sections. Each power lead to the motor shall be checked for proper current balance. Flow shall be measured to the extent possible by permanently installed instrumentation or drawdown measurement. The rated motor nameplate current shall not be exceeded at any point. Pumps with drive motors rated at less than five horsepower shall only be tested for overcurrent

when overheating or other malfunction becomes evident in general testing. Field performance testing shall meet HI 14.6 pump acceptance test grade tolerance band grade 3B for all required test points.

D. The field testing shall be witnessed by the Owner or its representative. The CONTRACTOR shall submit to the ENGINEER a written notification of all pump field tests a minimum of one (1) week prior to testing. In the event of failure of any pump to meet any of the above requirements, the CONTRACTOR shall make all necessary modifications, repairs, or replacements to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and the pump shall be re-tested at no additional compensation, until found satisfactory. The CONTRACTOR shall then certify in writing that the equipment has been satisfactorily tested, and that all final adjustments thereto have been made. Certification shall include date of final acceptance test, as well as a listing of all persons present during tests, and resulting test data. The costs of all Work performed in this Paragraph by factory-trained representatives shall be borne by the CONTRACTOR.

3.07 OPERATIONAL TESTING

A. Upon successful completion of field testing, the Contractor shall operate the pump station for twenty-one (21) consecutive calendar days to verify complete operability of the pump station. If the pump station operates for the entire 21 consecutive calendar days without incident or failure, the operational period will be successfully concluded. If an incident or failure occurs within the 21-day operational period, the Contractor shall remedy the cause and a new 21-day operational period will commence.

3.08 FAILURE OF EQUIPMENT TO PERFORM

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

3.09 PAINTING

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

B. Comply with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

END OF SECTION

Schedule 43 20 00 – 01 Dynamic Analysis Requirements

Calculation Title	Purpose	Minimum Components of Analysis	Level 1 Simple Calculations			Level 2 Intermediate Methods				Level 3 (Note 1) Advanced Methods					
			--			--				(Note 3, 7)	--				
			VS, Vert OH	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB, Vert OH	VS, Vert OH	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB ≤ 2 Stages, Vert OH	OH, BB ≥ 3 Stages	VS	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB, Vert OH	OH, BB Hydrodynamic Bearing	OH, BB ≤ 2 Stages, Antifriction Bearing	BB ≥ 3 Stages
Lateral Analysis Calculations															
Critical lateral frequency (standard established equations)	First transverse (lateral) critical speed of the rotor	Rotor and structure	X	X	X										
First dry critical speed analysis	Critical lateral frequency occurring within operating speed range					X				X	X				
Lateral forced response analysis	Critical lateral frequency occurring within operating speed range	Combined structural analysis								X		X			
Undamped natural frequency analysis	Critical lateral frequency occurring within operating speed range	Pump, motor, shafting					X	X (anti-friction bearing)	X					X	X
Damped natural frequency analysis	Critical lateral frequency occurring within operating speed range	Pump, motor, shafting						X (hydro-dynamic bearing)	X	X	X	X	X		X
Torsional Analysis															
Critical Torsional Frequency (standard established equations)	Torsional critical speed	Pump, motor, rotor	X	X	X										
Undamped torsional natural frequency analysis	Critical torsional frequency occurring within speed range	entire motor-coupling-shafting drive train				X	X	X	X	X (Note 3)	X	X (Note 3)	X	X	X

Schedule 43 20 00 – 01 Dynamic Analysis Requirements

Calculation Title	Purpose	Minimum Components of Analysis	Level 1 Simple Calculations			Level 2 Intermediate Methods				Level 3 (Note 1) Advanced Methods					
			--			--			OH, BB ≥ 3 Stages	(Note 3, 7)	--		OH, BB Hydrodynamic Bearing	OH, BB ≤ 2 Stages, Antifriction Bearing	BB ≥ 3 Stages
			VS, Vert OH	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB, Vert OH	VS, Vert OH	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB ≤ 2 Stages, Vert OH		VS	Vert BB, Vert OH	OH, BB, Vert OH			
Structural Analysis															
Structural reed critical frequency (RCF)	Critical structural natural frequency within operating speed range	pump-motor-rotor structure	X	X	X		X				X				
Shaft end deflection analysis (static structural finite element analysis, FEA)	Critical structural natural frequency occurring within operating speed range	Combination pump and supporting structure (baseplate)					X	X (Note 4,5)	X (Note 4,5)			X			
Modal FEA	Natural frequency analysis	Combined pump-motor-baseplate structural system (including pump column and bowl assembly)				X	X (Note 4, 5)	X	X	X (Note 2)	X (Note 4, 5, 2)	X (Note 2)			
Motor Reed Critical Frequency (RCF) - Expected/Proposed (Note 6)	Expected/proposed RCF, mass of motor, and location of center of gravity of the motor.	motor	X	X	X	X	X			X	X				
Motor Reed Critical Frequency (RCF) Factory Impact Verification Test - Post-manufacture/pre-shipment (Note 6)	Post-manufacture/pre-shipment RCF, mass of the motor, and as-built center of gravity location of motor.	motor	X	X	X	X	X			X	X				

Notes

(1) Where forced response analyses are expressly specified and allowed and analysis indicates that natural frequency falls within specified separation margins, and if reasonable modifications cannot adequately shift the natural frequencies outside of the separation margins, then the pump rotor and surrounding structure shall be subject to a forced response analysis performed as a combined structural analysis (per HI 9.6.8.7.2.1.2, 9.6.8.7.2.3.2, 9.6.8.7.2.1.1 and 9.6.8.2.3.1). The forced response analysis shall demonstrate that the pump will function properly over its entire speed range.

(2) Analysis shall include concrete supports and elevated slab.

(3) Torsional forced damped response analysis shall demonstrate that infinite service life shall be achieved.

(4) Analysis shall include piping to the first pipe support or expansion joint, including water mass.

(5) If pump is located on concrete pedestal or an elevated slab, the analysis shall include the nearby foundation in accordance with ANSI/HI 9.6.8. Any concrete foundation features included in the analysis shall be based on a final design for these items based on the equipment provided.

(6) RCF applies to non-submersible vertical pump-motor structures

(7) The level 3 structural analysis for VS pumps shall include foundation mass and stiffness within a radial distance (measured from the center of the pump base) at least equal to the height of the top of the motor relative to the level of attachment of the baseplate to the floor and piping details pertinent to modal mass and stiffness (including enclosed fluid) within a spherical zone of radius (relative to centerline) equal to twice the height of the top of the motor relative to the level of attachment of the baseplate to the floor.

SECTION 43 23 21
HORIZONTAL SPLIT CASE PUMPS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and place into satisfactory operation horizontal split case centrifugal pumps at the locations shown on the Drawings and as specified herein. All pumps specified herein shall be supplied by the same manufacturer.

B. Equipment shall be provided in accordance with the requirements Section 43 20 00 – Pumps –General.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General

1.03 ACTION/INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Comply with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Provide submittals identified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions in addition to the submittals identified herein and in addition to the submittals identified in the individual pumping specification sections.

C. Provide submittals identified in Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

D. Dynamic Analysis Results Report

E. Shaft deflection calculation under the most severe specified operating condition.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit warranty documentation in compliance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2. Section 01 61 00 - Product Requirements and Options

B. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

C. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2. Section 01 78 23 Operation and Maintenance Data

B. Comply with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials.

C. Comply with Section 01 79 00 – Instructions to Owner's Personnel.

D. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General.

E. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

B. Comply with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

C. Installation list demonstrating years of experience producing substantially similar equipment and demonstrating evidence of the number of installations in satisfactory operation for at least 5 years in the continental United States.

1.07 GENERAL INFORMATION AND DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment – General Provisions.

1.08 DYNAMIC ANALYSIS

A. Dynamic analyses shall be performed to determine the potential for a critical natural frequency (lateral, torsional, or structural) occurring within the normal operating speed range of the pumps. All dynamic analyses shall be performed in accordance with the latest edition of ANSI/HI 9.6.8 – Rotodynamic Pumps Guideline for Dynamics of Pumping Machinery and as specified in Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

B. Level of analysis required, minimum frequency separation margin, and other parameters of the analyses shall be as follows:

Schedule 43 23 21 - 01

	Service 1	Service2
Lateral Analysis		

	Service 1	Service2
Level of Analysis	Level 1	Level 1
Separation Margin	25%	25%
Torsional Analysis		
Level of Analysis	Level 1	Level 1
Separation Margin	25%	25%
Structural Analysis		
Level of Analysis	Level 1	Level 1
Separation Margin	25%	25%
Include Concrete Base/Pedestal in FEA Model (Level 2/3 analysis only)	N/A	N/A
Include Elevated Slab in FEA model (Level 2/3 analysis only)	N/A	N/A

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Warranty requirements shall be as specified in Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options. Warranty requirements are supplementary to the individual equipment specifications.

B. Comply with the Equipment Warranties requirements specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

C. Warranty shall be as specified in Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions with the exception that the warranty period shall be for two (2) years.

1.10 OPERATING CONDITIONS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Schedule 43 23 21 - 02

	Large Pumps	Small Pump
Number of Units	2	1
Pump Identification Numbers	PMP-1001, PMP-1002	PMP-1003
Pump Shutoff Head (Allowable Range) (ft)	170 to 152	82 to 75
Rating Point (at Full Speed)		
Flow (gpm)	4,167	2,083
Total Head (ft)	120	65
Minimum Pump Efficiency (%)	85	80

	Large Pumps	Small Pump
Rating Point shall be within the following range as % of BEP Flow	70% to 120%	70% to 120%
Maximum Flow Operating Point (at Full Speed)		
Flow (gpm)	5,850	2,930
Acceptable Total Head Range (ft)	75 – 85	35 - 45
NPSH Required shall not exceed (ft)	50	29
Operating Point shall be within (AOR/POR)	AOR	AOR
Minimum Flow Operating Point (at Full Speed)		
Flow (gpm)	2,416	567
Acceptable Total Head Range (ft)	147 - 160	70 - 88
Operating Point shall be within (AOR/POR)	AOR	AOR
Minimum Flow Operating Point (at Reduced Speed)		
Flow (gpm)	2,000	400
Acceptable Total Head Range (ft)	45 - 65	39 - 50
Operating Point shall be within (AOR/POR)	AOR	AOR
Maximum Brake Horsepower for all operating points	200	50
Maximum Pump Operating Speed (rpm)	1800	1160
Fluid Pumped	-	-
Fluid Temperature (degrees F)	Ambient	Ambient
Fluid Specific Gravity	1.0	1.0
Fluid pH range	-	-
Fluid Viscosity (absolute centipoise at 60-deg F)	1.00 cP	1.00 cP
Minimum Solids Passage Size (in)	-	-
Minimum Suction Diameter (in)	12.0	10.0
Minimum Discharge Diameter (in)	10.0	8.0
Discharge Configuration	Tangential	Tangential
Drive Configuration	Flexible Coupled	Flexible Coupled
Direction of rotation when viewed from driven end	clockwise	clockwise
Minimum ABMA L-10 Bearing life within AOR (hours)	100,000	100,000
Factory test acceptance grade	1U	1U

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General, except where superseded in this specification section.

B. Pump Type: Horizontal split case type pumps.

2.02 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of 10-years of experience of producing substantially similar equipment and shall be able to show evidence of at least 5 installations in satisfactory operation for at least 5 years in the continental United States.

B. Pump Manufacturer:

1. Aurora
2. Goulds
3. Peerless

C. The electric motor shall be provided by the pump manufacturer and shall be one of the named manufacturers specified in Section 26 05 60 – Low Voltage Electric Motors.

D. All equipment for the pumps, including motors and bases, shall be provided as a complete unit by the pump manufacturer.

E. All pumps for same pumping application shall be provided by one manufacturer.

2.03 ANCHORS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with the following Specification Sections:

1. Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening
2. Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions
3. Comply with individual pump specifications.

B. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General

2.04 MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

A. Materials of construction shall conform to the requirements listed below.

Schedule 43 23 21 - 03

Component	Materials of Construction
Casing	Cast Iron A48 Class 30B
Impeller	Nickel Aluminum Bronze B148 alloy C95500, dynamically balanced
Shaft	Alloy Steel A434 GR 4140
Shaft Sleeves	Stainless steel A743 Grade CF-8M
Shaft Sleeve Nuts	Stainless steel A743 Grade CF-8M
Wear Rings - Casing	Nickel Aluminum Bronze B148 alloy C95800
Wear Rings - Impeller	Nickel Aluminum Bronze B148 alloy C95800
Bearing Housings	Cast Iron A48
Fasteners - Wetted	Stainless Steel Type 316

2.05 COMPONENTS

A. PUMP CASING

1. The pump casing shall consist of upper and lower halves with a bolted, machined axial joint between them requiring a gasket of not more than 0.015 inch in thickness. The lower half shall incorporate the integrally cast suction and discharge nozzles such that the upper half can be removed for maintenance without disturbing piping connections or pump driver.

2. Discharge nozzle shall be oriented horizontal and the suction nozzle shall be oriented horizontally opposite the discharge nozzle.

3. Casing shall be cast of the specified material and be designed for the specified casing working pressure equal to maximum suction pressure plus pump shutoff head at maximum speed. Casing shall be hydrostatically tested at 1.5 times working pressure.

4. Nozzle flanges shall be drilled for bolt hole and bolt circle layout conforming to ANSI B16.5, Class 125. Flanges shall be designed for straight through nut and bolt flange connections to piping. Flange faces shall be machined flat.

5. Casing shall incorporate integrally cast discharge volute and suction passages. Volute design shall be dual volute type.

6. Casing shall incorporate shaft seal stuffing boxes integral with the casing halves or as separate components. Separate stuffing boxes shall have a rabbeted fit and be bolted and sealed to the casing.

7. Lower casing shall incorporate integral or fully registered bolt-on bearing supports and integral mounting legs and feet.

8. Lifting points shall be incorporated on the upper casing half for its removal.

9. Provide the following connections on the casing:

Schedule 43 23 21 - 04

Connection	PMP-1001; PMP-1002; PMP-1003
Upper Casing Vent	1/2 – inch NPT
Casing Drain	1/2 – inch NPT
Suction and Discharge Gauges	1/2 - inch NPT
Casing Volute Seal Flush (2)	1/2 – inch NPT
Stuffing Box Seal Flush (2)	3/4 – inch NPT

B. SHAFTS

1. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps-General. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

2. Shafting shall be of the specified material polished over its full length of sufficiently large diameter to safely transmit the maximum torque developed by the drive unit, to allow no more than 0.003 – inch maximum deflection at the stuffing boxes for all normal performance conditions on the curve, to prevent excessive vibration and to produce bending stresses below the fatigue limit of the shaft material in all parts of the shaft.

3. Shaft runout at the stuffing boxes shall not exceed 0.002 – inch total indicator reading.

4. Shafting shall comply with the rotating assembly resonant frequency requirements of Section 43 20 00 – Pumps-General.

5. Keyways shall be machined at the driver coupling end and at the impeller. Shaft shall have a reversible design suitable for either right- or left-hand pump rotation configuration.

C. SHAFT SLEEVES

1. Pump shaft shall be protected from the impeller through the stuffing boxes by removable shaft sleeves. Shaft sleeves shall be constructed of hardened Type 316 stainless steel. Seals shall be provided between sleeves, impeller hub and sleeve nuts to prevent leakage under the sleeve.

2. Sleeve nuts threaded on the shaft shall accurately position the impeller on the shaft. Sleeves shall be secured to prevent loosening during reverse rotation.

D. IMPELLER

1. Pump impeller shall be of the double suction, Francis vane enclosed type made of the material listed in this Section's Paragraph on "Pump Materials of Construction". Impeller shall have a minimum of five vanes. Impeller shall be cast in one piece and completely machined on the exterior surface. Impellers shall be keyed to the shaft and fixed axially along the shaft by shaft sleeves and nuts. The periphery of the impeller suction eyes shall be machined for installation of impeller wear rings.

2. The rotating assembly consisting of shaft, impeller, key(s), sleeves and sleeve nuts shall be dynamically balanced in two planes. Balance quality grade shall be ISO 1940-1 G2.5.

E. WEAR RINGS

1. The opposing surfaces of the impeller and casing at each impeller eye shall be fitted with replaceable wear rings.

2. Casing wear rings shall be pinned to the lower casing half to prevent movement. Impeller wear rings shall be shrink fitted on the impeller and locked with set screw or dowel pin.

3. Wear rings shall be constructed of materials that are galvanically compatible with the casing and impeller materials and resistant to corrosion and erosion by the pumped fluid.

F. BEARINGS

1. The weight of the pump rotating assembly and unbalanced hydraulic forces shall be carried by bearings at each end of the pump shaft. The radial bearing at the drive end of the shaft shall be a deep groove ball bearing and the thrust bearing

at the non-drive end of the shaft shall be a duplex angular contact ball bearing. Bearings shall be press fit and positioned onto ground journals at both ends of the shaft. Bearings shall be grease lubricated.

2. Bearings shall be designed for an ABMA L10 life of scheduled hours or more at the maximum shaft speed as scheduled without the aid of external cooling systems.

3. The bearing housings shall be constructed of cast iron, ASTM A48, Class 30 and designed to provide a fully enclosed bearing housing with seals to prevent lubricant contamination. Housings shall incorporate seal leakage catch basin with tapped drain ports and provisions to renew bearing lubricant. Bearing housing supports shall be integral with the lower casing half or fully registered bolt-on type.

4. One 100-ohm, platinum resistance temperature detector (RTD) shall be mounted on each bearing housing to monitor bearing temperature and shall be similar to those furnished for motor bearings.

G. PUMP AND DRIVE BASE

1. Each pump and motor shall be mounted on a common base. The base shall be fabricated from steel structural shapes and plate and designed to rigidly support the weight and resist operating forces of both pump and motor, including nozzle loads imposed by piping.

2. Pump and motor shall be bolted to machined steel pads on the base specifically designed for pump casing and motor frame for each application.

3. Base shall incorporate grout holes, drain connections and a continuous drip lip tapped for ½-inch to 1-inch NPT drain connection. CONTRACTOR shall provide 1-inch schedule 80 PVC piping from base to the process drain shown on the Drawings.

4. Base shall be bolted and grouted to the foundation. Pump manufacturer shall furnish anchor bolt layout and sizing.

5. Base shall include an electrical grounding lug.

2.06 STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

2.07 DISSIMILAR METALS

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

2.08 GALVANIZING

A. Where applicable, galvanizing shall be performed in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing.

2.09 STANDARDIZATION OF GREASE FITTINGS

A. Grease Fittings: Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

2.10 APPURTENANCES

A. Shaft Seals: Shaft sealing shall be accomplished as follows:

1. PACKING WITH LANTERN RING

a. Pump casing shall include two stuffing boxes each containing packing rings and lantern ring. A minimum of two packing rings shall be provided inboard of the lantern ring and three packing rings outboard of the lantern ring. Packing shall be interface braided synthetic impregnated with PTFE or graphite to maximize lubricity.

b. A flushing water connection shall be provided to each stuffing box from the discharge volute passage in the upper casing half. Flush lines shall be of Type 316 stainless steel construction.

c. Packing gland shall be Type 316 Stainless Steel, split type secured using at least two stainless steel bolts.]

B. Shaft Seal Schedule:

Shaft Seal Schedule 43 23 21 - 05

	PMP-1001; PMP-1002; PMP-1003
Shaft Sealing Arrangement	Packing
Throat Bushing	Yes
Seal Flush Source / API Flush Plan	Plan 11
Seal Face Material	Carbon/Silicon Carbide
Metallic Components	316 SST
Flexible Components	EPDM
Seal Flush Rate (GPM)	N/A
Seal Flush Pressure (PSIG above pump discharge pressure)	N/A

C. Pressure Gages: Provide pressure gages as indicated on the drawings and as specified under Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

D. Shaft Couplings:

1. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

2. A flexible coupling shall be provided between the pump shaft and driver and keyed to pump and driver shafts.

3. Pumps shall be furnished with OSHA compliant coupling guards. Coupling guards shall be painted steel. The design of the guard shall permit access to oil or grease fittings at pump or motor bearings without the removal of the coupling guard.

4. Manufacturer:

a. Falk

b. Dodge

c. or Equal

2.11 ELECTRICAL AND CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

A. All electrical appurtenances furnished by the equipment manufacturer shall be suitable for the area designation and classification as declared on the electrical drawings.

B. All motors shall comply with specification section 26 05 60. Reference Schedule 43 23 21 – 06 below for additional motor requirements.

Schedule 43 23 21 – 06

	Horizontal Split Case Pumps	
	PMP-1001; PMP-1002	**PMP-1003**
Compliance, Deviations, and Exceptions (CD&E) Letter Required	Yes	Yes
Electrical Ratings	460V, 3 ph, 60 Hz	460V, 3 ph, 60 Hz
Starting Method Compatibility	Variable Frequency Drive (VFD)	Variable Frequency Drive (VFD)
Inverter Duty (NEMA MG 1 Part 31)	Yes	Yes
IEEE 841 Severe Duty Motor	Yes	Yes
Maximum Horsepower, HP	200	50
Service Factor (SF)	1.0	1.0
Nominal/Synchronous Speed, rpm and poles	1800 rpm (4-pole)	1800 rpm (4-pole)

	Horizontal Split Case Pumps	
	PMP-1001; PMP-1002	**PMP-1003**
Minimum Reduced Operating Speed (Turndown Speed), rpm	1080	1080
Winding Insulation Class	Class H	Class H
Enclosure Type	TEFC	TEFC
Hazardous Area Classification	N/A (Unclassified)	N/A (Unclassified)
Mounting and Drive Type	Horizontal, Direct Coupled Drive	Horizontal, Direct Coupled Drive
Bearing Lubrication	Grease (Sealed)	Grease (Sealed)
Motor Space Heater (MSH)	Yes	Yes
Motor Winding Temperature Switches (MWTS)	Yes	Yes
Shaft Grounding Ring (SGR)	Yes (Drive End)	Yes (Drive End)
Vibration Protection (Switches)	Yes	Yes

C. Starters and controls shall be provided under Divisions 26 and 40.

2.12 SPECIAL TOOLS AND SPARE PARTS

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

B. Spare parts shall be provided in accordance with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions and shall include the following for each pump.

Spare Parts Schedule 43 23 21 – 07

Component	Quantity per Pumping Unit
Impeller wear rings	1
Bowl wear rings	1
Bearings	1
Casing joint gasket	1
Shaft coupling grid or sleeve	1
Impellers	1
Shaft Sleeves and O-rings	1
Packing Assemblies	2

2.13 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SHOP TESTING

A. Factory testing shall be in accordance with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General, and shall include:

Shop Testing Schedule 43 23 18 - 08

	PMP-1001; PMP-1002	PMP-1003
Hydraulic Performance Testing	Yes	Yes
Witnessed Performance Testing	No	No
Certified Performance Curves	Yes	Yes
Mechanical Test	No	No
String Test	No	No
NPSH Test	No	No
Hydrostatic Test	Yes	Yes
Casing Hardness Test	No	No

3.02 SHIPMENT, DELIVERY, HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Shipment, delivery and handling of equipment and materials shall be in accordance with Section 01 65 00 – Product Delivery Requirements.

B. Storage of equipment shall be in accordance with Section 01 66 00 – Product Storage and Protection Requirements.

3.03 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. The services of a qualified manufacturer's technical representative shall be provided in accordance with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General. For each series of pumps, field services shall include the following Site Visits Schedule 43 23 21 - 09:

Site Visits Schedule 43 23 21 - 09

Service	Number of Trips	Number of Days/Trip
Installation and Testing	1	2
Startup and Training	1	1
Services after Startup	1	1

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Install pump in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

3.05 ALIGNMENT

A. Comply with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General.

3.06 FIELD TESTING

A. Field testing shall be in accordance with Section 43 20 00 – Pumps General, and shall include the following Field Testing Schedule 43 23 21 - 10:

Field Testing Schedule 43 23 18 - 10

Test	Each Pump
Field Performance Testing	Yes
Vibration Testing	Yes
Natural Frequency "Bump" Test	No

B. Field vibration and alignment tests shall be performed on all pumps. The Contractor shall procure the services of an independent predictive/preventive maintenance laboratory service to perform baseline vibration tests on the subject equipment. The testing laboratory shall be independent from the Contractor and Supplier. Testing shall be conducted at maximum, intermediate and minimum pump operating speeds for the assembled pumping units in place after installation. Vibration tests will be conducted in the presence of the Engineer in accordance with the procedures outlined in the applicable standards of the Hydraulic Institute and maximum vibration shall be within the limits set forth therein. In the event vibration exceeds the specified limits, the pump manufacturer shall make all required balancing and frame adjustments to bring the equipment within the Hydraulic Institute limits and re-perform the baseline vibration testing until the system complies prior to acceptance of any pumping equipment. The results of the final baseline analysis will be delivered to the OWNER.

C. Noise measurements shall be taken in the field and shall comply with Hydraulic Institute Standards and as specified herein.

D. After the pump manufacturer's representative has determined the pump installation is correct and the pumps are ready for continuous use, Contractor shall test operate the pumps under actual operating conditions for the next twenty-one (21) calendar days. Refer to Section 43 20 00 for operational testing requirements.

3.07 FAILURE OF EQUIPMENT TO PERFORM

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

3.08 PAINTING

A. Comply with Section 46 00 00 – Equipment General Provisions.

B. Comply with Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 46 00 00
EQUIPMENT GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 THE REQUIREMENT

A. The Contractor shall furnish, install, test, and place in acceptable operation all mechanical equipment and all accessories as specified, as shown on the Drawings, and as required for a complete and operable system.

B. The mechanical equipment shall be provided complete with all accessories, special tools, spare parts, mountings, shims, sheaves, couplings, and other appurtenances as specified, and as may be required for a complete and operating installation.

C. The Contractor shall provide the Owner complete and operational equipment/systems. To this end, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to coordinate all interfaces related mechanical, structural, electrical, instrumentation, and control work and to provide necessary ancillary items such as controls, wiring, etc., to make each piece of equipment operational as shown and specified.

D. The complete installation shall be free from excessive vibration, cavitation, noise, and oil or water leaks.

E. The requirements of this section shall apply to equipment furnished under Divisions 40, 43, and 46.

F. Comply with reference specifications, codes and standards as specifically modified, complimented, and supplemented herein.

1.02 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS, CODES, AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment, materials, and installations shall conform to the requirements of the most recent editions with latest revisions, supplements, and amendments of the specifications, codes, and standards listed in Section 01 42 00 – References along with those identified herein this and other individual specification sections.

B. American Institute for Steel Construction (AISC)

C. American National Standards Institute/American Bearing Manufacturers Association (ANSI/ABMA):

1. ANSI/ABMA 9 – Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings

2. ANSI/ABMA 11 – Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings

D. Acoustical Society of America (ASA) / American National Standard Institute (ANSI) S2.75, Shaft Alignment Methodology:

1. Part 1: General Principles, Methods, Practices, and Tolerances

2. Part 2: Vocabulary

3. Part 3: Alignment of Vertically Oriented Rotating Machinery

4. Guidelines and recommendations included in ASA/ANSI S2.75 shall establish and be interpreted as the minimum requirements for acceptance for leveling, grouting and alignment related work.

E. American National Standards Institute / American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ANSI/ASME) Standard B29.1, Heavy Duty Offset Sidebar Transmission Roller Chains and Sprocket Teeth.

F. American Welding Society (AWS):

1. D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel"

2. D1.2 "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum" of the American Welding Society

G. Electrical Apparatus Service Association, Inc. (EASA) Mechanical Reference Handbook (latest revision).

H. Standard, ISO 1940 – Mechanical Vibration – Balance quality requirements for rotors balance quality grade for rotors in a constant rigid state.

I. In the event of conflict between individual specifications and reference specifications, codes and standards, the more restrictive criteria shall govern.

1.03 ACTION/INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Comply with Section 01 33 00 – Submittals Procedures

2. Fabrication information

B. Provide submittals identified in individual equipment specification sections in addition to the submittals identified herein.

C. Shop Drawings shall include the following information in addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and shall include the following additional information:

1. Equipment name, identification number and specification number.

2. Performance characteristics and descriptive data, including but not limited to capacity, power, speed, torque, and efficiency.

3. Detailed equipment dimensional drawings and setting plans including but not limited to:

    a. General cutaway sections

    b. Materials of construction

    c. Dimension of shaft projections

    d. Shaft and keyway dimensions

    e. Shaft diameter

    f. Shaft connection details

    g. Dimension between bearings

    h. General dimensions of equipment

    i. Anchor bolt locations

    j. Forces

    k. Assembly views

    l. Weights: Provide weight of entire equipment assembly, including motor and base weight of individual major subassemblies. Indicate the weight of each component, and total static and dynamic loads imparted by the equipment to the supporting structure.

    m. Rotating assembly technical information and illustration.

    n. Drawings shall identify each component by tag number to which the catalog data and detail sheets pertain.

    o. Drawings showing the location and type of all equipment, system components, supports, hangers, foundations and the required clearances to operate and maintain equipment, valves and system components in a code compliant, safe and ergonomic manner. Drawings shall show clearances reserved for walking access around all sides, for opening access doors fully, for visual inspection for condition monitoring, and for the performance of maintenance tasks including but not limited to changing filters, replacing belts, maintaining lubrication levels, predictive maintenance and performing diagnostic functions.

4. Drive and motor data as required by Division 26 – Electrical. Complete motor data shall include but not be limited to size, make, type and characteristics along with wiring diagrams. Where equipment and motor speeds are to be regulated by variable speed drives, the CONTRACTOR shall coordinate, furnish and exchange all necessary requirements with the respective equipment manufacturers to ensure compatibility and shall submit equipment, shafting, coupling, motor and variable speed drive shop drawings.

5. Bearings:

    a. Information on bearings including but not limited to: type, size, materials of construction.

    b. Bearing life calculations including but not limited to: basic dynamic load rating, static load rating, rating life, ABMA L10 reliability (expressed in hours of bearing life) and bearing system life.

6. Gear box design and performance criteria and AGMA service factor, including but not limited to the following:

    a. Thermal horsepower rating

    b. Bearing type

    c. Actual gear ratio

    d. Forced lubrication system: Provide description of equipment, system and instrumentation including but not limited to flow meter, pressure switches, etc.

    e. Gear tooth finish quality

7. Piping schematics.

8. Equipment protective device details and connection diagrams.

9. Panel layout drawings, schematic wiring diagrams, and component product data sheets for control panels.

10. A list of spare parts and special tools to be provided.

11. Information on equipment appurtenances including couplings, shaft guards, v-belt drive systems, etc.

12. Any additional information required to demonstrate conformance with the equipment specifications.

13. Results of critical speed analyses, structural, lateral, and torsional dynamic analyses as required herein and in the individual specification sections.

14. Warranty documentation including statement of duration of warranty period and contact phone numbers and addresses for warranty issues.

15. Shipment, delivery, handling, and storage instructions.

16. Installation instructions

17. Manufacturers literature and brochures

18. Materials of construction and associated specifications (such as AISI, ASTM, SAE, etc.), including grade and type.

19. Anchor design in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

20. Intermediate shafting design, including but not limited to general arrangement drawings, engineering data, materials of construction, recommended angular offsets (for cardan universal jointed shafts), and shaft critical speed analyses (including 1st, 2nd and 3rd critical speed analysis).

21. Coatings: Coating system data and description of coating system, surface preparation and shop painting, including certification that the shop paint is compatible with the finish paint.

22. Pre-commissioning lubrication oil flushing plan developed by a machinery lubrication specialist, specifically for each piece of lubricated equipment. Plan shall identify, describe procedure and demonstrate data-based approach to demonstrating achievement of lubricant cleanliness via flushing. Level of lubricant cleanliness shall be as required by equipment manufacturer's written recommendations.

23. Equipment installation lists.

24. Equipment specific requirements for levelness, plumbness, flatness, coplanarity and coplanar surface deviation.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit warranty documentation in compliance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2. Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options

B. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures and Section 01 78 23 Operation and Maintenance Data.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) manuals shall be submitted in accordance with:

1. Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures

2. Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data

B. Comply with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials:

1. For spare parts, extra stock materials, and tools, submit quantity of items specified in associated Specification Section.

2. Submit complete list of spare parts, extra stock materials, maintenance supplies and special tools required for maintenance for one year with unit prices and source of supply. Indicate number/quantity specified and furnished, manufacturer, part number, description,

C. Comply with Section 01 79 00 – Instructions to Owner's Personnel.

D. Lubrication Information:

1. Comply with Specification Section 01 78 23 – Operation and Maintenance Data.

2. Complete lubrication instructions and lubricant schedule, including manufacturer's recommended lubricant. All lubricants shall be food grade, NSF 61 approved. Schedule shall include frequency of lubricant application, type of lubricant, and instructions regarding lubricant application

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE SUBMITTALS

A. Factory testing plan.

B. Factory Test Results shall be submitted and approved prior to shipment of equipment.

C. Field testing plan.

D. Comply with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

E. Alignment Report:

1. Alignment reports shall contain numerical values to express offset and angular alignment and all other parameters documented in ANSI/ASA S2.75.

2. Alignment reports shall be submitted immediately after each of the following activities have been completed:

a. Preliminary Alignment

b. Final Alignment (at both ambient and operating temperatures)

c. Re-check of alignment

F. Preliminary field test data

G. System field quality control testing

H. Final field test data

I. Certified test reports

1.07 GENERAL INFORMATION AND DESCRIPTION

A. All parts of the equipment furnished shall be designed and constructed for the maximum stresses occurring during fabrication, transportation, installation, testing, and all conditions of operation. All materials shall be new and shall conform to all applicable Sections of these Specifications.

B. All parts of duplicate equipment shall be interchangeable without modification. Manufacturer's design shall accommodate all the requirements of these Specifications.

C. Equipment and appurtenances shall be designed in conformity with specifications, codes and reference standards.

D. All bearings and moving parts shall be protected by bushings or other Engineer approved means against wear, and provision shall be made for accessible lubrication by extending lubrication lines and fittings to approximately 30 inches above finished floor elevation.

E. Details shall be designed for appearance as well as utility. Protruding members, joints, corners, gear covers, etc., shall be finished in appearance. All exposed welds on machinery shall be ground smooth and the corners of structural shapes shall be rounded or chamfered.

F. Machinery parts shall conform within allowable tolerances to the dimensions shown on the working drawings.

G. All machinery and equipment shall be safeguarded in accordance with the specifications, codes, and reference standards.

H. All rotating shafts, couplings, or other moving pieces of equipment shall be provided with protective guards of sheet metal or wire mesh, neatly and rigidly supported. Guards shall be removable as required to provide access for repairs.

I. All equipment greater than 100 pounds shall have lifting lugs, eyebolts, etc., for ease of lifting, without damage or undue stress exerted on its components.

J. All manufactured items provided under this Section shall be of current manufacture and shall be the products of manufacturers specializing in the manufacture of such products.

K. Code Compliance, safety and ergonomics for operating and maintenance personnel accessing equipment shall be considered during shop drawing development, fabrication, and installation. Items to considering include but are not limited to clearances reserved for walking access around all sides, for opening access doors fully, for visual inspection for condition monitoring, and for the performance of maintenance tasks including but not limited to changing filters, replacing belts, maintaining lubrication levels, predictive maintenance and performing diagnostic functions.

1.08 EQUIPMENT WARRANTIES

A. Warranty requirements shall be as specified in Section 01 61 00 – Product Requirements and Options and Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures. Warranty requirements are supplementary to the individual equipment specifications.

1.09 DEFINITIONS

A. Comply with specification Section 01 42 00 – References.

B. Refer to the specified reference specifications, codes and standards for definitions applicable to this specification. Additional definitions are included hereafter.

C. Chockplate: A solid steel (or alloy steel) plate with a machined top surface that is grouted to a concrete foundation to support and maintain alignment of a machinery structural steel base plate.

D. Equipment Train: Two or more rotating equipment machinery elements consisting of at least one driver and one driven element joined together by a coupling.

E. Mounting plate: A device used to attach equipment to concrete foundations; includes base plates, soleplates, and chockplates. A mounting plate is a base-support mechanism for the attached machinery and all individual pieces of machinery are expected to be removable from the mounting plate as a single assembly.

F. Operating Temperature (Thermal) Alignment: A procedure to determine the actual change in relative shaft positions within a machinery train from the ambient (not running) condition and the normal operating temperature (running) condition by taking measurements from start-up to normal operating temperature while the machine(s) is (are) operating, or after the shafts have been stopped but the machines are still near operating temperature.

G. Preliminary alignment: The aligning of two adjacent machinery shafts to ensure that final alignment can be achieved without being bolt bound. This is accomplished before grouting (for horizontal machines) and the measurement of piping strain on the machinery.

H. Soleplate: A solid steel (or alloy steel) plate with a machined top surface that is grouted to a concrete foundation to support and maintain alignment of machinery.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. All like components within a piece of equipment shall be provided by the same manufacturer.

B. Base plates:

1. Top surface of mounting plates shall be machined in locations where equipment supports/feet will contact the plate.

2. Equipment contact points shall be flat and parallel within ASA/ANSI 2.75 tolerances or 0.002-inches per foot, whichever is more stringent, and within related tolerances.

3. There shall be no paint where equipment supports or feet contact mounting plate.

4. Mounting plate shall be sufficiently rigid to avoid bending or flexing when equipment is installed.

2.02 ANCHORS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with the following Specification Sections:

1. Specification Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening.

2. Comply with individual equipment specifications.

B. The Contractor shall furnish, install, and protect all necessary guides, bearing plates, anchor and attachment bolts, and all other appurtenances required for the installation of the devices included in the equipment specified. Working Drawings for installation shall be furnished by the equipment manufacturer, and templates shall be used by the Contractor when required in the detailed equipment Specifications.

C. Anchor bolts and fasteners:

1. Anchor bolts shall be designed and provided by the Contractor in accordance with Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fastening, and with the individual equipment Specifications.

2. All anchor bolts shall have at least the minimum diameter as required by Specification Section 05 05 23 – Metal Fasteners.

3. All anchor bolts, guard bolts, washers, clips, clamps, fasteners, and leveling plate pads, nuts, shims, and jack bolts of any type shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel, unless otherwise specified the individual equipment Specifications.

4. Undercutting of anchors or fasteners shall not be permitted.

D. Pipe sleeves as a means for adjusting anchor bolts shall be provided where indicated in the contract documents or required by the equipment manufacturer.

E. The Contractor shall provide all concrete pads or pedestals required for equipment furnished. All concrete equipment pads shall be a minimum of 4” high, unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, and shall be doweled.

2.03 DEFAULT MATERIALS

A. Equipment shall be constructed out of the materials specified in respective individual pumping specification sections. Material not specifically called for shall be high-grade, standard commercial quality, free from all defects and imperfection that might affect the serviceability of the product for the purpose for which it is intended.

2.04 STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Structural steel used for fabricating equipment shall conform to the requirements of Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel.

B. All materials shall conform to applicable provisions of the AISC Specifications for the design and fabrication of structural steel, and to pertinent ASTM Standard Specifications.

2.05 DISSIMILAR METALS

A. All dissimilar metals shall be isolated in accordance with Section 05 10 00 – Metal Materials and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

2.06 GALVANIZING

A. Where required by the equipment specifications, galvanizing shall be performed in accordance with Section 05 05 13 – Galvanizing.

2.07 STANDARDIZATION OF GREASE FITTINGS

A. The grease fittings on all mechanical equipment shall be such that they can be serviced with a single type of grease gun. Fittings shall be “Zerk” type.

2.08 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All electrical equipment and appurtenances, including but not limited to motors, panels, conduit, and wiring, etc., specified in the equipment specifications shall comply with the applicable requirements of the Division 26 specifications and the latest National Electric

Code. Motor starters and controls shall be furnished and installed under Division 26 and Division 40 unless otherwise specified in the individual equipment specifications.

B. In the individual equipment specifications, specified motor horsepower is intended to be the minimum size motor to be provided. If a larger motor is required to meet the specified operating conditions and performance requirements, the Contractor shall furnish the larger sized motor and shall upgrade the electrical service (conduit, wires, starters, etc.) at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Where variable frequency drives (VFDs) are specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating between equipment supplier and VFD supplier to ensure a complete and operational system. VFDs shall be furnished under Division 26 unless otherwise specified in the equipment specification. Wherever variable speed drives (VSDs) are specified the same requirements as for VFDs shall apply.

D. Motor starters and controls shall be furnished and installed under Division 26 and Division 40 unless otherwise specified in the individual equipment specifications.

2.09 ACCESSORIES, SPARE PARTS, AND SPECIAL TOOLS

A. Accessories, spare parts, and special tools shall be provided in accordance with Section 01 78 43 – Spare Parts and Extra Materials.

2.10 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. All mechanical equipment shall be provided with a substantial stainless-steel nameplate, mechanically fastened with stainless steel hardware in a conspicuous place, and clearly inscribed with:

1. The manufacturer's name
2. Year of manufacture
3. Serial number
4. Principal rating data such as (for example):
    a. Capacity
    b. Pressure
    c. Horsepower
    d. Speed

B. Each piece of mechanical equipment shall also be identified as to name and number by a suitable laminated plastic or stainless-steel nameplate mechanically fastened with stainless steel hardware; for example, "Raw Water Pump #1 (RWP-1)". Coordinate

name and number with same on remotely located controls, control panel, and other related equipment.

C. Nameplates shall not be painted over.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 SHOP TESTING

A. All equipment shall be tested in the shop of the manufacturer in a manner which shall conclusively prove that its characteristics comply fully with the requirements of the Contract Documents and that it will operate in the manner specified or implied.

B. No equipment shall be shipped to the project site until the Engineer has been furnished a certified copy of test results and has notified the Contractor, in writing, that the results of such tests are acceptable.

C. A certified copy of the manufacturer's actual test data and interpreted results thereof shall be forwarded to the Engineer for review.

D. If required by the individual equipment Specifications, arrangements shall be made for the Owner/Engineer to witness performance tests in the manufacturer's shop. The Engineer shall be notified ten working days before shop testing commences. Expenses are to be paid by Contractor.

E. Shop testing of electric motors shall conform to:

1. Section 26 05 60 – Low-Voltage Electric Motors

2. Section 26 05 00 – Basic Electrical Requirements

3.02 SHIPMENT, DELIVERY, HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Shipment, delivery, and handling of equipment and materials shall be in accordance with Section 01 65 00 – Product Delivery Requirements.

B. Storage of equipment and materials shall be in accordance with Section 01 66 00 – Product Storage and Protection Requirements.

C. Shipping plans shall include consideration for protecting bearings and/or other rotating equipment from chatter damage.

D. Any equipment shipped to site that needs further attention shall have a WARNING tag affixed to it with indication of the action that should be taken in preparation for startup. Examples are: Final Lubrication, Mechanical Seal not in final position, etc.

3.03 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. Manufacturer's field services shall be in accordance with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

B. The Contractor shall arrange for a qualified factory trained Technical Representative from each manufacturer or supplier of equipment who is regularly involved in the inspection, installation, start-up, troubleshooting, testing, maintenance, and operation of the specified equipment. Qualification of the Technical Representative shall be appropriate to the type of equipment furnished and subject to the approval of the Engineer and the Owner. Where equipment furnished has significant process complexity, furnish the services of engineering personnel knowledgeable in the process involved and the function of the equipment. When necessary, the Contractor shall schedule multiple Technical Representatives to be present at the same time for the purpose of coordinating the operation of multiple pieces of related equipment.

C. Services of the Technical Representative will require a minimum of two (2) site visits, one for installation and testing and one for startup and training, and will be for the minimum number of days recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer but will not be less than the number of days specified in individual equipment sections. Additional site visits may be required as described below and in the equipment specifications.

D. For each site visit, the Technical Representative shall submit jointly to the Owner, the Engineer, and the Contractor a complete signed report of the results of their inspection, operation, adjustments, and testing. The report shall include detailed descriptions of the points inspected, tests and adjustments made, quantitative results obtained if such are specified.

E. The manufacturer's Technical Representative shall provide the following services.

1. Installation: The Technical Representative shall inspect the installed equipment to verify that installation is in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Where required by individual equipment specifications, the Technical Representative shall also supervise the installation of the equipment.

2. Testing: After installation of the equipment has been completed and the equipment is presumably ready for operation, but before it is operated by others, the Technical Representative shall inspect, operate, test, and adjust the equipment as required to prove that the equipment is in proper condition for satisfactory operation under the conditions specified. Unless otherwise noted in the signed site visit report, the report shall constitute a certification that the equipment conforms to the requirements of the Contract and is ready for startup and that nothing in the installation will render the manufacturer's warranty null and void. The report shall include date of final acceptance field test, as well as a listing of all persons present during tests.

3. Startup: The Technical Representative shall start up the equipment for actual service with the help of the Contractor. If equipment or installation problems are experienced, the Contractor and the representative shall provide the necessary services until the equipment is operating satisfactorily and performing according to the specifications at no additional cost to the Owner. Unless otherwise noted in the signed site visit report, the report shall constitute a certification that the equipment conforms to the requirements of the Contract and is ready for permanent operation and that nothing in the installation will render the manufacturer's warranty null and void.

4. Training: Training shall be provided in accordance with Section 01 79 00 – Instruction of Owner Personnel.

5. Services after Startup: Where required by the individual equipment specifications, the Technical Representative shall return to the project site thirty (30) days after the startup date to review the equipment performance, correct any equipment problems, and conduct operation and maintenance classes as required by the Owner. This follow-up trip is required in addition to the specified services of Technical Representative prior to and during equipment startup. At this time, if there are no equipment problems, each manufacturer shall certify to the Owner in writing that their equipment is fully operational and capable of meeting operating requirements. If the equipment is operating incorrectly, the Technical Representative will make no certification to the Owner until the problems are corrected and the equipment demonstrates a successful thirty (30) days operating period.

F. The Contract amount shall include the cost of furnishing the Technical Representative for the minimum number of days specified, and any additional time required to achieve successful installation and operation. The times specified for services by the Technical Representative in the equipment Specifications are exclusive of travel time to and from the facility and shall not be construed as to relieve the manufacturer of any additional visits to provide sufficient service to place the equipment in satisfactory operation.

G. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer at least 14 days in advance of each equipment test or Owner training session.

H. The Technical Representative shall sign in and out at the office of the Engineer's Resident Project Representative on each day the Technical Representative is at the project.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. The Contractor shall obtain written installation manuals from the equipment manufacturer prior to installation. Equipment shall be installed strictly in accordance with recommendations of the manufacturer. A copy of all installation instructions shall be furnished to the Engineer's field representative one week prior to installation.

B. The Owner's field representative (e.g., the Engineer or similar) shall witness all activities involved with equipment installation.

C. The Contractor shall have on hand personnel, construction equipment, and machinery of capacity to facilitate the work and to handle all emergencies encountered in work of this character. To minimize field erection problems, mechanical units shall be factory assembled insofar as practical.

D. Equipment shall be erected in a neat and workmanlike manner on the foundations at the locations and elevations shown on the Drawings.

E. All equipment sections and loose items shall be match-marked prior to shipping.

F. The Contractor shall furnish oil and grease for initial operation and testing. The manufacturer and grades of oil and grease shall be in accordance with the recommendations of the equipment manufacturer.

G. Leveling and Grouting:

1. Set equipment to dimensions shown on drawings. Dimensions shall be accurate to +/- 1/16 inch except as otherwise specified, required or indicated on the drawings.

2. Base plate Surface Preparation – Prior to setting equipment and grouting, inspect and clean equipment mounting base plates, pads, feet, and frames to remove all grease, rust, paint, and dirt.

3. Wedges (i.e., tapered shims) shall not be used for leveling, aligning, or supporting equipment.

4. General Equipment Leveling:

a. Non-rotating Equipment: Set level to +/- 1/16 inch per 10-foot length (0.005 inch per foot) unless manufacturer's requirements are more stringent.

b. Rotating Equipment: Install, set to the most stringent of the following requirements for levelness, plumbness, flatness, coplanarity and coplanar surface deviation:

1) ASA-ANSI S2.75, Shaft Alignment Methodology. Comply with tolerance ranges scheduled at the end of this specification section.

2) Individual equipment specifications

3) Manufacturer's pre-printed written requirements.

4) When the equipment manufacturer's pre-printed tolerances are more stringent than those stated in ASA/ANSI 2.75 or more stringent than the individual pump specification, the cost of field machining sole

plates or precision grouting sole plates shall be covered by the Contractor.

c. Shims or leveling nuts shall be used unless equipment is furnished with leveling feet. Set shims flush with equipment base plate edges. When grouting is required, equipment shall be shimmed to allow a minimum of one-inch grout thickness. Grout shall cover shims at least 3 inches. Final level check shall be held for inspection and approval by Engineer before proceeding.

d. Equipment shall be leveled by first using sitting nuts on the anchor bolts, and then filling the space between the equipment base and concrete pedestal with epoxy base plate grout, unless alternate methods are recommended by the manufacturer and are acceptable to the Engineer (e.g., such as shim leveling pumps, or chemical grout).

5. Grouting

a. Comply with Section 03 60 00 – Grout.

b. Grout Materials:

1) Rotating Equipment: Grout for rotating equipment shall be epoxy base plate grout. Cementitious grouts shall not be accepted for rotating equipment.

2) Non-rotating Equipment: Grout shall be as per the non-rotating equipment manufacturer’s pre-printed written installation instructions and shall be subject to the Engineer’s approval.

c. Fill pipe sleeves with grout, after bolt alignment is proven, and prior to placing grout under equipment bases.

d. Concrete Surface Preparation: Roughen concrete equipment pad surface by chipping, removing laitance, and unsound concrete. Clean area of all foreign material such as oil, grease, and scale.

1) When grouting with cementious grouts is approved, the contact area of the concrete equipment pad shall be saturated with water at least 4 hours prior to grouting, removing excess water ponds.

e. Application:

1) Place grout after the equipment base has been set and its initial alignment and level have been approved.

2) Form around the base, mix grout, and place in accordance with the grout manufacturers published instructions.

3) Grout mixture shall be flowable. Dry packing of grout shall not be permitted.

4) Eliminate all air or water pockets beneath the base using a drag chain or rope.

5) Grout voids detectable by tapping the top of the base plate with a hammer shall be grounds for removal and reinstallation of the work.

f. Finishing: Point the edges of the grout to form a smooth 45-degree slope.

g. After cementious grout has cured (not before 3 days after placement) paint exposed surfaces of grout with shellac.

h. Level Verification. After grout has cured, and immediately prior to final drive alignment, recheck equipment for level and plumb. Re-level and square as necessary. Hold final checks for inspection and approval by Engineer.

6. Inspect for and remove all machining burrs or thread pulls in female holes on mating surfaces of mounting frame and machine feet.

3.05 ALIGNMENT

A. For equipment that requires field alignment and connections, the Contractor shall provide the services of the manufacturer's qualified mechanic, millwright, or machinist, to align the equipment and motor prior to making piping connections or anchoring the equipment base. Alignment shall be as specified herein.

B. Rotating Equipment Shaft Alignment: Assembled equipment shafts shall be set to comply with the most stringent of the following tolerance requirements for shaft runout and shaft-to-shaft alignment tolerances expressed in angle at flex plane, in offset and angularity and/or in offset per tolerance plane separation:

1. ASA-ANSI S2.75, Shaft Alignment Methodology. Comply with tolerance ranges scheduled at the end of this specification section.

2. Individual equipment specifications

3. Manufacturer’s pre-printed written requirements.

C. Use the machined surfaces on which the equipment sets for the base/mounting frame leveling plane. Use the machined shaft surface for equipment leveling plane.

D. Sprocket and Sheave Alignment:

1. Check shaft mounted components for face runout and eccentricity (outside diameter) runout by magnetically mounting a dial indicator on a stationary base and indicating over 360 degrees on a continuous machined surface at the outside

diameter of the component. Maximum allowable total indicated face runout and eccentricity for sprockets and sheaves will be per ANSI Standard B29.1-1975.

2. Drive and driven sheaves shall lie in the same plane. The sum of parallel and angular sheave misalignment measured across the span length of the belt and angular misalignment perpendicular to the belt span length shall each not exceed ½ degree or the belt manufacturer’s recommendation whichever is more stringent.

E. Belt tensioning: Set drive belt tension to manufacturer's specification for the belt type. Recheck alignment after drive tensioning.

F. Thermal/Mechanical Growth: Thermal/mechanical growth corrections for driver and driven machines will be used in vertical and horizontal alignment where applicable. The equipment manufacturer will determine thermal/mechanical growth applicability for any machine and provide the correction offsets to be used.

G. Rotating Shaft Alignment

1. Measurement devices/fixtures will be set up on the driver and driven machine, or machine shaft surfaces. Machined coupling hubs may be used only if there is no clearance to mount fixtures directly on the shafts.

2. Account for possible coupling flex by always rotating coupled machines in the same direction during alignment.

3. Final alignments shall be performed utilizing laser alignment tools unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

4. Cardan Universal Jointed Intermediate Shafting:

a. Align cardan universal joints in accordance with manufacturer’s written offset recommendations.

b. Offsets shall be field verified.

c. Contractor shall have unit responsibility for all components of extended shaft driven equipment, including but not limited to the coordination of shaft design with equipment, variable frequency drive and control strategies.

5. Alignment Steps: Each of the following alignment steps are required in all instances, including but not limited to, all vertically and horizontally mounted drivers:

a. Preliminary alignment is when uncoupled. Preliminary Alignment (at ambient temperature):

1) Perform prior to grouting and piping connections.

2) Check shaft straightness (runout).

3) Correct for soft foot.

b. Final alignment method is when coupled. Final Alignment (at ambient temperature):

1) Perform after grouting and piping connections have been completed.

2) Check for pipe strain.

3) Alignment shall be within tolerances.

c. Final alignment method is when coupled. Final Alignment (at operating temperature after 1-hour of continuous operation):

1) Check for pipe strain.

2) Alignment shall be within tolerances (coupled).

d. Re-check alignment (at operating temperature):

1) After a minimum of 24-hours of run time

2) Alignment shall be within tolerances (coupled)

6. Additional Alignment Steps for Vertical Mixers:

a. Level gearbox.

b. Verify vertical plumbness of shaft (while shaft is not turning).

c. Grout.

d. Check shaft runout.

e. Install impeller blades.

3.06 FIELD TESTING

A. Field testing shall be in accordance with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

B. All equipment shall be set, aligned, and assembled in conformance with the manufacturer's drawings and instructions. Provide all necessary calibrated instruments to execute performance tests. Submit report certified by the pump manufacturer’s representative.

C. Preliminary Field Tests, Yellow Tag.

1. As soon as conditions permit, after the equipment has been secured in its permanent position, the Contractor shall:

    a. Verify that the equipment is free from defects.

    b. Check for alignment as specified herein.

    c. Check for direction of rotation.

    d. Check motor for no load current draw.

2. Contractor shall flush all bearings, gear housings, etc., in accordance with the pre-commissioning lubrication oil flushing plan and manufacturer’s pre-printed written recommendations, to remove any foreign matter accumulated during shipment, storage or erection. Lubricants shall be added as required by the manufacturer's instructions.

3. When the Contractor has demonstrated to the Engineer that the equipment is ready for operation, a yellow tag will be issued. The tag will be signed by the Engineer, or the Engineer’s assigned representative and attached to the equipment. The tag shall not be removed.

4. Preliminary field tests, yellow tag, must be completed before equipment is subjected to final field tests, blue tag.

D. Final Field Tests, Blue Tag

1. Upon completion of the above, and at a time approved by the Engineer, the equipment will be tested by operating it as a unit with all related piping, ducting, electrical and controls, and other ancillary facilities.

2. The equipment will be placed in continuous operation as prescribed or required and witnessed by the Engineer or the Engineer’s assigned representative and the Owner or the Owner’s assigned representative.

3. The tests shall prove that the equipment and appurtenances are properly installed, meet their operating cycles and are free from defects such as overheating, overloading, and undue vibration and noise. Operating field tests shall consist of the following:

    a. Check equipment for excessive vibration and noise.

    b. Check motor current draw under load conditions. The rated motor nameplate current shall not be exceeded. The rated motor nameplate horsepower shall not be exceeded when a torque transducer is provided.

    c. Recheck alignment where applicable, after unit has run under load for a minimum of 24 hours.

E. Additional field testing recommended by the manufacturer shall be performed at no cost to Owner.

F. Until final field tests are acceptable to the Engineer, the Contractor shall make all necessary changes, readjustments, and replacements at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. Upon acceptance of the field tests, a blue tag will be issued. The tag will be signed by the Engineer and attached to the unit. The tag shall not be removed, and no further construction work will be performed on the unit, except as required during start-up operations and directed by the Engineer.

H. Defects which cannot be corrected by installation adjustments will be sufficient grounds for rejection of any equipment.

I. All costs in connection with field testing of equipment such as lubricants, temporary instruments, labor, equipment, etc., shall be borne by the Contractor. Power, fuel, chemicals, water, etc. normally consumed by specific equipment shall be supplied by the Owner unless otherwise specified in the individual equipment specifications.

J. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the proper operation of equipment during tests and instruction periods and shall neither have nor make any claim for damage which may occur to equipment prior to the time when the Owner formally takes over the operation thereof.

K. Field testing of electric motors shall be in accordance with Section 26 05 60 – Low-Voltage Electric Motors; Section, and Section 26 05 00, Basic Electrical Requirements.

3.07 VIBRATION TESTING

A. Vibration testing shall be in accordance with Section 01 75 00 – Checkout and Startup Procedures.

3.08 FAILURE OF EQUIPMENT TO PERFORM

A. Any defects in the equipment, or failure to meet the guarantees or performance requirements of the Specifications shall be promptly corrected by the Contractor by replacements or otherwise.

B. If the Contractor fails to make these corrections, or if the improved equipment shall fail again to meet the guarantees or specified requirements, the Owner, notwithstanding their having made partial payment for work and materials which have entered into the manufacture of said equipment, may reject said equipment and order the Contractor to remove it from the premises at the Contractor's expense.

C. The Contractor shall then obtain specified equipment to meet the contract requirements or upon mutual agreement with the Owner, adjust the contract price to reflect not supplying the specific equipment item.

D. In case the Owner rejects said equipment, then the Contractor hereby agrees to repay to the Owner all sums of money paid to him for said rejected equipment on progress certificates or otherwise on account of the lump sum prices herein specified.

E. Upon receipt of said sums of money, the Owner will execute and deliver to the Contractor a bill of sale of all rights, title, and interest in and to said rejected equipment; provided, however, that said equipment shall not be removed from the premises until the Owner obtains from other sources other equipment to take the place of that rejected.

F. Said bill of sale shall not abrogate Owner's right to recover damages for delays, losses, or other conditions arising out of the basic contract.

3.09 PAINTING

A. The equipment and motor shall be painted. All surface preparation, shop painting, field repairs, finish painting, and other pertinent detailed painting specifications shall conform to applicable paragraphs of Section 09 90 00 – Painting.

B. All shop coatings shall be compatible with proposed field coatings.

C. All inaccessible surfaces of the equipment, which normally require painting, shall be finished painted by the manufacturer.

D. Gears, bearing surfaces, and other unpainted surfaces shall be protected prior to shipment by a heavy covering of rust-preventive compound sprayed or hand applied which shall be maintained until the equipment is placed in operation. This coating shall be easily removable by a solvent.

3.10 WELDING

A. The Equipment Manufacturer's shop welding procedures, welders, and welding operators shall be qualified and certified in accordance with the requirement of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel" or AWS D1.2 "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum" of the American Welding Society, as applicable.

B. The Contractor's welding procedures, welders, and welding operators shall be qualified and certified in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel" or AWS D1.2 "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum" of the American Welding Society, as applicable.

C. The Contractor shall perform all field welding in conformance with the information shown on the Equipment Manufacturer's drawings regarding location, type, size, and length of all welds in accordance with "Standard Welding Symbols" AWS A2.0 of the American Welding Society, and special conditions, as shown by notes and details.

Schedule 46 00 00 – 01 – Applicable Tolerance Range

Equipment Horsepower	ANSI/ASA S2.75 Quality Grade Tolerance Range
<= 25 HP	Minimal
> 25 HP < 100 HP	Standard
>= 100 HP	Precision

Scheduled ANSI/ASA S2.75 Quality grade tolerance range categories relate to ANSI/ASA S2.75 quantified tolerances for: levelness, plumbness, flatness, coplanarity, coplanar surface deviation, shaft runout, shaft-to-shaft alignment, flex plane offset, angularity, and offset per tolerance plane separation.

END OF SECTION

Appendix A:
Geotechnical Report

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON, INC.

Report of
Subsurface Exploration and Geotechnical Engineering Services

Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station and Water Lines
Concord, North Carolina

Prepared for:

Hazen and Sawyer

9101 Southern Pine Boulevard, Suite 250

Charlotte, NC 28273

Prepared by:

Froehling & Robertson, Inc.

3300 International Airport Drive, Suite 600

Charlotte, North Carolina 28208

30 October 2024

F&R Project No. 63C-0010

F&R Project No.: 63C-0010 30 October 2024

Mr. Michael Benchich, P.E.
Senior Associate
Hazen and Sawyer
9101 Southern Pine Boulevard, Suite 250
Charlotte, NC 28273

Re: Report of Subsurface Exploration and Geotechnical Engineering Services
Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station and Water Lines
Concord, North Carolina

Mr. Benchich,

The enclosed report presents the results of the subsurface exploration program and geotechnical engineering evaluation undertaken by Froehling & Robertson, Inc. (F&R), in connection with the above referenced project. Our services were performed in general accordance with F&R Proposal No. 2363-00182 dated 8 December 2023. This report presents our understanding of the project, reviews our subsurface exploration and laboratory testing procedures, describes the general subsurface conditions at the boring locations, and presents geotechnical engineering evaluations and recommendations.

We have enjoyed working with you on this project. If requested, we can also perform the recommended quality assurance monitoring and testing services during construction. Please contact us if you have any questions regarding this report or if we may be of further service.

Sincerely,
FROEHLING & ROBERTSON, INC.

NORTH CAROLINA PROFESSIONAL SEAL 048021 ENGINEER ALEXANDER T. KUCZERO

10/30/2024

Alexander T. Kuczero, P.E.
Geotechnical Engineer

Andrew R. Frank, P.E.
Regional Senior Geotechnical Engineer

Email Distribution: mbenchich@hazenandsawyer.com

\\63svr\serverhd\Projects 63C\63C-0010 (Hazen & Sawyer-Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station)\Reports\63C-0010 (Hazen & Sawyer - Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station) Final Report.docx

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY		1
1.0	PROJECT INFORMATION	2
2.0	GEOTECHNICAL SCOPE OF SERVICES	4
3.0	EXPLORATION PROCEDURES	5
3.1	SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION METHODS	5
3.2	SOIL LABORATORY TESTING	6
4.0	SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	7
4.1	REGIONAL GEOLOGY	7
4.2	SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS	7
4.2.1	Surficial Soils	8
4.2.2	Aggregate Base Materials	8
4.2.3	Residual Soils	8
4.2.4	Groundwater Data	8
4.3	LABORATORY TEST RESULTS	9
5.0	GEOTECHNICAL DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS	10
5.1	GENERAL	10
5.2	FOUNDATION DESIGN	10
5.2.1	Pump Station	10
5.2.2	Generator Pad	10
5.2.3	General Shallow Foundation Recommendations	11
5.3	SEISMIC SITE CLASS	11
6.0	CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS	12
6.1	GENERAL	12
6.2	SITE PREPARATION	12
6.3	SHALLOW FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION	13
6.4	CONTROLLED STRUCTURAL FILL	13
6.5	GROUNDWATER CONDITIONS	14
6.6	EXCAVATION CONDITIONS AND GUIDELINES	14
7.0	CONTINUATION OF SERVICES	16
8.0	LIMITATIONS	17

APPENDICES

APPENDIX I

Site Vicinity Map (Figure No. 1)
Boring Location Plan (Figure No. 2)

APPENDIX II

Key to Soil Classification
Soil Classification Chart
Boring Logs (B-1 through B-5)
Hand Auger Log (B-6)

APPENDIX III

Materials Test Report
Proctor Report

APPENDIX IV

GBA Publication "Important Information about This Geotechnical Engineering Report"

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This Executive Summary is provided as a brief overview of our geotechnical engineering evaluation for the project and is not intended to replace more detailed information contained elsewhere in this report. As an overview, this summary inherently omits details that could be very important to the proper application of the provided geotechnical design recommendations. This report should be read in its entirety prior to implementation into design and construction. The Project Information section of this report should be particularly reviewed by project designers to confirm that the geotechnical engineer's understanding of the project concurs with the current project parameters at the time of project design.

- F&R performed a final subsurface exploration of the site consisting of six (6) test borings (designated as B-1 through B-6) performed on 25 September and 1 October 2024. Borings B-1 through B-5 were Standard Penetration Test (SPT) soil borings; however, due to overhead power and space constraints within the right-of-way, boring B-6 was performed as a hand auger boring. The borings were extended to depths ranging from 5 to 30 feet below the existing ground surface. The site subsurface conditions generally consisted of surficial soils or aggregate base course material underlain by residual soils.
- For the pump station, we understand that contact pressure across the turndown footing-edged bearing slab will average about 1,200 pounds per square foot (psf), with concentrated loads up to about 3,000 psf at some wall locations. Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the provided foundation loading, the pump station may be supported on shallow foundations bearing on approved native soil or controlled structural fill placed in accordance with our recommendations.
- We have assumed an average foundation bearing pressure of 1,500 psf or less across the bottom of the generator pad slab based on previous experience with similar structures. Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the assumed loading, the generator pad may be supported on shallow foundations bearing on approved native soil or controlled structural fill placed in accordance with our recommendations.
- Based on the SPT boring data from this study and the provided historical subsurface data from the existing water tank, it is our opinion that a seismic Site Class "D" is appropriate for the project.
- Stabilized groundwater was present the day after drilling in borings B-1 and B-3 at depths of 28.8 feet and 29.5 feet below existing grade, respectively. Water was also encountered in hand auger boring B-6 at the completion of the boring at a depth of 2.7 feet below existing grade; however, the water appeared to be perched water and may not represent actual static groundwater levels at that location. Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the provided grading and excavation depths, we do not generally anticipate that groundwater will be encountered during the construction of the pump station, generator pad, or the majority of the water lines. However, some perched water may be encountered during the construction of the water line, particularly in the area closer to Rock Hill Church Road.

1.0 PROJECT INFORMATION

A new pump station is planned adjacent to the existing water tank at 395 Stagecoach Road NW in Concord, North Carolina (see Site Vicinity Map, Figure No. 1 in Appendix I) on property owned by the City of Concord (Cabarrus County PIN 56101704790000). A new 20-inch waterline is also planned to connect the pump station to the existing water tank and to tie the pump station into existing 12-inch and 8-inch waterlines at Rock Hill Church Road. The pump station will be located to the south of the existing water tank in an area that is currently open, sloped, and grass-covered. A generator pad will also be constructed to the west of the pump station.

F&R previously conducted a preliminary geotechnical exploration at the project site (Preliminary Letter Report dated 22 March 2024) to explore the presence of partially weathered rock or rock in the area of the planned pump station. The preliminary study consisted of four auger probe borings drilled to termination at a depth of 20 feet below the existing surface. The borings were completed without encountering hard drilling or refusal conditions, which would be indicative of partially weathered rock or rock, respectively. Additionally, groundwater was not encountered in the preliminary borings immediately after drilling.

Hazen and Sawyer provided F&R with the following project information:

- Overall Project Site Plan (Sheet C10) prepared by Hazen and Sawyer dated July 2024
- Pump Station Structural Drawings (S100 through S104) prepared by Hazen and Sawyer dated September 2024
- Structural loading information prepared by Hazen and Sawyer (most recently via emails on 18 October 2024)
- Previous Geotechnical Memorandum and Report for the existing water tank prepared by CH2M Hill dated 15 September 2009

The pump station will have a footprint of about 49 feet by 38 feet and will be constructed with an 18-inch thick concrete slab, CMU walls, and a steel and concrete roof structure. We understand that contact pressure across the turndown footing-edged bearing slab will average about 1,200 pounds per square foot (psf), with concentrated loads up to about 3,000 psf at some wall locations. We were provided with a total settlement tolerance of 1¼ inch and a differential settlement tolerance of half the total.

Existing grades within the pump station footprint range from about elevation 767 to 773 feet. Based on the slab subgrade elevation of 772.75 feet, up to about 6 feet of fill will be required in the structure footprint. We understand that the suction line from the tank to the pump station will be about 8 feet below grade.

Structural information on the generator pad was not provided at the time of this report. Based on the provided site plan, the generator pad footprint will be approximately 38 feet by 15 feet. We have assumed an average foundation bearing pressure of 1,500 psf or less across the bottom of the generator pad slab based on previous experience. Up to about 4 feet of fill will be placed on the southwest end of the generator pad.

F&R reviewed the provided historical subsurface information performed by others for the construction of the existing water tank. PWR was encountered in four of the five borings at elevations ranging from approximately 724 to 733 feet. Auger refusal was encountered in four of the five borings at elevations ranging from approximately 714 to 720 feet.

2.0 GEOTECHNICAL SCOPE OF SERVICES

The purposes of our involvement on this project were to 1) conduct a subsurface exploration program consisting of six test borings, 2) provide general descriptions of the encountered subsurface conditions at the locations explored, 3) provide foundation support recommendations, and 4) comment on the site development aspects of the proposed construction. In order to accomplish these objectives we undertook the following scope of services:

1) Visited the site to observe existing surface conditions and features and mark boring locations.

2) Coordinated NC-811 services to locate utilities around the planned boring locations. In addition, a private utility locator was subcontracted to provide further utility clearance in the immediate area around the boring locations.

3) Reviewed and summarized readily available geologic information as well as readily available aerial imagery relative to geologic setting and past uses for the project site.

4) Executed a subsurface exploration program consisting of six (6) borings. Five (5) of the borings were Standard Penetration Test (SPT) soil borings drilled to depths ranging from 8 to 30 feet below existing grade using hollow stem auger procedures in general accordance with ASTM D1586. One (1) hand auger boring was performed with Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) testing to a depth of 5 feet below the existing grade. The DCP testing was performed in general accordance with ASTM STP 399, *"Dynamic Cone for Shallow In-Situ Penetration Testing."*

5) Installed temporary observation wells in selected borings to aid in the obtainment of stabilized groundwater levels after the completion of drilling operations.

6) Performed a laboratory-testing program consisting of three (3) sets of geotechnical index tests for soil classification (including Atterberg limits, wash No. 200 sieve analysis, and moisture content) and one (1) standard Proctor moisture-density relationship.

7) Prepared this written report summarizing our work on the project, providing descriptions of the subsurface conditions encountered, providing recommendations for foundation design, and discussing the geotechnical related aspects of the proposed construction. Copies of the test boring logs and laboratory test results are included.

Our proposed scope of geotechnical services did not include survey services, quantity estimates, preparation of plans or specifications, slope stability analyses, civil, stormwater, or environmental engineering services, evaluations of earthquake motions, or the identification and evaluation of wetland or other environmental aspects of the project site.

3.0 EXPLORATION PROCEDURES

3.1 Subsurface Exploration Methods

The final subsurface exploration program consisted of six (6) test borings (designated as B-1 through B-6) performed at the locations shown on the attached Boring Location Plan (see Figure No. 2, Appendix I). Borings B-1 through B-5 were Standard Penetration Test (SPT) soil borings performed on 25 September 2024. Due to overhead power and space constraints within the right-of-way, boring B-6 was performed via hand auger boring on 1 October 2024. The borings were extended to depths ranging from 5 to 30 feet below the existing ground surface.

The boring locations were marked by others via surveying. Boring elevations were interpolated from the provided site plan (Sheet C10). In consideration of the methods used in their determination, the elevations shown on the attached Boring Logs should be considered approximate.

Borings B-1 through B-5 were performed in accordance with generally accepted practices using a CME-550X rubber tired drill rig equipped with an automatic hammer. A hollow-stem auger was advanced to a pre-selected depth and representative soil samples were recovered with a standard split-spoon sampler (1 3/8 in. ID, 2 in. OD) in general accordance with ASTM D 1586, the Standard Penetration Test (SPT). In this test, a weight of 140 pounds is freely dropped from a height of 30 inches to drive the split-spoon sampler into the soil. The number of blows required to drive the split-spoon sampler three consecutive 6-inch increments is recorded, and the blows of the last two increments are summed to obtain the Standard Penetration Resistance (N-value). The N-value provides a general indication of in-situ soil conditions and has been correlated with certain engineering properties of soils.

Boring B-6 was performed using a hand auger by manually rotating a sharpened, 3-inch diameter steel-bucket auger into the soil. Soil cuttings from the hand auger were observed by F&R personnel in the field and initially classified in general accordance with techniques outlined in the visual-manual identification procedure (ASTM D2488) and the Unified Soil Classification System. Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) testing was performed at approximate 2-1/2 foot intervals within the hand auger boring. The DCP testing began by seating the conical point of the penetrometer 2 inches into the bearing material. The conical point was then driven two 1¾ inch increments using a 15-pound hammer falling from a height of 20 inches. The penetrometer reading is the number of blows recorded for each increment. Similar to SPT N-values, DCP blow-counts provide a general indication of in-situ soil conditions and have been correlated with certain engineering properties of soils.

Groundwater level readings were taken in each of the borings during drilling or immediately upon completion of the soil drilling process and after approximately 24 hours after drilling. At selected locations, temporary piezometers (hand-slotted PVC pipe) were installed in boreholes to aid in obtaining next day water level measurements.

Following groundwater readings, the boreholes were backfilled with auger cuttings (soil). Periodic observation and maintenance of the boreholes should be performed due to potential subsidence at the ground surface, as the borehole backfill could settle over time. By the nature of the work performed, our drilling activities resulted in disturbances to the site. Reasonable efforts were made to reduce disturbance. However, remediation of the site to a pre-explored condition was not included.

Representative portions of the split-spoon soil samples and samples of hand auger cuttings obtained throughout the exploration program were placed in airtight containers and transported to our laboratory. In the laboratory, the soil samples were classified by a member of our professional staff in general accordance with techniques outlined in the visual-manual identification procedure (ASTM D 2488) and the Unified Soil Classification System. The soil descriptions and classifications discussed in this report and shown on the attached Boring Logs are generally based on visual observation and should be considered approximate. Copies of the boring logs are provided and classification procedures are further explained in the attached Appendix II.

Soil samples recovered on this project will be stored at F&R's office for a period of sixty days. After sixty days, the samples will be discarded unless prior notification is provided to us in writing.

3.2 Soil Laboratory Testing

Two (2) split-spoon soil samples were selected for additional laboratory classification testing. This testing included water content determination (ASTM D2216), Atterberg limits tests (ASTM D4318), and percent passing #200 sieve (ASTM D 1140). One (1) standard proctor test (ASTM D698) as well as the above mentioned classification testing was performed on a bulk sample collected from the auger cuttings of Boring B-4.

Based on the results of these tests, the soils from these selected samples were then classified in general accordance with Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D2487). The results of the laboratory testing program are summarized in *Section 4.3, Laboratory Test Results* of this report and attached in Appendix III.

4.0 SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

4.1 Regional Geology

The project site is located in the Charlotte Belt of the Piedmont Physiographic Province. According to the Geologic Map of North Carolina (1985), the project site is underlain by syenite, an intrusive igneous rock. The topography of the Piedmont Plateau generally consists gently rolling, well-rounded hills and long low ridges with a southwest to northeast trend.

The soils resulting from in-situ weathering of the parent rock, without significant transportation, are called residual soils and may retain some of the structure of the rock from which they weathered. The residual soil profile generally grades downward gradually from fine-grained plastic soils near the ground surface to coarser-grained soils at greater depth.

A transitional zone of "partially weathered rock" of varying thickness can occur between the coarser-grained residual soils and the underlying bedrock. Partially weathered rock is defined, for engineering purposes, as residual material with standard penetration resistances in excess of 100 blows per foot. Weathering of the parent bedrock is generally more rapid near fracture zones and therefore, the bedrock surface may be irregular. Irregular patterns of differential weathering may also result in zones of rock and partially weathered rock embedded within the more completely weathered coarse-grained soils.

4.2 Subsurface Conditions

The subsurface conditions discussed in the following paragraphs, and shown on the boring logs in Appendix II, represent an estimate of the subsurface conditions based on interpretation of the field and laboratory data using normally accepted geotechnical engineering judgments.

The strata breaks designated on the boring logs represent approximate boundaries between soil types. Actual transitions between soil strata are generally less distinct than the immediate transitions depicted on the boring logs and profile. Although individual soil test borings are representative of the subsurface conditions encountered at the boring locations on the dates shown, they are not necessarily indicative of subsurface conditions at other locations or at other times. Given the spacing between boring locations, it should be anticipated that subsurface conditions could vary between the borings.

Below the existing ground surface, the borings generally encountered surficial soils or aggregate base course material underlain by residual soils. These materials are discussed further below:

4.2.1 Surficial Soils

Surficial soils were encountered in each boring, except B-4, from the ground surface to depths of about 3 to 6 inches. Surficial soils are typically a dark-colored soil material containing roots, fibrous matter, and/or other organic components, and are generally unsuitable for engineering purposes. We note that no laboratory testing has been performed to determine the organic content or horticultural properties of the observed surficial soil materials. Therefore, the term "surficial soils" is not intended to indicate suitability for landscaping and/or other purposes. The surficial soil depths provided in this report are based on driller observations and should be considered approximate. Actual surficial soil depths should be expected to vary across the site.

4.2.2 Aggregate Base Materials

Aggregate base materials were encountered in boring B-4 from the existing ground surface to a depth of about 6 inches below existing grade. We note that the drilling process tends to disturb base stone materials during penetration and removal of the augers. Therefore, the reported base stone thickness should be considered approximate.

4.2.3 Residual Soils

Residual soils, formed by the in-place weathering of the parent rock, were encountered in each boring below the surficial soils or aggregate base material. Sampled residual soils were described as sandy clay (CL & CH), sandy silt (ML & MH), and silty sand (SM). Standard penetration resistances within the sampled residuum ranged from 6 to 33 bpf.

4.2.4 Groundwater Data

Groundwater measurements were attempted at the time of drilling completion in each boring. At selected locations, temporary piezometers (hand-slotted PVC pipe) were installed in boreholes to aid in obtaining next day water level measurements. Stabilized groundwater was present the day after drilling in borings B-1 and B-3 at depths of 28.8 feet and 29.5 feet below existing grade, respectively. Water was also encountered in hand auger boring B-6 at the completion of the boring at a depth of 2.7 feet below existing grade; however, the water appeared to be perched water and may not represent actual static groundwater levels at that location.

4.3 Laboratory Test Results

As outlined in *Section 3.2, Soil Laboratory Testing*, selected split-spoon and bulk samples were tested in general accordance with applicable ASTM International (ASTM) standards. The results of the laboratory testing program are summarized in the following tables and are also presented in Appendix III:

Soil Classification Test Summary

Boring No.	Sample Depth (ft)	Water Content (%)	% Finer than No. 200 Sieve	Atterberg Limits			USCS Classification
				LL	PL	PI	
B-1	3.5-5	29.2	87	72	34	38	Fat Clay (CH)
B-5	3.5-5	31.6	87	72	36	36	Elastic Silt (MH)
B-4 Bulk	1.5-3	27.1	63	43	21	22	Lean Clay (CL)

Notes: LL – Liquid Limit, PL – Plastic Limit, PI – Plastic Index, NP – Non-Plastic

Standard Proctor Test Summary

Boring No.	Bulk Sample Depth (ft.)	Natural Moisture Content (%)	Optimum Moisture Content (%)	Maximum Dry Density (pcf)
B-4 Bulk	1.5-3	27.1	18.8	106.4

5.0 GEOTECHNICAL DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

5.1 General

The following evaluations and recommendations are based on our observations at the site, interpretation of the field and laboratory data obtained during this exploration, provided project information and assumptions as outlined in *Section 1.0 Project Information*, and our experience with similar subsurface conditions and projects. Using established correlations, soil penetration data have been used to evaluate the site for applicable foundation support approaches. Subsurface conditions in unexplored locations may vary from those encountered.

Determination of an appropriate foundation system for a given structure is dependent on the proposed structural loads, soil conditions, settlement, and construction constraints. The subsurface exploration aids the geotechnical engineer in determining the soil stratum appropriate for structural support. This determination includes considerations with regard to both allowable bearing capacity and compressibility of the soil strata. In addition, since the method of construction greatly affects the soils intended for structural support, consideration must be given to the implementation of suitable methods of site preparation, fill compaction, and other aspects of construction. Please refer to the Construction Recommendations included in Section 6 of this report.

5.2 Foundation Design

5.2.1 Pump Station

We understand that contact pressure across the turndown footing-edged bearing slab will average about 1,200 psf, with concentrated loads up to about 3,000 psf at some wall locations. Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the provided foundation loading, the pump station may be supported on shallow foundations utilizing these understood design bearing pressures for foundations bearing on approved native soil or controlled structural fill placed in accordance with our recommendations.

Support of the pump station on the provided turndown-edged bearing slab is anticipated to yield total settlements of up to 1¼ inch (the provided tolerance) and differential settlement of less than ½ inch.

5.2.2 Generator Pad

Structural information on the generator pad was not provided at the time of this report. We have assumed an average foundation bearing pressure of 1,500 psf or less across the bottom of the generator pad slab based on previous experience with similar structures. Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the assumed loading, the generator pad

may be supported on shallow foundations utilizing a design bearing pressure of 1,500 psf for foundations bearing on approved native soil or controlled structural fill placed in accordance with our recommendations.

Based on the boring data and the assumed structural loading information, we estimate maximum total settlements due to foundation loads will be 1 inch or less, with differential settlement of less than one-half the estimated total settlement.

5.2.3 General Shallow Foundation Recommendations

Foundations should be embedded a minimum of 18 inches below adjacent exterior grades for frost protection.

The magnitude of differential settlements will be influenced by the variation in excavation requirements across the building footprint, the distribution of loads, and the variability of underlying soils. Our settlement analyses were performed on the basis of structural and grading information discussed in the project information section of this report. Actual settlements experienced by the structure and the time required for these soils to settle will be influenced by undetected variations in subsurface conditions, actual structural loads, final grading plans, and the quality of fill placement and foundation construction.

5.3 Seismic Site Class

The following seismic site class recommendations are based on American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) 7-10 per Section 1613.3.2 as referenced by the International Building Code (IBC) and adopted by the 2018 North Carolina Building Code. Based on the SPT boring data from this study and the provided historical subsurface data from the existing water tank, it is our opinion that a Site Class “D” is appropriate for the project.

6.0 CONSTRUCTION RECOMMENDATIONS

6.1 General

The principal purpose of this section is to comment in general on the items related to earthwork and associated geotechnical engineering aspects of construction that should be expected for this project. It is recommended that F&R's geotechnical engineer be retained to provide soil-engineering services during the construction phases of the project and perform appropriate evaluations to help confirm that conditions encountered during construction are similar to conditions observed in the borings.

6.2 Site Preparation

Before proceeding with construction, any surficial soils, roots, and any other deleterious non-soil materials should be stripped or removed from the proposed construction area. During the clearing and stripping operations, positive surface drainage should be maintained to prevent the accumulation of water.

After stripping, areas intended to support new fill, floor slabs, and foundations should be carefully evaluated by a representative of the geotechnical engineer. At that time, the engineer may require proof rolling of the subgrade with a 20- to 30-ton loaded truck or other pneumatic-tired vehicle of similar size and weight. Proof rolling should be performed during a time of good weather and not while the site is wet, frozen, or severely desiccated. The purpose of the proof rolling is to locate soft, weak, or excessively wet soils present at the time of construction and to provide an opportunity for the geotechnical engineer to locate inconsistencies intermediate of our boring locations.

Any unsuitable materials observed during the evaluation and proof rolling operations should be undercut and replaced with compacted fill or stabilized in-place. A representative of the geotechnical engineer can best determine the actual extent of undercutting and/or in-place stabilization required at the time of construction.

Undercutting or additional in-place compaction may be necessary if the exposed subgrade soils become unstable during construction. Any fill materials, aggregate, and or concrete should be placed as soon as possible over the approved subgrade in order to reduce exposure of the subgrade to weather and construction activity.

It is important to stress that if site preparation or construction are performed during the winter months, additional undercutting of the subgrade soils may be required if the subgrade is not properly prepared or protected.

6.3 Shallow Foundation Construction

All foundation subgrades should be observed, evaluated, and verified for the design bearing pressure by a representative of the geotechnical engineer after excavation and prior to reinforcement steel placement. The purpose of the observation is to determine that the foundations bear in suitable materials at the proper embedment depths, and that unsuitable soft or loose materials are undercut and backfilled with approved structural fill material at the direction of the geotechnical engineer.

Excavations for footings should be made in such a way as to provide bearing surfaces that are firm and free of loose, soft, wet, or otherwise disturbed soils. Foundation concrete should not be placed on frozen or saturated subgrades. If such materials are allowed to remain below foundations, settlements will increase. Foundation excavations should be concreted as soon as practical after they are excavated. If an excavation is left open for an extended period, a thin mat of lean concrete should be placed over the bottom to minimize damage to the bearing surface from weather or construction activities. Water should not be allowed to pond in any excavation.

6.4 Controlled Structural Fill

The existing near-surface on-site soils appeared generally acceptable for reuse as controlled structural fill materials, although some moisture conditioning may be required. We note that the encountered plastic clays (CH and MH) should not be used as structural fill. Imported materials should have a classification of CL, ML, SC, or SM as defined by the Unified Soil Classification System. Other materials may be suitable for use as controlled structural fill material and should be individually evaluated by the geotechnical engineer. Controlled structural fill should be free of boulders, organic matter, debris, or other deleterious materials and should have a maximum particle size no greater than 3 inches.

Fill materials should be placed in horizontal lifts with maximum height of 8 inches in loose measure. New fill should be adequately keyed into stripped and scarified subgrade soils and should, where applicable, be benched into the existing slopes. During fill operations, positive surface drainage should be maintained to prevent the accumulation of water. We recommend that structural fill be compacted to at least 95 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density. In confined areas such as utility trenches, portable compaction equipment and thin lifts of 3 to 4 inches may be required to achieve specified degrees of compaction. Each lift of fill should be tested in order to confirm that the recommended degree of compaction is attained.

In general, we recommend that the moisture content of fill materials be maintained within three percentage points of the optimum moisture content as determined from the standard Proctor density test. We recommend that the contractor have equipment on site during earthwork for both drying and wetting of fill soils. Moisture control may be especially difficult during winter

months or extended periods of rain. Attempts to work the soils when wet can be expected to result in deterioration of otherwise suitable soil conditions or of previously placed and properly compacted fill. Where construction traffic or weather has disturbed the subgrade, the upper 8 inches of soils (or more if warranted) intended for structural support should be scarified and re-compacted.

6.5 Groundwater Conditions

Stabilized groundwater was present the day after drilling in borings B-1 and B-3 at depths of 28.8 feet and 29.5 feet below existing grade, respectively. Water was also encountered in hand auger boring B-6 at the completion of the boring at a depth of 2.7 feet below existing grade; however, the water appeared to be perched water and may not represent actual static groundwater levels at that location.

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the provided grading and excavation depths, we do not anticipate that groundwater will be encountered during the construction of the pump station, generator pad, or the majority of the water lines. Some perched water may be encountered during the construction of the water line, particularly in the area closer to Rock Hill Church Road.

Groundwater levels tend to fluctuate with seasonal and climatic variations as well as with some types of construction operations. Generally, the highest subsurface water levels occur in late winter and early spring and the lowest levels occur in late summer and early fall. In addition, groundwater readings in predominantly fine-grained soils are not necessarily indicative of the actual static groundwater levels due to the low-permeability of such soils.

6.6 Excavation Conditions and Guidelines

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings and the provided grading and excavation depths, we do not anticipate that materials requiring difficult excavation techniques will be encountered during the construction of the pump station, generator pad, or water lines.

Mass excavations and other excavations required for this project must be performed in accordance with the United States Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) guidelines (29 CFR 1926, Subpart P, Excavations) or other applicable jurisdictional codes for permissible temporary side-slope ratios and or shoring requirements. The OSHA guidelines require daily inspections of excavations, adjacent areas and protective systems by a “competent person” for evidence of situations that could result in cave-ins, indications of failure of a protective system, or other hazardous conditions.

Excavated soils, equipment, building supplies, etc., should be placed away from the edges of the excavation at a distance equaling or exceeding the depth of the excavation. F&R cautions that the actual excavation slopes will need to be evaluated frequently each day by the "competent person" and flatter slopes or the use of shoring may be required to maintain a safe excavation depending upon excavation specific circumstances. The contractor is responsible for providing the "competent person" and all aspects of site excavation safety.

7.0 CONTINUATION OF SERVICES

As previously discussed, a Geotechnical Engineer should be retained to monitor and test earthwork activities, and observe subgrade preparations for foundations, floor slabs, and pavements. It should be noted that the actual soil conditions at the various subgrade levels and footing bearing grades will vary across this site and thus the presence of the Geotechnical Engineer and/or his representative during construction will serve to validate the subsurface conditions and recommendations presented in this report. A geotechnical engineer should be employed to monitor the earthwork and foundation construction, and to report that the recommendations contained in this report are completed in a satisfactory manner. The continued geotechnical engineering involvement on the project will aid in the proper implementation of the recommendations discussed herein. The following is a recommended scope of services:

- Observe the earthwork process to document that subsurface conditions encountered during construction are consistent with the conditions anticipated in this report;
- Observe the subgrade conditions before placing structural fill including proof roll observations;
- Observe the placement and compaction of any structural fill and backfill, and perform laboratory and field compaction testing of the fill; and,
- Observe all foundation excavations and footing bearing grades for compliance with the recommended design soil bearing capacities. We also stress the importance of conducting hand auger and DCP testing at and extending several feet below the footing bearing grade in order to give an indication of the anticipated subsurface conditions

8.0 LIMITATIONS

There are important limitations to this and all geotechnical studies. Some of these limitations are discussed in the information prepared by the Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA), which is included in Appendix IV. We recommend that you review the GBA information.

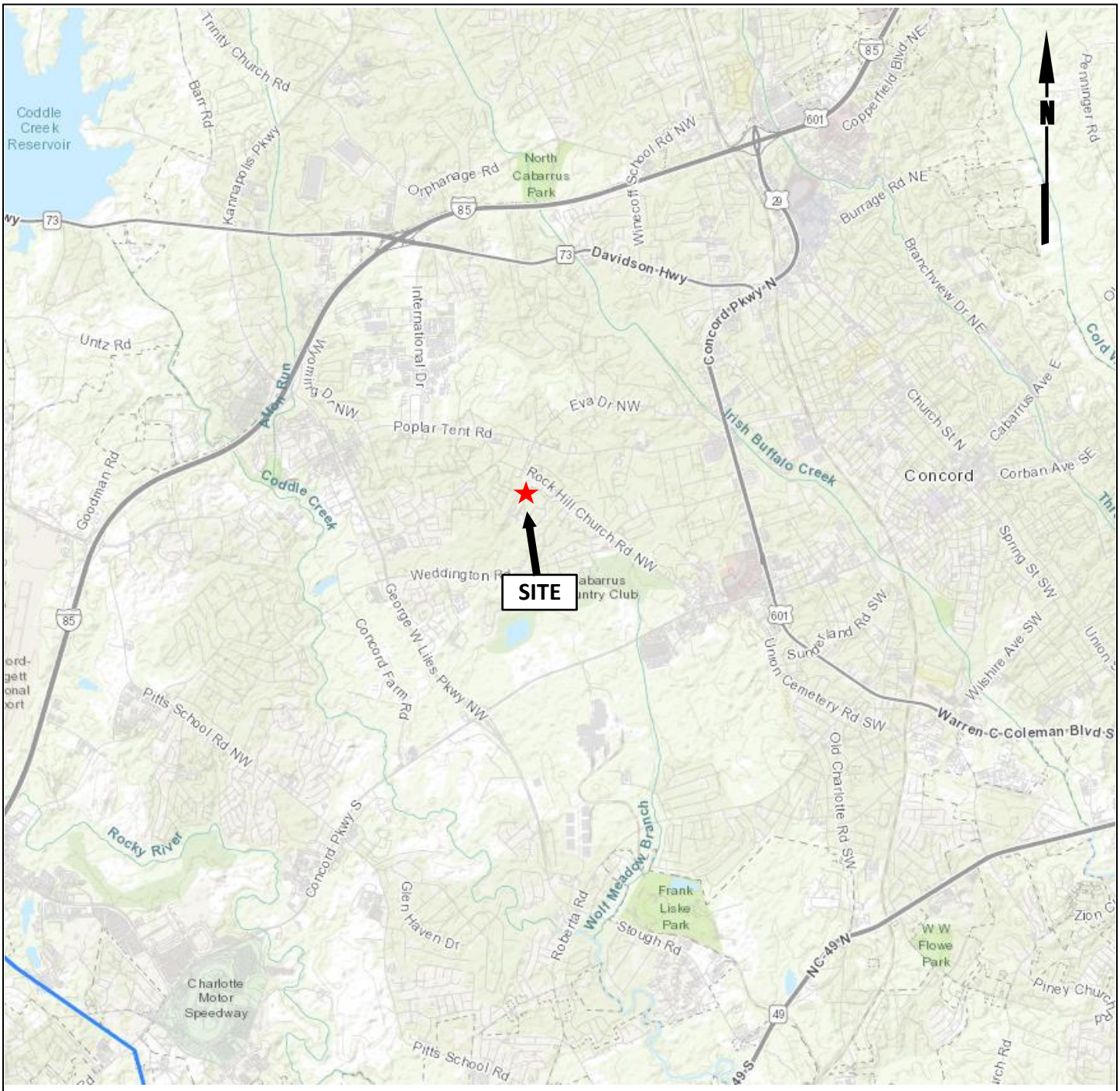
This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of Hazen and Sawyer for the specific application to the planned Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station in Concord, North Carolina, in accordance with generally accepted soil and foundation engineering practices. No other warranty, express or implied, is made. Our recommendations are based on design information furnished to us at the time the work was performed; the data obtained from the previously described subsurface exploration program, and generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice. The findings and recommendations do not reflect variations in subsurface conditions, which could exist in unexplored areas of the site. In areas where variations from the available subsurface data become apparent during construction, it will be necessary to re-evaluate our recommendations based upon on-site observations of the conditions.

Regardless of the thoroughness of a subsurface exploration, there is the possibility that conditions in other areas will differ from those at the boring locations, that conditions are not as anticipated by the designers, or that the construction process has altered the soil conditions. Therefore, our experienced geotechnical engineers should evaluate foundation construction to verify that the conditions anticipated in design actually exist. Otherwise, we assume no responsibility for construction compliance with the design concepts, specifications, or recommendations. In the event that changes are made in the design or location of the proposed structures, the recommendations presented in this report shall not be considered valid unless the changes are reviewed by our firm and recommendations of this report modified or verified in writing. If this report is copied or transmitted to a third party, it must be copied or transmitted in its entirety, including text, attachments, and enclosures. Interpretations based on only a part of this report may not be valid.

APPENDIX I

Site Vicinity Map (Figure No. 1)

Boring Location Plan (Figure No. 2)



Source: https://location.cabarruscounty.us/mapcabarrus/

0 mi 0.5mi 1 mi

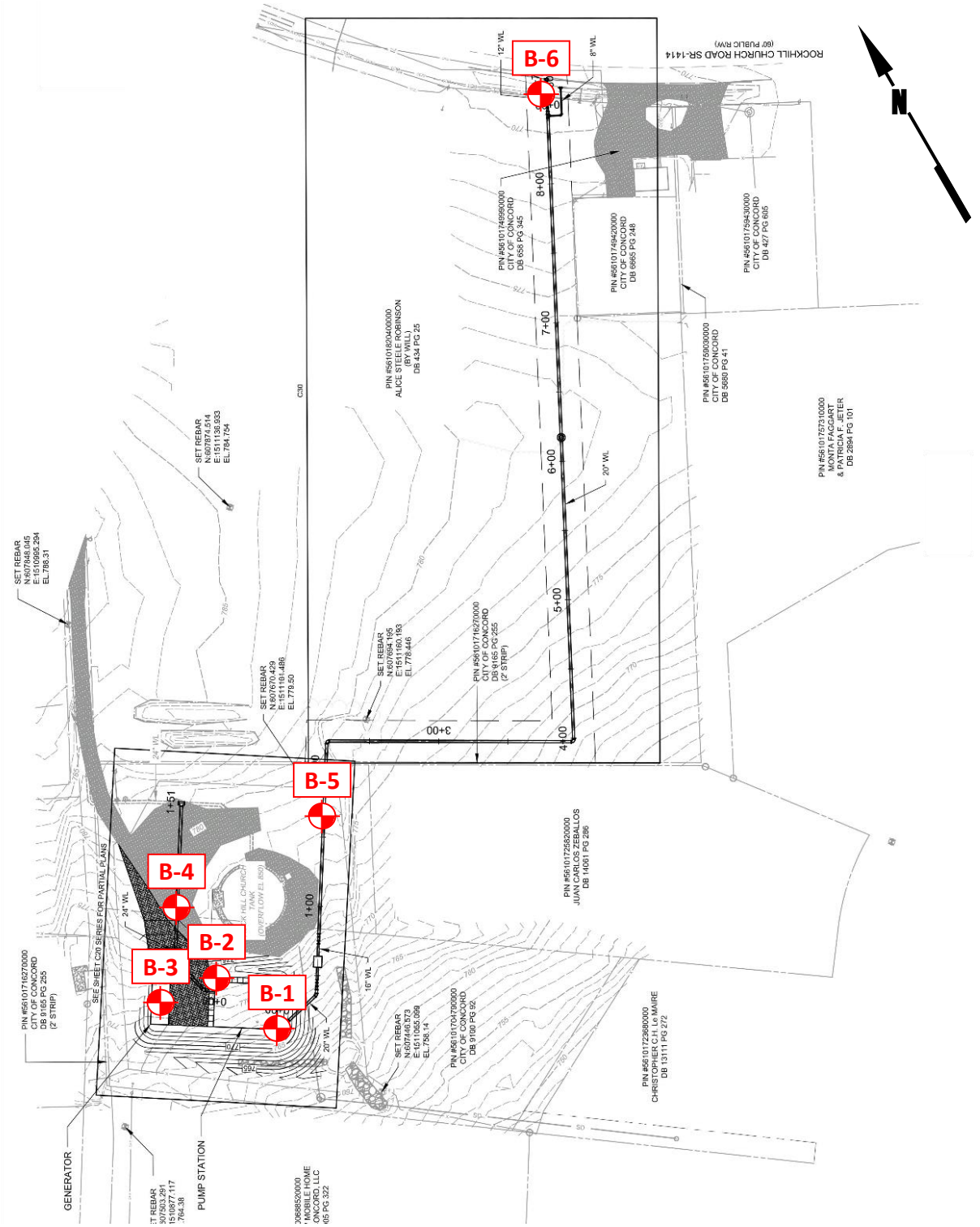
FROEHLING & ROBERTSON
Engineering Stability Since 1881

DATE:	October 2024	
SCALE:	As Shown	
DRAWN:	MT	63C-0010

Hazen and Sawyer
Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
Concord, North Carolina

SITE VICINITY MAP

FIGURE NO.
1



Source: Overall Project Site Plan prepared by Hazen and Sawyer dated July 2024

F&R Soil Test Boring Locations

0' 60' 120'

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON
Engineering Stability Since 1881

DATE:	October 2024	
SCALE:	As Shown	
DRAWN:	MT	63C-0010

Hazen and Sawyer
Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
Concord, North Carolina

BORING LOCATION PLAN

FIGURE NO.
2

APPENDIX II

Key to Soil Classification

Soil Classification Chart

Boring Logs (B-1 through B-5)

Hand Auger Log (B-6)

KEY TO BORING LOG SOIL CLASSIFICATION

Particle Size and Proportion

Visual descriptions are assigned to each soil sample or stratum based on estimates of the particle size of each component of the soil and the percentage of each component of the soil.

Particle Size Descriptive Terms		Proportion Descriptive Terms		
Soil Component	Particle Size	Component	Term	Percentage
Boulder	> 12 inch	Major	Uppercase Letters (e.g., SAND, CLAY)	> 50%
Cobble	3 - 12 inch			
Gravel-Coarse	3/4 - 3 inch			
-Fine	#4 - 3/4 inch	Secondary	Adjective (e.g., sandy, clayey)	20% - 50%
Sand-Coarse	#10 - #4			
-Medium	#40 - #10			
-Fine	#200 - #40	Minor	Some	15% - 25%
Silt (non-cohesive)	< #200		Little	5% - 15%
Clay (cohesive)	< #200		Trace	0% - 5%

Notes:
1. Particle size is designated by U.S. Standard Sieve Sizes
2. Because of the small size of the split-spoon sampler relative to the size of gravel, the true percentage of gravel may not be accurately estimated.

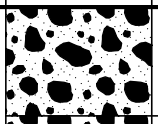
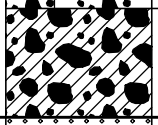
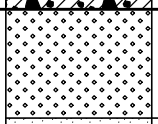
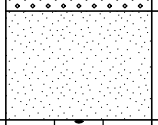
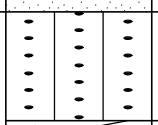
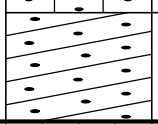
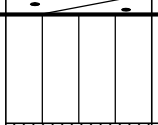
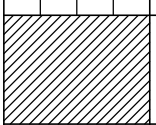
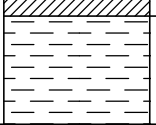
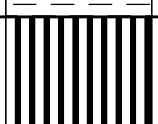
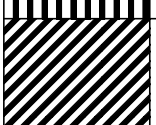
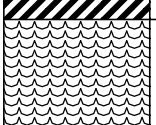
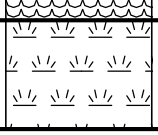
Density or Consistency

The standard penetration resistance values (N-values) are used to describe the density of coarse-grained soils (GRAVEL, SAND) or the consistency of fine-grained soils (SILT, CLAY). Sandy silts of very low plasticity may be assigned a density instead of a consistency.

DENSITY		CONSISTENCY	
Term	N-Value	Term	N-Value
Very Loose	0 - 4	Very Soft	0 - 1
Loose	5 - 10	Soft	2 - 4
Medium Dense	11 - 30	Firm	5 - 8
Dense	31 - 50	Stiff	9 - 15
Very Dense	> 50	Very Stiff	16 - 30
		Hard	> 30

Notes:
1. The N-value is the number of blows of a 140 lb. Hammer freely falling 30 inches required to drive a standard split-spoon sampler (2.0 in. O.D., 1-3/8 in. I.D.) 12 inches into the soil after properly seating the sampler 6 inches.
2. When encountered, gravel may increase the N-value of the standard penetration test and may not accurately represent the in-situ density or consistency of the soil sampled.

SOIL CLASSIFICATION CHART

MAJOR DIVISIONS			SYMBOLS		TYPICAL DESCRIPTIONS
			GRAPH	LETTER	
COARSE GRAINED SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF MATERIAL IS LARGER THAN NO. 200 SIEVE SIZE	GRAVEL AND GRAVELLY SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF COARSE FRACTION RETAINED ON NO. 4 SIEVE	CLEAN GRAVELS (LITTLE OR NO FINES)		GW	WELL-GRADED GRAVELS, GRAVEL - SAND MIXTURES, LITTLE OR NO FINES
				GP	POORLY-GRADED GRAVELS, GRAVEL - SAND MIXTURES, LITTLE OR NO FINES
		GRAVELS WITH FINES (APPRECIABLE AMOUNT OF FINES)		GM	SILTY GRAVELS, GRAVEL - SAND - SILT MIXTURES
				GC	CLAYEY GRAVELS, GRAVEL - SAND - CLAY MIXTURES
	SAND AND SANDY SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF COARSE FRACTION PASSING ON NO. 4 SIEVE	CLEAN SANDS (LITTLE OR NO FINES)		SW	WELL-GRADED SANDS, GRAVELLY SANDS, LITTLE OR NO FINES
				SP	POORLY-GRADED SANDS, GRAVELLY SAND, LITTLE OR NO FINES
		SANDS WITH FINES (APPRECIABLE AMOUNT OF FINES)		SM	SILTY SANDS, SAND - SILT MIXTURES
				SC	CLAYEY SANDS, SAND - CLAY MIXTURES
FINE GRAINED SOILS MORE THAN 50% OF MATERIAL IS SMALLER THAN NO. 200 SIEVE SIZE	SILTS AND CLAYS	LIQUID LIMIT LESS THAN 50		ML	INORGANIC SILTS AND VERY FINE SANDS, ROCK FLOUR, SILTY OR CLAYEY FINE SANDS OR CLAYEY SILTS WITH SLIGHT PLASTICITY
				CL	INORGANIC CLAYS OF LOW TO MEDIUM PLASTICITY, GRAVELLY CLAYS, SANDY CLAYS, SILTY CLAYS, LEAN CLAYS
				OL	ORGANIC SILTS AND ORGANIC SILTY CLAYS OF LOW PLASTICITY
	SILTS AND CLAYS	LIQUID LIMIT GREATER THAN 50		MH	INORGANIC SILTS, MICACEOUS OR DIATOMACEOUS FINE SAND OR SILTY SOILS
				CH	INORGANIC CLAYS OF HIGH PLASTICITY
				OH	ORGANIC CLAYS OF MEDIUM TO HIGH PLASTICITY, ORGANIC SILTS
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS				PT	PEAT, HUMUS, SWAMP SOILS WITH HIGH ORGANIC CONTENTS

NOTE: DUAL SYMBOLS ARE USED TO INDICATE BORDERLINE SOIL CLASSIFICATIONS

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

BORING LOG

Boring: B-1 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 767 ±
Total Depth: 30.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HSA
Hammer Type: Automatic
Date Drilled: 9/25/24
Driller: HPC: J. Cain

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	N-Value (blows/ft)	Remarks
766.8	0.3	**SURFICIAL SOIL:** 3 inches	3-3-3	0.0		**Groundwater Data:**
		RESIDUUM: Firm to very stiff, red and brown, FAT CLAY (CH) with little fine sand and trace organics, moist		1.5	6	0 HR: DRY
			3-5-8	2.0		24 HR: 28.8 feet
				3.5	13	
			4-7-9			
				5.0	16	
761.0	6.0	Stiff to firm, red and tan, fine sandy LEAN CLAY (CL), moist		6.5		
			3-5-5		10	
				8.0		
				8.5		
			3-4-4		8	
				10.0		
755.0	12.0	Stiff, tan and brown, fine sandy SILT (ML) with trace mica, moist				
				13.5		
			3-4-5		9	
				15.0		
				18.5		
			4-5-6		11	
				20.0		
745.0	22.0	Medium dense, mottled orange, brown, and tan, silty fine to medium SAND (SM) with trace rock fragments, moist		23.5		
			5-6-7		13	
				25.0		
	▼			28.5		
			7-13-13		26	
737.0	30.0	**Boring Terminated at 30 feet**		30.0		

*Number of blows required for a 140 lb hammer dropping 30" to drive 2" O.D., 1.375" I.D. sampler a total of 18 inches in three 6" increments. The sum of the second and third increments of penetration is termed the standard penetration resistance, N-Value.

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

BORING LOG

Boring: B-2 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 773 ±
Total Depth: 30.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HSA
Hammer Type: Automatic
Date Drilled: 9/25/24
Driller: HPC: J. Cain

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	N-Value (blows/ft)	Remarks
772.8	0.3	**SURFICIAL SOIL:** 3 inches	3-3-3	0.0		**Groundwater Data:**
		RESIDUUM: Firm, tan and brown, sandy LEAN CLAY (CL) with trace organics, moist		1.5	6	0 HR: DRY
771.0	2.0	Stiff to firm, red and brown, elastic SILT (MH) with trace mica, moist	2-4-6	2.0		0 HR CAVE: 26.4 feet
				3.5	10	
			3-4-4	5.0	8	
				6.5		
			3-3-5			
765.0	8.0	Firm, tan and light brown, fine sandy SILT (ML) with trace mica, moist		8.0	8	
			2-3-3	8.5		
				10.0	6	
				13.5		
			3-3-3			
				15.0	6	
756.0	17.0	Loose to medium dense, brown and tan, silty fine to medium SAND (SM) with trace mica, moist				
			3-4-4	18.5		
				20.0	8	
				23.5		
			2-3-5			
				25.0	8	
				28.5		
			10-7-7			
743.0	30.0	**Boring Terminated at 30 feet**		30.0	14	

*Number of blows required for a 140 lb hammer dropping 30" to drive 2" O.D., 1.375" I.D. sampler a total of 18 inches in three 6" increments. The sum of the second and third increments of penetration is termed the standard penetration resistance, N-Value.

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

BORING LOG

Boring: B-3 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 771 ±
Total Depth: 30.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HSA
Hammer Type: Automatic
Date Drilled: 9/25/24
Driller: HPC: J. Cain

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	N-Value (blows/ft)	Remarks
770.8	0.3	**SURFICIAL SOIL:** 3 inches	3-2-5	0.0	7	**Groundwater Data:**
		RESIDUUM: Firm, red and brown, fine sandy LEAN CLAY (CL) with trace rock fragments and organics, moist		1.5		0 HR: DRY
769.0	2.0		5-9-12	2.0	21	24 HR: 29.5 feet
		Very stiff, red and brown, elastic SILT (MH) with little fine sand, moist	9-11-14	3.5		
				5.0	25	
			4-7-9	6.5		
763.0	8.0			8.0	16	
		Firm and stiff, tan and white, fine sandy SILT (ML) with trace mica, moist	5-6-5	8.5		
				10.0	11	
			3-4-4	13.5		
				15.0	8	
			3-3-6	18.5		
				20.0	9	
749.0	22.0					
		Medium dense, light brown and tan, silty fine to medium SAND (SM) with trace mica, moist	5-7-9	23.5		
				25.0	16	
			4-5-7	28.5		
741.0	30.0			30.0	12	
		Boring Terminated at 30 feet				

*Number of blows required for a 140 lb hammer dropping 30" to drive 2" O.D., 1.375" I.D. sampler a total of 18 inches in three 6" increments. The sum of the second and third increments of penetration is termed the standard penetration resistance, N-Value.

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

BORING LOG

Boring: B-4 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 778 ±
Total Depth: 15.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HSA
Hammer Type: Automatic
Date Drilled: 9/25/24
Driller: HPC: J. Cain

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	N-Value (blows/ft)	Remarks
777.5	0.5	**AGGREGATE BASE COURSE:** 6 inches	14-18-6	0.0	24	**Groundwater Data:**
		RESIDUUM: Very stiff, dark red and brown, fine sandy LEAN CLAY (CL) with trace rock fragments, moist		1.5		0 HR: DRY
			5-7-9	2.0		0 HR CAVE: 11.7 feet
				3.5	16	
			5-11-16			
				5.0	27	
772.0	6.0	Hard to very stiff, red and brown, fine sandy elastic SILT (MH) with trace quartz fragments, moist		6.5		
			9-14-19			
				8.0	33	
				8.5		
			7-9-8			
				10.0	17	
766.0	12.0	Stiff, red and tan, fine sandy SILT (ML), moist				
			3-4-5	13.5		
763.0	15.0	**Boring Terminated at 15 feet**		15.0	9	

*Number of blows required for a 140 lb hammer dropping 30" to drive 2" O.D., 1.375" I.D. sampler a total of 18 inches in three 6" increments. The sum of the second and third increments of penetration is termed the standard penetration resistance, N-Value.

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

BORING LOG

Boring: B-5 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 778 ±
Total Depth: 8.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HSA
Hammer Type: Automatic
Date Drilled: 9/25/24
Driller: HPC: J. Cain

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	N-Value (blows/ft)	Remarks
777.7	0.3	**SURFICIAL SOIL:** 4 inches	10-4-5	0.0		**Groundwater Data:**
		RESIDUUM: Stiff to very stiff, red and brown, elastic SILT (MH) with trace quartz fragments and organics, moist		1.5	9	0 HR: DRY
			6-10-13	2.0		24 HR: DRY
774.5	3.5	Very stiff, red and light brown, elastic SILT (MH) with little fine sand and trace mica, moist	5-9-12	3.5	23	
				5.0	21	
			5-9-12	6.5		
770.0	8.0	**Boring Terminated at 8 feet**		8.0	21	

*Number of blows required for a 140 lb hammer dropping 30" to drive 2" O.D., 1.375" I.D. sampler a total of 18 inches in three 6" increments. The sum of the second and third increments of penetration is termed the standard penetration resistance, N-Value.

FROEHLING & ROBERTSON

HAND AUGER LOG

Boring: B-6 (1 of 1)

Project No: 63C-0010
Client: Hazen & Sawyer
Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City/State: Concord, NC

Elevation: 770 ±
Total Depth: 5.0'
Boring Location: See Boring Location Plan

Drilling Method: HA/DCP
Hammer Type: DCP
Date Drilled: 10/1/24
Driller: F&R: J. Willis

Elevation	Depth	Description of Materials (Classification)	* Sample Blows	Sample Depth (feet)	DCP (bpi)	Remarks
769.5	0.5	**SURFICIAL SOIL:** 6 inches	5-4-5	0.0	4	**Groundwater Data:** 0 HR: 2.7 feet
		RESIDUUM: Soft to stiff, red and brown, fine sandy LEAN CLAY (CL), wet				
767.5	▽ 2.5	Very stiff, red and brown, fine sandy LEAN CLAY (CL) with some rock fragments, wet	11-15-15	2.5	15	
765.0	5.0	**Boring Terminated at 5 feet**	20-25	5.0	25	

*Penetration is the number of blows required for a 15 lb hammer dropping 20" to drive a 1.375" conical-tipped rod a total of 1.75

APPENDIX III

Material Test Report

Proctor Report

Froehling & Robertson, Inc.
Charlotte Office
3300 International Airport Drive, Suite 600
Charlotte, NC 28208
Phone: 704.596.2889 www.FandR.com

Material Test Report

Client: Hazen and Sawyer - Charlotte
9101 Southern Pine Blvd
Charlotte, NC 28273

CC:

Project: 63C0010
Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
395 Stagecoach Road NW
Concord, NC 28027

Report No: ASM:6324-03856

Review Date:

Material Details

Source **Sampled From** on-site excavation

Sample Details

Sample ID	6324-03856-S01	6324-03856-S02	6324-03856-S03
Field Sample ID			
Date Sampled	10/11/2024		
Boring No	B-1	B-4	B-5
Depth	3.5-5'	1.5-3'	3.5-5'

Other Test Results

Description	Method	Results			Limits
Passing No. 200 (75 µm) (%)	ASTM D1140	87	63	87	
Procedure		A	A	A	
Soaking Period (min)		120	120	120	
Initial Dry Mass (g)		260.2	229.9	249.3	
Tested By		Usery David B	Usery David B	Usery David B	
Water Content (%)	ASTM D2216	29.2	27.1	31.6	
Date Tested		10/11/2024	10/11/2024	10/11/2024	
Tested By		Usery David B	Usery David B	Usery David B	
Group Code	ASTM D2487	CH	CL	MH	
Group Name		Fat clay	RED BROWN sandy lean clay	Elastic silt	
Sand (%)		13	37	13	
Fines (%)		87	63	87	
Tested By	ASTM D2487	Usery David B		Usery David B	
Liquid Limit	ASTM D4318	72	43	72	
Plastic Limit		34	21	36	
Plasticity Index		38	22	36	
As-Received Water Content (%)		29.2	27.1	31.6	
Tested By		Usery David B	Usery David B	Usery David B	
Date Tested		10/11/2024	10/11/2024	10/11/2024	
Std. Maximum Dry Unit Weight (lbf/ft³)	ASTM D698		106.4		
Std. Optimum Water Content (%)			18.8		
Method			A		
Preparation Method			Moist		
Test Portion Specific Gravity	Estimated		2.70		
Tested By	ASTM D698		Usery David B		

Comments

Legend

The results provided herein relate only to the items inspected and/or tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior written approval of F&R.

© 2000-2024 QESTLab by SpectraQEST.com

Froehling & Robertson, Inc.
Charlotte Office
3300 International Airport Drive, Suite 600
Charlotte, NC 28208
Phone: 704.596.2889 www.FandR.com

Proctor Report

Client: Hazen and Sawyer - Charlotte
9101 Southern Pine Blvd
Charlotte, NC 28273

CC:

Project: 63C0010
Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
395 Stagecoach Road NW
Concord, NC 28027

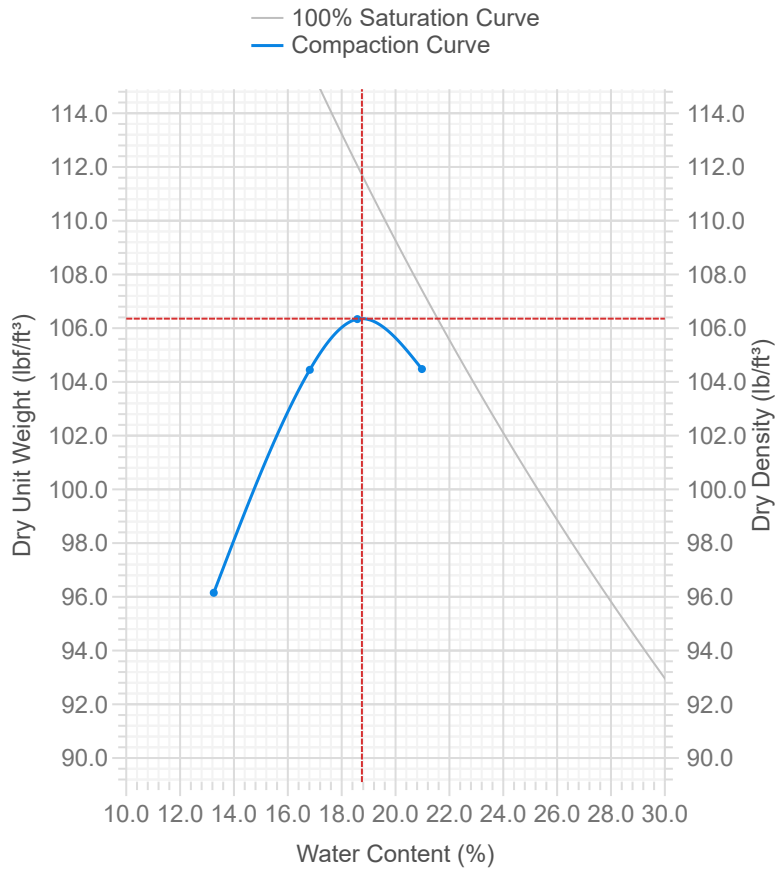
Report No: PTR:6324-03856-S02

Review Date:

Sample Details

Sample ID: 6324-03856-S02 **Date Sampled:** 10/4/24
Sampling Method: Manual
Source: Boring B-4
Material: Auger Cuttings 1.5 to 3 feet
Specification:
Location: See Boring Location Plan

Dry Unit Weight - Water Content Relationship



Test Results

ASTM D698	
Std. Maximum Dry Unit Weight (lbf/ft³):	**106.4**
Std. Optimum Water Content (%):	**18.8**
Method:	A
Preparation Method:	Moist
Test Portion Specific Gravity:	2.70
Determined By:	Estimated
Tested By:	Usery David B
Date Tested:	10/11/2024
ASTM D2487	
Group Code:	CL
Group Name:	RED BROWN sandy lean clay
ASTM D4318	
Liquid Limit:	**43**
Plastic Limit:	**21**
Plasticity Index:	**22**
Tested By:	Usery David B
Date Tested:	10/11/2024

Comments

The results provided herein relate only to the items inspected and/or tested. This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the prior written approval of F&R.

© 2000-2024 QESTLab by SpectraQEST.com

APPENDIX IV

GBA Publication “Important Information about This Geotechnical Engineering Report”

Important Information about This

Geotechnical-Engineering Report

Subsurface problems are a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes.

While you cannot eliminate all such risks, you can manage them. The following information is provided to help.

The Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA) has prepared this advisory to help you – assumedly a client representative – interpret and apply this geotechnical-engineering report as effectively as possible. In that way, clients can benefit from a lowered exposure to the subsurface problems that, for decades, have been a principal cause of construction delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. If you have questions or want more information about any of the issues discussed below, contact your GBA-member geotechnical engineer. Active involvement in the Geoprofessional Business Association exposes geotechnical engineers to a wide array of risk-confrontation techniques that can be of genuine benefit for everyone involved with a construction project.

Geotechnical-Engineering Services Are Performed for Specific Purposes, Persons, and Projects

Geotechnical engineers structure their services to meet the specific needs of their clients. A geotechnical-engineering study conducted for a given civil engineer will not likely meet the needs of a civil-works constructor or even a different civil engineer. Because each geotechnical-engineering study is unique, each geotechnical-engineering report is unique, prepared *solely* for the client. *Those who rely on a geotechnical-engineering report prepared for a different client can be seriously misled*. No one except authorized client representatives should rely on this geotechnical-engineering report without first conferring with the geotechnical engineer who prepared it. *And no one – not even you – should apply this report for any purpose or project except the one originally contemplated.*

Read this Report in Full

Costly problems have occurred because those relying on a geotechnical-engineering report did not read it *in its entirety*. Do not rely on an executive summary. Do not read selected elements only. *Read this report in full.*

You Need to Inform Your Geotechnical Engineer about Change

Your geotechnical engineer considered unique, project-specific factors when designing the study behind this report and developing the confirmation-dependent recommendations the report conveys. A few typical factors include:

- the client's goals, objectives, budget, schedule, and risk-management preferences;
- the general nature of the structure involved, its size, configuration, and performance criteria;
- the structure's location and orientation on the site; and
- other planned or existing site improvements, such as retaining walls, access roads, parking lots, and underground utilities.

Typical changes that could erode the reliability of this report include those that affect:

- the site's size or shape;
- the function of the proposed structure, as when it's changed from a parking garage to an office building, or from a light-industrial plant to a refrigerated warehouse;
- the elevation, configuration, location, orientation, or weight of the proposed structure;
- the composition of the design team; or
- project ownership.

As a general rule, *always* inform your geotechnical engineer of project changes – even minor ones – and request an assessment of their impact. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot accept responsibility or liability for problems that arise because the geotechnical engineer was not informed about developments the engineer otherwise would have considered.*

This Report May Not Be Reliable

Do not rely on this report if your geotechnical engineer prepared it:

- for a different client;
- for a different project;
- for a different site (that may or may not include all or a portion of the original site); or
- before important events occurred at the site or adjacent to it; e.g., man-made events like construction or environmental remediation, or natural events like floods, droughts, earthquakes, or groundwater fluctuations.

Note, too, that it could be unwise to rely on a geotechnical-engineering report whose reliability may have been affected by the passage of time, because of factors like changed subsurface conditions; new or modified codes, standards, or regulations; or new techniques or tools. *If your geotechnical engineer has not indicated an "apply-by" date on the report, ask what it should be*, and, in general, *if you are the least bit uncertain* about the continued reliability of this report, contact your geotechnical engineer before applying it. A minor amount of additional testing or analysis – if any is required at all – could prevent major problems.

Most of the "Findings" Related in This Report Are Professional Opinions

Before construction begins, geotechnical engineers explore a site's subsurface through various sampling and testing procedures. *Geotechnical engineers can observe actual subsurface conditions only at those specific locations where sampling and testing were performed*. The data derived from that sampling and testing were reviewed by your geotechnical engineer, who then applied professional judgment to form opinions about subsurface conditions throughout the site. Actual sitewide-subsurface conditions may differ – maybe significantly – from those indicated in this report. Confront that risk by retaining your geotechnical engineer to serve on the design team from project start to project finish, so the individual can provide informed guidance quickly, whenever needed.

This Report's Recommendations Are Confirmation-Dependent

The recommendations included in this report – including any options or alternatives – are confirmation-dependent. In other words, *they are not final*, because the geotechnical engineer who developed them relied heavily on judgment and opinion to do so. Your geotechnical engineer can finalize the recommendations *only after observing actual subsurface conditions* revealed during construction. If through observation your geotechnical engineer confirms that the conditions assumed to exist actually do exist, the recommendations can be relied upon, assuming no other changes have occurred. *The geotechnical engineer who prepared this report cannot assume responsibility or liability for confirmation-dependent recommendations if you fail to retain that engineer to perform construction observation.*

This Report Could Be Misinterpreted

Other design professionals' misinterpretation of geotechnical-engineering reports has resulted in costly problems. Confront that risk by having your geotechnical engineer serve as a full-time member of the design team, to:

- confer with other design-team members,
- help develop specifications,
- review pertinent elements of other design professionals' plans and specifications, and
- be on hand quickly whenever geotechnical-engineering guidance is needed.

You should also confront the risk of constructors misinterpreting this report. Do so by retaining your geotechnical engineer to participate in prebid and preconstruction conferences and to perform construction observation.

Give Constructors a Complete Report and Guidance

Some owners and design professionals mistakenly believe they can shift unanticipated-subsurface-conditions liability to constructors by limiting the information they provide for bid preparation. To help prevent the costly, contentious problems this practice has caused, include the complete geotechnical-engineering report, along with any attachments or appendices, with your contract documents, *but be certain to note conspicuously that you've included the material for informational purposes only*. To avoid misunderstanding, you may also want to note that "informational purposes" means constructors have no right to rely on the interpretations, opinions, conclusions, or recommendations in the report, but they may rely on the factual data relative to the specific times, locations, and depths/elevations referenced. Be certain that constructors know they may learn about specific project requirements, including options selected from the report, *only* from the design drawings and specifications. Remind constructors that they may perform their own studies if they want to, and *be sure to allow enough time* to permit them to do so. Only then might you be in a position to give constructors the information available to you, while requiring them to at least share some of the financial responsibilities stemming from unanticipated conditions. Conducting prebid and preconstruction conferences can also be valuable in this respect.

Read Responsibility Provisions Closely

Some client representatives, design professionals, and constructors do not realize that geotechnical engineering is far less exact than other engineering disciplines. That lack of understanding has nurtured unrealistic expectations that have resulted in disappointments, delays, cost overruns, claims, and disputes. To confront that risk, geotechnical engineers commonly include explanatory provisions in their reports. Sometimes labeled "limitations," many of these provisions indicate where geotechnical engineers' responsibilities begin and end, to help others recognize their own responsibilities and risks. *Read these provisions closely*. Ask questions. Your geotechnical engineer should respond fully and frankly.

Geoenvironmental Concerns Are Not Covered

The personnel, equipment, and techniques used to perform an environmental study – e.g., a "phase-one" or "phase-two" environmental site assessment – differ significantly from those used to perform a geotechnical-engineering study. For that reason, a geotechnical-engineering report does not usually relate any environmental findings, conclusions, or recommendations; e.g., about the likelihood of encountering underground storage tanks or regulated contaminants. *Unanticipated subsurface environmental problems have led to project failures*. If you have not yet obtained your own environmental information, ask your geotechnical consultant for risk-management guidance. As a general rule, *do not rely on an environmental report prepared for a different client, site, or project, or that is more than six months old.*

Obtain Professional Assistance to Deal with Moisture Infiltration and Mold

While your geotechnical engineer may have addressed groundwater, water infiltration, or similar issues in this report, none of the engineer's services were designed, conducted, or intended to prevent uncontrolled migration of moisture – including water vapor – from the soil through building slabs and walls and into the building interior, where it can cause mold growth and material-performance deficiencies. Accordingly, ***proper implementation of the geotechnical engineer's recommendations will not of itself be sufficient to prevent moisture infiltration.*** Confront the risk of moisture infiltration by including building-envelope or mold specialists on the design team. ***Geotechnical engineers are not building-envelope or mold specialists.***

GEOPROFESSIONAL BUSINESS ASSOCIATION

Telephone: 301/565-2733
e-mail: info@geoprofessional.org www.geoprofessional.org

Copyright 2016 by Geoprofessional Business Association (GBA). Duplication, reproduction, or copying of this document, in whole or in part, by any means whatsoever, is strictly prohibited, except with GBA's specific written permission. Excerpting, quoting, or otherwise extracting wording from this document is permitted only with the express written permission of GBA, and only for purposes of scholarly research or book review. Only members of GBA may use this document or its wording as a complement to or as an element of a report of any kind. Any other firm, individual, or other entity that so uses this document without being a GBA member could be committing negligent

Appendix B:
Owner-Furnished Equipment Information

Carolina CAT

GENERATOR SUBMITTAL FOR

City of Concord US 29

(1) CAT C13 - D350GC DIESEL GENERATOR SET EMERGENCY STANDBY RATED 350KW, 480/277V, 3 PHASE, 4 WIRE, 60HZ, WHITE SOUND ATTENUATED ENCLOSURE, 24hr FUEL TANK

(1) ASCO AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCH 600A, 480/277V, 3 PHASE, 4 WIRE, 60HZ, OPEN TRANSITION, NEMA 12

7/21/2022

CATERPILLAR TABLE OF CONTENTS

1) **Generator Set & Attachments**
   a) Engine Spec Sheet
   b) Generator Data
   c) Enclosure
   d) Extended Fuel Tank
   e) PMG
   f) Control Panel
   g) Battery Charger
   h) Breaker Information
   i) Jacket Water Heater
   j) 100A Load Center
   k) UL2200 Listing
   l) IBC Certification
   m) Warranty

2) **ATS Information**

3) **Installation Notes**
   a. Cooling System Notes
   b. Electrical System Notes
   c. Exhaust & Foundation Support System
   d. Fuel System Notes & Starting System
   e. Startup Requirements

4) **Generator Drawing Information**
   a. Generator Wiring & Enclosure

BILL OF MATERIALS

- CAT C13 Diesel Emergency Standby Generator
  350kW, 480/277V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire, 60 Hz
- White Sound Attenuated Enclosure
- 24hr Extended Fuel Tank
- GCCP 1.2 Engine Mounted Control Panel
- 600AF, 3 pole, LSI trip unit, SE Rated Circuit Breaker
- PMG excitation system
- 10 AMP Dual Rate Battery Charger
- Jacket Water Heater
- Load Center
- UL2200
- NFPA 110 Compliant
- IBC Certification
- (5) Year Warranty

- ASCO 600A 277/480V, 3 Pole, NEMA 12
  Open Transition ATS

- CAT Start Up and On-Site 4 Hour Load Bank Test

Cat® D350 GC
Diesel Generator Sets

Standby : 60 Hz

Image shown may not reflect actual configuration.

Engine Model	Cat® C13 In-line 6, 4-cycle diesel
Bore x Stroke	130 mm x 157 mm (5.1 in x 6.2 in)
Displacement	12.5 L (763 in³)
Compression Ratio	16.3:1
Aspiration	Turbocharged Air-to-Air Aftercooled
Fuel Injection System	MEUI
Governor	Electronic ADEM™ A4

Model	Standby	Emission Strategy
D350 GC	350 ekW, 437.5 kVA	EPA Certified for Stationary Emergency Application

PACKAGE PERFORMANCE

Performance	Standby
Frequency	60 Hz
Genset Power Rating	437.50 kVA
Genset power rating with fan @ 0.8 power factor	350 ekW
Emissions	EPA TIER 3
Performance Number	EM1692
Fuel Consumption	
100% load with fan, L/hr (gal/hr)	94.3 (24.9)
75% load with fan, L/hr (gal/hr)	81.9 (21.6)
50% load with fan, L/hr (gal/hr)	60.2 (15.9)
25% load with fan, L/hr (gal/hr)	34.3 (9.1)
Cooling System[1]	
Radiator air flow restriction (system), kPa (in water)	0.12 (0.48)
Radiator air flow, m³/min (cfm)	497 (17551)
Engine coolant capacity, L (gal)	14.2 (3.8)
Radiator coolant capacity, L (gal)	30 (8)
Total coolant capacity, L (gal)	34 (12)
Inlet Air	
Combustion air inlet flow rate m³/min (cfm)	24.8 (874.4)
Max. Allowable Combustion Air Inlet Temp, °C (°F)	49 (120)
Exhaust System	
Exhaust stack gas temperature, °C (°F)	571.2 (1060.1)
Exhaust gas flow rate, m³/min (cfm)	73.4 (2591.3)
Exhaust system backpressure (maximum allowable) kPa (in. water)	10.0 (40.0)
Heat Rejection	
Heat rejection to jacket water, kW (Btu/min)	143 (8132)
Heat rejection to exhaust (total), kW (Btu/min)	360 (20484)
Heat rejection to aftercooler, kW (Btu/min)	55 (3108)
Heat rejection to atmosphere from engine, kW (Btu/min)	47 (2694)
Heat rejection from alternator, kW (Btu/min)	24 (1382)
Emissions (Nominal)[2]	
NOx, mg/Nm³ (g/hp-hr)	2274.7 (4.58)
CO, mg/Nm³ (g/hp-hr)	666.9 (1.35)
HC, mg/Nm³ (g/hp-hr)	6.2 (0.01)
PM, mg/Nm³ (g/hp-hr)	39.4 (0.10)

D350 GC Diesel Generator Sets
Electric Power

Alternator[3]		
Voltages	480V	600V
Motor starting capability @ 30% Voltage Dip, skVA	718	731
Current Amps	526.2	421
Frame Size	M3115L4	M3115L4
Excitation	S.E	AREP
Temperature Rise, °C	105	105

APPLICABLE CODES AND STANDARDS:

AS1359, CSA C22.2 No100-04, UL142, UL489, UL869, UL2200, NFPA37, NFPA70, NFPA99, NFPA110, IBC, IEC60034-1, ISO3046, ISO8528, NEMA MG1-22, NEMA MG1-33, 2006/95/EC, 2006/42/EC, 2004/108/EC.
Note: Codes may not be available in all model configurations. Please consult your local Cat Dealer representative for availability.

STANDBY: Output available with varying load for the duration of the interruption of the normal source power. Average power output is 70% of the standby power rating. Typical operation is 200 hours per year, with maximum expected usage of 500 hours per year.

RATINGS: Ratings are based on SAE J1349 standard conditions. These ratings also apply at ISO3046 standard conditions.

FUEL RATES: Based on fuel oil of 35º API [16º C (60º F)] gravity having an LHV of 42 780 kJ/kg (18,390 Btu/lb) when used at 29º C (85º F) and weighing 838.9 g/litre (7.001 lbs/U.S. gal.). Additional ratings may be available for specific customer requirements, contact your Caterpillar representative for details. For information regarding Low Sulfur fuel and Biodiesel capability, please consult your Cat dealer.

DEFINITIONS AND CONDITIONS

[1] For ambient and altitude capabilities consult your Cat dealer. Air flow restriction (system) is added to existing restriction from factory.

[2] Emissions data measurement procedures are consistent with those described in EPA CFR 40 Part 89, Subpart D & E and ISO8178-1 for measuring HC, CO, PM, NOx. Data shown is based on steady state operating conditions of 77° F, 28.42 in HG and number 2 diesel fuel with 35° API and LHV of 18,390 BTU/lb. The nominal emissions data shown is subject to instrumentation, measurement, facility and engine to engine variations. Emissions data is based on 100% load and thus cannot be used to compare to EPA regulations which use values based on a weighted cycle.

[3] UL 2200 Listed packages may have oversized generators with a different temperature rise and motor starting characteristics. Generator temperature rise is based on a 40° C ambient per NEMA MG1-32.

LET'S DO THE WORK.™

LEHE2008-05 (06/22)

www.Cat.com/electricpower
All rights reserved.
Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.The International System of Units (SI) is used in this publication.
© 2022 Caterpillar. All Rights Reserved. CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET'S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission

GENERATOR DATA

JULY 21, 2022

(AT400240)-ENGINE (BAA126422A)-CEM

For Help Desk Phone Numbers Click here

Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

Spec Information

Generator Specification

Frame: M3115L4	**Type:** SR500	**No. of Bearings:** 1
Winding Type: RANDOM WOUND		**Flywheel:** 14.0
Connection: - STAR		**Housing:** 1
Phases: 3		**No. of Leads:** 6
Poles: 4		**Wires per Lead:** 0
Sync Speed: 1800		**Generator Pitch:** 0.6667

Generator Efficiency

Per Unit Load	kW	Efficiency %
0.25	87.5	92.2
0.5	175.0	94.2
0.75	262.5	94.4
1.0	350.0	94.0

Reactances	Per Unit	Ohms
SUBTRANSIENT - DIRECT AXIS X''_d	0.1350	0.0711
SUBTRANSIENT - QUADRATURE AXIS X''_q	0.1481	0.0780
TRANSIENT - SATURATED X'_d	0.1927	0.1015
SYNCHRONOUS - DIRECT AXIS X_d	3.0870	1.6257
SYNCHRONOUS - QUADRATURE AXIS X_q	1.5744	0.8291
NEGATIVE SEQUENCE X_2	0.1415	0.0745
ZERO SEQUENCE X_0	0.0080	0.0042

Time Constants	Seconds
OPEN CIRCUIT TRANSIENT - DIRECT AXIS T'_{d0}	1.6017
SHORT CIRCUIT TRANSIENT - DIRECT AXIS T'_d	0.1000
OPEN CIRCUIT SUBSTRANSIENT - DIRECT AXIS T''_{d0}	0.0142
SHORT CIRCUIT SUBSTRANSIENT - DIRECT AXIS T''_d	0.0100
OPEN CIRCUIT SUBSTRANSIENT - QUADRATURE AXIS T''_{q0}	0.1062
SHORT CIRCUIT SUBSTRANSIENT - QUADRATURE AXIS T''_q	0.0100
EXCITER TIME CONSTANT T_e	0.0170
ARMATURE SHORT CIRCUIT T_a	0.0150

Short Circuit Ratio: 0.38	Stator Resistance = 0.016 Ohms	Field Resistance = 0.4554 Ohms

Voltage Regulation

Voltage level adjustment: +/-	5.0%
Voltage regulation, steady state: +/-	0.8%
Voltage regulation with 3% speed change: +/-	0.8%
Waveform deviation line - line, no load: less than	2.0%
Telephone influence factor: less than	50

Generator Excitation

	No Load	Full Load, (rated) pf	
		Series	Parallel
Excitation voltage:	10.64 Volts	49.03 Volts	Volts
Excitation current	1.0 Amps	3.79 Amps	Amps

Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

Generator Mechanical Information

Center of Gravity

Dimension X	-437.0 mm	-17.2 IN.
Dimension Y	0.0 mm	0.0 IN.
Dimension Z	0.0 mm	0.0 IN.

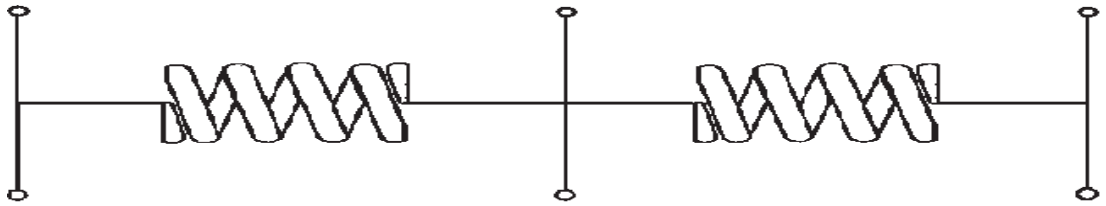
- "X" is measured from driven end of generator and parallel to rotor. Towards engine fan is positive. See General Information for details
- "Y" is measured vertically from rotor center line. Up is positive.
- "Z" is measured to left and right of rotor center line. To the right is positive.

Generator WT =	* Rotor WT =	* Stator WT =
976 kg	390 kg	586 kg
2,152 LB	860 LB	1,292 LB

Rotor Balance = 0.0 mm deflection PTP

Overspeed Capacity = 125% of synchronous speed

Generator Torsional Data



J1 = Coupling and Fan | **J2 = Rotor** | **J3 = Exciter End**

TOTAL J = J1 + J2 + J3

K1 = Shaft Stiffness between J1 + J2 (Diameter 1)

K2 = Shaft Stiffness between J2 + J3 (Diameter 2)

J1	K1	Min Shaft Dia 1	J2	K2	Min Shaft Dia 2	J3
17.5 LB IN. s^2	58.3 MLB IN./rad	4.2 IN.	34.9 LB IN. s^2	40.1 MLB IN./rad	4.5 IN.	1.9 LB IN. s^2
1.976 N m s^2	6.58293 MN m/rad	106.0 mm	3.94 N m s^2	4.53 MN m/rad	115.0 mm	0.21 N m s^2

Total J

54.2 LB IN. s^2

6.126 N m s^2

Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

Generator Cooling Requirements - Temperature - Insulation Data

Cooling Requirements:		**Temperature Data: (Ambient 40 ^{0}C)**	
Heat Dissipated:	22.3 kW	**Stator Rise:**	105.0 ^{0}C
Air Flow:	66.0 m^3/min	**Rotor Rise:**	105.0 ^{0}C

Insulation Class: H

Insulation Reg. as shipped: 100.0 MΩ minimum at 40 ^{0}C

Thermal Limits of Generator

Frequency:	60 Hz
Line to Line Voltage:	480 Volts
B BR 80/40	408.0 kVA
F BR -105/40	464.1 kVA
H BR - 125/40	510.0 kVA
F PR - 130/40	510.0 kVA
H PR - 150/40	540.6 kVA
H PR27 - 163/27	561.0 kVA

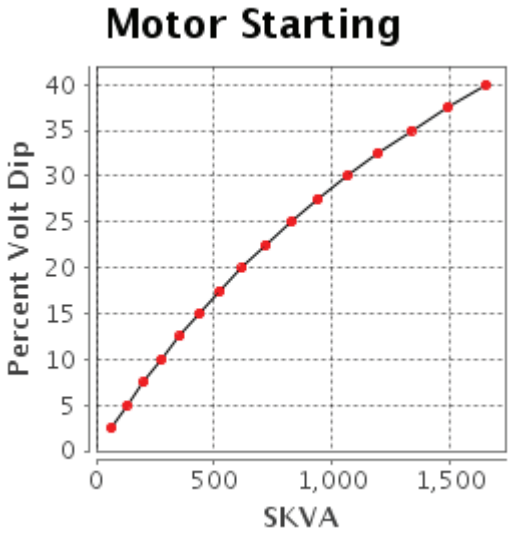
Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

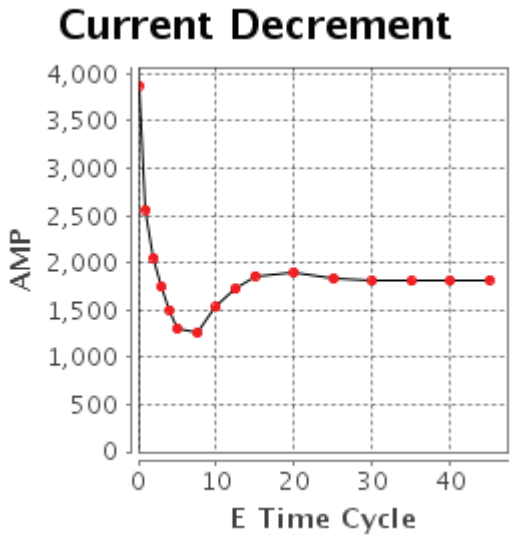
Starting Capability & Current Decrement
Motor Starting Capability (0.6 pf)

SKVA	Percent Volt Dip
64	2.5
131	5.0
201	7.5
276	10.0
354	12.5
438	15.0
526	17.5
620	20.0
720	22.5
827	25.0
941	27.5
1,063	30.0
1,195	32.5
1,336	35.0
1,489	37.5
1,654	40.0



Current Decrement Data

E Time Cycle	AMP
0.0	3,877
1.0	2,563
2.0	2,056
3.0	1,744
4.0	1,502
5.0	1,301
7.5	1,257
10.0	1,532
12.5	1,725
15.0	1,863
20.0	1,897
25.0	1,835
30.0	1,807
35.0	1,804
40.0	1,811
45.0	1,820



Instantaneous 3 Phase Fault Current: 3877 Amps **Instantaneous Line - Line Fault Current:** 3277 Amps

Instantaneous Line - Neutral Fault Current: 5516 Amps

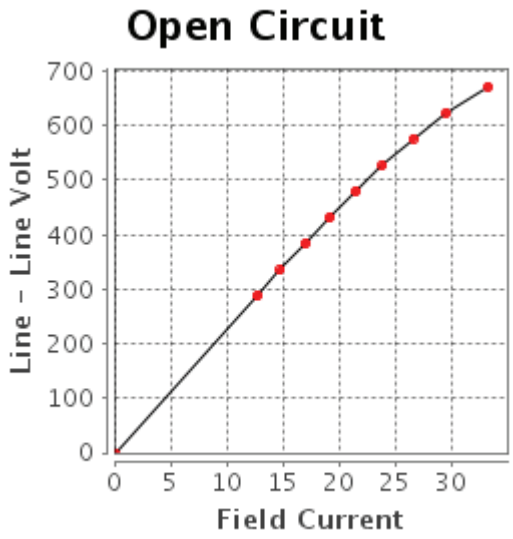
Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

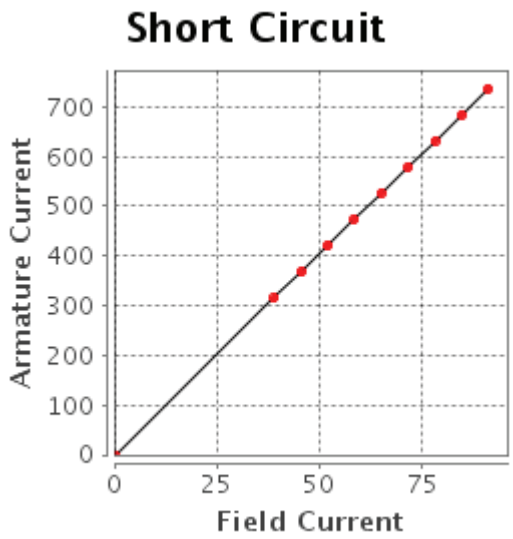
Generator Output Characteristic Curves
Open Circuit Curve

Field Current	Line - Line Volt
0.0	0
12.7	288
14.8	336
17.0	384
19.2	432
21.5	480
23.9	528
26.6	576
29.6	624
33.3	672



Short Circuit Curve

Field Current	Armature Current
0.0	0
39.0	316
45.5	368
52.0	421
58.5	474
65.0	526
71.6	579
78.1	631
84.6	684
91.1	737



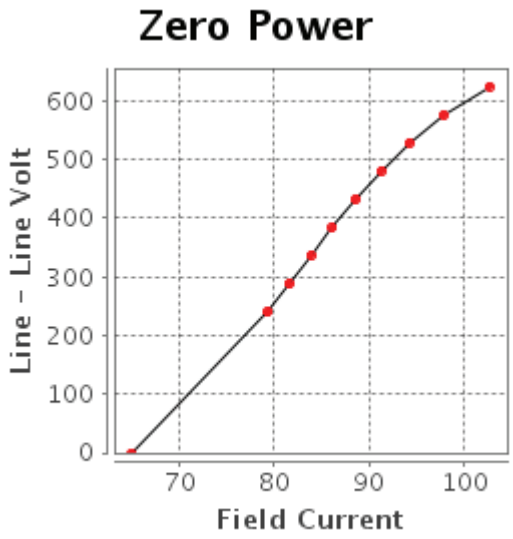
Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

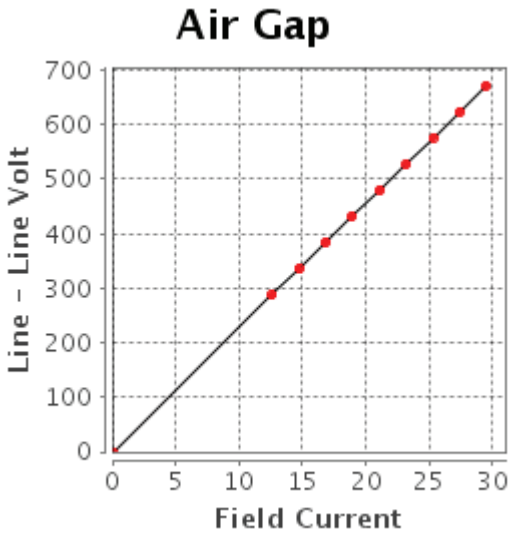
Generator Output Characteristic Curves
Zero Power Factor Curve

Field Current	Line - Line Volt
65.0	0
79.3	240
81.5	288
83.8	336
86.1	384
88.5	432
91.2	480
94.2	528
97.8	576
102.6	624



Air Gap Curve

Field Current	Line - Line Volt
0.0	0
12.6	288
14.7	336
16.8	384
18.9	432
21.1	480
23.2	528
25.3	576
27.4	624
29.5	672



Selected Model

Engine: C13 **Generator Frame:** M3115L4 **Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0 **Line Voltage:** 480

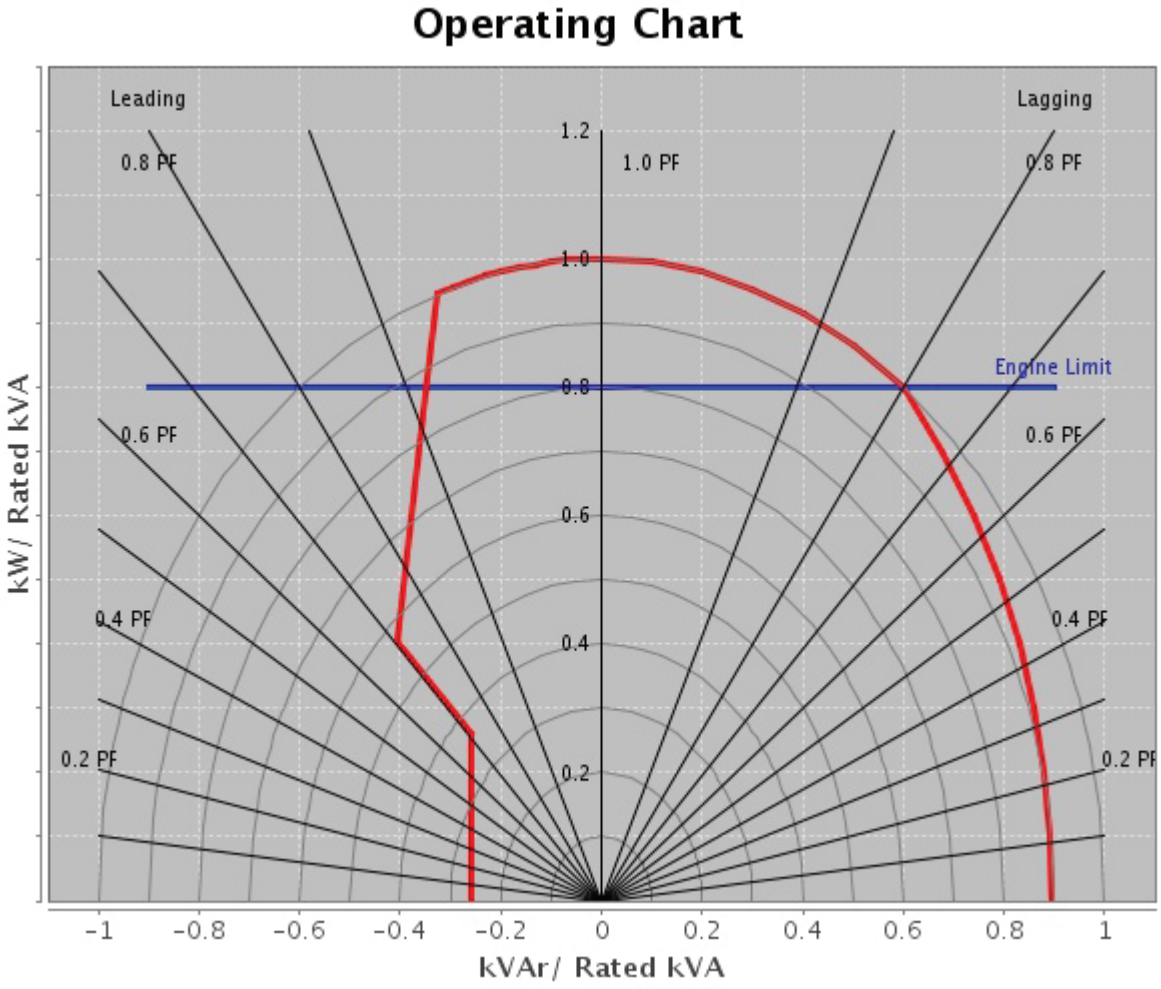
Fuel: Diesel **Generator Arrangement:** 5652324 **Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5 **Phase Voltage:** 277

Frequency: 60 **Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet **Pwr. Factor:** 0.8 **Rated Current:** 526.2

Duty: STANDBY **Connection:** - STAR **Application:** EPG **Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

Reactive Capability Curve



Selected Model

Engine: C13	**Generator Frame:** M3115L4	**Genset Rating (kW):** 350.0	**Line Voltage:** 480
Fuel: Diesel	**Generator Arrangement:** 5652324	**Genset Rating (kVA):** 437.5	**Phase Voltage:** 277
Frequency: 60	**Excitation Type:** Permanent Magnet	**Pwr. Factor:** 0.8	**Rated Current:** 526.2
Duty: STANDBY	**Connection:** - STAR	**Application:** EPG	**Status:** Current

Version: 42423 /44642 /43655 /8546

GENERATOR INFORMATION (DM7900)

---

1. Motor Starting
Motor starting curves are obtained in accordance with IEC60034, and are displayed at 0.6 power factor.

2. Voltage Dip
Prediction of the generator synchronous voltage dip can be made by consulting the plot for the voltage dip value that corresponds to the desired motor starting kVA value.

3. Definitions
A) Generator Keys
Frame: abbreviation of generator frame size
Freq: frequency in hertz.
PP/SB: prime/standby duty respectively
Volts: line - line terminal voltage
kW: rating in electrical kilo watts
Model: engine sales model

B) Generator Temperature Rise
The indicated temperature rises are the IEC/NEMA limits for standby or prime power applications. The quoted rise figures are maximum limits only and are not necessarily indicative of the actual temperature rise of a given machine winding.

C) Centre of Gravity
The specified centre of gravity is for the generator only. For single bearing, and two bearing close coupled generators, the center of gravity is measured from the generator/engine flywheel-housing interface and from the centreline of the rotor Shaft.

For two bearing, standalone generators, the center of gravity is measured from the end of the rotor shaft and from the centerline of the rotor shaft.

D) Generator Current Decrement Curves
The generator current decrement curve indicates the generator armature current arising from a symmetrical three-phase fault at the generator terminals. Generators equipped with AREP or PMG excitation systems will sustain 300% of rated armature current for 10 seconds.

E) Generator Efficiency Curves
The efficiency curve is displayed for the generator only under the given conditions of rating, voltage, frequency and power factor. This is not the overall generating set efficiency curve.

Cat® GC ENCLOSURES

Image shown may not reflect actual configuration.

D250 GC – D600 GC Sound Attenuated Enclosures

60 Hz

Features

Robust/Highly Corrosion Resistant Construction

- Factory installed on skid base or tanks base
- Environmentally friendly, polyester powder baked paint
- Enclosure constructed with 18-gauge steel
- Interior zinc plated fasteners
- Internally mounted exhaust silencing system
- Comply with ASCE /SEI 7 for Wind loads up to 100 mph
- Designed and tested to comply with UL 2200 Listed generator set package

Excellent Access

- Large cable entry area for installation ease.
- Accommodates side mounted single or multiple breakers.
- Two doors on both sides.
- Vertically hinged allow 180° opening rotation
- Radiator fill cover.

Security and Safety

- Lockable access doors which give full access to control panel and breaker.
- Cooling fan and battery charging alternator fully guarded.
- Fuel fill, oil fill and battery can only be reached via lockable access.
- Externally mounted emergency stop button (Optional).
- Designed for spreader bar lifting to ensure safety.
- Stub-up area is rodent proof.

Sound Attenuated Level 2

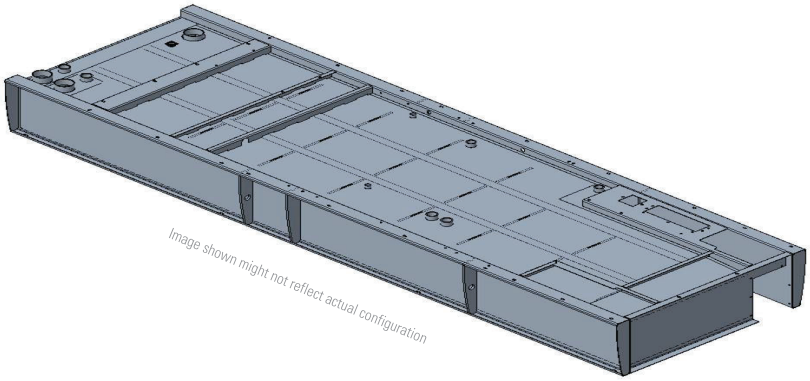
- Caterpillar white paint
- UL Listed integral fuel tank with 24 hours running time capacity (Optional).
- DC lighting package (Optional)

Enclosure Package Operating Characteristics

Enclosure Type	Standby	Cooling Air Flow Rate		Ambient Capability*		Sound Pressure Levels (dBA) at 7m (23 ft)
	ekW	m^3/s	cfm	°C	°F	100% Load
Level 2 Sound Attenuated Enclosure (Steel)	250	6.4	13561	57	135	74
	300	6.4	13561	51	125	74
	350	7.4	15680	57	134	71
	400	7.4	15680	53	127	71
	450	8.4	17692	54	130	73
	500	8.4	17692	50	122	73
	550	11.2	23731	56	133	73
	600	11.2	23731	53	127	73

*Cooling system performance at sea level. Consult your Cat® dealer for site specific ambient and altitude capabilities.
Note: Sound level measurements are subject to instrumentation, installation and manufacturing variability, as well as ambient site conditions

Cat® GC FUEL TANKS



EXTENDED FUEL TANKS
D250 GC – D600 GC

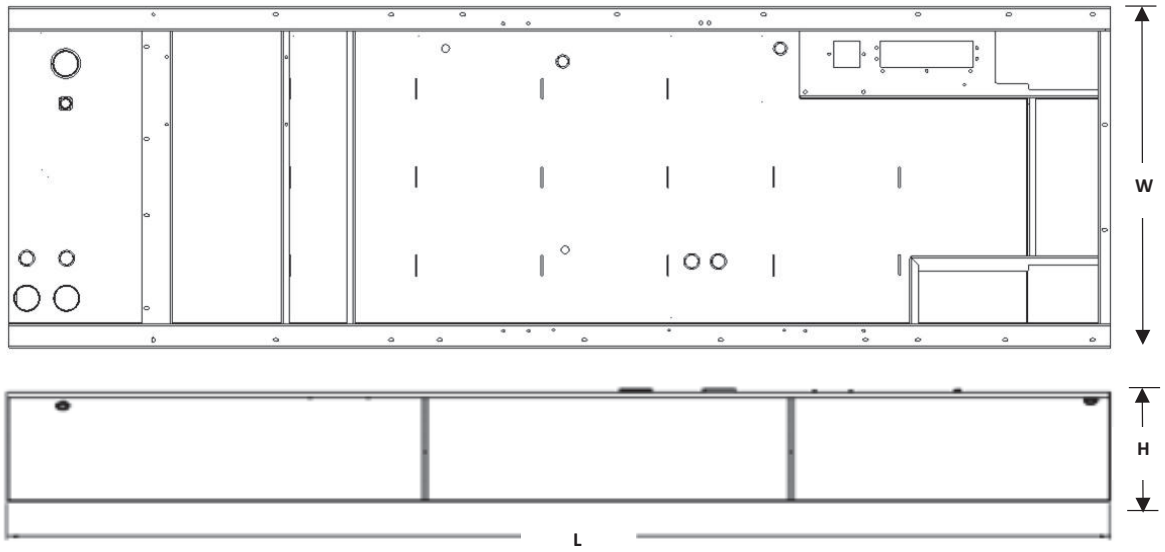
FEATURES

- UL Listed for United States (UL 142) and Canada (CAN/ULC S601)
- Facilitates compliance with NFPA 30 code, NFPA 37 and 110 standards and CSA C282 code
- Dual wall
- Low fuel level warning standard, customer configurable warning or shutdown
- Primary tank leak detection switch in containment basin
- Tank design provides capacity for thermal expansion of fuel
- Fuel supply dip tube is positioned so as not to pick up fuel sediment
- Fuel return and supply dip tube is separated by an internal baffle to prevent immediate re-supply of heated return fuel
- Pressure washed with an iron phosphate solution
- Interior tank surfaces coated with a solvent-based thin-film rust preventative
- Heavy gauge steel gussets with internal lifting rings
- Primary and secondary tanks are leak tested at 20.7 kPa (3 psi) minimum
- Compatible with open packages and enclosures
- Gloss black polyester alkyd enamel exterior paint
- Welded steel containment basin (minimum of 110% of primary tank capacity)
- Direct reading fuel gauge with variable electrical output
- Emergency vents on primary and secondary tanks are sized in accordance with NFPA 30.

OPTIONS

- Audio/visual fuel level alarm panel
- ULC / CSA Accessory Kit
- 5gal (18.9 L) spill containment
- Overfill prevention Valve
- Fuel tank fill pipe & lockable cap

Fuel Tank Base Useable Capacities with Fuel Tank Dimensions & Weights



The heights listed above do not include lumber used during manufacturing and shipping

A. Open Set & Sound Attenuated Enclosure

Tank Design	Feature Code	Total Capacity		Useable Capacity		Tank Only								Overall Package Height with Tank			
						Dry Weight		Height 'H'		Length 'L'		Width'W'		Open		Enclosure	
		Litre	Gallon	Litre	Gallon	kg	lb	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in
Extended Tank	FTDW039	2341	618.4	2060	538.9	1075	2370	639	25.1	4608	181.4	1430	56.3	2095	82.4	2385	93.9
	FTDW040	2862	756	2540	671	1294	2852	586	23	5252	206.7	1620	63.8	2503	98.5	2563	100.9
	FTDW041	3633	959.7	3286	868.1	1506	3302	635	25	5910	228.7	1620	63.8	2291	90.1	2479	97.6
	FTDW042	4271	1128.2	3878	1024	1944	4285	585	23	6759	266.1	1865	73.4	2345	92.3	1957	77.0

B. Estimated Run Time (Hours)

Tank Design	Feature Code	Standby Ratings (kVA)						
		ekW	100%		75%		50%	
			Hrs	L/hr	Hrs	L/hr	Hrs	L/hr
Tank	FTDW039	250	28.1	73.3	35	35.0	47	47.0
		300	24	86	30.8	30.8	40	40.0
	FTDW040	350	26.9	94.3	31.2	81.9	42.4	60.2
		400	24.0	105.8	28.1	90.7	38.6	66.2
	FTDW041	450	25.0	131.7	31.3	106.1	42.0	79.1
		500	24.0	137	30.1	110.5	46.6	71.3
	FTDW042	550	25.7	151.1	32.9	118.1	45.2	86.1
		600	24.1	161.6	30.0	129.6	42.4	91.7

Tanks with full electrical stub-up area include removable end channel. Tanks with RH stub-up include stubup area directly below the circuit breaker or power terminal strips.

Fuel tanks and applicable options facilitate compliance with the following United States NFPA Code and Standards:

NFPA 30: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code

NFPA 37: Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines

NFPA 110: Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems

Fuel tanks and applicable options facilitate compliance with the following Canadian Standard and Code:

CSA C282 – Emergency Electrical Power Supply for Buildings

CSA B139-09 – Installation Code for Oil-Burning Equipment

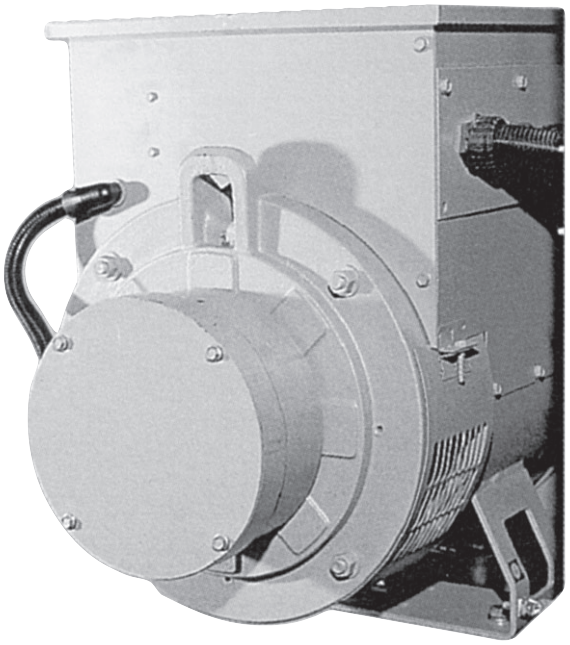
LET'S DO THE WORK.™

LEHE2624-01 (07-20)

www.Cat.com/electricpower

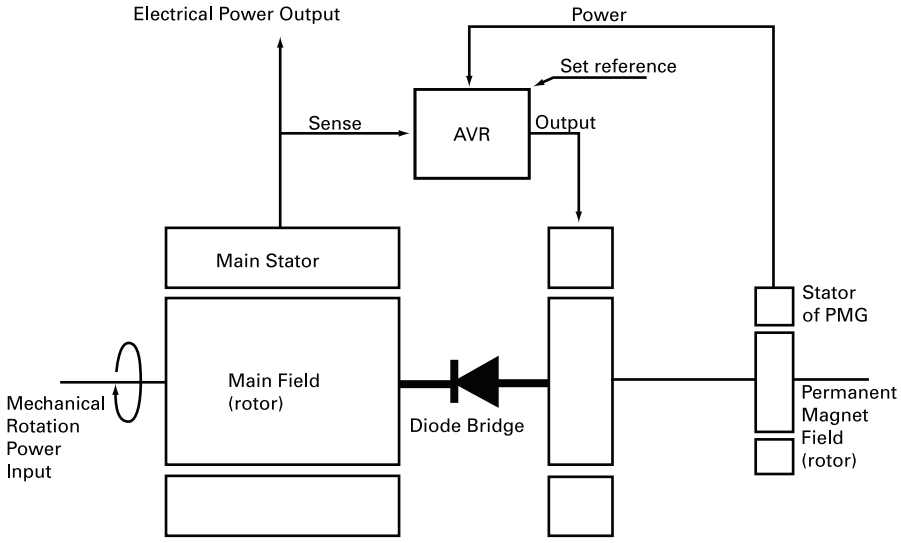
©2020 Caterpillar All rights reserved. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. The International System of Units (SI) is used in this publication. CAT, CATERPILLAR, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

CATERPILLAR®



AVR12 – PERMANENT MAGNET GENERATOR

The permanent magnet generator (PMG) option upgrades the excitation system of the generator from the standard self-excited system to a separately-excited system. The PMG couples to the non-drive end of the generator and provides an independent source of excitation power that ensures initial voltage build-up. The PMG improves the voltage response of the generator during transient load application, such as motor starting, and provides a sustained short-circuit current for the operation of protective devices. Isolation of the excitation power ensures that regulation is not affected by non-linear distorting loads.



BLOCK DIAGRAM OF PMG

Information contained in this publication may be considered confidential.
Discretion is recommended when distributing.
Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.

© 2005 Caterpillar
All Rights Reserved.
Printed in U.S.A.

Cat® GC Control Panel

Image shown might not reflect actual configuration

GCCP 1.2 - Control Panel

GCCP 1.2 is an auto Start Control Module suitable for a wide variety of diesel gen-set applications. Monitoring an extensive number of engine parameters, the modules will display warnings, shutdown and engine status information on the back-lit LCD screen, illuminated LEDs and remote PC.

FEATURES

- 4-line back-lit LCD text display
- Multiple display languages
- Five-key menu navigation
- LCD alarm indication
- Customisable power-up text and images
- Data logging facility
- Internal PLC editor
- Protections disable feature
- Fully configurable via PC using USB & RS485 communication
- Front panel configuration with PIN protection
- Power save mode
- 3-phase generator sensing and protection
- Generator current and power monitoring (kW, kvar, kVA, pf)
  kW and kvar overload and reverse power alarms
- Over current protection
- Unbalanced load protection
- Breaker control via fascia buttons
- Fuel and start outputs configurable when using
  CAN Support for 0 V to 10 V & 4 mA to 20 mA sensors
- 8 configurable digital inputs (3 available for Customer use)
- 8 configurable digital outputs (5 available for Customer use)
- 4 configurable analogue inputs (3 available for Customer Use)
- CAN, MPU and alternator frequency speed sensing in one variant
- Real time clock
- Engine pre-heat and post-heat functions
- Engine run-time scheduler
- Engine idle control for starting &stopping
- Fuel usage monitor and low fuel level alarms
- 3 configurable maintenance alarms

BENEFITS

- Hours counter provides accurate information for monitoring and maintenance periods
- User-friendly set-up and button layout for ease of use
- Multiple parameters are monitored & displayed simultaneously for full visibility
- The module can be configured to suit a wide range of applications for user flexibility
- PLC editor allows user configurable functions to meet user specific application requirements.
- RS485 Communication port can be used for the Remote Monitoring Communication (Compatible with Cat PLG)

SPECIFICATION

DC SUPPLY
CONTINUOUS VOLTAGE RATING
8 V to 35 V Continuous
5 V for upto 1 minute

CRANKING DROPOUTS
Able to survive 0 V for 100 mS, providing supply was at least 10 V before dropout and supply recovers to 5 V. This is achieved without the need for internal batteries.
LEDs and backlight will not be maintained during cranking.

MAXIMUM OPERATING CURRENT
260 mA at 12 V, 150 mA at 24 V

MAXIMUM STANDBY CURRENT
145 mA at 12 V, 85 mA at 24 V

CHARGE FAIL/EXCITATION RANGE
0 V to 35 V

GENERATOR & MAINS (UTILITY) VOLTAGE RANGE
15 V to 415 V AC (Ph to N)
26 V to 719 V AC (Ph to Ph)

FREQUENCY RANGE
3.5 Hz to 75 Hz

MAGNETIC PICKUP VOLTAGE RANGE
+/- 0.5 V to 70 V

FREQUENCY RANGE
10,000 Hz (max)

INPUTS
DIGITAL INPUTS A TO H
Negative switching

ANALOGUE INPUTS A & D
Configurable as:
Negative switching digital input 0 V to 10 V sensor
4 mA to 20 mA sensor Resistive sensor

ANALOGUE INPUTS B & C
Configurable as:
Negative switching digital input Resistive sensor

OUTPUTS
OUTPUT A & B (FUEL & START)
15 A DC at supply voltage

AUXILIARY OUTPUTS C, D, E, F, G & H
2 A DC at supply voltage

DIMENSIONS OVERALL
216 mm x 158 mm x 43 mm
8.5" x 6.2" x 1.5"

PANEL CUT-OUT
184 mm x 137 mm
7.2" x 5.3"

MAXIMUM PANEL THICKNESS
8 mm
0.3"

STORAGE TEMPERATURE RANGE
-40°C to +85°C
-40 °F to +185 °F

OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE
-30°C to +70°C
-22 °F to +158 °F

LEHE2017-02 (09-20)

www.Cat.com/electricpower
©2020 Caterpillar All rights reserved. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. The International System of Units (SI) is used in this publication. CAT, CATERPILLAR, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

Attachments

Image shown might not reflect actual configuration

BATTERY CHARGER

The intelligent battery charger has been developed with safety, usability, optimised battery performance and maximum battery lifetimes in mind.

A comprehensive range of input and output protections ensures a continued safe charging environment also enabling the use of the charger as a power supply.

FEATURES

- Intelligent two, three and four stage charging profiles
- Configurable to suit most battery types (12V/24V)
- Adjustable current limit
- Can be used as a battery charger, power supply or both at the same time
- Automatic or Manual boost and storage charge functions to help maintain battery condition
- Digital Microprocessor Technology
- Temperature compensation for battery charging
- Low Output Ripple and superb line regulation
- Three LED Indicators
- AC input Under voltage
- AC input Over voltage
- Battery charger output Over voltage
- Battery charger output Over current
- Optional battery temperature compensation with over temperature protection
- Output short circuit and Inversion polarity with auto recovery
- Configurable charge termination
- UL1236 /UL1564 Compliant

Automatic Boost Mode

- Boosts and equalises cell charge improving battery performance and life

Power Save Mode

- Once the battery is fully charged the chargers switch to Eco-Power to save energy

Communication

- Can be integrated into external systems through MODBUS RTU using RS485
- Fully configurable via PC Software

BENEFITS

- Fully flexible to maximise the life of the battery
- Suitable for a wide range of battery types
- Switched mode design
- Minimum 86% efficiency throughout full operating range
- No external intervention for boost mode
- Multiple chargers can be linked together to provide larger current output
- Can be permanently connected to battery and mains (utility) supply. No need to disconnect through high load conditions.

SPECIFICATION

AC SUPPLY
VOLTAGE RANGE 90 V to 305 V (L-N)

FREQUENCY RANGE
48 Hz to 64 Hz (L-N)

DC OUTPUT RATING
10 A DC at 24 V DC

RIPPLE AND NOISE
<1%

EFFICIENCY
>86%

REGULATION LINE
<0.5%

LOAD
2%

TEMPERATURE SENSOR INPUT
PT1000

PROTECTIONS
Short Circuit
DC Over Voltage
DC Over Current
Reverse Polarity
Over Temperature
AC Under & Over Voltage

CHARGE FAILURE RELAY
3 A at 30 V DC volt free relay

DIMENSIONS OVERALL
70 mm x200 mm x 130 mm
2.7" x 7.9" x 5.1"

WEIGHT
0.75 kg

OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE
-30 °C to +80 °C
-22 °F to +176 °F

STORAGE TEMPERATURE RANGE
-40 °C to +70 °C
-22 °F to +158 °F

LEHE2022-02 (10-20)

©2020 Caterpillar All rights reserved. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. The International System of Units (SI) is used in this publication. CAT, CATERPILLAR, their respective logos, "Caterpillar corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

C9GC , C13GC , C15GC , C18GC Circuit Breakers

Manually Operated Circuit Breakers

Current (A)	Frame	Number of Poles	Interrupting Ratings (kA rms)			Trip Units	(Lugs) Cable Size Range / Phase	Auxiliary Options
			240V	480V	600V			
100	XT2	3	65	25	18	Electronic LS/I or LSI	14-1/0AWG	1 Form C + 1 Bell Alarm Shunt Trip 24 VDC
250	XT4	3	65	25	18	Electronic LS/I or LSI	14-1/0AWG	1 Form C + 1 Bell Alarm Shunt Trip 24 VDC
400	T5N	3	65	25	18	Electronic LS/I (S or I) or LSI	(2) 3/0 – 250 kcmil	1 Form C + 1 Bell Alarm 250VAC/VDC Shunt Trip 24VDC
600	T6N	3	65	35	20		(3) 2/0 – 400 kcmil	
800	T6N	3	65	35	20		(3) 2/0 – 400 kcmil	1 Form C + 1 Bell Alarm 400VAC / 250VDC Shunt Trip 24VDC
1200	T7S	3	65	50	25		(4) 2/0 – 500 kcmil	

1st Breaker Options (400 – 1200A)

Model	Current (A)	Operation
C9, C13, C15	400	Manually Operated
C9, C13, C15, C18	600	Manually Operated
C9, C13, C15, C18	800	Manually Operated
C9, C18	1200	Manually Operated

1st Breaker FLC Capacity or one frame less than FLC capacity except when 1st breaker is 400 A

2nd Breaker Options

Model	Current (A)	Operation
C9, C13, C15, C18	100 / 250	Manually Operated

2nd breaker either 100A or 250A

T6 600 / 800 -PR221DS

L-1 Functions

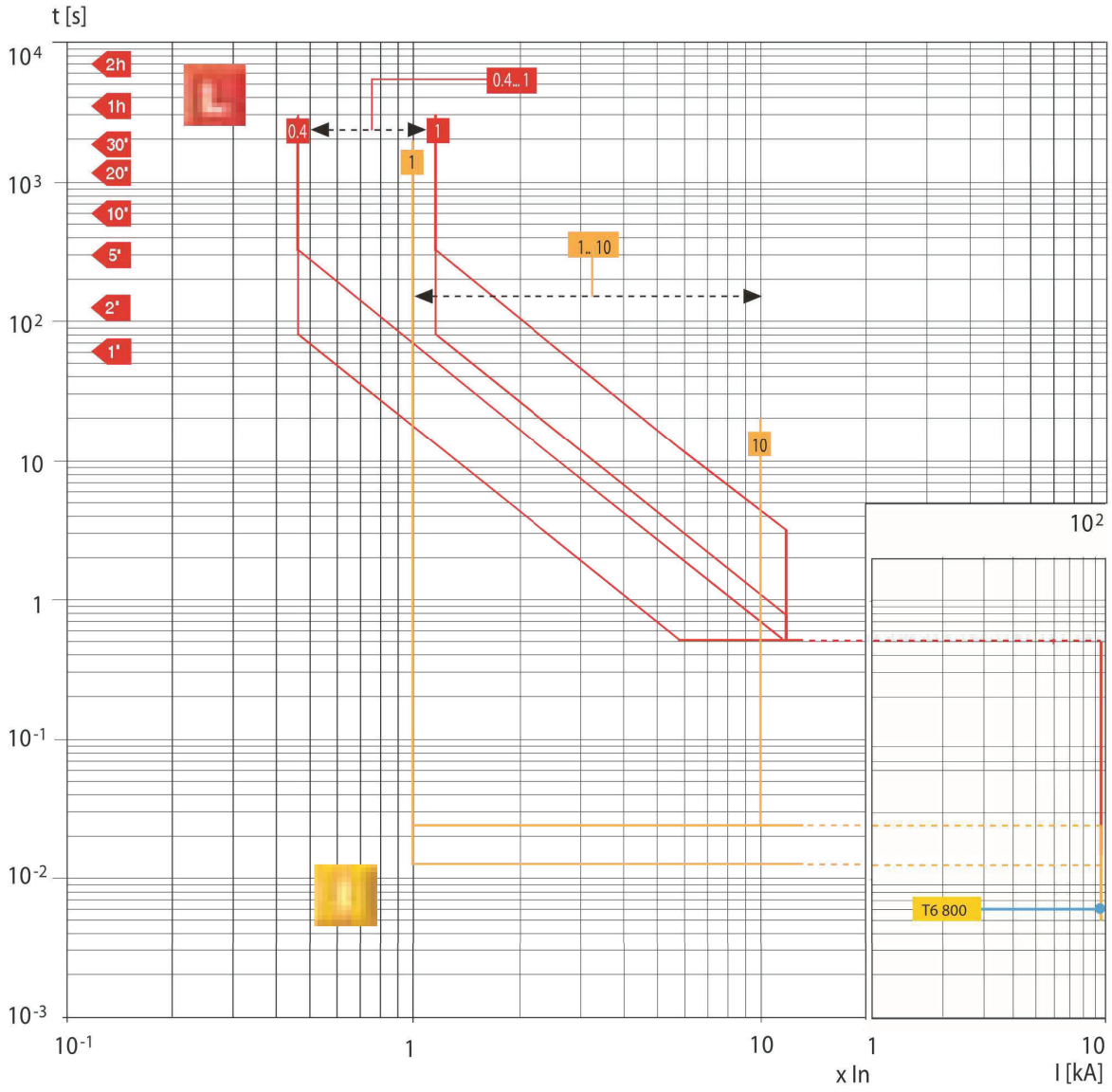


Figure 2

T6 600 / 800 -PR221DS

L-S Functions

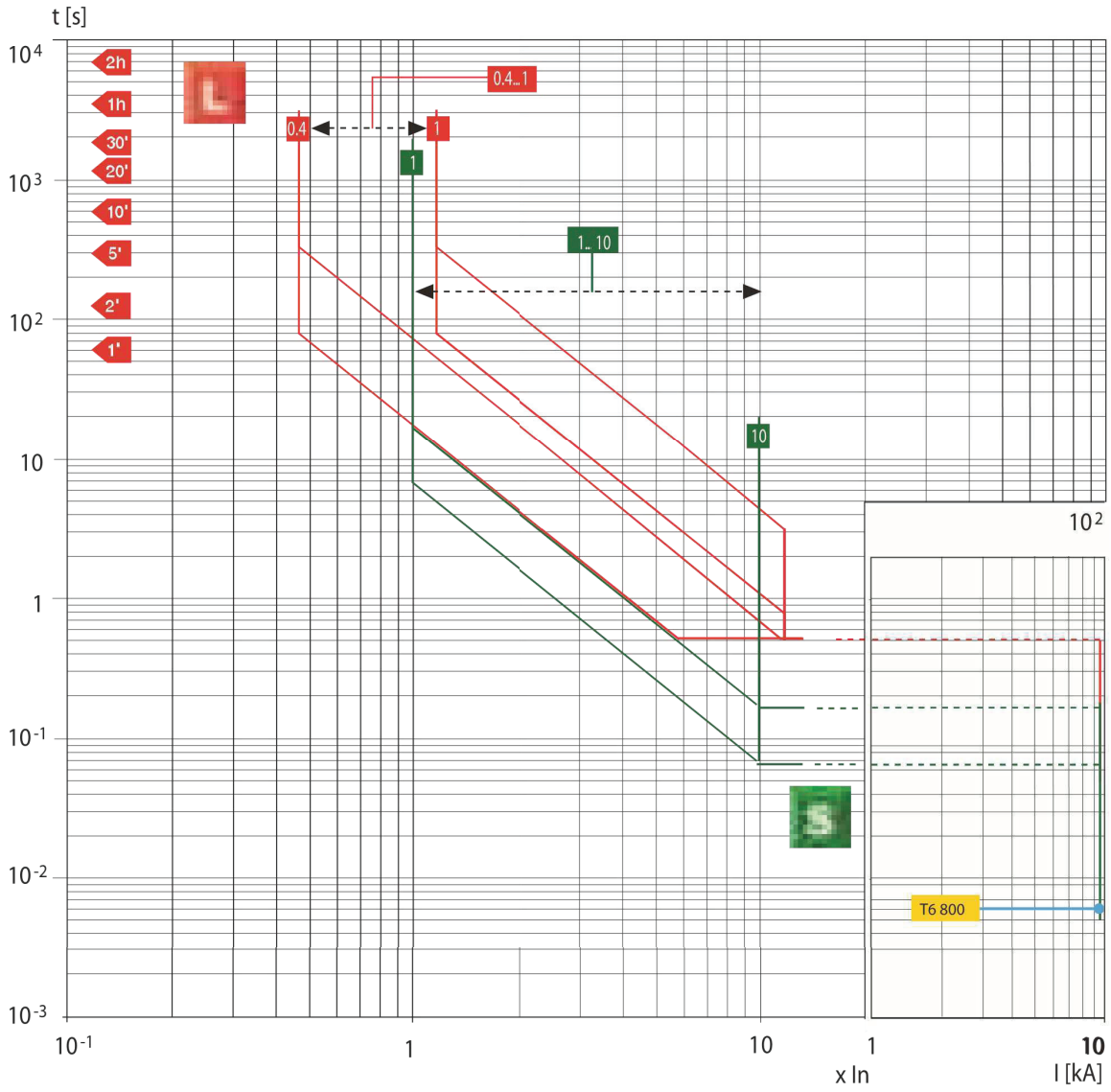


Figure 3

Jacket Water Heater (WHHH01/ WHHH03)

Appropriate when the generator set is to be sited in a low ambient environment, the heater maintains the engine coolant at a temperature [typically 38°C (100°F)] which facilitates rapid starting and load acceptance. The heater assembly uses UL compliant components (to UL1030) and has CSA certification which is to both CSA and UL Standards.

The heater itself is powered by a 240V for 60 Hz AC auxiliary supply. A thermostatic controller is included to regulate the output temperature to within safe limits. When the generator set is not running the heater is automatically connected to the AC supply through a power relay mounted in the control panel.

Upon receiving a start signal the AC supply is automatically disconnected by the power relay and automatically reconnected when the start signal is removed, and the engine has stopped.

Features

- Uniform heat distribution
- Reduces wear from cold spots
- Improves startability
- Thermostatically controlled and protected
- 6’ (1.8m) cord length (577-1758)
- 16.4’ (5.0m) cord length (578-9355).
- Ensures generator is at optimal starting temperature and ready to accept load
- Durable pump with non-magnetic impeller that does not attract metal debris
- Robust die cast aluminum housing improves sealing of the hoses, eliminates leaking and breakage
- Corrosion resistant steel brackets for superior strength and durability
- Reduces thermal stress on coolant hoses
- Element designed for long life with maximum heat transfer
- IP44 Ingress Protection Rating
- No evaporation of coolant from hoses
- Reduces low coolant level alarms because coolant does not boil

Part No	Outlet Location	Watts	Volts	Amps	Regulating Thermostat	Safety Thermostat
577-1758/578-9355	Right	2700	240	11.25	On 90°F (32°C) Off 115°F (46°C)	210°F (98°C)

www.cat.com/electricpower

©2020 Caterpillar
All rights reserved.

Information contained in this publication may be considered confidential. Discretion is recommended when distributing. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.

CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET’S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, “Caterpillar Corporate Yellow,” the “Power Edge” and Cat “Modern Hex” trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

100 Amp Load Center

Image shown may not reflect actual package.

100 Amp Load Center

Specifications	
Number of Spaces	6
System Voltage	120 / 240VAC
Number of Tandem Circuit Breakers	6
Phase	1 Ph
NEMA Degree of Protection	NEMA 3R Outdoor
Electrical Connection	Lugs
Wiring Configuration	3-Wire
Material	Tin Plated Aluminum Busbar
Enclosure Material	Welded Galvanized Steel
Cover Finish	Gray Baked Enamel
Product Certifications	UL E-6294
Gauge	AWG 8…AWG 1 (Aluminium / Copper)

Dimensions and Specifications	
Height / Width / Depth	321 mm / 226 mm / 127 mm
GFCI	16A (120V)
Battery Charger	6A (120V)
Jacket Water Heater	11.25A (240V)
Alternator Heater	1.04A (240V)
Total Load	34.29A Max

L1	
GFCI	16A (120V)
Jacket Water Heater	11.25A (240V)
Alternator Heater	1.04A (240V)
Total Load	28.29A Max

L2	
Battery Charger	6A (120V)
Jacket Water Heater	11.25A (240V)
Alternator Heater	1.04A (240V)
Total Load	18.29A Max

www.cat.com/electricpower

©2020 Caterpillar
All rights reserved.

Information contained in this publication may be considered confidential. Discretion is recommended when distributing. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.

CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET'S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow," the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

LEHE2075-02 (04/20)

ATTACHMENTS

ULCERT
UL 2200 LISTING

INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING:

ALTERNATOR
Alternator insulation system is UL Recognized (UL 1446). PMG and AREP alternators are available. Automatic voltage regulators are UL Recognized.

WIRE HARNESS
AC, DC, and power harnesses are made with UL Listed wire and UL Listed terminals.

CONTROL PANEL
Control panels are comprised of UL Listed and UL Recognized components. EMCP is UL Recognized.

CIRCUIT BREAKER
Output circuit breaker is 100% rated and UL Listed.

TESTING
All UL Listed sets are designed and rigorously tested in accordance with UL Standard for Safety, UL 2200.

LABELING
Labeling meets UL requirements.

MECHANICAL OPTIONS
Mechanical options do not require UL Listing and, therefore, are not affected. The exceptions to this are:

FUEL TANKS
If a fuel tank is ordered with the unit, it must be UL Listed. Two versions are available: 24 hour integral (FCUL2) and 24/48 hour sub-base (FSBT)

ENCLOSURES
Factory installed enclosures meet UL requirements. Weatherproof and sound attenuated versions are available.

ELECTRICAL OPTIONS
The table below shows electrical options that meet UL requirements:

EOS	Lube Oil Sump Heater
WCA1	Low Coolant Level Shutdown
WSS1	Low Coolant Temperature Alarm
AH1H	Anti-Condensation Heater
WHH	Coolant Heater
GOVES	Electronic Governor (Fully Adjustable)
FSS1	Critical Low Fuel Level Shutdown
FSS2	Low Fuel Level Alarm
FSSS	Critical High Fuel Alarm
PBCSUL	UL Listed Battery Charger
PBC10NU	NFPA Battery Charger, UL Listed

UL Listing is available on all diesel fuelled generator sets up to 17S kW at 60 Hz, 600 vac maximum.

LEHE0410-01 (11-

BUILT FOR IT.

www.Cat.com/electricpower
©2018 Caterpillar All rights reserved. Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. The International System of Units (SI) is used in this publication. CAT, CATERPILLAR, their respective logos, ADEM, S•O•S, "BUILT FOR IT", "Caterpillar Yellow", the "Power Edge" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

Caterpillar: Confidential Green

VMC GROUP
THE POWER OF TOGETHER™

CATERPILLAR®

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE
SEISMIC DESIGN OF NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND SYSTEMS

IBC CERTIFIED VMC GROUP

Certification No.

VMA-53383-01C (Revision 0)

Expiration Date: 7/31/2023

Certification Parameters:

The nonstructural products (mechanical and/or electrical components) listed on this certificate are CERTIFIED[1] FOR SEISMIC APPLICATIONS in accordance with the following building code[2] releases.

IBC 2018, 2015, 2012, 2009

The following model designations, options, and accessories are included in this certification. Reference report number VMA-53383-01 as issued by The VMC Group for a complete list of certified models, included accessories/options, and certified installation methods.

Caterpillar; Diesel Gensets
i6 GC Models; 250 kW - 600 kW

The above referenced equipment is **APPROVED** for seismic application when properly installed[3], used as intended, and contains a Seismic Certification Label referencing this Certificate of Compliance[4]. As limited by the tabulated values, below grade, grade, and roof-level installations, installations in essential facilities, for life safety applications, and/or of equipment containing hazardous contents are permitted and included in this certification with an Equipment Importance Factor assigned as I_p=1.5. The equipment is qualified by successful seismic shake table testing at the nationally recognized University of California Berkeley Pacific Earthquake Engineering Research Center under the witness of the ISO Accredited Product Certification Agency, the VMC Group.

Certified Seismic Design Levels			
Certified IBC	**Importance $I_p \leq 1.5$** Soil Classes A-E Risk Categories I-IV Design Categories A-F	z/h ≤ 1.0	z/h = 0.0
		$S_{DS} \leq 0.567$ g	$S_{DS} \leq 1.700$ g

Certified Seismic Installation Methods
Rigid Mounting From Unit Base To Rigid Structure

HEADQUARTERS
113 Main Street
Bloomingdale, NJ 07403
Phone: 973.838.1780
Toll Free: 800.569.8423
Fax: 973.492.8430

CALIFORNIA
180 Promenade Circle
Suite 300
Sacramento, CA 95834
Phone: 916.634.7771

TEXAS
11930 Brittmoore Park Drive
Houston, TX 77041
Phone: 713.466.0003
Fax: 713.466.1355

thevmcgroup.com

VMC GROUP
THE POWER OF TOGETHER™

CATERPILLAR®

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

SEISMIC DESIGN OF NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND SYSTEMS

Certified Product Table:

Model	Max Rating [kW]	On/Off Tank	Length [in.]	Width [in.]	Height [in.]	Max Weight [lbs]
D250GC	250	Off Tank	156	57	78	6,299
D300GC	300				64	5,750
D350GC	350		182	64	88	8,781
D400GC	400					8,856
D450GC	450					9,718
D500GC	500					9,826
D550GC	550		196	73		10,481
D600GC	600				86	10,664
D250GC	250	On tank	181	57	93	12,040
D300GC	300					12,234
D350GC	350		207	64	101	15,854
D400GC	400					15,929
D450GC	450		234		102	18,774
D500GC	500					17,950
D550GC	550		196	73	99	19,850
D600GC	600		261	74	103	22,077

Group	Type	S_{DS} (z/h=0)	S_{DS} (z/h=1)	A_{Flex-H}	A_{Rig-H}	A_{Flex-V}	A_{Rig-V}	F_p/W_p
Seismic	AC156	1.70	0.57	1.70	0.68	1.13	0.45	0.77

This certification includes the diesel generator set and included factory supplied options. This certification only covers accessoriesand options directly mounted to the genset. The genset and applicable options shall be installed per the manufacturer supplied seismic installationinstructions. For a list of certified configurations and options please directly contact the manufacturer. This certification excludes all non-factory supplied accessories and options, including but not limited toisolation/restraint devices, other electrical/mechanical components and all connections for electrical, fuel, heating or cooling fluid, or otherpipe/conduit connections and configurations not detailed in the above charts. Flexibility in the connections must be maintained as to not transmitload into the equipment. Design specials are outside the scope of this certification.

IBC® CERTIFIED VMC GROUP

VMA-53383-01C (Revision 0)
Issue Date: Wednesday, July 22, 2020
Revision Date: Wednesday, July 22, 2020
Expiration Date: Monday, July 31, 2023

CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE
SEISMIC DESIGN OF NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND SYSTEMS

Notes & Comments:

1. All equipment listed herein successfully passed the seismic acceptance criteria for shake testing non-structural components and systems as set forth in the ICC AC-156. The Test Response Spectrum (TRS) enveloped the Required Response Spectrum (RRS) for all units tested. The units cited in this certification were representative sample(s) of a contingent of models and all remained captive and structurally sound after the seismic shake simulation. The units also remained functionally operational after the simulation testing as functional testing was completed by the equipment manufacturer before and after the seismic simulations. Although a seismic qualified unit inherently contains some wind resisting capacity, that capacity is undetermined and is excluded from this certification. Snow/Ice loads have been neglected and thus limit the unit to be installed both indoors (covered by an independent protective structure) and out of doors (exposed to accumulating snow/ice) for ground snow loads no greater than 30 psf for all applications.

2. The following building codes are addressed under this certification:
   IBC 2018 referencing ASCE7-16 and ICC-ES AC-156
   IBC 2015 referencing ASCE7-10 and ICC-ES AC-156
   IBC 2012 referencing ASCE7-10 and ICC-ES AC-156
   IBC 2009 referencing ASCE7-05 and ICC-ES AC-156

3. Refer to the manufacturer supplied installation drawings for anchor requirements and mounting considerations for seismic applications. Required anchor locations, size, style, and load capacities (tension and shear) may be specified on the installation drawings or specified by a 3rd party. Mounting requirement details such as anchor brand, type, embedment depth, edge spacing, anchor-to-anchor spacing, concrete strength, special inspection, wall design, and attachment to non-building structures must be outlined and approved by the Engineer of Record for the project or building. Structural walls, structural floors, and housekeeping pads must also be seismically designed and approved by the project or building Structural Engineer of Record to withstand the seismic anchor loads as defined on the installation drawings. The installing contractor is responsible for ensuring the proper installation of all anchors and mounting hardware.

4. For this certificate and certification to remain valid, this certificate must correspond to the "Seismic Certification Label" found affixed to the unit by the factory. The label ensures the manufacturer built the unit in conformance to the IBC seismic design criteria set forth by the Certified Seismic Qualification Agency, the VMC Group, and meets the seismic design levels claimed by this certificate.

5. Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing connections to the equipment must be flexibly attached as to not transfer load through the connection. The structural integrity of any conduit, cable trays, piping, ductwork and/or flexible connections is the responsibility of others. This certification does not guarantee the equipment will remain compliant to NEMA, IP, UL, or CSA standards after a seismic event.

6. This certificate applies to units manufactured at:
   1720 West Kingsbury Street, Seguin, TX 78155

7. This certification follows the VMC Group's ISO-17065 Scheme.

John P. Giuliano, PE
President, VMC Group

VMA-53383-01C (Revision 0)
Issue Date: Wednesday, July 22, 2020
Revision Date: Wednesday, July 22, 2020
Expiration Date: Monday, July 31, 2023

Cat® Extended Service Coverage (ESC)

4 EASY STEPS TO PROTECT YOUR STANDBY GENERATOR SET

5 year Gold Coverage

Your operation depends on reliable power. That's why you trust Cat® generator sets. With Cat Financial Insurance Services, you get service coverage that's just as durable and long-lasting. ESC for **new, used and overhauled standby generator sets** protects your investment and your peace of mind. Choosing coverage is as easy as following these four steps.

1 CHOOSE FROM A VARIETY OF COVERAGE OPTIONS

First, extend your protection beyond the original factory warranty by choosing the coverage option that's right for your situation.

NEW ESC	Coverage for electric power standby generator sets is available in 36- to 120- month terms, in 12-month increments, if purchased before the end of your original factory warranty.
ADVANTAGE ESC	Coverage is available after the end of the original factory warranty in 12- to 60-month terms, in 12-month increments, and before the first overhaul. Your standby generator set is eligible if: > It's less than four years from delivery date and accumulated less than 3,000 hours total use since new, OR > It's less than 10 years from build date AND currently enrolled in New ESC or Advantage ESC, OR > It's less than 10 years from build date AND currently covered by an authroized Cat dealer Customer Support Agreement (CSA), OR > It passes a qualifying inspection performed by an authorized Cat dealer in accordance with the Advantage Certification Inspection Worksheet.
OVERHAUL PROTECTION FOR COMMERCIAL (OPC) ESC	Coverage is available in 12- to 60- month terms, in 12-month increments. Your standby generator set is eligible once a qualifying overhaul has been completed by an authorized Cat dealer in accordance with the OPC Certification Worksheet.

2 IDENTIFY YOUR COVERAGE NEEDS

Next, identify the age and current operating hours of your generator set since delivery or overhaul. Then calculate your annual hours of use to choose the best ESC coverage terms to fit your needs.

3 SELECT YOUR COVERAGE LEVEL

Then, choose from our Silver, Gold, Platinum or Platinum Plus coverage levels to get the exact amount of protection you need based on the Coverage Matrix[1] and Additional Allowances.

COVERAGE MATRIX[1]

Cooling System	Silver	Gold	Platinum[2]
Thermostat Housing	✓	✓	✓
Water Manifold Housing	✓	✓	✓
Jacket Water Precooler	✓	✓	✓
Jacket Water Pump		✓	✓
Thermostat			✓
Radiator & Fan			✓
Fuel System			
Steel Fuel Lines	✓	✓	✓
Fuel Shutoff Solenoid	✓	✓	✓
Fuel Injectors		✓	✓
Fuel Transfer Pump & Housing			✓
Fuel Priming Pump			✓
Fuel Transfer Pump			✓
Lubrication System			
Pan, Pump Cooler	✓	✓	✓
Crankcase Breather			✓
Engine Oil Pump Drive			✓
Prelubrication Pump			✓
Electric System			
Control Module (ECM)	✓	✓	✓
Sensors: All Engine Sensors	✓	✓	✓
Wiring Harness & Connectors			✓
Starter			✓
Engine Alternator			✓
Alternator End			
Alternator, including Rotor, Stator and Exciter	✓	✓	✓
Generator Controls		✓	✓
Power Center		✓	✓

Air Induction & Exhaust	Silver	Gold	Platinum[2]
Exhaust Manifolds, Studs & Gaskets	✓	✓	✓
Inlet Air Heater Relay	✓	✓	✓
Intake Manifold	✓	✓	✓
Turbocharger(s)		✓	✓
Air-to-Air Aftercooler Cores			✓
Muffler/Exhaust System			✓
Exhaust Guards			✓
Diesel Oxydation Catalyst			✓
Short Block			
Cylinder Block Casting	✓	✓	✓
Crankshaft	✓	✓	✓
Connecting Rod Assembly	✓	✓	✓
Piston, Wrist Pin, Retainer Clip & Piston Rings	✓	✓	✓
Idler and Timing Gears			✓
Accessory Drive			✓
Cylinder Head			
Cylinder Head	✓	✓	✓
Intake & Exhaust Valves	✓	✓	✓
Valve Mechanism	✓	✓	✓
Camshaft, Camshaft Bearings, Key, Gear	✓	✓	✓
Front & Rear Covers			
Front Cover/Plate/Housing/Gears & Gaskets	✓	✓	✓
Vibration Damper	✓	✓	✓
Flywheel Housing & Gasket	✓	✓	✓
Crankshaft Front & Rear Seal			✓
Optional Aftertreatment Coverage			
Diesel Particulate Filter	✓[3]	✓[3]	✓[3]
Selective Catalytic Reduction	✓[3]	✓[3]	✓[3]

1 This Coverage Matrix is for reference only and does not represent a complete list of covered components. For additional information, please reference the appropriate ESC contract.
2 Platinum level coverage covers all as-shipped consist from the factory with Cat part numbers. Some exclusions may apply.
3 Recent emissions-compliant engines or generator sets may be equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) and/or a Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR). We offer coverage at an additional costs on these emissions components. Silver, Gold, Platinum or Platinum Plus base level coverage is required.

Platinum Plus coverage covers all components covered by Platinum coverage plus additional Cat components, having a Cat part number, installed by an authorized dealer and approved using the Platinum Plus Additional Coverage Component List and Approval Verification form.

ADDITIONAL ALLOWANCES

	Travel/Mileage Limitations		Emergency Freight	Rental[5]		Crane & Rigging[6]	Overtime
Engine Displacement[4]	Silver, Gold, Platinum	Platinum Plus Only	All Coverage Levels	Platinum Only	Platinum Plus Only	Platinum Plus Only	Platinum Plus Only
Up to 4 liters	2 hr/100 mi	10 hr/500 mi	$500	$2,500	$5,000	$1,000	$1,500
Over 4 liters up to 7.5 liters	4 hr/200 mi	10 hr/500 mi	$500	$5,000	$10,000	$1,000	$1,500
Over 7.5 liters up to 34 liters	8 hr/320 mi	10 hr/500 mi	$500	$10,000	$20,000	$5,000	$1,500
Over 34 liters	8 hr/320 mi	10 hr/500 mi	$500	$15,000	$40,000	$12,500	$1,500

4 Please refer to the generator set spec sheets for particular engine displacement.
5 Allowance is granted if covered failure repairs cannot be completed within 96 hours (for Platinum) or 48 hours (for Platinum Plus) of the authorized dealer technician's initial visit.
6 Allowance is granted if covered failure repairs cannot be completed within 48 hours of the authorized dealer technician's initial visit.

4 PURCHASE AND REGISTER YOUR ESC

Finally, work with your local Cat dealer to complete the process—and get the protection and peace of mind you deserve.

This is a brief description of ESC. It is subject to change without notice. In case of conflict, the ESC contract will govern.

PEHJ0380 ©2014 Caterpillar | All Rights Reserved

CAT, CATERPILLAR, BUILT FOR IT, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Yellow," and the "Power Edge" trade dress, as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

CAT Financial

Effective with sales to the first user on or after August 1, 2018

CATERPILLAR LIMITED WARRANTY

Industrial, Petroleum, Locomotive, and Agriculture Engine Products and Electric Power Generation Products

Worldwide

Caterpillar Inc. or any of its subsidiaries ("Caterpillar") warrants new and remanufactured engines and new and rebuild electric power generation products sold by it (including any products of other manufacturers packaged and sold by Caterpillar), to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

This warranty does not apply engines sold for use in on-highway vehicle or marine applications; engines in machines manufactured by or for Caterpillar; C175, 3500 and 3600 series engines used in locomotive applications; 3000 Family engines, C0.5 through C4.4 and ACERT™ (C6.6, C7, C7.1, C9, C9.3, C11, C13, C15, C18, C27, and C32) engines used in industrial, mobile agriculture and locomotive applications; or Cat® batteries; or Electric Power Generation Products manufactured or assembled in India. These products are covered by other Caterpillar warranties.

This warranty is subject to the following:

Warranty Period

- For industrial engines, engines in a petroleum applications or Petroleum Power Systems (excluding petroleum fire pump application), or engines in a Locomotive application, or Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) systems, the warranty period is 12 months after date of delivery to the first user.
- For engines used in petroleum fire pump and mobile agriculture applications the warranty period is 24 months after date of delivery to the first user.
- For controls only (EPIC), configurable and custom switchgear products, and automatic transfer switch products, the warranty period is 24 months after date of delivery to the first user.
- For new CG132, CG170 and CG260 series power generation products the warranty period is 24 months after date of delivery to first user, but not to exceed 36 months from shipment from the Caterpillar place of manufacture.
- For electric power generation products other than CG132, CG170 and CG260 series in prime or continuous applications the warranty period is 12 months. For standby applications the warranty period is 24 months/1000 hours. For emergency standby applications the warranty period is 24 months/400 hours. All terms begin after date of delivery to the first user.
- For Caterpillar rebuild electric power generation products the warranty period is 12 months, but not to exceed 24 months from shipment of rebuilt electric power generation product from Caterpillar.
- For all other applications the warranty period is 12 months after date of delivery to the first user.

Caterpillar Responsibilities

If a defect in material or workmanship is found during the warranty period, Caterpillar will, during normal working hours and at a place of business of a Cat dealer or other source approved by Caterpillar:

- Provide (at Caterpillar's choice) new, Remanufactured, or Caterpillar approved repaired parts or assembled components needed to correct the defect.

Note: New, remanufactured, or Caterpillar approved repaired parts or assembled components provided under the terms of this warranty are warranted for the remainder of the warranty period applicable to the product in which installed as if such parts were original components of that product. Items replaced under this warranty become the property of Caterpillar.

- Replace lubricating oil, filters, coolant, and other service items made unusable by the defect.
- Provide reasonable and customary labor needed to correct the defect, including labor to disconnect the product from and reconnect the product to its attached equipment, mounting, and support systems, if required.

For new 3114, 3116, and 3126 engines and, new and Caterpillar rebuild electric power generation products (which includes the following: any new products of other manufacturers packaged and sold by Caterpillar)

- Provide travel labor, up to four hours round trip, if in the opinion of Caterpillar, the product cannot reasonably be transported to a place of business of a Cat dealer or other source approved by Caterpillar (travel labor in excess of four hours round trip, and any meals, mileage, lodging, etc. is the user's responsibility).

For all other products:

- Provide reasonable travel expenses for authorized mechanics, including meals, mileage, and lodging, when Caterpillar chooses to make the repair on-site.

User Responsibilities

The user is responsible for:

- Providing proof of the delivery date to the first user.
- Labor costs, except as stated under "Caterpillar Responsibilities," including costs beyond those required to disconnect the product from and reconnect the product to its attached equipment, mounting, and support systems.
- Travel or transporting costs, except as stated under "Caterpillar Responsibilities."
- Premium or overtime labor costs.
- Parts shipping charges in excess of those that are usual and customary.
- Local taxes, if applicable.
- Costs to investigate complaints, unless the problem is caused by a defect in Caterpillar material or workmanship.
- Giving timely notice of a warrantable failure and promptly making the product available for repair.
- Performance of the required maintenance (including use of proper fuel, oil, lubricants, and coolant) and items replaced due to normal wear and tear.
- Allowing Caterpillar access to all electronically stored data.

Limitations

Caterpillar is not responsible for:

- Failures resulting from any use or installation that Caterpillar judges improper.
- Failures resulting from attachments, accessory items, and parts not sold or approved by Caterpillar.
- Failures resulting from abuse, neglect, and/or improper repair.
- Failures resulting from user's delay in making the product available after being notified of a potential product problem.
- Failures resulting from unauthorized repairs or adjustments, and unauthorized fuel setting changes.
- Damage to parts, fixtures, housings, attachments, and accessory items that are not part of the engine, Cat Selective Catalytic Reduction System or electric power generation product (including any products of other manufacturers packaged and sold by Caterpillar).
- Repair of components sold by Caterpillar that is warranted directly to the user by their respective manufacturer. Depending on type of application, certain exclusions may apply. Consult your Cat dealer for more information.

(Continued on reverse side…)

This warranty covers every major component of the products. Claims under this warranty should be submitted to a place of business of a Cat dealer or other source approved by Caterpillar. For further information concerning either the location to submit claims or Caterpillar as the issuer of this warranty, write Caterpillar Inc., 100 N. E. Adams St., Peoria, IL USA 61629.

Caterpillar's obligations under this Limited Warranty are subject to, and shall not apply in contravention of, the laws, rules, regulations, directives, ordinances, orders, or statutes of the United States, or of any other applicable jurisdiction, without recourse or liability with respect to Caterpillar.

A) For products operating outside of Australia, Fiji, Nauru, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands and Tahiti, the following is applicable:

NEITHER THE FOREGOING EXPRESS WARRANTY NOR ANY OTHER WARRANTY BY CATERPILLAR, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, IS APPLICABLE TO ANY ITEM CATERPILLAR SELLS THAT IS WARRANTED DIRECTLY TO THE USER BY ITS MANUFACTURER.

THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY IN LIEU OF ANY OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, EXCEPT CATERPILLAR EMISSION-RELATED COMPONENTS WARRANTIES FOR NEW ENGINES, WHERE APPLICABLE. REMEDIES UNDER THIS WARRANTY ARE LIMITED TO THE PROVISION OF MATERIAL AND SERVICES, AS SPECIFIED HEREIN.

CATERPILLAR IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

CATERPILLAR EXCLUDES ALL LIABILITY FOR OR ARISING FROM ANY NEGLIGENCE ON ITS PART OR ON THE PART OF ANY OF ITS EMPLOYEES, AGENTS OR REPRESENTATIVES IN RESPECT OF THE MANUFACTURE OR SUPPLY OF GOODS OR THE PROVISION OF SERVICES RELATING TO THE GOODS.

IF OTHERWISE APPLICABLE, THE VIENNA CONVENTION ON CONTRACTS FOR THE INTERNATIONAL SALE OF GOODS IS EXCLUDED IN ITS ENTIRETY.

For personal or family use engines or electric power generation products, operating in the USA, its territories and possessions, some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty may last nor allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages. Therefore, the previously expressed exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary by jurisdiction. To find the location of the nearest Cat dealer or other authorized repair facility, call (309) 675-1000. If you have questions concerning this warranty or its applications, call or write:

In USA and Canada: Caterpillar Inc, 100 N.E. Adams St., Peoria, IL USA 61629, Attention: Customer Service Manager, Telephone 1 (309) 675-1000, outside the USA and Canada: Contact your Cat dealer.

B) For products operating in Australia, Fiji, Nauru, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands and Tahiti, the following is applicable:

T**HIS WARRANTY IS IN ADDITION TO WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS IMPLIED BY STATUTE AND OTHER STATUTORY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS THAT BY ANY APPLICABLE LAW CANNOT BE EXCLUDED, RESTRICTED OR MODIFIED ("MANDATORY RIGHTS"). ALL OTHER WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED (BY STATUTE OR OTHERWISE), ARE EXCLUDED. WITHOUT LIMITING THE FOREGOING PROVISIONS OF THIS PARAGRAPH, WHERE A PRODUCT IS SUPPLIED FOR BUSINESS PURPOSES, THE CONSUMER GUARANTEES UNDER THE CONSUMER GUARANTEES ACT 1993 (NZ) WILL NOT APPLY.**

NEITHER THIS WARRANTY NOR ANY OTHER CONDITION OR WARRANTY BY CATERPILLAR, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED (SUBJECT ONLY TO THE MANDATORY RIGHTS), IS APPLICABLE TO ANY ITEM CATERPILLAR SELLS THAT IS WARRANTED DIRECTLY TO THE USER BY ITS MANUFACTURER.

IF THE MANDATORY RIGHTS MAKE CATERPILLAR LIABLE IN CONNECTION WITH SERVICES OR GOODS, THEN TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER THE MANDATORY RIGHTS, THAT LIABILITY SHALL BE LIMITED AT CATERPILLAR'S OPTION TO (a) IN THE CASE OF SERVICES, THE SUPPLY OF THE SERVICES AGAIN OR THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF HAVING THE SERVICES SUPPLIED AGAIN AND (b) IN THE CASE OF GOODS, THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE GOODS, THE SUPPLY OF EQUIVALENT GOODS, THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF SUCH REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OR THE ACQUISITION OF EQUIVALENT GOODS.

CATERPILLAR EXCLUDES ALL LIABILITY FOR OR ARISING FROM ANY NEGLIGENCE ON ITS PART OR ON THE PART OF ANY OF ITS EMPLOYEES, AGENTS OR REPRESENTATIVES IN RESPECT OF THE MANUFACTURE OR SUPPLY OF GOODS OR THE PROVISION OF SERVICES RELATING TO THE GOODS.

CATERPILLAR IS NOT LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES UNLESS IMPOSED UNDER MANDATORY RIGHTS.

IF OTHERWISE APPLICABLE, THE VIENNA CONVENTION ON CONTRACTS FOR THE INTERNATIONAL SALE OF GOODS IS EXCLUDED IN ITS ENTIRETY.

C) For products supplied in Australia:

IF THE PRODUCTS TO WHICH THIS WARRANTY APPLIES ARE:

- **I. PRODUCTS OF A KIND ORDINARILY ACQUIRED FOR PERSONAL, DOMESTIC OR HOUSEHOLD USE OR CONSUMPTION; OR**
- **II. PRODUCTS THAT COST AUD 40,000 OR LESS,**

WHERE THOSE PRODUCTS WERE NOT ACQUIRED FOR THE PURPOSE OF RE-SUPPLY OR FOR THE PURPOSE OF USING THEM UP OR TRANSFORMING THEM IN THE COURSE OF PRODUCTION OR MANUFACTURE OR IN THE COURSE OF REPAIRING OTHER GOODS OR FIXTURES, THEN THIS SECTION C APPLIES.

THE FOLLOWING MANDATORY TEXT IS INCLUDED PURSUANT TO THE AUSTRALIAN CONSUMER LAW AND INCLUDES REFERENCES TO RIGHTS THE USER MAY HAVE AGAINST THE DIRECT SUPPLIER OF THE PRODUCTS: OUR GOODS COME WITH GUARANTEES THAT CANNOT BE EXCLUDED UNDER THE AUSTRALIAN CONSUMER LAW. YOU ARE ENTITLED TO A REPLACEMENT OR REFUND FOR A MAJOR FAILURE AND COMPENSATION FOR ANY OTHER REASONABLY FORESEEABLE LOSS OR DAMAGE. YOU ARE ALSO ENTITLED TO HAVE THE GOODS REPAIRED OR REPLACED IF THE GOODS FAIL TO BE OF ACCEPTABLE QUALITY AND THE FAILURE DOES NOT AMOUNT TO A MAJOR FAILURE. THE INCLUSION OF THIS TEXT DOES NOT CONSTITUTE ANY REPRESENTATION OR ACCEPTANCE BY CATERPILLAR OF LIABILITY TO THE USER OR ANY OTHER PERSON IN ADDITION TO THAT WHICH CATERPILLAR MAY HAVE UNDER THE AUSTRALIAN CONSUMER LAW.

TO THE EXTENT THE PRODUCTS FALL WITHIN THIS SECTION C BUT ARE NOT OF A KIND ORDINARILY ACQUIRED FOR PERSONAL, DOMESTIC OR HOUSEHOLD USE OR CONSUMPTION, CATERPILLAR LIMITS ITS LIABILITY TO THE EXTENT IT IS PERMITTED TO DO SO UNDER THE AUSTRALIAN CONSUMER LAW TO, AT ITS OPTION, THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE PRODUCTS, THE SUPPLY OF EQUIVALENT PRODUCTS, OR THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF SUCH REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OR THE ACQUISITION OF EQUIVALENT PRODUCTS.

THE WARRANTY SET OUT IN THIS DOCUMENT IS GIVEN BY CATERPILLAR INC. OR ANY OF ITS SUBSIDIARIES, 100 N. E. ADAMS ST, PEORIA, IL USA 61629, TELEPHONE 1 309 675 1000, THE USER IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL COSTS ASSOCIATED WITH MAKING A CLAIM UNDER THE WARRANTY SET OUT IN THIS DOCUMENT, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY STATED OTHERWISE IN THIS DOCUMENT, AND THE USER IS REFERRED TO THE BALANCE OF THE DOCUMENT TERMS CONCERNING CLAIM PROCEDURES, CATERPILLAR RESPONSIBILITIES AND USER RESPONSIBILITIES.

TO THE EXTENT PERMISSIBLE BY LAW, THE TERMS SET OUT IN THE REMAINDER OF THIS WARRANTY DOCUMENT (INCLUDING SECTION B) CONTINUE TO APPLY TO PRODUCTS TO WHICH THIS SECTION C APPLIES.

©2018 Caterpillar All Rights Reserved.
CAT, CATERPILLAR, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Yellow" the "Power Edge" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

CAT®

CITY OF CONCORD US 29

TRANSFER SWITCH SUBMITTAL

REVISION 00

JULY 20, 2022

www.ascopower.com | customercare@ascopower.com
800.800.ASCO | 160 Park Avenue, Florham Park NJ 07932

Internal

City of Concord US 29

Reference Quote: E1-22-471906-2-1
Sales Order: N/A

TRANSFER SWITCH DETAILS									
ATS NAME	QTY	AMPS / POLES (VOLTS)	BYPASS	TRANSITION TYPE	CATALOG NUMBER	ACCESSORIES	OUTLINE DRAWING	WIRING DIAGRAM	BOM NUMBER
	1	0600 / 3 (480V)	N/A	OPEN	J03ATSA30600NGXL	11BE,18RX	1001393-002	978745	1288602

Transfer Switch Withstand and Closing Ratings																			
				300, 4000 & 7000 Series							4000 & 7000 Series				7000 Series				
ATS NAME	FRAME SIZE	SWITCH RATING AMPS		CURRENT LIMITING FUSES				SPECIFIC BREAKER			TIME BASED				Short Time Ratings[3] (sec)				
															480V Max.				600V Max.			
		Transfer Switches	Bypass Switches	480V Max.	480V Max.	MAX SIZE, A	CLASS	240V Max.	480V Max.	600V Max.	Time(Sec)	240V Max.	480V Max.	600V Max.	.13	.2	.3	.5	.1	.13	.3	.5
	J	600	600	200kA	200kA	800	L	65kA	50kA	42kA	0.05	65kA	45kA[5]	35kA	7.5kA[9]	-	-					
						600	J															

NOTES:
1) All WCR values indicated are tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 1008, 7th Edition.
2) Application requirements may permit higher WCR for certain switch sizes.
3) Short Time ratings are provided for applications involving circuit breakers that utilize trip delay settings for system selective coordination
5) Switches utilizing overlapping neutral (code "C") have 35kA, 0.050 Sec time-based rating at 480V Max
9) Short Time Rating applies to 600A Bypass switch only, the 600A Transfer Switch does not have a Short Time Rating

City of Concord US 29

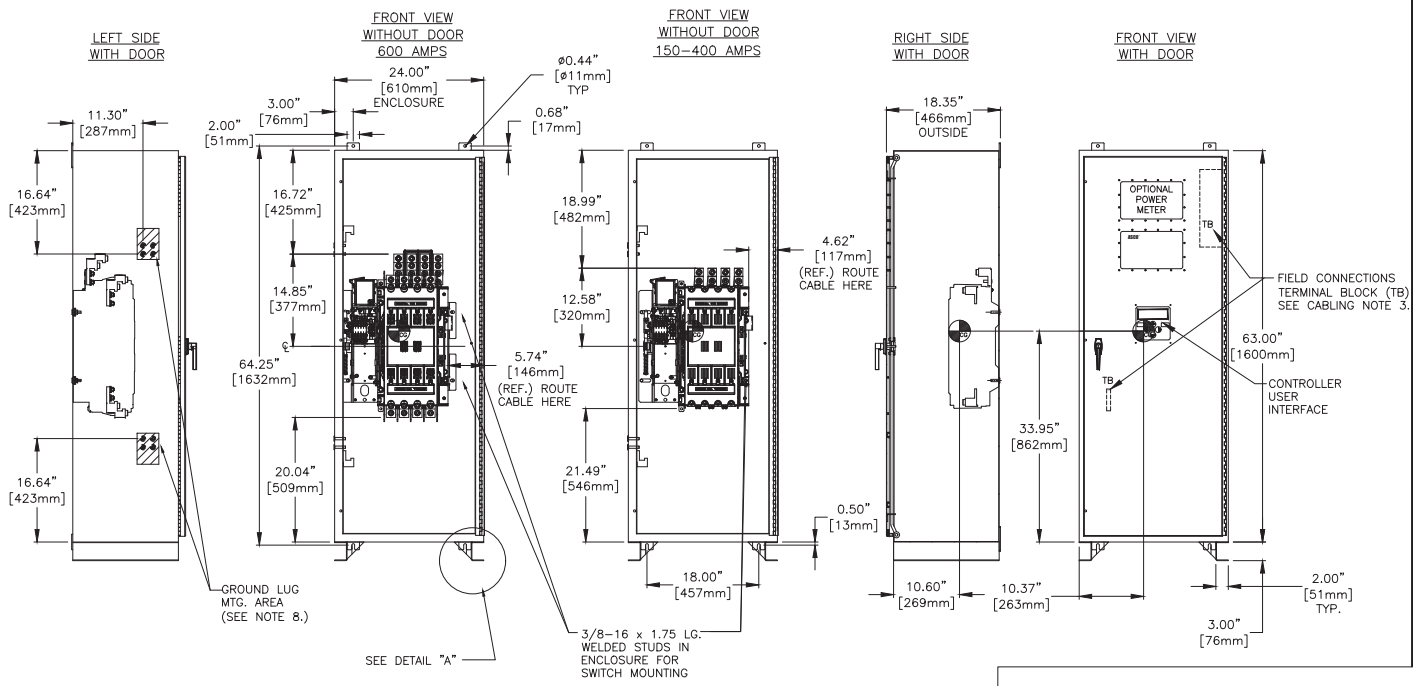
Transfer Switch Details

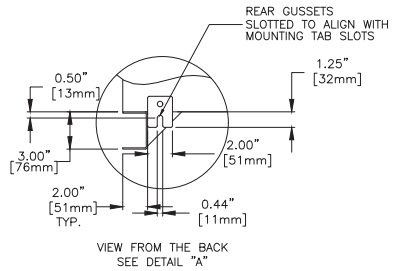
#1	ATS	AMPS: 0600	QTY: 1

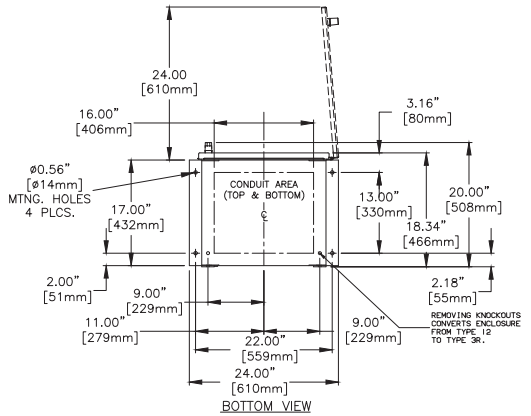
Product	:	Series 300	Catalog Number	:	J03ATSA30600NGXL
Service Voltage / Hz	:	480V/60Hz	Optional Accessories	:	11BE,18RX
Bypass Isolation	:	Not Applicable	Product Description	:	300 Series, Automatic Open Transition Transfer Switch
No. of Switched Poles	:	3	Neutral Configuration	:	Solid [A]
Withstand Rating: Frame = J, Switch Rating = 0600, Series = 300	:	See WCR table below	No. of Cables & Lug Size	:	2, 1/0 AWG to 600 MCM
Enclosure	:	12(L)-UL Type 12 Enclosure	Service	:	Three Phase, 4-wire
Extended Warranty	:	Not Included	Markings	:	

#	ACCESSORY DESCRIPTIONS	
	Accessory Code	Description
1	11BE	Adds the following features to the Group G controller: (1) Serial RS-485 Modbus Communications (2) Multi-Schedule Engine Exerciser (3) a 300 Entry Event Log and (4) a common alarm output function. When applied on 3-phase systems it also enables: (1) 3-Phase Emergency Source VLL sensing (2) Phase Rotation Monitoring (3) Emergency Source VLL Unbalance Monitoring.
2	18RX	REX (Relay Expansion Module) with Normal and Emergency available output contacts (18B & 18G)

OUTLINE FOR ASCO® 300 SERIES 600 AMPERE "J" FRAME (3ATS,3NTS), 150-600 AMPERE (3ADTS,3NDTS) FRONT CONNECTED TRANSFER SWITCHES TYPE 3R/12 ENCLOSURE







GENERAL NOTES

1. TYPE 3R–12 ENCLOSURE. FREE STANDING. FLOOR MOUNTED OR WALL MOUNTED. 14 GAUGE CONSTRUCTION.
2. NEC STANDARD GAUGE PAN TYPE DOOR WITH LOCKABLE HANDLE.
3. FINISH: ANSI 61 GRAY, POLYESTER POWDER STANDARD. OTHER ANSI COLORS AVAILABLE CONSULT FACTORY UL RECOGNIZED.
4. RECOMMENDED CLEARANCES: FRONT: 24.00" [610mm]
5. A 20% RATED GROUND BUS IS PROVIDED.
6. UNIT IS DESIGNED FOR COMBINATION TOP AND BOTTOM CABLE ENTRY.
7. A FULL RATED NEUTRAL CONNECTION FOR EACH SOURCE AND THE LOAD IS OPTIONAL. WHEN PROVIDED IT IS IN ONE OF THE FOLLOWING FORMATS AS SPECIFIED BY THE CATALOG NO. NEUTRAL TYPE;
   A. SOLID (COPPER BUS) NEUTRAL FOR 150–400A ADTS/NDTS AND SOLID NEUTRAL TERMINAL ASSEMBLY (NTA) FOR 260–400A ATS/NTS.
   B. SWITCHED NEUTRAL POLE
8. CG CENTER OF GRAVITY.

CABLING NOTES

1. ALL SIZES SUPPLIED STANDARD WITH MECHANICAL (SCREW TYPE) LUGS. (SEE AMP SIZE BELOW)
   A. LUG MATERIAL: ALUMINUM ALLOY 6061–T6 WITH ELECTRO TIN PLATED FINISH.
   B. SCREW MATERIAL: ALUMINUM ALLOY 6262–T9 WITH ELECTRO TIN PLATED FINISH.
   C. UL LISTED, CSA CERTIFIED.
   D. LUG SCREW TIGHTENING TORQUE PER UL 486B: 19 FT–LBS.
   E. SUITABLE WIRE BENDING SPACE IS PROVIDED. (SEE AMP SIZE BELOW)
2. GROUND LUGS ARE PROVIDED STANDARD AS FOLLOWS. (SEE AMP SIZE BELOW).
3. CUSTOMER TERMINAL BLOCKS:
   FOR ALL 300 SERIES 3ADTS, 3NDTS UNITS THE TB WILL BE MOUNTED ON THE UPPER RIGHT INSIDE OF ENCLOSURE. FOR 3ATS AND 3NTS UNITS TB WILL BE MOUNTED ON THE TRANSFER SWITCH FRAME AS INDICATED.

NOTES 150–400 AMP SWITCHES

1. SUPPLIED WITH STANDARD MECHANICAL (SCREW TYPE) LUGS ON THE NORMAL, EMERGENCY & LOAD BUS STABS. ONE (1) LUG PER PHASE AND NEUTRAL EACH SUITABLE FOR CONNECTION OF TWO (2) 1/0 –250MCM CU/AL CABLES OR ONE (1) #4 –600MCM CU/AL CABLE.
   A. SUITABLE WIRE BENDING SPACE IS PROVIDED FOR UP TO ONE (1) 600MCM CABLE PER TERMINAL PER NEC.
2. GROUND LUGS ARE PROVIDED STANDARD AS FOLLOWS; SIX (6) 1/0 –250MCM CU/AL CABLES OR THREE (3) #4 –600MCM CU/AL CABLE CONNECTIONS.

NOTES 600 AMP SWITCHES

1. SUPPLIED WITH STANDARD MECHANICAL (SCREW TYPE) LUGS ON THE NORMAL, EMERGENCY & LOAD BUS STABS. ONE (1) LUG PER PHASE AND NEUTRAL EACH SUITABLE FOR CONNECTION OF TWO (2) #2 –600MCM CU/AL CABLES.
   A. SUITABLE WIRE BENDING SPACE IS PROVIDED FOR UP TO TWO (2) 600MCM CABLE PER TERMINAL PER NEC.
2. GROUND LUGS ARE PROVIDED STANDARD AS FOLLOWS; SIX (6) #2 –600MCM CU/AL CABLE CONNECTIONS.

ATS SWITCH RATING (AMPS)	POLES	WEIGHTS LB (KG)
600	2	211 (96)
600	C2	N/A
600	3	215 (98)
600	C3	N/A
600	4	225 (102)

CTS/DTS SWITCH RATING (AMPS)	POLES	WEIGHTS LB (KG)
150–400	2	222 (101)
150–400	C2	N/A
150–400	3	228 (104)
150–400	C3	N/A
150–400	4	224 (102)
600	2	247 (112)
600	C2	N/A
600	3	234 (106)
600	C3	N/A
600	4	241 (109)

REV.	ECN NO.	BY	APP.	DATE
E	294689	TR	MM	3/24/22
	SEE ECN			
D	289439	TR	NS	05/07/21
	SEE ECN			
C	266871	TR	BK	5/2/17S
	SEE ECN			
B	263629	BK	TR	10/12/16
	SEE ECN			
A	249736	TR	WK	7/25/14
	SEE ECN			
—	245551	BK	BK	11/25/13
	ISSUED			

PROJECT NAME: REV. TO SHEET | ECN NO. | BY | APP. | DATE

COMPOSITE | OUTLINE

300 SERIES TS "J"

J3ATS J3NTS 600A, J3ADTS, J3NDTS 150–600 AMP TYPE 3R/12

THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	DJB	11/25/13
CHECKED	BK	11/25/13
PROJECT APPROVAL	BK	11/25/13
FINAL APPROVAL		

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-11-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-11-005. ASSEM. REF. NO.

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P. FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING

SCALE NONE | SIZE DS

DWG. NO. 1001393–002

DRAWING REV. E | ECN NO. 294689 | SHEET 1 OF 1

THREE PHASE WIRING FOR ASCO® 300 SERIES TRANSFER SWITCHES (J3ATS/J3NTS) 600 AMPERES WITH GROUP G CONTROLS

GENERAL INFORMATION

THIS WIRING APPLIES TO 300 SERIES TRANSFER SWITCHES THAT UTILIZE THE "J" FRAME POWER TRANSFER SWITCH RATED 600 AMPERES.

THE GROUP G CONTROLLER PROVIDES EITHER AUTOMATIC (J3ATS) OR NON-AUTOMATIC [MANUAL] (J3NTS) OPERATION BASED ON ITS FACTORY SETTING ACCORDING TO THE CUSTOMER ORDER REQUIREMENTS.

THE TYPE OF TRANSFER SWITCH PROVIDED CAN BE DETERMINED FROM THE PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS LOCATED ON BOTH THE POWER TRANSFER SWITCH AND THE COVER OF THE GROUP G CONTROLLER.

ALL OPERATIONAL SETTINGS AND SEQUENCES OF THE GROUP G CONTROLLER AND ITS RELATED OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES (1UP, 18RX, 23G) ARE PROVIDED IN THE USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400.

INFORMATION FOR INSTALLATION AND TESTING OF THE TRANSFER SWITCH IS PROVIDED IN THE INSTALLATION MANUAL, ASCO 3ATS, 3ADTS, 3NTS & 3NDTS, J-DESIGN 150-600 A TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-404.

ENGINE CONTROL CONTACTS

FEATURE 7 & FEATURE 8:
ONE SET OF FORM C CONTACTS "NR" (FEAT. 7 N/C, FEAT. 8 N/O) THAT CHANGE POSITION ON EXPIRATION OF THE FEATURE 1C, OVERRIDE MOMENTARY NORMAL SOURCE OUTAGES TIME DELAY, AND RESET ON EXPIRATION OF THE FEATURE 2E ENGINE COOLDOWN TIME DELAY.
AN AUXILIARY CONTACT THAT IS CLOSED WHEN THE TRANSFER SWITCH IS CONNECTED TO THE EMERGENCY SOURCE, IS CONNECTED ACROSS THE N/C CONTACT (FEATURE 7).

ADDITIONAL SET OF ENGINE STARTING CONTACTS ARE AVAILABLE ON THE GROUP G CONTROLLER WHEN THE FEATURE SETTING OF THE CONTROLLER OUTPUT CONTACTS "OP1" IS SET TO OPERATE AS "NR2".

ADDITIONAL OPTIONAL ENGINE STARTING CONTACTS "NR2" ARE AVAILABLE WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY. OUTPUT CONTACTS "OP2" AND/OR "OP3" PROVIDE THE ENGINE STARTING FUNCTION WHEN THE FEATURE SETTING OF EACH IS SET TO OPERATE AS "NR2".

CONTACTS ARE RATED 5 AMPS RESISTIVE AT 30 VDC MAXIMUM, 100 mA AT 5 VDC MINIMUM.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

LOAD DISCONNECT FEATURE

FEATURE 31: INCLUDES SUB-FEATURES 31F, 31G, 31M, 31N
A SET OF FORM C CONTACTS ARE PROVIDED ON THE GROUP G CONTROLLER AS "OP1". WHEN THE FEATURE SETTING OF "OP1" IS SET TO OPERATE THE CONTACTS AS "FEATURE 31", THE TIME DELAY SETTINGS OF THE SUB-FEATURES ARE AVAILABLE.

"OP1" CAN BE SET TO OPERATE TO PROVIDE THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS USING THE TIME DELAY SETTINGS ASSOCIATED WITH EACH SUB-FEATURE;

31F – NORMAL TO EMERGENCY PRE-TRANSFER SIGNAL
31G – EMERGENCY TO NORMAL PRE-TRANSFER SIGNAL
31M – NORMAL TO EMERGENCY POST-TRANSFER SIGNAL
31N – EMERGENCY TO NORMAL POST TRANSFER SIGNAL

THE "OP1" OUTPUT CONTACTS CHANGE POSITION FOLLOWING EACH OF THE ABOVE TIME DELAYS.

ADDITIONAL LOAD DISCONNECT CONTACTS: "FEATURE 31" ARE AVAILABLE WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY. OUTPUT CONTACTS "OP2 AND/OR "OP3" WILL PROVIDE LOAD DISCONNECT FUNCTIONS WHEN THE FEATURE SETTING OF EACH IS SET TO OPERATE AS "FEATURE 31".

ALL OUTPUT CONTACTS ("OP1", "OP2", "OP3") SET TO OPERATE AS "FEATURE 31", SHARE THE COMMON TIME DELAY SETTINGS OF SUB-FEATURES 31F, 31G, 31M, AND 31N.

CONTACTS ARE RATED 5 AMPS RESISTIVE AT 30 VDC MAXIMUM, 100 mA AT 5 VDC MINIMUM.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

INPHASE TRANSFER FEATURE FOR LOAD TRANSFER

INPHASE TRANSFER CONTROL INITIATES AN INPHASE TRANSFER OF LOADS BETWEEN LIVE SOURCES. THIS IS USED TO PREVENT NUISANCE TRIPPING OF DISTRIBUTION CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND POSSIBLE DAMAGE TO MECHANICAL LOADS ASSOCIATED WITH OUT OF PHASE TRANSFER.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

SOURCE AVAILABILITY SIGNALS

SIGNALS INDICATING THE AVAILABILITY OF THE NORMAL & EMERGENCY SOURCES IS PROVIDED WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY. OUTPUT CONTACTS "RL5" (EMERGENCY SOURCE AVAILABLE) AND "RL6" (NORMAL SOURCE AVAILABLE) CHANGE POSITION WHEN THE SOURCE IS ACCEPTABLE.

CONTACTS ARE RATED 5 AMPS RESISTIVE AT 30 VDC MAXIMUM, 100 mA AT 5 VDC MINIMUM.

COMMON ALARM & NOT IN AUTO SIGNALING FEATURES

A SET OF FORM C CONTACTS IS PROVIDED ON THE GROUP G CONTROLLER AS "OP1". THE FEATURE SETTING OF "OP1" CAN BE SET TO OPERATE THE CONTACTS AS A "NOT IN AUTO" SIGNAL.

WHEN "OP1" IS SET FOR "NOT IN AUTO", THE OUTPUT CONTACTS CHANGE POSITION WHEN THE TRANSFER IS BEING INHIBITED FROM TRANSFERRING TO THE EMERGENCY SOURCE (FEATURE 34B) OR THE TRANSFER SWITCH HAS BEEN SET FOR NON-AUTOMATIC (MANUAL) OPERATION.

WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 11BE "SOFTWARE BUNDLE" IS PART OF THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY, "OP1" MAY ALTERNATIVELY SET FOR A "COMMON ALARM" SIGNAL. THE OUTPUT CONTACTS CHANGE POSITION WHEN A "COMMON ALARM" IS NOT PRESENT AND RESET WHEN A "COMMON ALARM" CONDITION IS PRESENT. THE "COMMON ALARM" SIGNAL CONDITIONS ARE SELECTABLE.

ADDITIONAL "COMMON ALARM" AND "NOT IN AUTO" CONTACTS ARE AVAILABLE WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY. OUTPUT CONTACTS "OP2 AND/OR "OP3" WILL PROVIDE SIGNAL FUNCTIONS WHEN THE FEATURE SETTING OF EACH IS SET TO OPERATE AS "COMMON ALARM" OR "NOT IN AUTO".

CONTACTS ARE RATED 5 AMPS RESISTIVE AT 30 VDC MAXIMUM, 100 mA AT 5 VDC MINIMUM.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY COMPATIBILITY

USE OF AN EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY IS USEFUL WHEN REQUIRED TO EXTEND THE FOLLOWING CONTROLLER TIME DELAYS BEYOND 6 SECONDS;

FEATURE 1C – OVERRIDE MOMENTARY NORMAL SOURCE OUTAGES
FEATURE 1F – OVERRIDE MOMENTARY EMERGENCY SOURCE OUTAGES

AN EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY IS ALSO USEFUL WHEN THE TRANSFER SWITCH IS USED WITH COMMUNICATIONS FEATURES BY ENABLING THE CONTROLLER TO CONTINUE COMMUNICATING.

AN EXTERNAL POWER SOURCE MAY BE PROVIDED TO THE CONTROLLER, UNTIL THE NORMAL SOURCE OR EMERGENCY SOURCE IS AVAILABLE, BY USE OF;

– AN EXTERNAL 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY WITH ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE)
OR
– OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 1UP (UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY MODULE)

EXTERNAL 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY "1G":
AN EXTERNAL 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY MAY BE USED TO POWER THE CONTROLLER WHEN ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY. OUTPUT CONTACTS "OP2" WILL PROVIDE EXTERNAL 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY FUNCTIONALITY WHEN ITS FEATURE SETTING IS SET TO OPERATE AS "1G". ADDITIONALLY, JUMPERS MUST BE RECONFIGURED ON ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE) TO ENABLE THIS FUNCTION AS FOLLOWS;

REMOVE JUMPERS "J1" 1-2 & "J1" 3-4
CONNECT JUMPERS "J1" 5-7 & "J1" 6-8

THE OUTPUT CONTACTS CHANGE POSITION WHEN EITHER THE NORMAL SOURCE OR EMERGENCY SOURCE IS AVAILABLE AND RESET WHEN NEITHER SOURCE IS AVAILABLE. THE "OP2" N/C CONTACT SWITCHES CUSTOMER PROVIDED +24 VDC FROM THE EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY TO THE CONTROLLER.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

ACCESSORY 1UP (UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY):
WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 1UP IS INCLUDED IN THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY, THE CONTROLLER IS PROVIDED WITH LIMITED RESERVE POWER (APPROXIMATELY 3 MINUTES).

LOAD CURRENT METERING

WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 23GB IS PART OF THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY, THREE PHASE CURRENT MEASUREMENTS ARE AVAILABLE FOR DISPLAY ON THE GROUP G CONTROLLER.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR INFORMATION ON USE.

ADVANCED-FUNCTION SOFTWARE BUNDLE

WHEN OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 11BE IS PART OF THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY, AN ADVANCED-FUNCTION SOFTWARE BUNDLE IS AVAILABLE TO PERFORM THE FOLLOWING FUNCTIONS;

– SERIAL COMMUNICATIONS (RS-485)
– PROGRAMMABLE ENGINE EXERCISER
– EVENT LOG
– COMMON ALARM SIGNAL CAPABILITY ON GROUP G CONTROLLER "OP1" OUTPUT.

(3 PHASE SENSING ONLY)
– 3 PHASE EMERGENCY SOURCE SENSING.
– PHASE ROTATION SENSING.
– EMERGENCY VOLTAGE UNBALANCE SENSING.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR INFORMATION ON THESE FUNCTIONS.

NON-AUTOMATIC (MANUAL) OPERATION

TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLIES FACTORY SET FOR NON-AUTOMATIC OPERATION PROVIDE USER INITIATED, ELECTRICAL OPERATION OF THE TRANSFER SWITCH TO EITHER AVAILABLE SOURCE. THE TRANSFER SWITCH ASSEMBLY IS PHYSICALLY IDENTICAL TO THAT OF THE AUTOMATIC TYPE.

WHEN THE TRANSFER SWITCH IS SET FOR NON-AUTOMATIC OPERATION, A CUSTOMER PROVIDED SELECTOR SWITCH MAY BE USED TO OPERATE IT FROM A REMOTE LOCATION.

REMOTE CONTROL FEATURES

THE FOLLOWING CONTROL PANEL INPUTS PROVIDE REMOTE CONTROL FUNCTIONS FOR THE TRANSFER SWITCH. EACH FUNCTION CAN BE IMPLEMENTED BY THE CUSTOMER PROVIDING THE FORM OF CONTROL DESCRIBED. EACH CONTROL CONTACT MUST BE SUITABLE FOR A 5 VDC LOW ENERGY CIRCUIT.

EXTERNAL FEATURE 17: REMOTE TRANSFER TO EMERGENCY FEATURE (FOR AUTOMATIC TRANSFER TYPE ONLY) – REQUIRES A CUSTOMER SUPPLIED, NORMALLY CLOSED CONTACT. OPENING OF THE CONTACT CAUSES ENGINE START AND TRANSFER TO THE EMERGENCY SOURCE. RE-CLOSURE OF THE CONTACT ACTIVATES THE FEATURE 3A "RETRANSFER TO NORMAL (IF JUST TEST) TIME DELAY PRIOR TO RETRANSFER. IN THE EVENT THAT THE EMERGENCY SOURCE FAILS WHILE THE TRANSFER SWITCH IS CONNECTED TO EMERGENCY AND THE CUSTOMER SUPPLIED CONTACT IS OPEN, THE TRANSFER SWITCH WILL AUTOMATICALLY RETRANSFER TO THE NORMAL SOURCE.

EXTERNAL FEATURE 6B: REMOTE BYPASS OF RETRANSFER TO NORMAL TIME DELAY – REQUIRES A CUSTOMER SUPPLIED, NORMALLY CLOSED CONTACT. OPENING OF THE CONTACT BYPASSES FEATURE 3A RETRANSFER TO NORMAL DELAY IF ACTIVE.

REFER TO USER'S GUIDE, ASCO GROUP G CONTROLLER FOR AUTOMATIC & NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES, PART NUMBER 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

NOTES

1. SWITCH SHOWN DE-ENERGIZED CONNECTED TO NORMAL SOURCE.
2. DEVICE SYMBOLS AND DESIGNATIONS ARE IN ACCORDANCE WITH NEMA PUB. ICS 1, PART 1-101A.
3. ALL WIRING IS #16 AWG, TINNED, STRANDED COPPER UNLESS OTHERWISE INDICATED.
4. O INDICATES CUSTOMER CONNECTION POINTS.
5. ● INDICATES FACTORY CONNECTION POINTS.
6. CONNECTION POINTS THAT HAVE BOTH CUSTOMER CONNECTIONS AND FACTORY CONNECTIONS ARE SHOWN OPEN AS CUSTOMER CONNECTION POINTS.
7. THE TRANSFER UNIT IS MOUNTED ON THE BACK INSIDE SURFACE OF THE ENCLOSURE. THE CONTROL PANEL AND ANY OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES ARE MOUNTED ON THE INSIDE SURFACE OF THE DOOR.
8. AN OPERATOR'S MANUAL IS FURNISHED WITH EACH AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCH. REFER TO THIS PUBLICATION PRIOR TO INSTALLATION AND OPERATION OF THE SWITCH.
9. GROUND STRAP ON CONTROL PANEL IS AFFIXED TO CHASSIS (ENCLOSURE) AT LOWER LEFT CONTROL PANEL MOUNTING STUD.

CATALOG NUMBER SUFFIXES

TS FRAME	CATALOG TYPE	NEUTRAL TYPE	PHASE POLES	AMPS	VOLT CODE	CONTROLLER	OPTIONAL ACCESSORY	ENCLOSURE CODE
J	3ATS 3NTS	A B	3	600	C D F G H J K L M N P Q R	G	X BLANK FOR NONE	C F G H L M N P Q BLANK FOR OPEN TYPE

EXPLANATION OF CATALOG NUMBER CODES

NEUTRAL TYPE		VOLTAGE CODES 3 PHASE (3 OR 4 WIRE) 50 OR 60 Hz		ENCLOSURE CODES		
CODE	DESCRIPTION	CODE	NOMINAL VOLTAGE	CODE	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
A	SOLID			BLANK		OPEN TYPE (NO ENCLOSURE)
B	SWITCHING			C	1	GENERAL PURPOSE, INDOOR
		C	208			
		D	220	F	3R	OUTDOOR, RAINPROOF, SLEET & ICE RESISTANT
		E	230	G	4	INDOOR/OUTDOOR, WATERTIGHT & DUSTTIGHT
		F	240	H	4X	TYPE 4 PLUS CORROSION RESISTANCE (STAINLESS STEEL)
		G	277	L	12	INDOOR, INDUSTRIAL ENVIRONMENTS, OILTIGHT & DUSTTIGHT
		H	380			
		J	400			(SECURE ENCLOSURES)
		K	415			
		L	440	M	3R	OUTDOOR, RAINPROOF, SLEET & ICE RESISTANT
		M	460	N	4	INDOOR/OUTDOOR, WATERTIGHT & DUSTTIGHT
		N	480	P	4X	TYPE 4 PLUS CORROSION RESISTANCE (STAINLESS STEEL)
		P	550*	Q	12	INDOOR, INDUSTRIAL ENVIRONMENTS, OILTIGHT & DUSTTIGHT
		Q	575*			
		R	600*			

CATALOG NUMBER _____
ASCO® CERTIFIED TO S.O. _____
BY _____
DATE _____
FORM REV G
PROJECT NAME:

REV.	ECN NO.	BY	APP.	DATE
G	278589 SEE ECN	TR	BK	05/03/19
F	275211 SEE ECN	TR	BK	10/16/18
E	266495 SEE ECN	WKA	JPB	04/10/17
D	251210 SEE ECN	AJ	MM	10/17/14
C	247770 SEE ECN	SDH	SDH	4/14/14
B	246325 SEE ECN	AE	BK	01/16/14
A	242580 SEE ECN	SDH	SDH	5/30/13
—	242255 ISSUE	SDH	SDH	5/6/13

WIRING DIAGRAM
300 SERIES J3ATS/J3NTS, THREE PHASE 600 AMPS
"J" FRAME, GROUP G CONTROLS
THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

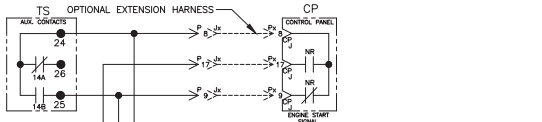
	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	SDH	5/6/13
CHECKED		
PROJECT APPROVAL		
FINAL APPROVAL	SDH	5/6/13

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-1-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-1-005
ASSEM. REF. NO.

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P. FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING
SCALE NONE SIZE DS
DWG. NO. 978745
DRAWING REV. G ECN NO. 278589 SHEET 1 OF 6

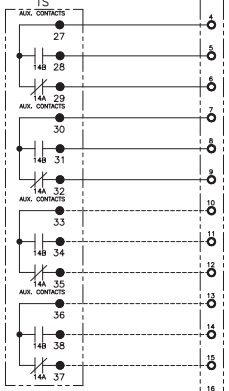


LOCATED ON FRONT OF TRANSFER SWITCH FRAME

TB (FIELD CONNECTIONS), WIRE RANGE: 22–12 AWG

1 COMMON
2 FEATURE 7 CLOSES TO START
3 FEATURE 8 OPENS TO START

ENGINE STARTING SIGNALS (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.)



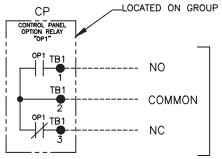
4 COMMON
5 FEATURE 14B CLOSED ON EMERGENCY
6 FEATURE 14A CLOSED ON NORMAL
7 COMMON
8 FEATURE 14BA CLOSED ON EMERGENCY
9 FEATURE 14AA CLOSED ON NORMAL

STANDARD TS AUXILIARY CONTACTS (10 AMPS, 32VDC) (10 AMPS, 250VAC) GENERAL PURPOSE

10 COMMON
11 FEATURE 14BB CLOSED ON EMERGENCY
12 FEATURE 14AB CLOSED ON NORMAL
13 COMMON
14 FEATURE 14BC CLOSED ON EMERGENCY
15 FEATURE 14AC CLOSED ON NORMAL
16

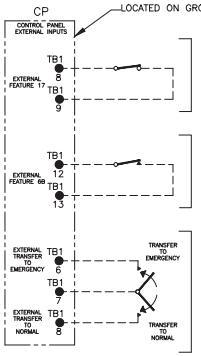
OPTIONAL TS AUXILIARY CONTACTS (10 AMPS, 32VDC) (10 AMPS, 250VAC) GENERAL PURPOSE

CONTROLLER OPTION RELAY "OP1" (STANDARD)



OPTION RELAY "OP1" (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.) REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

CONTROLLER REMOTE CONTROL FEATURES

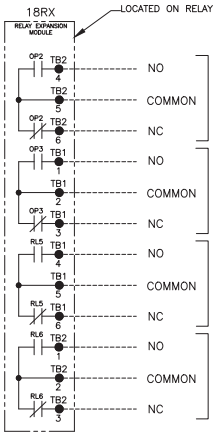


EXTERNAL FEATURE 17
REMOTE TRANSFER TO EMERGENCY
[AUTOMATIC TRANSFER TYPE ONLY]
OPEN TO TRANSFER TO EMERGENCY
(N/C CONTACT, 5VDC LOW ENERGY RATING)
REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

EXTERNAL FEATURE 6B
REMOTE BYPASS OF RETRANSFER TO NORMAL TIME DELAY
OPEN TO BYPASS TIME DELAY
(MOMENTARY N/C CONTACT, 5VDC LOW ENERGY RATING)
REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

EXTERNAL MANUAL TRANSFER
REMOTE TRANSFER TO NORMAL OR EMERGENCY
[NON-AUTOMATIC TRANSFER TYPE ONLY]
(MOMENTARY SPDT, CENTER-OFF CONTACTS, 5VDC LOW ENERGY RATING)

OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX (RELAY EXPANSION MODULE)



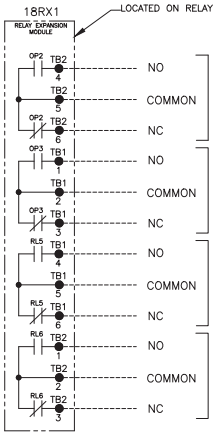
OPTION RELAY "OP2" AS OUTPUT RELAY
SET JUMPERS J1: 1–2 & 3–4
(5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.) REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

OPTION RELAY "OP3" (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.) REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

EMERGENCY SOURCE ACCEPTABLE SIGNAL (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.)

NORMAL SOURCE ACCEPTABLE SIGNAL (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.)

OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 18RX1 (SECOND RELAY EXPANSION MODULE)



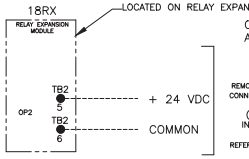
OPTION RELAY "OP2"
SET JUMPERS J1: 1–2 & 3–4
(5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.) REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

OPTION RELAY "OP3" (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.) REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

EMERGENCY SOURCE ACCEPTABLE SIGNAL (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.)

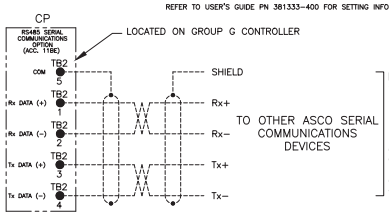
NORMAL SOURCE ACCEPTABLE SIGNAL (5 AMPS, 30 VDC MAX.) (100 mA, 5 VDC MIN.)

"OP2" OPTIONAL USES



OPTION RELAY "OP2" AS EXTERNAL POWER SUPPLY INPUT "1G"
SET JUMPERS AS FOLLOWS: REMOVE JUMPERS "J1" 1–2 & "J1" 3–4 CONNECT JUMPERS "J1" 5–7 & "J1" 6–8
(24 VDC NOM., 15 W MAX.) INPUT RANGE: 21.6 VDC MIN 27.6 VDC MAX.
REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.

RS485 SERIAL COMMUNICATIONS OPTION
AVAILABLE WITH OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 11BE: ADVANCED-FUNCTION SOFTWARE BUNDLE
REFER TO USER'S GUIDE PN 381333-400 FOR SETTING INFORMATION.



NOTES:
1. EARTH GROUND SHIELD AT HOST DEVICE ONLY.
2. FIELD WIRING: USE UL LISTED, STRANDED, TWISTED PAIRS, OVERALL FOIL SHIELD WITH STRANDED DRAIN WIRE SUITABLE FOR RS422 EQUIVALENT TO:

(STANDARD 80°C) BELDEN 9842 OR 9829 OR ALPHA 6202C OR 6222C

(PLENUM RATED) BELDEN 89729 OR 82729 OR ALPHA 58902

REV.				
G	278589	TR	BK	05/03/19
	SEE ECN			
F	275211	TR	BK	10/16/18
	SEE ECN			
E	266495	MKA	JPB	04/10/17
	SEE ECN			
D	251210	AJ	MM	10/17/14
	SEE ECN			
C	247770	SDH	SDH	4/14/14
	SEE ECN			
B	246325	AE	BK	01/16/14
	SEE ECN			
A	242580	SDH	SDH	5/30/13
	SEE ECN			
—	242255	SDH	SDH	5/6/13
	ISSUE			

PROJECT NAME:

REV. TO SHEET | ECN NO. | BY | APP. | DATE

WIRING DIAGRAM
300 SERIES J3ATS/J3NTS, THREE PHASE 600 AMPS
"J" FRAME, GROUP G CONTROLS

THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	SDH	5/6/13
CHECKED		
PROJECT APPROVAL		
FINAL APPROVAL	SDH	5/6/13

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-1-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-1-505 ASSEM. REF. NO.

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P. FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING

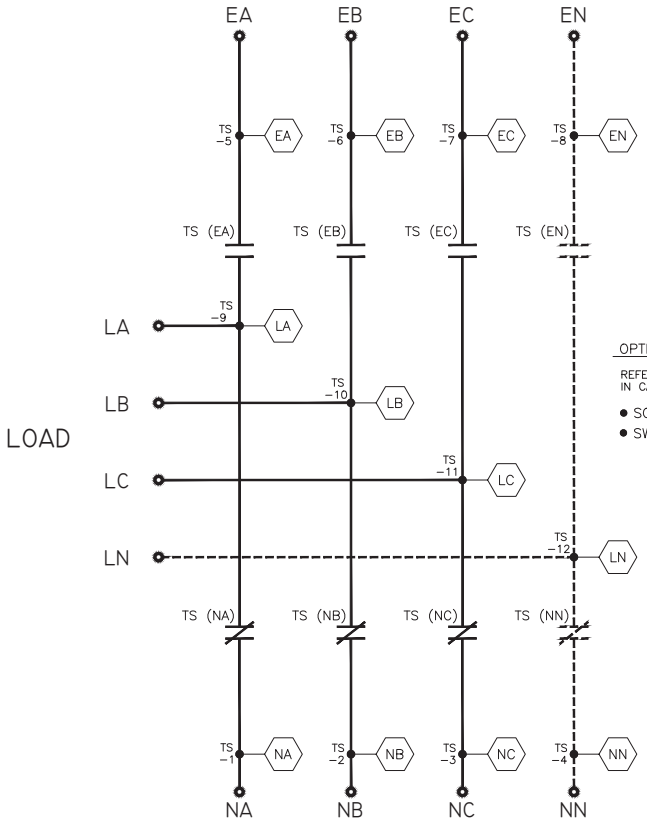
SCALE NONE SIZE DS

DWG. NO. 978745

DRAWING REV. G ECN NO. 278589 SHEET 2 OF 6

MAIN POWER POLES

EMERGENCY



NORMAL

OPTIONAL NEUTRAL TYPES

REFER TO "EXPLANATION OF CATALOG NUMBER CODES" IN CATALOG NUMBER CHART ON SHEET 1.

- SOLID BUS PLATE
- SWITCHING CONTACTS

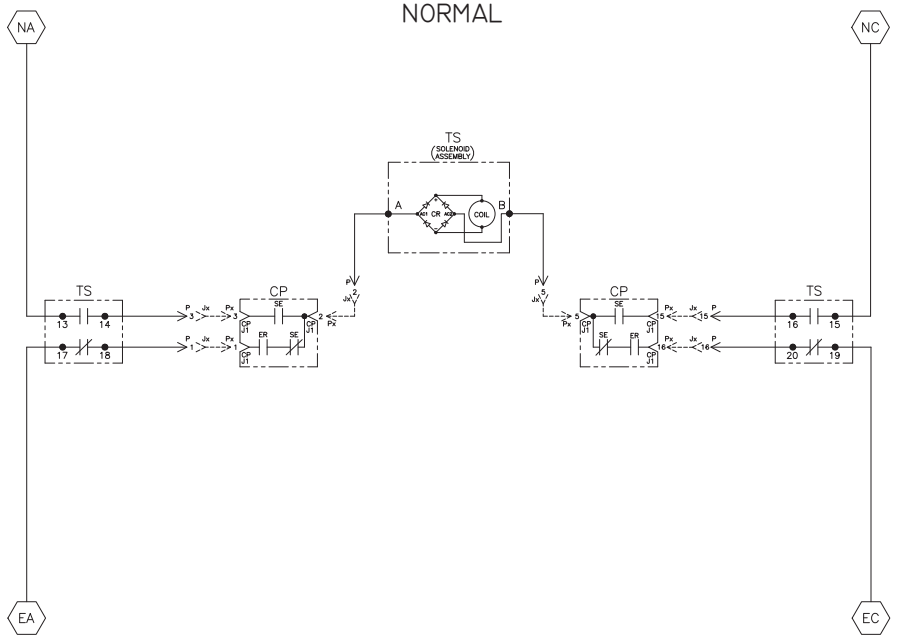
NOTE:
ATS SHOWN CLOSED ON NORMAL SOURCE.

TS	TS CONTROL CONTACTS: SOLENOID POSITION				
	CLOSED BEFORE NORMAL TDC*	>	<	BEFORE EMERG TDC*	CLOSED
13–14					
15–16					
17–18					
19–20					

TDC (TOP DEAD CENTER)
TRANSFER SWITCH TEST & ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE SPECIFIES CONTROL CUT-OFF (CONTACT OPENING) SETTING.

TS OPERATOR CIRCUIT

NORMAL



EMERGENCY

REV.	ECN NO.	BY	APP.	DATE
G	278589	TR	BK	05/03/19
	SEE ECN			
F	275211	TR	BK	10/16/18
	SEE ECN			
E	266495	MKA	JPB	04/10/17
	SEE ECN			
D	251210	AJ	MM	10/17/14
	SEE ECN			
C	247770	SDH	SDH	4/14/14
	SEE ECN			
B	246325	AE	BK	01/16/14
	SEE ECN			
A	242580	SDH	SDH	5/30/13
	SEE ECN			
—	242255	SDH	SDH	5/6/13
	ISSUE			

PROJECT NAME:

WIRING DIAGRAM
300 SERIES J3ATS/J3NTS, THREE PHASE 600 AMPS
"J" FRAME, GROUP G CONTROLS

THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	SDH	5/6/13
CHECKED		
PROJECT APPROVAL		
FINAL APPROVAL	SDH	5/6/13

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-1-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-1-055

ASSEM. REF. NO.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING

SCALE NONE SIZE DS

DWG. NO. 978745

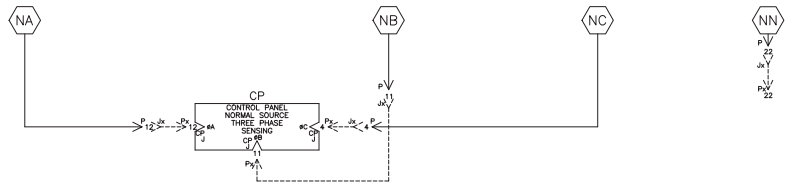
DRAWING REV. G ECN NO. 278589 SHEET 3 OF 6

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P.
FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

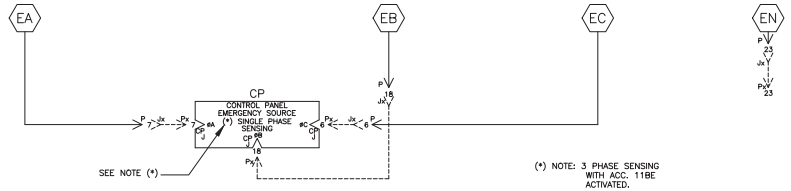
NORMAL SOURCE CIRCUITS

NORMAL



EMERGENCY SOURCE CIRCUITS

EMERGENCY

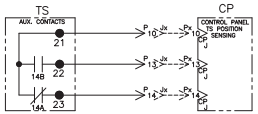


(*) NOTE: 3 PHASE SENSING WITH ACC. 11BE ACTIVATED.

LOAD TERMINAL CIRCUITS

LOAD

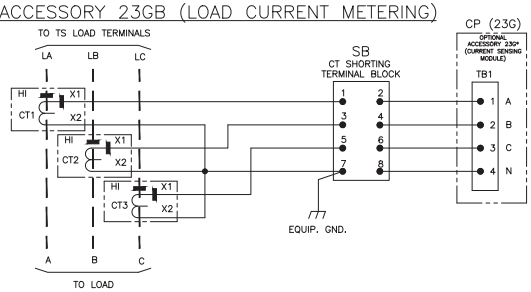
CONTROL SIGNALS & INDICATION



ADDITIONAL CIRCUITS

OPTIONAL ACCESSORY 23GB (LOAD CURRENT METERING)

CURRENT TRANSFORMER RATIO TABLE	
SWITCH RATING	CT RATIO
600A	600:5A



REV.	SHEET	ECN NO.	BY	APP.	DATE
G		278589	TR	BK	05/03/19
		SEE ECN			
F		275211	TR	BK	10/16/18
		SEE ECN			
E		266495	MKA	JPB	04/10/17
		SEE ECN			
D		251210	AJ	MM	10/17/14
		SEE ECN			
C		247770	SDH	SDH	4/14/14
		SEE ECN			
B		246325	AE	BK	01/16/14
		SEE ECN			
A		242580	SDH	SDH	5/30/13
		SEE ECN			
—		242255	SDH	SDH	5/6/13
		ISSUE			

PROJECT NAME:

WIRING DIAGRAM

300 SERIES J3ATS/J3NTS, THREE PHASE 600 AMPS
"J" FRAME, GROUP G CONTROLS

THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	SDH	5/16/13
CHECKED		
PROJECT APPROVAL		
FINAL APPROVAL	SDH	5/16/13

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-1-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-1-035

ASSEM. REF. NO.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING

SCALE NONE SIZE DS

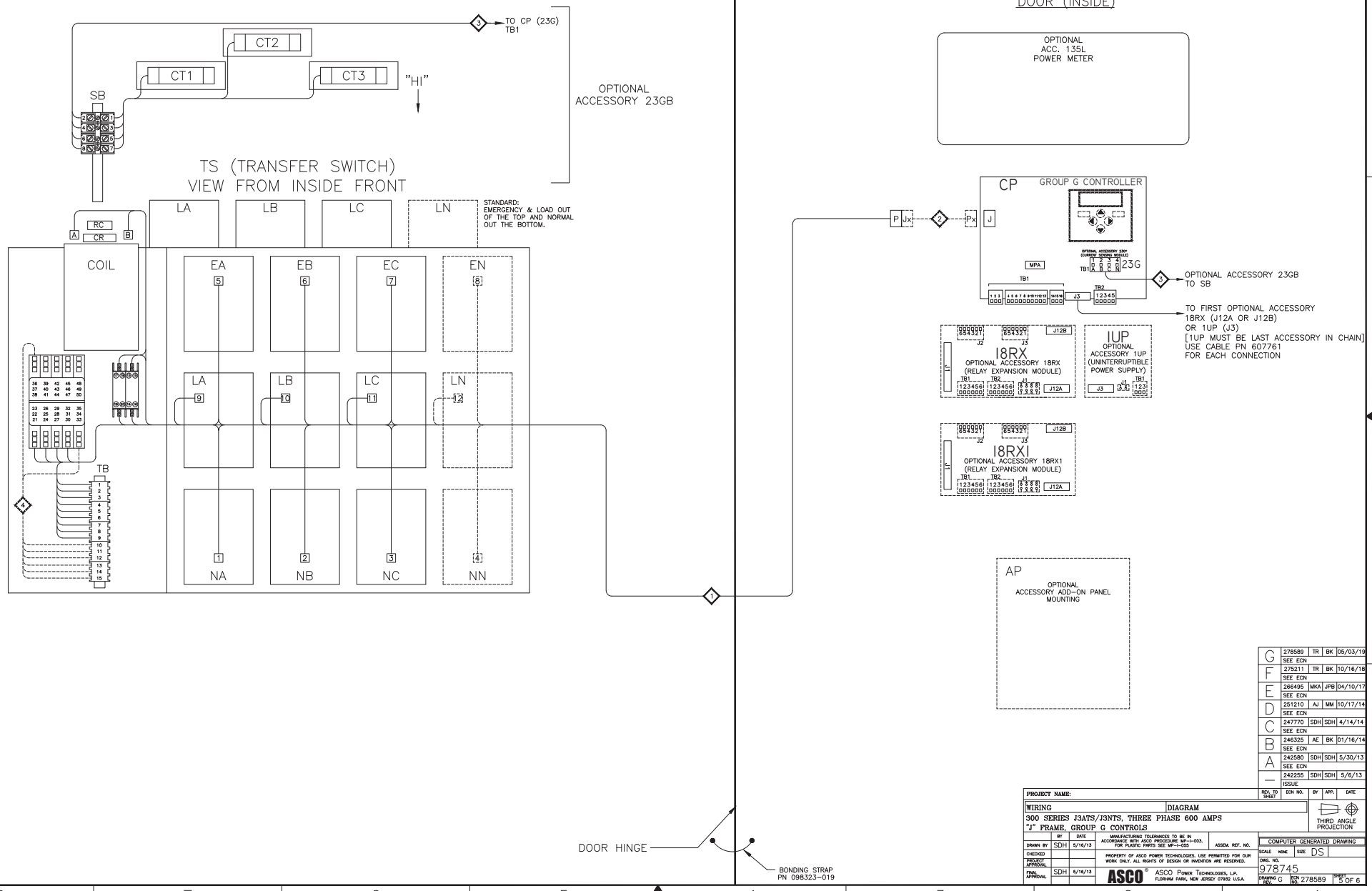
DWG. NO. 978745

DRAWING REV. G ECN NO. 278589 SHEET 4 OF 6

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P. FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

PHYSICAL DIAGRAM



REV.	TO SHEET	ECN NO.	BY	APP.	DATE
G		278589	TR	BK	05/03/19
		SEE ECN			
F		275211	TR	BK	10/16/18
		SEE ECN			
E		266495	MKA	JPB	04/10/17
		SEE ECN			
D		251210	AJ	MM	10/17/14
		SEE ECN			
C		247770	SDH	SDH	4/14/14
		SEE ECN			
B		246325	AE	BK	01/16/14
		SEE ECN			
A		242580	SDH	SDH	5/30/13
		SEE ECN			
—		242255	SDH	SDH	5/6/13
		ISSUE			

PROJECT NAME:

WIRING DIAGRAM

300 SERIES J3ATS/J3NTS, THREE PHASE 600 AMPS
"J" FRAME, GROUP G CONTROLS

THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	SDH	5/16/13
CHECKED		
PROJECT APPROVAL		
FINAL APPROVAL	SDH	5/16/13

MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES TO BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASCO PROCEDURE MP-1-003. FOR PLASTIC PARTS SEE MP-1-055

ASSEM. REF. NO.

PROPERTY OF ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES. USE PERMITTED FOR OUR WORK ONLY. ALL RIGHTS OF DESIGN OR INVENTION ARE RESERVED.

ASCO® ASCO POWER TECHNOLOGIES, L.P. FLORHAM PARK, NEW JERSEY 07932 U.S.A.

COMPUTER GENERATED DRAWING

SCALE NONE SIZE DS

DWG. NO. 978745

DRAWING REV. G ECN NO. 278589 SHEET 5 OF 6

WIRE RUN LISTING

① HARNESS LOCATOR — BOX CHECKED IF HARNESS IS MODIFIED ☐

HARNESS 781247 (P) MAIN TS

WIRE No.		CLR	AWG
1	P-1,TS-18		18
2	P-2,TS-A		
3	P-3,TS-14		
4	P-4,TS-3		
4	TS-3,TS-15		
5	P-5,TS-B		
6	P-6,TS-7		
6	TS-7,TS-19		
7	P-7,TS-5		
7	TS-5,TS-17		
8	P-8,TS-24		
8	TS-24,TB-1		
9	P-9,TS-25		
9	TS-25,TB-2		
10	P-10,TS-21		
11	P-11,TS-2		
12	P-12,TS-1		
12	TS-1,TS-13		
13	P-13,TS-22		
14	P-14,TS-23		
15	P-15,TS-16		
16	P-16,TS-20		
17	P-17,TB-3		
18	P-18,TS-6		
19	P-19,TS-9		
20	P-20,TS-10		
21	P-21,TS-11		
22	P-22,TS-4		
23	P-23,TS-8		
24	P-24,TS-12		
25	TS-27,TB-4		
26	TS-28,TB-5		
27	TS-29,TB-6		
31	TS-30,TB-7		
32	TS-31,TB-8		
33	TS-32,TB-9		
	REMOVE WIRES		
	ADD WIRES		

Limited Warranty

Series 150, 200, 300 and 4000 Power Transfer Switches

This Warranty is given ONLY to purchasers who buy for commercial or industrial use in the ordinary course of each purchaser's business.

General

ASCO Power Technologies, LP products and systems are in our opinion the finest available. We take pride in our products and are pleased that you have chosen them. Under certain circumstances we offer with our products the following Limited Guardian Warranty Against Defects in Material and Workmanship.

Please read your Guardian Warranty carefully. This Warranty sets forth our responsibilities in the unlikely event of defect and tells you how to obtain performance under this Warranty.

Limited Warranty Against Defects in Material and Workmanship:

Product Description	Series	Catalog Code
Automatic Transfer Switch	150, 200	1ATS, 2ATS
	300	3ATS, 3ADTS
	4000	4ATS, 4ADTS, 4ACTS
Non-Automatic Transfer Switch (Electrically Operated)	300	3NTS, 3NDTS
ASCO Lighting Control Panels	4000	4NTS, 4NDTS, 4NCTS
Manual Transfer Switch	300	3MTS, 3MTQ, 3MUQ, 3MPQ, 3MGQ, 3MGDQ, 3MTDQ
Service Entrance Transfer Switch (SEATS)	300	3AUS, 3ADUS, 3APS, 3ARS, 3MUS
Power Transfer Load Center (PTLC)	300	300L
Quick Connect Panels	300	3QCN, 3QCU, 3QCD
Electrically Operated Bypass Switch	4000	4ATE, 4NTE, 4ADTE, 4NDTE

Limited Warranty

ASCO warrants that the ATS will be free from defects in material and workmanship and will conform to ASCO's standard specifications for the ATS for a period of twenty four (24) months from date of product shipment from ASCO (the "Warranty Period"). This Limited Warranty does not extend to subsequent owners of the structure during the Warranty period.

Terms of Warranty

The foregoing Limited Warranty is conditioned upon user's compliance with the following:

1. The ASCO Power Transfer Switch is installed in accordance with ASCO specifications and state and local codes and standards by an electrician licensed in the state of installation.

2. The ASCO Power Transfer Switch is maintained in accordance with ASCO instructions and used under normal conditions for the purposes intended by ASCO.

All warranty field-related repairs, replacements or adjustments must be made by ASCO Services Inc. or its duly authorized representative.

Optional Available Extended Warranty

Optional extended warranty coverage may be purchased from ASCO for a specified fee at the time of the original sale. If purchased, Warranty period shall be extended up to an additional thirty - six (36) months beyond the standard twenty - four (24) months to provide up to five (5) year coverage applicable to the above referenced products, except for 3AUS, 3APS, and 3ARS products where the warranty period for the circuit breaker shall be limited to 24 months from date of shipment from ASCO. The length of optional extended coverage shall be reflected on the ASCO invoice and/or order acknowledgement document.

ASCO Power Technologies™

Warranty Extends To First Purchaser for Use, Non-Transferable

This Warranty is extended to the first person, firm, association, or corporation for whom the ASCO product specified herein is originally installed for use (the "user") in the fifty United States or Canada. This Warranty is not transferable or assignable without the prior written permission of ASCO.

Assignment of Warranties

ASCO assigns to user any warranties which are made by manufacturers and suppliers of components of, or accessories to, the ASCO product and which are assignable, but ASCO makes no representations as to the effectiveness or extent of such warranties, assumes no responsibility for any matters which may be warranted by such manufacturers or suppliers and extends no coverage under this Warranty to such components or accessories.

Drawings, Descriptions

ASCO warrants for the period and on the terms of the Warranty set forth herein that the ASCO product will conform to the descriptions contained in the certified drawings, if any, applicable thereto, to ASCO's final invoices, and to applicable ASCO product brochures and manuals current as of the date of product shipment ("descriptions"). ASCO does not control the use of any ASCO product. Accordingly, it is understood that the descriptions are not Warranties of performance and not Warranties of fitness for a particular purpose.

Warranty Claims Procedure

Within a reasonable time, but in no case to exceed thirty (30) days, after user's discovery of a defect, user shall contact ascopowerwarranty@ascopower.com. Subject to the limitations specified herein, an ASCO Services field service representative will repair the non-conforming ASCO product warranted hereunder, without charge for parts, labor, or travel expenses. Warranty coverage will apply only after ASCO's inspection discloses the claimed defect and shows no signs of treatment or use that would void the coverage of this Warranty . All defective products and component parts replaced under this Warranty become the property of ASCO.

Warranty Performance of Component Manufacturers

It is ASCO's practice, consistent with its desire to remedy Warranty defects in the most prompt and effective manner possible, to cooperate with and utilize the services of component manufacturers and their authorized representatives in the performance of work to correct defects in the product components. Accordingly, ASCO may utilize third parties in the performance of Warranty work, including repair or replacement hereunder, where, in ASCO's opinion, such work can be performed in less time, with less expense, or in closer proximity to the ASCO product.

Items Not Covered By Warranty

This Warranty does not cover damage or defect caused by misuse, improper application, wrong or inadequate electrical current or connection, negligence, inappropriate on site operating conditions, repair by non-ASCO designated personnel, accident in transit, tampering, alterations, a change in location or operating use, exposure to the elements, water, or other corrosive liquids or gases, acts of God, theft or installation contrary to ASCO's recommendations or specifications, or in any event if the ASCO serial number has been altered, defaced, or removed.

This Warranty does not cover shipping costs, installation costs, external circuit breaker resetting or maintenance or service items and further, except as may be provided herein, does not include labor costs or transportation charges arising from the replacement of the ASCO product or any part thereof or charges to remove or reinstall same at any premises of user.

Repair or replacement of a defective product or part thereof does not extend the original Warranty period.

The products listed in this Warranty are not for use in the control area or any reactor connected or safety applications or within the containment area of a nuclear facility or for integration into medical devices.

Limitations

This Warranty is in lieu of and excludes all other Warranties, express or implied, including merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose.

User's sole and exclusive remedy is repair or replacement of the ASCO product as set forth herein.

If user's remedy is deemed to fail of its essential purpose by a court of competent jurisdiction, ASCO's responsibility for property loss or damage shall not exceed the net product purchase price.

In no event shall ASCO assume any liability for indirect, special, incidental, consequential or exemplary damages of any kind whatsoever, including without limitation lost profits, business interruption or loss of data, whether any claim is based upon theories of contract, negligence, strict liability, tort, or otherwise.

Miscellaneous

No salesperson, employee, or agent of ASCO is authorized to add to or vary the terms of this Warranty. Warranty terms may be modified, if at all, only in writing signed by an ASCO officer.

ASCO obligations under this Warranty are conditioned upon ASCO timely receipt of full payment of the product purchase price and any other amounts due. ASCO reserves the right to supplement or change the terms of this Warranty in any subsequent warranty offering to user or others.

In the event that any provision of this Warranty should be or becomes invalid and/or unenforceable during the Warranty period, the remaining terms and provisions shall continue in full force and effect.

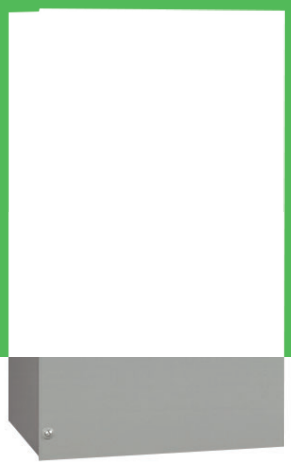
This Warranty shall be governed by, and construed under, the laws of the State of New Jersey, without reference to the conflict of laws principles thereof.

This Warranty represents the entire agreement between ASCO and user with respect to the subject matter herein and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, representations, understandings, or agreements relating to this subject.

© 2021 ASCO Power Technologies. All Rights Reserved
10/08/21 Publication No. 381339-334

Flexible Power Transfer Solutions for Commercial & Industrial Applications

ASCO Power Technologies™



ASCO SERIES 300
Power Transfer Switches

ascopower.com

Life Is On Schneider Electric

ASCO SERIES 300 Automatic Transfer Switches

Power outages impact small and large facilities alike. ASCO SERIES 300 Automatic Transfer Switches offer rugged design and reliable performance to small and mid-size commercial and industrial facilities in packaged solutions that are easy to select, procure, install, and operate.

Every SERIES 300 generator transfer switch is engineered with ASCO's reliability expertise in a package that makes backup power accessible for small and mid-size facilities. Leveraging knowledge derived from a century of critical power transfer experience, each SERIES 300 is backed by the same ASCO technical support and service that solves the most demanding critical power challenges facing facilities today.

Product Details

Transfer Switch Overview

ASCO's SERIES 300 lineup offers flexible backup power solutions for businesses of every size.

SERIES 300 Automatic Transfer Switches

Designed to Fit Anywhere

The ASCO SERIES 300 product line provides the most compact design of generator power transfer switches in the industry.

Available to mount on walls or floors, all models through 2000 amperes are designed to be completely front-accessible. This permits installation flush against walls while allowing installation of cabling and connections from the front of the switch. Cable entrance plates are standard on 1600 and 2000 amperes units; these allow use of optional side-mounted pull boxes for additional cable bending space.

- 30 through 3000 amperes in compact designs
- Up to 600 VAC, single or three phase
- Listed to UL 1008 - Standard for Safety - Transfer Switch Equipment
- True double-throw operation: The single solenoid design is inherently interlocked to prevent simultaneous connections of two power sources.
- Will not transfer to a dead source - single solenoid operator derives power from the destination source
- Easy-to-navigate 128x64 graphical LCD display with keypad provides LED indicators for switch position, source availability, not-in-auto mode, and alert conditions.
- Integrated, multilingual, user interface for configuration and monitoring
- Available Delayed Transition operation
- Non-automatic operation can be selected without opening enclosure door
- Optional Relay Expansion Module with extra relays for accessory outputs
- Soft keys for test function and time delay bypass
- Emergency source failure alert indication
- Optional Historical Event Log
- Displays statistical ATS monitoring information
- Built-in diagnostic functions
- Password protection to prevent unauthorized actions
- Adjustable delay feature prevents nuisance transfer due to momentary utility power outages and generator dips
- Auxiliary contacts signal position of main contacts - two for normal and two for emergency position
- Standard solid neutral terminals
- Restriction of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) compliant controller
- Standard 2 year warranty. Optional 1, 2, and 3 year extensions

Power Knowledge

Basic Automatic Transfer Switch Functions

SERIES 300 Power Transfer Switch rated 200 amps

SERIES 300 Automatic Switching Solutions

Automatic and Non-Automatic Transfer Switching

ASCO Transfer Switches are available in both automatic and non-automatic types. Both are electrically operated. For automatic transfer switches, the controller initiates transfer between power sources . For non-automatic transfer switches, a user initiates transfer using local or remote controls.

SERIES 300 non-automatic transfer switches offer the following features:

- Models range from 30 through 3000 amperes, up to 600V
- Controller prevents inadvertent operation under low voltage conditions
- Source acceptability lights inform operator when sources are available to accept load
- Standard in-phase monitor for transferring motor loads betweem live sources

Power Knowledge

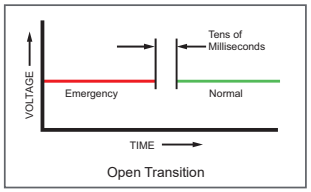
- Non-Automatic and Manual Transfer Switches for Backup Power Applications

400 Amp, Type 1 Enclosure

Open Transition Transfer Switching

ASCO Transfer Switches are available with a standard, 2-position, open transition models that reliably transfer loads in less than 100 milliseconds. Open transition switches are suitable for a wide range of applications.

- 30 to 3000 amps
- Single-operator switching mechanism prevents simultaneous connection of both sources
- Available In-Phase Monitor can be activated for transferring motor loads

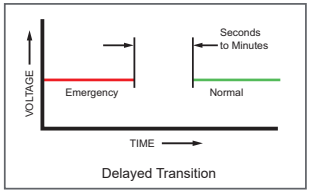


Open Transition

Delayed Transition Transfer Switching

ASCO Delayed Transition Transfer Switches transfer loads between power sources using a timed load disconnect position with an adjustable delay.

- 150 through 3000 amps
- Reliable, field-proven, dual-solenoid operating mechanism
- Mechanical interlocks to prevent simultaneous connection of both power sources
- Adjustable delay for load disconnect - 0 to 5 minutes
- Non-automatic models available in manual operation configuration
- Automatic models available with load shed feature



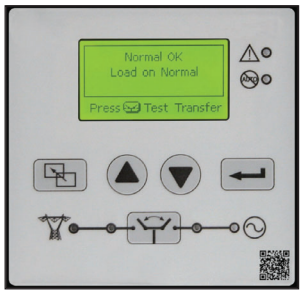
Delayed Transition

Power Knowledge

- Transition Mode Basics
- Transferring Motor Loads between Power Sources
- Transferring Loads with Zero Power Interruption

SERIES 300 Group G Controller

The SERIES 300 Group G Controller is reliable and field-proven. It provides all of the voltage, frequency, control, timing, and diagnostic functions required for most emergency and standby power applications.



- Touch pad programming
- Displays active timers
- On-board diagnostics
- Password protection
- Voltage and frequency sensing
- Status and control functions

Product Details

- Group G Controller

Transfer Switch Communications and Metering

Options to Customize Functionality and Increase Value

Product Details

5300 SERIES Annunciators

Remote Annunciation

Monitor Power Equipment Status from Anywhere

Monitoring and control transfer switches from across the room, building, or from Internet.

5310 – LED annunciator – Single ATS

5350 – LED annunciator – up to 8 ATSs

Product Details

5140 Connectivity Module

Communication

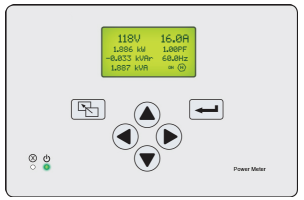
Turn Transfer Switches into Power Information Portals

5140 Connectivity Module – Makes status and power information from a single switch available to via ModBUS, SNMP, and web pages.

Metering

Transfer Switches are the Perfect Place to Monitor Power Flow, Power Conditions, and Power Events

5210 Power Meter – Provides deeper insight into circuit status and conditions.



Product Details

5210 Power Meter

SERIES 300 Optional Accessories

Communications	
11BE	Feature Bundle. Programmable engine exerciser with seven independenct routines run the generator with or without loads, on a daily, weekly, bi-weekly, or monthly basis. Controlled from the user interface keypad. • Event log display shows the event number, time and date, type and reason (if applicable). • Stores up to 300 events • RS485 Communication Port enabled common alarm output contact • On three-phase systems, Accessory 11BE enables line-to-line voltage imbalance sensing and three-phase sensing capabilities for the Emergency power source as well as the Phase Rotation checking for both power sources.
18RX	Relay Expansion Module provides accessory relays and includes one Form C contact for normal source availability (18G), and one Form C contact for emergency source availability (18B) (contact rating 5 amperes @ 30 VDC or @ 125 VAC resistive) (100 ma, 4 VDC min) Additional output relay is provided the default is to indicate a common alarm.
72EE2	Connectivity module provides remote monitoring and control capabilities and includes accessory 11BE feature bundle
Environment and Power	
44A	Strip heater with thermostat for cold environment to prevent internal condensation and icing. External 120-volt AC power source required.
44G	Strip heater with thermostat, wired to load terminals on 208-240, 360-380, 460-480, 550-600 volt models. Contains wiring harnesses for all transfer switch sizes.
1UP	UPS back up power runs controller and LCD display for 30 seconds without AC power
Extension Harness	
37B	Six-foot extension harness for open type units to accommodate customer mounting of controls and switch
37C	Nine-foot extension harness for open type units to accommodate customer mounting of controls and switch
Indicators	
62W	Audible alarm with silencing feature to signal transfers to emergency. (For D-frame models, may require oversize enclosure depending on accessory combination).
Customer Control Circuits	
30A	Load-shed circuit initiated by opening of a customer-supplied contact (Open Transition model only)
30B	Load-shed circuit initiated by removal of customer-supplied control voltage (Open Transition model only)
30AA	Load-shed circuit initiated by opening of a customer-supplied contact (Delayed Transition model only)
30BA	Load-shed circuit initiated by removal of customer-supplied control voltage (Delayed Transition model only)
Surge Protection	
73	Surge suppressor rated 65 kA
Metering	
23GA, 23GB	Load Current Metering card measures either single or three-phase load current. Not available with Power Meter option 135L. Use 23GA for Single-Phase, 23GB for Three-Phase.
135L	Power Meter on load side (includes shorting block and current transformers). Not available with Load Current Metering options 23GA or 23GB.

Field Conversion Kits

Kit No.	Description
935147	Advanced Function Bundle Retrofit Kit (11BE) - See above accessory 11BE description for details.
935148	REX Module with Source Availability Contacts (Acc. 18RX)
935149	UPS to allow controller to run for 30 seconds minimum without AC Power (Acc. 1UP)
935150	1/3 Phase load current sensing card only (Acc. 23GA/GB)
K613127-001	Strip Heater (125 watt) 120 volt (Acc. 44A)
K613127-002	Strip Heater (125 watt) 208-480 volt (Acc. 44G)
948551	Quad-Ethernet Module (Acc. 72EE)
K609027	Cable Pull Box (1600-2000 amperes)

Withstand and Closing Ratings

FRAME	RATINGS AMPERES	CURRENT LIMITING FUSES				SPECIFIC BREAKER		
		480V MAX.	600V MAX.	MAX. SIZE, AMPS	CLASS	240V MAX.	480V MAX.	600V MAX.
D	30	100kA	-	300	J	22kA	22kA	10kA
		35kA	200kA	200	J			
		200kA	35kA	200	RK1			
	70-100	35kA	35kA	200	RK1	150kA	85kA	25kA
		200kA	35kA	200	J			
	150	35kA	35kA	200	RK1	150kA	85kA	25kA
		200kA	35kA	200	J			
	200	200kA	-	200	J	200kA	85kA	14kA
	230	100kA	-	300	J	200kA	85kA	14kA
E	260, 400	200kA	-	600	J	65kA	42kA	35kA
J	150, 200, 260	200kA	200kA	600	J	200kA	200kA	42kA
				800	L			
	400	200kA	200kA	600	J	65kA	50kA	42kA
				800	L			
	600	200kA	200kA	600	J	65kA	85kA	42kA
				800	L			
H	800-1200*	200kA	200kA	1200	L	65kA	150kA	65kA
G	1600-2000	200kA	200kA	2500	L	85kA	85kA	85kA
	2600-3000	200kA	200kA	4000	L	100kA	100kA	100kA
	4000	200kA	200kA	5000	L	100kA	100kA	100kA

Notes:

* Front connection only

All units are RMS Symmetrical Amperes

All Withstand and Closing Rating values are tested in accordance with UL 1008.
See **ASCO Publication 1128** for more information.

Application requirements may permit higher WCR for certain switch sizes.

Power Knowledge

- UL 1008 Transfer Switch Withstand and Closing Ratings
- Performance Testing for Transfer Switches

Additional SERIES 300 Product Information

Transfer Switches and Panels	Controls	Technical Information
Manual Transfer Switch	Group G Controller	Withstand and Closing Ratings
Manual Transfer Switch with Quick Connects		Weights and Dimensions and Ordering Info
Quick Connect Power Panel		Drawings
Dual Purpose Quick Connect Power Panel		Wiring Diagrams

SERIES 300 Manual Transfer Switching and Quick Connection Solutions

ASCO SERIES 300 Manual Transfer Switching and Quick Connection Solutions offer reliable service and application flexibility for a wide range of facilities.

Manual Transfer Switches

- Three-position, easy-to-use center-off switch
- Compact design - easy to install and maintain
- Designed to handle demands of motors and inrush currents

Power Knowledge

Differences Between Manual, Non-Automatic, & Automatic Transfer Switches

Product Details

SERIES 300 Manual Transfer Switch

Manual Transfer Switches with Quick Connects

- The ASCO SERIES 300 Manual Transfer Switch with Integrated Quick Connects provides a total temporary power connection and transfer solution
- Enables connection and control of a temporary or portable generator
- Provides a complete UL 1008-listed solution in a single unit

Product Details

SERIES 300 Manual Transfer Switch with Quick Connects

Quick Connect Panels

- Listed to UL 1008 Transfer Switch Accessory standard
- Utilizes standard Cam-Lok™ receptacles for quick connections
- Standard Type 3R construction is weatherproof with or without cable
- Utilizes standard Series 16 Single Pole quick connect receptacles

Power Knowledge

NEC Requirement for Permanent Manual Switching Means

Product Details

SERIES 300 Quick Connect Power Panel

Dual-Purpose Manual Transfer Switches with Quick Connects

- Provides both supplemental backup power and load testing connectivity through a single device.
- Listed to UL 891 by ETL
- Utilizes standard Series 16 Single Pole quick connect receptacles

Product Details

SERIES 300 Dual Purpose Quick Connect Power Panel

ASCO Power Technologies - Global Headquarters
160 Park Avenue
Florham Park, NJ 07932
Tel: 800 800 ASCO

www.ascopower.com
customercare@ascopower.com

© 2021 ASCO Power Technologies. All Rights Reserved. Life Is On Schneider Electric is a trademark and the property of Schneider Electric SE, its subsidiaries and affiliated companies.
Publication 1195 R4. Printed in the U.S.A.

GENERAL INSTALLATION NOTATIONS

1. Delivery of equipment will be made to jobsite. **24 hours notice** will be given so the contractor can make arrangements for a crane.
2. Work **not included** as part of the package to be completed by the contractor is as follows:
   Unloading of the equipment at site and setting it in place
   Installation of all loose shipped items
   Exhaust piping and fittings not submitted on
   All fuel piping & fittings except for flex lines to be installed to engine inlet and outlet
   Fuel used to fill tanks and used during startup and testing
   Wiring, conduit, and electrical installation. It is contractors responsibility to pull and terminate all dc control wiring required.
   Concrete pad **(Generator should be a minimum of 5 feet from any structure on all four sides of Generator).**
3. The installing contractor is responsible for off loading all equipment at the site. Off loading of the generator set and accessories must be made in an appropriate manner using slings and spreader bars or forklifts as necessary. Any damages incurred during unloading, setting, or during storage of the equipment is the responsibility of the contractor or owner.
4. All mechanical, electrical, and structural connections to equipment must be flexible and separately supported.
5. Carolina Engine's commercial engine service department will conduct a preliminary start-up inspection at time of start-up. They will review a System Startup Checklist with the contractor's representative and note any uncompleted items. All open items and deficiencies must be completed before start-up can be performed to avoid any additional service charges for incomplete installation. If Startup Checklist is not complete at time of Startup. Carolina CAT will leave job site and customer will be invoiced for Service Representative time. Startup will then have to be rescheduled.
6. The layout of the equipment should be such that the engine oil filler cap, radiator filler cap, air filters, oil filters, fuel filters, batteries, oil drain, water drain, and generator access panels must be accessible for service after installation.
7. **Do not energize the battery charger or coolant heaters until the batteries have Electrolyte and the cooling system is filled with coolant.**
8. **Never Run AC And DC Wires In Same Conduit As This May Result In Improper Operation Of Equipment.**

INSTALLATION NOTATIONS

COOLING SYSTEM NOTES

1. Ventilation air should be drawn from an area that is not affected by heating from other sources such as transformers, radiators, or mufflers. If such a condition exists, the engine could overheat or have poor performance. In addition, the intake air louvers should not be obstructed by walls or other equipment and should be configured to spring open and motor closed.
2. Locate exhaust discharge away from air intakes to prevent reentry of fumes and odors.
3. When the unit is installed in an enclosed room, adequate ventilation as described in the radiator sizing section is required so the that the engine has sufficient air for combustion and removal of radiated heat. If separate piping is being used for combustion air, please contact Carolina CAT for the appropriate sizing.
4. The total pressure drop on the radiator fan should not exceed 0.25 inches of water internal.
5. Radiator ducting should be larger than the radiator core, with inlet air ducts 1.5 times greater than the outlet ducts.
6. Locate air intakes to provide maximum cooling air to the generator set, yet avoid hot, stagnant air in other areas. Reference the Typical Installation Package Drawing that follows these pages for other arrangement/installation considerations.

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM NOTES

1. All power cables, control wiring, terminals, lugs, conduit, and other associated items are to be provided by the installing electrical contractor.
2. Lugs for customer power cable connections to genset and switchgear are not provided unless specifically called out in the drawings. Lugs are supplied for the generator mounted circuit breaker only.
3. All support systems such as battery chargers, jacket water heaters, etc. must be operational both during normal power and under emergency power. It is recommended that a separate distribution breaker panel be located in the engine room to supply all support systems for ease of maintenance and safety.
4. **All AC wiring must be run in separate conduit from the DC control wiring.**

CONTROL WIRING RECOMMENDATION FOR GENERATOR:
EACH ATS TO GENERATOR (Six #14 Stranded)
One set for auto start
One Set for EPS Supplying Load
One Set Spare
.
BUILDING TO GENERATOR (120/240VAC)
One 40 Amp 120/240 VAC. Two Hots, One Neutral, One Ground.
.
GENERATOR TO REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR (Four #14 Stranded + RS485)
(4) #14 for 12/24 power supply
(1) Belden Part #9841 or #9271
.
NOTE: 3200ft max 9841 and 1600ft max 9271

EXHAUST SYSTEM NOTES

1. The exhaust flex, silencer, and mating flanges for the silencer will be shipped loose for connection and installation at site by the contractor. The sets of nuts, bolts, and gaskets for each connection between the flex and muffler and weld flanges will also be supplied.
2. Extend exhaust stacks to avoid nuisance fumes and odors.
3. Locate exhaust discharge away from ventilating air intakes to prevent entry of fumes and or exhaust recirculation problems.
4. The maximum allowable exhaust gas back pressure is 27 inches of water. The calculated total back pressure from the piping and muffler is 14 inches of water.
5. The weight of the exhaust pipe must be isolated from the engine. No more than 60 pounds should be engine supported.
6. **Install exhaust lines with a minimum of 12 inch clearance from any combustible materials.**

FOUNDATION SUPPORT SYSTEM NOTES

1. For vibration isolator installation, follow the manufacturer's guidelines listed on the specification sheet supplied with this submittal. Raising the spring isolators to their minimum operating height and leveling must be performed before any external connections are made to the generator set. It is recommended that the contractor raise and level the isolators upon delivery of the generator set.
2. After all auxiliary equipment is mounted to the generator set in the field, it is recommended that the operating height be rechecked.
3. The foundations for the generator sets should be thick enough to prevent deflection and torque reaction while retaining sufficient surface area for support.
4. It is recommended that the size of the concrete pad be 1 foot larger on all sides than the generator set package.

FUEL SYSTEM NOTES

1. The main fuel tank is supplied and installed by others(except as noted in the Equipment List).
2. All fuel piping and fittings are supplied and installed by others. Carolina CAT is supplying the flexible hoses for engine fuel connections only.
3. All fuel required for initial fills and during testing is to be supplied by the contractor or owner.
4. Use only black iron pipe for fuel lines. **Black Iron** is recommended since it is more durable and less likely to be damaged.
5. Do not use any galvanized fittings or piping anywhere in the system as the coating reacts with diesel fuel and can flake off. Even with the fuel filters in place, it could still be possible for pieces of the coating to enter the engine and cause problems.
6. Install a solenoid valve on the engine inlet for situations where a siphoning effect will draw fuel into the engine. The solenoid valve must be activated by the engine start signal.

STARTING SYSTEM NOTES

1. Use stranded wire for connection between the battery charger DC output terminals and the starters to minimize the effect of vibrations.
2. Lead acid batteries are shipped dry. The Carolina CAT technician will supply electrolyte and fill the batteries during the startup.
3. Mounting the battery charger on the generator set or other vibrating equipment is not recommended. If it is necessary to mount the charger this way, shock mount should be supplied.
4. Mount the battery charger in a vertical position in a dry location.
5. Install the battery charger in such a way that allows for adequate ventilation at the top and bottom of the charger to remove radiated heat.
6. Ground the charger as required per applicable codes.
7. Size AC and DC wiring according to the amperage, length of cable run and as listed in the guidelines given in the battery charger installation manual provided following these notes.
8. **Do not energize the battery charger until startup after the batteries have been filled with electrolyte.**

CAT®

THIS DIAGRAM IS FOR GC GENSET MODELS (250kW to 600kW)

FOR USE WITH : C9, C13, C15 & C18 ENGINES

6310 CONTROLLER

SIGNAL NAMES

CIRCUIT_ID	COLOR	DESCRIPTION
10	WH	AVR_SUPPLY_X2 (SHUNT)
101	RD	UNFUSED_BTRY (+)
105	WH	(+24V DC) ECM_SUPPLY
108	WH	(+24V DC) PANEL_SUPPLY
123	WH	FUSED BTRY +
14	WH	AVR_SUPPLY_X1 (PMG)
148	WH	(+24 VDC) LIGHTING_SUPPLY
15	WH	AVR_SUPPLY_X2 (PMG)
16	WH	AVR_SUPPLY_Z1 (PMG)
200	GN-YL	GROUND
208	WH	BATTERY (-)
229	WH	CLEAN_GROUND
344	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
345	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
346	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
347	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
348	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
5+	WH	GENERATOR EXCITATION (+)
5-	WH	GENERATOR EXCITATION (-)
879	WH	REMOTE_START_INPUT
892	BK	CAT_DATA_LINK (-)
893	WH	CAT_DATA_LINK (+)
9	WH	AVR SUPPLY X1 (SHUNT)
951	WH	MODBUS A
952	BK	MODBUS B
953	CU	MODBUS COM
954	WH	DSENET A
955	BK	DSENET B
956	CU	DSENET SCREEN
SCR	CU	SCREEN
A309	WH	DIGITAL_INPUT (GENSET RUNNING)
A666	WH	ENCLOSURE_LIGHTING
A774	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
A775	WH	EMERGENCY_STOP
AC101	WH	FUSED BTRY CHARGER (L)
AC102	WH	BTRY CHARGER (L)
AC103	WH	ALT HEATER BREAKER
AC104	WH	ALT HEATER BREAKER
AC199	WH	BTRY CHARGER (N)
AC703	WH	ALT HEATER RELAY (11)
AC719	WH	ALT HEATER RELAY (12)
AC720	WH	ALT HEATER TERM
E486	WH	SENSING_VOLTAGE-PHASE_A
E487	WH	SENSING_VOLTAGE-PHASE_B
E488	WH	SENSING_VOLTAGE-PHASE_C
E494	WH	CT_SENSING-PHASE_A
E495	WH	CT_SENSING-PHASE_B
E496	WH	CT_SENSING-PHASE_C
E498	WH	CT_SENSING-COMMON
E600	WH	GROUND FAULT RELAY
E601	WH	GROUND FAULT RELAY
F409	WH	SENSING_VOLTAGE-NEUTRAL
F430	WH	DIGITAL_INPUT_(D)
F434	WH	GEN_PHASE_A
F435	WH	GEN_PHASE_B
F436	WH	GEN_PHASE_C
N756	WH	HORN_OUTPUT
P733	WH	ANALOG_I/P SIGNAL_(FUEL LEVEL)
P854	WH	BREAKER_SHUNT_TRIP
R958	WH	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_(SHUNT_TRIP)
R959	WH	DIGITAL_OUTPUT_(ENCLOSURE_LIGHTS)
X881	WH	STARTER_MAG_SWITCH
Y797	YL	J1939_DATALINK_(CAN_+)
Y798	BK	J1939_DATALINK_(CAN_-)
Y799	CU	J1939_DATALINK_(CAN_SHLD)
Y983	WH	DIGITAL_INPUT_(LOW_COOLANT_LEVEL)
Y984	WH	DIGITAL_INPUT_(FUEL_LEAK)
Y985	WH	DIGITAL_INPUT_(ENCLOSURE_LIGHTS)

WIRE NAME DEFINITION

XXXX-XX# XX-XX

- WIRE GAUGE
- WIRE COLOUR
- WIRE NUMBER
- HARNESS IDENT
- CIRCUIT IDENT

COLOUR ABBREVIATIONS

ABBREVIATION	DESCRIPTION
RD	RED
WH	WHITE
OR	ORANGE
YL	YELLOW
PK	PINK
BK	BLACK
GY	GREY
PU	PURPLE
BR	BROWN
GN	GREEN
BU	BLUE
CU	COPPER
GN-YL	GREEN-YELLOW

ABBREVIATIONS

ABBREVIATIONS	DESCRIPTION
AC	ALTERNATING CURRENT
AVR	AUTOMATIC VOLTAGE REGULATOR
BATT	BATTERY
CR	CONTROL RELAY
DC	DIRECT CURRENT
ECM	ENGINE CONTROL MODULE
ECR	ENGINE CRANK RELAY
ELR	ENNVOLOSURE LIGHTS RELAY
E-STOP	EMERGENCY STOP
FLS	FUEL LEVEL SENDER
GFR	GERNERAL FAULT RELAY
GND	GROUND
GRR	GENERATOR RUNNING RELAY
LCL	LOW COOLANT LEVEL
MCB	MINIATURE CIRCUIT BREAKER
PMG	PERMANENT MAGNET GENERATOR
STR	SHUNT TRIP RELAY
TERM	PANEL TERMINAL
VFC	VOLT FREE CONTACT

SYMBOL LEGEND TABLE

	MINIATURE CIRCUIT BREAKER
	EMERGENCY STOP PUSHBUTTON
	FUSED AUTOMOTIVE RELAY
	RESISTOR
	EARTH/GROUND
	CURRENT TRANSFORMER
X	PANEL TERMINAL
	TERMINAL
	CONNECTOR
	BATTERY
	SPLICE
	WIRE
	SCREEN CABLE
A	FUSE

INDEX TABLE

SHEET INDEX	DESCRIPTION
1	CROSS REFERENCE,SHEET INDEX, NOTES
2	CONTROL SCHEMATIC
3	POWER SCHEMATIC
4	OPTION SCHEMATIC
5	OPTION SCHEMATIC (CONTINUED)
6	CUSTOMER CONNECTIONS AND COMPONENT DETAILS

HARNESS LAYER TABLE

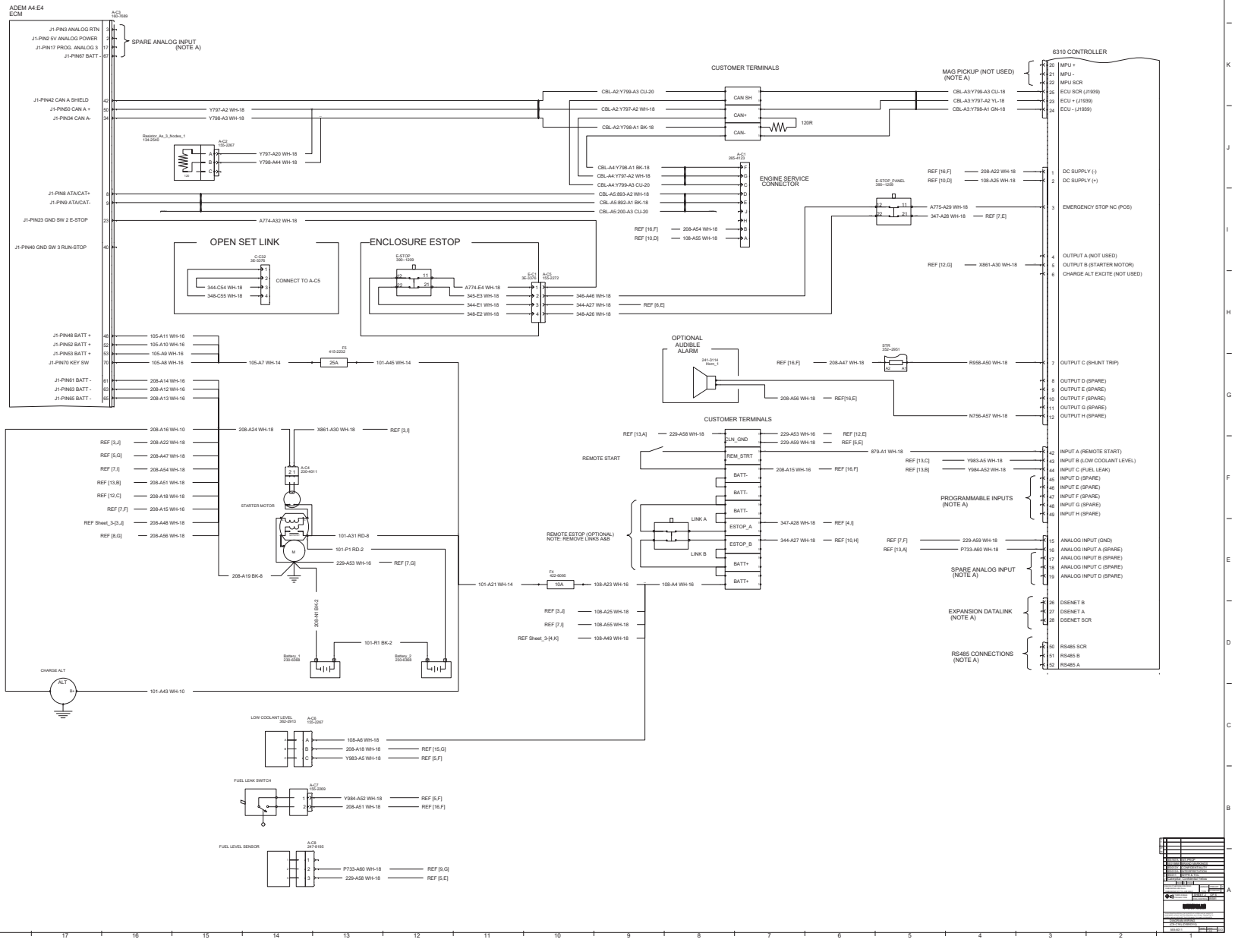
IDENT	PART NO	CHG	LOC	DESCRIPTION	NOTE
HARNESS AS.	-	-	-	-	-
A	572-5793	02	SH 2	MAIN HARNESS (C9-C13)	
A	572-5795	02	SH 2	MAIN HARNESS (C15-C18)	
AN	578-8063	01	SH 4	ANNUNCIATOR HARNESS	
B	577-8429	01	SH 4	PLG 641 & 601 HARNESS (RS485)	
C	580-2678	00	SH 2	E-STOP LINK (OPEN SET)	
CE	SR1-0536	00	SH 5	LC BATTERY CHARGER	
CG	577-8711	00	SH 5	GFCI	
CF	SR1-0537	00	SH 5	LC ALT HEATER	
E	572-5798	02	SH 2	E-STOP HARNESS (ENCLOSED SET)	
EL	580-3699	01	SH 4	CANOPY LIGHTS HARNESS	
ER	578-7682	01	SH 5	BATTERY CHARGER HARNESS	
GF	SR1-1932	01	SH 5	GROUND FAULT RELAY INDICATION HARNESS	
GR	579-3092	00	SH 4	GENSET RUNNING & COMMON ALARM	
PG	443-0637	00	SH 4	PMG ADAPTOR	
T	577-3930	00	SH 4	PLG 641 & 601 HARNESS (POWER)	
RC	580-8446	01	SH 5	ALTERNATOR HEATER HARNESS	
AX	TBA	-	SH3	1200A CB AUX CONTACT HARNESS	
FF	TBA	-	SH3	1200A CB SHUNT TRIP HARNESS	
Y	586-4861	00	SH 5	PLG CANBUS HARNESS	
WIRE AS. / CABLE AS.	-	-	-	-	-
N	-	-	SH 2	BATTERY NEGATIVE	
P	-	-	SH 2	BATTERY POSSITIVE	
R	-	-	SH 2	BATTERY LINK	
SEE SHEET 3	-	-	SH 2	400A POWER CABLES	
SEE SHEET 3	-	-	SH 3	600A POWER CABLES	
SEE SHEET 3	-	-	SH 3	800A POWER CABLES	
SEE SHEET 3	-	-	SH 3	1200A POWER CABLES	

NOTE A: FACTORY WIRING NOT PROVIDED AS STANDARD. REFER TO MANUFACTURER INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS.

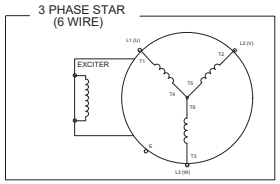
NOTE B: CONTACT OPEN IN DE-ENERGIZED STATE OR FAULT CONDITION.

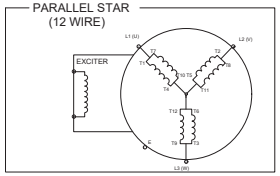
NOTE C: RESISTOR TO BE REMOVED IF ADDITIONAL EXPANSION MODULES ARE CONNECTED.

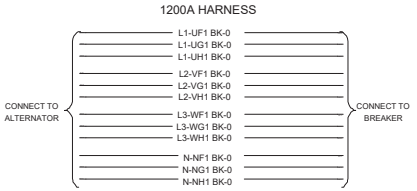
CONTROL SCHEMATIC (DSE 6310)

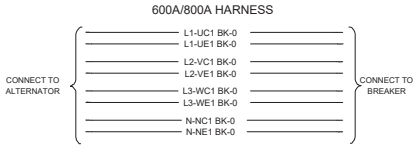


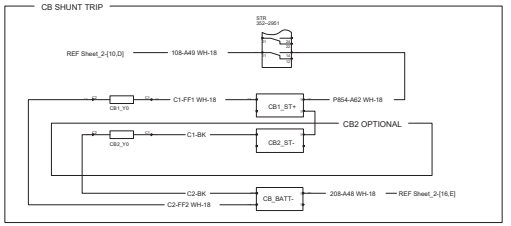
POWER SCHEMATIC

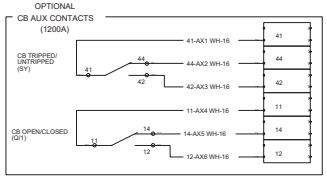


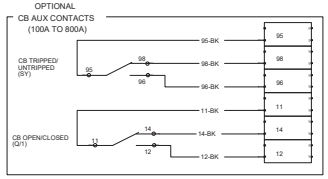


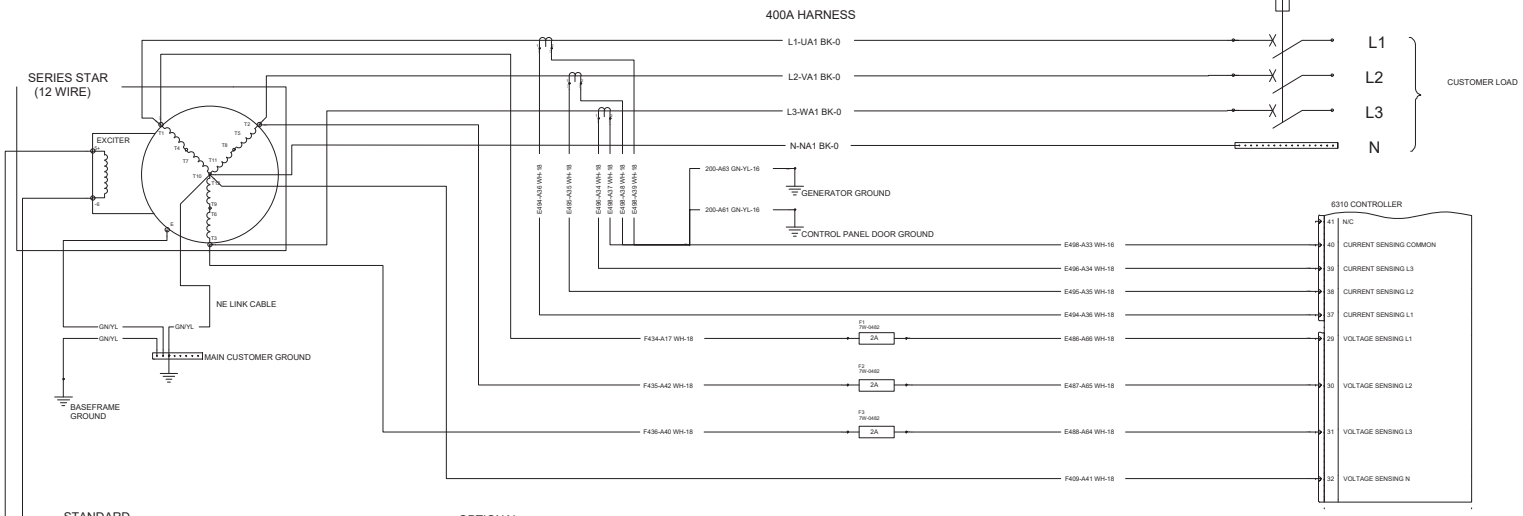


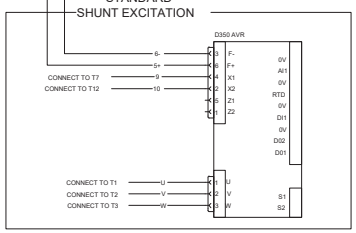


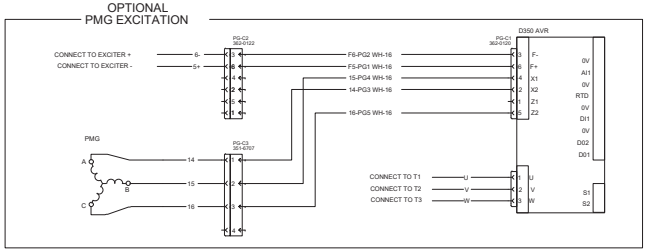






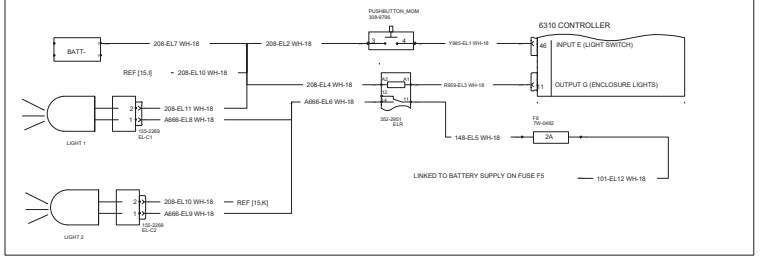




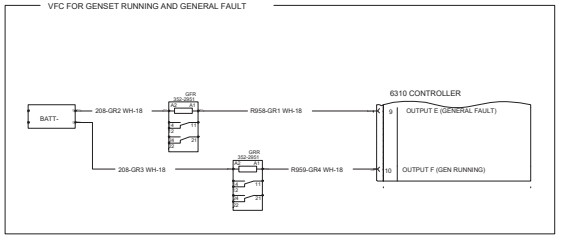


ADDITIONAL OPTIONS

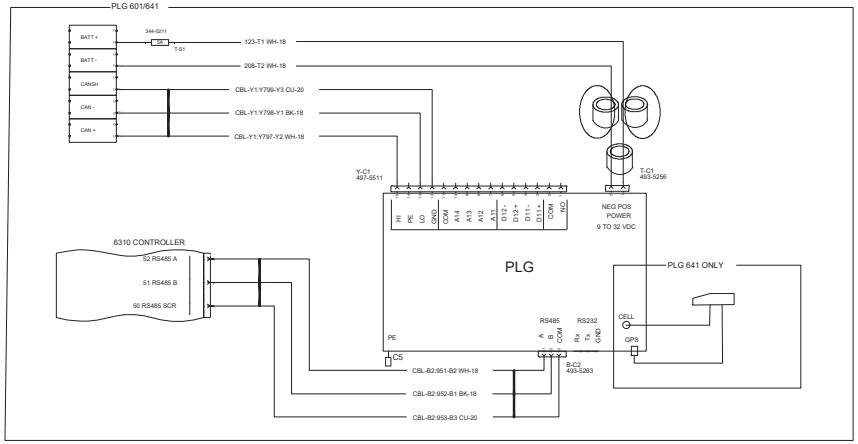
OPTIONAL
DC ENCLOSURE LIGHTS



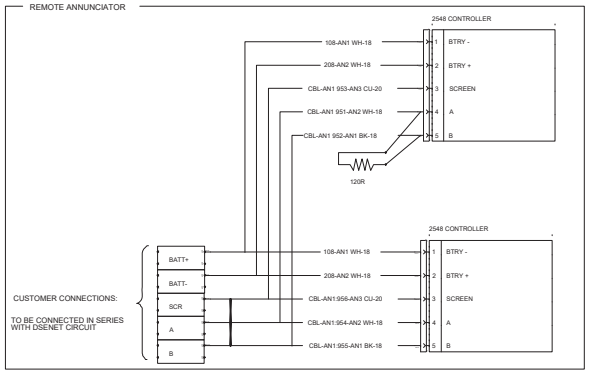
OPTIONAL
VFC FOR GENSET RUNNING AND GENERAL FAULT



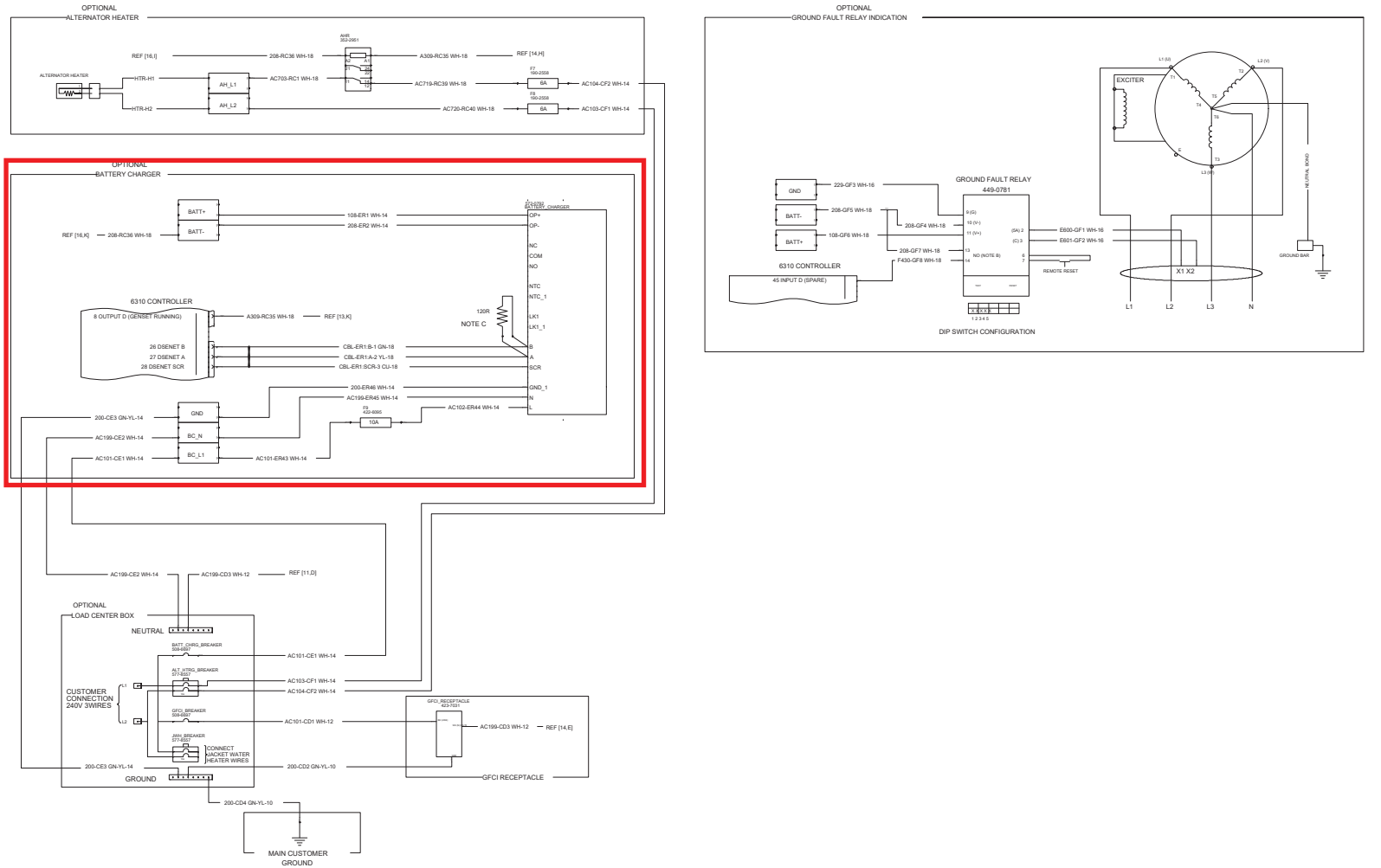
OPTIONAL
PLG 601/641



OPTIONAL
REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR



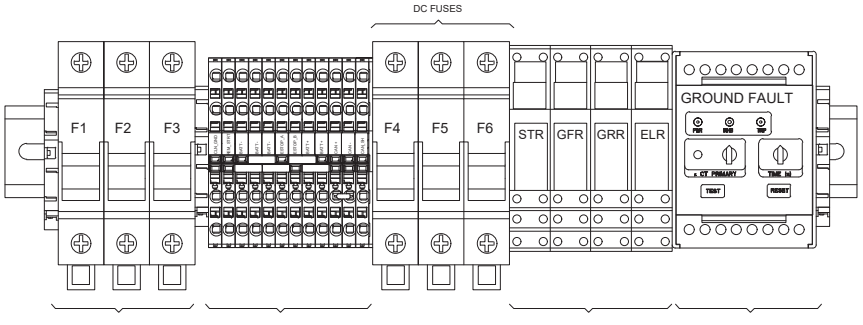
ADDITIONAL OPTIONS



ADDITIONAL INFORMATION - COMPONENT DETAILS & CUSTOMER CONNECTIONS

MAIN CUSTOMER RAIL (OPTIONS INCLUDED)

FUSE ID	CURRENT RATING	WIRE ID	DESCRIPTION
F4	10A	101, 108	PANEL SUPPLY
F5	25A	101, 105	ECM POWER
F6	2A	148, 101	ENCLOSURE LIGHTS

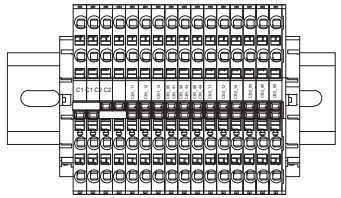


FUSE ID	CURRENT RATING	WIRE ID	DESCRIPTION
F1	5A	F434, E486	L1 SENSING AC
F2	5A	F435, E487	L2 SENSING AC
F3	5A	F436, E488	L3 SENSING AC

TERMINAL ID	WIRE ID	DESCRIPTION
CLN_GND	229	CLEAN GROUND FOR ANALOG INPUTS
REM_STRT	879	REMOTE START INPUT
BATT -	208	BATTERY NEGATIVE
BATT -	208	BATTERY NEGATIVE
BATT -	208	BATTERY NEGATIVE
ESTOP_A	947	ECM ESTOP INPUT
ESTOP_B	944	GENSET CONTROLLER ESTOP INPUT
BATT +	108	BATTERY POSITIVE (10A FUSED)
BATT +	108	BATTERY POSITIVE (10A FUSED)
CAN +	9797	CAN + COMMS
CAN -	9798	CAN - COMMS
CAN SH	9799	CAN SH COMMS

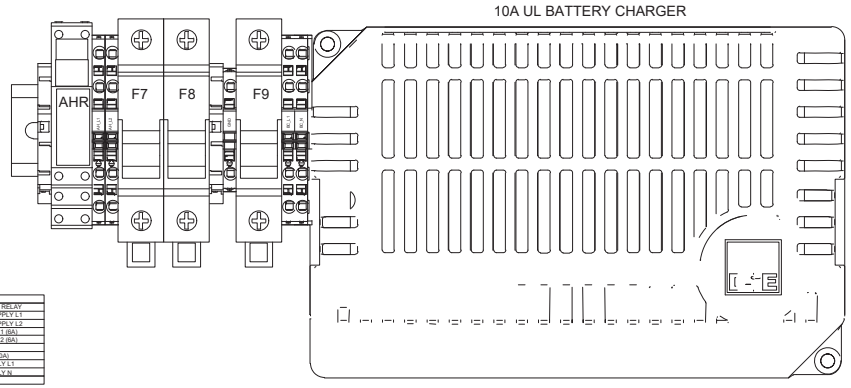
SAA	CURRENT RATING	DESCRIPTION
STR	8A	SHUNT TRIP RELAY
GFR	8A	GENERAL FAULT RELAY
GRR	8A	GENSET RUNNING RELAY
ELR	8A	ENCLOSURE LIGHTS RELAY

CIRCUIT BREAKER RAIL (OPTIONS INCLUDED)



TERMINAL ID	WIRE ID	DESCRIPTION
CB1_ST+	C1	CB1 SHUNT TRIP
CB2_ST+	C1	CB2 SHUNT TRIP
BATT-	208	BATTERY NEGATIVE
11	11	CB1 AUX COM
12	12	CB1 AUX NO
14	14	CB1 AUX NC
85/41	85/41	CB1 AUX COM
86/42	86/42	CB1 AUX NO
88/44	88/44	CB1 AUX NC
11	11	CB2 AUX COM
12	12	CB2 AUX NO
14	14	CB2 AUX NC
95	95	CB2 AUX COM
96	96	CB2 AUX NO
98	98	CB2 AUX NC

SHORE POWER RAIL (OPTIONS INCLUDED)

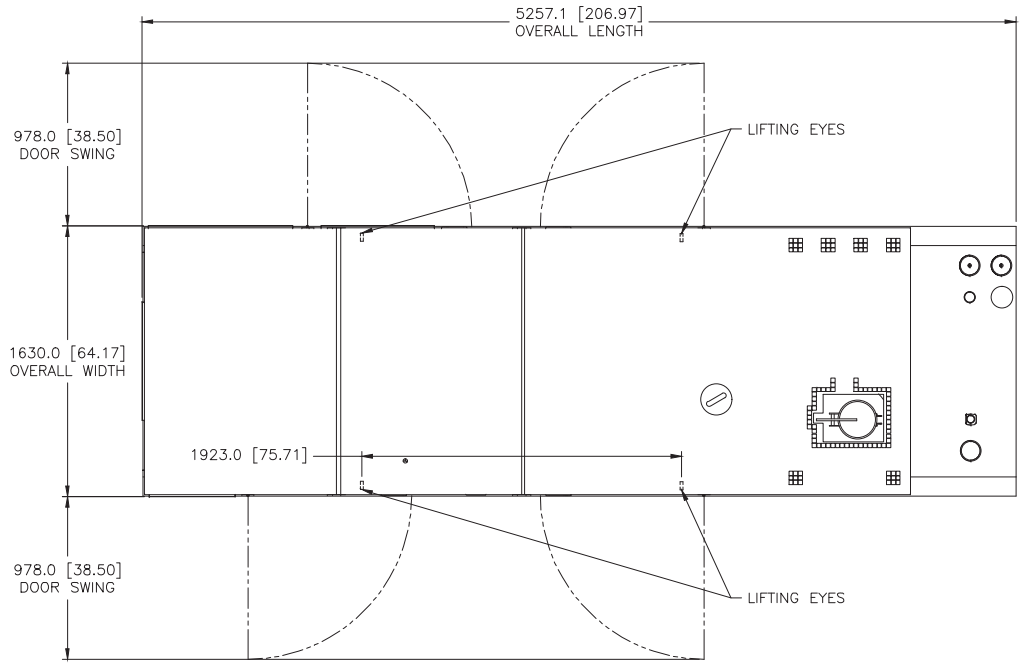


COMPONENT	DESCRIPTION
AHR	ALTERNATOR SPACE HEATER RELAY
AH_L1	ALTERNATOR HEATER AC SUPPLY L1
AH_L2	ALTERNATOR HEATER AC SUPPLY L2
F7	ALTERNATOR HEATER FUSE L1 (8A)
F8	ALTERNATOR HEATER FUSE L2 (8A)
GND	SHORE POWER GROUND
F9	BATTERY CHARGR FUSE L1 (10A)
SC_L1	BATTERY CHARGER AC SUPPLY L1
SC_N	BATTERY CHARGER AC SUPPLY N

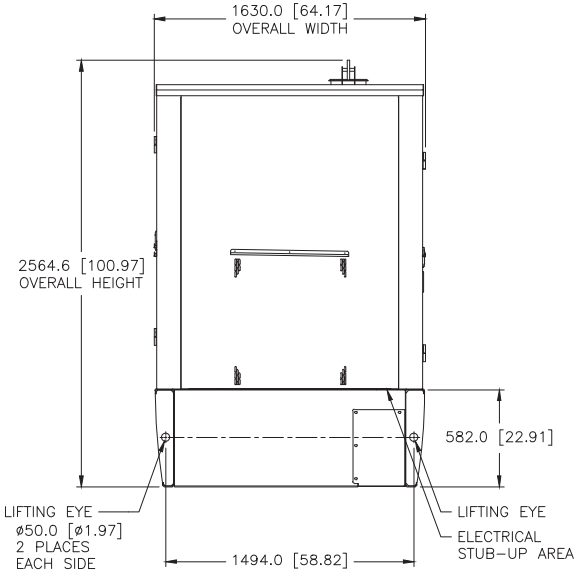
METRIC 607-3702

QTY	ENGINE CONNECTIONS	SIZE	SHEET
1	COOLANT DRAIN	ø19.1 [ø0.75] I.D.	2
1	EXHAUST	ø203.2 [ø8.00] O.D.	2

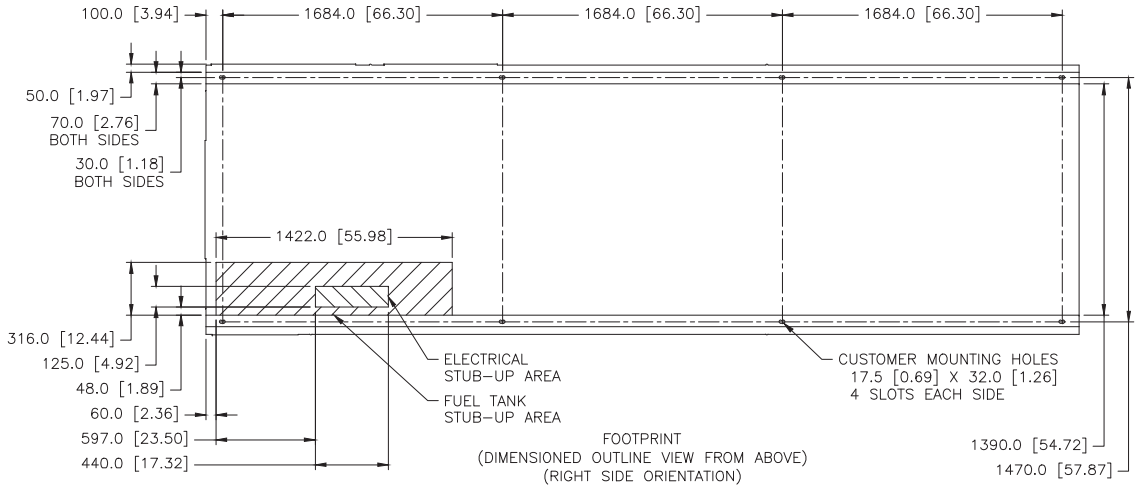
QTY	POSSIBLE TANK CONNECTIONS	SIZE	SHEET
1	BASIN TANK EMERGENCY VENT	5" NPT THD	3
1	FUEL INLET	4" NPT THD	3
1	FUEL RETURN	1/2-14 NPTF	3
1	FUEL SUPPLY	1/2-14 NPTF	3
1	MAIN TANK EMERGENCY VENT	5" NPT THD	3
1	NORMAL VENT	2-11 1/2 NPTF	3
3	SPARE PORT	2-11 1/2 NPTF	3



TOP VIEW
[RIGHT SIDE ORIENTATION]



REAR VIEW



FOOTPRINT
(DIMENSIONED OUTLINE VIEW FROM ABOVE)
(RIGHT SIDE ORIENTATION)

MODEL	TYPE	PRICING AR	FUEL TANK	ENCLOSURE
C13	Y	LS-3973 CHG 01	LS-4050 CHG 00	LS-3858 CHG 00
		LS-3974 CHG 01		
		LS-3975 CHG 01		
		LS-3976 CHG 01		

PACKAGE LIFTED IN 4 PLACES

PACKAGE SHOWN WITH MORE DETAIL ON SHEETS 2 & 3

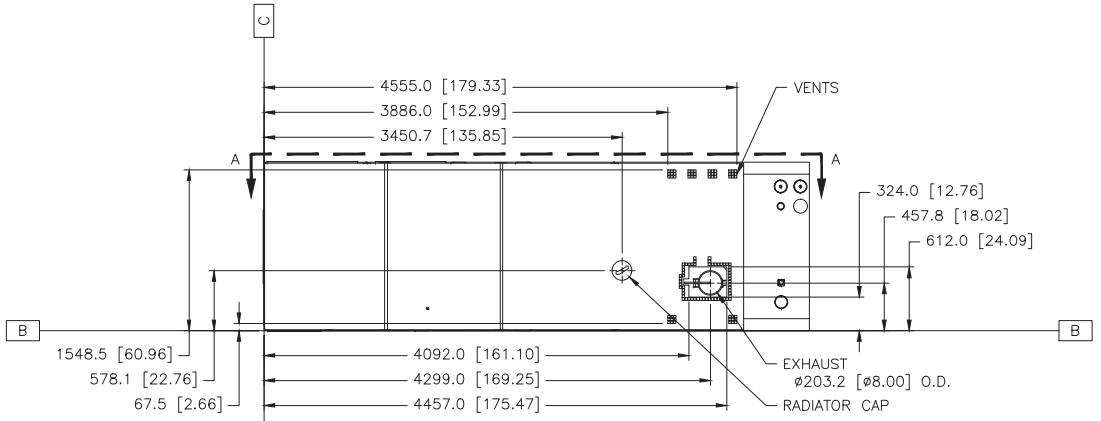
1E2966B IDENT
1E2733 DRAWING-AUTOCAD
1E0138W BRAND MARKINGS
1E0013G CONFIDENTIALITY
1E0012A INTERPRETATION
1E0011 INTPR & TOL

DRN J.O. SCHAIDLE
CHK M.J. SWIFT
APPD N.P. MOUNTJOY
DATE 27OCT20
SHEET 1 OF 3
CHG 00

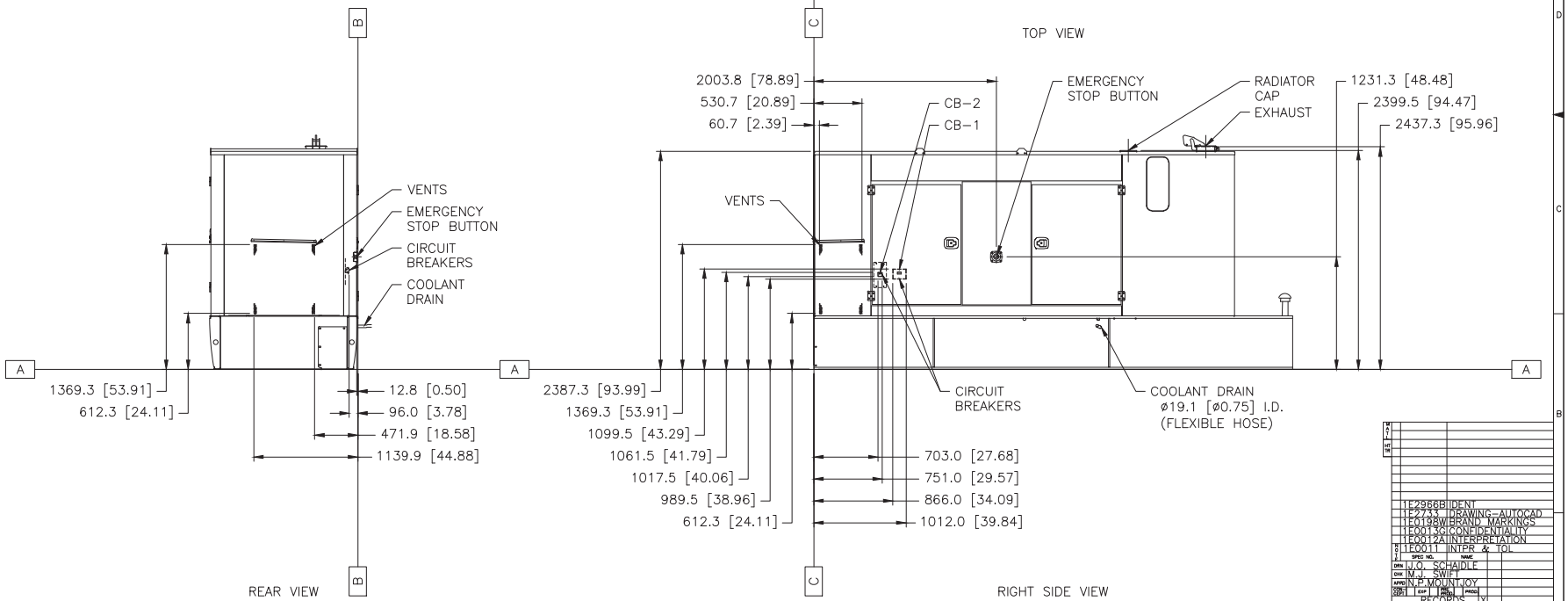
CATERPILLAR INC.

INSTALLATION-COMPOSITE
C13 SA L2 + EXTENDED TANK
607-3702 - W591 E

METRIC 607-3702



TOP VIEW



REAR VIEW

RIGHT SIDE VIEW

1E2966B IDENT
1E2713 DRAWING-AUTOCAD
1E0138W BRAND MARKINGS
1E0013C CONFIDENTIALITY
1E0012J INTERPRETATION
1E0011 INTPR & TOL

	SPEC NO.	NAME
DRN		J.O. SCHAIDLE
CHK		M.J. SWIFT
APPD		N.P. MOUNTJOY
DOC TYPE	EXP	PROD

RECORDS X

UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED:
DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm [INCH]
DIMENSIONS W/O TOL ARE BASIC

SCALE 1 = 16 | THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION | 00 27OCT20 | DATE

SHEET 2 OF 3

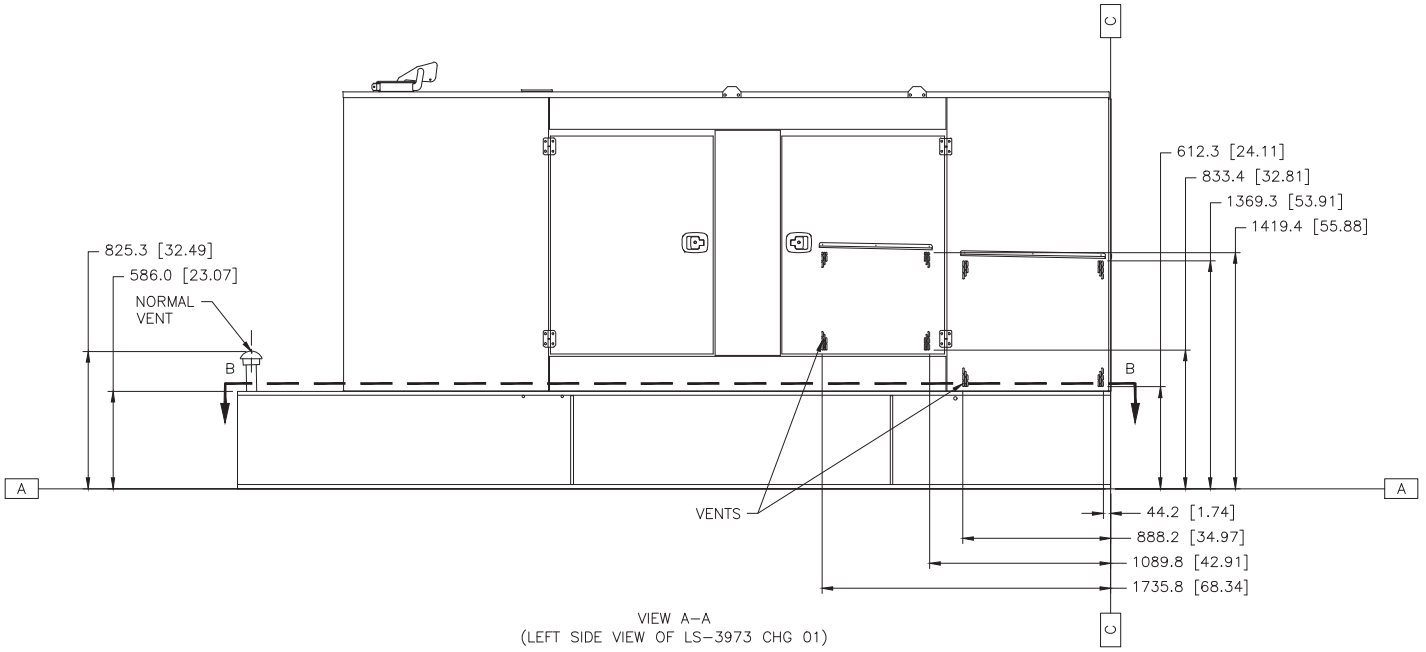
CATERPILLAR INC.

THE INFORMATION HEREON IS THE PROPERTY OF CATERPILLAR INC. AND/OR ITS SUBSIDIARIES AND SUBMISSION OF THIS DRAWING CONSTITUTES ITS LOAN, WHICH MAY NOT BE COPIED, USED OR DISCLOSED WITHOUT WRITTEN PERMISSION.

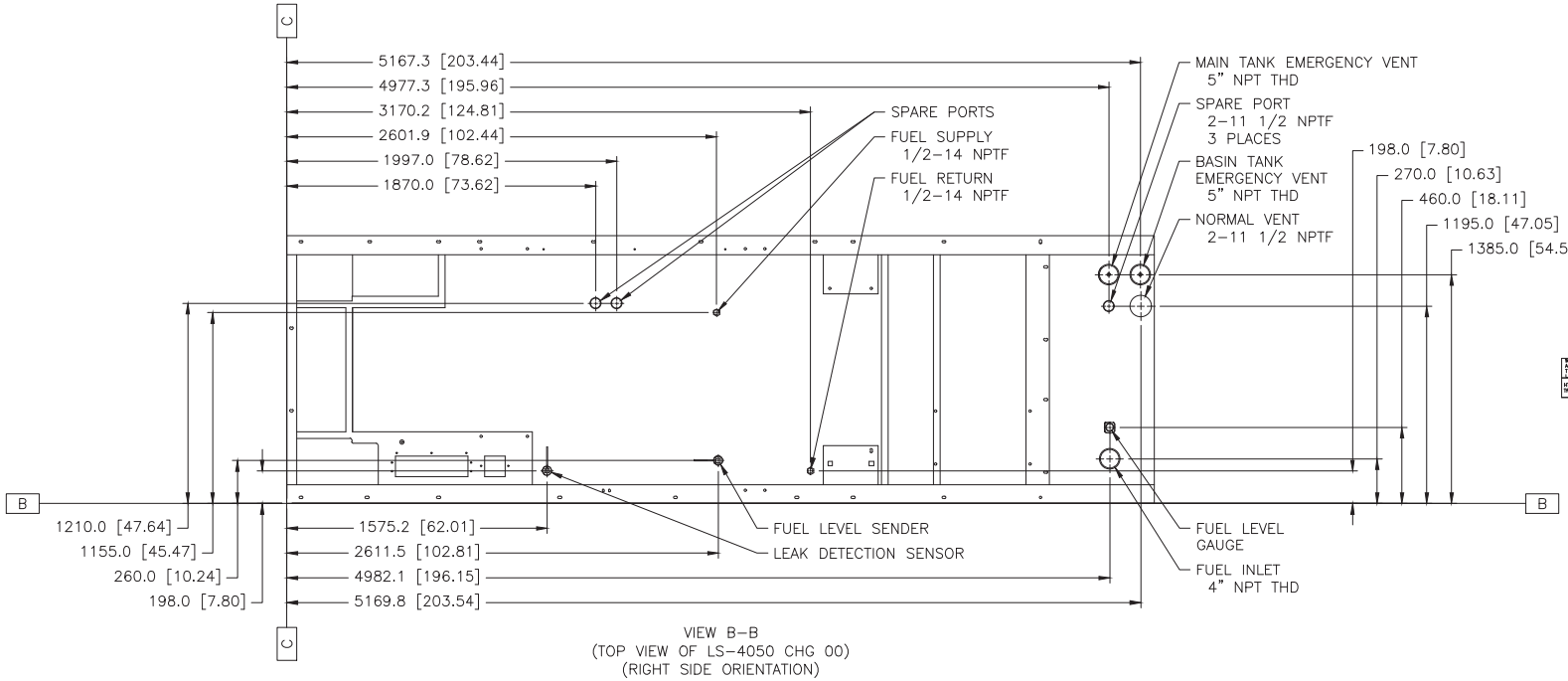
INSTALLATION-COMPOSITE
C13 SA L2 + EXTENDED TANK
607-3702

LTR - | SIZE D | CONTROL W591 | E

METRIC 607-3702



VIEW A–A
(LEFT SIDE VIEW OF LS–3973 CHG 01)



VIEW B–B
(TOP VIEW OF LS–4050 CHG 00)
(RIGHT SIDE ORIENTATION)

1E2966B IDENT
1E2733 DRAWING–AUTOCAD
1E0138W BRAND MARKINGS
1E0013C CONFIDENTIALITY
1E0012A INTERPRETATION
1E0011 INTPR & TOL
SPEC NO. NAME
DFTR J.O. SCHAIDLE
CHK M.J. SWIFT
APPD N.P. MOUNTJOY
ISSUE EXP PROD
RECORDS X
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED
DIMENSIONS ARE IN MM [INCH]
DIMENSIONS W/O TOL ARE BASIC
SCALE 1 = 10
SHEET 3 OF 3
THIRD ANGLE PROJECTION
00 27OCT20
CHG DATE

CATERPILLAR INC.

THE INFORMATION HEREON IS THE PROPERTY OF CATERPILLAR INC. AND/OR ITS SUBSIDIARIES AND MAY NOT BE REPRODUCED, OR OTHERWISE USED, IN WHOLE OR IN PART, WITHOUT PRIOR WRITTEN PERMISSION.

INSTALLATION–COMPOSITE
C13 SA L2 + EXTENDED TANK
607-3702
VER - CONTROL
SHEET - SUB -
W591 E

Appendix C:
Control System Integration Scope

4030 Yancey Road, Charlotte, NC 28217
P.O. Box 33758, Charlotte, NC 28233
PHONE 704.969.2484 FAX 704.969.2480

CITI SCOPE PROPOSAL C25073

Date: May 23, 2025

To: Bidding Contractors

Project: Poplar Tent Area Water Pump Station
City of Concord Water Resources
City of Concord, NC

Reference: Division 40 Control and Information System
Specification Sections 40 61 13 – 40 78 56

CITI Inc, an equipment supplier, offers to furnish the following described materials and services as our scope under Division 40, in accordance with the attached "Conditions of Sale" and other provisions that are referenced herein.

Materials

Qty		Description
1		Poplar Pump Station PLC Panel (PLC-1000): new PLC panel with NEMA 12 freestanding enclosure and hardware
1		Fiber optic network cabling connectors required for terminations and/or splicing of existing fiber optic cable that runs to the Rock Hill Church Tank
1		Suspended float type level switches, each with integral cable and OEM cable support for the following applications:

Tag No.	Service Description
LSH-1000	Flow Meter Vault – High Level

1		Magnetic flow meter each including flanged end flow tube, two grounding rings, remote rack/wall mount signal converter and tube to converter interconnect cables for the following applications:

Tag No.	Service Description	Flow Tube Size
FE/FIT-1000	Poplar Pump Station Flow	16-in with ANSI Cl 150 Flanges

6		Pressure switch/gauge assembly each including one pressure gauge indicating transmitter, one pressure switch, snubber, and block and bleed isolation valve with 0.5-inch FNPT process connection for the following applications:

Tag No.	Service Description
PIT-1001A PSL-1001	Booster Pump 1 Suction Pressure – Low
PIT-1002A PSL-1002	Booster Pump 2 Suction Pressure – Low
PIT-1002A PSL-1003	Booster Pump 3 Suction Pressure – Low
PIT-1001B PSH-1001	Booster Pump 1 Discharge Pressure – High
PIT-1001B PSH-1001	Booster Pump 2 Discharge Pressure – High
PIT-1001B PSH-1001	Booster Pump 3 Discharge Pressure – High

Materials		
Qty		**Description**
1		Instrument testing tools per specification paragraph 40 61 22-2.01
1		PLC spare parts per specification paragraph 40 63 43-1.03
		Network and communication equipment tools, supplies and spare parts per specification paragraph 40 66 00-1.03
1		Spare Magnetic flow signal converter per specification paragraph 40 71 13.13-1.03
1		Panel spare parts per specification paragraph 40 78 00-1.04
1		Surge protection device spare parts per specification paragraph 40 78 56-1.03
1		Lot of field instrument 120VAC power supply surge protection for new instrument transmitters in this scope
1		Lot of stainless-steel nameplates for instruments in this scope

Services		
Qty		**Description**
1		Control and Information System submittals as electronic documents: • Combined submittal for digital hardware and control panels in this scope • Field instrumentation submittal • Software submittal • Control panel I/O field wiring interconnect details for all panels in this scope • Operation and Maintenance manuals with final documentation for equipment in this scope • Final documentation for PLC and SCADA programming applications
1		Control system testing plans
1		Fiber optic network services as required for terminations and/or splicing of existing fiber optic cable that runs to the Rock Hill Church Tank, for relocation prior to construction and for final connection to incorporate the new pump station PLC panel into the existing City's network.
1		Setup of network and communications testing for new panels added to the control system data network
1		Field acceptance testing • Field instrumentation setup and testing for all devices in this scope • Final control element/loop checkout for all new I/O in this scope • Loop check of SCADA interface with new I/O from manufacturer-supplied PLC systems • Control strategy testing for all application software developed under this scope • Control system startup and demonstration testing for all new controls in this scope
1		Availability demonstration and final acceptance testing of control system
1		Control and Information System on-site training • Operator training – one half-day course • Maintenance training – one half-day course • Instrument training – one half-day course
1		PLC and OIT application software programming
1		SCADA application software programming

CITI Pricing Summary

Pricing for CITI scope of materials and services	*Materials Subtotal =*	*$105,600*
	Services Subtotal =	*$115,525*
	Total excluding taxes =	*$221,125*

CITI Clarifications:

1. The scope of this proposal excludes all of the following regardless of the specification responsibility statements:
   - VFD, VCP and LCP panels unless specifically listed in our materials scope;
   - Power monitors;
   - Computer system hardware including operator work stations, SCADA servers, monitors, etc.;
   - Instruments shown on P&ID as being provided as part of a vendor package;
   - Unshielded twisted pair Category 6 Ethernet cable, this cable should be included in the electrical subcontractor scope;
   - PLC programming software licenses;
   - SCADA software licenses;
   - Alarm notification software;
   - Video recording of training;
   - Equipment mounting racks and stands, sensor support brackets, instrument and panel sunshades, support anchors and hardware, flange fitting accessory kits, pipe taps, isolation valves, sample pumps, sample piping, impulse piping, grounding wire and rods, stilling wells, etc. as may be required or shown on the contract drawings, unless specifically listed in CITI Inc's materials scope;
   - Field wiring materials, power disconnect switches, conduits, junction boxes, and pull boxes;
   - Surge protection for field components and instruments supplied by others;
   - Nametags for field components and instruments supplied by others;
   - Building or work permits;
   - Review of the size and routing of all instrumentation and control cable and conduit systems furnished by the electrical subcontractor;
   - Onsite storage and handling of panels and instruments once they are delivered to the jobsite;
   - Demolition or relocation of existing instrumentation and controls equipment;
   - Onsite supervision of equipment installation;
   - Installation of panels and field process components/instruments, field wiring and network cabling;
   - Field wiring terminations of power and control wiring at panels, field instruments, and process components;
   - Field terminations of copper communications network cabling;
   - Factory acceptance test;
   - PLC programming and OIT programming of panels supplied by others;
   - Power monitor configuration;
   - Component inspections and startup for field process components/instruments and panels supplied by others;
   - Materials not specifically listed in CITI Inc's scope;
   - Services not specifically listed in CITI Inc's scope.
2. We propose using the City's fiber optic network to establish communications to the water treatment plant as an alternative to radio telemetry communications. We will provide a new fiber optic Ethernet switch, patch panel, and patch cables at the new pump station to connect to the existing fiber optic cable that runs to the Rock Hill Church Tank. Licensed 900 MHz radio,

Yagi antenna, coaxial cable, etc. necessary to connect the new pump station to the city's existing radio telemetry system are not included in our scope.

3. PLC hardware to be supplied under this proposal will be Allen Bradley CompactLogix.
4. All instruments and panels furnished under the scope of this proposal will be provided with the manufacturers' standard finish.
5. CITI Inc will provide our control panel drawing with field wiring interconnect details for all I/O points. ISA loop drawing will not be provided.
6. Unless otherwise noted in our proposal, CITI Inc will be providing all manufacturer's services under this scope.
7. Materials will be released for manufacture and shipment to the job site upon receipt of the approved submittal and your authorization. After your authorization to release, you must accept deliveries when equipment is available. You must assume custody upon delivery and provide suitable facilities in accordance with the specifications for on-site storage until materials are installed and powered. CITI Inc's hardware submittals will be available within 8-12 weeks after receipt of an executed order. Materials should be fully deliverable within 16-20 weeks after approved submittals and in accordance with an agreed upon schedule that will be based on product availability and supply chain constraints. Delivery schedules are non-binding, and CITI Inc maintains the right to partial deliveries as materials become available. If the delivery of materials is delayed as a result of manufacturer supply chain issues or other factors beyond our control, CITI Inc shall not be liable for any additional costs or damages associated with such delays.
8. After your completion of equipment installation and field wiring terminations, CITI Inc will begin the field services for commissioning our panels and field instruments. You will need to have qualified staff present during this testing to assist in verifying that each external connection to the equipment is correctly wired and to operate the interconnected field process equipment and panels furnished by others.
9. All materials are warranted for 18 months after delivery, 12 months after completion of their respective acceptance testing, or 12 months after the original project completion date, whichever occurs first. We will be responsible for shipping and repair costs for non-conforming or defective items during the warranty period. You will be responsible for removal, return shipment, receipt, and re-installation of any equipment items which you originally installed.
10. CITI Inc's insurance coverage is: general liability - $1,000,000/$2,000,000; auto liability - $1,000,000; excess liability - $1,000,000; and workers compensation - $1,000,000. If any additional coverage or endorsements are required, the charges for additions to CITI Inc's policy will be charged to you as an extra expense at actual cost times a multiplier of 1.15.
11. CITI Inc will retain all rights to Intellectual Property developed under this project and will grant the end user non-transferable rights to its use and modification. A copy of CITI Inc's privacy statement is available at www.CITI-INC.com.
12. This proposal is valid for 60 days. However, due to potential cost increases resulting from newly imposed import tariffs affecting our vendor suppliers, CITI Inc. reserves the right to adjust selling prices accordingly before receiving an executed purchase order and authorization for the release of materials for manufacturing and delivery. Shipping terms are FOB factory, with freight costs allowed. Unless otherwise specified in this proposal, all shipments will be directed to the designated project site.
13. Payment terms for this project are **net 30 days**, contingent upon approved credit, after the date of each invoice. Payment to CITI Inc shall not be dependent on your receipt of payment from any third parties. Materials that are delivered or approved for storage in CITI Inc's facility will be billed complete at the time of delivery/storage in accordance with a pre-submitted schedule of values. Services will be billed based on the percentage completed against this schedule of values.
14. CITI Inc will accept retainage being withheld from progress payments due to CITI if the Owner is applying retainage against the prime contract. Five percent retainage may be

withheld until CITI Inc's work is 50% complete by approved billings, after which 0% may be withheld. Partial and full retainage releases must be made within the earlier of: seven days of Owner's payment of retainage to you; or 60 days from the completion of CITI Inc's scope of work.

15. CITI Inc will not provide any materials or services for this project prior receipt of an executed purchase order.
16. CITI Inc will accept a purchase order for this scope of supply subject to these clarifications and the attached CITI Inc "Conditions of Sale". A subcontract will not be accepted. The order will need to incorporate this proposal or specifically include within its body the listing of materials, services, and clarifications from this proposal so as to define CITI Inc's scope of supply and terms. Flow down clauses will not be accepted. All terms of CITI Inc's agreement must be specifically listed in the order. Assignment of order is subject to CITI Inc's written consent.
17. CITI Inc will apply taxes to all invoices for labor and materials as applicable. If a tax exemption is being claimed, all relevant exemption forms must be provided to CITI at the time the purchase order is issued. A completed NCDOR E-589CI Affidavit of Capital Improvement is needed if the work is to be taxed as a real property contract with respect a capital improvement to real property.

If you have any questions about this scope of supply, please call us. Thank you for your consideration.

CITI Inc.

Camilo Castaño
Chief Estimator

Attachment: CITI Inc Conditions of Sale

CITI, INC CONDITIONS OF SALE

1. **GENERAL**: Sales by CITI, INC, (herein CITI) are made solely under the conditions expressly set forth herein. Any proposed changes or exceptions to these conditions, or additional terms and conditions, included or referenced in Purchaser's order or acceptance of this offer, are hereby rejected by CITI, and shall be of no force or effect upon CITI unless expressly accepted in writing by CITI.

This Contract shall bind and inure to the benefit of Purchaser and CITI, as well as their respective successors and assigns; however, neither party may assign this Contract without prior written consent of the other.

Neither party shall be deemed to have waived its rights by failing to enforce any particular provision of this Contract.

If a court invalidates any portion of this Contract, the rest of this Contract shall remain valid and be construed as if not containing the invalidated provision.

North Carolina law shall govern the rights and obligations of the parties.
Either party may pursue any legal means available to resolve disputes or claims arising out of or relating to this Contract. Both parties agree to the jurisdiction for resolution of disputes under this order as Mecklenburg County, North Carolina. Each party shall be responsible for their own legal fees in any matter related to this agreement.

2. **CREDIT APPROVAL**: If at any time information available on Purchaser's financial condition or credit history, in CITI's judgment, does not justify the terms of payment specified herein, CITI may require full or partial payment in advance, or an acceptable form of payment guarantee such as a bank letter of credit, or other modifications to the terms of payment.

3. **PROPRIETARY INFORMATION**: All information, data, drawings, instruction and operation manuals furnished by CITI with this Contract are proprietary to CITI, submitted in strict confidence, and are to be used by Purchaser solely for the purposes of this Contract, and shall not be reproduced, transmitted, disclosed or used in any other manner without CITI's written authorization.

4. **RISK OF LOSS**: Risk of loss or damage to the Products, or any part thereof, shall pass to Purchaser at the f.o.b. ship point stated herein.

5. **EXCUSABLE DELAY**: CITI shall not be liable for failure to perform or for delay in performance due to fire, flood, or any other act of God; strike or other labor difficulty, including the bankruptcy of any suppliers to CITI, act of any civil or military authority or of Purchaser; riot; embargo; delay in or shortage of transportation facilities; or any other delay beyond CITI's reasonable control. In the event CITI's performance is delayed by any such cause, CITI's schedule for performance shall be extended accordingly. If Purchaser's actions delay CITI's performance, Purchaser shall pay CITI any additional costs incurred by CITI resulting from such delay. If Purchaser delays shipment of Products, or any part thereof, in addition to paying CITI for additional costs incurred, Purchaser shall also pay for the Products or the parts on the date CITI is prepared to make shipment.

6. **TAXES AND LICENSES**: The Purchase Price does not include any licenses or State or local taxes of any kind applicable to the sale, use or delivery of the Products or services covered under this Contract. Purchaser shall pay direct or reimburse CITI for any such license fees or taxes that CITI or CITI's subcontractors or suppliers are required to pay. CITI will apply taxes to all invoices for labor and materials as applicable to the State where the work is sold. If a tax exemption is being claimed, all relevant exemption forms must be provided to CITI at the time of execution of this Contract.

7. **INSPECTION BY PURCHASER**: Purchaser may inspect the Products at Purchaser's expense at the point of manufacture, provided that such inspection is arranged and conducted so as not to unreasonably interfere with CITI's or the manufacturer's operations. Purchaser's inspection of the Products and release for shipment shall constitute Purchaser's acceptance of the Products as conforming to the requirements of this Contract.

8. **WARRANTY**: CITI warrants the Products from defects in material and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from date the Products are initially placed in operation, or eighteen (18) months from date the Products are shipped, whichever occurs first, provided that the Products are stored, installed, maintained and operated in accordance to the manufacturers recommendations and are protected from harm or damage including but not limited to fire, water, physical damage, exposure to inclement weather, extreme temperatures, and not subjected to misuse, neglect or accident. Upon prompt written notice of and determination that such defect is covered under the foregoing warranty, CITI's responsibility is limited to correction of the defect by, at CITI's option, repair or replacement of the defective part or parts, f.o.b. factory. CITI will not accept responsibility for incidental or consequential damages. Unless stated elsewhere herein, CITI provides no warranty of product performance or process results. The foregoing warranties are exclusive and in lieu of all other warranties of any kind, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

Any products repaired or replaced under this warranty will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period. CITI shall have no responsibility for the condition of primed or finish painted surfaces after the Products leave their point of manufacture.

Field touch-up of shop primed or painted surfaces is normal and shall be at Purchaser's expense. Any touch-up or repainting required to shop primed or painted surfaces, for reasons other than improper or incorrect application in the shop, shall be Purchaser's responsibility.

Purchaser shall be responsible for unpacking and inspecting all shipped Products and noting any damage on the shipper's bill of lading. Any damage must be reported to CITI within 48 hours of receipt of shipment by Purchaser.

9. **PAYMENT TERMS.** CITI's payment terms are Net 30 days from date of CITI invoice. If Purchaser is late in paying the Purchase Price or any partial payment due under this Contract, or otherwise breaches this Contract, CITI shall be entitled to interest at 1½% per month on the overdue amount, and on its damages, calculated from the date of default in payment or other breach, plus court costs, reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred in any effort to collect.

No retainage on the equipment, products, services, or any part thereof, is allowed unless prior approved by CITI. Full retainage release must be made within the earlier of: seven days after purchaser receives payment of retainage, 60 days from the completion of CITI's scope of work, or 180 days after delivery, whichever occurs first.

10. **BACKCHARGES**: CITI shall not be liable for any charges incurred by Purchaser for work, repairs, replacements or alterations to the Products, without CITI's prior written authorization, and any adverse consequences resulting from such unauthorized work shall be Purchaser's full responsibility.

11. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY:** CITI shall not be liable to purchaser for any special, indirect, incidental or consequential damages arising from CITI's obligations under this contract, whether such damages are based upon breach of contract, breach of warranty, tort, strict liability or otherwise. In any event, CITI's liability to purchaser shall not exceed the purchase price of the products or parts of the products on which such liability is based.

12. **CANCELLATION BY PURCHASER**: If Purchaser cancels this Contract or refuses to accept delivery of the Products, Purchaser shall be liable to CITI for reasonable cancellation charges, including loss of anticipated profits, administrative costs, commissions to sales representatives, costs incurred by CITI for all work performed or in process up to the time of cancellation or refusal to accept delivery, cancellation charges from CITI's suppliers or subcontractors, and any other expenses incurred by CITI in connection with Purchaser's cancellation or refusal to accept delivery.

13. **DEFAULT BY PURCHASER**: Without incurring any liability or waiving any claim for damages CITI may have against Purchaser, CITI may refuse to make or delay making delivery, and/or withhold any service, and/or ship C.O.D., and/or apply payments to open balances at CITI discretion, if:

(a) Purchaser breaches this or any contract with CITI, or; (b) CITI fails to receive payment within 30 days from date of invoice, or; (c) CITI becomes aware of facts which, in its judgment, render Purchaser's financial condition unsatisfactory or cast doubt on Purchaser's willingness or ability to pay for the Products and/or services, or; (d) Purchaser engages in or consents to liquidation, commission of any act of insolvency, appointment of a receiver of assets or assignment for the benefit of creditors, or if Purchaser becomes the subject of any bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding.